Munir Ozturk · Khalid Rehman Hakeem
Editors

Plant and Human Health, Volume 2

Phytochemistry and Molecular Aspects

Springer

Plant and Human Health, Volume 2

Munir Ozturk • Khalid Rehman Hakeem
Editors

Plant and Human Health, Volume 2

Phytochemistry and Molecular Aspects

Springer

Editors
Munir Ozturk
Vice President of the Islamic World
Academy of Sciences
Amann, Jordan

Department of Botany and Centre for
Environmental Studies
Ege University
Izmir, Izmir, Turkey

Khalid Rehman Hakeem
Department of Biological Sciences
Faculty of Science
King Abdulaziz University
Jeddah, Saudi Arabia

ISBN 978-3-030-03343-9 ISBN 978-3-030-03344-6 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6

Library of Congress Control Number: 2018954546

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

Dedicated to Our Ancient Herbalists

"Medicine from Honey"—a 1224 Arabic translation of the manuscript De Materia Medica, written by the ancient Greek physician, Dioscorides (40–90 AD)

Foreword

Medicinal plants have been a rich source of medications since the very birth of man. Traditional Chinese medicine has been extensively documented for many thousands of years. The Chinese pharmacopoeia, *Shennong Ben Cao Jing*, records plant medicines such as ephedra and hemp. Egyptian medicine employing plant-based drugs dates back to 2900 BC, but preserved records in the form of *Ebers Papyrus* containing about 700 drugs mainly of plant origin go back to around 1550 BC. There is also evidence of the use of plants for healing purposes date back to 2600 BC in Mesopotamia indicating the existence of a plant-based system of treatment in which about 1000 plant-based medicines were used. Ancient Ayurvedic medicine, as documented in the *Atharva Veda*, the *Rig Veda*, and the *Sushruta Samhita*, employed hundreds of pharmacologically active herbs and spices. The medicinal applications of plants became known to the Western world through Greek and Roman practitioners, particularly through the treatises contributed by the Greek physician Dioscorides (1st century AD), and the Roman physicians Pliny the Elder (1st century AD) and Galen (2nd century AD). Later came the Islamic contributions to herbal medicine with the advent of physicians such as Abu Ali Ibn Sina (980–1037), better known in the West as Avicenna, whose book, *Al-Qanun fi al-Tibb*, was used

as a standard textbook of medicine in Europe for over 700 years. Abu Bakr Muhammad ibn Zakariya al-Razi (865–925 AD) wrote over 200 books and categorized substances as vegetable, animal, or mineral, whereas other earlier alchemists had divided them into "bodies," "souls," and "spirits." He was the first to use opium for anesthesia. Al-Idrisi, born in Cordova, during the Islamic era in Spain in 1099, wrote many books on medicinal plants including *Kitab al-Jami-li-Sifat Ashtat al-Nabatat.* Another major contribution from Spain came from Abu Muhammad Ibn al-Baitar (1197–1248), who composed the encyclopedia on medicinal plants entitled *Kitab al-Jami al-Adiwaya al-Mufrada* that presented the work of 150 authors. Abu-Rayhan Biruni, Ibn Zuhr, Peter of Spain, and John of St. Amand also contributed pharmacopoeias describing the use of medicinal plants. The most comprehensive encyclopedic set of volumes on medicinal plants in recent times has been the 57 volume series entitled *Studies in Natural Product Chemistry* (Elsevier Science, Ed. Atta-ur-Rahman) that describes thousands of bioactive constituents discovered from the most important medicinal plants.

It was at the beginning of the nineteenth century when rational drug discovery from plants commenced with the isolation of the analgesic and sleep-inducing agent morphine from opium by the German scientist Serturner in 1817. Other medicinal herbs were then examined for active principles leading to the isolation of a host of important compounds, including quinine, caffeine, nicotine, codeine, atropine, colchicine, cocaine, and capsaicin, from various plant sources. Following the discovery of penicillin in 1928, attention was also turned to the bioactive substances in microbes. The developments of synthetic drugs led to a certain decrease in interest in natural materials as sources of drugs because of the challenges associated with large-scale availability. However, a significant proportion of new drugs approved by FDA are still derived directly or indirectly from medicinal plants. For instance, out of the 1073 new chemical entities (belonging to the group of small molecules) approved between 1981 and 2010, only 36% were purely synthetic, while the remainder were either natural products or their analogues. Similarly during the period 1940–2014, out of the 175 small molecules approved against cancer, 85 were natural products or their derivatives. These include paclitaxel and its derivatives from yew (*Taxus*) species, vincristine and vinblastine from periwinkle (*Catharanthus roseus* (L.) G. Don), and camptothecin and its analogs initially discovered in the Chinese tree *Camptotheca acuminate* Decne. Other important natural products include the cholinesterase inhibitor galanthamine approved for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease from *Galanthus nivalis* L. and the important antimalarial agent artemisinin originally derived from the traditional Chinese herb *Artemisia annua* L. In spite of the advent of combinatorial chemistry, the actual number of new drugs reaching the market through purely synthetic efforts has diminished. This has resulted in the revival of interest in natural products and triggered the use of multidisciplinary approaches to drug discovery.

The present second volume of *Plants and Human Health*, edited by Khalid Rehman Hakeem and Munir Ozturk and entitled *Phytochemistry and Molecular Aspects*, presents a wealth of information on bioactive compounds isolated from various medicinal plants and their utility in tackling many diseases. The discussions

range from bioactive substances found in terrestrial medicinal plants and freshwater aquatic plants to edible materials and fungi with antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, antiseptic, antidiabetic, anticataleptic, antiarthritic, sedative, calming, antidiuretic, antimicrobial, antifungal, herbicidal, insecticidal, anticancer, and other activities in various classes of flavonoids, terpenoids, alkaloids, and other classes of natural products. The molecular technologies to identify the function of the genes and the effect of the bioactive compound(s) in medicinal plant(s) to treat patients with various chronic diseases are also presented. Transgenic plants produced through bioengineering represent another exciting area that is comprehensively reviewed.

I would like to congratulate the editors for accumulating such a wealth of useful information in this volume. My compliments also go to the eminent authors who produced an excellent overview of the present exciting frontiers of natural product chemistry.

Atta-ur-Rahman
International Centre for Chemical and Biological Sciences
University of Karachi
Karachi, Pakistan

Preface

According to Huxley (1881), it is easy to sneer at our ancestors, but it is much more profitable to try to discover why they, who were really not one with less sensible persons than our excellent selves, were led to entertain views which look to us strange. For a better look at our future, we need to understand and look deeply at our past. Ethnobotanist Mark Plotkin says that every time a medicine man dies, it is like a library burning down. We are running a race against time. The information held by our medicine men needs to be pooled up fast for further evaluation by researchers.

The answers to the health problems for humans living during 2000 BC were that for an ear ache eat this root, yet with time the notion changed, and in 1000 AD, the same root was regarded as heathen, and was replaced by prayers. Yet in 1850 AD, people started saying that prayer is superstitious and instead advised the drinking of portions. However, in 1940 AD, that portion was regarded as snake oil, and the trend shifted toward the swallowing of pills. Around 1985 AD, the pills were regarded as ineffective, and people were advised to take antibiotics; ultimately in 2000 AD, the antibiotics were accepted as artificial, and the advice was to eat this root. So *we* started with the root in 2000 BC and ended up with the same root in 2000 AD.

Early anthropological evidence for plant use as medicine is 60,000 years old, as is reported from the Neanderthal grave in Iraq. There are clay tablets in cuneiform dated 2600 BC with plant remedies from the Sumerians, Assyrians, and Akkadians as well as Hittites. The Sumero-Akkadian clay tablets show a collection of ≈40 plants with vegetal formula pharmacopoeia. The importance of plants as medicine is further supported from Asia (3500 BCE) and Egypt (1500 BCE). Egyptian medicines report on the use of bishop's weeds (*Ammi majus*) to treat vitiligo, a skin condition characterized by a loss of pigments. More recently, a drug (b-methoxypsoralen) has been produced from this plant to treat psoriasis and other skin disorders as well as T-cell lymphoma.

Our second volume deals with phytochemistry and molecular aspects. It describes several secondary metabolic compounds found in plants, many of which provide protection against diseases. High-throughput robotic screens have been developed by industry, and it is possible to carry out 50,000 tests per day in the search for compounds which have action against a key enzyme or a subset of receptors.

Medicinal plant drug discovery continues to provide new and important leads against various pharmacological targets including cancer, HIV/AIDS, Alzheimer's, malaria, and pain. Numerous compounds from tropical rainforest plant species with potential anticancer activity have been identified. Although drug discovery from medicinal plants continues to provide an important source of new drug leads, numerous challenges are encountered including the procurement of plant materials, the selection and implementation of appropriate high-throughput screening bioassays, and the scale-up of active compounds.

Izmir, Turkey; Amann, Jordan — Munir Ozturk
Jeddah, Saudi Arabia — Khalid Rehman Hakeem

Contents

Contributors

Muhammad Aasim Department of Biotechnology, Faculty of Science, Necmettin Erbakan University, Konya, Turkey

Siti Nor Akmar Abdullah Institute of Plantation Studies, Universiti Putra Malaysia, Serdang, Selangor, Malaysia

Shahid Adeel Department of Chemistry, Govt. College University, Faisalabad, Pakistan

Bilal Ahmad Faculty of Life Sciences, Department of Botany, Aligarh Muslim University, Aligarh, India

Md Faruque Ahmad Department of Clinical Nutrition, College of Applied Medical Sciences, Jazan University, Jazan, Kingdom of Saudi Arabia

Shaik Noor Ahmad Department of Genetic Medicine, King Abdulaziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia

Seyid Iftehar Ahmed Department of Urology, Gazi Mustafa Kemal State Hospital, Ministry of Health, Ankara, Turkey

Saeed Akhtar Institute of Food Science and Nutrition, Bahauddin Zakariya University, Multan, Pakistan

Hesham F. Alharby Faculty of Science, Department of Biological Sciences, King Abdulaziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia

Ahmad Ali Department of Life Sciences, University of Mumbai, Mumbai, Maharashtra, India

Rayeesa Ali Faculty of Veterinary Sciences and Animal Husbandry, Division of Veterinary Pathology, Sheri Kashmir University of Agricultural Science and Technology (SKUAST-K), Srinagar, Jammu and Kashmir, India

R. Ali Institute of Basic Medical Sciences, Khyber Medical University, Peshawar, Pakistan

Jameel R. Al-Obaidi Agro-Biotechnology Malaysia (ABI), C/O MARDI Headquarters, Serdang, Selangor, Malaysia

Insha Amin Molecular Biology Lab, Faculty of Veterinary Sciences and Animal Husbandry, Division of Veterinary Biochemistry, Sheri Kashmir University of Agricultural Science and Technology (SKUAST-K), Srinagar, Jammu and Kashmir, India

Mamoona Amir Institute of Food Science and Nutrition, Faculty of Agricultural Sciences and Technology, Bahauddin Zakariya University, Multan, Pakistan

Dorothy D. Anita Department of Zoology, St. Aloysius College, Mangalore, Karnataka, India

Khalid Anwar School of Life Sciences, Jawaharlal Nehru University, New Delhi, India

Yasir Anwar Faculty of Science, Department of Biological Sciences, King Abdulaziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia

Ananthapadmanabha B. Arun Yenepoya Research Centre, Yenepoya University, Mangalore, Karnataka, India

Behnaz Aslanipour Faculty of Engineering, Department of Bioengineering, Ege University, Bornova, Izmir, Turkey

H. Aziz Atta-ur-Rahman School of Applied Biosciences (ASAB), National University of Sciences and Technology (NUST), Islamabad, Pakistan

Allah Bakhsh Faculty of Agricultural Sciences and Technologies, Department of Agricultural Genetic Engineering, Nigde University, Nigde, Turkey

Faheem Shahzad Bloch Faculty of Agricultural and Natural Science, Department of Field Crops, Abant Izzet Baysal University, Bolu, Turkey

Erdal Bedir Faculty of Engineering, Department of Bioengineering, Izmir Institute of Technology, Urla, Izmir, Turkey

Hasene Keskin Çavdar Faculty of Engineering, Department of Food Engineering, The University of Gaziantep, Gaziantep, Turkey

Girish Chandran Department of Studies in Biochemistry, Pooja Bhagavat Memorial Mahajana Education Centre, Post Graduate Wing of SBRR Mahajana First Grade College, Mysuru, Karnataka, India

Jyoti Bala Chauhan DOS in Biotechnology, Microbiology and Biochemistry, Pooja Bhagavat Memorial Mahajana Education Centre, Post Graduate Wing of SBRR Mahajana First Grade College, Mysuru, Karnataka, India

N. Ehsan Atta-ur-Rahman School of Applied Biosciences (ASAB), National University of Sciences and Technology (NUST), Islamabad, Pakistan

M. I. Fareed Atta-ur-Rahman School of Applied Biosciences (ASAB), National University of Sciences and Technology (NUST), Islamabad, Pakistan

Lynnette R. Ferguson Discipline of Nutrition and Dietetics, FM & HS, University of Auckland, Auckland, New Zealand

Auckland Cancer Society Research Centre, Auckland, New Zealand

I. Ghaffar University College of Pharmacy (UCP), University of the Punjab, Lahore, Pakistan

Yun Yun Gong School of Food Science and Nutrition, University of Leeds, Leeds, UK

A. Gul Atta-ur-Rahman School of Applied Biosciences (ASAB), National University of Sciences and Technology (NUST), Islamabad, Pakistan

Derya Gülcemal Faculty of Science, Department of Chemistry, Ege University, Bornova, Izmir, Turkey

Abdulrahaman S. Hajar Faculty of Science, Department of Biological Sciences, King Abdulaziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia

Khalid Rehman Hakeem Faculty of Science, Department of Biological Sciences, King Abdulaziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia

Md. Mahadi Hasan Faculty of Science, Department of Biological Sciences, King Abdulaziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia

Mirza Hasanuzzaman Faculty of Agriculture, Department of Agronomy, Sher-e-Bangla Agricultural University, Dhaka, Bangladesh

Shahid Hussain Department of Soil Science, Faculty of Agricultural Sciences and Technology, Bahauddin Zakariya University, Multan, Pakistan

Amir Ismail Institute of Food Science and Nutrition, Bahauddin Zakariya University, Multan, Pakistan

Anower Jabed Department of Molecular Medicine and Pathology, FM & HS, University of Auckland, Auckland, New Zealand

Hassan Jaleel Faculty of Life Sciences, Department of Botany, Aligarh Muslim University, Aligarh, India

Aruna G. Joshi Faculty of Science, Department of Botany, The Maharaja Sayajirao University of Baroda, Gujarat, India

Prasanna Kallingappa Department of Molecular Medicine and Pathology, FM & HS, University of Auckland, Auckland, New Zealand

Vernon Jenson Unit, FM & HS, University of Auckland, Auckland, New Zealand

Chi Hsiu-Juei Kao Discipline of Nutrition and Dietetics, FM & HS, University of Auckland, Auckland, New Zealand

Auckland Cancer Society Research Centre, Auckland, New Zealand

Mehmet Karataş Faculty of Science, Department of Biotechnology, Necmettin Erbakan University, Konya, Turkey

Nishi Karunasinghe Auckland Cancer Society Research Centre, Auckland, New Zealand

S. Khalid Atta-ur-Rahman School of Applied Biosciences (ASAB), National University of Sciences and Technology (NUST), Islamabad, Pakistan

M. Masroor A. Khan Faculty of Life Sciences, Department of Botany, Aligarh Muslim University, Aligarh, India

Sana Khatri Department of Life Sciences, University of Mumbai, Mumbai, Maharashtra, India

Khalid Mahmood Khawar Faculty of Agriculture, Department of Field Crops, Ankara University, Ankara, Turkey

S. Khushbu Indian Institute of Food Processing Technology, Thanjavur, TN, India

Nita Lakra School of Life Sciences, Jawaharlal Nehru University, New Delhi, India

Saquib Mahmood School of Life Sciences, Jawaharlal Nehru University, New Delhi, India

Gareth Marlow Experimental Cancer Medicine Centre, Cardiff University, Cardiff, UK

Avinash Marwal Department of Biotechnology, Mohanlal Sukhadia University, Udaipur, Rajasthan, India

Bilal Ahmad Mir Molecular Biology Lab, Faculty of Veterinary Sciences and Animal Husbandry, Division of Veterinary Biochemistry, Sheri Kashmir University of Agricultural Science and Technology (SKUAST-K), Srinagar, Jammu and Kashmir, India

Muneeb U. Rehman Molecular Biology Lab, Faculty of Veterinary Sciences & Animal Husbandry, Division of Veterinary Biochemistry, Sheri Kashmir University of Agricultural Science & Technology (SKUAST-K), Srinagar, Jammu and Kashmir, India

Ali A. Moosavi-Movahedi Institute of Biochemistry and Biophysics, University of Tehran, Tehran, Iran

Umaiyal Munusamy Institute of Plantation Studies, Universiti Putra Malaysia, UPM, Serdang, Selangor, Malaysia

Centre for Research in Biotechnology for Agriculture (CEBAR), Level 3, Research Management & Innovation Complex, University of Malaya, Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia

Vijay Naidu School of Engineering, Computer and Mathematical Sciences, Auckland University of Technology, Auckland, New Zealand

Radha Pallati Discipline of Nutrition and Dietetics, FM & HS, University of Auckland, Auckland, New Zealand

Additiya Paramanya Department of Life Sciences, University of Mumbai, Mumbai, Maharashtra, India

Ashutosh R. Pathak Faculty of Science, Department of Botany, The Maharaja Sayajirao University of Baroda, Gujarat, India

Muhammad Qaswar Department of Soil Science, Faculty of Agricultural Sciences and Technology, Bahauddin Zakariya University, Multan, Pakistan

Sana Rafi Department of Applied Chemistry, Govt. College University, Faisalabad, Pakistan

H. Rashid Atta-ur-Rahman School of Applied Biosciences (ASAB), National University of Sciences and Technology (NUST), Islamabad, Pakistan

M. I. Rashid Atta-ur-Rahman School of Applied Biosciences (ASAB), National University of Sciences and Technology (NUST), Islamabad, Pakistan

Saiema Rasool Forest Biotech Lab, Faculty of Forestry, Department of Forest Management, University Putra Malaysia, Serdang, Serdang, Selangor, Malaysia

Ashish Rawson Indian Institute of Food Processing Technology, Thanjavur, TN, India

Fazal-ur Rehman Department of Applied Chemistry, Govt. College University, Faisalabad, Pakistan

Muneeb U. Rehman Molecular Biology Lab, Faculty of Veterinary Sciences and Animal Husbandry, Division of Veterinary Biochemistry, Sheri Kashmir University of Agricultural Science and Technology (SKUAST-K), Srinagar, Jammu and Kashmir, India

Zed Rengel UWA School of Agriculture and Environment, The University of Western Australia, Perth, WA, Australia

Muhammad Riaz Institute of Food Science and Nutrition, Bahauddin Zakariya University, Multan, Pakistan

Yawar Sadiq Faculty of Life Sciences, Department of Botany, Aligarh Muslim University, Aligarh, India

S. Santhi Indian Institute of Food Processing Technology, Thanjavur, TN, India

Asfia Shabbir Faculty of Life Sciences, Department of Botany, Aligarh Muslim University, Aligarh, India

B. Shankar Naik Department of P.G. Studies and Research in Applied Botany, Bio-Science Complex, Kuvempu University, Shimoga, Karnataka, India

Department of Biology, Govt Science College, Chikmagalur, Karnataka, India

Iffat-Ara Sharmeen Department of Biochemistry, School of Life Sciences, Independent University, Dhaka, Bangladesh

Suvarna J. Shreelalitha Department of Biotechnology, St. Aloysius College, Mangalore, Karnataka, India

S. R. Smitha Grace Department of Studies in Biotechnology, Pooja Bhagavat Memorial Mahajana Education Centre, Post Graduate Wing of SBRR Mahajana First Grade College, Mysuru, Karnataka, India

Kandikere R. Sridhar Department of Biosciences, Mangalore University, Mangalore, Karnataka, India

N. M. Sudheep Department of Plant Science, School of Biological Sciences, RST Campus, Central University of Kerala, Kerala, India

Jin Sun School of Food Science and Technology, Jiangnan University, Wuxi Shi, China

C. K. Sunil Indian Institute of Food Processing Technology, Thanjavur, TN, India

Prabhavathi Supriya Department of Biosciences, Mangalore University, Mangalore, Karnataka, India

K. Sureshkumar Indian Institute of Food Processing Technology, Thanjavur, TN, India

F. Taghavi Institute of Biochemistry and Biophysics, University of Tehran, Tehran, Iran

Faculty of Biological Science, Tarbiat Modares University, Tehran, Iran

Khanh Tran Department of Molecular Medicine and Pathology, FM & HS, University of Auckland, Auckland, New Zealand

Moin Uddin Botany Section, Women's College, Aligarh Muslim University, Aligarh, India

Syeda Azeem Unnisa Department of Environmental Science, UCS, Osmania University, Hyderabad, Telangana, India

Venkatesh Vaidyanathan Discipline of Nutrition and Dietetics, FM & HS, University of Auckland, Auckland, New Zealand

Auckland Cancer Society Research Centre, Auckland, New Zealand

S. Venu Indian Institute of Food Processing Technology, Thanjavur, TN, India

Alice Wang Discipline of Nutrition and Dietetics, FM & HS, University of Auckland, Auckland, New Zealand

Auckland Cancer Society Research Centre, Auckland, New Zealand

Muhammad Zafar-ul-Hye Department of Soil Science, Faculty of Agricultural Sciences and Technology, Bahauddin Zakariya University, Multan, Pakistan

Khalid Mahmood Zia Department of Applied Chemistry, Govt. College University, Faisalabad, Pakistan

Muhammad Zuber Department of Applied Chemistry, Govt. College University, Faisalabad, Pakistan

About the Editors

Munir Ozturk PhD, DSc has served at the Ege University, Izmir, Turkey, for 50 years in different positions. He is currently "Vice President of the Islamic World Academy of Sciences." He has received fellowships from the Alexander von Humboldt Foundation, Japanese Society for Promotion of Science, and the National Science Foundation of the USA. Dr. Ozturk has served as chairman of the Botany Department and founding director of the Centre for Environmental Studies, Ege University, Izmir, Turkey; a consultant fellow, Faculty of Forestry, Universiti Putra Malaysia, Malaysia; and distinguished visiting scientist, ICCBS, Karachi University, Pakistan. His fields of scientific interest are plant ecophysiology, medicinal and aromatic plants, conservation of plant diversity, biosaline agriculture and crops, pollution, and biomonitoring. He has published 42 books, 68 book chapters, and 190 papers in international and national journals.

Khalid Rehman Hakeem PhD is an associate professor at King Abdulaziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia. He completed his PhD (botany) from Jamia Hamdard, New Delhi, India, in 2011. Dr. Hakeem has worked as a postdoctorate fellow in 2012 and fellow researcher (associate professor) from 2013 to 2016 at Universiti Putra Malaysia, Selangor, Malaysia. His speciality is plant ecophysiology, biotechnology and molecular biology, plant-microbe-soil interactions, and environmental sciences. Thus far, he has edited

and authored more than 25 books with Springer International, Academic Press (Elsevier), etc. He has also to his credit more than 110 research publications in peer-reviewed international journals, including 40 book chapters in edited volumes with international publishers.

Free Radicals, Diabetes, and Its Complexities

F. Taghavi and Ali A. Moosavi-Movahedi

Introduction

Homeostasis

Life in every organism relies on keeping a stable set of interacting chemical reactions and internal processes to preserve the condition of reactions correctly (Torday 2015). It means that organism maintenance is provided by cell cooperative activities which need similarity in developed organization and metabolic requirements. This matter creates a stable and vital internal environment from point of oxygen, glucose, mineral ions, and waste contents (Marieb and Hoehn 2007).

The condition which relies on the stability, balance, or equilibrium of internal environment within a cell or total body is considered as homeostasis (homeo as similar and stasis as stable) (Yadav et al. 2016; Rodova et al. 2016; Andrey and Vladimir 2016).

Homeostasis is the most important concept in the body and has been defined through some developed approach: Claude Bernard, a French scientist, stated the concept of homeostasis beautifully as "all the vital process follow one aim as keeping the constant conditions of life in the internal environment" (Goldberger and Breznitz 1993). Another physiologist Walter Cannon, author of *The Wisdom of the Body* (1932), documented this concept as a self-regulating mechanism with admirable autonomic stabilizers which nature uses in imbalanced conditions (Vander et al. 2001; Siegel 2008). Another physiologist Moore-Ede (1986) stated that

F. Taghavi
Institute of Biochemistry and Biophysics, University of Tehran, Tehran, Iran

Faculty of Biological Science, Tarbiat Modares University, Tehran, Iran
e-mail: taghavif@ut.ac.ir

A. A. Moosavi-Movahedi (✉)
Institute of Biochemistry and Biophysics, University of Tehran, Tehran, Iran
e-mail: moosavi@ut.ac.ir

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_1

homeostasis includes reactive and effective responses to spontaneity and timed challenges (Siegel 2008; Moore-Ede 1986).

Homeostatic processes or allostasis (process of achieving stability) is observed in all order of cells, tissues, and organs (Torday and Rehan 2009). This process acts as a resistance to fluctuations of organism's internal environment against external environmental conditions (Torday and Rehan 2009). Osmoregulation, thermoregulation, and chemical regulation are considered as three mechanisms for homeostasis process (Chowański et al. 2017).

All homeostatic control mechanisms act based on three basis which have tightly interdependent relationship: (a) The monitoring receptors for sensing components, which detect the changes in the condition to be regulated and respond to environmental alterations; (b) the nucleus which receives the stimuli from receptors, which adjusts the scope of the changes and appropriate response; and (c) the effectors (cells, tissues, organs, or other structures), which receive the signal from the nucleus and apply homeostasis. These levels lead to correct deviation by negative feedback (depressing or damping action) (Torday and Rehan 2009).

Deficiency in each of homeostatic mechanism or toxicity (cell poisoning) influenced by internal and external factors (life style (nutrition, toxins, psychological or physical events) and environmental exposure) causes homeostatic imbalance, cellular malfunction, and disease. Many metabolism disorders and diseases like diabetes and its complexities are caused by homeostatic imbalance and its consequent internal toxin formation. These phenomena can be repaired by medical treatments (Marieb and Hoehn 2007; Vander et al. 2001; Torday and Rehan 2009).

Redox regulation is an important kind of homeostatic mechanism, which balances the beneficial and harmful effects of reactive species. This process maintains redox homeostasis by controlling the redox status in vivo (Fig. 1), and by this way, living

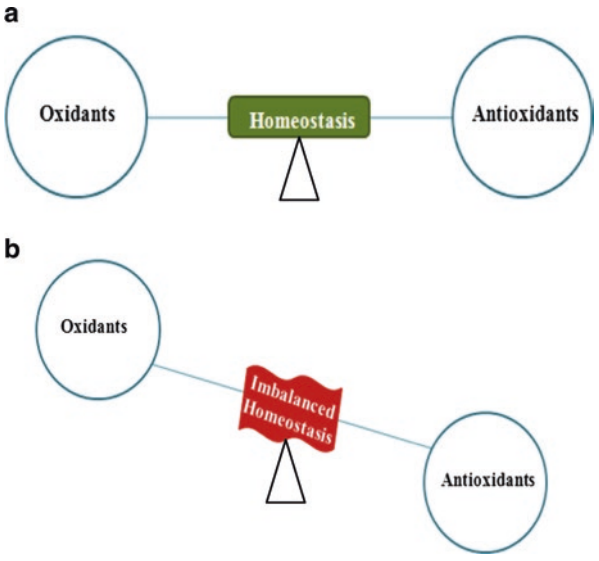


Fig. 1 The homeostasis create the balance between oxidants and antioxidants (**a**), extra formation of oxidants compared with antioxidants lead to imbalanced homeostasis (**b**)

organisms were protected against oxidative stresses. Cellular oxidants and antioxidants have an important role in the maintenance of "redox homeostasis" and redox regulation which is involved in normal physiological functions and pathogenesis of various diseases like neurodegenerative disorders, cancer, diabetes mellitus, inflammatory diseases, and aging (Valko et al. 2007).

It is worth mentioning that cell redox state is limited within a narrow range under normal conditions. This situation is controlled by redox signaling as an adoptive process, which triggers protective responses against oxidative stress. By this way, the original state of "redox homeostasis" after temporary exposure to ROS/RNS is restored (Valko et al. 2007).

Oxidative Stress

Over 90% of oxygen consumed by living organisms in healthy situation is used in mitochondrial electron transport chain which is coupled with nutrient oxidation and results in production of energy, carbon dioxide, and water (Abele et al. 2011).

Reactive Species

The energy which conducts life is released energy during landing of high-energy transmitted electron to low-energy level orbital or outer shell. Indeed, the electron storing and extracting and movement ability of higher-order biological structures form the essential forces for keeping life systems (Singh 2006; Szent-Györgyi 1976). These processes lead to reactive species formation. Interestingly life is the result of reactive species interaction because these species have been selected for some important roles as in evolution, metabolism, aging, and cell events (like apoptosis, mutation, and death). In other words, despite free radicals' destructive nature, surprisingly life with its unique organization can be sustained by these elements and a group of chemical interactions (Rahbar and Figarola 2003). Reactive species are intrinsically unstable and have various degrees of activities (Kikuchi et al. 2003; Betteridge 2000).

Free Radicals

Molecules with arranged pairs of electrons and opposite spin in their outer orbitals are very stable, while any species (atom and molecules) with independent existence and unpaired electrons in their outer orbitals/valence shell become highly reactive and unstable. These compounds are eager to interact with neighboring molecules and repair their outer shell and stability. These kinds of molecules are called free radicals (Singh 2006; Kelly 2003; Rahman 2007).

It is worth mentioning that free radicals with an odd electron usually are formed by splitting weak bonds in a molecule (each fragment keeps one electron) (Kelly 2003) and radical cleavage to form another radical or redox reactions (Ray et al. 2012). These kinds of reactive species attempt to gain their stability by capturing an electron, which leads to starting chain reaction in nanoseconds. This electron stealing makes molecule oxidation and runs a cascade reaction in uncontrolled condition, which leads to living cell disruption and inactivation (Pham-Huy et al. 2008). These compounds generally have been divided into two categories (Singh 2006; Phaniendra et al. 2015): (a) free radicals, species or molecules with an independent existence and one or more unpaired electrons, and (b) non-radicals, the compounds with strong oxidizing potential, which produce strong oxidants, like transition metals.

Reactive species have different longevity (from nanoseconds like hydroxyl radical to minutes as hydrogen peroxide or organic hydrogen peroxides).

It is worth mentioning that long-lived radicals include (1) stable radicals with kinetic and thermodynamic stability (organic radicals); (2) persistent radicals, compounds with persistent radicals which make them physically difficult to react with another molecule; and (3) diradicals, molecules with two radical centers (Pham-Huy et al. 2008). In addition, reactive species can be classified into the following groups:

(a) Reactive oxygen species (ROS): Molecular oxygen (dioxygen) with a unique electronic configuration is a radical. In living systems oxygen-derived radicals are the most important class of radical species.
(b) Superoxide anion radicals: The superoxide anion radicals ($O_2^{\bullet -}$) as "primary" ROS are created by adding one electron to molecular oxygen via metabolic processes (within the cell mitochondria) or physical irradiation. This product can interact with other molecules and produce "secondary" ROS, directly or indirectly by enzyme- or metal-catalyzed processes. The main source of ATP in the mammalian cell is mitochondrial electron transport chain, which is essential for life. During this process, superoxide as an intermediate reactive species is formed and involved in pathophysiology of a variety of diseases.
(c) The hydroxyl radical, $^{\bullet}OH$: The neutral form of hydroxide ion, with high reactivity and very short in vivo half-life (10^{-9} s) at 37 °C, is very dangerous. This kind of radical can react with neighboring molecules (especially nuclear and mitochondrial DNA, membrane lipids, and carbohydrates) very fast, immediately after formation. Its interaction with lipid membrane can trigger a chain reaction and propagates lipid peroxidation. An extra amount of superoxide lead to free ion release from molecules with iron contents (Valko et al. 2007; Gadoth and Göbel 2011; Aprioku 2013).
(d) Peroxyl radicals ($ROO^{\bullet}$): These radicals are another reactive radicals derived from oxygen which usually form in living systems by cellular membrane lipid breaking down. These radicals can be self-propagating, very dangerous, and highly destructive. It is worth mentioning that superoxide anions, hydroxyl radical, singlet oxygen, and peroxynitrite can trigger lipid oxidative decomposition and produce lipid peroxyl radicals and hydroperoxides. These radicals can attack polyunsaturated fatty acids and propagate the chain reaction

(Lushchak and Semchyshyn 2012). Also, the protonated form of superoxide ($O_2^{\bullet -}$) creates the simplest form of peroxyl radical ($HOO^{\bullet}$) termed as either hydroperoxyl radical or perhydroxyl radical (Valko et al. 2007).

(e) Singlet oxygen: Under photooxidative conditions and the presence of photoexcited sensitizers, energy transfer to O_2 and singlet oxygen ($1O_2$) is performed. It is highly reactive and can trigger lipid peroxidation. It has no diradical activity like molecular oxygen (Gadoth and Göbel 2011).

(f) Peroxide: High concentration of hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) is toxic within cells. It can diffuse through cellular membranes and interact with distant molecules. Hydroxyl radicals can be formed from hydrogen peroxide in the presence of iron and copper (Gadoth and Göbel 2011).

(g) Reactive nitrogen species (RNS): Nitric oxide ($NO^{\bullet}$) acts as a double-edged sword (Gadoth and Göbel 2011; Aprioku 2013). $NO^{\bullet}$ is an abundant reactive radical and has an important role in biological signaling especially in diverse physiological processes, like neurotransmission, blood pressure, immunoregulation, defense mechanisms, and smooth muscle relaxation. It is a small molecule which is formed in biological tissues by specific nitric oxide synthases (NOSs). This kind of radicals has a short half-life (few seconds) in aqueous system. The presence of extra reactive nitrogen species create nitrosative stress which can nitrosylate biomacromolecule structures and disturb their function. The reaction of nitric oxide and superoxide anion during the immune system activities leads to the formation of very potent oxidative radicals as peroxynitrite anion ($ONOO^-$). This radical can attack DNA and cause its fragmentation; also it can produce lipid oxidation (Valko et al. 2007). The peroxynitrite anion has the same reactivity of $^{\bullet}OH$ and can directly hydroxylate and nitrate the aromatic rings of amino acid residues. Its reaction with sulfhydryls, zinc-thiolate moieties, lipids, and proteins makes it a very toxic radical (Gadoth and Göbel 2011).

The Role of ROS

As mentioned before, however, ROS can be considered as essential intermediates in natural and normal biological processes, but they can produce homeostatic imbalance and pathogenic events (Pham-Huy et al. 2008; Gadoth and Göbel 2011).

Signaling, defense against infections, modification of molecules, neurotransmission, and damage of impaired cellular constituents are some of the various processes which can be impaired by ROS. ROS radicals do their roles via interaction with biomacromolecules based on ROS type and their concentrations. Intra- and intercellular communication (cellular signaling, cellular proliferation, cellular pathway) (Gadoth and Göbel 2011) with ROS takes place at low ROS concentration in specific pathway, but higher levels of ROS are involved in cellular component-specific damages (Lushchak and Semchyshyn 2012).

DNA and protein can be considered as primary targets for the destructive effects of ROS (Kelly 2003). It is noteworthy that the aggressive nature of free radicals and

other non-radicals' reactive derivatives caused them to be considered as oxidants. Non-radical species are more stable than radicals, but radicals are more active than non-radicals. Also, hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2), ozone (O_3), singlet oxygen ($1O_2$), hypochlorous acid (HOCl), nitrous acid (HNO_2), peroxynitrite ($ONOO^-$), dinitrogen trioxide (N2 O_3), and lipid peroxide (LOOH), as non-free radicals, can easily lead to free radical (hydroxyl ($OH^\bullet$), superoxide ($O_2^{\bullet-}$), nitric oxide ($NO^\bullet$), nitrogen dioxide ($NO_2^\bullet$), peroxyl ($ROO^\bullet$), and lipid peroxyl ($LOO^\bullet$)) reactions in living organisms (Ray et al. 2012; Brennan and Kantorow 2009).

As mentioned before, the reactivity of reactive species is very different, and some of them are more specific and harmful for biological molecules than the others. The most important oxygen free radicals in biological context are superoxide, hydroxyl radical, and nitric oxide (Finkel and Holbrook 2000) which are very unstable and trigger cascade oxidative reaction. Hydrogen peroxide, hypochlorous acid, and singlet oxygen are the most common non-radicals with higher stability and risks for biomolecules (Surai 2002).

ROS Involve in Lipid Peroxidation

Lipid is an important cellular biomacromolecule which can be the prominent target of oxidative stress. Oxidants (reactive species and free radicals) have the main role in lipid peroxidation and increase ROS steady-state concentrations especially as peroxides. This phenomenon modified other biomacromolecules. The products of lipid peroxidation can be categorized based on their instability as primary (with short half-life and free radical nature), secondary (lipid peroxides, conjugated dienes, and ketodienes), and end products (malondialdehyde). Both of the last products have more stability than the first (Lushchak 2011).

The Source of Reactive Species

The reactive species generally include reactive oxygen species (ROS) and reactive nitrogen species (RNS) and are the advantages of cellular redox process. Because of their high biological instability and their electron availability, they can react with various organic substrates such as lipids, proteins, and DNA. In the cells, free radicals and its derivative formation occur in two ways: enzymatic (respiratory and energy chain, the phagocytosis, the prostaglandin synthesis, and the cytochrome P450 system) and nonenzymatic reactions (with organic compounds and ionizing radiations) (Ray et al. 2012).

It is important to note that ROS and RNS just at low or moderate levels show beneficial effects on cellular activities. While the consequence of high concentrations is oxidative stress, deleterious process and biomacromolecule structural damage lead to chronic and degenerative diseases like cancer, aging, and autoimmune disorders.

Also reactive species generation depends on endogenous or exogenous sources. Immune cell activation, inflammation, psychological and mental stress, excessive exercise, ischemia, infection, cancer, aging, cellular abnormalities, malnutrition, and various diseases generate endogenous reactive species. The endogenous ROS are the greatest threat to organisms (Kikuchi et al. 2003; Betteridge 2000).

Exogenous sources arise from air and water pollution (asbestos; benzene; carbon monoxide; chlorine; formaldehyde; MTBE; ozone; tobacco smoke; toluene; chemical solvents such as cleaning products, glue, paints, and paint thinners; prescribed medications; perfumes; pesticides; cigarette smoke; alcohol; heavy or transition metals (Cd, Hg, Pb, Fe, As)), certain drugs (cyclosporine, tacrolimus, gentamicin, bleomycin), industrial solvents, cooking (smoked meat, used oil, fat), and radiation (Ray et al. 2012). These exogenous compounds penetrate into the body by different routes and decompose or metabolize into free radicals (Kelly 2003; Ray et al. 2012). Some of the exogenous sources for reactive species formation will be described in the next sections.

Oxidative stress is defined in many ways and improved during the years (Lushchak and Semchyshyn 2012). Oxidative stress is the acute state of imbalance between generation of active intermediates and the system's ability to neutralize and eliminate them (Rahman et al. 2012).Oxidative stress happens by passing favoring prooxidants and/or disfavoring antioxidants from normal situation and alters the redox condition of internal environment and damaging of macromolecules (Singh 2006). This phenomenon is a condition in which the balance between oxidative activities and antioxidant systems is disrupted and generation of active oxygen species or free radicals becomes excessive, in an unsuitable way (Rahman 2007). Oxidative stress is the harmful condition for the body when oxidative reaction (ROS/RNS production) overcomes antioxidant defense system and body's internal balance is lost (Rahman 2007; Lushchak and Semchyshyn 2012). Indeed, oxidative stress is a disturbed dynamic equilibrium which led to an enhancement in ROS steady-state transiently or chronically. This situation disrupts cellular components, metabolism, regulation, and signaling processes by oxidized cellular constituents via ROS up to the consequent deleterious effects (Lushchak and Semchyshyn 2012; Lushchak 2011). It is noteworthy that three ways provided oxidative stress: ROS production increment, ROS elimination decrement, and appropriate combination of these two ways. All of these processes directly lead to diseases (Lushchak and Semchyshyn 2012).

Oxidative stress can be considered as a biological modulator and signal inducer which modulate many messengers with vital role in living systems. Oxidative signaling functions are important as adaptive strategies and coordinating effect in diverse basic biological processes like differentiation and apoptosis. This phenomenon influences intracellular redox status, protein kinases activities, and cellular responses (like activation, proliferation, differentiation, and other activities) which is considered as a chain between OS and diseases (Rahman 2007; Lushchak and Semchyshyn 2012).

Oxidative Stress-Inducing Agents

Air Pollution

Environmental pollution is a major concern of scientists and contributes to many diseases and death. The harmful or undesirable alteration in the quality of air, water, or soil, physically, chemically, or biologically, is considered as environmental pollution. This approach includes all anthropogenic and natural pollutants and direct or indirect human involvement in environmental pollution (Yanga and Omayeb 2009).

A range of pollutants with different combinations from one microenvironment to another are in the ambient air. The big portion of this mixture belongs to free radicals (like nitrogen dioxide) or compound with the ability of free radical production (like particulate matter and ozone). Exposure to a wide range of air pollutants leads to oxidative stress and disease formation in human organs especially the lungs. Ozone as a relatively insoluble gas with high reactivity is a major constituent of photochemical smog which leads to lung function decrement and pulmonary inflammation. Its reaction with biological environment is based on its concentration and the type of biological molecules which takes part in the reaction (Kelly 2003).

Traffic in urban areas and cigarette smoke are the main sources of nitrogen dioxide. This compound produces cellular destruction, increment cell permeability, and increment tissue inflammation (Kelly 2003).

Our researches also showed that methyl *tert*-butyl ether (MTBE) can be very harmful for human beings. MTBE is a worldwide gasoline modifier which improves fuel oxygen contents and its combustion. It is a toxic component which produces adverse biological effect for human health and diverse environmental concerns (Valipour et al. 2015). MTBE's biodegradation is slow in groundwater spreads in the air widely, pollutes the environment, and enters the blood stream easily. Our previous research revealed that MTBE as a gasoline modifier had an influence on the structure and function of hemoglobin (Hb). This compound can disturb Hb-oxygen affinity, its oxygen transport, and cause metHb formation more than normal condition. The high levels of ROS production were demonstrated due to degradation of hemoglobin's heme by MTBE via chemiluminescence technique. It seems that ROS production has the main role in heme degradation and Hb nonfunctionality (Valipour et al. 2017).

Our results also showed that MTBE induced a molten globule (MG)-like structure in insulin due to reactive oxygen species (ROS) formation which leads to protein oxidation and protein aggregation (Valipour et al. 2015).

Dust

Environmental dusts contain toxic particulates and oxidants which stimulate inappropriate chemical reactions and produce the large amounts of free radicals. This character depends on their micromorphology at the atomic level; mechanical, thermal, and chemical properties; as well as frequency of surface contaminants' presence

(Fubini 1998). Dusts have harmful potential effects on biological membrane integrity because of the generation of free radical on the dust surface, their interaction with many chemical sites on the cell membrane, and stimulating lipid peroxidation (Vallyathan et al. 1988).

It is worth mentioning that the bulk of dust can be chemically intact in biological systems after many years (Dalal et al. 1989).

According to research, coal dust contains carbon-centered free radicals, and its concentration on the dust surface depends on the rank of coal, dust freshness, and its particle size (Dalal et al. 1989). Also it has been reported that all coal dusts generate OH radicals and had lipid peroxidation abilities. This kind of dust has an important role in the development of coal workers' pneumoconiosis (CWP) in different coal mining areas. OH radicals may play an important role in the development of CWP in different coal mining areas (Vallyathan et al. 1988).

The toxic particulates (asbestos, crystalline silica, coal, etc.), chemicals, gases, fume, and man-made dust can be present in the air through industrial operation, automobile emission, and traffic congestion. These conditions lead to chronic or oxidative injury in different organs specially the lung and other chronic and serious diseases. Inhalation of polluted ambient air includes different particulates; chemical and physical agents are the main reason for toxic entrance to the body and occupational or environmental disease formation (Dalal et al. 1989).

Dust also includes particulate matter. Particulate matter is the suspended material and heterogeneous mixture with varying size and chemical composition as minute solid particles or liquid droplets in the air which originate from both human and natural activities. These components comprise aerosols, smoke, metallic, dust, pollen, and oxides (Araújo et al. 2014; Du et al. 2016).

Particulate matter (PM) consists of inert carbonaceous cores and adsorbed multiple layers of various molecules (organic pollutants, metals, acid salts, biological elements, pollen fragments, allergens, endotoxins) (Araújo et al. 2014). PM is observed as the total suspended particulates (TSP) with sizes up to about 50 μm. The biggest size in this group cannot enter the human lungs and originates from wind-blown dust and soiling of buildings and clothes. This group in terms of their potential influence on health and their diameters is divided into three subgroups (Araújo et al. 2014; Du et al. 2016): PM10, PM2.5, and ultrafine particles (UFPs) subgroups according to their diameter (Du et al. 2016). The PM10 particles (coarse particles with the aerodynamic diameter (AD) from 2.5 to 10 μm) related to natural activity (wildfires and windblown dust) and human activities (mining operations, demolition and construction activities, agricultural and road dust, tire wear emission (Du et al. 2016).

The source of PM with size less than 2.5 μm is related to traffic and industries, fuel combustion or mobile brake emissions, power plants, industrial processes, residential wood burning motor vehicles, forest fires, and agricultural burning (Araújo et al. 2014).

These particulate matters have the main role in death due to the adverse cardiovascular effects of air pollution on human health (Du et al. 2016). Particles with diameters less than 0.1 μm called UFPs originate from tail pipe emissions from mobile sources. There are different deposit location for these particulate matters: PM10 particles (upper airways), both PM2.5 and UFP particles (reach the smallest

airways and alveoli), but UFPs can be very toxic and penetrate and spread deeper into the systemic circulation and remote organs (Siegel 2008).

Atmospheric aerosol particles can be emitted as primary particles (directly emitted into the atmosphere) or formed by secondary processes (transformation of emitted precursor gases) (George et al. 2015; Fuzzi et al. 2015).

These matters are the source of atmospheric aerosols (Fuzzi et al. 2015): marine aerosol (mineral dust, biological aerosols, and volcanic ash), mineral dust (Sahara), primary biological aerosol particles (PBAPs) (different biological components like microorganisms as bacteria, archaea, algae and fungi and various materials such as fungal spores, pollen, viruses, and biological fragments), transport-related aerosol in densely populated regions, and wood combustion (responsible for half of the production of organic carbon (OC) in the cold season). Secondary aerosol precursors are released by natural and anthropogenic sources (SO_2, NOx, NH3 and volatility organic compounds (VOCs) and intermediate-volatility organic compounds (IVOCs)) and preindustrial aerosol (PM in the absence of anthropogenic emissions). Also, ambient aerosols as secondary particular matters can interact with atmospheric gases (carbon monoxide, nitric oxides sulfur, ozone). All of these PM can have synergistic or antagonistic effects with each other (Du et al. 2016). Air quality, human and ecosystem well-being, and Earth's climate system can be affected by atmospheric aerosols (Fuzzi et al. 2015). Respiratory and cardiovascular diseases are the main reason of death and its increment due to short- and long-term exposure to air pollution. Sustained oxidative stress and inflammation are induced by exposure to PM10 and PM2.5. PM2.5 increases the activation of autonomic nervous system (Fiordelisi et al. 2017; Brook and Rajagopalan 2010).

Water pollution by chloroform and other trihalomethanes, water chlorination, heavy metals, etc. can be a great hazard for environmental health. Oxidative stress and ROS production can be induced by metal ions due to their interference with metal-related processes or via ion with changeable transition metals or both of them.

Many researchers reported abundant generation of oxidative stress in hydrobionts by transition metals. They are also capable to induce oxidative stress in aquatic animals by reversible oxidation. These effects have been reported about ions of copper, mercury, arsenic, chromium, cobalt, titanium, and vanadium and their complexes. Also it is reported that these metals decrease the activities of catalase, glutathione peroxidase, glutathione-S-transferase, and glutathione of fishes and produce lipid peroxidation and protein carbonyl contents. Arsenic is involved in several ROS and RNS production. It was observed that H_2O_2 formation was happened due to oxidation of As^{3+} to As^{5+} under physiological conditions (Lushchak 2011).

Changes in salinity in aquatic systems can influence the levels of oxidative stress and improve ROS production. Co-exposure of salinity with metals can produce the synergism effect on their toxicity and their effect on oxidative stress (Baysoy et al. 2012; Loro et al. 2012).

Heavy Metals

Oxidative stress and ROS generation can be induced by environmental trace metals (Cd, As, Cu, Fe, Hg, Cr, Pb, Se, Ni, Zn, and V) and organic pollutants. This character arises from their ability to lose electrons, their catalytic activity in Haber-Weiss and Fenton reactions (redox active metals), and their oxidation state alteration which led to ROS formation (Simic et al. 1988). This kind of metals can act as redox inactive agents, suppress antioxidant systems, and improve oxidative reaction (Abele et al. 2012). Organic pollutants especially induce cytochrome P450 and cause intracellular ROS production (Valko et al. 2007).

Moreover, metal can induce reactive species formation due to their interaction with cellular components especially polyunsaturated fatty acid residues of phospholipids as sensitive compartment to oxidation. Malondialdehyde (MDA) and 4-hydroxy-2-nonenal (HNE) are two important toxic and mutagenic products of lipid peroxidation which their formation is triggered by rearrangement of peroxyl radicals ($ROO^{\bullet}$) (Valko et al. 2007).

Temperature

Oxidative stress can be induced by lower and higher temperatures both in endo- and exothermic animals due to their metabolic rate increment, ROS production (Sahin and Gumuslu 2007; Selman et al. 2000; Bagnyukova et al. 2007), and reduction of antioxidant systems (Beamonte-Barrientos and Verhulst 2013; Malek et al. 2004). Cold temperature in aquatic systems increases the solubility of oxygen, decreases conductance, and increases the ROS production per mg of protein. This matter is similar to temperate and warm areas for animals living (Abele and Puntarulo 2004).

Electromagnetic Fields

There are many reports about amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), childhood leukemia, adult brain cancer, and miscarriage due to EMF exposure of the power line radiation, ELF-EMFs. However the EMFs are non-ionized radiation, but its influence on mainly oxidative stress and metabolic processes which generate oxidants, decrease antioxidants, and alter cellular process like alteration in cell cycle and protein expression and induction of cell death has been proposed. Increased exposure with EMFs can alter the cellular homeostasis by producing reactive oxygen species (ROS) and suppressing enzymatic and/or nonenzymatic antioxidants which result in cellular component damage (lipid membrane, nucleic acids, and protein).

ELF-EMF exposure can increase the lifetime of free radicals and their dispersion which lead to increment of their activity and concentration of the free radicals. ELF-EMFs also have inhibitory effect on some radical scavenger antioxidant hormones like melatonin. This kind of electromagnetic wave enhances the release

of free radicals by inducing cells "activated state." These processes can promote two distinct interaction mechanisms as (a) thermal effects (by rotation of the polar molecules and generation of live cell dielectric heat (Terzi et al. 2016)) and (b) nonthermal effects which are involved in biological response and intracellular or extracellular oxidative stress induction by HF-EMFs (Gaestel 2010). Our previous research also showed the formation of ROS due to cell exposure by mobile phone with frequency electromagnetic field (RF-EMF, 940 MHz).Also, we reported the alteration of HbA structure and its oxygen affinity by mobile phone EMFs based on its time of exposure and intensity (Sefidbakht et al. 2014, 2013; Mousavy et al. 2009). Oxidative stress and free radical formation is the link between living organism and ELF-EMFs. The character of biological pathways as dynamic and nonlinear system and the biochemical effects of nonsignificant alteration in free radical concentrations change EMF as a harmful agent for human health (Terzi et al. 2016). EMFs increase ROS by involving in the Fenton reaction in the cells and enhance hydroxyl free radical formation. It is important to know that any free radical can activate a plausible biological mechanism which leads to diseases. Ionized radiation produces a mixture of hydroxyl/superoxide radicals (Aydina and Akarb 2011).

Alcohol

Alcohol metabolization produces some toxic and reactive compounds: firstly acetaldehyde produced by alcohol dehydrogenase which then changes to acetate by aldehyde dehydrogenase. Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide which is formed by each of the reactions impairs the redox balance and enhances electron flow and the activity of the respiratory chain, O_2 consumption, and ROS generation. The alcohol induces oxidative stress and reactive species production. Moreover, the morphology of mitochondria membranes can be changed by chronic alcohol (Ignatowicz et al. 2013).

Alcohol activates liver Kupffer cells, with ability of pro-inflammatory cytokine induction and ROS and reactive nitrogen species (RNS) productions. This abnormality is directly related to NAFLD (Ignatowicz et al. 2013). It is important to mention that most of the signal proteins like JNK, PKC, p38, Cdc42, AP-1, EGFR, PI3K, Akt, and cyclins A and D are oxidative stress-responsive proteins. So their activities could be regulated by oxidative stress which is induced by alcohol and leads to alcohol-induced diseases (Ignatowicz et al. 2013; Wu et al. 2006).

Herbicides

This kind of compounds induce oxidative stress through directly entering redox cycle and enhancing free radical generation or inhibit antioxidant activities (Lushchak 2011).

Pesticide

Pesticides include insecticides, herbicides, and fungicides which are physical, chemical, or biological agents for killing unwanted organisms. Pesticide can involve in redox cycles and enhance reactive species formation, decrease or inactivate antioxidant potential, interfere with energy creating process or disrupt genetic process (through impaired transcription and translation), and especially enhance steady-state ROS level indirectly (Lushchak 2011).

Fungicides

Some organic fungicides can stimulate ROS production by binding to cytochrome, uncoupling the electron-transport chain from mono-oxygenase activity, and produce reactive species. The metabolism of these compounds can lead to ROS production by itself (Lushchak 2011). Glyphosate fungicides have the ability to alter humans' microbiome of intestinal flora and form dysbiosis (Samsel and Seneff 2013) which produce allergy and sensitivity, autoimmune diseases, and systemic inflammation as the cause of many modern diseases (Myles 2014).

Cigarette Smoke

The smoke of tobacco is a pool of oxidative organic compounds and free radicals (superoxide and nitric oxide). Also, the cell activation (lung epithelium, fibroblasts inflammatory cells, macrophages and neutrophils) via inhalation of tobacco smoke particles leads to reactive species generation (ROS and RNS) (Aprioku 2013). So, tobacco can damage biomacromolecules like DNA, proteins, lipids, and polysaccharides through their oxidization and cause pro-inflammatory reactions, aging, and other disease formation (Ignatowicz et al. 2013).

Industrial Foods

The presence of industrial agriculture and food has converted people's habit from using low-shelf life natural food (grains, fruits, and vegetables) to long-shelf life processed food. Nowadays, considering food as a product and more production are the real attitude of industries. So, easier feeding and more productivity are the basis of industrial programs. These kinds of foods can involve many diseases like metabolic disorder (obesity, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD), diabetes) and chronic disease (Yach et al. 2010). There are many reports about the contribution of chemical-laden food products in diseases that affect people's quality and length of life. Industrial foods are processed based on using additives, hormones, antibiotics, and genetic engineering (Brownell and Warner 2009; Igumbor et al. 2012).

Oxidative Stress Is the Main Reason of Diseases

Oxidative stress as a consequence of homeostatic imbalance is a destructive process where its products change cell structures, process, and components (proteins, lipoproteins, lipids, nucleic acids).

Excess hydroxyl radical and peroxynitrite are responsible for a chain reaction called lipid peroxidation which destroys cell membranes and lipoproteins. The products of this process are malondialdehyde (MDA) and diene compounds as cytotoxic and mutagenic agents. The attack of ROS/RNS to protein and DNA leads to their structural and functional changes, toxic products, and DNA lesions which lead to mutations and pathologic effect. This condition changes redox regulation and results in acute disease (Valko et al. 2007).

It is worth mentioning that chronic and degenerative diseases, aging process, and some acute pathologies (trauma, stroke) are the consequent events of abnormalities in regulatory and repairing systems like repair enzymes and antioxidants. Also, residues in protein side chains (specially Cys, His, Arg, Lys) are another target for aggressive attack of reactive species. This kind of oxidation leads to protein aggregation and protein backbone breaking which result in their inactivities or toxic activities (Valko et al. 2007).

The oxidative-borne diseases are divided into two groups (Valko et al. 2007): (a) shifting in the thiol/disulfide redox state and impairing glucose tolerance by prooxidants entitled "mitochondrial oxidative stress" conditions (cancer and diabetes mellitus) (Valko et al. 2007) and (b) diseases arose from "inflammatory oxidative conditions" which improve activity of NAD(P)H oxidase (atherosclerosis and chronic inflammation) or xanthine oxidase-induced formation of ROS (ischemia and reperfusion injury). Free radical action on biomacromolecules (lipid peroxidation, DNA damage, protein oxidation) and its consequent damage lead to aging (Valko et al. 2007; Babbs 1988).

Cancer

Endogenous and exogenous stimuli-induced cellular and biomacromolecules changes result in the development of cancer. It is well established that DNA oxidative damage is responsible for cancer development. It has been shown that chromosomal defects by base hydroxylation, base and sugar lesions, strand breaks, DNA-protein cross-links and base-free sites, oncogene activation, altering normal gene transcription, and cancer initiation are induced by free radicals. Tobacco smoking, chronic inflammation, and high consumption of fats are the main reasons for cancer disease due to lipid peroxidation (Horton 2003). The initial mutagenic event in carcinogenesis usually involves ROS or some oxidative chemicals produced by the cytochrome P-450 system. Tissue with a concomitant oxidation process is a target for metastasis (Florence 1995). The reaction of hydroxyl radical with DNA components like purine and pyrimidine bases and the deoxyribose backbone damages them seriously. The formation of genetic

material permanent modification as 8-OH-G implies the first step of mutagenesis, carcinogenesis, and aging.

Cardiovascular Disease

Hypercholesterolemia, hypertension, smoking, diabetes, poor diet, stress, and physical inactivities are the risk factors which provide the conditions of cardiovascular disease (CVD). Many reports showed the role of oxidative stress in atherosclerosis, ischemia, hypertension, cardiomyopathy, cardiac hypertrophy, and congestive heart failure (Ray et al. 2012).

Fatty deposits on blood vessels result in atherosclerosis. At first endothelium was damaged by released ROS from white blood cells, and then lipid peroxide is the main reason for atheroma. Cholesterol epoxides, lipid peroxides, and antibodies are the main contents of atheroma deposition (Florence 1995).

Neurological Disease

Oxidative stress and reactive species have a key role in neuron dysfunction, and its consequent events lead to neurodegenerative diseases like Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, multiple sclerosis, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), memory loss, and depression. Reactive species (especially toxic superoxide radical) and antioxidant deficiency induce the formation of toxic amyloid structures in intra- or extra-neuronal cell which is involved in neurodegenerative diseases (Lushchak 2011). It is worth mentioning that the brain because of its high oxygen utilization, oxidizable polyunsaturated fatty acids, and the presence of redox active metals (Cu, Fe) is sensitive a lot about oxidative stress (Valko et al. 2007).

Pulmonary Disease

Oxidative stress induces the activities of different redox transcription factors (NF-kappa B and AP-1) and kinases which lead to systemic and local chronic inflammation in the lung and pulmonary diseases. Research revealed that systemic and local chronic inflammation and oxidative stress are involved in inflammatory lung diseases.

Rheumatoid Arthritis

Chronic inflammation of the joints and joints around the tissue with penetration of activated T cells and macrophages characterized an autoimmune disease as rheumatoid arthritis. The presence of reactive species in the disease location produces pathogenesis of rheumatoid arthritis.

Nephropathy

Oxidative stress and transition (Cr, Cu, Co, Fe) and heavy metals (Pb, Hg, Cd, As) as potent free radical inducers via lipid peroxidation produce renal diseases which include uremia, proteinuria, chronic renal failure, tubulointerstitial nephritis, and glomerulonephritis (Ray et al. 2012).

Ocular Disease

Oxidative stress and reactive species degenerate cells, change eye's various cell types, aggregate lens protein (cristalin), and promote eye diseases. Likewise, oxidative stress is believed to be involved in retinopathy and macular degeneration. High amount of unsaturated lipids in eye made this organ as a prominent target for oxidative damage (Ray et al. 2012).

Aging

Aging can be considered as a progressive destruction in organism's physiological functions after life's fertility period. Indeed oxygen begins the process of aging because of the leaking electrons from mitochondrial electron transport chain. These leaked electrons can interact with oxygen and produce superoxide radicals. These processes take place during aerobic metabolism and destroy biomacromolecules by reactive species gradually. The accumulations of toxic products lead to aging (Valko et al. 2007).

Defensive Systems Against Free Radicals

Organisms have to maintain their life against various free radicals by a series of defense mechanisms: (1) preventative mechanisms, (2) repair mechanisms, (3) physical defenses, and (4) antioxidant defenses (Valko et al. 2007).

There are an elaborated anti-free radical defense systems in all aerobic forms of life: (a) enzymes (superoxide dismutase (SOD) and glutathione system) for changing free radicals to a much less reactive form; (b) uric acid and ceruloplasmin react with free radicals in the intercellular spaces and bloodstream; (c) self-repair proteins which used and damaged protein scavenger enzymes and break them into their component for reuse by the cell; and (d) nutrients(the oxy radicals are neutralized by vitamins (vitamins C and E, beta-carotene, and bioflavonoids) and other nutrients. All of these systems are considered as antioxidants (Pham-Huy et al. 2008).

Oxygen avoiding is the simplest defense against its toxicity. This matter has been accomplished by (a) packing redox constituents together in electron transport chains and (b) lowering the amount of O_2 in parts of the organism. Designing resistant structural defense against oxidative stress is not enough for encountering with reactive species toxicities. So, specific nonenzymatic and enzymatic antioxidants have produced to react with harmful agents (Halliwell and Gutteridge 2007).

Antioxidants

To cope with extra amounts of reactive species, the antioxidant defense system has been designed by the body (Singh 2006). There is a common definition about antioxidants: A stable and safe substance with high inhibiting influence on oxidant especially at low concentration (Singh 2006).

In other words, homeostasis maintenance needs an endogenous system for free radical scavenging and maintaining the effective balance between reactive species production and their removal. Actually, antioxidant compounds regulate the redox status of living systems and protect them against oxidative stress (Vendemiale et al. 1999). It is important to note that antioxidants suppress uncontrolled formation of reactive species (Chaudieáre and Ferrari-Iliou 1999). Also the exposure of antioxidant at low concentration to oxidized substances caused delay, prevention or removal of counteract with biological structures and biomacromolecules oxidative destruction (Halliwell and Gutteridge 2007; Cadenas and Packer 2002). This inhibitory effect can counteract with body's internal destructive effects of reactive species, prevent the consequent damages, and reduce disease symptoms (Pham-Huy et al. 2008; Lushchak and Semchyshyn 2012). The antioxidants can be categorized as follows: (a) direct antioxidants with scavenging effect of free radicals (SOD/$O_2^{-\bullet}$) or non-radicals (Catalase/H_2O_2) (Rahbar and Figarola 2003). The major antioxidant enzymes participate in ROS neutralization and act directly (Birben et al. 2012).

It is worth to note that scavenging antioxidants with fast kinetic act as chemical traps of oxidizing free radicals and activated ROS. They also can be quenched by excited species physically such as singlet oxygen and triplet states of photosensitizers. The free radical by-products of this scavenging reaction quench by dismutation and secondary scavengers and never come back to chain reactions again. Peroxyl radicals ROO, hypervalent iron species, singlet oxygen, and halogenating oxidants such as hypochlorous acid HOCl are continuously "scavenged" within our cells (Chaudieáre and Ferrari-Iliou 1999); and (b) indirect antioxidants with inhibitory effect on cellular sources of oxidants (chelators/metals, apocynin/Nox) or inducing effect on cellular antioxidants (sulforaphane/Nrf2 targets-GSH) (Singh 2006).

Chelating metals via metal-chelating proteins like metallothionein can decrease metal-induced ROS generation. There are other antioxidants which are derived from the diet (vitamins and carotenoids).

Nonenzymatic antioxidants with low molecular weight (vitamins C and E, β-carotene, uric acid, and GSH) have ROS scavenging properties as indirect antioxidants (Florence 1995; Birben et al. 2012).

Vitamin E has an important role in inhibition of lipid peroxidation (Florence 1995). Under normal conditions, there is a balance between both the activities of intracellular levels of these antioxidants. This balance is essential for the survival of organisms and their health (Valko et al. 2007).

Antioxidants with New Conversation

Based on our research, antioxidant is any factor which produces free radical scavenger elements and removes reactive species. Based on this definition, antioxidants can be considered as follows.

Sleeping

Sleep is the loss or absence of consciousness, relative suspension of sensory perception, and inactivity of almost all skeletal muscle during rest. So, the activity of the mind and body changes, and the actual images are replaced by the visual illusions. Sleep is a behavior which is important for the health and regeneration of nervous, immune, and musculoskeletal systems of humans and animals. Sleep is a balanced and restorative function which seems to be essential for regulating temperature and energy conservation. Sleep also restores body strength by improving the synthesis of ribonucleic acid and proteins (Buysse 2005; Smith et al. 2008).

It is important to note that sleeping is the primary mechanism for removing brain toxic products. Brain cells shrink during sleep and decrease by 60% of their total volume. This matter increases the intercellular space, and by this way, the brain tissue can be washed by cerebrospinal fluid easily. During 24 h, various detoxification events happen in the body which some of them are related to good sleep. One of the sleep benefits is the secretion of the melatonin hormone which is called sleep's hormone. Melatonin regulates the body's circadian rhythm, protects the genetic material, and keeps the body from age-dependent diseases. This hormone also plays an important role as an antioxidant in neuroprotection, inflammatory defense, and immune system.

Melatonin suppresses oxidative stress and cell death by activating a series of antioxidant enzymes (superoxide dismutase, glutathione peroxidase, and glutathione reductase) by indirect or direct interaction with free radicals (hydroxyl) and oxidative stress (Reiter et al. 2000).

Fasting

Fasting as a periodic voluntarily avoidance from eating, drinking, and smoking acts as a therapy which has many molecular and cellular advantages for the human body and one's mental activities. This great blessing and health-promoting behavior can improve neurotrophic factors and neuroendocrine systems, reduce oxidative stress and aging-related signal association, and specially promote autophagy (as a waste collection and recycling mechanism).

Autophagy is an intracellular process for self-destruction of impaired cellular contents (like lysozymes). The complex phenomena are crucial for physiological processes of energy balancing and responding to food stress. Also, autophagy has an important role in cellular protection by eliminating abnormal proteins and cleansing of damaged organelles. Fasting induced ketogenesis which changes cellular processes and metabolic pathways specially stress resistance and chaperon-mediated autophagy. It also regulates the glucose and lipid homeostasis by ketone bodies (3-β-hydroxybutyrate, acetone, and acetoacetate) as liver metabolites which released during fasting. These metabolites are involved in reduction of neurodegenerative disease, cell apoptosis inhibition, lipid peroxidation, and adipocyte lipolysis. Our research showed the antiglycation effect of 3-β-hydroxybutyrate which inhibits the binding of sugar to protein, inhibits the initiation of Maillard reaction and glycotoxin formation specially AGEs, and suppresses diabetes complexities (Bohlooli et al. 2016).

Mountains' Clean Air Have Bracing Effect

Positive and negative ions and neutral molecules are atmospheric components in normal condition which are normally produced by solar radiation, naturally occurring (soil and atmosphere) terrestrial radiation, and also natural phenomena such as thunderstorms, snowstorms, waterfalls, water spray on the shoreline, winds, etc. Atmosphere and weather phenomena are involved in ion production. In city air, the ratio of negative to positive ion is about 4:5 and can be reduced to 1:2 and further in certain situations (Perez et al. 2013).

Atmospheric pollution, air conditioning, television or computer screens, central heating, machinery, artificial fiber materials (clothing, carpets, curtains, etc.), and cigarette smoke are involved in negative ion depletion. The negative and positive ion balance has a critical role for physical and psychological health. It is proposed that negative ion facilitate cognitive functioning through their antiserotonergic effect which leads to reduction of serotonin irritation anxiety and improvement of cognitive performance.

The effects of negative ions on physiological (alertness to circadian rhythms, allergies to migraine decrement, relaxation, calmness, and stimulation increased) and psychological state (irritability, depression, and tenseness decreased, mood improvement and reduced depression severity (Perez et al. 2013; Buckalew and Rizzuto 1982), less anxiety, lower psychological stress, enhanced well-being,

memory increment, and aggression decrement) have been reported previously. In contrary, exposure to positive air ions may induce irritability, heightened anxiety, and unpleasantness. Several studies examined the impact of negative and positive air ionization on relaxation and sleepiness (Perez et al. 2013).

Negative ions can remove environmental pollutants by connecting to contaminants and positively charged particles. In regard to the presence of high number of negative ions in the mountains, this is a desirable factor of mountain's air. So, using mountain weather can regulate biological activities and homeostasis; improving the level of consciousness, removing allergies, and other useful benefits can be due to the effect of mountain air inhalation (Perez et al. 2013).

Lifestyle Alteration Eliminates Oxidative Stressors

Lifestyle changing in recent years has clearly affected people's health (Wheeler et al. 2012; Behnam-Rad et al. 2014). The rapid expansion of urbanization, increasing age, a dramatic change in dietary habits, and physical activities (lack of movement) and its consequent obesity have caused an important increase in the rate of metabolic diseases' growth especially diabetes. All of these suggest that in the coming decades, a high population of metabolic disorder and diabetes mellitus patients will be a major challenge to the health system (Hu and Manson 2001).

With regard to the growth rate of diabetes in developing countries, especially in the Middle East, recognition of the destructive effect of this disease on the body and sole health of the individual and the communities and its causative and aggravating factors is very crucial. Studies on diabetes emphasized on the effect of undesirable lifestyle changes in disease formation (changes in conventional dietary habits, high consumption of fast food, high fat intake and reduced consumption of vegetables and fruits, the replacement of industrial food and drinks (such as various kinds of canned food, artificial juices, carbonated soft drinks, fried potatoes, and processed meat, rich in artificial preservatives and sweeteners) (Buckalew and Rizzuto 1982), and the movement of society toward idle industrial life, tireless, nervous and lack of spirituality along with consuming unhealthy food, and without enough relaxation and sleep) (Golem et al. 2014; Spiegel et al. 1999; Ayas 2003).

These unsuitable alterations have been able to produce intense oxidative stress in the body by disturbing the internal homeostasis and balance between the production of oxidative substances and antioxidants (Dav'I et al. 2010; Alp et al. 2010; Brindley and Rolland 1989). The products of this imbalance formation are destructive, and non-inhibited reactive species with their derivatives will be the cause of the emergence and exacerbation of many degenerative diseases, especially diabetes and its complexities. Obviously, the treatment and prevention of this chronic fatal metabolic diseases can be possible by lifestyle changes based on return to healthy life, healthy food (using high-fiber diets and unsaturated fats), strengthening the body's defenses with external antioxidants, and doing regular exercise which lead to desirable psychological, physiological, and biochemical changes (improvement of

metabolic capacity and blood nutrient function, improving glucose tolerance and weight loss, reducing blood pressure and decreasing triglycerides (Fentem 1994; Helmrich et al. 1991).

It is worth mentioning that improvement of personal and social consciousness, proper planning for treatment management with personal empowerment (Innes and Vincent 2007; Alexander et al. 2008), doing meditational exercises, increasing individual spirituality (Candace 2003; Chopra 1993; Bogousslavsky and Inglin 2007; Lind-Albrecht 2006), and using traditional medicine along with modern medicine (Pathak 2014; Advanced Life Support Group 2001; World Health Organization 2002; Rezaeizadeh et al. 2009; Yuan et al. 2016; Perera and Li 2011; Mohamed 2014) can be very useful for disease prevention.

Diabetes

Diabetes is a group of chronic and destructive metabolic disorders which is formed by blood sugar increment or stressors. This disease can be categorized into type 1 (insulin-dependent diabetes) (Valko et al. 2007), which is caused by blood glucose increment as a metabolic disorder due to the destruction of the pancreatic beta cells and lack of insulin secretion. About 5–10% of the total diabetic patients belong to this type, and type 2 (non-insulin-dependent) (Valko et al. 2007), which is caused by low uptake of glucose into adipose tissue and muscle, increased blood glucose as a metabolic disorder due to decreased levels of insulin secretion from pancreatic beta cells, or body's inability to use insulin. Tissue damage and pathophysiological complications occur by extracellular hyperglycemia. 90–95% of the total diabetic patients belong to this type (Valko et al. 2007; Limón-Pacheco and Gonsebatt 2009). It is noteworthy that Alzheimer's disease is considered as type 3 diabetes (de la Monte and Wands 2008).

The motor of diabetes formation is glycation process as an unplanned and cascade process which destroys biomacromolecules' structure and function. This process can provide a massive change in cells, tissues, and organs which lead to many diseases (diabetes mellitus, cardiac dysfunction, visual impairment, nephropathy, vascular disorders, atherosclerosis, and early aging) (Miranda and Outeiro 2010). The basis of glycation process is Maillard reaction which is a collection of heterogeneous and non-specific complex reactions (Sattarahmady et al. 2007) between carbonyl compounds (reducing sugars such as glucose, fructose, and triose and their derivatives) with free amine groups in protein side chains. The nature of this cascade reaction and its components are similar to those of free radical chain reactions (Wu et al. 2011) and generally include the following steps (Sattarahmady et al. 2007):

(a) Reversible interactions lead to the production of unstable aldehyde as Schiff base.
(b) Irreversible rearrangements and stable ketimine production as Amadori products. These compounds are capable to cross-link with proteins and make chemical changes in protein structure (Brownlee et al. 1984). It is worth to note that in each of these three stages, a large volume of free radicals are also produced (Singh et al. 2001).

(c) Middle phase is associated with the decomposition of preparatory compounds (Thornalley et al. 1999) and formation of several small intermediate products called active carbonyl species (RCSs) (Turk 2010).

These components produce carbonyl stress which is important precursors for the AGE compounds and intra- or extracellular protein aggregation. In fact, carbonyl stress is the result of a defective balance between the production of carbonyl intermediates and the efficiency of their scavenging. It is worth noting that except for the Maillard reaction and glycated protein degradation, there are other oxidative pathways which produce dicarbonyl compounds (glycolytic intermediates, lipid peroxidation, ultraviolet radiation) (Turk 2010). AGEs with high thermal resistance are the final products of Maillard reaction. These products, also known as glycotoxins, have highly oxidizing activities and potentially harmful effects on diabetes and its complexities. AGEs are the link between the complications of diabetes and oxidative stress (Brownlee 2005).

Increasing blood glucose with the accumulation of triose phosphates, ketone bodies, lipid peroxidation, and oxidative stress may contribute to the formation of AGE. These compounds are divided into two groups based on the fluorescence properties and the formation of cross-linking structures (Wu et al. 2011).

According to recent research, sugars, carbonyl content derivatives, and some metabolic pathways are involved in AGE formation (Chowański et al. 2017). Each of glycation products can participate in the formation of other products (Turk 2010). The AGE circulating contents reflect the balance between endogenous formation and exogenous entry (oral absorption) of AGE and its catabolism (including renal excretion). Exogenous AGE (about 10%) is absorbed in the gastrointestinal tract and delivered to the liver and other tissues. The rest (one third) is also excreted in the urine, and the rest of the AGE are involved in diabetes and its complexities.

At tissue levels, macrophages and other endocytosis and AGE degradation systems produce the formation of AGE peptides with low molecular weight through receptor or non-receptor pathways. These peptides are absorbed and catabolized in varying degrees in the proximal nephrons, and the rest are secreted in the urine. Therefore, the AGE effective elimination depends on normal renal function. At the cellular level, there are intracellular protective systems that limit the accumulation of active AGE derivatives. However, in high AGE formation such as diabetes and renal impairment and in particular in increased food AGE absorption, AGE hemostasis can be broken down (Valko et al. 2007). Tissue destruction can be formed by AGEs in two following main paths: (a) intra- and extra-cross-link formation between protein monomers with short or long half-life and their structural disruption. By this way they create the structural alterations of tissues and change the content of extracellular matrix (Abele et al. 2011); (b) interaction with specific and non-specific AGEs receptors which are located on the cell surface. The response causes intracellular phenomena alteration and stress induction and inflammation (Peppa and Vlassar 2005).

Biomacromolecules targeting by all mentioned toxic compounds leads to protein structural changes and protein fibrillar formation, losing their main activities and disease formation. These changes are the origination of many degenerative diseases.

It is worth mentioning that increased uptake of glucose into the muscles and adipose tissue results in extracellular hyperglycemia, tissue damage, and pathophysiological complications like neurodegenerative diseases (Alzheimer's

disease, Parkinson's disease), atherosclerosis, heart disease, retinopathy, NAFLD, cancer, and others (Ray et al. 2012; Cai et al. 2012).

Oxidative stress has a key role in hyperglycemia and diabetic complications. Hyperglycemia induced reactive species in different ways like oxidative phosphorylation, glucose autoxidation, NAD(P)H oxidase, lipoxygenase, cytochrome P450 monooxygenases, and nitric oxide synthase (NOS) (Levine and Stadtman 2001).

Glucose Auto-oxidation

The enediol rearrangements of sugars as ketoaldehydes and α-hydroxyaldehydes let them be oxidized easily and generate H_2O_2 and reactive intermediates including hydroxyl radicals (Kelly 2003). There are many pathways for reactive species formation (especially H_2O_2); this process in glycation and fructation seems to be common.

Reactive species like (RCS) and ROS are produced by Wolff pathway (via monosaccharide autoxidation), Hodge pathway in fructation (via autoxidation of the Heyns compounds), and common Namiki pathway (via Schiff base oxidative fragmentation) (Hunt et al. 1988; Thornalley et al. 1984; Peng et al. 2011).

In our hemoglobin fructation research, it was found that autoxidation of fructose causes ROS production which can affect heme degradation in ROS concentration-dependent manner. Also there was a difference between these heme degradation products and heme enzymatic degradation products (Goodarzi et al. 2014).

Synergism Between Oxidative Stress and Glycation

Oxidative stress and its derivatives (reactive species) have been considered as a component of all pathogenic processes (Dalle-Donne et al. 2003a). Some researches revealed the signs of synergism effect between oxidative stress and protein glycation and their toxic products' development (Levine and Stadtman 2001). It is worth mentioning that in many nondiabetic diseases (like polycystic ovary), oxidized proteins and reactive dicarbonyl substances were detected due to reactive oxygen species (ROS) (Pham-Huy et al. 2008). Research demonstrated that the concentration of protein carbonyl (common product with glycation) can be considered as protein oxidation biomarker (Kikuchi et al. 2003; Dalle-Donne et al. 2003b). Furthermore, protein carbonyl formation is intersection products of some pathological process like lipid peroxidation, neurodegenerative diseases, and NAFLD (Thanan et al. 2014).

Oxidative stress products (free radicals) can interact with proteins directly (via amino acid direct oxidation, oxidative cleavage of protein's backbone, reaction with protein side chain residues) or indirectly by interaction with lipids and carbohydrates as target molecules which leads to formation of new oxidative by-products. These kinds of products can rearrange protein attack. Also, various types of protein oxidative changes can be created directly with reactive species specially ROS or indirectly by interacting with secondary oxidative products which both of them result in carbonyl contents (Kikuchi et al. 2003; Dalle-Donne et al. 2003b).

Cysteine and methionine residues are two residues which are often attacked by ROS compounds. ROS oxidative attack to lysine, arginine, proline, and threonine directly or secondary interaction of cysteine, histidine, or lysine with reactive carbonyl compounds (RCS) produces carbonylated protein derivatives (protein carbonyl), such as aldehyde or ketone derivatives (Dalle-Donne et al. 2003b).

ROS overproduction during glycoxidation is considered as important factor in protein damage due to strengthen Maillard reaction and its products. These products prepare oxidative attack to protein again and again (Rondeau et al. 2008).

All of these interactions lead to changes in protein physicochemical (accessible surface area, binding activities, hydrophobicity) and functional properties that are involved in aging and other human diseases (Levine and Stadtman 2001). So, amino acid direct oxidation, oxidative cleavage of protein's backbone, and reaction with protein side chain residues produce some product which can be observed in both protein glycation and oxidative stress (Dalle-Donne et al. 2003b).

The protein surface-located amino acids (cysteine, tryptophan, histidine, lysine, arginine, tyrosine, and methionine) are the primary targets for reactive species. Interestingly, the interaction between most of these amino acids with free radicals create the persistent carbonyl-ene compounds (PCO) (Dalle-Donne et al. 2003b).

These products are common with glycation product and can strengthen Maillard reaction. It means that deformed amino acids and reactive products can enter into early, middle, and late stage of Maillard reaction and improve this process (Levine and Stadtman 2001).

Oxidized protein (protein carbonyl) is also an important biomarker for identifying oxidative stress.

So, glycation and oxidative stress have the common ancestor and roots, and their common oxidative products can promote both of them simultaneously. It means that a synergism effect is between protein glycation process and protein oxidation. Later, this hypothesis was the fundamental of our next researches.

On the other hand, glycation and oxidative stress make a common fate as amyloid aggregation and fibril formation. Both of these events are involved in degenerative diseases (Taghavi et al. 2017). Protein aggregation can be formed by glycation due to oligomerization of soluble aggregates by interfering of carbonyl content and AGE adduction and fibrillation of insoluble aggregates via formation of cross beta structures with involvement of AGE cross-linking (Taghavi et al. 2017).

Interestingly, protein misfolding and aggregation by itself improve free radical formation and oxidative stress, and because of this, they are considered as toxic elements (Bross and Gregersen 2016).

Preservatives

With regard to vast usage of additives specially preservatives in different fields (alimentary, cosmetic, and pharmaceutical industries), its interfering effects as small molecules on human health can be the main concern of scientists (Taghavi

et al. 2014). The industrial products (food, pharmaceuticals, paints, biological samples, personal care products) include preservatives. Preservatives are the natural or synthetic components for chemical change prevention and contaminant inhibition (Yim et al. 2014; Carbajo et al. 2015). Food preservatives as a subgroup of food additives (coloring, flavoring, etc.) are substances without nutritional value due to their nature but are added to food and considered as part of it. This action is used for elongation of food's shelf life (Gould 1996; Zengin et al. 2011). Preservative, coloring, and sweetening are the main purposes of additive usage. So far, no group of industrial additives is economically more valuable than antimicrobials. Oxidizing preservatives are currently widely used in the food, cosmetic, pharmaceutics, and health products like borax or formalin for the production of edible filaments; sulfites in the fried food industries; nitrites for the preservation of bulk processed and canned meat; benzoates and sorbate especially to increase the durability of beverages, sauces, juices, dairy products, and pharmaceutical and health products; and probiotics as a baking agent for cheese (Lamas et al. 2016; Belz et al. 2012; Darzi et al. 2012). There are many researches which report the effect of food coloring, flavoring, and preservatives on children's hyperactivities and behavioral problems in childhood (Buka et al. 2011).

The increment of food-borne disease and its effect on morbidity and mortality worldwide in developing countries were reported in researches (Scott 2003).

Based on research, preservatives also have the main role in oxidative stress formation and trigger the oxidative damages. Quaternium-15 is a worldwide preservative and xenobiotic agent which is used in cosmetic products. It is a formaldehyde releaser and causes dermatitis and developmental effect. It is shown that this preservative can induce oxidative stress and reactive species formation which is correlated with reduction in GSH activities and increment in lipid peroxidation. An important antioxidant in different kinds of organisms (animals, plants, some bacteria, fungi) is glutathione (GSH). Researchers showed that quaternium-15 because of its toxic effect is a main danger for aquatic animals (Faggio et al. 2016).

Xenobiotic metabolism can induce oxidative stress via increment in ROS production and decreasing of antioxidant potential (Abele et al. 2012).

Researches about the cytotoxicity of most common preservatives which are used in ophthalmic solutions demonstrated the histological effect and morphologic disruption of pharmacological usage of preservatives. The reason of this matter is related to the lipophilic nature of some preservatives which leads them to interact with tissues. Also it has shown that the mechanism of this cytotoxic effect is related to inflammation, free radical formation, and apoptosis by these kinds of preservatives (Debbasch et al. 2001). Some food preservatives like monocarboxylic are weak organic acids (WOAs) which are widely used as microorganism and seem to be mutagenic (Semchyshyn et al. 2011).

In our previous researches, we used some worldwide preservatives (European Commission 1999) as oxidative agents and studied glycation process of human serum albumin in presence and absence of glucose with or without antioxidant (Taghavi et al. 2013, 2016a, b).

It is outlined in our previous research that potassium sorbate with similar structure with unsaturated fatty acid and GRAS character can be very harmful and is seriously involved in diabetes formation and its complexities.

This preservative present in various products (toothpaste, cosmetic, pharmaceutics products, and industrial foods), can access biological stream and interact with biological macromolecules especially proteins. Our results showed that potassium sorbate (PS) can trigger Maillard reaction and amyloid formation in the absence of glucose and can strengthen these reactions in the presence of glucose. This preservative is highly involved in glycotoxin production (Amadori products, AGEs, and reactive species) in higher levels especially in the presence of glucose. All of these toxins particularly AGEs can interact with human serum albumin's structures and alter its secondary structure (by beta-sheet inducing effect) and third structure (increasing hydrophobic patch formation) specially in the presence of glucose. These alterations produce protein abnormal structures and some new hydrophobic contact sites in the surface of protein which improve protein aggregation as toxic structures. The final state of these abnormalities was refolding of protein abnormal structures for achieving thermodynamic stability which leads to protein fibrillation. These changes are followed by HSA physiological defects. Our study revealed that PS induces amyloid structures and fibril formation in the absence of glucose in different shapes (spherulites) compared with the presence of glucose (dense texture) (Fig. 2).

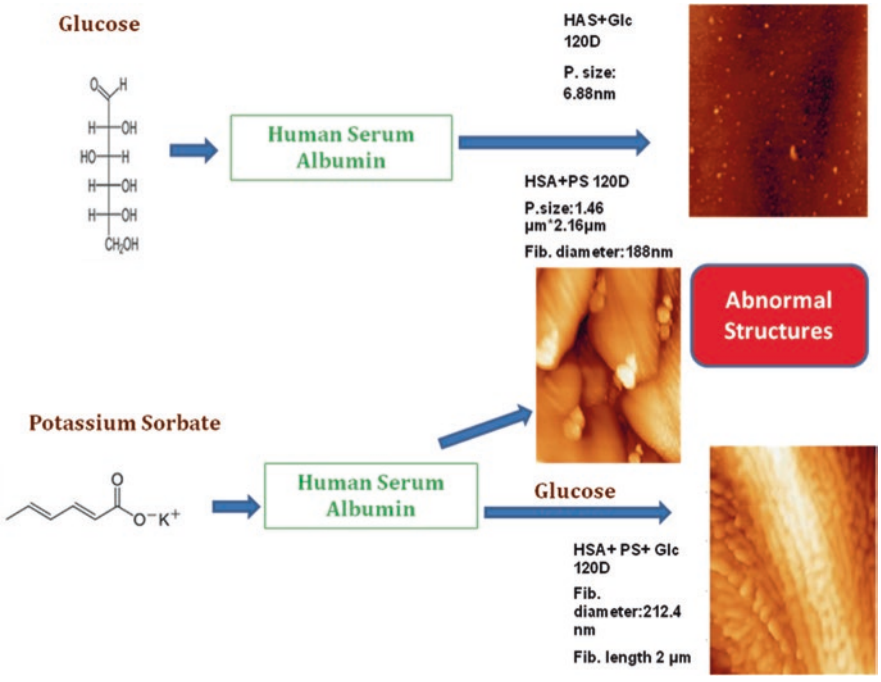


Fig. 2 The formation of HSA amyloidal fibrils due to treatment with PS in the presence and the absence of glucose. The various sizes and shapes of amyloid fibril formation are the consequence of this treatment (Taghavi et al. 2013)

Because of these various shapes, the refolded structures of HSA glycation with PS in the presence and absence of glucose can interfere with many cellular process and molecular mechanisms separately. So, in the absence of glucose, PS as an oxidant can easily promote Maillard reactions and diabetes and its complexities (Taghavi et al. 2013).

In our another investigation, we found that sodium benzoate as a small molecule preservative also with vast presence in food and cosmetic and pharmaceutical products can stimulate the HSA conformational changes. This preservative alters HSA secondary structure through alpha helix formation (which is different from PS) and forms new different energetic domains in the presence and absence of glucose. Sodium benzoate (SB) can induce three different intermediates in HSA conformational changes. These various intermediates can promote protein aggregation in different pathways which leads to different protein fibrillation (Taghavi et al. 2014).

Our research also revealed that both of the mentioned preservatives can induce protein glycation without the presence of glucose, but there are some difference in their manner (Fig. 3). PS is a potent inducer for glycotoxin formation than SB, and this difference leads to complete different amyloid fibril formation with different roles in consequent diseases (Taghavi et al. 2014, 2016a).

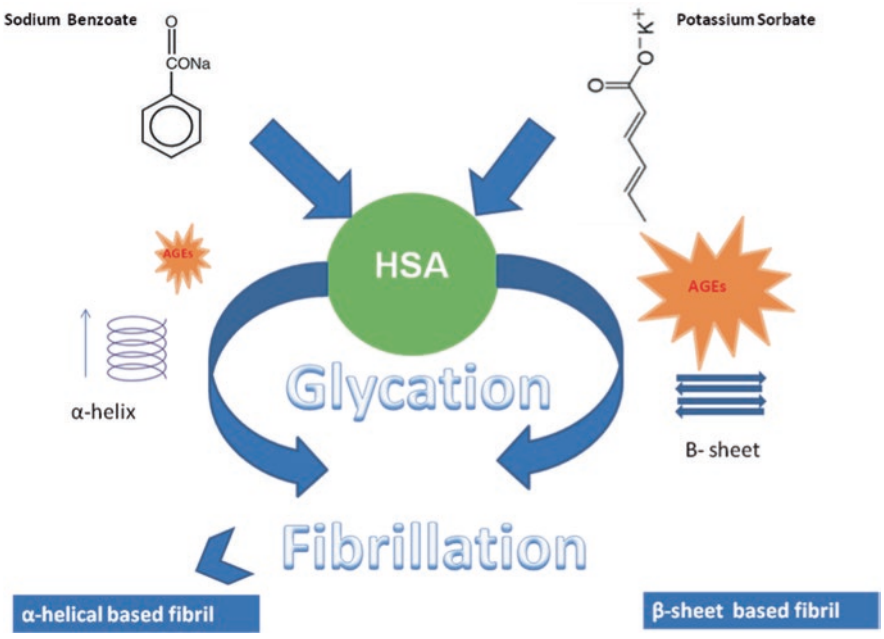


Fig. 3 Different mechanisms for HSA amyloid formation by PS and SB (Taghavi et al. 2013, 2014, 2016a)

New Conversation

Diabetes is not just a glucose-related disease, but it is an oxidative stress disease. It means that growth of diabetes does not depend solely on the high consumption of sugars. So, protein's glycation without high sugar levels can be produced by oxidative substances and free radicals. The result of this reaction is the production of toxic substances which lead to formation of undesirable fibers in the body and causes diabetes and complications.

Molecular Oxidative Stress

The translations of any external stress to the body's internal system produce oxidative stress, disrupt body balances, and lead to various diseases. In molecular approach, oxidative stress means the translation of any external or internal factors to fake body chemical language and produce an acute homeostatic imbalance between the production of oxidative factors and antioxidant defense mechanism.

In another research (Taghavi et al. 2016b), we focused on the pomegranate as the source of antioxidants. Pomegranate with the scientific name *Punica granatum* is a member of Punicaceae family (Seeram et al. 2006). This fruit is one of the most important flavonoid sources, which is considered as ancient, mystical, and highly distinctive fruit. Its main origin is belonging to Iran (European Commission 1999). This fruit has always been admired in ancient times, and it has been mentioned in the sacred scripture of the Old Testament which brings the power of glory, abundance, and success (Jurenka 2008).

The pomegranate has had a long life span about 2000 years. In old medicine, pomegranate is considered as a drugstore (Brook and Rajagopalan 2010). This fruit is potentially treating a wide range of diseases, such as various cancers (prostate, breast, lung, colon), heart disease, diabetes, Alzheimer's disease, infertility, vascular disease and obesity, various types of ulcers, digestive distress, and wound healing (Jurenka 2008; Zarfeshany et al. 2014). In the past decade, significant progress has been made in recognizing the effects of pomegranate extracts and its constituents. Extract and all parts of the pomegranate fruit and trees have medicinal properties. According to research, the most peculiarities of the treatment of pomegranate components are related to ellagic acid and its ellagitannin. Ellagic acid is a natural phenolic antioxidant found in pomegranate and some fruits. After the production, these compounds are converted to a kind of tannin called the ellagitannin. These glycosylated compounds are rapidly hydrolyzed by water and produce reagent acid (Jurenka 2008; Kim et al. 2007; Bana et al. 2007). We added ellagic acid to HSA treatment with PS or glucose (Fig. 4). Our results showed that ellagic acid suppresses the carbonyl content-derived materials as the middle products of Maillard reaction. Also, the presence of ellagic acid interestingly demonstrated the potent inhibitory effect of this antioxidant on HSA amyloid fibril formation due to potassium sorbate in both HSA treatments with glucose or without it. The size decrement of amyloid particles in HSA treated with potassium sorbate and the elimination of particles in HSA

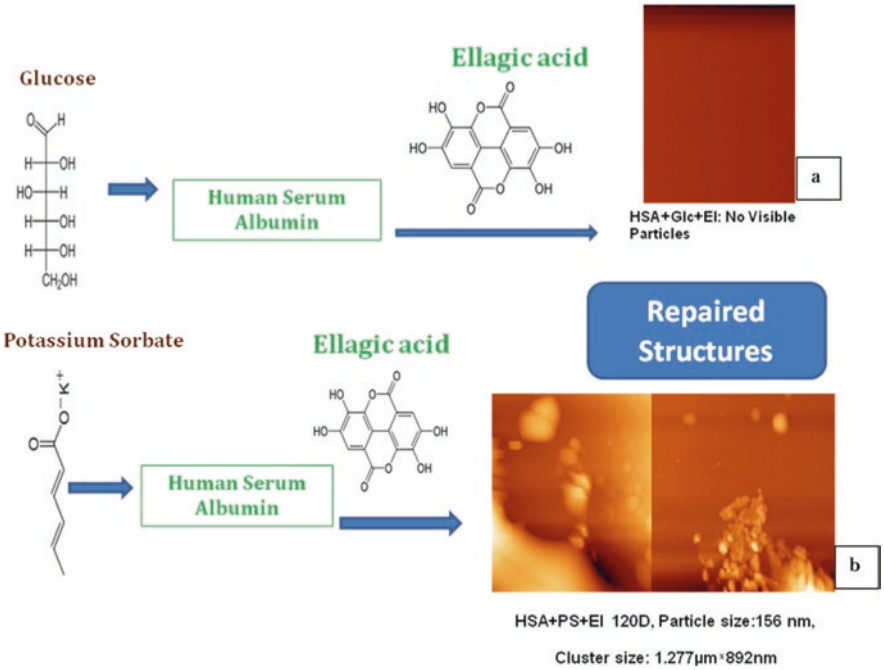


Fig. 4 The effect of ellagic acid on amyloid fibril elimination (Taghavi et al. 2016b). (**a**) The elimination of amyloid particles in HSA treated with glucose. (**b**) The decrement of spherulites in treated HSA with potassium sorbate

treated with glucose were the obvious benefit of using ellagic acid in HSA treated with oxidants. Based on the surface tension results, ellagic acid can repair the destructive effect of oxidants (PS and glucose) on HSA structural changes. So, ellagic acid can remove abnormal structures in treated HSA with glucose and reduce the size of spherulites in treated HSA with PS. Also this antioxidant suppresses other HSA-derived intermediates due to oxidation by glucose or PS.

Another research also revealed that curcumin suppressed the ROS production due to catalase glycation and also activated this enzyme (Mofidi-Najjar et al. 2017).

Diabetes Complications

The diabetes complications include a wide range of diseases (Fig. 5). The wide range of diabetic complications can be due to three important parameters: hemodynamic (changes in fluid balance and blood pressure), metabolic (glycemic and lipid control), and genetic (susceptibility and gene expression) changes. The chronic alteration of these parameters leads to cellular changes (gene modulation and modification, energetic, protein expression) which lead to cellular dysfunction and death (Forbes and Cooper 2013).

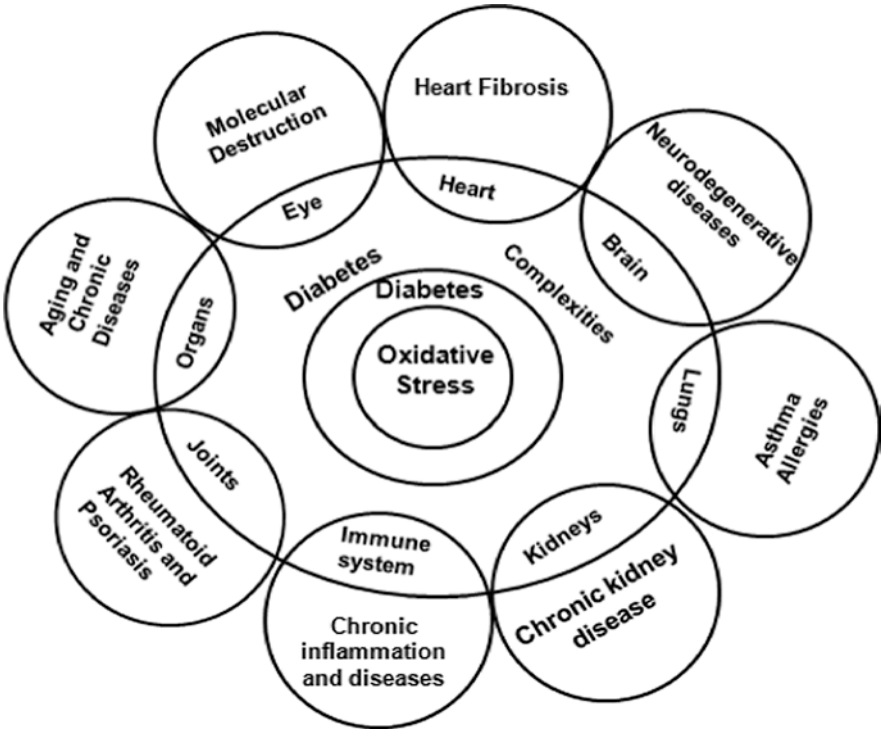


Fig. 5 Oxidative stress and diabetes are the *mother* of many human *diseases* (Forbes and Cooper 2013)

Persistent adverse effects of hyperglycemia on the progression of diabetes complications called "metabolic memory" can be affected by three important pathogenic mediators: oxidative stress, advanced glycation end products, and epigenetic changes. All of these conditions are the basis of two major complications which are observed in diabetic patients (Zhang et al. 2012; Tripathi and Srivastava 2006; Yamagishi et al. 2003).

(a) Microvascular disease or microangiopathy includes dysfunctional changes in microvascular beds, small blood vessels, and a wide range of tissue destruction (Forbes and Cooper 2013).

Retinopathy includes lesions within the retina, dysfunctional neural retina, skin disease, vascular permeability alteration, capillary microaneurysms and cell degeneration, neovascularization, cell death, inability to discriminate between colors, and final blindness (Yamagishi et al. 2005).

Nephropathy is another diabetes complexity which is considered as development of proteinuria increment with a glomerular filtration rate, decrement, and final renal failure which is accompanied with vascular abnormalities' development (Forbes and Cooper 2013).

Glycotoxins especially AGEs have an important role in diabetes complexities. The cross-linking of important matrix proteins (collagen) with AGE

produces structural and functional changes for matrix proteins. Also the interactions of AGE with rennin angiotensin system trigger renal disease. The creation of oxidant stress, adhesion molecules, cytokines, and growth factors which are involved in the pathogenesis of diabetic nephropathy are the consequence of AGEs formation (Yamagishi et al. 2005; Ahmed 2005).

The syndrome of neuropathy is involved in both somatic and autonomic divisions of the peripheral nervous system. In advanced step lead to nerve fiber deterioration, sensitivities alteration to vibrations and thermal thresholds, development of vascular abnormalities like capillary basement, membrane thickening, and endothelial (Yamagishi et al. 2005).

In this diabetes complication, AGEs are involved in glycation of cytoskeletal proteins which change structure and function of nerve fibers and reduce velocities of sensory motor conduction and nerve action potentials and accumulation of AGEs around sciatic nerve. Furthermore, AGE accumulation in cytoskeletal and myelin protein has been distributed in the cytoplasm of endothelial cells and pericytes, Schwann interstitial collagens, and basement membranes of the perineurium cells in both myelinated and unmyelinated fibers and causes vascular abnormalities. Diabetes is also involved in dementia (Forbes and Cooper 2013).

Dermopathy: Skin accumulations of various AGE products alters its physicochemical structure and create skin disorders and even delay in wound healing (Forbes and Cooper 2013).

(b) "Macrovascular disease" includes cerebrovascular and cardiovascular disease which is affected by interplay of various factors including AGE. The kinds of diseases also contain the artery demolition (Forbes and Cooper 2013), atherosclerosis formation, arterial stiffness increment with AGE involvement, vessel rigidity by intra- and intermolecular cross-linking with matrix proteins, and clearance disrupting of arterial wall by trapping lipoproteins. The interaction of AGE with endothelial cell receptors causes vascular permeability increment, migration of macrophages and T-lymphocytes into the intima and impairment of endothelium, procoagulant activity, stiffness, and aortic atherosclerotic lesions via tissue AGE accumulation. AGEs are involved in protein aging and diabetes mellitus (DM) pathological complications (Forbes and Cooper 2013). Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease is the most common liver disease linked to diabetes and obesity deeply (Takeuchi et al. 2015; Yamagishi and Matsui 2010). Advanced glycation end products (AGEs) are a cross-link between the mechanism of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) and diabetes mellitus (DM) (Zhang et al. 2012). In NAFLD, advanced glycation end products (AGEs) have been provided by endogenous (like diabetic condition) and exogenous sources (high processed foods, dried food at high temperatures, and high AGE content foods).

The receptor for advanced glycation end products (RAGE) belongs to an immunoglobulin superfamily of cell surface molecules. Interaction between RAGE and AGEs induces oxidative stress and inflammation response which are considered as pathogenic effect of AGEs (Zhang et al. 2012; Tripathi and Srivastava 2006). AGEs are involved in protein aging and DM pathological

complications (Singh et al. 2014). All of macrophages (including Kupffer cells), peripheral blood mononuclear cells, endothelial cells, and vascular smooth muscle cells, have this receptor (Singh et al. 2014).

Researchers showed that AGEs have the key role in transformation of NAFLD as simple steatosis to NASH and liver fibrosis. This interaction also produces acute liver injury. RAGE hepatic expression is enhanced significantly in liver chronic injury. There is a correlation between AGE levels and severity of fibrosis in NAFLD patients because of the AGEs' role in oxidative stress formation as the main hallmark of NAFLD. The increased amounts of AGE products, RAGE expression, and oxidative stress in diabetic patients improve the liver oxidative damage, NASH, and fibrosis in human liver diseases (Leung et al. 2016).

Diabetes chronic complications also involve depression and sexual dysfunction (Forbes and Cooper 2013).

Diabetes and Climate Changes

With regard to human health, negative effects of climate factors induced many changes in some physiological systems and form their consequent problems. Climate change accompanied with inappropriate nutrition and extreme weather events increases the risk of chronic diseases. By this way, large population of human being encounter with abnormal water situations and are exposed to heat stress, water and food shortages, infectious diseases, and mental stress which increase the risk of noninfectious diseases. However climate change is a global health problem, but a little attention has been paid to the importance of its effects on chronic noninfectious diseases (Santer et al. 2007; Wigley et al. 1998).

Direct Effects

Thermal Stress

Chronic noninfectious diseases are known as the main cause of death in the world, except in downstream lands of the African great desert (World Health Organization 2011). The most common chronic noninfectious diseases considered are heart disease, diabetes type 2, cancer, and respiratory diseases, which are the reason of 60% of global annual mortality. These illnesses also account for 46% of total cost of disabilities caused by disease.

Most of vulnerable people by heat and its related shock have chronic illnesses, such as diabetes. The condition of a diabetic patient makes them susceptible to water loss, fatigue, thermal erosion, and ultimately thermal shock. Heat shock is the most important direct cause of heat death (Easterling et al. 1997).

Spiritual Consequences

Migration to major cities has many psychological consequences: stress, occupational worries, crowding increment in areas with high population density, and noise pollution. All of these conditions increase the production of reactive oxygen species (ROS) in the body and weaken the biological defense mechanisms (Kinney et al. 2008).

The results showed the increment risk of developing type 2 diabetes due to nervous stress in diabetic patients, the conversion of adrenaline to methylamine, and the alteration of acetamide to methyl glyoxal as the potent glycotoxin products by amine oxidase 2. This conversion improves the diabetes situation. Noteworthy, the amount of amine oxidase 2 in the blood of diabetic patients is higher than that of healthy people (Gosling et al. 2009).

Indirect Effects

Suburbs

Nowadays, the consequence of modern and industrial life is the people influx to cities and suburbs and slum formation with high population without any urban and sanitary facilities. These conditions lead to air pollution, high population density, and the lack of infrastructure and urban transport facilities. Inappropriate nutrition; lack of urban infrastructure such as adequate green space, public transportation systems, and sanitation facilities; and septic or inappropriate water and food have potential conditions for diabetes formation. Also, the consequences of urban lifestyle are the sedentary and insufficient physical movement, nervous discomfort, and stress. These factors cause obesity, which has a direct relationship with diabetes (Easterling et al. 1997; Lim et al. 2005).

Obese people are less likely to get used to heat and their body temperature is higher than lean ones. These people will be less tolerant to climate change and warming than other people in the community.

Food Quality and Food Habits

Migration of villagers to cities reduced the natural production of fruits and vegetables which leads to consumption high amount of sugar and fatty foods (in both shapes: fast foods or industrial foods). These kinds of nutrients include lots of free radicals and increase the risk of diabetes (Taghavi et al. 2014, 2013; Lim et al. 2005). On the other hand, increment of the livestock production to meet people's needs will lead to further increase in greenhouse gas emissions. High levels of greenhouse gas emissions, such as methane and carbon dioxide, are significant at various stages of breeding livestock. So, their low efficiency and the costs of high energy consumption for meat products need to receive more attention. Brazil, as a supplier of 25% of the world's meat, is the world's fourth largest producer of CO_2.

The livestock holding sector of Brazil is responsible for producing more than 75% of its CO_2 production. Every year, humans use more than 140 billion animals, which require huge quantities of water, food, and land (Oberhuber et al. 1998).

Reduction in Food Security and Increasing the Risk of Agricultural Production

Drought and severe flooding will reduce the agricultural labor privilege for many farmers. By this way, farmers abandoned rural areas and sheltered to urban suburbs. So, urban management and expenditures will be very crucial (Patz et al. 2005). Also the prices of new agricultural products will be raised. Because of this, people will be eager to use unsuitable and cheaper diets that are more likely to cause diabetes (Epstein 2001). So, climate change causes air, water, and food pollution and urban population increment. Also, the lack of mobility, inappropriate nutrition, and especially mental stress in modern urban lifestyle increase the likelihood of diabetes.

Conclusion

Human body is a well-organized system which works based on a defined chemical and biological language. All internal reactions are modulated by the exact reaction and interaction and can be affected by external stimuli. Oxidative stress is a biochemical disturbance between the production of reactive species and antioxidant defenses in the human body. The products of this homeostatic imbalance are highly reactive, and unstable species include free radicals (species with unpaired valence electrons) and non-radicals which both have various quick reactions in a short time. Biomacromolecules, cells, and tissues are the main targets for these aggressive species which lead to a variety of diseases. The formation of diabetes and its complications is related to glycation process as a destructive reaction. Both glycation process and oxidative stress have a common ancestor (oxidative reaction) and common fate (amyloid formation). Reactive oxygen species (ROS) are known as the most risky free radicals in the body and involved in diabetes formation and its complication seriously.

Acknowledgments The support from University of Tehran, Iran National Science Foundation (INSF), Iran's National Elites Foundation (INEF), and UNESCO Chair on Interdisciplinary Research in Diabetes is gratefully acknowledged.

References

Abele D, Puntarulo S (2004) Formation of reactive species and induction of antioxidant defence systems in polar and temperate marine invertebrates and fish. Comp Biochem Physiol A Mol Integr Physiol 138(4):405–415

Abele D, Vazquez-Medina JP, Zenteno-Savin T (2011) Oxidative stress in aquatic ecosystems. Wiley-Blackwell, Chichester

Abele D, Vázquez-Medina JP, Zenteno-Savín T (2012) In: Regoli F (ed) Chemical pollutants and the mechanisms of reactive oxygen species generation in aquatic organisms: oxidative stress in aquatic ecosystems. Wiley-Blackwell, Chichester

Advanced Life Support Group (2001) Acute medical emergencies: the practical approach. BMJ Books, London 454 p

Ahmed N (2005) Advanced glycation end products–role in pathology of diabetic complications. Diabetes Res Clin Pract 67(1):3–21

Alexander GK, Taylor AG, Innes KE, Kulbok P, Selfe TK (2008) Contextualizing the effects of yoga therapy on diabetes management: a review of the social determinants of physical activity. Fam Community Health 31(3):228–239

Alp R, Selek S, Alp SI, Taşkin A, Koçyiğit A (2010) Oxidative and antioxidative balance in patients of migraine. Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci 14(10):877–882

Andrey ZM, Vladimir ZM (2016) An integral concept of regulating immune homeostasis. J Clin Exp Pathol 6:267

Aprioku JS (2013) Pharmacology of free radicals and the impact of reactive oxygen species on the testis. J Reprod Infertil 14(4):158–172

Araújo IPS, Costa DB, de Moraes RJB (2014) Identification and characterization of particulate matter concentrations at construction job sites. Sustainability 6(11):7666–7688

Ayas N (2003) A prospective study of self reported sleep duration and incident diabetes in women. Diabetes Care 26(2):380–384

Aydina B, Akarb A (2011) Effects of a 900-MHz electromagnetic field on oxidative stress parameters in rat lymphoid organs, polymorphonuclear leukocytes and plasma. Arch Med Res 42(4):261–267

Babbs CF (1988) Reperfusion injury of post-ischemic tissues. Ann Emerg Med 17:1148–1157

Bagnyukova TV, Danyliv SI, Zin'ko OS, Lushchak VI (2007) Heat shock induces oxidative stress, in rotan Perccottus glenii tissues. J Therm Biol 32(5):255–260

Bana T, Hoshino M, Takahashi S, Hamada D, Hasegawa K, Nai-kic H et al (2007) Direct observation of Abeta amyloid fibril growth and inhibition. J Mol Biol 17(12):2027–2032

Baysoy E, Atli G, Gurler CO, Dogan Z, Eroglu A, Kocalar K et al (2012) The effects of increased freshwater salinity in the biodisponibility of metals (Cr, Pb) and effects on antioxidant systems of Oreochromis niloticus. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 84:249–253

Beamonte-Barrientos R, Verhulst S (2013) Plasma reactive oxygen metabolites and non-enzymatic antioxidant capacity are not affected by an acute increase of metabolic rate in zebra finches. J Comp Physiol B 183(5):675–683

Behnam-Rad M, Taghavi F, Moosavi-Movahedi AA (2014) The role of lifestyles in diabetes adjustment. Sci Cult 5:12–21

Belz MC, Mairinger R, Zannini E, Ryan LA, Cashman KD, Arendt EK (2012) The effect of sourdough and calcium propionate on the microbial shelf-life of salt reduced bread. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 96(2):493–501

Betteridge DJ (2000) What is oxidative stress? Metabolism 49(2 Suppl 1):3–8

Birben E, Sahiner UM, Sackesen C, Erzurum S, Kalayci O (2012) Oxidative stress and antioxidant defense. World Allergy Organ J 5(1):9–19

Bogousslavsky J, Inglin M (2007) Beliefs and the brain. Eur Neurol 58(3):129–132

Bohlooli M, Saboury AA, Taghavi F, Habibi-Rezaei M, Sarvari S, Moosavi-Movahedi AA (2016) Fasting reduces the binding between sugar and protein: new insights into diabetic complications. Biomacromol J 2:93–96

Brennan LA, Kantorow M (2009) Mitochondrial function and redox control in the aging eye: role of MsrA and other repair systems in cataract and macular degenerations. Exp Eye Res 88(2):195–203

Brindley DN, Rolland Y (1989) Possible connections between stress, diabetes, obesity, hypertension and altered lipoprotein metabolism that may result in atherosclerosis. Clin Sci (Lond) 77(5):453–461

Brook RD, Rajagopalan S (2010) Particulate matter air pollution and atherosclerosis. Curr Atheroscler Rep 12(5):291–300

Bross P, Gregersen N (2016) Methods in molecular biology: protein misfolding and disease principles and protocols, vol 232. Human Press Inc, Totowa, NJ

Brownell KD, Warner KE (2009) The perils of ignoring history: big tobacco played dirty and millions died. How similar is big food? Milbank Q 87(1):259–294
Brownlee M (2005) The pathobiology of diabetic complications: a unifying mechanism. Diabetes 54(6):1615–1625
Brownlee M, Vlassara H, Cerami A (1984) Non-enzymatic glycosylation and the pathogenesis of diabetic complications. Ann Intern Med 101(4):527–537
Buckalew LW, Rizzuto A (1982) Subjective response to negative air ion exposure. Aviat Space Environ Med 53(8):822–823
Buka I, Osornio-Vargas A, Clark B (2011) Food additives, essential nutrients and neurodevelopmental behavioural disorders in children: a brief review. Paediatr Child Health 16(7):e54–e56
Buysse DJ (2005) In: Oldham JM, Riba MB (eds) Sleep disorders and psychiatry (review of psychiatry series), vol 24., N. 2. American Psychiatric Publishing, Washington, DC
Cadenas E, Packer L (2002) Handbook of antioxidants, 2nd edn. Marcel Dekker Inc., New York
Cai H, Cong W, Ji S, Rothman S, Maudsley S, Martin B (2012) Metabolic dysfunction in Alzheimer's disease and related neurodegenerative disorders. Curr Alzheimer Res 9(1):5–17
Candace P (2003) Molecules of emotion: why you feel the way you feel. Scribner Publications, New York
Canon WB, Higginson G (1932) The wisdom of the Body, 1st edn. W W Norton & Company, Inc, New York
Carbajo JB, Perdigón-Melón JA, Petre AL, Rosal R, Letón P, García-Calvo E (2015) Personal care product preservatives: risk assessment and mixture toxicities with an industrial waste water. Water Res 72:174–185
Chaudieáre J, Ferrari-Iliou R (1999) Intracellular antioxidants: from chemical to biochemical mechanisms. Food Chem Toxicol 37(9-10):949–962
Chopra D (1993) Ageless body, timeless mind: the quantum alternative to growing old. Three Rivers Press, New York
Chowański S, Lubawy J, Paluch-Lubawa E, Spochacz M, Rosiński G, Słocińska M (2017) The physiological role of fat body and muscle tissues in response to cold stress in the tropical cockroach Gromphadorhina coquereliana. PLoS One:1–18
Dalal NS, Suryan MM, Vallyathan V, Green FHY, Jafari B, Wheeler R (1989) Detection of reactive free radicals in fresh coal mine dust and their implication for pulmonary injury. Ann Occup Hyg 33(1):79–84
Dalle-Donne I, Rossi R, Giustarini D, Colombo AR (2003a) Protein carbonyl groups as biomarkers of oxidative stress. Clin Chim Acta 329(1-2):23–38
Dalle-Donne I, Giustarini D, Colombo R, Rossi R, Milzani A (2003b) Protein carbonylation in human diseases. Trends Mol Med 9(4):169–176
Darzi J, Frost GS, Robertson MD (2012) Effects of a novel propionate-rich sourdough bread on appetite and food intake. Eur J Clin Nutr 66(7):789–794
Dav'I G, Santilli F, Patrono C (2010) Nutraceuticals in diabetes and metabolic syndrome. Cardiovasc Ther 28(4):216–226
Debbasch C, Brignole F, Pisella PJ, Warnet JM, Rat P, Baudouin C (2001) Quaternary ammoniums and other preservatives' contribution in oxidative stress and apoptosis on change conjunctival cells. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci 42(3):642–652
Du Y, Xu X, Chu M, Guo Y, Wang J (2016) Air particulate matter and cardiovascular disease: the epidemiological, biomedical and clinical evidence. J Thorac Dis 8(1):E8–E19
Easterling DR, Horton B, Jones PD, Peterson TC, Karl TR, Parker DE et al (1997) Maximum and minimum temperature trends for the globe. Science 277(5324):364–367
Epstein PR (2001) Climate change and emerging infectious diseases. Microbes Infect 3(9):747–754
European Commission (1999) Food science and techniques: reports of the scientific committee for food. 42th series. Office for Official Publications of the European Communities, Luxembourg
Faggio C, Paganoa M, Alampia R, Vazzanab I, Felice MR (2016) Cytotoxicity, haemolymphatic parameters, and oxidative stress following exposure to sub-lethal concentrations of quaternium-15 in Mytilus galloprovincialis. Aquat Toxicol 180:258–265

Fentem PH (1994) Benefits of exercise in health and disease. Br Med J 308:1291
Finkel T, Holbrook NJ (2000) Oxidants, oxidative, stress and the biology of ageing. Nature 408(6809):239–247
Fiordelisi A, Piscitelli P, Trimarco B, Coscioni E, Iaccarino G, Sorriento D (2017) The mechanisms of air pollution and particulate matter in cardiovascular diseases. Heart Fail Rev 22(3):337–347
Florence TM (1995) The role of free radicals in disease. Aust N Z J Ophthalmol 23(1):3–7
Forbes JM, Cooper ME (2013) Mechanisms of diabetic complications. Physiol Rev 93(1):137–188
Fubini B (1998) Surface chemistry and quartz hazard. Ann Occup Hyg 42(8):521–530
Fuzzi S, Baltensperger U, Carslaw K, Decesari S, Denier van der Gon H, Facchini MC et al (2015) Particulate matter, air quality and climate: lessons learned and future needs. Atmos Chem Phys 15:8217–8299
Gadoth N, Göbel HH (2011) In: Friedman J (ed) Oxidative stress and free radical damage in neurology: the role of free radicals in the nervous system. Humana Press, New York
Gaestel M (2010) Biological monitoring of non-thermal effects of mobile phone radiation: recent approaches and challenges. Biol Rev Camb Philos Soc 85(3):489–500
George C, Ammann M, D'Anna B, Donaldson DJ, Nizkorodov SA (2015) Heterogeneous photochemistry in the atmosphere. Chem Rev 115(10):4218–4258
Goldberger L, Breznitz S (1993) Handbook of stress, 2nd edn. The Free Press, New York
Golem DL, Martin-Biggers JT, Koenings MM, Davis KF, Byrd-Bredbenner C (2014) An integrative review of sleep for nutrition professionals. Adv Nutr 5:742–759
Goodarzi M, Moosavi-Movahedi AA, Habibi-Rezaei M, Shourian M, Ghourchian H, Ahmad F et al (2014) Hemoglobin fructation promotes heme degradation through the generation of endogenous reactive oxygen species. Spectrochim Acta A Mol Biomol Spectrosc 130:561–567
Gosling SN, Lowe JA, McGregor GR, Pelling M, Malamud BD (2009) Associations between elevated atmospheric temperature and human mortality: a critical review of the literature. Clim Chang 92(3-4):299–341
Gould GW (1996) Methods for preservation and extension of shelf life. Int J Food Microbiol 33(1):51–64
Halliwell B, Gutteridge JMC (2007) Free radicals in biology and medicine. Oxford University Press, London
Helmrich S, Ragland DR, Leung RW (1991) Physical activity and reduced occurrence of non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med 325(3):147–152
Horton JW (2003) Free radicals and lipid peroxidation mediated injury in burn trauma: the role of antioxidant therapy. Toxicology 189(1-2):75–88
Hu F, Manson J (2001) Diet, lifestyle, and the risk of type 2 diabetes mellitus in women. N Engl J Med 345:790–797
Hunt JV, Dean RT, Wolff SP (1988) Hydroxyl radical production and autoxidative glycosylation. Glucose autoxidation as the cause of protein damage in the experimental glycation model of diabetes mellitus and ageing. Biochem J 256(1):205–212
Ignatowicz E, Woźniak A, Kulza M, Seńczukrzybyłowska M, Cimino F, Piekoszewski W et al (2013) Exposure to alcohol and tobacco smoke causes oxidative stress in rats. Pharmacol Rep 65(4):906–913
Igumbor EU, Sanders D, Puoane TR, Tsolekile L, Schwarz C, Purdy C et al (2012) "Big food," the consumer food environment, health, and the policy response in South Africa. PLoS Med 9:e1001253
Innes KE, Vincent HK (2007) The influence of yoga-based programs on risk profiles in adults with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a systematic review. Evid Based Complement Alternat Med 4(4):469–486
Jurenka J (2008) Therapeutic applications of pomegranate (Punica granatum L.): a review. Altern Med Rev 13(2):128–144
Kelly FJ (2003) Oxidative stress: it's role in air pollution and adverse health effects. Occup Environ Med 60(8):612–616

Kikuchi S, Shinpo K, Takeuchi M, Yamagishi S, Makita Z, Sasaki N et al (2003) Glycation—a sweet tempter for neuronal death. Brain Res Rev 41(2-3):306–323

Kim HJ, Chatani E, Goto Y, Paik SR (2007) Seed-dependent accelerated fibrillation of alpha-synuclein induced by periodic ultrasonication treatment. J Microbial Biotechnol 17:2027–2032

Kinney PL, O'Neill MS, Bell ML, Schwartz J (2008) Approaches for estimating effects of climate change on heat-related deaths: challenges and opportunities. Environ Sci Pol 11(1):87–96

de la Monte SM, Wands JR (2008) Alzheimer's disease is type 3 diabetes–evidence reviewed. J Diabetes Sci Technol 2(6):1101–1113

Lamas A, Miranda JM, Vázquez B, Cepeda A, Franco CM (2016) An evaluation of alternatives to nitrites and sulfites to inhibit the growth of salmonella enterica and listeria monocytogenes in meat products. Foods 5(4):74

Leung C, Herath CB, Jia Z, Andrikopoulos S, Brown BE, Davies MJ et al (2016) Dietary advanced glycation end-products aggravate non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. World J Gastroenterol 22(35):8026–8040

Levine RL, Stadtman ER (2001) Oxidative modification of proteins during aging. Exp Gerontol 36(9):1495–1502

Lim YK, Cai M, Kalnay E, Zhou L (2005) Observational evidence of sensitivity of surface climate changes to land types and urbanization. Geophys Res Lett 32(22):70–72

Limón-Pacheco J, Gonsebatt ME (2009) The role of antioxidants and antioxidant-related enzymes in protective responses to environmentally induced oxidative stress. Mutat Res 674(1-2):137–147

Lind-Albrecht G (2006) Patient education in rheumatology: a way to better disease management using patients' empowerment. Wien Med Wochenschr 156(21-22):583–586

Loro VL, Jorge MB, da Silva KR, Wood CM (2012) Oxidative stress parameters and antioxidant response to sublethal waterborne zinc in a euryhaline teleost Fundulus heteroclitus: protective effects of salinity. Aquat Toxicol 110–111:187–193

Lushchak VI (2011) Environmentally induced oxidative stress in aquatic animals. Aquat Toxicol 101(1):13–30

Lushchak V, Semchyshyn HM (2012) In: Stefanyk V (ed) Oxidative stress – molecular mechanisms and biological effects: introductory chapter. Precarpathian National University, Ukraine

Malek RL, Sajadi H, Abraham J, Grundy MA, Gerhard GS (2004) The effects of temperature reduction on gene expression and oxidative stress in skeletal muscle from adult zebrafish. Comp Biochem Physiol C Toxicol Pharmacol 138(3):363–373

Marieb EN, Hoehn K (2007) Human anatomy & physiology, 7th edn. Pearson Benjamin Cummings, San Francisco, CA

Miranda HV, Outeiro TF (2010) The sour side of neurodegenerative disorders: the effects of protein glycation. J Pathol 221(1):13–25

Mofidi-Najjar F, Taghavi F, Ghadari R, Sheibani N, Moosavi-Movahedi AA (2017) Destructive effect of non-enzymatic glycation on catalase and remediation via curcumin. Arch Biochem Biophys 630:81–90

Mohamed S (2014) Functional foods against metabolic syndrome (obesity, diabetes, hypertension and dyslipidemia) and cardiovascular disease. Trends Food Sci Technol 35:114–128

Moore-Ede MC (1986) Physiology of the circadian timing system: predictive versus reactive homeostasis. Am J Phys 250(5 Pt 2):R737–R752

Mousavy SJ, Riazi GH, Kamarei M, Aliakbarian H, Sattarahmady N, Sharifizadeh A et al (2009) Effects of mobile phone radiofrequency on the structure and function of the normal human hemoglobin. Int J Biol Macromol 44:278–285

Myles IA (2014) Fast food fever: reviewing the impacts of the Western diet on immunity. Nutr J 13:61

Oberhuber JM, Roeckner E, Christoph M, Esch M, Latif M (1998) Predicting the'97 El Niño event with a global climate model. Geophys Res Lett 25(13):2273–2276

Pathak M (2014) Diabetes mellitus type 2 and functional foods of plant origin. Recent Pat Biotechnol 8(2):160–164

Patz JA, Campbell-Lendrum D, Holloway T, Foley JA (2005) Impact of regional climate change on human health. Nature 438(7066):310–317
Peng X, Ma J, Chen F, Wang M (2011) Naturally occurring inhibitors against the formation of advanced glycation end-products. Food Funct 2(6):289–301
Peppa M, Vlassar H (2005) Advanced glycation end products and diabetic complications: a general overview. Hormones 4(1):28–37
Perera PK, Li Y (2011) Mushrooms as a functional food mediator in preventing and ameliorating diabetes. Functional foods in health and disease, vol 4, pp 161–171
Perez V, Alexander DD, Bailey WH (2013) Air ions and mood outcomes: a review and meta-analysis. BMC Psychiatry 13:29
Pham-Huy LA, He H, Pham-Huy C (2008) Free radicals, antioxidants in disease and health. Int J Biomed Sci 4(2):89–96
Phaniendra A, Jestadi DB, Periyasamy L (2015) Free radicals: properties, sources, targets, and their implication in various diseases. Indian J Clin Biochem 30(1):11–26
Rahbar S, Figarola JL (2003) Novel inhibitors of advanced glycation endproducts. Arch Biochem Biophys 419(1):63–79
Rahman K (2007) Studies on free radicals, antioxidants, and co-factors. Clin Interv Aging 2(2):219–236
Rahman T, Hosen I, Towhidul Islam MM, Shekhar HU (2012) Oxidative stress and human health. Adv Biosci Biotechnol 3:997–1019
Ray PD, Huang BW, Tsuji Y (2012) Reactive oxygen species (ROS) homeostasis and redox regulation in cellular signaling. Cell Signal 24(5):981–990
Reiter RJ, Tan D, Osuna C, Gitto E (2000) Actions of melatonin in the reduction of oxidative stress: a review. J Biomed Sci 7(6):444–458
Rezaeizadeh H, Alizadeh M, Naseri M, Shams Ardakani MR (2009) The traditional Iranian medicine point of view on health and disease. Iran J Publ Health 38.(Suppl.1:169–172
Rodova M, Kim S, Abdul Mottaleb M, Rafiq Islam M (2016) Hepcidin regulation by bone morphogenetic protein signaling and iron homeostasis. J Nutr Food Sci 6:521
Rondeau P, Singh N, Caillens H, Bourdon E (2008) Oxidative stresses induced by glycated human or bovine serum albumins on human monocytes. Free Radic Biol Med 45(6):799–812
Sahin E, Gumuslu S (2007) Stress-dependent induction of protein oxidation, lipid peroxidation and anti-oxidants in peripheral tissues of rats: comparison of three stress models (immobilization, cold and immobilization-cold). Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol 34(5-6):425–431
Samsel A, Seneff S (2013) Glyphosate, pathways to modern diseases II: celiac sprue and gluten intolerance. Interdiscip Toxicol 6(4):159–184
Santer BD, Mears C, Wentz FJ, Taylor KE, Gleckler PJ, Wigley TML et al (2007) Identification of human-induced changes in atmospheric moisture content. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104:15248–15253
Sattarahmady N, Moosavi-Movahedi AA, Ahmad F, Hakimelahi GH, Habibi-Rezaei M, Saboury AA et al (2007) Formation of the molten globule-like state during prolonged glycation of human serum albumin. Biochim Biophys Acta 1770(6):933–942
Scott E (2003) Food safety and food borne disease in 21st century homes. Can J Infect Dis 14(5):277–280
Seeram NP, Schulman RN, Heber D (2006) Pomegranates ancient roots to modern medicine. Taylor & Francis, New York
Sefidbakht Y, Hosseinkhani S, Mortazavi M, Tavakolnia I, Khellat MR, Shakiba-Herfeh M et al (2013) Effects of 940 MHz EMF on luciferase solution: structure, function and dielectric studies. Bioelectromagnetics 34(6):489–498
Sefidbakht Y, Moosavi-Movahedi AA, Hosseinkhani S, Khodagholi F, Torkzadeh-Mahani M, Foolad F et al (2014) Effects of 940 MHz EMF on bioluminescence and oxidative response of stable luciferase producing HEK cells. Photochem Photobiol Sci 13(7):1082–1092
Selman C, McLaren JS, Himanka MJ, Speakman JR (2000) Effect of long-term cold exposure on antioxidant enzyme activities in a small mammal. Free Radic Biol Med 28(8):1279–1285

Semchyshyn HM, Abrat OB, Miedzobrodzki J, Inoue Y, Lushchak VI (2011) Acetate but not propionate induces oxidative stress in bakers' yeast Saccharomyces cerevisiae. Redox Rep 16(1):15–23

Siegel S (2008) Learning and the wisdom of the body. Learn Behav 36(3):242–252

Simic MG, Taylor KA, Ward JF, Von Sonntag C (1988) Oxygen radicals in biology and medicine. Plenum Press, New York

Singh KK (2006) In: Starkov A, Wallace KB (eds) Oxidative stress, disease and cancer: Yin and Yang of mitochondrial ROS. Roswell Park Cancer Institute, New York

Singh R, Barden A, Mori T, Beilin L (2001) Advanced glycation end-products: a review. Diabetologia 44(2):129–146

Singh VP, Bali A, Singh N, Jaggi AS (2014) Advanced glycation end products and diabetic complications. Korean J Physiol Pharmacol 18(1):1–14

Smith HR, Comella CL, Hogl B (2008) Sleep medicine, 1st edn. Cambridge University Press, New York

Spiegel K, Leproult R, Van Cauter E (1999) Impact of sleep debt on metabolic and endocrine function. Lancet 23:1435–1439. 1999;354(9188):1435–9

Surai PF (2002) Natural antioxidants in avian nutrition and reproduction, vol 1. Nottingham University Press, Nottingham

Szent-Györgyi A (1976) Electronic biology and cancer. Marcel Dekker Inc., New York

Taghavi F, Moosavi-Movahedi AA, Bohlooli M, Hadi Alijanvand H, Salami M, Maghami P et al (2013) Potassium sorbate as an AGE activator for human serum albumin in the presence and absence of glucose. Int J Biol Macromol 62:146–154

Taghavi F, Moosavi-Movahedi AA, Bohlooli M, Habibi-Rezaei M, Hadi Alijanvand H, Amanlou M et al (2014) Energetic domains and conformational analysis of human serum albumin upon co-incubation with sodium benzoate and glucose. J Biomol Struct Dyn 32(3):438–447

Taghavi F, Habibi-Rezaei M, Bohlooli M, Saboury AA, Moosavi-Movahedi AA (2016a) The comparative study of potassium sorbate and sodium benzoate upon treated with human serum albumin concerning Maillard reaction and amyloid formation. J Int Soc Antioxid 3:1–4

Taghavi F, Habibi-Rezaei M, Bohlooli M, Farhadi M, Goodarzi M, Movaghati S et al (2016b) Anti-amyloidogenic effects of ellagic acid on human serum albumin fibril formation induced by potassium sorbate and glucose. J Mol Recognit 29(12):611–618

Taghavi F, Habibi-Rezaei M, Amani M, Saboury AA, Moosavi-Movahedi AA (2017) The status of glycation in protein aggregation. Int J Biol Macromol 100:67–74

Takeuchi M, Sakasai-Sakai A, Takata T, Ueda T, Takino J, Tsutsumi M et al (2015) Serum levels of toxic AGEs (TAGE) may be a promising novel biomarker in development and progression of NASH. Med Hypotheses 84(5):490–493

Terzi M, Ozberk B, Deniz OG, Kaplan S (2016) The role of electromagnetic fields in neurological disorders. J Chem Neuroanat 75(Pt B):77–84

Thanan R, Oikawa S, Hiraku Y, Ohnishi S, Ma N, Pinlaor S et al (2014) Oxidative stress and its significant roles in neurodegenerative diseases and cancer. Int J Mol Sci 16(1):193–217

Thornalley P, Wolff S, Crabbe J, Stern A (1984) The autoxidation of glyceraldehyde and other simple monosaccharides under physiological conditions catalysed by buffer ions. Biochim Biophys Acta 797(2):276–287

Thornalley PJ, Langborg A, Minhas HS (1999) Formation of glyoxal, methylglyoxal and 3-deoxyglucosone in the glycation of proteins by glucose. Biochem J 344:109–116

Torday JS (2015) Homeostasis as the mechanism of evolution. Biology 4(3):573–590

Torday JS, Rehan VK (2009) The evolution of cell communication: the road not taken. Cell Commun Insights 2:17–25

Tripathi BK, Srivastava AK (2006) Diabetes mellitus: complications and therapeutics. Med Sci Monit 12(7):RA130–RA147

Turk Z (2010) Glycotoxin, carbonyl stress and relevance to diabetes and its complications. Physiol Res 59(2):147–156

Valipour M, Maghami P, Habibi-Rezaei M, Sadeghpour M, Khademian MA, Mosavi K et al (2015) Interaction of insulin with methyl tert-butyl ether promotes molten globule-like state and production of reactive oxygen species. Int J Biol Macromol 80:610–614
Valipour M, Maghami P, Habibi-Rezaei M, Sadeghpour M, Khademian MA, Mosavi K et al (2017) Counteraction of the deleterious effects of reactive oxygen species on hemoglobin structure and function by ellagic acid. J Lumin 182:1–7
Valko M, Leibfritz D, Moncol J, Cronin MT, Mazur M, Telser J (2007) Free radicals and antioxidants in normal physiological functions and human disease. Int J Biochem Cell Biol 39(1):44–84
Vallyathan V, Shi XL, Dalal NS, Irr W, Castranova V (1988) Generation of free radicals from freshly fractured silica dust: potential role in acute silica-induced lung injury. Am Rev Respir Dis 138(5):1213–1219
Vander AJ, Luciano D, Sherman J (2001) Human physiology: the mechanisms of body function, 8th edn. McGraw-Hill High Education, Boston, MA
Vendemiale G, Grattagliano I, Altomare E (1999) An update on the role of free radicals and antioxidant defense in human disease. Int J Clin Lab Res 29(2):49–55
Wheeler ML, Dunbar SA, Jaacks LM, Karmally W, Mayer-Davis EJ, Wylie-Rosett J, Yancy WS Jr (2012) Macronutrients, food groups, and eating patterns in the management of diabetes. Diabetes Care 35(2):434–445
Wigley TML, Jaumann PJ, Santer BD, Taylor KE (1998) Relative detectability of greenhouse-gas and aerosol climate change signals. Clim Dyn 14:781–790
World Health Organization (2002) Traditional medicine strategy 2002-2005. WHO, Geneva, p 74
World Health Organization (2011) Global status report on noncommunicable diseases 2010. WHO, Italy, p 176
Wu D, Zhai Q, Shi X (2006) Oxidant stress, inflammation and genetics: alcohol-induced oxidative stress and cell responses. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 21:S26–S29
Wu CH, Huang SM, Lin JA, Yen GC (2011) Inhibition of advanced glycation end products formation by foodstuffs. Food Funct 2(5):224–234
Yach D, Khan M, Bradley D, Hargrove R, Kehoe S, Mensah G (2010) The role and challenges of the food industry in addressing chronic disease. Glob Health 6:10
Yadav H, Jain S, Bissi L, Marotta F (2016) Gut microbiome derived metabolites to regulate energy homeostasis: how microbiome talks to host. Metabolomics 6:e150
Yamagishi S, Matsui T (2010) Advanced glycation end products, oxidative stress and diabetic nephropathy. Oxidative Med Cell Longev 3(2):101–108
Yamagishi S, Takeuchi M, Inagaki Y, Nakamura K, Imaizumi T (2003) Role of advanced glycation end products (AGEs) and their receptor (RAGE) in the pathogenesis of diabetic microangiopathy. Int J Clin Pharmacol Res 23(4):129–134
Yamagishi S, Nakamura K, Imaizumi T (2005) Advanced glycation end products (AGEs) and diabetic vascular complications. Curr Diabetes Rev 1(1):93–106
Yanga W, Omayeb ST (2009) Air pollutants, oxidative stress and human health. Mutat Res 674:45–54. 2009;674(1–2):45–54
Yim E, Baquerizo Nole KL, Tosti A (2014) Contact dermatitis caused by preservatives. Dermatitis 25(5):215–231
Yuan H, Ma Q, Ye L, Piao G (2016) The traditional medicine and modern medicine from natural products. Molecules 21(5):E559
Zarfeshany A, Asgary S, Javanmard SH (2014) Potent health effects of pomegranate. Adv Biomed Res 3:100
Zengin N, Yüzbaşıoğlu D, Unal F, Yılmaz S, Aksoy H (2011) The evaluation of the genotoxicity of two food preservatives: sodium benzoate and potassium benzoate. Food Chem Toxicol 49(4):763–769
Zhang L, Chen B, Tang L (2012) Metabolic memory: mechanisms and implications for diabetic retinopathy. Diabetes Res Clin Pract 96(3):286–293

Secondary Metabolites from Turkish *Astragalus* Species

Derya Gülcemal, Behnaz Aslanipour, and Erdal Bedir

Introduction

The genus *Astragalus* belonging to the Leguminosae family is a widely distributed plant throughout the temperate regions of the world, located principally in Europe, Asia, and North America. It is represented in the flora of Turkey by 447 species, of which 224 are endemic (Davis 1970; Aytaç 2000). The roots of various *Astragalus* species represent very old and well-known drugs in traditional medicine for the treatment of nephritis, diabetes, and uterine cancer and as antiperspirant, diuretic, and tonic (Tang and Eisenbrand 1992). In Turkish folk medicine, the aqueous extracts of some *Astragalus* species are used to treat leukemia as well as for wound healing (Çalış et al. 1997; Bedir et al. 2000a).

Previous phytochemical studies on Turkish *Astragalus* species resulted in the isolation of a series of oleanane- and cycloartane-type triterpene saponins (Bedir et al. 1998a, b, 1999a, b, 2001a, b; Çalış et al. 1997, 2008a, b; Denizli et al. 2014; Djimtombaye et al. 2013; Gülcemal et al. 2011, 2012, 2013; Horo et al. 2010, 2012; Polat et al. 2009, 2010; Savran et al. 2012). Cycloartane- and oleanane-type

D. Gülcemal (✉)
Faculty of Science, Department of Chemistry, Ege University, Bornova, Izmir, Turkey
e-mail: derya.gulcemal@ege.edu.tr

B. Aslanipour
Faculty of Engineering, Department of Bioengineering, Ege University, Bornova, Izmir, Turkey

E. Bedir (✉)
Faculty of Engineering, Department of Bioengineering, Izmir Institute of Technology, Urla, Izmir, Turkey
e-mail: erdalbedir@iyte.edu.tr

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_2

glycosides from *Astragalus* species have shown interesting biological properties, including immunostimulating (Çalış et al. 1997; Bedir et al. 2000a; Yeşilada et al. 2005), antiprotozoal (Özipek et al. 2005), antiviral (Gariboldi et al. 1995), and cytotoxic activities (Tian et al. 2005).

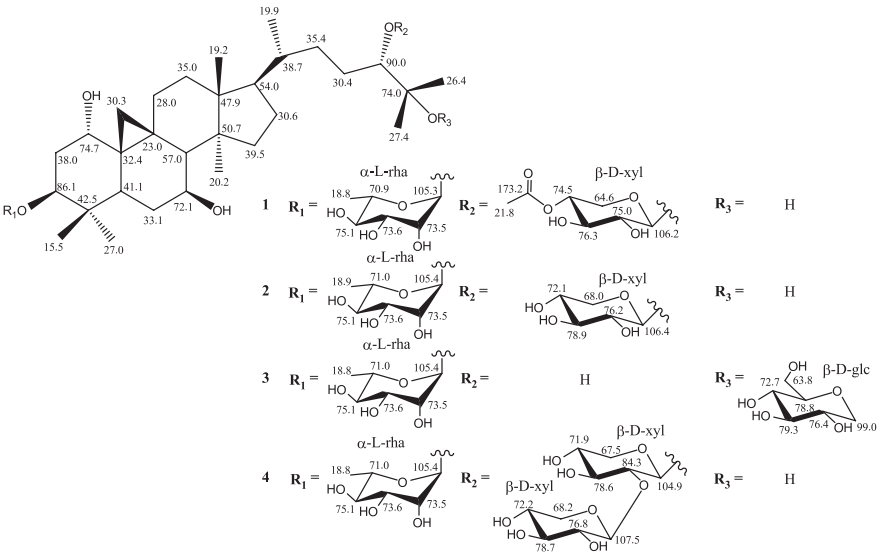
Turkish *Astragalus* species have been studied extensively from phytochemistry and biological activity perspectives for the last 25 years. The following is a summary of these 25 years.

Phytochemistry and Biological Activity

Until now, 31 out of 447 Turkish *Astragalus* species, from 14 different sections, have been investigated for their secondary metabolite contents, and structures of 104 new triterpene saponins, 5 new phenolic glycosides, a new tryptophan derivative, and a new maltol glucoside were identified besides 63 known compounds.

Çalış et al. (1996) reported on the isolation and structural elucidation of four novel cycloartane-type triterpene glycosides, macrophyllosaponins A–D (**1–4**), from the roots of *Astragalus oleifolius* (Sect. Macrophyllium). By means of chemical (acetylation, alkaline hydrolysis) and spectroscopic methods (IR, 1D- and 2D-NMR, FABMS), their structures were established as 3-*O*-*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-24-*O*-(4″-*O*-acetyl)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-1*α*,3*β*,7*β*,24(*S*),-25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**1**), 3-*O*-*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-24-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-1*α*,3*β*,7*β*,-24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**2**), 3-*O*-*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-25-*O*-*β*-D-glucoyranosyl-1*α*,3*β*,7*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**3**), and 3-*O*-*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-24-*O*-(2-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-1*α*,3*β*,7*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**4**). According to the authors, the sapogenol moiety of these saponins was encountered for the first time in this study. The presence of hydroxyl groups at C-1 and C-7 positions of the sapogenol moiety are rare in *Astragalus* cycloartane chemistry as well as the absence of a hydroxyl group in ring D (Çalış et al. 1996).

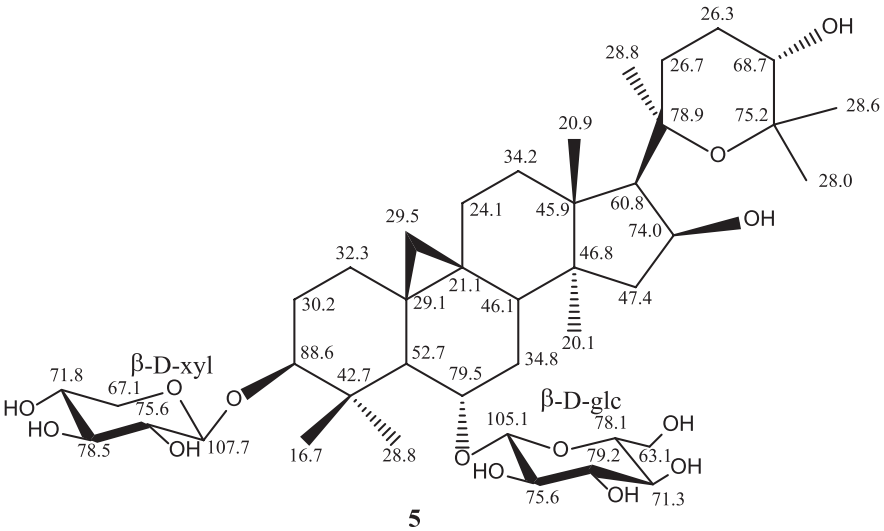
Compound **1**; $C_{43}H_{72}O_{14}$; $[\alpha]^{20}_D$ −5.0° (*c* 0.28, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3400 (OH), 1735 (ester carbonyl); δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 835. Compound **2**; $C_{41}H_{70}O_{13}$; $[\alpha]^{20}_D$ +2.8° (*c* 0.58, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3400 (OH); δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 793. Compound **3**; $C_{42}H_{72}O_{14}$; $[\alpha]^{20}_D$ +15° (*c* 0.32, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3400 (OH); δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 823. Compound **4**; $C_{46}H_{78}O_{17}$; $[\alpha]^{20}_D$ −1.0° (*c* 0.32, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3400 (OH); δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 925. The structures and ^{13}C NMR data of the aglycone moiety of **1** are provided below together with sugar residues identified for compounds **1**–**4**.



Calis et al. isolated eight known saponins: astrasieversianins II (Gan et al. 1986) and X (Gan et al. 1986); astragalosides I (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), II (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), IV (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), and VI (Kitagawa et al. 1983b); and cyclocanthosides E (Isaev et al. 1992) and G (Isaev et al. 1992) from the roots of *Astragalus melanophrurius* (Sect. Christiana). The metabolites were examined for their bioactivities; referring to the results, they were found to have modest antibiotic activity toward *Escherichia coli*, *Bacillus subtilis*, and *Micrococcus luteus.* On the other hand, all compounds exhibited immunomodulatory activity via stimulation of human lymphocyte proliferation in the concentration range of 0.01–10 μg/mL (Çalış et al. 1997).

A novel cycloartane-type glycoside, cyclocephaloside I (**5**), was reported from the roots of *Astragalus microcephalus* in addition to known glycosides: cyclocanthoside E (Isaev et al. 1992) and astragaloside IV (Kitagawa et al. 1983a). The structure of **5** was elucidated on the basis of spectral (IR, ^{1}H and ^{13}C NMR, and FABMS) and chemical (acetylation) methods and established as 20,25-epoxy-3*β*-(*β*-D-xylopyranosyl)oxy-6*α*-(*β*-D-glucopyranosyl)oxy-cycloartane-16*β*,24*α*-diol (Bedir et al. 1998a).

Compound **5**; $C_{41}H_{68}O_{14}$; $[\alpha]^{20}_{D}$ +6.1° (*c* 0.42, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: (KBr) 3400 (OH); δ_C (C_5D_5N); FABMS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 807. The structure and ^{13}C chemical shifts are given below for compound **5**.

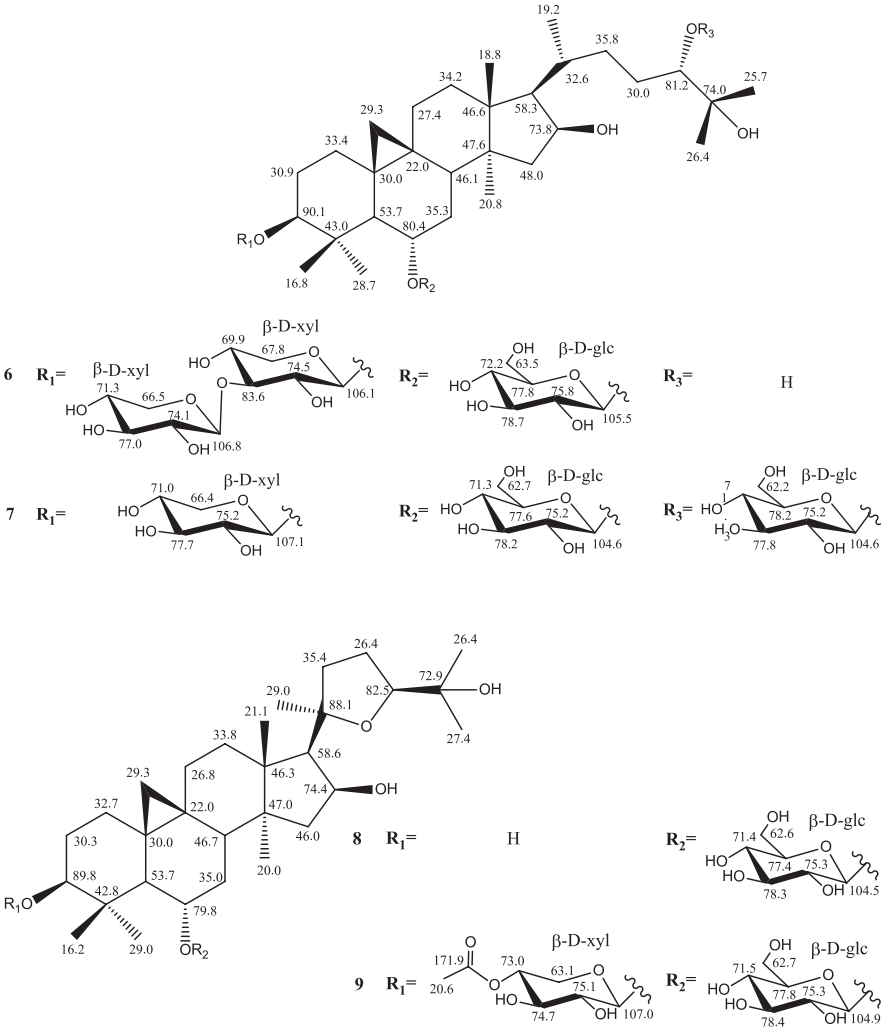


5

In 1998, a report described three new cycloartane-type triterpene glycosides, brachyosides A (**6**), B (**8**), and C (**7**), from the roots of *Astragalus brachypterus* (Sect. Pterophorus) and one new glycoside, cyclocephaloside II (**9**), from the roots of *Astragalus microcephalus* (Sect. Rhacophorus) together with five known saponins, astragalosides I (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), II (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), and IV (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), cyclocanthoside E (Isaev et al. 1992), and cycloastragenol (Kitagawa et al. 1983a). The structures of the new compounds were established by detailed spectral analysis, as 3-*O*-[*β*-D-xylopyranosyl(1→3)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**6**), 3-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-24-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**7**), 20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxy-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,25-tetrahydroxycycloartane (**8**), and 20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxy-3-*O*-(4′-*O*-acetyl)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,25-tetrahydroxycycloartane (**9**) (Bedir et al. 1998b).

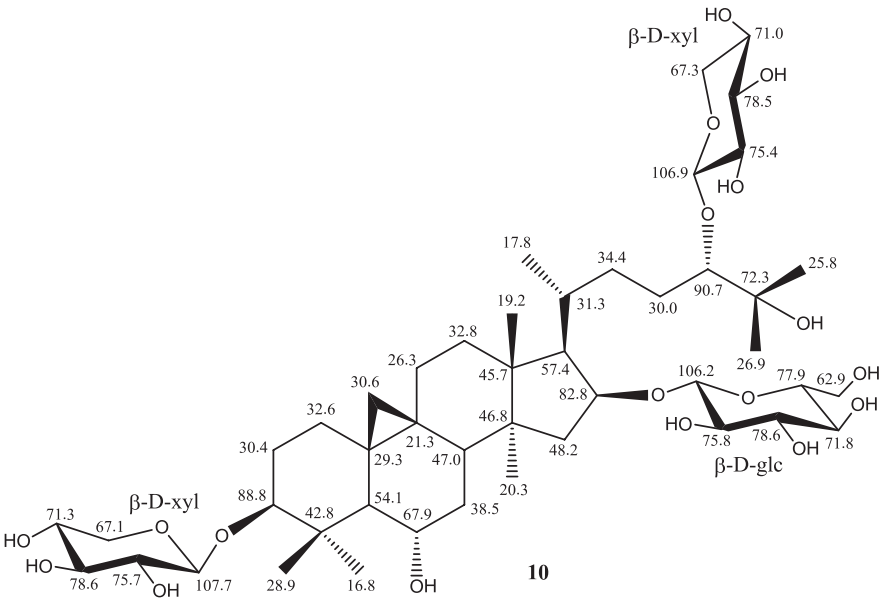
Compound **6**; $C_{46}H_{78}O_{18}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +15.5° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* $[M–H]^-$ 917. Compound **7**; $C_{47}H_{80}O_{19}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +12.5° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* $[M–H]^-$ 947. Compound **8**; $C_{36}H_{60}O_{10}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +40.1° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* $[M–H]^-$ 651. Compound **9**; $C_{43}H_{70}O_{15}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +19.6° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* $[M–H]^-$ 825.

The structures and ^{13}C NMR data of the aglycone moieties of **6** and **9** are provided below together with sugar residues determined for compounds **6**–**9**.



In 1999, a new tridesmosidic cycloartane-type glycoside cephalotoside A (**10**) was isolated from the roots of *Astragalus cephalotes* var. *brevicalyx* (Sect. Rhacophorus) in addition to the known glycosides cyclocanthosides A (Fadeev et al. 1988), D (Isaev et al. 1992), and E (Isaev et al. 1992). The structure of the new compound was established on the basis of spectral data and chemical (acetylation) methods as 3*β*-(*β*-D-xylopyranosyl)oxy-16*β*-(*β*-D-glucopyranosyl)oxy-24-(*β*-D-xylopyranosyl)oxy-cycloartane-6*α*,25-diol (Çalış et al. 1999).

Compound **10**; $C_{46}H_{78}O_{18}$; $[\alpha]^{20}_{D}$ +20.9° (*c* 0.53, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: (KBr) 3400 (OH), 2927 (CH), 1170 and 1044 (C–O–C); δ_C (C_5D_5N); FABMS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 941. The structure and ^{13}C chemical shifts of compound **10** are presented below.

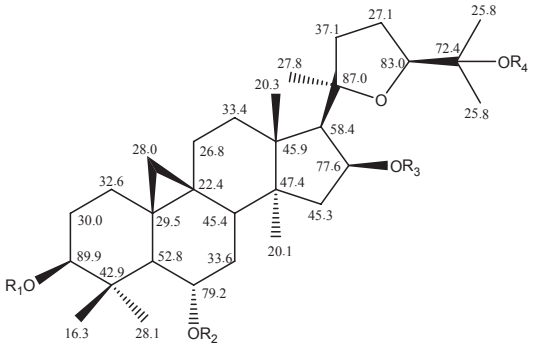


10

The study of the chemical constituents of *Astragalus trojanus* roots (Sect. Pterophorus) resulted in the isolation of six novel cycloartane-type glycosides (**11**–**16**). In addition, a new oleanane glycoside (**17**) and a new tryptophan derivative (**18**) were also isolated and characterized. MS, IR, ^{1}H NMR, and ^{13}C NMR experiments established the structures of compounds **11–17** as 3-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-16-*O*-acetoxy-(20*R*,24*S*)-epoxy-3*β*,6*α*,25-trihydroxycycloartane (trojanosideA),3-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-6-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-25-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-(20*R*,24*S*)-epoxy-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,25-tetrahydroxycycloartane (trojanoside B), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-24-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,(24*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (trojanoside C), 3-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-24-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6α,16*β*,(24*S*), 25-pentahydroxycycloartane (trojanoside D), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-24-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,(24*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (trojanoside E), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-24-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,(24*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (trojanoside F), and 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl]-29-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,22*β*,24,29-tetrahydroxyolean-12-en (astrojanoside A), respectively. The structure of compound **18**, named as achillamide trivially, was determined as *N*-[3-hydroxy-3-methyl-glutaroyl]-tryptophan (Bedir et al. 1999a). Besides, the known compounds astrasieversianin I (Gan et al. 1986), astrasieversianin II (Gan et al. 1986), astragaloside I (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), astragaloside IV (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), astragaloside VII (Kitagawa et al. 1983c), and brachyoside C (Bedir et al. 1998b) were also purified and identified from the roots of *A. trojanus*. According to the authors, tetraglycosidic-type cycloartanes such

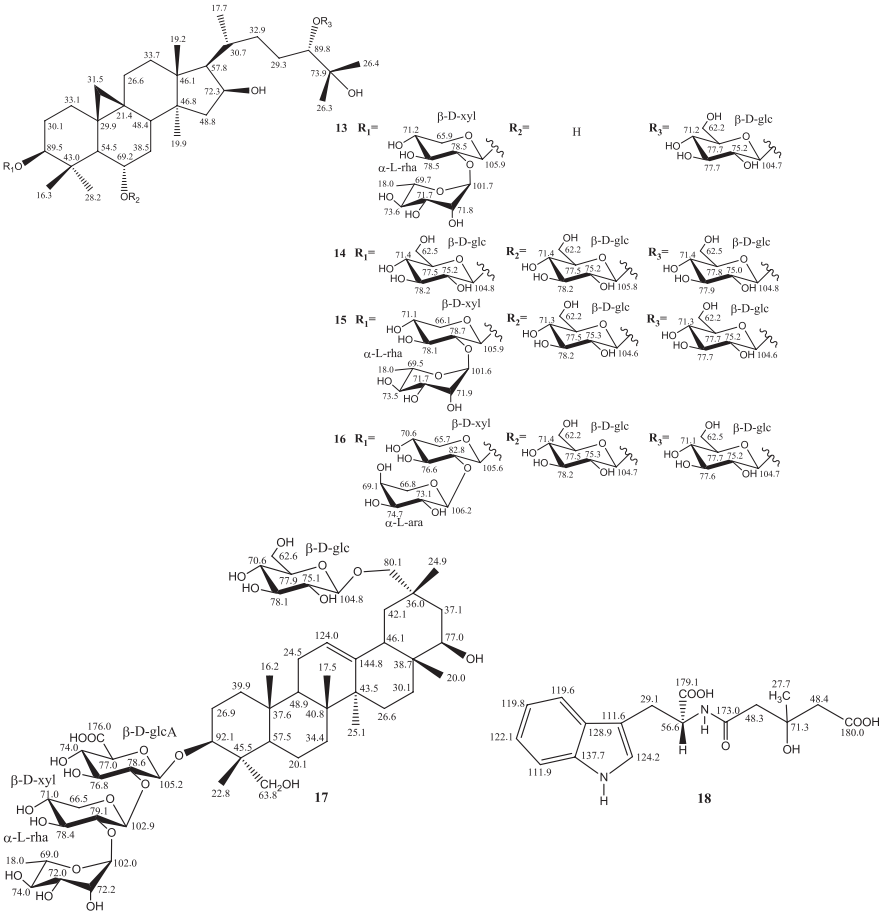
as trojanosides E and F were isolated from *Astragalus* genus for the first time (Bedir et al. 1999a).

Compound **11**; $C_{43}H_{70}O_{15}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +20.1° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3420 (OH), 1735 (ester carbonyl), 1260 and 1049 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* $[M–H]^-$ 825. Compound **12**; $C_{46}H_{76}O_{18}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +13.2° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3420 (OH), 1270 and 1040 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* $[M–H]^-$ 915. Compound **13**; $C_{47}H_{80}O_{18}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ −5.0° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3420 (OH), 2933 (CH), 1250 and 1024 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* $[M–H]^-$ 931. Compound **14**; $C_{48}H_{82}O_{20}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +22.5° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3392 (OH), 2935 (CH), 1257 and 1044 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* $[M–H]^-$ 977. Compound **15**; $C_{53}H_{90}O_{23}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +2.6° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3392 (OH), 2933 (CH), 1257 and 1044 (C–O–C) cm^{-1}; δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* $[M–H]^-$ 1093. Compound **16**; $C_{52}H_{88}O_{23}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +5.2° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3420 (OH), 2924 (CH), 1270 and 1040 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* $[M–H]^-$ 1079. Compound **17**; $C_{53}H_{86}O_{23}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +16.7° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3393 (OH), 2926 (CH), 1749 (C=O), 1636 (C=C), 1271 and 1045 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* $[M–H]^-$ 1089. Compound **18**; $C_{17}H_{20}O_6N_2$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ −29.0° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3500 (NH), 3392 (OH), 1748, 1733, 1683 (CO-NH, C=O); δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* $[M–H]^-$ 347. The structures and ^{13}C NMR data of compounds **11**–**18** are provided below.



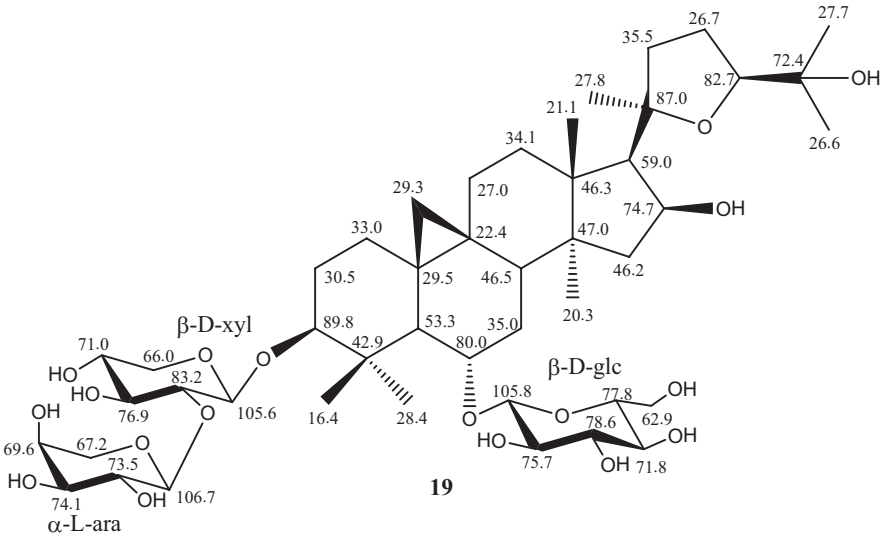
11 **R$_1$**= β-D-xyl (70.9, 66.5, 75.1, 77.8, 107.1) **R$_2$**= β-D-glc (62.7, 70.4, 77.6, 75.1, 78.1, 104.7) **R$_3$**= (20.6, 171.9) **R$_4$**= H

12 **R$_1$**= β-D-xyl (70.8, 66.1, 75.0, 77.6, 105.2) **R$_2$**= β-D-xyl (70.8, 66.1, 75.0, 77.6, 105.2) **R$_3$**= H **R$_4$**= β-D-glc (62.5, 71.1, 77.5, 75.0, 77.9, 98.4)



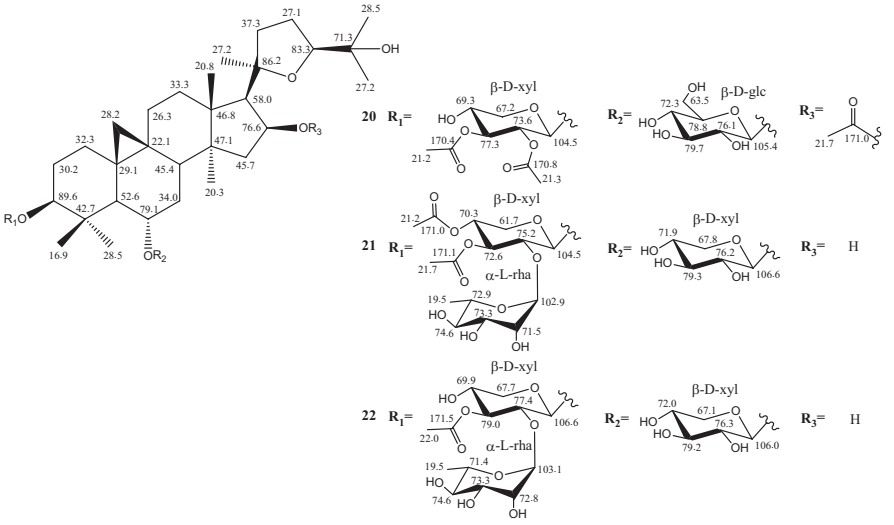
Isolation of trojanoside H (**19**) was also reported from the aerial parts of *Astragalus trojanus* along with six known glycosides astragaloside II (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), astragaloside IV (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), astragaloside VII (Bedir et al. 1999a), brachyoside B (Bedir et al. 1998b), brachyoside C (Bedir et al. 1998b), and the pterocarpan derivative maackiain (Chaudhuri et al. 1995). The structure of trojanoside H was confirmed by spectral methods (1-D and 2-D NMR and FABMS) and established as 3-*O*-*β*-[*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxy-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,25-tetrahydroxycycloartane (Bedir et al. 1999b).

Compound **19**; $C_{46}H_{76}O_{18}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +14.2°; δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* $[M–H]^-$ 915. The ^{13}C chemical shifts are given below for compound **19**.



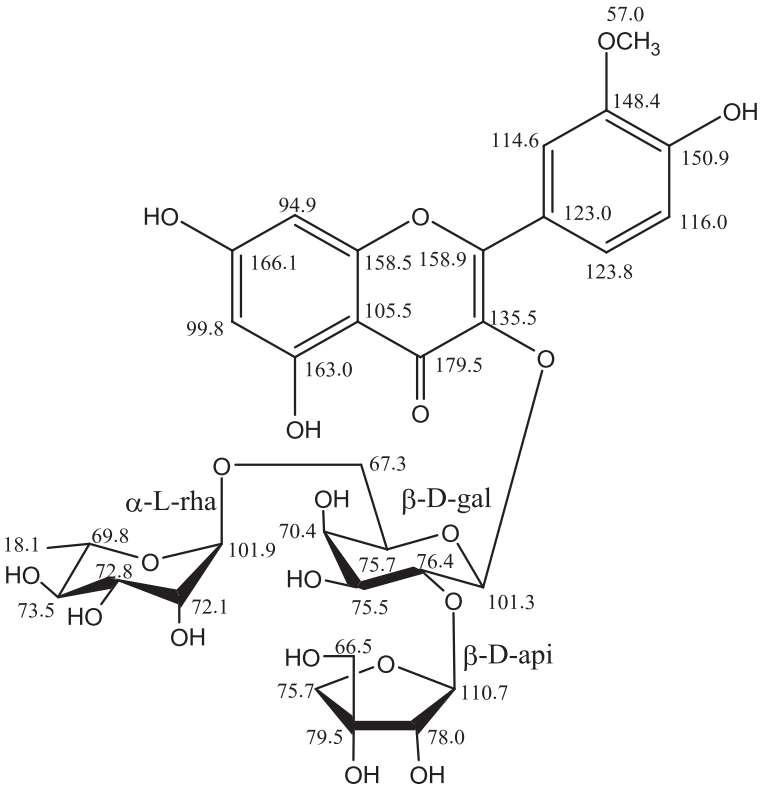
Another series of cycloartane saponins, trojanosides I–K (**20, 21,** and **22**), were also isolated from the aerial parts of *Astragalus trojanus*. The structures of three new saponins were established as 3-*O*-*β*-(2′,3′-di-*O*-acetyl)-D-xylopyranosyl-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-16-*O*-acetoxy-20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxycycloartane-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,25-tetrol (**20**), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-(3′,4′-di-*O*-acetyl)-D-xylopyranosyl]-6-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxycycloartane-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,25-tetrol (**21**), and 3-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-6,16-di-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxycycloartane-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,25-tetrol (**22**) (Bedir et al. 2001a). Astrasieversianin I (Gan et al. 1986), astrasieversianin II (Gan et al. 1986), astrasieversianin XV (Gan et al. 1986), astragaloside I (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), astragaloside II (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), astragaloside IV (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), astragaloside VII (Kitagawa et al. 1983c), and trojanoside H (Bedir et al. 1999b) were also isolated and identified on the basis of their HR-ESI-MS and NMR (^{1}H– and ^{13}C–) data, in comparison with literature values (Bedir et al. 2001a).

Compound **20**; $C_{47}H_{74}O_{17}$; ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3419, 2936, 1726, 1461, 1379, 1262, 1078 and 1041; δ_C (C_5D_5N); HR-ESI-MS at *m/z* [M + Na]$^+$ 933.3207. Compound **21**; $C_{50}H_{80}O_{19}$; ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3408, 2928, 1745, 1371, 1244 and 1042; δ_C (C_5D_5N); HR-ESI-MS at *m/z* [M + Na]$^+$ 1007.3524. Compound **22**; $C_{48}H_{78}O_{18}$; ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3395, 2934, 1726, 1461, 1373, 1262 and 1057; δ_C (C_5D_5N); HR-ESI-MS at *m/z* [M + Na]$^+$ 965.5188. The structures and ^{13}C NMR data of the compounds (**20**–**22**) are shown below.



Bedir et al. reported on the isolation and characterization of a new flavonol glycoside, isorhamnetin 3-*O*-*β*-D-apiofuranosyl-(1→2)-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→6)]-*β*-D-galactopyranoside (**23**), and a known glycoside, isorhamnetin 3-*O*-*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→6)-*β*-D-galactopyranoside (Burasheva et al. 1975), from the aerial parts of *Astragalus vulneraria* (Sect. Vulneraria) (Bedir et al. 2000b).

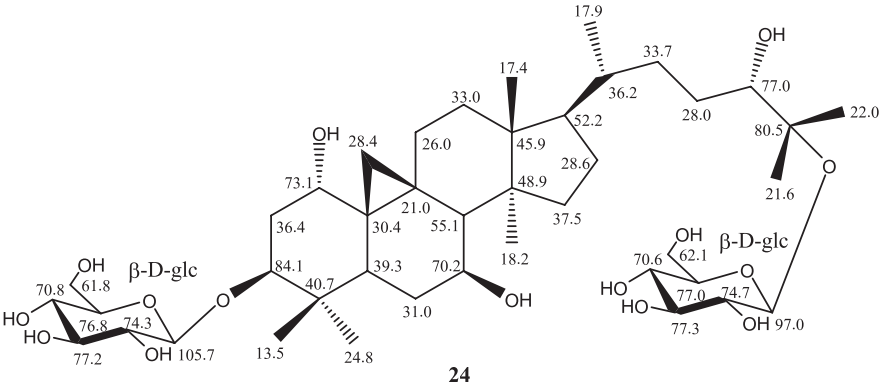
Compound **23**; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +38.4° (c 0.1, MeOH); δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* $[M–H]^-$ 755. The structure and ^{13}C chemical shifts are given below for compound **23**.



23

The same year, macrophyllosaponin E (**24**), a novel cycloartane-type triterpene, has been isolated from the roots of *Astragalus oleifolius* (Bedir et al. 2000c).The structure and ^{13}C chemical shifts are provided below for compound **24**.

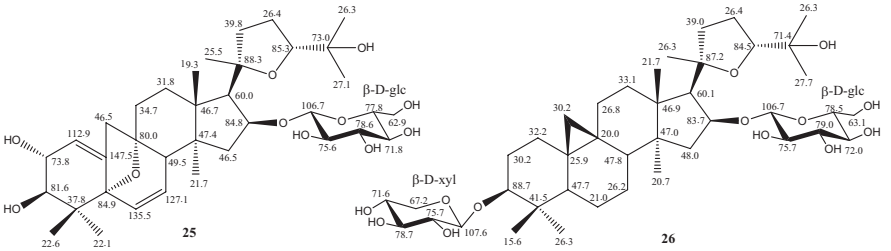
Compound **24**; $C_{42}H_{72}O_{15}$; δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-ESI-FT-MS at *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 839.4721.



24

In 2001, Bedir et al. reported on the isolation and structural elucidation of two novel cycloartane-type glycosides, 16-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-20(*S*),24(*R*)-5*α*-9-diepoxy-2*α*,3*β*,16*β*,25-tetrahydroxy-9,10-seco-cycloarta-1(10),6(7)-diene (**25**) and 3-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-16-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-20(*S*),24(*R*)-epoxy-3*β*,16*β*,25-trithydroxycycloartane (**26**) from the roots of *Astragalus prusianus*. In the paper, a unique 5-α-9-epoxy structural feature in **25** was reported that was encountered for the first time for triterpene chemistry in nature (Bedir et al. 2001b).

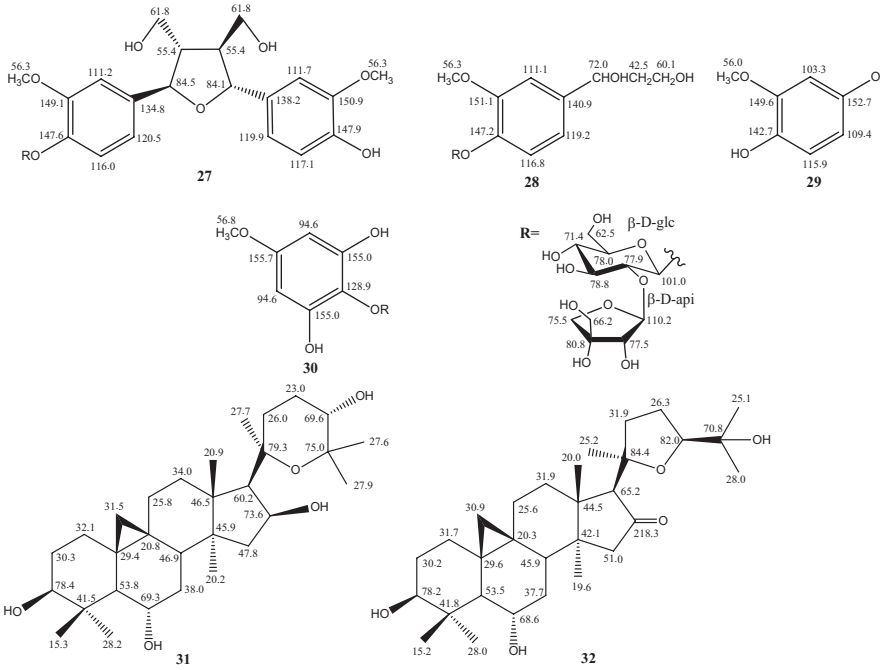
Compound **25**; $C_{36}H_{56}O_{11}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ −112.5° (*c* 0.004, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3396, 2927, 2395, 2358, 2339, 1738, 1593, 1382, 1256, 1165, 1073 and 1032; δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-ESI-FT-MS *m/z* [M + Na]$^+$ 687.2429. Compound **26**; $C_{41}H_{68}O_{13}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +20.0° (*c* 0.004, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3376, 2933, 2870, 2363, 1726, 1459, 1381, 1166, 1071 and 1045; δ_C (C_5D_5N); HR-ESI-FT-MS *m/z* [M + Na]$^+$ 791.4842. The structures and ^{13}C chemical shifts are presented below for compounds **25** and **26**.



In another study in 2001, four new phenolic glycosides, *β*-apiofuranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-glucopyranosides (**27**–**30**), along with the new cycloartane triterpenes 20(*R*),25-epoxy-3*α*,6*β*,16*α*,24*β*-tetrahydroxycycloartane (**31**) and 20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxy-3*β*,6*α*,25-trihydroxycycloartan-16-one (**32**) were isolated and purified from the roots of *Astragalus zahlbruckneri* (Sect. Rhacophorus). Structures of the new compounds were established as (+)-neo-olivil 4-*O*-*β*-apiofuranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-glucopyranoside (**27**), 7,8-dihydro-7-hydroxyconiferyl alcohol 4-*O*-*β*-apiofuranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-glucopyranoside (**28**), 2-methoxyphenol-4-*O*-*β*-apiofuranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-glucopyranoside (**29**), 3-hydroxy-5-methoxyphenol-2-*O*-*β*-apiofuranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-glucopyranoside (**30**), 20(*R*), 25-epoxy-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24*α*-tetrahydroxycycloartane (**31**), and 20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxy-3*β*,6*α*,25-trihydroxycycloartan-16-one (**32**). Additionally, a known cycloartane sapogenin, namely, cycloastragenol (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), was isolated from the apolar fraction of *A. zahlbruckneri*. Compound **32** was reported before as a cycloartane derivative obtained by chemical oxidation of cycloastragenol (Kitagawa et al. 1983a, b, d). The structures were elucidated by a combination of spectroscopic data (^1H NMR, ^{13}C NMR, HMBC, HMQC, MS, and IR) (Çalış et al. 2001).

Compound **27**; $C_{31}H_{42}O_{16}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ −69.9° (c 0.5, MeOH); δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* [M–H]$^-$ 669. Compound **28**; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ −56.0 (c 0.5, MeOH); δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* [M–H]$^-$ 491. Compound **29**; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ −59.0° (c 0.5, MeOH); δ_C (CD_3OD); FABMS *m/z* [M–H]$^-$ 433. Compound **30**; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ −40.5° (c 0.5, MeOH); δ_C (CD_3OD);

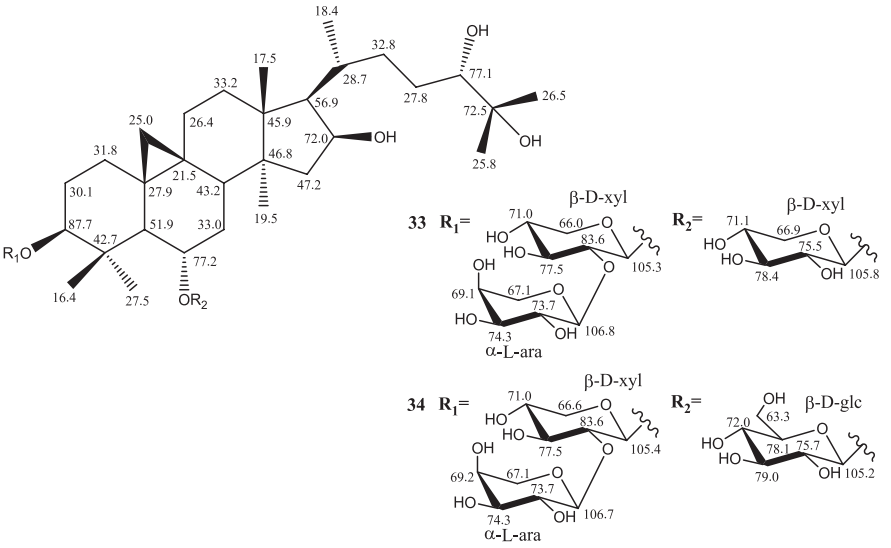
FABMS *m/z* $[M–H]^-$ 449. Compound **31**; $C_{30}H_{50}O_5$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +23.3° (c 0.5, $CHCl_3$); δ_C ($CDCl_3$); FABMS *m/z* $[M–H]^-$ 489. Compound **32**; $C_{30}H_{48}O_5$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +10.0° (c 0.5, $CHCl_3$); δ_C ($CDCl_3$); FABMS *m/z* $[M–H]^-$ 487. The structures and ^{13}C chemical shifts of compounds **27–32** are shown below.



Another phytochemical investigation was published in 2005, and two new cycloartane-type glycosides oleifoliosides A (**33**) and B (**34**) were isolated from the lower stem parts of *Astragalus oleifolius*. Structures of the new compounds were established as 3-*O*-[β-xylopyranosyl-(1→2)-α-arabinopyranosyl]-6-*O*–β-xylopyranosyl-3β,6α,16β,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane and 3-*O*-[β-xylopyranosyl-(1→2)-α-arabinopyranosyl]-6-*O*–β-glucopyranosyl-3β,6α,16β,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane, by using 1D- and 2D-NMR techniques and mass spectrometry. Additionally, three known cycloartane glycosides cyclocanthoside E (Isaev et al. 1992), astragaloside II (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), and astragaloside IV (Kitagawa et al. 1983a) were also isolated and characterized. These compounds were tested for their cytotoxicities on primary mammalian (L6) cells along with in vitro antiplasmodial, leishmanicidal, and trypanocidal activities. All the compounds showed good growth inhibitory activity opposed to *Leishmania donovani* with IC_{50} values ranging from 13.2 to 21.3 μg/mL. While all compounds were inactivite against *Trypanosoma cruzi* and *Plasmodium falciparum*, only two known compounds, namely, astragaloside II (IC_{50} 66.6 μg/mL) and cyclocanthoside E (IC_{50} 85.2 μg/mL), showed weak activity against *Trypanosoma brucei rhodesiense*. None of the compounds had toxicity to mammalian cells (IC_{50}'s > 90 μg/mL). In this study, leishmanicidal and trypanocidal

activities of cycloartane-type triterpene glycosides were reported for the first time (Özipek et al. 2005).

Compound **33**; $C_{45}H_{76}O_{17}$; $[\alpha]^{27}_D$ +18.9° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3427 (OH), 2922 (CH), 1048; δ_C (C_5D_5N); ESI-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 911. Compound **34**; $C_{46}H_{78}O_{18}$; $[\alpha]^{27}_D$ +21.9° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3423 (OH), 2923 (CH), 1167, 1078; δ_C (C_5D_5N); ESI-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 941. The structures and ^{13}C NMR data of the compounds (**33**–**34**) are presented below.

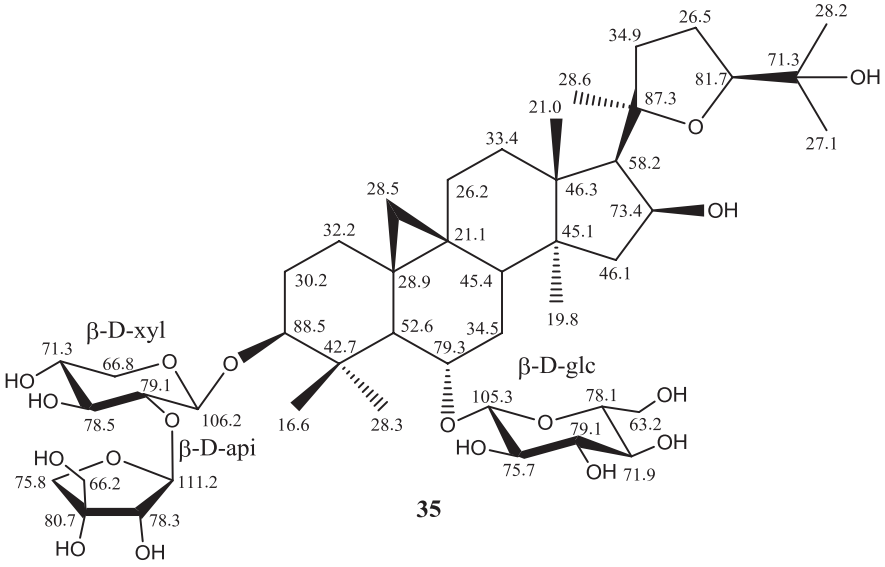


In 2005, a study was performed on another Turkish species; *Astragalus gilvus* (Sect. Christiana) and known cycloartane-type saponins, astrasieversianins I (Gan et al. 1986), II (Gan et al. 1986), VI (Gan et al. 1986), VIII (Gan et al. 1986), and X (Gan et al. 1986) and astragaloside IV (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), were isolated. As in *Astragalus gilvus*, the other studied species of Christiana section, viz., *Astragalus melanophrurius*, was also rich in acetylated sugar residues attached to cycloartane nucleus. Thus the authors made a comment about the probable chemotaxonomic significance of the acetylated compounds for Christiana section, implying overexpression of acetyl transferase genes in the plants of this section (Tabanca et al. 2005).

A new cycloartane-type triterpene glycoside, namely, (20*R*,24*S*)-3-*O*-[*β*-D-apiofuranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-*3β*,6*α*,16*β*,25-tetrahydroxy-20,24-epoxycycloartane, named baibutoside (**35**), was isolated from the roots of *Astragalus baibutensis* (Sect. Pterophorus) along with four known glycosides, acetylastragaloside I (Kitagawa et al. 1983a) and astragalosides I (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), II (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), and IV (Kitagawa et al. 1983a). The authors commented that the apiose unit in cycloartane glycosides as in baibutoside was a very unusual finding. The evaluation of antiprotozoal activities of all the compounds on a panel of parasites including *Trypanosoma brucei rhodesiense*, *Trypanosoma cruzi*, *Leishmania donovani*, and *Plasmodium falciparum* was also studied. The

selective cytotoxicity tests versus primary L6 mammalian cells (rat skeletal myoblasts) revealed toxicity only for acetylastragaloside I with narrow selectivity index values of 2.5 and 4.8. Moreover, the compounds had no activity against *L. donovani* and *P. falciparum*. Almost all purified metabolites, except baibutoside, showed some growth inhibitory effect on *T. brucei rhodesiense*; among all, acetylastragaloside I was reported as the most active compound with IC_{50} value of 9.5 μg/mL. On the other hand, acetylastragaloside I also showed significant activity against *T. cruzi* (IC_{50} value of 5.0 μg/mL). Antiprotozoal activity of the cycloartane-type glycosides was reported for the first time in this study (Çalış et al. 2006).

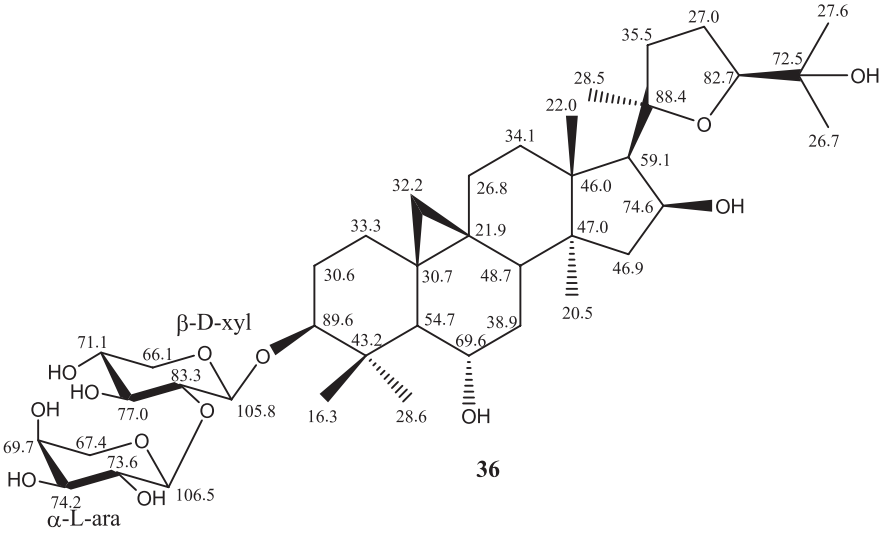
Compound **35**; $C_{46}H_{76}O_{18}$; $[\alpha]^{20}_{D}$ −7.0° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3400 (OH), 2933 (CH), 1166, 1077, 1042; δ_C (C_5D_5N); ESI-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 939.6. The structure and ^{13}C chemical shifts are provided below for compound **35**.



35

A new monodesmosidic cycloartane-type glycoside together with two known cycloartane-type glycosides was obtained from *Astragalus elongatus* (Sect. Proselius) and was identified as elongatoside (3-*O*-[*α*-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-xylopyranosyl]-cycloastragenol) (**36**), askendosides D (3-*O*-[*α*-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-xylopyranosyl]-6-*O*-*β*-xylopyranosyl-cycloastragenol) (Isaev et al. 1983a), and G (3-*O*-[*α*-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-xylopyranosyl]-16-*O*-*β*-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*R*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane) (Isaev 1996), on the basis of NMR experiments and mass spectrometry. For all pure compounds, human microvascular endothelial cell line (HMEC-1) was used to measure the inhibition of proliferation and ICAM-1 expression in vitro. Compound **36** was reported to possess weak activity in the ICAM-1 assay (Çalış et al. 2008a).

Compound **36**; $C_{40}H_{66}O_{13}$; $[\alpha]^{31}_D$ +31.0° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-FAB-MS *m/z* $[M + H]^+$ 755.4564 (calcd. for $C_{40}H_{67}O_{13}$ 755.4582 $[M + H]^+$). The structure and ^{13}C chemical shifts are shown below for compound **36**.

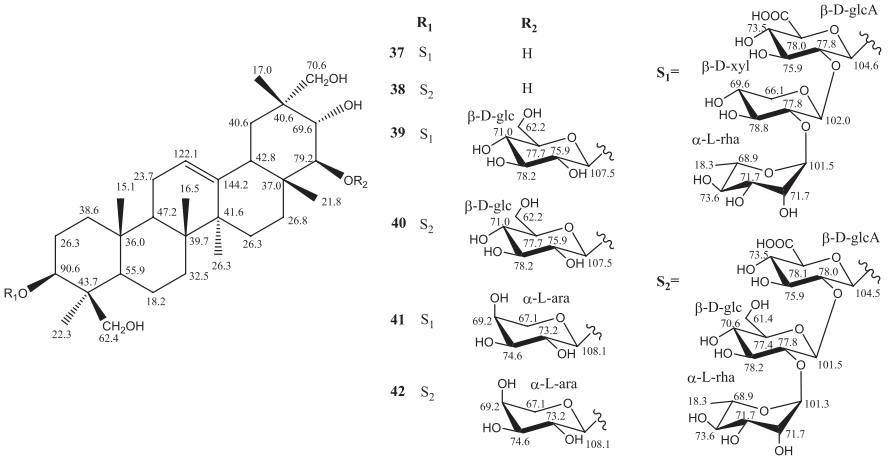


36

Avunduk et al. (2008) reported on the isolation and structural elucidation of six new triterpene saponins, 3-*O*-*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl-21-epi-kudzusapogenol A (**37**), 3-*O*-*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl-21-epi-kudzusapogenol A (**38**), 3-*O*-*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl-22-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-21-epi-kudzusapogenol A (**39**), 3-*O*-*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl-22-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-21-epi-kudzusapogenol A (**40**), 3-*O*-*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl-22-*O*-*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-21-epi-kudzusapogenol A (**41**), and 3-*O*-*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl-22-*O*-*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-21-epi-kudzusapogenol A (**42**), from the roots of *Astragalus flavescens* (Sect. Eustales) (Avunduk et al. 2008) together with five known compounds named trojanoside B (Bedir et al. 1999a), azukisaponin V (Kitagawa et al. 1983e), and astragalosides IV (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), VII (Kitagawa et al. 1983c), and VIII (Kitagawa et al. 1983c).

Compound **37**; $C_{47}H_{76}O_{19}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ −8.0° (*c* 0.05, MeOH); δ_C (C_5D_5N); HR-ESI-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 967.4884 (calcd. 967.4879). Compound **38**; $C_{48}H_{78}O_{20}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ −7.5° (*c* 0.05, MeOH); δ_C (C_5D_5N); HR-ESI-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 997.4980 (calcd. 997.4984). Compound **39**; $C_{53}H_{86}O_{24}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ −6.2° (*c* 0.05, MeOH); δ_C (C_5D_5N); HR-ESI-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 1129.5402 (calcd. 1129.5407). Compound **40**; $C_{54}H_{88}O_{25}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ −4.5° (*c* 0.05, MeOH); δ_C (C_5D_5N); HR-ESI-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 1159.5508 (calcd. 1159.5512). Compound **41**; $C_{52}H_{84}O_{23}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +3.1° (*c* 0.05,

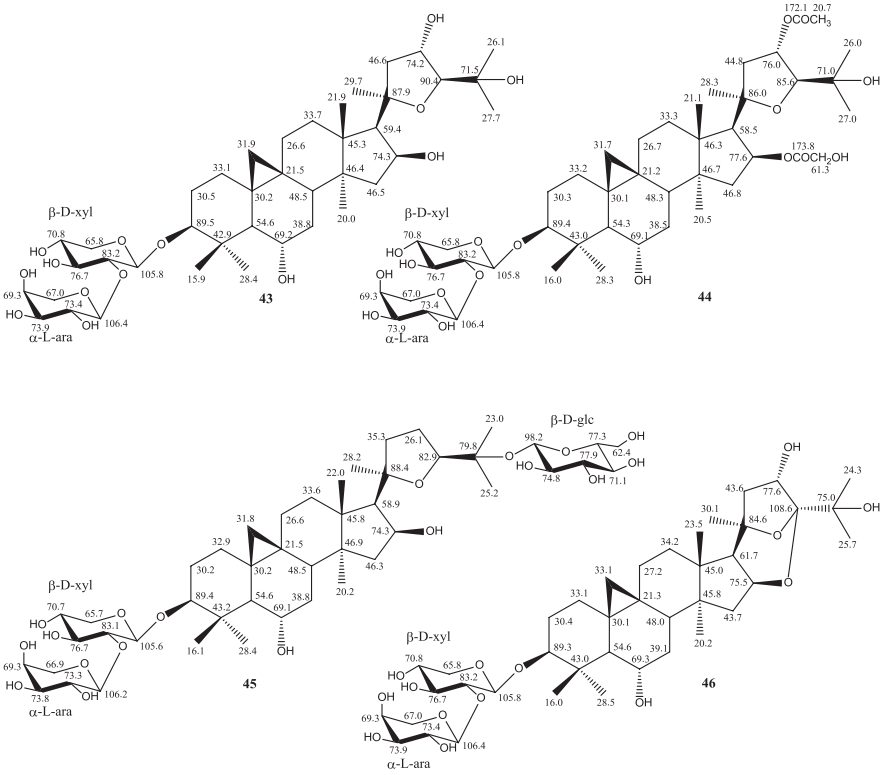
MeOH); δ_C (C_5D_5N); HR-ESI-MS *m/z* [M + Na]$^+$ 1099.5295 (calcd. 1099.5301). Compound **42**; $C_{53}H_{86}O_{24}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +8.5° (*c* 0.05, MeOH); δ_C (C_5D_5N); HR-ESI-MS *m/z* [M + Na]$^+$ 1129.5409 (calcd. 1129.5407). The structures and carbon NMR data of the compounds are provided below (**37–42**).



Another phytochemical work was performed in 2008. In this research, four new cycloartane glycosides, including 3-*O*-[*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,23*α*,25-pentahydroxy-20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxycycloartane (**43**), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-16-*O*-hydroxyacetoxy-23-*O*-acetoxy-3*β*,6*α*,25-trihydroxy-20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxycycloartane (**44**), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-25-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,25-tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),24(S)-epoxycycloartane (**45**), and 3-*O*-[*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-3*β*,6*α*,23*α*,25-tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),24(*R*)-16*β*,24;20,24-diepoxycycloartane (**46**), along with three known cycloartane glycosides, 3-*O*-[*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,25-tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxycycloartane (Isaev et al. 1983a), askendoside C (Isaev et al. 1983b), and askendoside G (Isaev 1996), were isolated from the MeOH extract of the roots of *Astragalus campylosema* ssp. *campylosema* (Sect. Hololeuce). Their structures were established by the extensive use of 1D- and 2D-NMR experiments along with ESIMS and HRMS analysis. The authors commented that the presence of the hydroxyl function at position 23 (**43**–**44**) and the ketalic function at C-24 (**46**) were very rare in the cycloartane-type triterpene class (Çalış et al. 2008b).

Compound **43**; $C_{40}H_{66}O_{14}$; $[\alpha]^{35}_D$ +40.0° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3472 (>OH), 3035 (cyclopropane ring), 2932 (>CH), 1273 and 1040 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* [M + Na]$^+$ 793.4355 (calcd. for $C_{40}H_{66}O_{14}Na$, 793.4350). Compound **44**; $C_{44}H_{70}O_{17}$; $[\alpha]^{35}_D$ +67.0° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3480 (>OH), 3044 (cyclopropane ring), 2928 (>CH), 1734 (C=O), 1277-1035 (C–O–C);δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* [M + Na]$^+$ 893.4519 (calcd. for

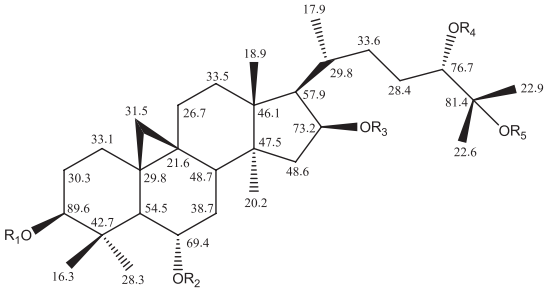
$C_{44}H_{70}O_{17}Na$, 893.4511). Compound **45**; $C_{46}H_{76}O_{18}$; $[\alpha]^{35}_{D}$ +24.0° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3475 (>OH), 3047 (cyclopropane ring), 2925 (>CH), 1270-1043 (C–O–C); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 939.4934 (calcd. for $C_{46}H_{76}O_{18}Na$, 939.4929). Compound **46**; $C_{40}H_{64}O_{14}$; $[\alpha]^{35}_{D}$ +20.0° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3470 (>OH), 3040 (cyclopropane ring), 2930 (>CH), 1280-1045 (C–O–C); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 791.4199 (calcd. for $C_{40}H_{64}O_{14}Na$, 791.4194). The structures and ^{13}C chemical shifts are presented below for compounds **43–46**.

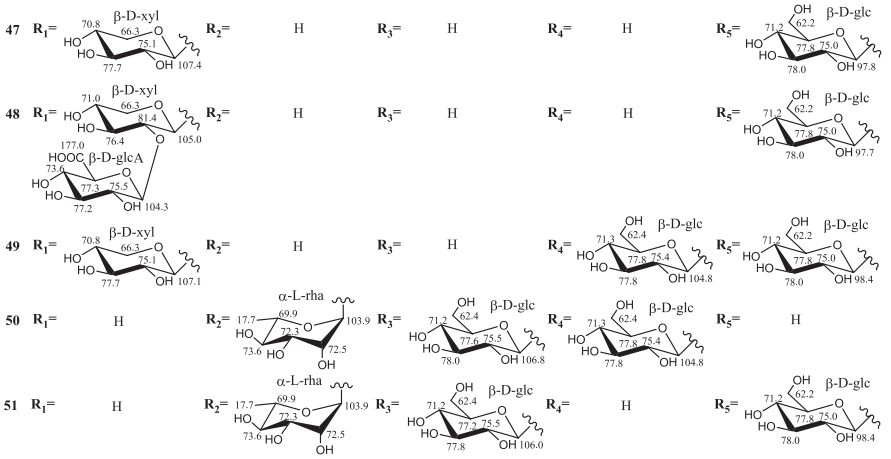


In 2009, on the basis of extensive spectroscopic analysis (IR, HR-MALDITOF-MS, ^1H NMR, ^{13}C NMR, HSQC, and HMBC), Polat et al. reported on the isolation and structural elucidation of five new cycloartane-type triterpene glycosides from the methanolic extract of the roots of *Astragalus amblolepis* Fischer (Sect. Rhacophorus) along with one known saponin, 3-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-16-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (Karimov et al. 1998). Structures of the new compounds were established as 3-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-25-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**47**), 3-*O*-[*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-25-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**48**), 3-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-24,25-di-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**49**),6-*O*-*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-16,24-di-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**50**), and 6-*O*-*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-16,25-di-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**51**). The authors

commented that the absence of sugar residue at C-3 position of cycloartane glycosides such as compounds **50** and **51** was rather unusual in nature. Moreover, a rhamnosyl moiety at C-6 position was reported for the first time in cyclocanthogenol skeleton, one of the most common aglycones in *Astragalus* genus together with cycloastragenol. In this study, the presence of glucuronic acid moiety was reported for the first time in cycloartane chemistry (Polat et al. 2009).

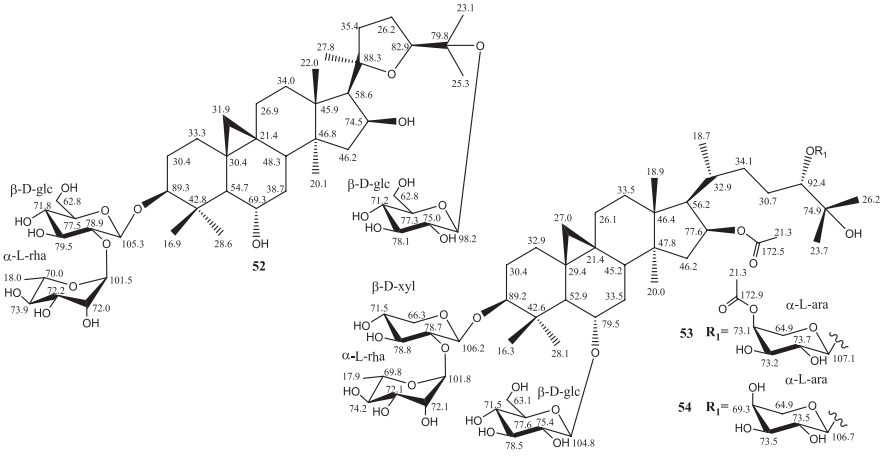
Compound **47**; $C_{41}H_{70}O_{14}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +34.0° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3480 (>OH), 3025 (cyclopropane ring), 2870 (>CH), 1290-1030 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 809.4669 (calcd. for $C_{41}H_{70}O_{14}Na$, 809.4663). Compound **48**; $C_{47}H_{78}O_{20}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +15.8° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3477 (>OH), 3048 (cyclopropane ring), 2895 (>CH), 1285-1043 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 985.4979 (calcd. for $C_{47}H_{78}O_{20}Na$, 985.4984). Compound **49**; $C_{47}H_{80}O_{19}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +22.7° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3483 (>OH), 3027 (cyclopropane ring), 2877 (>CH), 1279-1038 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 971.5199 (calcd. for $C_{47}H_{80}O_{19}Na$, 971.5192). Compound **50**; $C_{48}H_{82}O_{19}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +17.9° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3472 (>OH), 3040 (cyclopropane ring), 2883 (>CH), 1283-1029 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 985.5350 (calcd. for $C_{48}H_{82}O_{19}Na$, 985.5348). Compound **51**; $C_{48}H_{82}O_{19}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +24.4° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3486 (>OH), 3035 (cyclopropane ring), 2874 (>CH), 1292-1040 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 985.5341 (calcd. for $C_{48}H_{82}O_{19}Na$, 985.5348). The structures and carbon NMR data of compounds **47**–**51** were provided below.





Three new cycloartane-type triterpene glycosides were reported from *Astragalus wiedemannianus* (Sect. Pterophorus) in addition to known secondary metabolites, namely, cycloastragenol (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), cycloascauloside B (Alaniya et al. 2008), astragaloside IV (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), astragaloside VIII (Kitagawa et al. 1983c), brachyoside B (Bedir et al. 1998b), astragaloside II (Kitagawa et al. 1983c), astrachrysoside A (Wang et al. 1990), and astrasieversianin X (Gan et al. 1986). The structures of the new compounds were elucidated on the basis of 1D- and 2D-NMR techniques and established as 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl]-25-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxy-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,25-tetrahydroxycycloartane (**52**), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-24-*O*-*α*-(4′-*O*-acetoxy)-L-arabinopyranosyl-16-*O*-acetoxy-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane(**53**),and3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-24-*O*-*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-16-*O*-acetoxy-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**54**). In this study, the presence of an arabinose moiety on the acyclic side chain of cycloartanes was encountered for the first time (Polat et al. 2010).

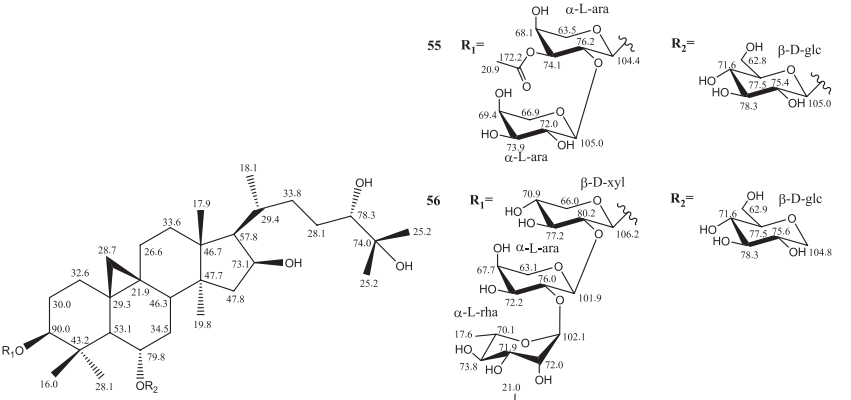
Compound **52**; $C_{48}H_{80}O_{19}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +25.2° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3474 (>OH), 3042 (cyclopropane ring), 2934 (>CH), 1271-1024 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* [M + Na]$^+$ 983.5196 (calcd. for $C_{48}H_{80}O_{19}Na$, 983.5192). Compound **53**; $C_{56}H_{92}O_{24}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +35.8° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3481 (>OH), 3035 (cyclopropane ring), 2941 (>CH), 1737 (C=O), 1264-1038 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* [M + Na]$^+$ 1171.5880 (calcd. for $C_{56}H_{92}O_{24}Na$, 1171.5876). Compound **54**; $C_{54}H_{90}O_{23}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +38.7° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3486 (>OH), 3047 (cyclopropane ring), 2930 (>CH), 1728 (C=O), 1260-1031 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* [M + Na]$^+$ 1129.5778 (calcd. for $C_{54}H_{90}O_{23}Na$, 1129.5771). The structures and ^{13}C NMR data of **52**–**54** are shown below.

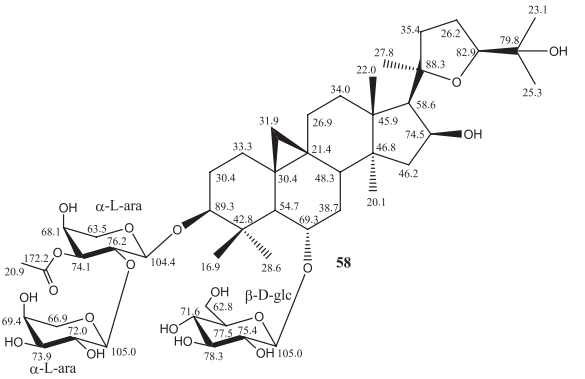


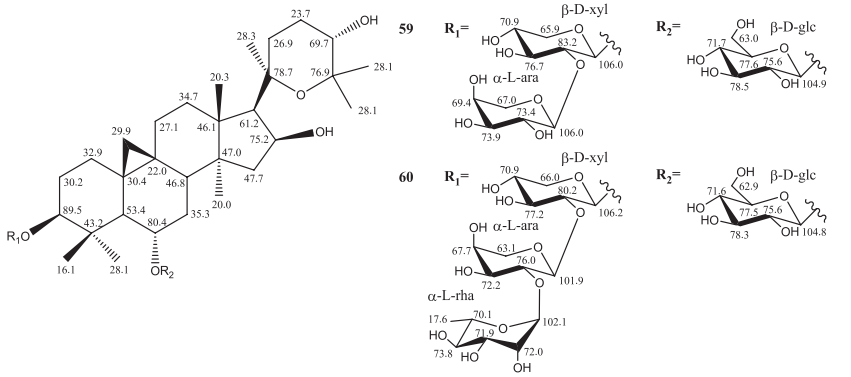
In 2010, a report described six new cycloartane-type triterpene glycosides from *Astragalus icmadophilus* (Sect. Acanthophace) along with two known cycloartane-type glycosides, five known oleanane-type triterpene glycosides, and one known

flavonol glycoside. The structures of the new compounds were established by detailed spectral analysis as 3-*O*-[*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*O*-3-acetoxy-*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl]-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**55**), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*O*-α-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**56**), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*O*-3,4-diacetoxy-*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl]-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane(**57**),3-*O*-[*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*O*-3-acetoxy-*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl]-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,25-tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxycycloartane (**58**), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24α-tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),25-epoxycycloartane (**59**), and 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*O*-*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24*α*-tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),25-epoxycycloartane (**60**). The authors stated that compounds **59–60** were based on cyclocephalogenin as aglycone, more unusual in the plant kingdom, so far reported only from *Astragalus* spp. (Bedir et al. 1998a; Agzamova and Isaev 1999; Sukhina et al. 2007). In addition, two known cycloartane-type glycosides, oleifolioside B (Özipek et al. 2005) and astragaloside I (Kitagawa et al. 1983a); five known oleanane-type triterpene glycosides, azukisaponin V (Kitagawa et al. 1983e), azukisaponin V methyl ester (Mohamed et al. 1995), astragaloside VIII (Kitagawa et al. 1983c), astragaloside VIII methyl ester (Cui et al. 1992a), and 22-*O*-[*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-(1→2)-*O*-*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl]-3*β*,22*β*,24-trihydroxy-olean-12-ene (Yoshikawa et al. 1985); and the flavonol glycoside narcissin (Senatore et al. 2000) were characterized (Horo et al. 2010).

Compound **55**; $C_{48}H_{80}O_{19}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +28.4° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3477 (>OH), 3041 (cyclopropane ring), 2940 (>CH), 1739 (C=O), 1264 and 1059 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 983.5198 (calcd. for $C_{48}H_{80}O_{19}Na$, 983.5192). Compound **56**; $C_{52}H_{88}O_{22}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +37.2° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3484 (>OH), 3037 (cyclopropane ring), 2949 (>CH), 1260 and 1064 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 1087.5669 (calcd. for $C_{52}H_{88}O_{22}Na$, 1087.5665). Compound **57**; $C_{50}H_{82}O_{20}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +31.8° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3471 (>OH), 3032 (cyclopropane ring), 2931 (>CH), 1741 (C=O), 1258-1050 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 1025.5294 (calcd. for $C_{50}H_{82}O_{20}Na$, 1025.5297). Compound **58**; $C_{48}H_{78}O_{19}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +22.1° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3488 (>OH), 3035 (cyclopropane ring), 2927 (>CH), 1732 (C=O), 1275 and 1030 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 981.5041 (calcd. for $C_{48}H_{78}O_{19}Na$, 981.5035). Compound **59**; $C_{46}H_{76}O_{18}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +8.5° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3481 (>OH), 3045 (cyclopropane ring), 2934 (>CH), 1280-1040 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 939.4932 (calcd. for $C_{46}H_{76}O_{18}Na$, 939.4929). Compound **60**; $C_{52}H_{86}O_{22}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +11.7° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3474 (>OH), 3049 (cyclopropane ring), 2937 (>CH), 1266-1052 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 1085.5511 (calcd. for $C_{52}H_{86}O_{22}Na$, 1085.5508). The structures and ^{13}C NMR data of the compounds (**55–60**) are presented below.


55
56
57
α-L-ara
β-D-xyl
β-D-glc
α-L-rha
R1=
R2=

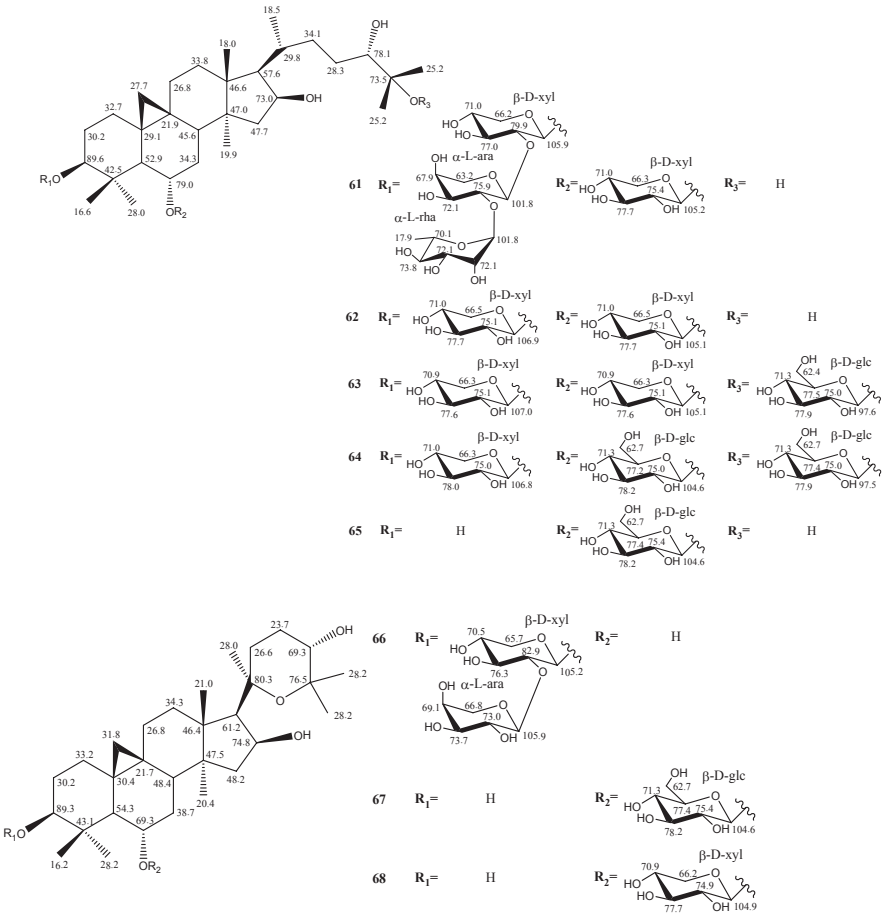

58
α-L-ara
β-D-glc


59
60
β-D-xyl
α-L-ara
α-L-rha
β-D-glc
R1=
R2=

In 2011, from the roots of *Astragalus ptilodes* Boiss. var. *cariensis* Boiss. (Sect. Pterophorus), five known compounds, astragaloside VII [(3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,20*R*,24*S*)-20,24-epoxy-16-hydroxy-3-(*β*-D-xylopyranosyloxy)-9,19-cyclolanostane-6,25-diyl bis[*β*-D-glucopyranoside] (Bedir et al. 1999a), cyclosiversioside E (3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,20*R*,24*S*)-20,24-epoxy-16,25-dihydroxy-9,19-cyclolanostane-3,6-diyl bis[*β*-D-xylopyranoside]) (Svechnikova et al. 1982a), cyclosiversioside F (3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,20*R*,24*S*)-20,24-epoxy-16,25-dihydroxy-3-(*β*-D-xylopyranosyloxy)-9,19-cyclolanostan-6-yl *β*-D-glucopyranoside) (Svechnikova et al. 1982a), astragaloside I (3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,20*R*,24*S*)-3-[(2,3-di-*O*-acetyl-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl)oxy]-20,24-epoxy-16,25-dihydroxy-9,19-cyclolanostan-6-yl *β*-D-glucopyranoside) (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), and cyclosiversioside A (3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,20*R*,24*R*)-3-[(2,3-di-*O*-acetyl-*β*-D-xylopyranosyloxy]-20,24-epoxy-16,25-dihydroxy-9,19-cyclolanostan-6-yl *β*-D-xylopyranoside) (Svechnikova et al. 1982b), were isolated (Linnek et al. 2011).

In another study in 2011, eight new cycloartane-type triterpene glycosides, 3-*O*-[α-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-α-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-β-D-xylopyranosyl]-6-*O*-β-D-xylopyranosyl-3β,6α,16β,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**61**), 3,6-di-*O*-β-D-xylopyranosyl-3β,6α,16β,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**62**), 3,6-di-*O*-β-D-xylopyranosyl-25-*O*-β-D-glucopyranosyl-3β,6α,16β,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**63**), 3-*O*-β-D-xylopyranosyl-6,25-di-*O*-β-D-glucopyranosyl-3β,6α,16β,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**64**), 6-*O*-β-D-glucopyranosyl-3β,6α,16β,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**65**), 3-*O*-[α-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-β-D-xylopyranosyl]-3β,6α,16β,24α-tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),25-epoxycycloartane (**66**), 6-*O*-β-D-glucopyranosyl-3β,6α,16β,24α-tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),25-epoxy cycloartane (**67**), and 6-*O*-β-D-xylopyranosyl-3β,6α,16β,24α-tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),25-epoxycycloartane (**68**), were isolated from *Astragalus aureus* Willd (Sect. Adiaspastus), along with ten known cycloartane-type glycosides, namely, 3-*O*-[α-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*O*-α-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*O*-β-D-xylopyranosyl]-6-*O*-β-D-glucopyranosyl-3β,6α,16β,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (Horo et al. 2010), oleifolioside B (Özipek et al. 2005), cyclocanthoside G (Isaev et al. 1992), cyclocanthoside E (Isaev et al. 1992), 3-*O*-[α-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*O*-α-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*O*-β-D-xylopyranosyl]-6-*O*-β-D-glucopyranosyl-3β,6α,16β,24α-tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),25-epoxycycloartane (Horo et al. 2010), 3-*O*-[α-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*O*-β-D-xylopyranosyl]-6-*O*-β-D-glucopyranosyl-3β,6α,16β,24α-tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),25-epoxycycloartane (Horo et al. 2010), cyclocanthoside F (Agzamova and Isaev 1999), cyclocephaloside I (Bedir et al. 1998a), cyclotrisectoside (Sukhina et al. 2007), and macrophyllosaponin B (Çalış et al. 1996). The authors stated that aminoglycosides of cyclocanthogenin (**65**) and cyclocephalogenin (**67**, **68**) were encountered for the first time. In this study, a number of cancer cell lines were used for measuring cytotoxic activities of all compounds, among which only compound **68** showed moderate cytotoxic activity against human breast cancer (MCF7) at 45 μM concentration (Gülcemal et al. 2011).

Compound **61**; $C_{51}H_{86}O_{21}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +37.2° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3474 (>OH), 3035 (cyclopropane ring), 2953 (>CH), 1255 and 1068 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 1057.5563 (calcd. for $C_{51}H_{86}O_{21}Na$, 1057.5559). Compound **62**; $C_{40}H_{68}O_{13}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +29.2° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3487 (>OH), 3043 (cyclopropane ring), 2950 (>CH), 1269 and 1059 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 779.4561 (calcd. for $C_{40}H_{68}O_{13}Na$, 779.4558). Compound **63**; $C_{46}H_{78}O_{18}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +35.6° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3482 (>OH), 3040 (cyclopropane ring), 2945 (>CH), 1259 and 1051 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 941.5090 (calcd. for $C_{46}H_{78}O_{18}Na$, 941.5086). Compound **64**; $C_{47}H_{80}O_{19}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +32.5° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3477 (>OH), 3038 (cyclopropane ring), 2934 (>CH), 1263 and 1054 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 971.5197 (calcd. for $C_{47}H_{80}O_{19}Na$, 971.5192). Compound **65**; $C_{36}H_{62}O_{10}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +27.8° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3485 (>OH), 3047 (cyclopropane ring), 2930 (>CH), 1254 and 1061 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 677.4246 (calcd. for $C_{36}H_{62}O_{10}Na$, 677.4241). Compound **66**; $C_{40}H_{66}O_{13}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +10.5° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3488 (>OH), 3053 (cyclopropane ring), 2939 (>CH), 1274 and 1050 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 777.4405 (calcd. for $C_{40}H_{66}O_{13}Na$, 777.4401). Compound **67**; $C_{36}H_{60}O_{10}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +15.2° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3479 (>OH), 3048 (cyclopropane ring), 2947 (>CH), 1257 and 1065 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 675.4089 (calcd. for $C_{36}H_{60}O_{10}Na$, 675.4084). Compound **68**; $C_{35}H_{58}O_9$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +8.2° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3471 (>OH), 3050 (cyclopropane ring), 2943 (>CH), 1268 and 1057 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 645.3983 (calcd. for $C_{35}H_{58}O_9Na$, 645.3979). The structures and ^{13}C NMR data of compounds **61**–**68** are given below.



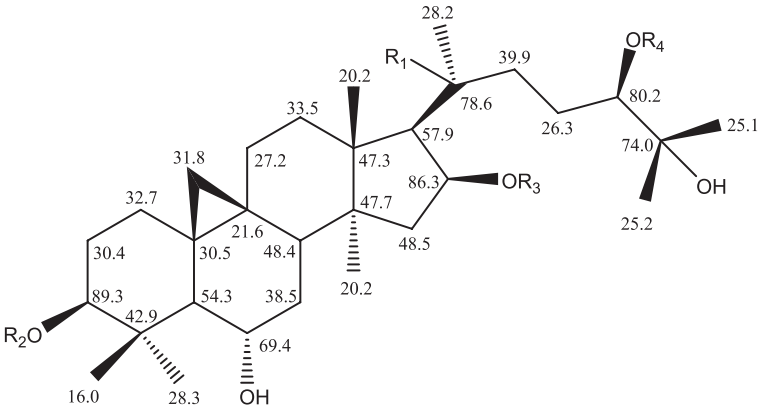
The study of the chemical constituents of *Astragalus pycnocephalus* var. *pycnocephalus* (Sect. Rhacophorus) has resulted in the isolation of four known cycloartane-type glycosides. Their structures were established as trojanoside H (Bedir et al. 1999b), astragaloside IV (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), astragaloside VIII (Kitagawa et al. 1983c), and astrasieversianin X (Gan et al. 1986) by the extensive use of 1D- and 2D-NMR experiments along with HRMS analyses and by comparison with literature values. In this report, the inhibitory activities of all compounds were tested against the metalloenzyme carbonic anhydrase (CA, EC 4.2.1.1). All compounds showed strong inhibition against α-glucosidase, and they exhibited mild activity against *β*-glucosidase (Koz et al. 2011).

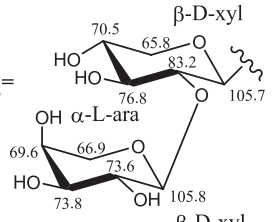
Studies on *Astragalus stereocalyx* Bornm (Sect. Stereocalyx) resulted the isolation of six new cycloartane-type triterpene glycosides. Structures of the newcompounds were determined as 3-*O*-[α-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-β-D-xylopyranosyl]-16-*O*-β-D-glucopyranosyl-3β,6α,16β,20(*S*),24(*R*), 25-hexahydroxycycloartane (**69**), 3-*O*-[α-L-

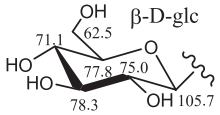
arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-β-D-xylopyranosyl]-3β,6α,16β,20(*S*),24(*R*),25-hexahydroxycycloartane (**70**), 3-*O*-[α-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-β-D-glucopyranosyl]-3β,6α,16β,20(*S*),24(*R*),25-hexahydroxycycloartane(**71**),3-*O*-[α-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-β-D-glucopyranosyl]-24-*O*-β-D-glucopyranosyl-3β,6α,16β,24(*R*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**72**), 3-*O*-[α-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-β-D-glucopyranosyl]-16-*O*-β-D-glucopyranosyl-3β,6α,16β,24(*R*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane(**73**),and3-*O*-{α-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→4)-[α-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)]-β-D-glucopyranosyl}-3β,6α,16β,24(*R*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**74**). Additionally, six known cycloartane-type glycosides, askendoside C (Isaev et al. 1983b), askendoside F (Isaev 1995), askendoside G (Isaev 1996), 3-*O*-β-D-glucopyranosyl-16-*O*-β-D-glucopyranosyl-3β,6α,16β,24(R),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (Verotta et al. 2002), elongatoside (Çalış et al. 2008a), and trojanoside H (Bedir et al. 1999b), were isolated. The authors stressed that compounds **69**–**71** were based on an aglycone possessing an unusual hydroxyl group at position 20. In this research, some cell lines including Hela (human cervical cancer), HT-29 (human colon cancer), U937 (human leukemia), and H446 (human lung cancer) were utilized for testing antiproliferative activity of the obtained compounds. A concentration range between 1 and 50 μM was chosen for testing, where only a few compounds showed weak activities. Hela was the only susceptible cell line to the compounds. While the compound 3-*O*-β-D-glucopyranosyl-16-*O*-β-D-glucopyranosyl-3β,6α,16β,24(R),25-pentahydroxycycloartane displayed an IC_{50} value of 10 μM against Hela cells, compounds **74**, askendoside C, and askendoside G exhibited IC_{50} values of 29.9, 31.5, and 24.4 μM, respectively (Yalçın et al. 2012).

Compound **69**; $C_{46}H_{78}O_{19}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +27.2° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3480 (>OH), 3039 (cyclopropane ring), 2961 (>CH), 1250 and 1072 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 957.5038 (calcd. for $C_{46}H_{78}O_{19}Na$, 957.5035). Compound **70**; $C_{40}H_{68}O_{14}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +25.2° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3475 (>OH), 3048 (cyclopropane ring), 2955 (>CH), 1260 and 1057 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 795.4509 (calcd. for $C_{40}H_{68}O_{14}Na$,

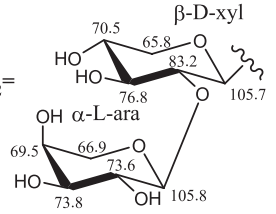
795.4507). Compound **71**; $C_{41}H_{70}O_{15}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +28.6° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3477 (>OH), 3036 (cyclopropane ring), 2948 (>CH), 1252 and 1067 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 825.4615 (calcd. for $C_{41}H_{70}O_{15}Na$, 825.4612). Compound **72**; $C_{47}H_{80}O_{19}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +12.7° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3482 (>OH), 3043 (cyclopropane ring), 2952 (>CH), 1263 and 1060 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 971.5196 (calcd. for $C_{47}H_{80}O_{19}Na$, 971.5192). Compound **73**; $C_{47}H_{80}O_{19}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +10.8° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3488 (>OH), 3045 (cyclopropane ring), 2940 (>CH), 1258 and 1064 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 971.5194 (calcd. for $C_{47}H_{80}O_{19}Na$, 971.5192). Compound **74**; $C_{47}H_{80}O_{18}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +14.5° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3470 (>OH), 3051 (cyclopropane ring), 2943 (>CH), 1268 and 1054 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 955.5246 (calcd. for $C_{47}H_{80}O_{18}Na$, 955.5242). The structures and ^{13}C NMR data of **69–74** are shown below.



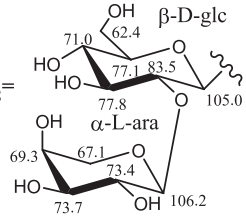
69 R_1= OH R_2= 

R_3= 

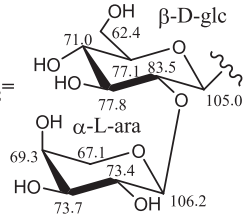
R_4= H

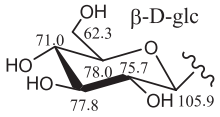
70 R_1= OH R_2= 

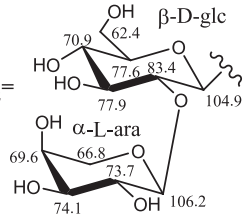
R_3=R_4=H

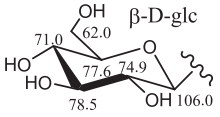
71 R_1= OH R_2= 

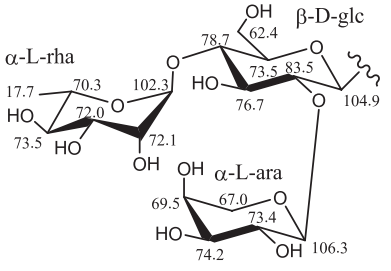
R_3=R_4=H

72 R_1=R_3=H R_2= 

R_4= 

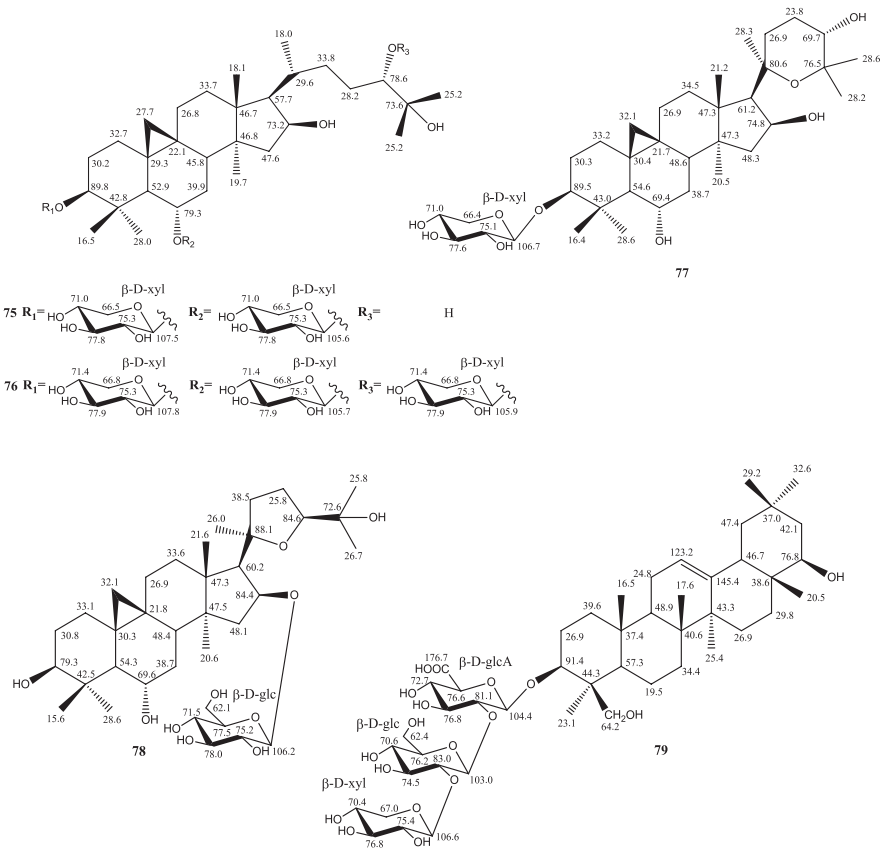
73 R_1=R_4=H R_2= 

R_3= 

74 R_1=R_3=R_4=H R_2= 

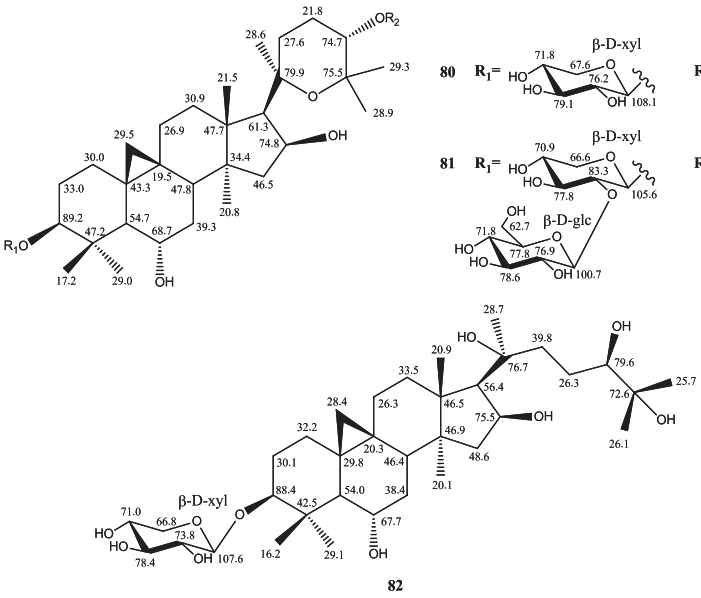
In 2012, another phytochemical study was performed on *Astragalus hareftae* (Sect. Acanthophace), which was resulted in isolation of four new cycloartanes (hareftosides A–D) and a new oleanane-type triterpenoid (hareftoside E) along with 11 known compounds. Structures of the new compounds were established as 3,6-di-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**75**), 3,6,24-tri-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**76**), 3-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,25-tetra-hydroxy-20(*R*),25(*S*)-epoxycycloartane (**77**), 16-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,25-tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxycycloartane (**78**), and 3-*O*-[*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-(1→2)-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-(1→2)-*O*-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl] soyasapogenol B (**79**) by the extensive use of 1D- and 2D-NMR experiments along with ESI-MS and HR-MS analyses. Known compounds were identified as cyclocanthoside E (Isaev et al. 1992), macrophyllosaponin B (Çalış et al. 1996), 3-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-6,25-di-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (Gülcemal et al. 2011), oleifolioside B (Özipek et al. 2005), cyclocephaloside I (Bedir et al. 1998a), astrasieversianin X (Gan et al. 1986), trojanoside B (Bedir et al. 1999a), cycloastragenol (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), astragaloside IV (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), brachyoside B (Bedir et al. 1998b), and cyclodissectoside (Sukhina et al. 2007) and four known oleanane-type triterpene glycosides, azukisaponin V (Kitagawa et al. 1983e), dehydroazukisaponin V (Mohamed et al. 1995), wistariasaponin D (Konoshima et al. 1991), and astragaloside VIII (Kitagawa et al. 1983c), respectively (Horo et al. 2012).

Compound **75**; $C_{40}H_{68}O_{13}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +27.3° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3460 (>OH), 3035 (cyclopropane ring), 2945 (>CH), 1260 and 1058 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 779.4564 (calcd. for $C_{40}H_{68}O_{13}Na$, 779.4558). Compound **76**; $C_{45}H_{76}O_{17}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +24.3° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3470 (>OH), 3030 (cyclopropane ring), 2950 (>CH), 1264 and 1060 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 911.4984 (calcd. for $C_{45}H_{76}O_{17}Na$, 911.4980). Compound **77**; $C_{35}H_{58}O_9$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +19.8° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3480 (>OH), 3030 (cyclopropane ring), 2945 (>CH), 1260 and 1055 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 645.3982 (calcd. for $C_{35}H_{58}O_9Na$, 645.3979). Compound **78**; $C_{36}H_{60}O_{10}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +20.8° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3460 (>OH), 3040 (cyclopropane ring), 2935 (>CH), 1250 and 1050 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 675.4086 (calcd. for $C_{36}H_{60}O_{10}Na$, 675.4084). Compound **79**; $C_{47}H_{76}O_{18}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +12.1° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3448 (>OH), 2934 (>CH), 1658 (C=C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 951.4932 (calcd. for $C_{47}H_{76}O_{18}Na$, 951.4929). The structures and ^{13}C NMR data of compounds **75–79** are provided below.



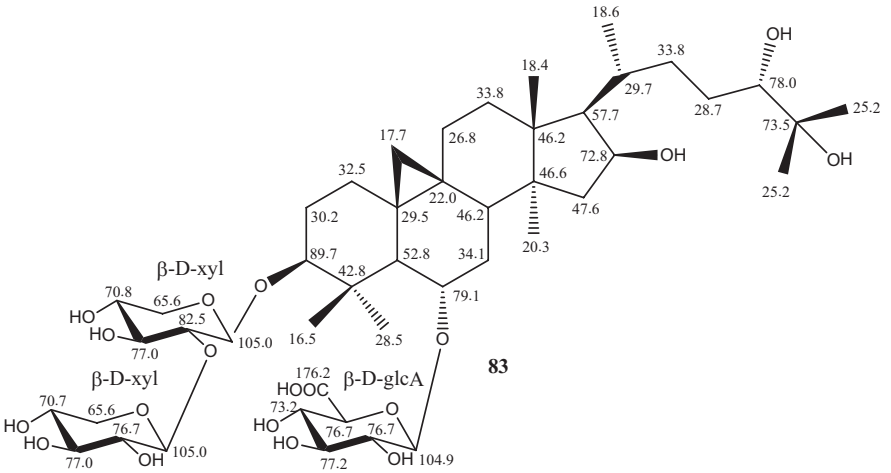
Another study conducted in Karabey et al. (2012) reported on the isolation and structural elucidation of three new cycloartane-type triterpene glycosides from the roots of *Astragalus schottianus* Boiss. (Sect. Rhacophorus). By means of spectroscopic methods (IR, 1D- and 2D-NMR, HR-ESI-MS), their structures were established as 20(*R*),25-epoxy-3-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-24-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24*α*-tetrahydroxycycloartane (**80**), 20(*R*),25-epoxy-3-*O*-[*β*-D-glucopyranosyl(1→2)]-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-24-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24*α*-tetrahydroxycycloartane (**81**), and 3-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,20(*S*),24(*S*),25-hexahydroxycycloartane (**82**) (Karabey et al. 2012). According to the authors, compound **82** represents the second entry of the series of cycloartane-type compound possessing a 20-OH functional group in *Astragalus* genus. Moreover, in nature, only five compounds, obtained from *Oxytropis bicolor* and *Astragalus stereocalyx*, were reported to have such a substitution at C-20 and 3*β*,16*β*,20(*S*),24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane framework (Rong-Qi et al. 1991; Sun and Chen 1997; Yalçın et al. 2012).

Compound **80**; $C_{41}H_{68}O_{14}$; δ_C (C_5D_5N); HR-ESI-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 807.46042 (calcd. for $C_{41}H_{68}O_{14}Na$, 807.45068). Compound **81**; $C_{47}H_{78}O_{20}$; δ_C (C_5D_5N); HR-ESI-MS *m/z* $[M–Cl]^-$ 981.48275 (calcd. for $C_{47}H_{78}O_{20}Cl$). Compound **82**; $C_{35}H_{60}O_{10}$; δ_C (C_5D_5N); HR-ESI-MS *m/z* $[M–Cl]^-$ 675.38677 (calcd. for $C_{35}H_{60}O_{10}Cl$, 675.38750). The structures and carbon chemical shifts of compounds **80**, **81**, and **82** are presented below.



Phytochemical investigation of *Astragalus erinaceus* (Sect. Rhacophorus) was resulted in isolation of a new cycloartane-type saponin, 3-*O*-[*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (**83**). Additionally, five known saponins, cyclodissectoside (Sukhina et al. 2007), cycloastragenol (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), 6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (Gülcemal et al. 2011), oleifolioside B (Özipek et al. 2005), and 3,6-di-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (Gülcemal et al. 2011), were also identified. The authors stated that the glucuronic acid moiety was an unusual finding, and compound **83** was representing second example of such framework in cycloartane chemistry (Savran et al. 2012).

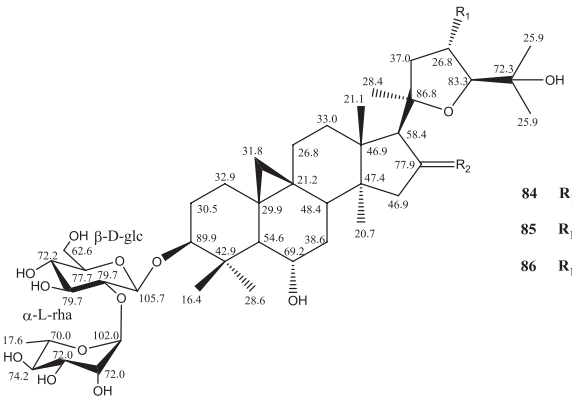
Compound **83**; $C_{46}H_{77}O_{19}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +30.8° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-ESI-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 955.4882 (calcd. for $C_{46}H_{77}O_{19}Na$, 955.4879). The structure and ^{13}C chemical shifts are provided below for **83**.



Another phytochemical study was performed on *Astragalus angustifolius* (Sect. Melanocercis) which was resulted in isolation of six cycloartane- (**84**–**89**) and four oleanane-type triterpenoids (**90**–**93**) together with five known triterpene glycosides. Structures of the compounds were established as 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl]-16-*O*-hydroxyacetoxy-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,25 tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxycycloartane (**84**), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl]-16-*O*-hydroxyacetoxy-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,23*α*,25-pentahydroxy-20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxycycloartane (**85**), 3-*O*-[α-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl]-3*β*,6*α*,25-trihydroxy-20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxycycloartane-16-one (**86**), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl]-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,25-tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),24(*R*)-epoxycycloartane (**87**), 3-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-6-*O*-*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,25-tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),24(*R*)-epoxycycloartane (**88**), 6-*O*-*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,25-tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),24(*R*)-epoxy cycloartane (**89**), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl]-3*β*,21*β*,22*α*,24,29-pentahydroxyolean-12-ene (**90**), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl]-3*β*,22*β*,24-trihydroxyolean-12-en-29-oic acid (**91**), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl]-22-*O*-*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-3*β*,22*β*,24-trihydroxyolean-12-ene (**92**), and 29-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,22*β*,24,29-tetrahydroxyolean-12-ene (**93**) by the extensive use of 1D- and 2D-NMR experiments along with ESIMS and HRMS analysis. Known

compounds were identified as 25-*O*-glucopyranosylcycloastragenol (Bedir et al. 1999a), cycloaraloside D (Isaev 1991), 3-*O*-[α-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-β-D-glucopyranosyl]-25-*O*-β-D-glucopyranosyl-20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxy-3β,6α,16β,25-tetrahydroxycycloartane (Polat et al. 2010), astrojanoside A (Bedir et al. 1999a), and astragaloside VIII (Kitagawa et al. 1983c). The authors reported that compounds **84–86** were glycosides of cycloastragenol, while compounds **87–89** had the C-24 epimer of cycloastragenol as aglycone, reported for the first time in nature. In this study, antiproliferative activity in Hela, H-446, HT-29, and U937 cell lines was tested for all compounds. Compound **91** was the only compound that displayed a weak activity against both Hela and HT-29 cell lines with IC_{50} values of 36 and 50 μM, respectively (Gülcemal et al. 2012).

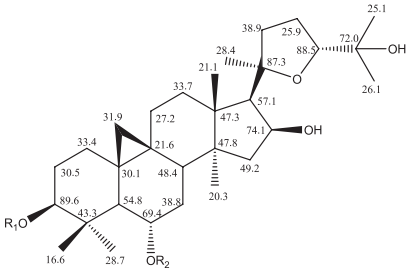
Compound **84**; $C_{44}H_{72}O_{16}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +19.01° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3470, 3040, 2950, 1260 and 1058; δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 879.4722 (calcd. for $C_{44}H_{72}O_{16}Na$, 879.4718). Compound **85**; $C_{44}H_{72}O_{17}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +41.4° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3480, 3035, 2945, 1260 and 1055; δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 895.4669 (calcd. for $C_{44}H_{72}O_{17}Na$, 895.4667). Compound **86**; $C_{42}H_{68}O_{14}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ −23.1° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3475, 3030, 2948, 1740, 1258 and 1050; δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 819.4512 (calcd. for $C_{42}H_{68}O_{14}Na$, 819.4507). Compound **87**; $C_{42}H_{70}O_{14}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ −5.21° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3460, 3038, 2935, 1250 and 1050; δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 821.4666 (calcd. for $C_{42}H_{70}O_{14}Na$, 821.4663). Compound **88**; $C_{41}H_{68}O_{13}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +15.1° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3460, 3035, 2940, 1240 and 1050; δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 791.4561 (calcd. for $C_{41}H_{68}O_{13}Na$, 791.4558). Compound **89**; $C_{36}H_{60}O_9$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ −8.09° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3450, 3042, 2938, 1250 and 1052; δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 659.4139 (calcd. for $C_{36}H_{60}O_9Na$, 659.4135). Compound **90**; $C_{47}H_{76}O_{19}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ −10.9° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3455, 2945, 1666, 1252 and 1052; δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 967.4881 (calcd. for $C_{47}H_{76}O_{19}Na$, 967.4879). Compound **91**; $C_{47}H_{74}O_{19}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +7.12° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3451, 2937, 1735, 1658, 1248 and 1048; δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 965.4726 (calcd. for $C_{47}H_{74}O_{19}Na$, 965.4722). Compound **92**; $C_{52}H_{84}O_{21}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ −8.54° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3446, 2930, 1730, 1648, 1245 and 1052; δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 1067.5406 (calcd. for $C_{52}H_{84}O_{21}Na$, 1067.5403). Compound **93**; $C_{36}H_{60}O_9$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +27.7° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3440, 2933, 1645, 1240 and 1044; δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 659.4139 (calcd. for $C_{36}H_{60}O_9Na$, 659.4135). The structures and carbon chemical shifts of compounds **84–93** are shown below.

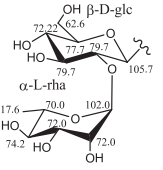


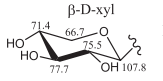
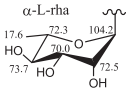
84 R_1= H R_2= β-$OCOCH_2OH$ α-H

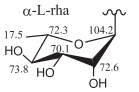
85 R_1= OH R_2= β-$OCOCH_2OH$ α-H

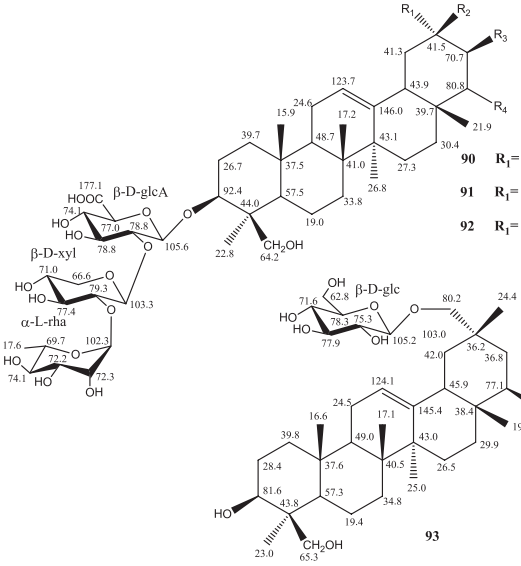
86 R_1= H R_2= O



87 R_1=  R_2= H

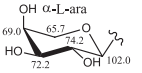
88 R_1=  R_2= 

89 R_1= H R_2= 



90 R_1= CH_2OH R_2= CH_3 R_3= OH R_4= α-OH

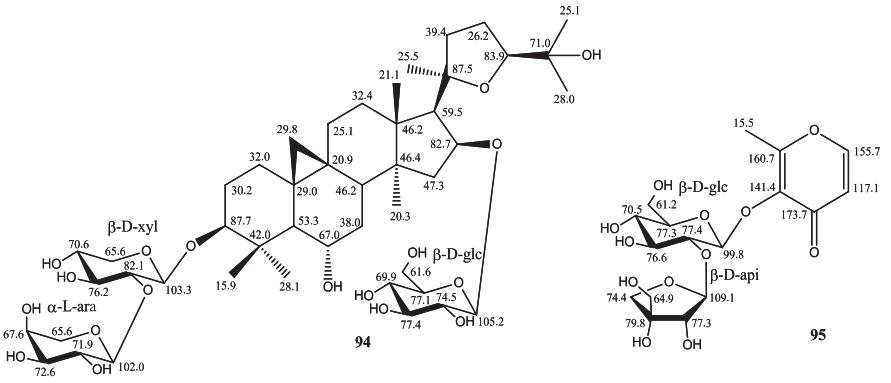
91 R_1= CH_3 R_2= COOH R_3= H R_4= β-OH

92 R_1= CH_3 R_2= CH_3 R_3= H R_4= β-O- 

93

Another phytochemical investigation was published in 2013, and a new cycloartane-type glycoside, (20*R*,24*S*)-3-*O*-[*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-20,24-epoxy-16-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,25-tetrahydroxycycloartane (**94**), and a new glycoside, 3-*O*-[*β*-D-apiofuranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl]maltol (**95**), were isolated from *Astragalus halicacabus* (Sect. Halicacabus) together with seven known cycloartane-type glycosides, i.e., cyclocanthoside D (Isaev et al. 1992); askendosides D (Isaev et al. 1983a), F (Isaev 1995), and G (Isaev 1996); cyclosieversioside G (Svechnikova et al. 1983); cyclostipuloside A (Karimov et al. 1998); and elongatoside (Çalış et al. 2008a), and a known maltol glucoside, 3-*O*-β-D-glucopyranosylmaltol (Sala et al. 2001). The authors commented that maltol glycoside was reported for the first time in the *Astragalus* genus and even in the Fabaceae family (Djimtombaye et al. 2013).

Compound **94**; $C_{46}H_{76}O_{18}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +41.4° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3480 (>OH), 3035 (cyclopropane ring), 2945 (>CH), 1260 and 1055 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-ESI-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 939.4991 (calcd. for $C_{46}H_{76}O_{18}Na$, 939.4990). Compound **95**; $C_{17}H_{24}O_{12}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ −78.9° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3376, 1650; δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-ESI-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 443.1199 (calcd. for $C_{17}H_{24}O_{12}Na$, 443.1182). The structures and ^{13}C chemical shifts are given below for **94** and **95**.

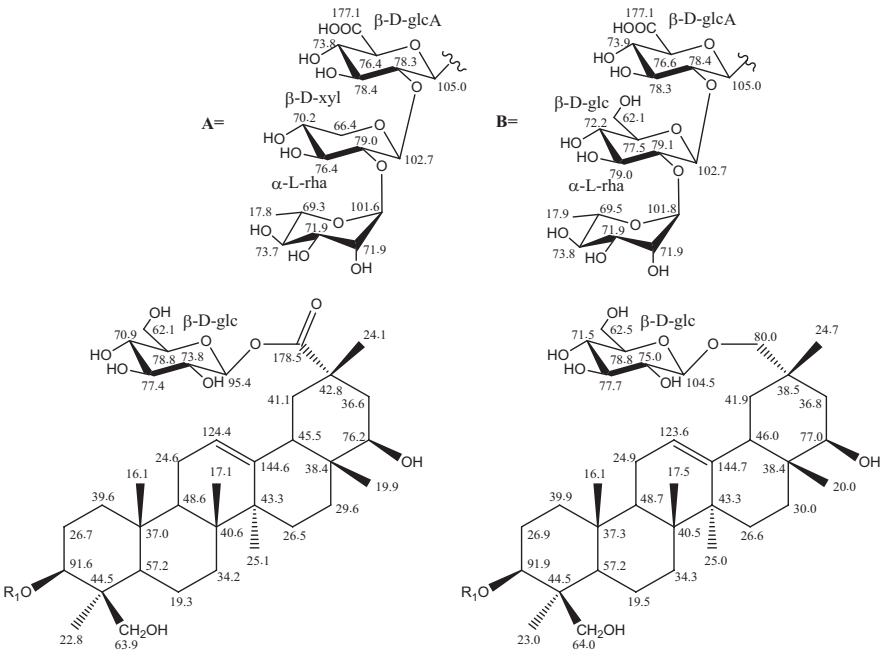


From *Astragalus tauricolus* (Sect. Malacothrix), on the basis of the results of the online screening by HPLC–ESIMS^n, ten new oleanane-type triterpene glycosides were isolated and established by spectral methods, 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl]-29-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,22*β*,24-trihydroxyolean-12-en-29-oic acid (**96**), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl]-29-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,22*β*,24,29-tetrahydroxyolean-12-ene (**97**), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl]-21-*O*-*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-3*β*,21*β*,22*α*,24-tetrahydroxyolean-12-ene (**98**), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl]-21-*O*-*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-3*β*,21*β*,22*α*,24-tetrahydroxyolean-12-ene (**99**), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl]-29-

O-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,22*β*,24,-trihydroxyolean-12-en-29-oic acid (**100**), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl]-22-*O*-*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-3*β*,22*β*,24-trihydroxyolean-12-ene (**101**), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl]-3*β*,24-dihydroxyolean-12-ene-22-oxo-29-oic acid (**102**), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl]-3*β*,21*β*,22*α*,24,29-pentahydroxyolean-12-ene (**103**), 3-*O*-[*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl]-29-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,22*β*,24,-trihydroxyolean-12-en-29-oic acid (**104**), and 3-*O*-[*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl]-29-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,22*β*,24,-trihydroxyolean-12-en-29-oic acid (**105**), along with 12 known oleanane-type glycosides, namely, astrojanoside A (Bedir et al. 1999a), melilotus-saponin O2 (Hirakawa et al. 2000), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl]-3*β*,21*β*,22*α*,24,29-pentahydroxyolean-12-ene (Gülcemal et al. 2012), azukisaponin V (Kitagawa et al. 1983e), wistariasaponin B2 (Konoshima et al. 1989), astragaloside VIII (Kitagawa et al. 1983c), wistariasaponin B1 (Konoshima et al. 1989), cloversaponin IV (Sakamato et al. 1992), azukisaponin II (Kitagawa et al. 1983f), wistariasaponin D (Konoshima et al. 1991), dehydroazukisaponin V (Mohamed et al. 1995), and 3-*O*-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl-soyasapogenin B (Udayama et al. 1998). The authors commented that the phytochemical investigation of *A. tauricolus* showed only oleanane-type triterpene glycosides and no cycloartane-type glycosides, the main constituents of most *Astragalus* spp., sharing this peculiar feature with a limited group of *Astragalus* spp. [*A. hamosus* (Ionkova 1991), *A. complanatus* (Cui et al. 1992a), *A. sinicus* (Cui et al. 1992b), and *A. corniculatus* (Krasteva et al. 2006, 2007)]. Moreover, an HPLC–ESIMS^n approach was used to characterize astragalosides in Radix Astragali [Xu et al. 2007; Zu et al. 2009; Chu et al. 2010), but no HPLC–ESIMS^n study was addressed to oleanane-type triterpene saponins in *Astragalus* spp. In this study, antiproliferative activity of the compounds was also investigated against some cell lines including human breast cancer (MCF-7), human lung adenocarcinoma (A549), human prostate cancer (PC-3), and human leukemia (U937) cell lines. Compound **103** was the only compound exhibiting moderate activity with an IC_{50} of 22 μM against human leukemia cell line (U937) (Gülcemal et al. 2013).

Compound **96**; $C_{53}H_{84}O_{24}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +13.1° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3428 (>OH), 2934 (>CH), 1680 (C=O), 1658 (C=C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 1127.5262 (calcd. for $C_{53}H_{84}O_{24}Na$, 1127.5250). Compound **97**; $C_{54}H_{88}O_{24}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +9.3° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3442 (>OH), 2930 (>CH), 1670 (C=O), 1655 (C=C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 1143.5573 (calcd. for $C_{54}H_{88}O_{24}Na$, 1143.5563). Compound **98**; $C_{53}H_{86}O_{22}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +22.4° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3450 (>OH), 2938 (>CH), 1680 (C=O), 1660 (C=C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 1097.5515 (calcd. for $C_{53}H_{86}O_{22}Na$, 1097.5508). Compound **99**; $C_{54}H_{88}O_{23}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +21.1° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3430 (>OH), 2948 (>CH), 1670 (C=O), 1656 (C=C); δ_C (CD_3OD);

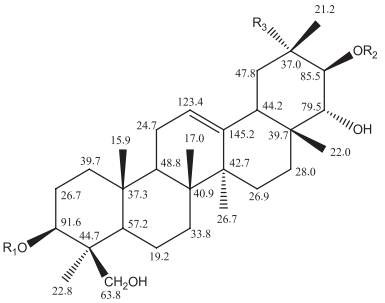
HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M+Na]^+$ 1127.5625 (calcd. for $C_{54}H_{88}O_{23}Na$, 1127.5614). Compound **100**; $C_{54}H_{86}O_{25}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +15.6° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3435 (>OH), 2925 (>CH), 1660 (C=C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 1157.5363 (calcd. for $C_{54}H_{86}O_{25}Na$, 1157.5356). Compound **101**; $C_{53}H_{86}O_{21}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +19.6° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3443 (>OH), 2935 (>CH), 1668 (C=C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 1081.5567 (calcd. for $C_{53}H_{86}O_{21}Na$, 1081.5559). Compound **102**; $C_{48}H_{74}O_{20}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +9.8° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3430 (>OH), 2938 (>CH), 1650 (C=C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 993.4682 (calcd. for $C_{48}H_{74}O_{20}Na$, 993.4671). Compound **103**; $C_{48}H_{78}O_{20}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +16.8° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3438 (>OH), 2930 (>CH), 1655 (C=C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 997.4989 (calcd. for $C_{48}H_{78}O_{20}Na$, 997.4982). Compound **104**; $C_{48}H_{76}O_{21}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +16.8° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3445 (>OH), 2928 (>CH), 1655 (C=C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 1011.4785 (calcd. for $C_{48}H_{76}O_{21}Na$, 1011.4777). Compound **105**; $C_{47}H_{74}O_{20}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_D$ +11.5° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3440 (>OH), 2934 (>CH), 1650 (C=C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 981.4683 (calcd. for $C_{47}H_{74}O_{20}Na$, 981.4671). The structures and ^{13}C data of the compounds (**96–105**) are presented below.

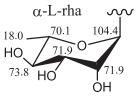


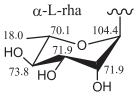
96 R_1= A

100 R_2= B

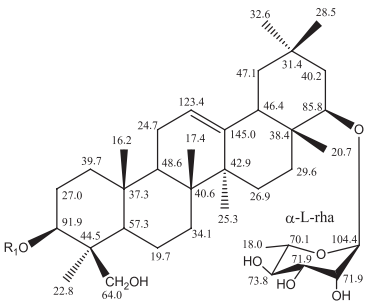
97 R_1= B



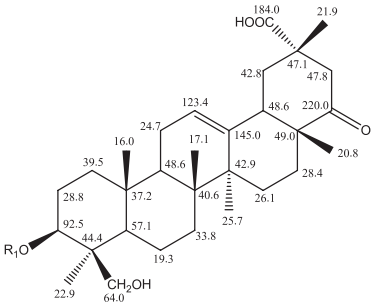
98 R_1= A R_2=  R_3= CH_3

99 R_2= B R_2=  R_3= CH_3

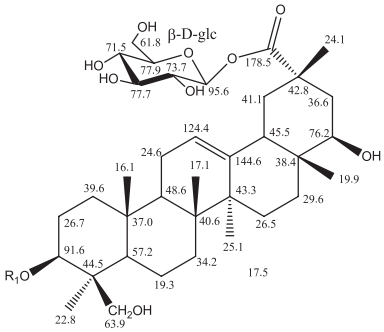
103 R_2= B R_2= H R_3= CH_2OH

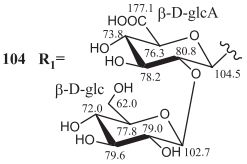


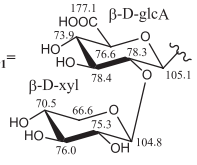
101 R_1= A



102 R_1= B



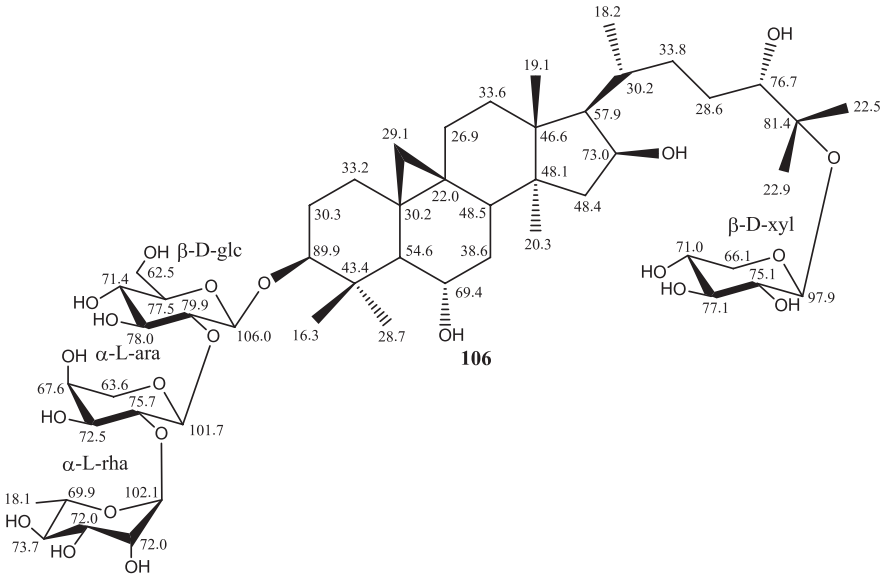
104 R_1= 

105 R_1= 

In 2014, a new cycloartane-type triterpene glycoside, 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl]-25-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (krugianoside A, **106**), was isolated from the roots of *Astragalus plumosus* var. *krugianus* Chamb.&Matthews (Sect. Rhacophorus), together with 15 known triterpene glycosides, namely, 6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24*α*-tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),25-epoxycycloartane (Gülcemal et al. 2011), cyclocephaloside I (Bedir et al. 1998a), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24*α*-tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),25-epoxycycloartane (Horo

et al. 2010), 6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (Gülcemal et al. 2011), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24*α*-tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),25-epoxycycloartane (Gülcemal et al. 2011), cyclocanthoside E (Isaev et al. 1992), oleifoliosides B (Özipek et al. 2005), 3-*O*-[*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*α*-L-arabinopyranosyl-(1→2)-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24(*S*),25-pentahydroxycycloartane (Horo et al. 2010), cycloastragenol (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), brachyoside B (Bedir et al. 1998b), cycloaraloside A (Isaev et al. 1989), cyclogaleginoside B (Alaniya et al. 1984), cycloaraloside D (Isaev 1991), elongatoside (Çalış et al. 2008a), and astragaloside IV (Kitagawa et al. 1983a). In this report, cytotoxic activity of all compounds was evaluated in human skin fibroblast WS1 cells, which revealed no cytotoxicity. The antioxidant potential was also examined for the compounds. Compounds **106** and oleifoliosides B prevented elevation of ROS induced by t-BOOH, emphasizing the potential activity of these compounds to protect fibroblasts from oxidative stress (Denizli et al. 2014).

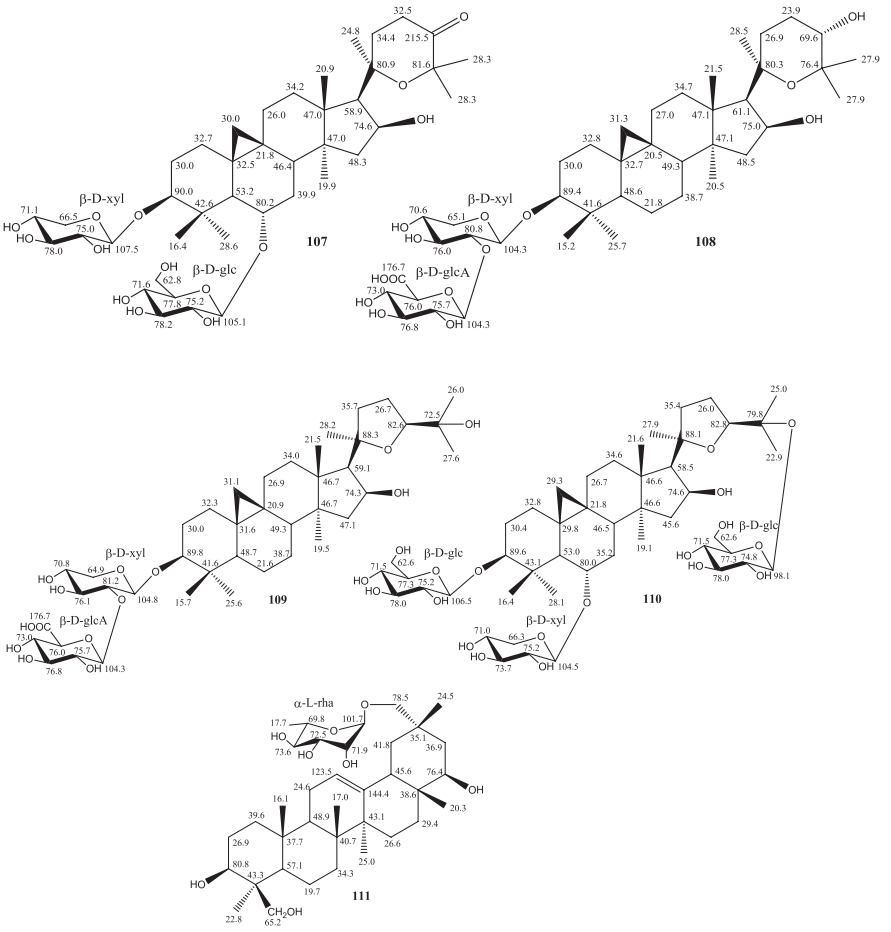
Compound **106**; $C_{52}H_{88}O_{22}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ +25.6° (*c* 0.1, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3470 (>OH), 3055 (cyclopropane ring), 2940 (>CH), 1265 and 1055 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 1087.5669 (calcd. for $C_{52}H_{88}O_{22}Na$, 1087.5665). The structure and ^{13}C chemical shifts are given below for compound **106**.



Another phytochemical study was performed on *Astragalus pennatulus* (Sect. Rhacophorus), which resulted in isolation of four new cycloartane- and a new oleanane-type triterpenoids together with five known cycloartane-type glycosides. Structures of the compounds were established as 3-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*-trihydroxy-24-oxo-20(*R*),25-epoxycycloartane (**107**),

3-*O*-[*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-3*β*,16*β*,24*α*-trihydroxy-20(*R*),25-epoxycycloartane (**108**), 3-*O*-[*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl]-3*β*,16*β*,25-trihydroxy-20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxycycloartane (**109**), 3,25-di-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-6-*O*-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,25-tetrahydrox-20(*R*),24(*S*)-epoxycycloartane (**110**), and 29-*O*-*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-abrisapogenol B (**111**) by the extensive use of 1D- and 2D-NMR experiments along with ESIMS and HRMS analysis. Known compounds were identified as cyclodissectoside (Sukhina et al. 2007), hareftoside C (Horo et al. 2012), 6-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,6*α*,16*β*,24*α*-tetrahydroxy-20(*R*),25-epoxycycloartane (Gülcemal et al. 2011), cyclocephaloside I (Bedir et al. 1998a), and astragaloside IV (Kitagawa et al. 1983a). The authors stated that the aglycone of compound **107**, 3*β*,6*α*,16*β*-trihydroxy-24-oxo-20(*R*),25-epoxycycloartane, was reported for the first time. In this report, three cancer cell lines including A549 (human lung adenocarcinoma), A375 (human melanoma), and DeFew (human B lymphoma) cells were used for testing cytotoxicity of the isolated compounds. There was no significant cytotoxicity in any of the tested compounds (Un et al. 2016).

Compound **107**; $C_{41}H_{66}O_{14}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ −60.4° (*c* 0.03, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3455 (>OH), 3030 (cyclopropane ring), 2940 (>CH), 1260 and 1055 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 805.4354 (calcd. for $C_{41}H_{66}O_{14}Na$, 805.4350). Compound **108**; $C_{41}H_{66}O_{14}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ −50.7° (*c* 0.06, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3460 (>OH), 3030 (cyclopropane ring), 2950 (>CH), 1264 and 1055 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 805.4353 (calcd. for $C_{41}H_{66}O_{14}Na$, 805.4350). Compound **109**; $C_{41}H_{66}O_{14}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ −12.7° (*c* 0.07, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3465 (>OH), 3030 (cyclopropane ring), 2955 (>CH), 1260 and 1060 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 805.4355 (calcd. for $C_{41}H_{66}O_{14}Na$, 805.4350). Compound **110**; $C_{47}H_{78}O_{19}$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ −117.3° (*c* 0.04, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3455 (>OH), 3035 (cyclopropane ring), 2935 (>CH), 1250 and 1050 (C–O–C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 969.5037 (calcd. for $C_{47}H_{78}O_{19}Na$, 969.5035). Compound **111**; $C_{36}H_{60}O_8$; $[\alpha]^{25}_{D}$ −93.2° (*c* 0.04, MeOH); ν^{KBr}_{max} cm^{-1}: 3460 (>OH), 2934 (>CH), 1658 (C=C); δ_C (CD_3OD); HR-MALDITOF-MS *m/z* $[M + Na]^+$ 643.4190 (calcd. for $C_{36}H_{60}O_8Na$, 643.4186). The structures and ^{13}C chemical shifts are provided below for compounds **107–111**.



In 2016, a study was performed on another Turkish species; *Astragalus tmoleus* Boiss. var. *tmoleus* (Sect. Pterophorus) and known cycloartane-type saponins, astrasieversianins I (Gan et al. 1986) and II (Gan et al. 1986), astragaloside IV (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), cyclocephaloside II (Bedir et al. 1998b), and acetylastragaloside I (Kitagawa et al. 1983a), were isolated (Avunduk et al. 2016).

Phytochemical investigation of *Astragalus lycius* Boiss (Sect. Onobrychium) was resulted in isolation of eight known secondary metabolites. Their structures were established as 5,5′-dihydroxy-3′-methoxy-isoflavone-7-*O*-*β*-D-glucoside (Vitor et al. 2004), genistin (Vitor et al. 2004), sissotrin (Vitor et al. 2004),

5,4′-dimethoxy-isoflavone-7-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranoside (Vitor et al. 2004), (7*S*,8*R*)-5-methoxydehydrodiconiferyl alcohol-4-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranoside (Machida and Sakamoto 2009), 4-*O*-lariciresinol-glucoside (Kurkin et al. 1991), 2-phenylethyl-*β*-D-glucopyranoside (Wu et al. 2011), and *β*-sitosterol-3-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranoside (Nyongha et al. 2010) by the extensive use of 1D- and 2D-NMR experiments along with HRMS analyses and by comparison with literature values. The authors reported that the first seven compounds were reported for the first time from *Astragalus* genus. Interestingly, no cycloartane- or oleanane-type triterpene glycoside, the main constituents of *Astragalus* spp., was isolated. This peculiar feature characterizes a very limited group of *Astragalus* spp. such as Sect. Hymenostegis [*A. lagurus* (Guzhva et al. 1984)] and Sect. Vulneraria [*A. vulneraria* (Bedir et al. 2000b), *A. onobrychis* Guzhva et al. 1992)]. In this study, all the isolated compounds were investigated for their cytotoxic activities against a number of cancer cell lines [PC3 (human prostate carcinoma), HT-29 (human colon carcinoma), MDA-MB-231 (human breast carcinoma)] and a transformed cell line [HEK 293 (human embryonic kidney 293)], in which only 4-*O*-lariciresinol-glucoside represented a strong and selective activity against human colon carcinoma (HT-29) at 2.69 μM concentration (Horo et al. 2016).

The immunostimulatory effect of 19 cycloartane-type triterpene glycosides was examined (Bedir et al.); furthermore the bioactivity of macrophyllosaponins B–D; cyclocanthoside D and E; astrasieversianin II and X; trojanoside A and H; cyclocephaloside I; astragaloside I, II, IV, VI, and VII; brachyoside B; askendoside G; and cephalatoside A; cycloastragenol which previously isolated from *A. oleifolius*, *A. prusianus*, *A. microcephalus*, *A. trojanus*, *A. cephalotes*, and *A. melanophrurius* was tested using a transcription-based bioassay for nuclear factor-kappa B (NF-kappa B) activation in a human macrophage/monocyte cell line, THP-1. All compounds were inactive at 100 μg/mL except astragaloside I, which increased NF-kappa B directed luciferase expression up to 65% compared with maximal stimulation by *E. coli* lipopolysaccharide (LPS) at 10 μg/mL. With addition of 50 ng/mL LPS to the compounds, none of them were active at low dosage levels (0.1 μg/mL). On the other hand, astragaloside I increased mRNA expression of the inflammatory cytokines interleukin-1β (IL-1β) and tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α), which was measured using reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction (RT)-PCR (Bedir et al. 2000a).

In the year of 2005, the gastroprotective effect of astragaloside IV, a cycloartane-type triterpene glycoside isolated from *Astragalus zahlbruckneri*, was measured. In addition to this, rolls of prostaglandins, sulfhydryls, and nitric oxide were also investigated. For this, astragaloside IV (3–30 mg kg^{-1}) which was given orally to the tested mice depending on dose reduced the ethanol-induced gastric hemorrhagic lesions. The results suggested that the combination of N^G-nitro-largininemethyl ester (70 mg kg^{-1}, ip), a nitric oxide (NO)-synthase inhibitor, with astragaloside IV suspended in Tween 80 at 3, 10, and 30 mg kg^{-1} showed 15, 37, and 52% gastroprotection, respectively. Dose-dependent treatment confirmed that astragaloside IV with 30 mg kg^{-1} had the highest ulcer inhibition.

On the other hand, it was reported that the effect of astragaloside IV was not limited by inhibition of prostaglandin synthesis with indomethacin (10 mg kg^{-1}, s.c.) and the block of endogenous sulfhydryls with *N*-ethylmaleimide (NEM, 10 mg kg^{-1}, s.c.) (Navarrete et al. 2005).

In the year of 2005, another study was performed for the investigation of immunostimulating effect of 13 cycloartane- and 1 oleanane-type triterpene saponins isolated from Turkish species (*Astragalus brachypterus*, *A. cephalotes*, *A. microcephalus*, and *A. trojanus*), as well as methanol extracts from the roots of three *Astragalus* species (*A. cephalotes*, *A. oleifolius*, and *A. trojanus*). Cytokine concentrations of interleukins IL-1 (interleukin-1) and IL-8 (interleukin-8) and TNF-α after bacterial lipopolysaccharide (LPS) stimulation and IL-2 (interleukin-2) and IL-4 (interleukin-4) and INF-ɣ (interferon gamma) after phorbolacetate (PHA) stimulation were determined utilizing commercial enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) kits. All triterpene saponins, which were tested in the mentioned study (brachyoside A, brachyoside C, cycloastragenol, astragaloside I, brachyoside B, cyclocephaloside II, astragaloside II, astragaloside VII, trojanoside A, cyclocanthoside E, trojanoside H, cyclocephaloside I, astragaloside I, astrojanoside A: 3-*O*-(*α*-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-xylopyranosyl-(1→2)-*β*-D-glucuronopyranosyl)-29-*O*-*β*-D-glucopyranosyl-3*β*,22*β*,24,29-tetrahydroxyolean-12-en), presented a substantial IL-2-inducing activity between 35.9% and 139.6%. IL-2 is a cytokine produced by activated T cells with powerful immunostimulatory and antineoplastic properties. Among the extracts, the highest activity was obtained from *A. oleifolius* (141.2%). Glycosides of 20,24-epoxy and 20,25-epoxy cycloartanes showed higher IL-2-inducing activity than those of acyclic-cycloartane derivatives; in addition to this, in aglycone of 20,24-epoxy, cycloartanes in cycloastragenol also showed higher IL-2-inducing activity. Especially the activity of astragaloside VII, a tridesmosidic glycoside of cycloastragenol, was the most remarkable. Additionally, the oleanane-type triterpene saponins represented a prominent IL-2-inducing activity (Yeşilada et al. 2005).

In the year of 2011, another study was carried out for determination of in vitro growth stimulatory and in vivo wound healing properties of four cycloartane-type saponins that are present in Turkish *Astragalus* species as major chemical entities (astragaloside IV, cycloastragenol, cyclocephaloside I, and cyclocanthoside E). The obtained results indicated that cycloartane-type saponins of *Astragalus* genus are able to promote wound healing based on proliferation and migration in scratch assay, proliferation in MTT assay, and in vivo wound model study. Although all the obtained compounds could increase both migration and fibroblast proliferation, the most prominent were for cycloastragenol (CA), astragaloside IV (AG), and cyclocanthoside E (CCE). CA at 1 ng/mL showed a remarkable effect upon migration, whereas AG and CCE had their highest activities at 10 ng/mL. Simultaneously, AG and CCE at 10 ng/mL and CA at 1 ng/mL showed the highest proliferation rates in MTT assay. The results also showed that the topical treatments of *Astragalus* cycloartanes improve healing of subsequently induced abrasion skin wounds in rats compared to the control. At the end of 14-day treatment period, it was reported that 5% CA preparation was found to be the most remarkable in the treated skin. Histological

researches also confirmed that the group treated by CA had a greater cell density, more newly formed blood vessels and more regularly organized dermis (linear alignment) compared to the other groups (Sevimli-Gür et al. 2011).

The evaluation of hemolytic activities referring to two immunomodulator *Astragalus* saponins macrophyllosaponin B (Mac B) from *Astragalus oleifolius* DC and astragaloside VII (Ast VII) from *Astragalus trojanus* Stev. and their adjuvant potentials on the cellular and humoral immune responses of Swiss albino mice against BSA (bovine serum albumin) were studied. The hemolytic activity of Mac B and Ast VII was measured using 0.5% rabbit red blood cell. According to the final results, no hemolytic activity was observed at concentrations of 2.5–500 μg/mL. Results referring to the effect of Ast VII and Mac B on mitogen- and BSA-stimulated splenocyte proliferation in BSA-immunized mice represented that LPS-stimulated splenocyte proliferation in the mice immunized with BSA/Ast VII and BSA/Mac B was significantly higher than that in the BSA control group. It was reported that the effect was dose dependent since BSA-induced splenocyte proliferation in the BSA-immunized mice was enhanced by Ast VII as well as Mac B in different doses. Mac B and Ast VII showed a slight hemolytic effect, with 0.42 and 0.54% values, respectively, while the results for the effects of Ast VII and Mac B on the BSA-specific serum antibody response represented that the serum IgG (immunoglobulin G), IgG1 (immunoglobulin G1), and IgG2b (immunoglobulin G2b), antibody levels immunized with BSA, were remarkably increased by Ast VII (120 μg), Mac B (90 μg), and Freund's comparing to the control group. For adjuvant activity, on days 1 and 15, Swiss albino mice were immunized with only BSA 100 μg or with BSA 100 μg dissolved in saline containing Ast VII (30, 60, 120, and 240 μg), Mac B (30, 60, 90, and 120 μg), or Freund's adjuvant; 2 weeks after the last immunization for concanavalin A (Con A)-, lipopolysaccharide (LPS)-, and BSA-stimulated splenocyte proliferation assay, sera and splenocytes were collected, and BSA-specific antibodies in serum were measured. Moreover, 2 weeks after the last immunization, the IFN-γ and IL-4 levels in the sera were detected using ELISA. Ast VII (120 μg) and Mac B (90 μg) were found to stimulate IFN-γ production such as Freund's 2 weeks after the last immunization as compared to the control. Results showed that Ast VII and Mac B generate essential specific antibody and cellular response against BSA in mice; it can be confirmed that the tested molecules have potentials as a new class saponin adjuvant (Nalbantsoy et al. 2011).

In the year of 2012, immunomodulatory properties and in vitro anti-inflammatory activities of cycloartane-type saponins from *Astragalus* species were studied in mice. For this, the ability of LPS + Ast VII and LPS + Mac B to induce IL-1β, TGF-1β, TNF-α, IL-2, IL-4, and IFN-γ production was tested. Groups of five male Swiss albino mice were immunized ip with LPS (12.5 μg)/AST VII (60 μg) and LPS (12.5 μg)/Mac B (60 μg) on day 1 and AST VII (60 μg) and Mac B (60 μg) alone on day 2. The cytokine levels in the sera were detected 4 h after the last immunization using ELISA; the results suggested that AST VII and Mac B increased the concentration of Th1 (T helper 1) cytokine release (IL-2 and IFN-γ) and suppressed the concentration of Th2 (T helper 2) cytokine production (IL-4) remarkably. The

results referring to the immunohistochemical studies exhibited that both IL-Rα (CD25) and CD69 surface receptors justifying the Th1 cytokine release were induced. According to the final results, compounds did not affect either NF-κB or NAG-1 (nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug-activated gene) activity; on the other hand inhibition of inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS) activity was inhibited by Mac B with half maximal inhibitory concentration (IC_{50}) of 156 μg/mL. Although Ast VII and Mac B had no significant effect on the inflammatory cellular targets in vitro, they resulted in strong immunoregulatory effects without the stimulation of inflammatory cytokines in mice (Nalbantsoy et al. 2012).

Chemotaxonomy

Until now, as mentioned before, 31 out of 447 Turkish *Astragalus* species, which were chosen from 14 different sections, have been investigated for their secondary metabolite contents. Most of the studied sections, namely, Sect. Adiaspastus [*A. aureus* (Gülcemal et al. 2011)], Sect. Christiana [*A. gilvus* Boiss (Tabanca et al. 2005), *A. melanophrurius* (Çalış et al. 1997)], Sect. Halicacabus [*A. halicacabus* (Djimtombaye et al. 2013)], Sect. Macrophyllium [*A. oleifolius* (Çalış et al. 1996; Bedir et al. 2000c; Özipek et al. 2005)], Sect. Proselius [*A. campylosema* Boiss. ssp. *campylosema* (Çalış et al. 2008b), *A. elongatus* (Çalış et al. 2008a)], Sect. Pterophorus [*A. brachypterus* (Bedir et al. 1998b), *A. baibutensis* (Çalış et al. 2006), *A. ptilodes* Boiss. var. *cariensis* Boiss (Linnek et al. 2011), *A. tmoleus* var. *tmoleus* (Avunduk et al. 2016)], Sect. Rhacophorus [*A. amblolepis* (Polat et al. 2009), *A. cephalotes* var. *brevicalyx* (Çalış et al. 1999), *A. erinaceus* (Savran et al. 2012), *A. microcephalus* (Bedir et al. 1998a, b), *A. plumosus* var. *krugianus* (Denizli et al. 2014), *A. prusianus* (Bedir et al. 2001b), *A. schottianus* (Karabey et al. 2012), *A. zahlbruckneri* (Çalış et al. 2001)], and Sect. Stereocalyx [A. *stereocalyx* Bornm. (Yalçın et al. 2012)], provided cycloartane glycosides; however, cycloartane- and oleanane-type saponins were encountered together in a few sections: Sect. Acanthophace [*A. hareftae* (Horo et al. 2012), *A. icmadophilus* (Horo et al. 2010)], Sect. Eustales [*A. flavescens* (Konoshima et al. 1989)], Sect. Melanocercis [*A. angustifolius* (Gülcemal et al. 2012)], Sect. Pterophorus [*A. wiedemannianus* Fischer (Polat et al. 2010), *A. trojanus* (Bedir et al. 1999a, b, 2001a)], and Sect. Rhacophorus [*A. pennatulus* (Un et al. 2016), *Astragalus pycnocephalus* var. *pycnocephalus* (Koz et al. 2011)]. The Sect. Malacothrix [*A. tauricolus* (Gülcemal et al. 2013)] provided oleanane-type saponins exclusively and no cycloartane-type glycosides, the main components of *Astragalus* spp., sharing this uncharacteristic feature with a limited group of *Astragalus* spp. [*A. hamosus* (Ionkova 1991), *A. complanatus* (Cui et al. 1992a), *A.* sinicus (Cui et al. 1992b), and *A. corniculatus* (Krasteva et al. 2006, 2007)]. *A. lycius* (Horo et al. 2016), belonging to Section Onobrychium, comprises only phenolic- and flavonoid-type glycosides. Moreover, *A. vulneraria* (Bedir et al. 2000b), belonging to Sect. Vulneraria, includes only flavonol

glycosides. Amusingly, no cycloartane- or oleanane-type triterpene glycoside, the main constituents of *Astragalus* spp., was isolated from *A. lycius* and *A. vulneraria*. This peculiar feature characterizes a very limited group of *Astragalus* spp. (Guzhva et al. 1984, 1992).

Cycloastragenol with 20(R),24(S)-epoxy side chain is the principal aglycone in the *Astragalus* species along with cyclocanthogenol. However, cyclocephalogenol is more uncommon in the genus so far reported only from four sections, viz., Acanthophace [*A. hareftae* (Horo et al. 2012), *A. icmadophilus* (Horo et al. 2010)], Adiaspastus [*A. aureus* (Gülcemal et al. 2011)], Pterophorus [*A. trojanus* (Bedir et al. 1999a, b, 2001a), *A. wiedemannianus* Fischer (Polat et al. 2010)], and Rhacophorus [*A. microcephalus* (Bedir et al. 1998a, b), *A. plumosus* var. *krugianus* (Denizli et al. 2014), *A. zahlbruckneri* (Çalış et al. 2001)]. *A. angustifolius* (Gülcemal et al. 2012), single studied species of Melanocercis section, provided the C-24 epimer of cycloastragenol as aglycone, which was reported for the first time in nature. *A. halicacabus* (Djimtombaye et al. 2013), single tested species of Halicacabus section, provided maltol glycosides, reported for the first time in the *Astragalus* genus and even in the Fabaceae family. *A. pennatulus* (Un et al. 2016), belonging to Sect. Rhacophorus, provided a cyclocephalogenin-alike glycoside characterized by the deficiency of the hydroxyl function at C-6 and the presence of a keto function at C-24, so far never reported in literature.

Structural Summary of Cycloartanes

Astragalus cycloartanes are classified based on the side chains extending from C-17 of the tetracyclic framework. In the case of Turkish *Astragalus* cycloartanes, three main aglycone structures including cycloastragenol, cyclocanthagenol, and cyclocephalogenol have been reported, deriving from 20,24-epoxy-, acyclic-, and 20,25-epoxy side chains, respectively (Isaev et al. 1983a, b, 1989; Isaev 1991, 1995, 1996; Mamedova and Isaev 2004).

20,24-Epoxy Side Chain Compounds

As shown in Fig. 1, 20,24-epoxy side chain cycloartanes undergo both oxidation and glycosylation reactions at different positions during biosynthesis. Carbons 3, 6, 16, 23, and 25 are susceptible to oxidation reactions, mainly involving regio- and stereo-specific hydroxylations catalyzed by P450 monooxygenase enzymes. In the case of glycosylation reactions, except C-23 position, all of the hydroxylated carbons (3, 6, 16, and 25) were found to be sugar attached. Particularly, bisdesmosidic saponins are common in *Astragalus* cycloartanes, where C-3(O) and C-6(O) are the major attachment positions. Moreover, in nature, tridesmosidic saponins have only been reported from *Astragalus* species as cycloartane saponins (i.e., astragaloside

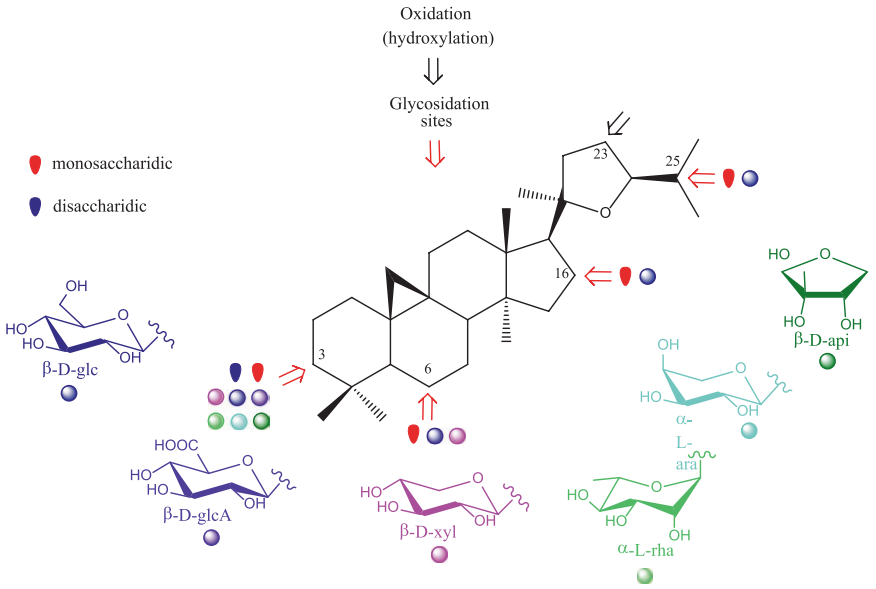


Fig. 1 General structure of 20,24-epoxy side chain compounds

VII, brachyoside C, cephalotoside A, trojanoside B, D, E, and F), whereas monodesmosidic and monosaccharidic compounds are encountered rarely compared to their counterparts bisdesmosidic/disaccharidic and trisaccharidic glycosides. Sugar diversity of the cycloartane class is much less in comparison to other saponin groups, such as oleananes, ursanes, lupanes, dammaranes, etc. Up to now, only six different sugar moieties have been found, viz., β-D-glucose, β-D-glucuronic acid, β-D-xylose, α-L-rhamnose, α-L-arabinose, and β-D-apiose. Although all the sugars mentioned above are found to be at C-3(O) position of 20,24-epoxy side chain cycloartanes, β-D-glucose is the only extending saccharide from C-16(O) and C-25(O) positions. Both β-D-glucuronic acid and β-D-xylose units have only been reported at C-6(O) position. While C-3(O) is found to include mono- or disaccharidic units, C-6, C-16, and C-25 positions are only glycosylated with a single sugar.

Acyclic Side Chain Compounds

Acyclic side chain derivatives have also been reported with similar oxidation and glycosylation patterns shown in Fig. 2. Whereas oxidations (mainly hydroxylations) are observed at C-1, C-3, C-6, C-7, C-16, C-20, C-24, and C-25, the glycosylation occurs on oxygenated carbons 3, 6, 16, 24, and 25. All glycosylated carbons are found to have at least one sugar unit. However, C-3(O) goes under further

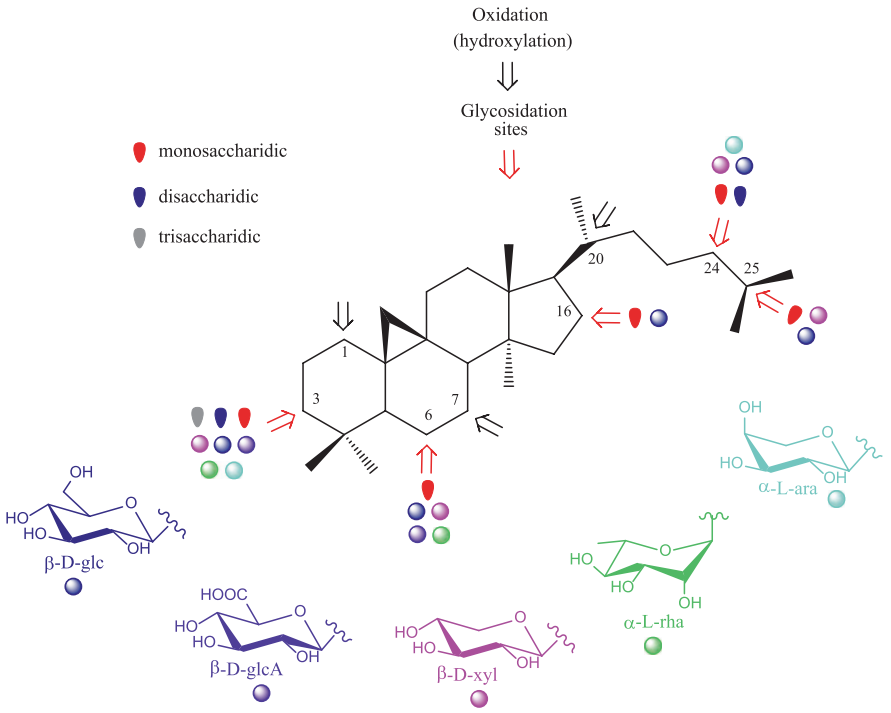


Fig. 2 General structure of acyclic side chain compounds

glycosylation reactions yielding di- and trisaccharidic sugar chains, whereas disaccharidic nature was also encountered for C-24(O). The sugars reported to be attached on acyclic side chain cyloartanes are β-D-glucose, β-D-glucuronic acid, β-D-xylose, α-L-rhamnose, and α-L-arabinose. As in 20,24-epoxy side chain structures, C-3 was found to contain all abovementioned sugar moieties attached, whereas, except arabinose unit, all the sugars were reported from the major glycosylation position C-6. C-16 had only β-D-glucose, while β-D-glucose and β-D-xylose units were branching from C-24 and C-25 positions. β-D-Glucose was recorded in all sugar sites, whereas the sugar α-L-rhamnose extended only from C-3 and C-24.

20,25-Epoxy Side Chain Compounds

20,25-Epoxy side chain cycloartanes are less common compared to the other side chains. This group of compounds is reported to have similar oxidation and glycosylation arrangement shown in Fig. 3. While hydroxylations are observed at C-3, C-6, C-16, and C-24, the glycosylation takes place on oxymethine carbons 3, 6, and 24. Up to now, five different sugars, viz., β-D-glucose, β-D-glucuronic acid, β-D-xylose,

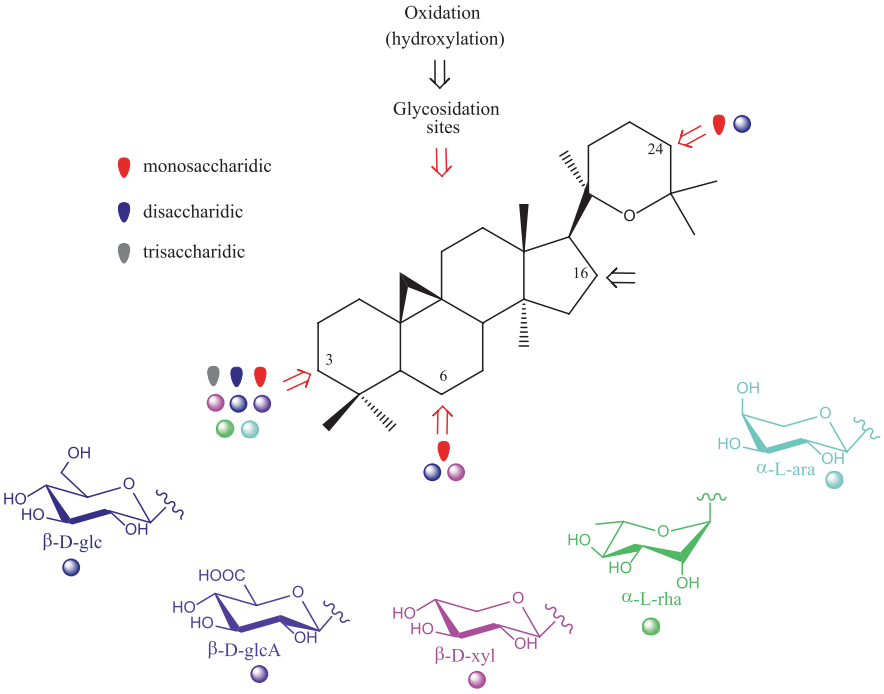


Fig. 3 General structure of 20,25-epoxy side chain compounds

α-L-rhamnose, and α-L-arabinose, have been reported for 20,25-epoxy side chain cycloartanes. C-6(O) and C-24(O) are found to have monosaccharidic units, while C-3(O) locates mono-, di-, and tetrasaccharidic sugar chains. Only β-D-glucose or β-D-xylose are attached from C-6(O), whereas β-D-glucose is reported as the only sugar branching from C-24(O).

Stereochemistry of *Astragalus* Cycloartanes

A total of 14 structurally distinct genins have been found in Turkish *Astragalus* species. Some of these have not been characterized as pure compounds but as the corresponding glycosides. β-Configuration of C-3 (OH) and C-16 (OH) and α-conuration of C-6 (OH) are consistent with all naturally occurring cycloartanes present in the genus *Astragalus* (Fig. 4).

20,24-Epoxycycloartanes, representing the largest group in Turkish *Astragalus* plants, are found in nature with three different stereoisomers, viz., 20*R*,24*S*, 20*S*,24*R* and 20*R*,24*R*. In the case of 20*S*,24*R* configuration, C-20 and C-24 resonate about 86.5–87.5 and 84.5–85.5, respectively, while, for the 20*R*,24*S* configuration, these carbons have chemical shifts of *ca.* 87.0–88.0 and 81.5–82.5. For 20*R*,24*R*

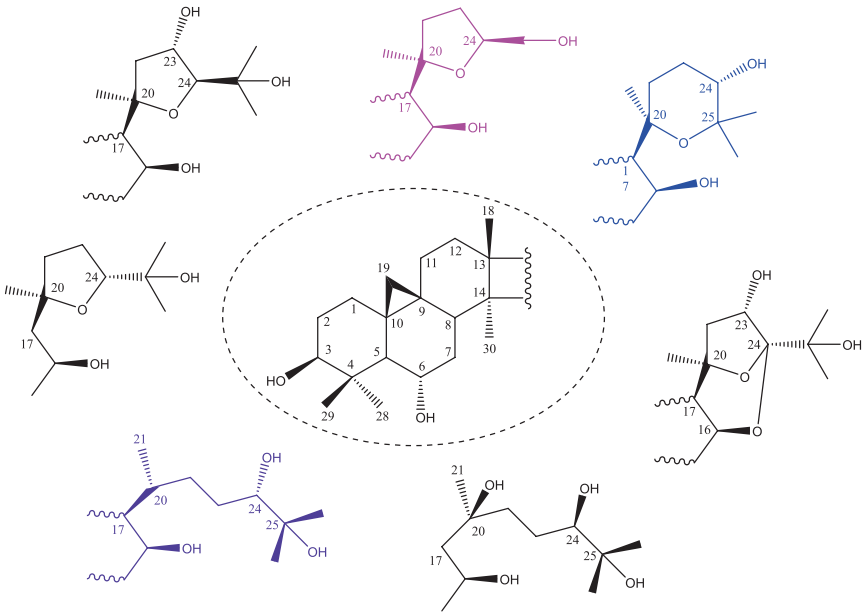


Fig. 4 Stereochemistry of *Astragalus* cycloartanes

configuration, C-20 and C-24 resonate around 87.3–88.8 and 88.4–85.5, respectively (Kitagawa et al. 1983a; Bedir et al. 2001b; Gülcemal et al. 2012). 16β,24;20,24-Diepoxycycloartane-type derivatives are very unusual in the plant kingdom. An examination of molecular models indicates that the heterocycles can be fused as the 20*R*, 24*R* and 20*S*, 24*S* configurations. Therefore, establishing the stereochemistry of one of these asymmetric centers defines the configuration of the other chiral atom (Çalış et al. 2008b).

For the acyclic side chain substituted cycloartane-type saponins, obtained from the *Astragalus* genus, the 24-position locates a hydroxyl group, meaning two possible stereoisomer (24*S* or 24*R*). The ^{13}C NMR chemical shift of C-24 could be used as a characteristic parameter in the determination of the configurations at C-24. In the case of the 24*R* configuration, the chemical shift of C-24 was found about 79.9–80.6 ppm (Isaev et al. 1983b), while for the 24S configuration of cyclocanthogenin, the same position's chemical shift ranged between 77.0 and 78.2 ppm (Isaev et al. 1992).

20,25-Epoxycycloartane genins are represented only with a single stereoisomer of cyclocephalogenin (20*R*,25-epoxycycloartane). The α orientation of the -OH group at C-24 can be determined by the nOe correlation between Me-27 and H-24β signals (Bedir et al. 1998a).

References

Agzamova MA, Isaev MI (1999) Triterpene glycosides of *Astragalus* and their genins LIX. Structure of cyclocanthoside F. Chem Nat Compd 35:314–319

Alaniya MD, Isaev MI, Gorovits MB, Abdullaev ND, Kemertelidze EP, Abubakirov NK (1984) *Astragalus* triterpene glycosides and their genins. XVI. Cyclogaleginosides A and B from *Astragalus galegiformis*. Khim Prir Soedin 4:477–481

Alaniya MD, Kavtaradze NS, Faure R, Debrauwer L (2008) Cycloascauloside B from *Astragalus caucasicus*. Chem Nat Compd 44:324–326

Avunduk S, Mitaine-Offer AC, Alankuş-Çalışkan Ö, Miyamoto T, Şenol SG, Lacaille-Dubois MA (2008) Triterpene glycosides from the roots of *Astragalus flawescens*. J Nat Prod 71:141–145

Avunduk S, Mitaine-Offer AC, Miyamoto T, Tanaka C, Lacaille-Dubois MA (2016) Cycloartane-type saponins from *Astragalus tmoleus* var. *tmoleus*. Nat Prod Commun 11:37–38

Aytaç Z (2000) *L. Astragalus*, Flora of Turkey and the East Aegean Islands. Edinburgh University Press, Edinburgh

Bedir E, Çalış İ, Zerbe O, Sticher O (1998a) Cyclocephaloside I: A novel cycloartane-type glycoside from *Astragalus microcephalus*. J Nat Prod 61:503–505

Bedir E, Çalış İ, Aquino R, Piacente S, Pizza C (1998b) Cycloartane triterpene glycosides from the roots of *Astragalus brachypterus* and *Astragalus microcephalus*. J Nat Prod 61:1469–1472

Bedir E, Çalış İ, Aquino R, Piacente S, Pizza C (1999a) Secondary metabolites from the roots of *Astragalus trojanus*. J Nat Prod 62:563–568

Bedir E, Çalış İ, Aquino R, Piacente S, Pizza C (1999b) Trojanoside H: a cycloartane-type glycoside from the aerial parts of *Astragalus trojanus*. Phytochemistry 51:1017–1020

Bedir E, Çalış İ S, Piacente Pizza C, Khan IA (2000a) A new flavonol glycoside from the aerial parts of *Astragalus vulneraria*. Chem Pharm Bull 48:1994–1995

Bedir E, Pugh N, Çalış İ, Pasco DS, Khan IA (2000b) Immunostimulatory effects of cycloartane-type triterpene glycosides from *Astragalus* species. Biol Pharm Bull 23:834–837

Bedir E, Çalış İ, Khan IA (2000c) Macrophyllosaponin E: a novel compound from the roots of *Astragalus oleifolius*. Chem Pharm Bull 48:1081–1083

Bedir E, Tatlı İİ, Çalış İ, Khan IA (2001a) Trojanosides I—K: New cycloartane-type glycosides from the aerial parts of *Astragalus trojanus*. Chem Pharm Bull 49:1482–1486

Bedir E, Çalış İ, Dunbar C, Sharan R, Buolamwini JK, Khan IA (2001b) Two novel cycloartane-type triterpene glycosides from the roots of *Astragalus prusianus*. Tetrahedron 57:5961–5966

Burasheva GS, Mukhamedyarova MM, Chumbalov TK (1975) Khim Prir Soedin 11:426

Çalış İ, Zor M, Saracoğlu İ, Işımer A, Rüegger H (1996) Four novel cycloartane glycosides from *Astragalus oleifolius*. J Nat Prod 59:1019–1023

Çalış İ, Yürüker A, Taşdemir D, Wright AD, Sticher O, Luo YD, Pezzuto JM (1997) Cycloartane triterpene glycosides from the roots of *Astragalus melanophrurius*. Planta Med 63:183–186

Çalış İ, Yusufoğlu H, Zerbe O, Sticher O (1999) Cephalotoside A: a tridesmosidic cycloartane type glycoside from *Astragalus cephalotes* var *brevicalyx*. Phytochemistry 50:843–847

Çalış İ, Gazar HA, Piacente S, Pizza C (2001) Secondary metabolites from the roots of *Astragalus zahlbruckneri*. J Nat Prod 64:1179–1182

Çalış İ, Koyunoğlu S, Yeşilada A, Brun R, Rüedi P, Taşdemir D (2006) Antitrypanosomal cycloartane glycosides from *Astragalus baibutensis*. Chem Biodivers 3:923–929

Çalış İ, Barbic M, Jürgenliemk G (2008a) Bioactive cycloartane-yype triterpene glycosides from *Astragalus elongatus*. Z Naturforsch 63c:813–820

Çalış İ, Dönmez AA, Perrone A, Pizza C, Piacente S (2008b) Cycloartane glycosides from *Astragalus campylosema* Boiss. ssp. *campylosema*. Phytochemistry 69:2634–2638

Chaudhuri SK, Huang L, Fullas F, Brown DM, Wani MC, Wall ME (1995) Isolation and structure identification of an active DNA strand scission agent, (+)-3,4-dihydroxy-8,9-methylenedioxypterocarpan. J Nat Prod 58:1966–1969

Chu C, Cai HX, Ren MT, Liu EH, Li B, Qi LW, Li P (2010) Characterization of novel astragaloside malonates from Radix Astragali by HPLC with ESI quadrupole TOF MS. J Sep Sci 33:570–581

Cui B, Sakai Y, Takeshita T, Kinjo J, Nohara T (1992a) 4 New oleanane derivatives from the seeds of *Astragalus complanatus*. Chem Pharm Bull 40:136–138

Cui B, Sakai Y, Takeshita T, Kinjo J, Nohara T (1992b) Triterpene glycosides from the seeds of *Astragalus sinicus* L. Chem Pharm Bull 40:3330–3333

Davis PH (1970) Flora of Turkey and East Aegean Islands. Edinburgh University Press, Edinburgh

Denizli N, Horo İ, Gülcemal D, Masullo M, Festa M, Capasso A, Koz Ö, Piacente S, Alankuş-Çalışkan Ö (2014) Cycloartane glycosides from *Astragalus plumosus* var. *krugianus* and evaluation of their antioxidant potential. Fitoterapia 92:211–218

Djimtombaye BJ, Alankuş-Çalışkan Ö, Gülcemal D, Khan IA, Anıl H, Bedir E (2013) Unusual secondary metabolites from *Astragalus halicacabus* Lam. Chem Biodivers 10:1328–1334

Fadeev YM, Isaev MI, Akimov YA, Kintya PK, Gorovits MB, Abubakirov NK (1988) Triterpene glycosides of *Astragalus* and their genins. 25. Cyclocantoside-D from *Astragalus tragantha*. Khim Prir Soedin 0:73–76

Gan LX, Han XB, Chen YQ (1986) The structures of thirteen astrasieversianins from *Astragalus sieversianus*. Phytochemistry 25:2389–2393

Gariboldi P, Pelizzoni F, Tato M, Verotta L, El-Sebakhy NA, Asaad AM, Abdallah RM, Toaima SM (1995) Cycloartane triterpene gylcosides from *Astragalus trigonus*. Phytochemistry 40:1755–1760

Gülcemal D, Alankuş-Çalışkan Ö, Perrone A, Özgökçe F, Piacente S, Bedir E (2011) Cycloartane glycosides from *Astragalus aureus*. Phytochemistry 72:761–768

Gülcemal D, Masullo M, Bedir E, Festa M, Karayıldırım T, Alankuş-Çalışkan Ö, Piacente S (2012) Triterpene glycosides from *Astragalus angustifolius*. Planta Med 78:720–729

Gülcemal D, Masullo M, Napolitano A, Karayıldırım T, Bedir E, Alankuş-Çalışkan Ö, Piacente S (2013) Oleanane glycosides from *Astragalus tauricolus*: Isolation and structural elucidation based on a preliminary liquid chromatography-electrospray ionization tandem mass spectrometry profiling. Phytochemistry 86:184–194

Guzhva NN, Kazakov AL, Dzhumyrko SF, Sarkisov LS (1984) Flavonoids of *Astragalus lagurus*. Chem Nat Compd 20:627–628

Guzhva NN, Dzhumyrko SF, Kolpak AM, Anisimova VP (1992) Coumarins and phenolic carboxylic acids from *Astragalus onobrychis*. Chem Nat Compd 6:625

Hirakawa T, Okawa M, Kinjo J, Nohara T (2000) A new oleanene glucuronide obtained from the aerial parts of *Melilotus officinalis*. Chem Pharm Bull 48:286–287

Horo İ, Bedir E, Perrone A, Özgökçe F, Piacente S, Alankuş Çalışkan Ö (2010) Triterpene glycosides from *Astragalus icmadophilus*. Phytochemistry 71:956–963

Horo İ, Bedir E, Masullo M, Piacente S, Özgökçe F, Alankuş-Çalışkan Ö (2012) Saponins from *Astragalus hareftae* (NAB.) SIRJ. Phytochemistry 84:147–153

Horo İ, Kocabaş F, Alankuş-Çalışkan Ö, Özgökçe F, Khan IA, Bedir E (2016) Secondary metabolites from *Astragalus lycius* and their cytotoxic activities. Nat Prod Commun 11:1847–1850

Ionkova I (1991) Producing triterpene saponins by conventional and genetically transformed cultures of *Astragalus hamosus* L. (Fabaceae). Probl Farmakol Farmat 5:32–38

Isaev MI (1991) Triterpene glycosides of *Astragalus* and their genins XXXIX. Cycloaraloside D from *Astragalus amarus*. Chem Nat Compd 4:526–528

Isaev MI (1995) Triterpene glycosides of *Astragalus* and their genins. LII. Askendoside F from *Astragalus taschkendicus*. Khim Prir Soedin 6:820–823; (1995). Chem Nat Compd 31:690–693

Isaev MI (1996) Triterpene glycosides of *Astragalus* and their genins LIV. Askendoside G from *Astragalus taschkendicus*. Khim Prir Soedin 5:723–727; (1996). Chem Nat Compd 32:706–709

Isaev MI, Gorovits MB, Abdullaev ND, Abubakirov NK (1983a) Triterpene glycosides of *Astragalus* and their genins. IX. Askendoside D from *Astragalus taschkendicus*. Khim Prir Soedin 2:180–185; (1983a). Chem Nat Compd 19:170–174

Isaev MI, Gorovits MB, Gorovits TT, Abdullaev ND, Abubakirov NK (1983b) *Astragalus* triterpenoid glycosides and their genins VIII. Askendoside C from *Astragalus taschkendicus.* Khim Prir Soedin 2:173–180; (1983b). Chem Nat Compd 19:163–169

Isaev MI, Gorovits MB, Abubakirov NK (1989) Triterpene glycosides of *Astragalus* and their genins XXX. Cycloaraloside A from *Astragalus amarus*. Chem Nat Compd 25:684–687

Isaev MI, Imomnazarov BA, Fadeev YM, Kintya PA (1992) Triterpene glycosides of *Astragalus* and their genins. XLII. Cycloartanes of *Astragalus tragacantha*. Khim Prir Soedin 3:360-367; (1992). Chem Nat Comp 28:315–320

Karabey F, Khan IA, Bedir E (2012) Cycloartane-type glycosides from *Astragalus schottianus*. Phytochem Lett 5:320–324

Karimov RZ, Umarova RU, Saatov Z, Levkovich MG, Abdullaev ND (1998) Triterpene glycosides of *Tragacantha* and their genins. Cyclostipulosides A and B from *Tragacantha stipulosa*. Khim Prir Soedin 5:670–674

Kitagawa I, Wang HK, Saito M, Takagi A, Yoshikawa M (1983a) Saponin and sapogenol. XXXV. Chemical constituents of *Astragalus* radix, the root of *Astragalus membranaceus* Bunge (2). Astragalosides I, II and IV, acetylastragaloside I and isoastragalosides I and II. Chem Pharm Bull 31:698–708

Kitagawa I, Wang HK, Saito M, Yoshikawa M (1983b) Saponin and sapogenol. 36. Chemical-constituents of Astragali radix, the root of *Astragalus membranaceus* bunge. 3. Astragaloside-III, astragaloside-V and astragaloside-VI. Chem Pharm Bull 31:709–715

Kitagawa I, Wang HK, Saito M, Takagi A, Yoshikawa M (1983c) Saponin and sapogenol. XXXVII. Chemical constituents of astragali radix, the root of *Astragalus membranaceus* Bunge. (4). Astragalosides VII and VIII. Chem Pharm Bull 31:716–722

Kitagawa I, Wang HK, Saito M, Yoshikawa M (1983d) Saponin and sapogenol. 32. Chemical-constituents of the seeds of *Vigna angularis* (willd) ohwi et ohashi. 2. Azukisaponins-I, azukisaponin-II, azukisaponin-III and azokisaponin-IV. Chem Pharm Bull 31:674–682

Kitagawa I, Wang HK, Takagi A, Fuchida M, Miura I, Yoshikawa M (1983e) Saponin and sapogenol. 34. Chemical-constituents of Astragali radix, the root of *Astragalus membranaceus* bunge. 1. Cycloastragenol, the 9,19-cyclolanostane-type aglycone of astragalosides, and the artifact aglycone astragenol. Chem Pharm Bull 31:689–697

Kitagawa I, Wang HK, Saito M, Yoshikawa M (1983f) Saponin and sapogenol. 33. Chemical-constituents of the seeds of *Vigna angularis* (willd) ohwi et ohashi. 3. Azukisaponin-V and azukisaponin-VI. Chem Pharm Bull 31:683–688

Konoshima T, Kozuka M, Haruna M, Ito K, Kimura T, Tokuda H (1989) Studies on the constituents of leguminous plants XII. The structures of new triterpenoid saponins from *Wistaria branchybotrys* Sieb. et Zucc. Chem Pharm Bull 37:2731–2735

Konoshima T, Kozuka M, Haruna M, Ito K (1991) Constituents of leguminous plants, XIII. New triterpenoid saponins from *Wistaria brachybotrys*. J Nat Prod 54:830–836

Koz O, Ekinci D, Şentürk M, Perrone A, Piacente S, Çalışkan ÖA, Bedir E (2011) Saponins from *Astragalus pycnocephalus* var. *pycnocephalus* FISCHER and their alpha/beta-glucosidase inhibitory effects. Planta Med 77:1443

Krasteva I, Nikolov S, Kaloga M, Mayer G (2006) Triterpenoid saponins from *Astragalus* corniculatus. Z Naturforsch B 61:1166–1169

Krasteva I, Nikolov S, Kaloga M, Mayer G (2007) A new saponin lactone from *Astragalus* corniculatus. Nat Prod Res 21:941–945

Kurkin VA, Grinenko NA, Zapesochnaya GG (1991) Lignans of the bark of *Syringa vulgaris*. Chem Nat Compd 27:678–680

Linnek J, Mitaine-Offer AC, Miyamoto T, Tanaka C, Pauluat T, Avunduk S, Alankuş-Çalışkan Ö, Lacaille-Dubois MA (2011) Cycloartane glycosides from three species of *Astragalus* (Fabaceae). Helv Chim Acta 94:230–237

Machida K, Sakamoto K (2009) Two new neolignan glycosides from leaves of *Osmanthus heterophyllus*. J Nat Med 63:227–231

Mamedova RP, Isaev MI (2004) Triterpenoids from *Astragalus* plants. Chem Nat Compd 40:303–357

Mohamed KM, Ohtani K, Kasai R, Yamasaki K (1995) Oleanene glycosides from seeds of *Trifolium alexandrinum*. Phytochemistry 40:1237–1242

Nalbantsoy A, Nesil T, Erden S, Çalış İ, Bedir E (2011) Adjuvant effects of *Astragalus* saponins Macrophyllosaponin B and Astragaloside VII. J Ethnopharmacol 134:897–903

Nalbantsoy A, Nesil T, Yılmaz-Dilsiz Ö, Aksu G, Khan S, Bedir E (2012) Evaluation of the immunomodulatory properties in mice and in vitro anti-inflammatory activity of cycloartane type saponins from *Astragalus* species. J Ethnopharmacol 139:574–581

Navarrete A, Arrieta J, Terrones L, Abou-Gazar H, Çalış İ (2005) Gastroprotective effect of Astragaloside IV: role of prostaglandins, sulfhydryls and nitric oxide. J Pharm Pharmacol 57:1059–1064

Nyongha AT, Hussain H, Dongo E, Ahmed I, Krohn K (2010) Hyloglyceride and hylodiglyceride Two new glyceride derivatives from *Hylodendron gabunensis*. Nat Prod Commun 5:1939–1940

Özipek M, Dönmez AA, Çalış İ, Brun R, Rüedi P, Taşdemir D (2005) Leishmanicidal cycloartane-type triterpene glycosides from *Astragalus oleifolius*. Phytochemistry 66:1168–1173

Polat E, Çalışkan-Alankuş Ö, Perrone A, Piacente S, Bedir E (2009) Cycloartane-type glycosides from *Astragalus amblolepis*. Phytochemistry 70:628–634

Polat E, Bedir E, Perrone A, Piacente S, Alankuş-Çalışkan Ö (2010) Triterpenoid saponins from *Astragalus wiedemannianus* Fischer. Phytochemistry 71:658–662

Rong-Qi S, Zhong-Jian J, Dong-Liang C (1991) Three saponins from *Oxytropis* species. Phytochemistry 30:2707–2709

Sakamato S, Kofuji S, Kuroyanagi M, Ueno A, Sekita S (1992) Saponins from *Trifolium repens*. Phytochemistry 31:1773–1777

Sala A, Recio MC, Giner RM, Manez S, Rios JL (2001) New acetophenone glucosides isolated from extracts of *Helichrysum italicum* with antiinflammatory activity. J Nat Prod 64:1360–1362

Savran T, Gulcemal D, Masullo M, Karayıldırım T, Polat E, Piacente S, Alankuş-Çalışkan Ö (2012) Cycloartane Glycosides from *Astragalus erinaceus*. Rec Nat Prod 6:230–236

Senatore F, D'Agostino M, Dini I (2000) Flavonoid glycosides of *Barbarea vulgaris* L. (Brassicaceae). J Agric Food Chem 48:2659–2662

Sevimli-Gür C, Onbaşılar İ, Atilla P, Genç R, Çakar N, Deliloğlu-Gürhan İ, Bedir E (2011) In vitro growth stimulatory and in vivo wound healing studies on cycloartane-type saponins of *Astragalus* genus. J Ethnopharmacol 134:844–850

Sukhina IA, Mamedova RP, Agzamova MA, Isaev MI (2007) Triterpene glucosides of *Astragalus* and their genins. LXXIV. Cyclotrisectoside, the first trisdesmoside of cyclocephalogenin. Chem Nat Compd 43:159–161

Sun RQ, Chen JC (1997) Saponins from *Oxytropis bicolor*. Phytochemistry 44:505–507

Svechnikova AN, Umarova RU, Gorovits MB, Abubakirov NK (1982a) Triterpene glycosides of *Astragalus* and their genins. 4. Cyclosiversiosid-E, a new diglycoside from *Astragalus-sieversianus*. Khim Prir Soedin 2:204–208

Svechnikova AN, Umarova RU Abdullaev ND, Gorovits MB, Abubakirov NK (1982b) Triterpene glycosides of *Astragalus* and their genins. 7. Structure of cyclosiversioside-A and cyclosiversioside-C. Khim Prir Soedin 5:629–632

Svechnikova AN, Umarova RU, Gorovits MB, Abdullaev ND, Abubakirov NK (1983) triterpene glycosides of *Astragalus* and their genins. 11. Cyclosiversioside-G-triglycoside from *Astragalus sieversianus*. Khim Prir Soedin 3:312–315

Tabanca N, Bedir E, Alankuş-Çalışkan Ö, Khan IA (2005) Cycloartane triterpene glycosides from the roots of *Astragalus gilvus* Boiss. Biochem Syst Ecol 33:1067–1070

Tang W, Eisenbrand G (1992) Chinese drugs of plant origin. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp 191–197

Tian Z, Yang M, Huang F, Li K, Si J, Shi L, Chen S, Xiao P (2005) Cytotoxicity of three cycloartane triterpenoids from *Cimicifuga dahurica*. Cancer Lett 226:65–75

Udayama M, Ohkawa M, Yoshida N, Kinjo J, Nohara T (1998) Structures of three new oleanene glucuronides isolated from *Lathyrus palustris* var. *pilosus* and hepatoprotective activity. Chem Pharm Bull 46:1412–1415

Un R, Horo İ, Masullo M, Falco A, Şenol SG, Piacente S, Alankuş-Çalışkan Ö (2016) Cycloartane and oleanane-type glycosides from *Astragalus pennatulus*. Fitoterapia 109:254–260

Verotta L, Guerrini M, El-Sebakhy NA, Assad AM, Toaima SM, Radwan MM, Luo YD, Pezzuto JM (2002) Cycloartane and oleanane saponins from Egyptian *Astragalus* spp. As modulators of lymphocyte proliferation. Planta Med 68:986–994

Vitor RF, Mota-Filipe H, Teixeira G, Borge C, Rodrigues AI, Teixeira A, Paulo A (2004) Flavonoids of an extract of *Pterospartum tridentatum* showing endothelial protection against oxidative injury. J Ethnopharmacol 93:363–370

Wang HK, He K, Xu HX, Zhang ZL, Wang YF, Kikuchi T, Tezuka Y (1990) The structure of astrachrysosid A and the study of 2D-NMR on astrasieversianin XV and 7, 20-dihydroxy-30,40-dimethoxy-isoflavane-7-O-beta-D-glycoside. Acta Pharmacol Sin 25:445–450

Wu X, Wang Y, Huang XJ, Fan CL, Wang GC, Zhang XQ, Zhang QW, Ye WC (2011) Three new glycosides from *Hylocereus undatus*. J Asian Nat Prod Res 13:728–733

Xu Q, Ma X, Liang X (2007) Determination of Astragalosides in the roots of *Astragalus* spp. using liquid chromatography tandem atmospheric pressure chemical ionization mass spectrometry. Phytochem Anal 18:419–427

Yalçın FN, Piacente S, Perrone A, Capasso A, Duman H, Çalış İ (2012) Cycloartane glycosides from *Astragalus stereocalyx* Bornm. Phytochemistry 73:119–126

Yeşilada E, Bedir E, Çalış İ, Takaishi Y, Ohmoto Y (2005) Effects of triterpene saponins from *Astragalus* species on in vitro cytokine release. J Ethnopharmacol 96:71–77

Yoshikawa M, Wang HK, Kayakiri H, Taniyama T, Kitagawa I (1985) Saponin and sapogenol. XI. Structure of sophoraflavoside I, a bisdesmoside of soyasapogenol B, from Sophorae Radix, the root of *Sophora flavescens* Aiton. Chem Pharm Bull 33:4267–4274

Zu Y, Yan M, Fu Y, Liu W, Zhang L, Gu C, Efferth T (2009) Determination and quantification of astragalosides in Radix Astragali and its medicinal products using LC-MS. J Sep Sci 32:517–525

Vetiveria zizanioides (L.) Nash: A Magic Bullet to Attenuate the Prevailing Health Hazards

Asfia Shabbir, M. Masroor A. Khan, Bilal Ahmad, Yawar Sadiq, Hassan Jaleel, and Moin Uddin

Introduction

The world has encountered the importance of plants since it came into existence. The use of medicinal plants by humankind is although ancient but seems to increase tremendously as modern medicinal system integrates the use of herbal medicines. Therefore, the cultivation of medicinal plants especially imperative medicinal plants is creating new extent in the field of agriculture. India remains one of the ancient witnesses in realizing the importance of plants as it upholds the major diversity in both flora and fauna. India ranks tenth among 12 mega biodiversity centers of the world with 2 major hot spots of endemic species including 49,000 plant species reported in 16 different agroclimatic zones. About 4900 species of flowering plants are endemic to the country. There are about 15,000–20,000 plant species reported to have unlimited treasure of medicinal value, with an estimated endemism of 30% (Trivedi 2007; Anonymous 2012). Among these, 7000–8000 are reported to be used by traditional communities and 1200–2000 in regulated systems of medicine in the department of Ayurveda, Yoga and Naturopathy, Unani, Siddha, Sowa Rigpa, and Homeopathy (AYUSH) (Joy et al. 1998; Qazi 2003; Anonymous 2012).

Aromatic plants contain essential oils, a product of secondary metabolism, containing volatile aroma compounds and isolated by distillation. Because the distilled oily extracts represent the "essence" of plants, they are termed as essential oils (EOs). EOs exhibit therapeutic potential due to which aromatic plants can also be categorized as medicinal plants, although their applications are much broader. Out of 18,664 plants of medicinal value reported in India, over 3000 plants have been identified as essential oil-bearing medicinal plants of the large number of plants

A. Shabbir (✉) · M. M. A. Khan · B. Ahmad · Y. Sadiq · H. Jaleel
Faculty of Life Sciences, Department of Botany, Aligarh Muslim University, Aligarh, India

M. Uddin
Botany Section, Women's College, Aligarh Muslim University, Aligarh, India

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_3

belonging to 87 angiospermic families (Kochhar 2009; Farooqi and Sreeramu 2010). The EO is obtained from the vegetative organs: flowers, leaves, barks, woods, roots, rhizomes, fruits, seeds, etc. (Burt 2004; Celiktas et al. 2007; Skocibusic and Bezic 2006). EOs showcase multiple uses in the "beauty industry" as perfumes, cosmetics, or soaps, in the food industry as flavors for foods and drinks, as well as in the medical industry (Gupta 2007). They have antiseptic, antimicrobial, and antiviral activities (Reichling et al. 2009; Astani et al. 2010; Astani et al. 2011). As mosquito repellents, they bear the potential for malaria prevention (Pohlit et al. 2011). Moreover, they reveal considerable cytotoxicity toward cancer cells (Efferth et al. 2011; Sertel et al. 2011a, b).

India being the third largest producer of natural essential oils, next to the USA and Brazil, holds an important position in the world market. As per the reports, total production of essential oils at global level is estimated to be about 1,00,000–1,10,000 tons out of which India contributes with a share of 16–17%. Since India stands as the major mega biodiversity centers of the world representing prolific panoply of MAPs, the void between Indian trade and the world trade can be filled by coherently channelizing systematic research to improve and utilize the full potential of medicinal herbs (Duke 2002; Charles 2013). Apparently, the evolutionary intention for the production of these secondary metabolites was not to produce gentle medicines for human beings, but in contrast to use it as defense against herbivores and microorganisms (Efferth and Greten 2012). Therefore another aspect of pharmaceutical and pharmacological research should be aimed at distinguishing the fine line between toxic activities and pharmacologically valuable activities, which can be employed for therapeutic purposes.

In the following article, an array of the miraculous therapeutic properties of essential oil-bearing plant, vetiver (*Vetiveria zizanoides* L. Nash), are addressed outlining the morphology and distribution of the plant, essential oil biosynthesis, composition and its economics, and potential utilities of the plant.

Description of Plant

In the quest of exploring the potential utilities of different medicinal plants, *Vetiveria zizanoides* emerged as a "miracle grass" illustrating its omni-useful potentials. The commercial and social utility of this plant was first realized on account of its aromatic roots and lately overwhelmed by environmental applications of the plant as such, as well as diverse industrial uses of aboveground plant parts (Chomchalow and Chapman 2003).

Types

Eleven species of *Vetiveria* are recorded, with distribution in tropical Asia (including Pacific Islands and Australia) and Africa. Vetiver is a diploid plant ($2n = 20$), broadly classified into two types, namely, the wild growing North Indian flowering

type and the cultivated South Indian nonflowering type. They are further distinguished by characteristic difference in the stem and root: former type has medium thick stem with more branching roots, while the latter has a thick stem and less branching roots; however, the former is more common (Weiss 1997).

Common Names

It is commonly known as khas-khas in India and Sri Lanka, khus-khus in Europe, and *akar wangi* in Indonesia. Tamil word *vetivern* is the origin of the name vetiver (Nair et al. 1979).

Morphology

Vetiver grass, *Vetiveria zizanioides* (L.) Nash, syn. *Chrysopogon zizanioides* (L.) Roberty, is a perennial grass belonging to Poaceae family (Joy 2009). The root being the most valuable part of the grass forms an intertwined network that stops erosion and contains the majority of the essential oils which has valuable aromatic and biological properties (Danh 2007). The roots of vetiver grass contain oil-producing cells, responsible for its characteristic fragrance (Peyron 1989). These secretory cells are localized inside hard-to-reach root tissues (Chomchalow 2001). Essential oil can be detected in the inner bark within the cortical layer, where lysigen lacunae are also observed, providing the true storage vessel for the essential oil of the vetiver root (Viano et al. 1991).

Habit

Vetiveria zizanioides is a densely tufted grass with the culms arising from an aromatic rhizome up to 2 m tall; the roots are stout, dense, and aromatic.

Leaves

Leaves are narrow, erect, keeled with scabrid margins.

Flowers

Inflorescence is a panicle, up to 15–45 cm long, with numerous slender racemes in whorls on a central axis, Spikelets are grey to purplish; 4–6 mm long; in pairs, one sessile and the other pedicelled; and two-flowered; the lower floret is reduced to a

lemma, upper bisexual in sessile, and male in the pedicelled spikelet; glumes are armed with stout, tubercle-based spines, lemmas awnless, and palea is minute (The Wealth of India: Raw materials 2003).

Geographical Distribution

Vetiver is native to India and is found in wild state throughout the Indian subcontinent encompassing temperate to tropical climate. The grass grows wild in Haryana, Uttar Pradesh, Rajasthan, Gujarat, Bihar, Orissa, Assam, and Madhya Pradesh and throughout South India. The yield from the cultivated crop, however, meets only a very small percentage of the requirements of khus in the country; the bulk of the roots used for cooling purposes and for the extraction of the oil is obtained from the wild formations. On the other hand, vetiver is grown globally, on a commercial basis, for oil in Java, the Seychelles, Rėunion Brazil, China, Japan, and Haiti but for other purposes in the USA, Central America, and West African countries. Haiti, Indonesia (only Java), and Reunion produce most of the world's vetiver oil (The Wealth of India: Raw materials 2003).

Essential Oil of Vetiver

The roots are the storehouse of the much valuable vetiver oil which exhibit a rich green-woody earthy and nut-like aroma and vary in color from light yellow to yellowish brown to reddish yellow. It is one of the most viscous of the essential oils and therefore has a low evaporation rate, and it is also soluble in alcohol (Lavania 2003). The oil is also known to differ in odor, i.e., the roseate note of Reunion (Bourbon) and Haitian oil is highly regarded in perfumery industry, while the vetiver (khus) oil obtained from wild "khus" roots in India is known for its woody balsamic note.

Phyto-constituents

The quality of the oil depends upon the age of the root and the time involved in distillation. Oil distilled from young roots exhibit a green, earthy, and somewhat harsh odor due to low specific gravity, a low optical rotation, and a poor solubility, while old roots yield oils possessing higher specific gravity, a higher optical rotation, higher content of sesquiterpene compounds, and better solubility. Vetiver oil contains a very specific unique note used in fragrance and flavor industry which comes from oxygenated sesquiterpenes formed from reaction of sesquiterpenes and their ketones, aldehydes, and alcohols with microbes and its bioconversion. Also there are many glycosides present in the roots of vetiver which, when reacting with

microbes, give rise to these primary sesquiterpenes. The odor in most essential oils varies widely with the natural elements and hence location (Dowthwaite and Rajani 2000). Like most essential oils, the composition of the vetiver essential oil is extremely complex; it is known to contain more than 100 sesquiterpene compounds and their derivatives (Lavania 2003). Vetiver oil is rich in C_{15} sesquiterpenoids which can boil at over 200 °C (Dowthwaite and Rajani 2000).

The main constituent of the vetiver essential oil includes (Lavania 2003):

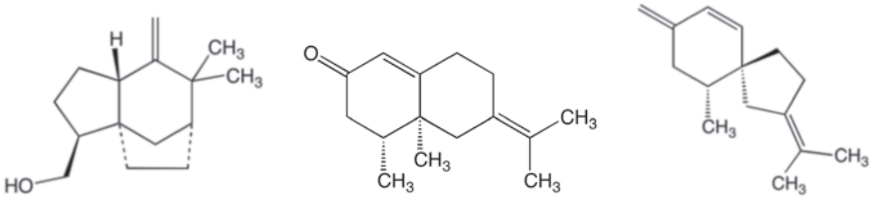
- Sesquiterpene hydrocarbons, e.g., cadenene, clovene, apomorphine, aromadendrin, junipene
- Sesquiterpene alcohol derivatives, e.g., vetiverols (45–80%) – khusimol (3.4–13.7%), epiglobulol, spathulenol, khusinol
- Sesquiterpene carbonyl derivatives (1.3–7.8%), e.g., α-vetivones, β-vetivone, khusimone
- Sesquiterpene ester derivatives, e.g., khusinol acetate

Besides these components, trace amounts of benzoic acid, vetivene, furfurol, khusemene, khusimone, ß-humulene, valencene, selinine, etc. are also present in the oil.

The three main odor-influencing constituents are known to be α-vetivone, β-vetivone, and khusimone (Bhatwadekar et al. 1982). α-Vetivone has a better odor and is considered the most important, while its major isomer nordihydro β-vetivone has a strong, rich, woody-peppery note. All these components individually and collectively contribute to the characteristic odor of the vetiver (Lavania 2003). Of course, α-vetivone, β-vetivone, and khusimol can be considered as the "fingerprint" of vetiver oil (Demole et al. 1995) (Fig. 1a–c).

Biosynthesis

As discussed earlier, vetiver oil is a complex sesquiterpene which is an outcome of cytosolic mevalonate-dependent pathway triggered by association of two acetyl coenzyme A units. The precursors in this pathway are isopentenyl diphosphate (IPP) and its allylic isomer dimethylallyl diphosphate (DMAPP). A concomitant



(a) Chemical Structure of Khusimol (b) Chemical Structure of α-vetivone (c) Chemical Structure of β-vetivone

Fig. 1 Chemical structures of three major odor-influencing components of essential oil vetiver

secondary metabolic pathway takes place in the plastids commonly known as MEP pathway. Although this subcellular compartmentalization allows both the pathways to operate independently in plants, there is evidence that they cooperate in the biosynthesis of certain metabolites (Laule et al. 2003; Kloer et al. 2006). According to Schalk and Deguerry (2013), the khusimol (an important constituent) results from oxidation of zizaene in the presence of cytochrome P450 reductase. Zizaene is apparently synthesized from farnesyl pyrophosphate (FPP) by the activity of zizaene synthase (Fig. 2). Since the biosynthetic pathway of vetiver EO is not yet clearly discussed, the present chapter unveils a plausible schematic representation of the secondary metabolic pathway of vetiver. The complexity of the EO stands as the major reason behind the tangled picture of its secondary metabolism and the mode of action of its active constituent.

Distillation

The efficiency of distillation is directly related to the age of the plant and stage of root harvest. The oil is obtained by distillation of either fresh or air-dried roots. The oil extracted from fresh roots has higher recovery of oil, while air-dried roots have higher quality of oil which can be attributed to natural evaporation of the undesirable nonpolar low boiling components of the oil. Three methods of distillation are traditionally practiced in India (Singh and Singh 1998). One of the three methods is *Bhapka* system popular in North India, while the other two methods make use of steam generating boilers and direct wood-fired distillers. For optimum recovery and economic productivity of oil, it is suggested that roots shall be harvested when the maximum day temperature is 25–27 °C. Roots should be distilled at the earliest after the harvest, and distillation should be performed just for about 15 h, with age of roots around 18 months (Aggarwal et al. 1998; Lavania 2003). The oil thus extracted is dehydrated either by anhydrous sodium sulfate or through natural evaporation by air-drying and allowed to mature by oxidation in amber bottle to improve quality and shelf life of the oil. The commercial distillation techniques include hydrodistillation, steam distillation, solvent extraction, and supercritical extraction. Among all, supercritical extraction is observed to be the most efficient (Martinez et al. 2004; Danh 2007; Danh et al. 2009).

Economics

The demand of vetiver oil is increasingly realized not only in India but world over. The unique base note of vetiver has grabbed the attention of flavor and fragrance industries in the recent times. Although Haiti contributes most of the oil to the world market, Indian vetiver oil still holds stronger grip because of its superlative quality. According to a report from CIMAP, North Indian vetiver oil is estimated to be best

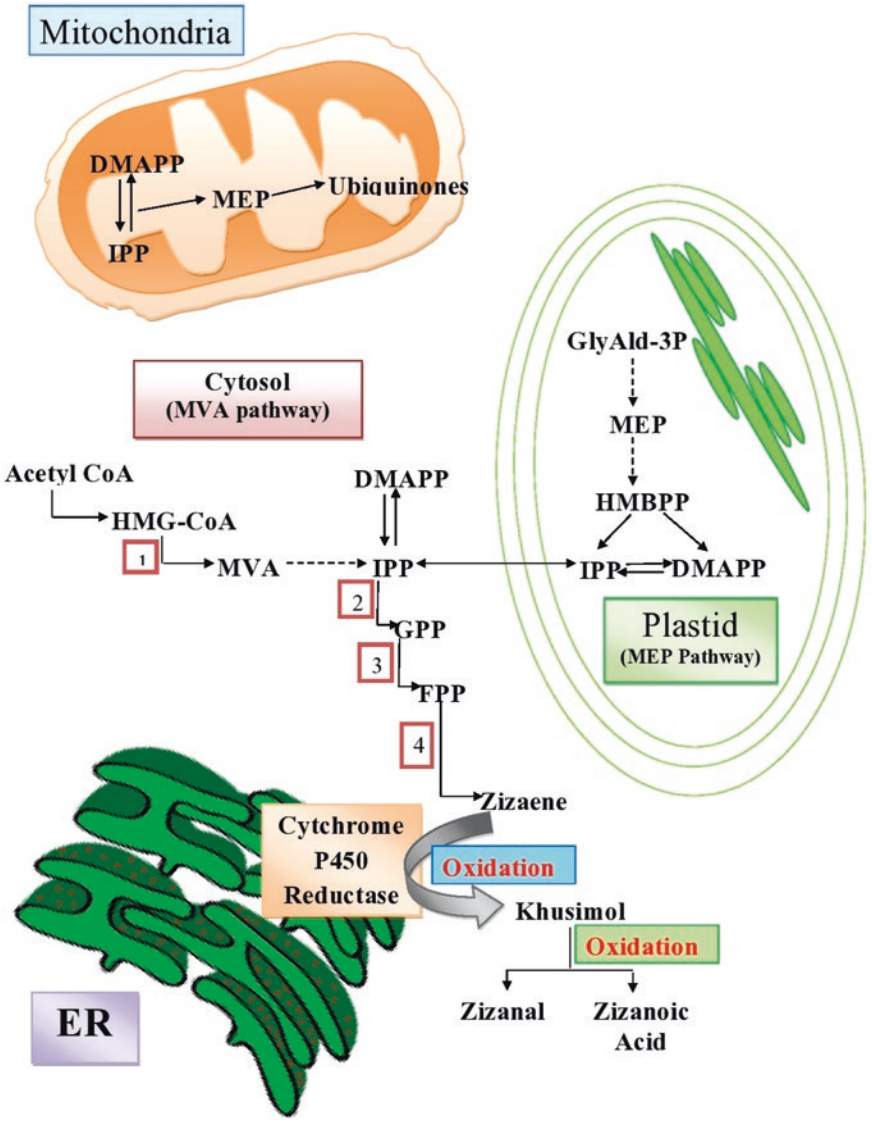


Fig. 2 Cellular compartmentalization of some of the important enzymes involved in the biosynthesis of some important sesquiterpenes in vetiver (dashed arrow means more than one step). After Laule et al. 2003 and Schalk and Deguerry 2013. DMAPP, dimethylallyl pyrophosphate; IPP, isopentenyl pyrophosphate; HMG-CoA, 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-coenzyme A; FPP, farnesyl pyrophosphate; GPP, geranyl pyrophosphate; HMBPP, 1-hydroxy-2-methyl-(E)-butenyl 4-diphosphate; MEP, methyl-D-erythritol 4-phosphate; MVA, mevalonic acid. Enzymes involved in sesquiterpene biosynthesis: 1, HMG-Co reductase; 2, geranyl pyrophosphate synthase; 3, farnesyl pyrophosphate synthase; 4, zizaene synthase

in quality and thus can be sold at Rs.13,000–17,000 per kilo, fairly costlier than South Indian type which is sold at only Rs.800–7000.00 per kilo. According to a latest report from Infodriveindia.com, during 27 July 2014 to 27 August 2014, India exported vetiver worth USD 7829 (473537.07 Indian rupees).

Ethnobotanical Uses

Not only the oil of vetiver finds its extensive use traditionally and commercially, but the rest of the plant parts too are found to be of prime importance. According to Chomchalow and Chapman (2003), vetiver can be utilized in two ways, i.e., either in the planted form or in the harvested form. The planted form has conventional as well as nonconventional uses. The conventional use mainly encircles its use in phytoremediation giving vetiver a gaining popularity in the recent times. The nonconventional uses, however, encompass the less popular uses such as livestock grazing, ornamentals, and barriers.

Due to wide ecological amplitude, vetiver is voluminously used in:

- Soil and water conservation
- Erosion control
- Slope stabilization
- Absorption of heavy metals (utilization of vetiver grass in stabilizing slime dams in the mining industry)
- Wastewater treatment

Harvested form of vetiver has been utilized both traditionally and commercially. Vetiver roots yield essential oil, while other plant parts serve different other purposes. Thus it implicates wide use of vetiver ranging from pharmaceuticals to handicrafts to flavor and fragrance industry.

Traditional Application

Vetiver has been popular among the tribes long before the utilities of vetiver drew its actuality before the world. They used different parts of the grass for many of their ailments such as mouth ulcer, fever, boil, epilepsy, burn, snakebite, scorpion sting, rheumatism, fever, headache, etc. (Rao and Suseela 2000).

Some traditional uses of *Vetiveria zizanioides*

Plant part	Tribe	Ailment
Root decoction	Santhals	As cooling in high fever, inflammation, sexual diseases, etc.

Plant part	Tribe	Ailment
Root paste	Lodhas	Headache, fever, Ayurvedic preparation "Brihat Kasturi," "Bhairava Rasa" for fever, diarrhea, chronic dysentery
Root ash	Oraons	Acidity
Root juice	Tribes of MP	Antihelmintic
Root vapor	Tribes of Varanasi	Malarial fever
Vetiver oil	Most tribes	Stimulant, diaphoretic, and refrigerant
Leaf paste	South Indian tribes	Rheumatism and sprain
Root and stem juice	South Indian tribes	Boil, burn, epilepsy, scorpion sting, snakebite, and mouth ulcer

Table courtesy: (Rao and Suseela 2000)

Nutraceutical Application

Extracts from the spent/waste part may find use as dietary/supplementary antioxidant in nutraceutical and/or cosmeceutical for protection against complications arising from the oxidative stress. The plants produce many types of scavenger molecules, mainly phenolic compounds; two new flavonoids from *V. zizanoides* and *V. nigritana* have recently been reported (Luqman et al. 2009).

Commercial Applications

The commercial applications of the vetiver grass reckon on the extraction of vetiver oil through distillation of the roots.

Agriculture-Related Uses

Manure

Vetiver grass system is becoming rapidly a global household name in soil conservation. It has been found to effectively enhance the soil quality of an eroded land when applied as vetiver grass strips, vetiver mulch, and composted vetiver prunes (veticompost) (Are et al. 2012).

Pesticide

Vetiver grass can also act as botanical pesticide since they are reported to have properties like insecticide, fungicide, and acaricide. They also exhibit allelopathy as vetiver extract contains in vetiver oil has allelopathic effect in inhibiting the germination of seeds of any plant growing in its vicinity (Balasankar et al. 2013).

Weed Control

When spread evenly on the ground, whole or desiccated vetiver leaves form a thick matt that suppresses weeds (Balasankar et al. 2013).

Flavoring Agent

Flavor industry uses vetiver oil widely for making flavored supari, pan masala, sharbat, and zarda (Balasankar et al. 2013).

Perfumery

Vetiver has marked its presence with its exclusive contribution to perfume industry in India and world over. It is a Gift of India (Morris 1983) to the world of perfumes, and its use in scents (*attar*) is known in India much before the world became familiar with rose scents. On account of its pleasing aroma and slow evaporation rate falling under the category of lower "base note," vetiver oil as such is a "perfume in its own right" for which no synthetic substitute is yet available. Vetiver oil is the basis of the Indian perfume "Majmua" and is the major ingredient in some 36% of all western perfumes (e.g., Caleche, Chanel No. 5, Dior essence, Parure, Opium) and 20% of all men's fragrances. In addition to its direct perfumery applications, vetiver oil in its diluted form is extensively used in aftershave lotions, air fresheners, and bathing purposes, as well as flavoring syrups, ice cream, cosmetic, and food preservation. Khus essence is used in cool drinks and for reducing pungency of chewing tobacco preparations, providing sweet note to other masticatories and incense sticks (Lavania 2003).

Aromatherapy

Vetiver oil owes several beauty benefits and emotional effects. It balances the activity of the sebaceous oil glands, has deodorizing properties, and helps normalize oily skin and clear acne. It replenishes moisture in dry and dehydrated skin and has a rejuvenation effect on mature skin, as well as cuts/wounds/irritated and inflamed skin. When used regularly during pregnancy, vetiver oil reportedly prevents stretch

marks. The oil strengthens the central nervous system and is helpful in overcoming depression, insomnia, anxiety, stress, tension, and nervousness (Wilson 1995).

Other Uses

Refrigerant

Vetiver roots are multifariously used for household and coolant purposes, viz., stuffed in the walls of desert coolers, as the tufted fibrous roots are endowed with high tensile strength, rich aroma, and refrigerant properties. Dried roots are also used to odorize linen and clothes (Lavania 2003).

Handicrafts

The vetiver roots have also been employed for making woven screens, mats, blinds (*chik*), hand fans, broom hangers, and baskets (Lavania 2003).

Construction

India being the indigenous user of vetiver roots exploits root mats to form *khus-tatti* (panels) to make huts and cabins for providing cooling effect during hot summers.

Dried culms are used as brooms and for thatching. Pulp of the plant is used for paper and straw board (Lavania 2003).

Textiles

Vetiver also suits to produce soft, durable fabric (Lavania 2003).

Medicinal Uses and Health Benefits

The vetiver oil extracted from roots proves highly beneficial to human health owing to its properties, like anti-inflammatory, antiseptic, aphrodisiac, cicatrisant, nervine, sedative, tonic, and vulnerary, for healing and calming. The vetiver oil is also known to possess several beauty benefits as it replenishes moisture in dry and dehydrated skin, rejuvenation of mature skin, as well as cuts wounds irritated and inflamed skin (Lavania 2003). The oil also improves the central nervous system, thereby combating depression, insomnia, anxiety, tension, stress, and nervousness. It makes a useful warming and pain-relieving rubbing oil, suitable for deep massage of muscular aches and pains, sprains, stiffness, rheumatism, and arthritis. It is also reported to act as antimicrobial and antifungal agent (Singh et al. 1978; Dikshit and Husain

1984). Moreover, vetiver oil has also been reported to have anticancer activity (Chen et al. 2003) and antioxidant activity (Kim et al. 2005).

An Update of Therapeutic Potentials of *Vetiveria zizanioides*

Like jungle terrain, vetiver also possesses therapeutic potentials, most of which still remain unexplored due to the complex nature of its essential oil, yet it is very rich in possibilities. Very few other remedies, aromatic or otherwise, exert the same depth of restorative action as vetiver, repairing body's four core systems: the nervous, endocrine, gastrointestinal, and immune.

Insecticidal Activity

Vetiver oil has great potential to be used as insecticide. Extracts of vetiver oil have repellent and toxicant properties toward ants, ticks, and cockroaches (Handerson et al. 2005). Earlier it was believed that tricyclic sesquiterpenoids, zizanal and epizizanal, isolated from vetiver oil were responsible for insect repellent activity (Jain et al. 1982). Later on it was observed that at least six compounds, i.e., α- and β-vetivone, khusimone, zizanal, epizizanal, and (C)-(1S,10R)-1,10-dimethylbicyclo[4,4,0]-dec-6-en-3-one, were found to be repellent to different insects (Babprasert and Karintayakit 1996).

Vetiver oil extracts showed repellent and anti-oviposition properties when applied to *Ceratitis capitata* (Mishra 2000). Flavonoids isolated from aqueous extracts of vetiver oil showed 80% insecticidal activity against lepidopterous stem borers on maize (Ndemah et al. 2002) in the humid tropics of Western Africa at a concentration of 0.07 mg/mL.

Termicidal Activity

The crude oil extracted from *V. zizanioides* significantly reduced the leaf damage caused by larvae of subterranean termite (Chomchalow et al. 1970). Three compounds, viz., nootkatone, zizanol, and bicyclovetivenol, isolated from vetiver oil showed repellent activity against Formosan subterranean termite (*Coptotermes formosanus*). Simple chemical modifications such as oxidation and reduction can be used to target different compounds present in vetiver oil so that the end product is directly used for pest control (Zhu et al. 2001; Nix et al. 2003). Vetiver oil in combination with nootkatone and disodium octaborate tetrahydrate acted as arrestant, repellent, and feeding deterrents against *C. formosanus*, and its symbiotic fauna

significantly decreases their tunneling activity, wood consumption, and survival (Maistrello et al. 2001; Maistrello et al. 2003; Ibrahim et al. 2004).

Pesticidal Activity

Vetiver oil also found to be effective against stored grain pests. Adults of *Tribolium castaneum* were repelled by contact with food medium treated with 2 and 5 g of vetiver grass oil dust/10 g flour (Vanden et al. 2000). Root extracts of vetiver in petroleum ether, ethyl acetate, acetone, and methanol showed insecticidal activity against XSM, SMC, SKS, and JTC strains of red rust flour beetle *T. castaneum*. In larval bioassay the highest toxicity was recorded for petroleum ether (LD50 = 0.051 g/cm^2) in XSM strain whereas the lowest toxicity using methanol extract (LD50 = 11.351 g/cm^2) in SMC strain (Sujatha 2010).

Similarly, nonpolar petroleum ether fractions of vetiver oil consisting mainly of four nonadjacent bis-tetrahydrofuranic acetogenins, named squamostatins B to E, showed insecticidal activity against *Sitophilus oryzae* infesting wheat seeds (Mishra 2000); whereas acetone extracts from fresh and stored leaves were toxic to adults of *Callosobruchus maculates* and ethanol extracts were found to be noninsecticidal (Pangnakorn 2009).

Anti-plasmodial (Antimalarial) and Larvicidal Activity

The oil also showed larvicidal and repellent activity against malarial vector, *Anopheles stephensi*, causing 85% mortality. The observed mortality rate suggested that the extracts can be used as biopesticides. The LC50 values of second, third, and fourth instar larvae of *A. stephensi* were 0.276, 0.285, and 0.305%, respectively (Aarthi and Murugan 2010).

Anti-tick Activity

Vetiver root extracts were able to control the growth of ticks during larval and adult stage including egg-laying stage of cow ticks *Boophilus microplus*. The ethanol extract had highest potential as compared to other extracts in controlling cow ticks (Korpraditkul et al. 1996).

The chemical analysis indicated that the sesquiterpene fraction is dominant in the composition of vetiver essential oils, though khusimol is the main active compound. Previous studies have demonstrated that monoterpenes and sesquiterpenes have acaricidal activity against *R. microplus* (Facey et al. 2005). These results indicate that the *C. zizanoides* essential oils are promising candidates as acaricidal

agents. In this study *C. zizanioides* essential oils reduced the production of eggs by female tick and the hatch of eggs, with consequent lower rates of tick reproductive efficiency. In addition, the rate of reduction of reproductive capacity observed in ticks treated with *C. zizanioides* essential oils was higher than that observed with the reference commercial products Natuneem (*A. indica* oil) and Butox P CE25 (deltamethrin). Concerning the activity of vetiver essential oils on tick larval stages, results here obtained showed that these essential oils have significant potential as acaricides for the control *A. cajennense* and *R. microplus* larvae if compared with the larvicidal activity of other plant-derived compounds.

Antibacterial Activity

Several studies have shown that vetiver oil possesses antibacterial activity against various bacterial strains like *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Streptococcus pyogenes*, *Escherichia coli*, and *Corynebacterium ovis*. The inhibition by pure oil was 60–70% more than penicillin (Gangrade et al. 1990). The hexane extracts of inflorescence, intact roots, and spent roots, upon hydrodistillation of the essential oil from two genotypes ("Gulabi" and "KS-1") of *V. zizanioides*, were evaluated for antibacterial activity against wild-type, drug-resistant strains of *Mycobacterium smegmatis* and *E. coli* using disk diffusion and micro-broth dilution methods. The extract showed antibacterial activity against both the strains (Luqman et al. 2005). The antibacterial activities of vetiver oil extracts (10 mg/mL) in polar solvents (methanol, chloroform) and nonpolar solvent (hexane) were tested against *S. aureus*. Chloroform extract showed antibacterial activity using cup borer method on the solid agar media (Sangeetha and Stella 2012; Barad et al. 2013).

The crude root extract of *V. zizanoides* (L.) Nash cultivar "Surat Thani" showed antimicrobial activity against four pathogenic bacteria. The alkaloid vetiverin (Khesorn et al. 2010) showed minimum inhibitory concentration of 1.626 mg/mL. Polar ethanolic extract showed better antibacterial activity against *S. aureus*, *E. coli*, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, and *Bacillus subtilis* as compared to aqueous extract. The phytochemical analysis revealed the presence of flavonoids, glycosides, phenol, tannins, saponins, and alkaloids (Dahiya et al. 2011).

Vetiver oil also showed antibacterial activity against various strains of bacteria like *Acinetobacter baumannii*, *Aeromonas veronii*, *Candida albicans*, *Enterococcus faecalis*, *E. coli*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *P. aeruginosa*, *Salmonella enterica*, *Serratia marcescens*, and *S. aureus*. The minimum inhibitory concentration (Hammer et al. 1999) was found to be 0.008% (v/v).

The root extract showed larger zone of inhibition than leaf extract against two pathogenic bacteria *E. coli* (MTCC 443) and *S. aureus* (MTCC 737). All these results confirmed that the extracts of vetiver are pharmacologically important and could be used for human ailments (Jayashree et al. 2011).

Antifungal Activity

Vetiver oil showed a broad range of natural fungicidal effect against pathogens. Antifungal activity of transformed products of sesquiterpenoids present in vetiver oil was tested against two phytopathogenic fungi, i.e., *Alternaria alternata* (causing early blight of tomato and potato) and *Fusarium oxysporium* (causing wilt of tomato), using spore germination inhibition technique. Out of various compounds tested, khusinodiol monobrosylate was found to be effective antifungal agent against both the fungi (Dikshit and Husain 1984). Schiff bases of sesquiterpenoid, i.e., N-(Khusilidene)-p-methoxy aniline and N-(Khusilidene)-p-bromo-aniline, were synthesized by reaction with p-methoxy aniline and p-bromo-aniline. It was found that N-(Khusilidene)-p-methoxy aniline inhibited the growth of A. *alternata* up to 84.7%, whereas N-(Khusilidene)-p-bromo-aniline inhibited the growth of *F. oxysporium* up to 74.5% at 1 mg/mL level (Kaushal and Chahal 2008).

The antifungal potential of vetiver oil was also observed against *Rhizoctonia bataticola* and *Sclerotium rolfsii* (Sharma et al. 2009). Antifungal potential of root and shoot extracts of vetiver was studied against two potent pathogenic fungi, *Candida albicans* and *Cryptococcus neoformans*. The results of MIC of root and leaf fractions against pathogens (Jayashree et al. 2011) were 10 mg/mL, and IC50 of these fractions varied between 5 and 7.5 mg/mL.

Two types of Indian vetiver oils, namely, North and South Indian types, were evaluated and found to exhibit antifungal activity against *Rhizoctonia solani*. Fungal toxicity of South Indian vetiver oil was slightly higher than North Indian oil (Dubey et al. 2010).

The antifungal activity of vetiver oil was further screened against certain pathogenic microorganisms using fluconazole as positive control. Among the tested fungal cultures, *Aspergillus niger* exhibited a highest mean zone of inhibition (30 and 32 mm) against vetiver leaf and root extracts (Sangeetha and Stella 2012).

Herbicidal Activity

It was earlier hypothesized that certain substances excreted by the vetiver plant had allelopathic action due to inhibition of the growth of other plants. Now it has been confirmed that root and stem extracts of vetiver inhibited the germination of soybean seeds, and thus it could be applied for weed control (Techapinyawat 1994). Germination tests in Petri dishes were carried out to test the effect of vetiver oil and one of its minor components nootkatone on six common weed species: redroot pigweed, common lamb's quarters, giant ragweed, pitted morning glory, and velvet leaf. Vetiver oil inhibited germination of these weeds, in addition to inhibition of seedling expansion of redroot pigweed and common lamb's quarters acting as useful herbicide (Lixin et al. 2004). Vetiver oil and its component nootkatone also reduced plant growth in *Pisum sativum* L. (plant height, root length, dry weight) in

the laboratory and citrus trees under field conditions (Lixin et al. 2006). Allelopathic interaction of vetiver oil with two nonedible oil-yielding fence plants *Jatropha curcas* L. and *Ricinus communis* L. was tested and found that vetiver plant promoted the growth of jatropha seedlings and inhibited the growth of *R. communis* seedlings suggesting vetiver jatropha to be a suitable fence plant option for plant-plant interaction (Vimala et al. 2005).

Antioxidant Activity

Vetiver oil showed antioxidant and anti-inflammatory activities and can be used in medicine and perfumery (Chou et al. 2012). Antioxidant properties of vetiver oil were evaluated by two different in vitro assays: the DPPH• (1,1-diphenyl-2-picrylhydrazyl) free radical scavenging assay and the Fe^{2+} metal-chelating assay. Results revealed that the vetiver oil possessed a strong free radical scavenging activity as compared to standard antioxidants such as butylated hydroxytoluene (BHT) and alpha-tocopherol. Vetiver oil (0.01 mg/mL) dissolved in methanol exhibited 93 and 34% free radical scavenging activity in the DPPH• and Fe^{2+} chelating activity in the metal-chelating assay, respectively. In the crude vetiver oil, β-vetivenene, β-vetivone, and α-vetivone showed strong antioxidant activities (Kim et al. 2005).

Ferric reducing free radical scavenging and antioxidant activity of two genotypes, namely, "KS1" and "Gulabi" of vetiver oil, was investigated using in vitro assay, the ferric reducing antioxidant power (FRAP), DPPH, total phenolic content (TPC), total antioxidant capacity, and reducing power (RP). "KS1" genotypes showed higher FRAP values, DPPH inhibition, TPC, and RP potential as compared to "Gulabi." The antioxidant activity increased with the extract concentration (0.01–1 mg/mL) (Luqman et al. 2009).

The ethanolic and ethyl acetate extracts of roots of *V. zizanioides* showed free radical scavenging activity by DPPH model. The extracts showed significant dose-dependent free radical scavenging activity (Kumar et al. 2010).

Anticancer Activity

The aqueous extract of *Vetiveria zizanioides* root exhibited cytotoxic effect against human cancer cell line (MCF-7 human breast cancer cell line). The vetiver oil extract showed cytotoxic activity on the breast adenocarcinoma (MCF-7) cell line in a concentration-dependent manner. The extract on MCF-7 cell line produced a 50% of net killing (IC50) at the doses 37 μg and 31 μg/mL at 24 and 48 h, respectively (Chitra et al. 2014).

Previously, the study of Chen et al. (2003) showed that vetiver essential possessed anticancer activity. At 100 ppm in cancer cell lines, vetiver oil inhibited the

growth up to 89% of SiHa cervical cells, 88% of CaSki cervical cells, and 89% of MCF-7 breast cancer cells.

Sedative Activity

The sedative effects of vetiver oil upon inhalation in rats were observed in rearing motilities in the open field test (Thubthimthed et al. 2003). The results showed that vetiver oil decreased rearing motility when compared to the positive control lavender oil group.

Antidiabetic Activity

Studies showed that ethanol extract of *V. zizanioides* roots possessed antihyperglycemic activity (Karan et al. 2012). It was observed that ethanol extract of *V. zizanioides* (100, 250, 500, 750 mg/kg body weight) significantly reduced the blood glucose level at the end of 28 days in alloxan-induced diabetic rats.

Antidiuretic Activity

The sesquiterpene alcohol khusimol isolated from vetiver roots was found to competitively inhibit the binding of vasopressin to rat liver V1a receptors (Rao et al. 1994).

Anti-inflammatory Activity

VEO has shown strong anti-inflammatory activities in lipopolysaccharide (LPS)-induced RAW 264.7 macrophages by regulating the expression of the inflammation-related enzymes heme oxygenase-1, inducible nitric oxide synthase, and cyclooxygenase-2 (inducible cyclooxygenase) as well as the inflammatory cytokines tumor necrosis factor-α, interleukin-1β, and interferon-β (Chou et al. 2012).

Han and Parker (2017) studied the activity of vetiver essential oil (VEO) in a dermal fibroblast system, HDF3CGF, which features the microenvironment of inflamed human skin cells with boosted inflammatory and immune responses. Four concentrations of VEO (0.001, 0.00033, 0.00011, and 0.000037%, v/v in DMSO) were tested for cell viability. VEO showed significant antiproliferative activity in dermal fibroblasts. In addition, VEO significantly inhibited the production of collagen III, an extracellular matrix protein and fibrillar collagen found extensively in

connective tissues that is critically involved in the tissue remodeling process. This finding suggests that VEO might play a role in modulating the tissue remodeling process. Following intraperitoneal (i.p.) injection, EO at 50 and 100 mg/kg significantly reduced the number of writhes (51.9 and 64.9%, respectively) and the number of paw licks during phase 2 (56.7 and 86.2%, respectively) of a formalin model when compared to control group animals. However, EO-treated mice were ineffective at all doses in hotplate and rota-rod tests. The EO inhibited the carrageenan-induced leukocyte migration to the peritoneal cavity in a dose-dependent manner (34.7, 35.4, and 62.5% at doses of 25, 50, and 100 mg/kg, respectively). In the paw edema test, the EO (100 mg/kg) inhibited all three phases of the edema equally well, suggesting that the EO has a nonselective inhibitory effect on the release or actions of these mediators. Our results suggest possible antinociceptive and anti-inflammatory effects of the EO.

Conclusions

Unequivocally, the production of essential oils greatly underpins the fragrance and flavor industry, but the importance of these natural extracts is also increasing in pharmaceutical and natural cosmetic industry along with their use as nutraceutical ingredients in recent times which have opened up new vistas for industrial sector. Consequently, India is expected to play a dominant role in the production and processing of these natural extracts. Country's biodiversity coupled with competent scientific force makes India as the best choice to become a foremost leader in aroma business in the coming years. Going through the immense uses vetiver has, it's the need of the hour to accentuate its production to an extent where it can meet the demands of local as well as world market. India being the native country of vetiver holds back the originality and distinct note of the oil which cannot be reconstituted proving itself as a boon to commercial market. Presently, world demand of vetiver oil is 500 MT, and production in India is far too less. If, along with floriculture and horticulture, vetiver is taken as an intercrop, then we can easily reach the production capacity of 1000 MT, and there is enough market for the same. In the last 1½ years due to thrust area, 400% growth of essential oil is seen, and lot of vetiver will also come in due course of time and has good future.

References

Aarthi N, Murugan K (2010) Larvicidal and repellent activity of *Vetiveria zizanioides* L, *Ocimum basilicum* L. and microbial pesticide spinosad against malarial vector, *Anopheles stephensi* Liston (Insecta:Diptera: Culicidae). J Biopest 3:199–204

Aggarwal KK, Singh A, Kahol AP, Singh M (1998) Parameters of vetiver oil distillation. J Herbs Spices Med Plants 6:55–61

Anonymous (2012) National institute of science communication and information resources (NISCAIR), (CSIR), Dr K.S. Krishnan Marg, New Delhi −110 012

Are KS, Adelana AO, Adeyolanu OD, Oyeogbe IA, Adelabu L (2012) Comparative effects of vetiver grass (*Chrysopogon zizanioides*) strips, vetiver mulch and veticompost on soil quality and erodibility of a sloping land. Agric tropica et subtrop 45:189–198

Astani A, Reichling J, Schnitzler P (2010) Comparative study on the antiviral activity of selected monoterpenes derived from essential oils. Phytother Res 24:673–679

Astani A, Reichling J, Schnitzler P (2011) Screening for antiviral activities of isolated compounds from essential oils. Evid Based Complement Alternat Med 2011:8. https://doi.org/10.1093/ecam/nep187

Babprasert C, Karintayakit P (1996) Vegetable pest management by using essential oil from vetiver grass (*Vetiveria zizanioides* Nash). In: Abstracts of papers presented at ICV–1, Chiang Rai, Thailand, p 138

Balasankar D, Vanilarasu K, Preetha PS, Umadevi SR, Bhowmik D (2013) Journal of medicinal plants studies. J Med Plant 1:3

Barad R, Atodariya U, Bhatt S, Patel H, Upadhyay S, Upadhyay U (2013) Antibacterial and preliminary cytotoxic activity of the roots of *Vetiveria zizanioides*. Int J Pharm Rev Res 3:23–25

Bhatwadekar SV, Pednekar PR, Chakravarti KK, Paknikar SK (1982) Survey of sesquiterpenoids of vetiver oil. Cultivation and utilization of aromatic plants/edited by CK Atal and BM Kapur, India, p 412–426

Burt S (2004) Essential oils: their antimicrobial properties and potential application in foods – a review. Int J Food Microbiol 94:223–253

Celiktas OY, Kocabas EEH, Bedir E, Sukan FV, Ozek T, Baser KHC (2007) Antimicrobial activities of methanol extracts and essential oils of Rosmarinus officinalis depending on location and seasonal variations. Food Chem 100:553–559

Charles DJ (2013) Fennel. In: Antioxidant properties of spices, herbs and other sources. Springer, New York, pp 287–293

Chitra T, Jayashree S, Rathinamala J (2014) Evaluation of anticancer activity of *Vetiveria zizanioides* against human breast cancer cell line. Int J Pharm Pharmaceut Sci 6:164–166

Chomchalow N, Chapman K (2003) Other uses and utilization of vetiver. In: Proceedings of the 3 rd conferences of vetiver and exhibition, p 6–9

Chomchalow N, Lekskul S, Pichitakul N, Wasuwat S (1970) Researches on essential oils at ASRCT. ASST Newslett 3:49–63

Chomchalow N (2001) The utilization of vetiver as medicinal and aromatic plants with special reference to Thailand. PRVN Tech.Bull. No. 2001/1, ORDPB, Bangkok

Chou ST, Lai CP, Lin CC, Shih Y (2012) Study of the chemical composition, antioxidant activity and anti-inflammatory activity of essential oil from *Vetiveria zizanioides*. Food Chem 134:262–268

Chen F, Wang X, Kim HJ (2003) Antioxidant, anticarcinogenic and termiticidal activities of vetiver oil. Proceeding of third international Vetiver conference, Guangzhou, China

Dahiya D, Srinivasan KK, Subburaju T, Sachin KS (2011) Antimicrobial activity of alcoholic and aqueous extracts of *Vetiveria zizanioides*. J Pharm Res 4:1343–1344

Danh T (2007) Development of process for purification of α and β-vetivone from Vetiver essential oil and Investigation of effects of heavy metals on quality and quantity of extracted Vetiver oil. University of New South Wales, PhD Thesis

Danh LD, Truong P, Mammucari R, Foster N (2009) Response surface method applied to supercritical carbon dioxide extraction of *Vetiveria zizanioides* essential oil. Chem Eng J 155:617–626

Demole EP, Holzner GW, Youssefi MJ (1995) Malodor formation in alcoholic perfumes containing vetiveryl acetate and vetiver oil. Perfum Flav 20:35–40

Dikshit A, Husain A (1984) Antifungal action of some essential oils against animal pathogens. Fitoterapia 55:171–176

Dowthwaite SV, Rajani S (2000) Vetiver: perfumer's liquid gold. In: Proceedings of ICV–2 held in Cha-am, Phetchaburi, Thailand, p 478–81

Dubey N, Raghav CS, Gupta RL, Chhonkar SS (2010) Chemical composition and antifungal activity of vetiver oil of North and South India against *Rhizoctonia solani*. Pest Res J 22:63–67
Duke JA (2002) Handbook of medicinal herbs, 2nd edn. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL
Efferth T, Greten HJ (2012) Medicinal and aromatic plant research in the 21st century. Med Aromat Plant 1:e110
Efferth T, Herrmann F, Tahrani A, Wink M (2011) Cytotoxic activity of secondary metabolites derived from *Artemisia annua* L. towards cancer cells in comparison to its designated active constituent artemisinin. Phytomedicine 18:959–969
Farooqi AA, Sreeramu BS (2010) Cultivation of medicinal and aromatic crops. Universities press (India) limited, Hyderabad, India
Facey, P. C., Porter, R. B., Reese, P. B., & Williams, L. A. (2005). Biological activity and chemical composition of the essential oil from Jamaican Hyptis verticillata Jacq. Journal of agricultural and food chemistry, 53(12), 4774–4777.
Gangrade SK, Shrivastava RD, Sharma OP, Mogheand MN, Trivedi KC (1990) Evaluation of some essential oils for antibacterial properties. Indian Perfum 34:204–208
Gupta S (2007) Hand book of essential oil manufacturing and aromatic plants. Eiri boards of consultants and engineers. Engineers India research institute, Delhi, India
Hammer KA, Carson CF, Riley TV (1999) Antimicrobial activity of essential oils and other plant extracts. J Appl Microbiol 86:985–990
Han X, Parker TL (2017) Biological activity of vetiver (*Vetiveria zizanioides*) essential oil in human dermal fibroblasts. Cogent Medicine 4:1298176
Handerson G, Laine RA, Heuman DO, Chen F, Zhu BR (2005) Extracts of vetiver oil as repellents and toxicants to ants, ticks and cockroaches. US Patent No. 6.906, 108B2, 2005
Ibrahim SA, Henderson G, Laine RA (2004) Toxicity and behavioral effects of nootkatone, 1, 10-dihydronootkatone and tetrahydronoot-katone on the Formosan subterranean termite (Isoptera: Rhinotermitidae). J Econ Entomol 97:102–111
Jain SC, Nowicki S, Eisner T, Meinwald G (1982) Insect repellents from vetiver oil zizanol and epizizanal. Tetrahedron Lett 23:4639–4642
Jayashree S, Rathinamala J, Lakshmanaperumalsamy P (2011) Antimicrobial activity of *Vetiveria zizanoides* against some pathogenic bacteria and fungi. Int J Phytomed Related Industry 3:151–156
Joy PP, Thomas J, Mathew S, Skaria B (1998) Medicinal plants. In: Aromatic and medicinal plants research station. Kerala Agricultural University, Kerala
Joy RJ (2009) Sunshine vetiver grass *Chrysopogon zizanioide* (L.)" United States Department of Agriculture, Natural Resource Conservation Service. www.vetiver.org/USA-NRCS_Sunshine.pdf
Karan SK, Mishra SK, Pal D, Mondal A (2012) Isolation of sitosterol and evaluation of antidiabetic activity of Aristolochia indica in alloxan-induced diabetic mice with a reference to *in vitro* antioxidant activity. J Med Plants Res 6:1219–1223
Kaushal S, Chahal KK (2008) Schiff bases of khusilal: Synthesis and their antifungal activity. Pestol 32:47–49
Khesorn N, Manasnant B, Banyong K, Chantana K (2010) Antimicrobial activity of alkaloid from roots of *Vetiveria zizanoides* (L.) Nash ex Small. Thai Pharm Health Sci J 5:99–102
Kim HJ, Chen F, Wang X, Jin Z, Chung HY (2005) Evaluation of antioxidant activity of vetiver (Vetiveria zizanioides L.) oil and identification of its antioxidant constituents. J Agric Food Chem 53:7691–7695
Kloer DP, Welsch R, Beyer P, Schulz GE (2006) Structure and reaction geometry of geranyl geranyl diphosphate synthase from *Sinapis alba*. Biochemistry 45:15197–15204
Kochhar SL (2009) Economic botany in the tropics. Macmillan, India
Korpraditkul R, Ratanakreetakul JS, Swasdipanich S (1996) The extracts of vetiver grass (Vetiveria zizanioides) for acaricidal effect on cattle tick (*Boophilus microplus*). In: Proceeding of ICV–3, Chiang Rai, Thailand, p 140
Kumar TP, Surayakanata N, Karan S (2010) In vitro free radical scavenging activity of *Vetiveria zizanioides*. J Pharm Res 3:681

Laule O, Furholz A, Chang HS, Zhu T, Wang X, Heifetz PB, Gruissem W, Lange BM (2003) Crosstalk between cytosolic and plastidial pathways of isoprenoid biosynthesis in *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:6866–6871

Lavania UC (2003) Other uses and utilization of vetiver: vetiver oil. In The Third International Vetiver Conference, Guangzhou, China

Lixin M, Henderson G, Laina RA (2004) Germination of various weed species in response to vetiver oil and nootkatone. Weed Technol 18:263–267

Lixin M, Henderson G, Wayne JB, Vaugh JA, Laina RA (2006) Vetiver oil and nootkatone effects on the growth of pea and citrus. Ind Crop Prod 23:327–332

Luqman S, Kumar R, Kaushik S, Srivastava S, Darokar MP, Khanuja SPS (2009) Antioxidant potential of the root of *Vetiveria zizanioides* (L.) Nash. J Biochem Biophy 46:122–125

Luqman S, Srivastava S, Darokar MP, Khanuja SPS (2005) Detection of antibacterial activity in spent roots of two genotypes of aromatic grass *Vetiveria zizanioides*. Pharm Biol 43:732–736

Maistrello L, Henderson G, Laine RA (2003) Comparative effects of vetiver oil, nootkatone and disodium octaboratetetrahydrate on *Coptotermes formosanus* and its symbiotic fauna. Pest Manag Sci 59:58–68

Maistrello L, Henderson G, Laine RA (2001) Efficacy of vetiver oil and nootkatone as soil barriers against Formosan subterranean termite (Isoptera: Rhinotermitidae). J Econ Entomol 94:1532–1537

Martinez J, Rosa PTV, Menut C, Leydet A, Brat P, Pallet D, Meireles MAA (2004) Valorisation of Brazilian vetiver oil. J Agric Food Chem 52:6578–6584

Mishra HP (2000) Effectiveness of indigenous plant products against pulse beetle *Callosobruchus chinensis* on stored black gram. Indian J Entomol 62:218–220

Morris ET (1983) Vetiver: gift of India. Dragoco Report 6:158–165

Nair EVG, Chinnamma NP, Kumari RP (1979) Review of work done on vetiver at Lemongrass Research Station Odakkali. Ind Perfum 23:199–201

Ndemah R, Gounou S, Schulthess F (2002) The role of wild grasses in the management of Lepidopterous stem-borers on the maize in the humid tropics of western Africa. Bull Entomol Res 92:507–519

Nix KE, Handerson I, Lain RA (2003) Field evaluation of nootkatone and tetrahydronootkatone as wood treatment against *Coptotermes formosan*. Sociobiology 42:413–424

Pangnakorn U (2009) Efficiency of vetiver grass extracts against cowpea weevil (*Callosobruchus maculates* Fabr.). Am-Eurasian J Agric Environ Sci 6:356–359

Peyron L (1989) Vetiver in perfumery. Quintessenza 13:4–14

Pohlit AM, Lopes NP, Gama RA, Tadei WP, Neto VF (2011) Patent literature on mosquito repellent inventions which contain plant essential oils – a review. Planta Med 77:598–617

Qazi GN (2003) Resources, technologies and knowledge-sharing on MAPs from India. In: Workshop on strengthening cooperation of MAPs national focal points, ICS-UNIDO, Trieste Italy, p 26–27

Rao RC, Gal CS, Granger I, Gleye J, Augereau JM, Bessibes C (1994) Khusimol, a non-peptide ligand for vasopressin V1a receptors. J Nat Prod 57:1329–1335

Rao RR, Suseela MR (2000) *Vetiveria zizanioides* (Linn.) Nash – a multipurpose eco-friendly grass of India. ICV–2 held in Cha-am, Phetchaburi, Thailand, p 18–22

Reichling J, Schnitzler P, Suschke U, Saller R (2009) Essential oils of aromatic plants with antibacterial, antifungal, antiviral, and cytotoxic properties- an overview. Forsch Komplementmed 16:79–90

Sangeetha D, Stella D (2012) Screening of antimicrobial activity of vetiver extracts against certain pathogenic microorganisms. Int J Pharm Bio Arch 3:197–203

Schalk M, Deguerry F (2013) Cytochrome P450 and use thereof for the enzymatic oxidation of terpenes. Patent WO 2013064411 A1, May 10, 2013

Sertel S, Eichhorn T, Plinkert PK, Efferth T (2011a) Chemical Composition and antiproliferative activity of essential oil from the leaves of a medicinal herb, *Levisticum officinale*, against UMSCC1 head and neck squamous carcinoma cells. Anticancer Res 31:185–191

Sertel S, Eichhorn T, Plinkert PK, Efferth T (2011b) Cytotoxicity of *Thymus vulgaris* essential oil towards human oral cavity squamous cell carcinoma. Anticancer Res 31:81–87

Sharma PK, Raina AP, Dureja P (2009) Evaluation of the antifungal and phytotoxic effects of various essential oils against *Sclerotium rolfsii* (Sacc) and *Rhizoctonia bataticola* (Taub). Phytopathol Plant Prot 42:65–72

Singh G, Singh BS, Kumar BRV (1978) Antimicrobial activity of essential oils against keratinophilic fungi. Indian Drugs 16: 43−45

Singh S, Singh DP (1998) Cultivation and distillation technologies of vetiver. Technical Bulletin No. 6. Fragrance and Flavour Development Centre, Kannauj, India

Skocibusic MN, Bezic DV (2006) Phytochemical composition and antimicrobial activity of the essential oils from *Satureja* sub*spicata* Vis. growing in Croatia. Food Chem 96:20–28

Sujatha S (2010) Essential oil and its insecticidal activity of medicinal aromatic plant *Vetiveria zizanioides* (L.) against the red flour beetle *Tribolium castaneum* (Herbst). J Agric Sci 2:84–88

Techapinyawat S (1994) The use of vetiver to control the growth of crops and weed. Progress Report, Botany Department Kasetsart University, Bangkok

The Wealth of India: Raw materials (2003) Vol. III, National institute of science communication and information resources (CSIR), Pusa, New Delhi, India, p 210–211

Thubthimthed S, Thisayakorn K, Rerkam U, Tangstirapakdee S, Suntorntanasat T (2003) Vetiver oil and its sedative effect. In: The 3rd International Vetiver Conference, Guangzhou, China p. 492–494

Trivedi PC (2007) Medicinal plants traditional knowledge. IK, International publishing house pvt. ltd., New Delhi, India

Vanden BJ, Midega C, Wadhams LJ, Khan ZR (2000) Can vetiver grass be used to manage insect pests on crops? Entomol Soc 34:45–49

Viano J, Gaydou E, Smadja J (1991) Sur la presence de bacteries intracellulaires dans les racines du *Vetiveria zizanioides* (L.). Staph Rev Cytol Biol Végét-Bot 14:65–70

Vimala Y, Anuj KA, Gupta MK (2005) Physico-chemical interpretation of allelopathic interaction of vetiver with two non-edible oil yielding fence plants. J Exp Bot 2:141–150

Weiss EA (1997) Vetiver. In: Essential oil crops. CAB International, Oxford, pp 117–137

Wilson R (1995) Aromatherapy for vibrant health and beauty. Penguin Putnam Inc, New York

Zhu B, Henderson G, Chen F, Maistrello E, Laine RA (2001) Nootkatone is a repellent for Formosan Subterranean termites (*Coptotermes formosanus*). J Chem Edu 27:523–531

Evidence-Based Assessment of *Moringa oleifera* Used for the Treatment of Human Ailments

Md. Mahadi Hasan, Iffat-Ara Sharmeen, Yasir Anwar, Hesham F. Alharby, Mirza Hasanuzzaman, Abdulrahaman S. Hajar, and Khalid Rehman Hakeem

Introduction

A wide range of several medicinal plants have been used traditionally over time, but it is also now widely becoming familiar in modern medicinal era for containing natural chemicals that may be used as an alternative against chemicals synthesized artificially (Verma et al. 2011; Abdelmalek et al. 2016). Knowledge can be gained from both scientific origins and traditionally old sources (García-Alvarado et al. 2011). Any collective body of information, traditional practices, and thoughts that have been passed down from generation to generation and different cultures can be called traditional knowledge (Berkes et al. 2003). Traditional medicine is based on medicinal plants that are readily available and is commercialized based on practiced traditional knowledge (Awas and Demissew 2009). Herbal medicine is popular as it is widely culturally recognized, is affordable, and is proven to be effective against some diseases in comparison to synthetic medicines. Indigenous groups all over the world have experiences in these kinds of plants and use their knowledge to classify plants and their various parts based on treating various conditions (Omoruyi et al. 2012). *Moringa oleifera* is one of the important medicinal plants commonly known as the "miracle tree," referring to the species being an important food crop and source of nutritious fruits and flowers in the developing countries or regions like

M. M. Hasan · Y. Anwar · H. F. Alharby · A. S. Hajar · K. R. Hakeem (✉)
Faculty of Science, Department of Biological Sciences, King Abdulaziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia
e-mail: khakim@kau.edu.sa

I.-A. Sharmeen
Department of Biochemistry, School of Life Sciences, Independent University, Dhaka, Bangladesh

M. Hasanuzzaman
Faculty of Agriculture, Department of Agronomy, Sher-e-Bangla Agricultural University, Dhaka, Bangladesh

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_4

Southeast Asia, African regions, and North and South America (D'souza and Kulkarni 1993; Anwar and Bhanger 2003; Anwar et al. 2005, Al-Asmari et al. 2015). Leaves, barks, seeds, flowers, and fruits of *Moringa oleifera* were widely used in traditional medicine (Stohs and Hartman 2015). The leaves contain large amounts of proteins, vitamins, minerals, and natural antioxidants like flavonoids, carotenoids, and phenolics that increase shelf life of fat- containing foods (Dillard and German 2000; Siddhuraju and Becker 2003a, b). *Moringa oleifera* pods and leaves are an abundant source of calcium, magnesium, potassium, manganese, phosphorous, zinc, sodium, copper, iron, etc. (Aslam et al. 2005). The mineral content varies throughout different geographical regions (Anjorin et al. 2010).

All parts of *Moringa oleifera* are edible and thus have been consumed by humans for a long time. Fuglie (1999) has stated that other uses of *Moringa oleifera* include biomass generation, animal fodder, biogas, traditional cleaning agent, production of blue dye, fertilizers, honey, gum, leaf juice, manure, use as a clarifier in sugarcane juice, use as fences, ornaments and pesticides, pulp production from wood and ropes from bark, tanning hides, as well as purifying water. In Western countries, *Moringa oleifera* seeds are powdered and used to remove contaminants from drinking water (Berger et al. 1984; Gassenschmidt et al. 1995; Olsen 1987) and also eaten raw or used to flavor curries and tea (Gassenschmidt et al. 1995). Since, Moringa *oleifera* is readily available and grows well in drought, relatively arid soils, and other difficult environmental conditions, it can be used in economic and medicinal health purposes in developing countries.

Botanical Description

Moringa oleifera belongs to the family of Moringaceae. *Moringa oleifera* leaves are imparipinnate, upper leaf surface colliculate, lower leaf surface tuberculate-reticulate, leaflet shape oboordate, symmetric base, emarginate apex, upper surface hairy, and lower one smooth. Seeds are round with tan "frilled" edges and brown and have rough texture. It has straight trunk, umbrella-shaped crown, and whitish bark. The pods are triangular in cross section which are legume-like in appearance, and the flowers are creamy white in color (Fig. 1).

Moringa oleifera, a well-known and majorly distributed species (Nadkarni 1976; Ramachandran et al. 1980), originates from Southeast Asia, Africa, and Arabian Peninsula and is now also distributed to North and South America, including the Caribbean nations (Somali et al. 1984; Mughal et al. 1999; Morton 1991).

Moringa oleifera grows well under hot climate conditions, being well-tolerant to drought. It grows with 250–1500 mm rainfall per year. The tree grows very rapidly, reaching a peak of 15 ft in a year. On average, the species grow up to 600 m; however, in some tropical areas, it is much higher, with a record growth at 2000 m. *Moringa oleifera* tree grows well in loam soil or well-drained sandy soil with a pH range of 5–9. *Moringa oleifera* grows easily from seeds and cuttings. It is suggested

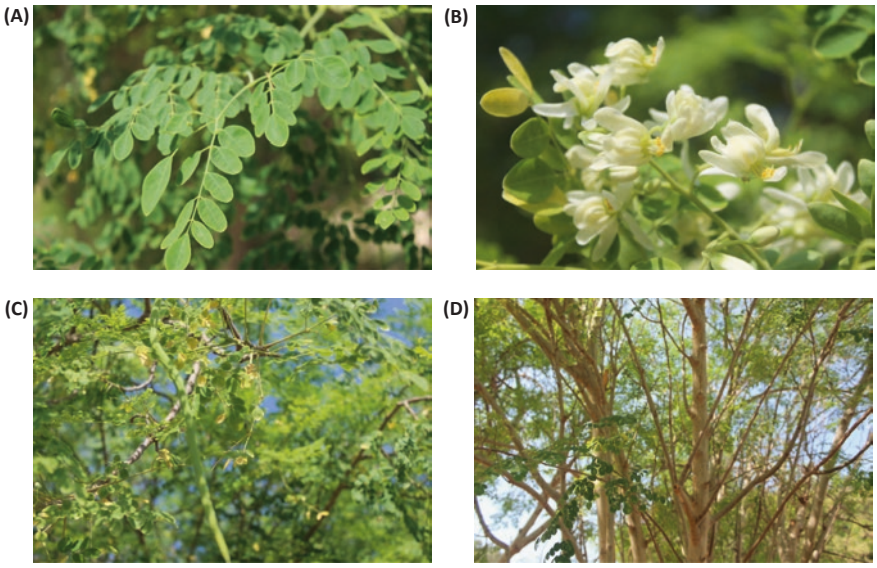


Fig. 1 Usable plant parts of *Moringa oleifera*. Leaves (**a**), flower (**b**), single pod (**c**), stem, and barks (**d**)

that the seeds are planted as deep as 2 cm so that they can germinate within 2 weeks. The best light conditions would be half shade for germination.

Nutrition Value

Moringa oleifera is a rich source of amino acids, antioxidants, and other antiaging and anti-inflammatory agents which makes it the most nutrient-rich plant (Table 1). The leaf of *Moringa oleifera* is a source of high nutrient contents (Zhang et al. 2017). Thus, the plant can be used to treat deficiency of nutrients instead of using imported food supplies (Johnson 2005; Manzoor et al. 2007; Sreelatha and Padma 2009). It contains a combination of all required nutrients for human beings and livestock animals (Fahey 2005). Reportedly, *Moringa oleifera* contains 7 times more vitamin A compared to oranges, 10 times more vitamin A compared to carrots, 15 times more potassium compared to bananas, 9 times more proteins compared to yogurt, 17 times more calcium compared to milk, and 25 times more amount of iron compared to spinach (Fuglie 1999). Other studies have noted the abundance of vitamin B complex and dietary elements like Cr, Cu, Mn, Mg, K, P, and Zn (Fuglie 2000, 2001). *Moringa oleifera* leaves are abundant in proteins and thus can be used to address the global malnutrition crisis (Thurber and Fahey 2009) (Table 2).

Table 1 Nutrition value of *Moringa oleifera. Moringa* leaves and pods have shown to contain the following per 100 g of edible portion adapted from Fuglie (1999)

Compounds	Leaves	Pods
Protein (g)	6.7	2.5
Carbohydrate (g)	13.4	3.7
Fiber (g)	0.9	4.8
Calories	92	26
Moisture	75	86.9
Minerals (g)	2.3	2
K (mg)	259	259
P (mg)	70	110
Mg (mg)	24	24
Cu (mg)	1.1	3.1
Fe (mg)	7	5.3
S (mg)	137	137
Ca (mg)	440	30
Vitamin A-B carotene (mg)	6.8	0.11
Vitamin B-choline (mg)	423	423
Vitamin B1-thiamin (mg)	0.21	0.05
Vitamin B2-riboflavin (mg)	0.05	0.07
Vitamin B3-nicotinic acid (mg)	0.8	0.2
Vitamin C-ascorbic acid (mg)	220	120
Arginine (mg)	402	90
Histidine (mg)	141	27.5
Lysine (mg)	288	37.5
Tryptophan (mg)	127	20
Phenylalanine (mg)	429	108
Methionine (mg)	134	35
Threonine (mg)	328	98
Leucine (mg)	623	163
Isoleucine (mg)	422	110
Valine (mg)	476	135

Medicinal Properties

Phytochemicals are molecules that can affect health and also the flavor, smell, and color of plants, but generally are not necessary for human nutrition. *Moringa* species have phytochemicals containing rhamnose, which is found abundantly in isothiocyanates and glucosinolate compounds, and also it has niazimicin, pterygospermin, and benzyl isothiocyanate which have shown antibacterial activity and activity against cancer and are helpful in lowering blood pressure (Faizi et al. 1998a, b, c; Fuglie 1999, 2000, 2001; Fahey et al. 2004; Costa-Lotufo et al. 2005; Al-Asmari et al. 2015). Several studies have shown other effects of treatment with *Moringa oleifera* phytochemicals, such as increase in detoxification and elevated levels of enzymes responsible for antioxidant activity. The phytochemicals have

Table 2 The therapeutic and prophylactic uses of *Moringa oleifera* adapted from Fahey (2005)

Medicinal use against the diseases	Plant parts	References
Typhoid	Gum	Fuglie (1999)
Syphilis	Gum	Fuglie (1999)
Infection	Leaves, flower	Fuglie (1999)
Urinary tract infection	Leaves	Shaw and Jana (1982)
HIV-AIDS	Leaves	Abrams et al. (1993), Prazuck et al. (1993)
Thrush	Oil	Fuglie (1999)
Bronchitis	Leaves	Fuglie (1999)
Thrush	Oil	
Earache	Gum	Fuglie (1999)
External sores	Leaves, flowers, roots, barks	Fuglie (1999)
Fever	Leaves, roots gum	Fuglie (1999)
Throat infection	Flowers	Fuglie (1999)
Antitumor	Leaves, flowers, seed, barks	Bharali et al. (2003), Costa-Lotufo et al. (2005), Fahey et al. (2004), Faizi et al. (1998a, b, c), Gupta et al. (1997), Hartwell (1971)
Prostate	Leaves	Fuglie (1999)
Skin	Pods	Bharali et al. (2003)
Antianemic	Leaves	Fuglie (1999), Quisumbing (1978)
Cardiotonic	Roots	Fuglie (1999)
Diabetes	Leaves, pods	Asres (1995), Faizi et al. (1998a, b, c), Kar et al. (1999), Makonnen et al. (1997)
Diuretic	Leaves, flowers, roots, gum	Asres (1995), Caceres et al. (1992), Nisa et al. (1998)
Thyroid	Leaves	
Hepatorenal	Leaves, roots	Mazumder et al. (1999), Pari and Kumar (2002)
Purgative	Oil	Fuglie (1999)
Snakebite	Barks	Fuglie (1999)
Scorpio bite	Barks	Fuglie (1999)
Colitis	Leaves, barks	Fuglie (1999)
Diarrhea	Leaves, roots	Fuglie (1999), Nisa et al. (1998)
Digestif	Barks	Fuglie (1999)
Dysentery	Leaves, gum	Fuglie (1999)
Flatulence	Roots	Fuglie (1999)
Ulcer/gastritis	Leaves, seeds	Pal et al. (1995), Ruckmani et al. (1998a, b)
Rheumatism	Leaves, flowers, seeds, pods, roots, gum	
Joint pain	Pods	Fuglie (1999)
Edema	Roots	Fuglie (1999)
Arthritis	Seeds	Fuglie (1999)

(continued)

Table 2 (continued)

Medicinal use against the diseases	Plant parts	References
Immune-stimulant	Seeds	Jayavardhanan et al. (1994)
Antispasmodic	Seeds, roots	Caceres et al. (1992), Gilani et al. (1994)
Hysteria	Flowers, roots, barks, oil	Fuglie (1999)
Headache	Leaves, roots, barks, gum	Fuglie (1999)
Abortifacient	Flowers, roots, barks, gum	Nath et al. (1992a, b), Nath et al. (1997), Tarafder (1983)
Aphrodisiac	Roots, barks	Fuglie (1999)
Birth control	Barks	Gilani et al. (1994), Faizi et al. (1998a, b, c)
Lactation enhancer	Leaves	Fuglie (1999)
Prostrate function	Oil	Fuglie (1999)
Antiseptic	Leaves	Fuglie (1999)
Astringent	Seeds	Fuglie (1999)
Pyoderma	Roots, gum	Caceres and Lopez (1991)
Vesicant	Roots	Fuglie (1999)
Bladder	Oil, seeds	Fuglie (1999)
Gout	Roots, oil	Fuglie (1999)
Hepatomegaly	Roots	Fuglie (1999)
Scurvy	Leaves, seeds, roots, bark	Fuglie (1999)
Tonic	Pods, seeds, oil	Fuglie (1999)

also shown effects on immunological response, antispasmodic activity, activity against ulcers, antimicrobial activity, effects of hypercholesterolemia (Talreja 2010), antihypertensive activity, and antiviral activity specifically against herpes simplex virus type 1 (Gilani et al. 1994; Hameed-Un-Nisa et al. 1998; Ghasi et al. 2000; Galan et al. 2004; Haristoy et al. 2005). The major role of antioxidants is to inhibit the free radicals so that the human body is protected against degenerative disorders and infections. *Moringa oleifera* oil was known to be used for skin beautification preparations since ancient Egyptian periods (Sairam 1999; Fuglie 2000; Monica 2005).

Antispasmodic, Antiulcer, and Hepatoprotective Activities

The roots of *Moringa oleifera* have shown to relieve involuntary muscle spasms (Caceres et al. 1992). Studies have shown that the ethanolic extracts of its leaves show antispasmodic effects, possibly via a mechanism that includes the calcium channel blockade (Gilani et al. 1992, 1994; Dangi et al. 2002).

4-[α-(L-Rhamnosyloxy) benzyl]- o-methyl thiocarbamate (trans) has been identified as the major compound responsible for antispasmodic activity; thus the leaves were traditionally used to treat diarrhea (Gilani et al. 1994). *Moringa oleifera* contains compounds that have reportedly shown spasmolytic activity, which explains why the plant is traditionally used to treat gastrointestinal motility problems (Gilani et al. 1994). Since aqueous leaf extracts have also exhibited activity against ulcer (Pal et al. 1995), this suggests that components responsible for such activity are abundant in *Moringa oleifera.* Its roots have shown a protective effect on the liver (Ruckmani et al. 1998a, b) as well as the aqueous and alcoholic extracts of flowers (Ruckmani et al. 1998a, b) which could possibly be due to quercetin, a flavonoid that has exhibited hepatoprotective activity (Gilani et al. 1997).

Antihypertensive, Diuretic, and Cholesterol-Lowering Activities

This plant is extremely useful for treating cardiovascular disorders as it contains compounds that can lower blood pressure and lipid levels and increase production of urine. Its leaf juice is used to stabilize blood pressure (Dahot 1988). *Moringa oleifera* leaves contain compounds that contain carbamate, thiocarbamate, nitrile, or full acetylated glycoside groups that are found rarely in nature (Faizi et al. 1995) but were found to be responsible for lowering blood pressure (Faizi et al. 1994a, b, 1995). Four pure compounds were isolated from the active ethanol leaf extract: niazinin A, niazinin B, niazimicin (Table 3, Fig. A), and niazinin (Faizi et al. 1995). Niaziminin is a thiocarbamate found in the *Moringa oleifera* leaves that has shown resistance against tumors induced as a result of Epstein-Barr virus infection. Niazimicin was suggested as an inhibitor of carcinogenesis (Guevara et al. 1999). These compounds displayed lowered blood pressure using a calcium antagonistic pathway in rats. The ethanolic and aqueous extracts of *Moringa oleifera* seeds showed more significant effect in lowering blood pressure, although results were different and comparable between water and ethanol extracts (Faizi et al. 1998a, b, c). Isothiocyanate and thiocarbamate glycosides isolated from the ethanolic extracts of *Moringa oleifera* pods show hypotensive effects (Faizi et al. 1995), as well as methyl p-hydroxybenzoate and β-sitosterol (Table 1, Fig. C) found in the pods (Faizi et al. 1998a, b, c). The roots, flowers, gum, and seeds of *Moringa oleifera* have shown to increase urine production (Morton 1991; Caceres et al. 1992). Makonnen et al. (1997) have reported that the leaves of *Moringa oleifera* contain compounds that can have potential antitumor effects. O-Ethyl-4-(α-L-rhamnosyloxy) benzyl carbamate, 4(α-L-rhamnosyloxy)-benzyl isothiocyanate, and 3-O-(6′-O-oleoyl-β-D-glucopyranosyl)-β-sitosterol are found in *Moringa* and were tested by using an in vitro assay in which the compounds have shown relevant amount of inhibition against the antigen of Epstein-Barr virus. Extracts of *Moringa oleifera* seeds have shown effects on enzymes that metabolize carcinogens in the liver, antioxidants, and cancerous growth in mice skin (Bharali et al. 2003). Ointment made

from *Moringa oleifera* seeds produced an inhibitory effect against *S. aureus* pyoderma in mice, like neomycin (Caceres and Lopez 1991). 4-[(4′-O-Acetyl-α-L-rhamnosyloxy) benzyl] is a naturally occurring isothiocyanate that has shown a significant reduction in tumors induced by Epstein-Barr virus activation, which implies that the structural isothiocyano group is crucial in the activity of inhibiting tumors (Murakami et al. 1998).

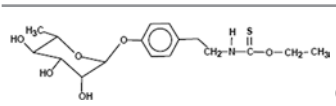
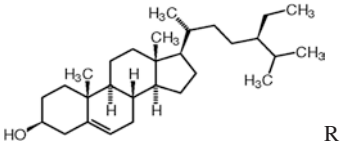
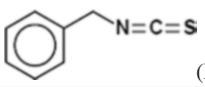
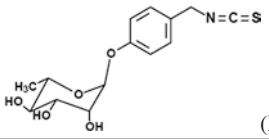
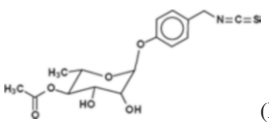
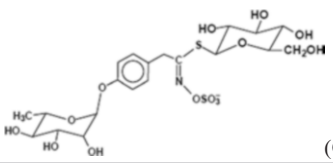
Antibacterial and Antifungal Activities

The plant parts of the *Moringa oleifera* plant have shown various antimicrobial effects in several studies. It contains many compounds such as benzyl isothiocyanates (D), 4-(4′-O-acetyl-α-L-rhamnopyranosyloxy) benzyl isothiocyanate (F), and 4-(α-L-rhamnopyranosyloxy) benzyl glucosinolates (G) which exhibit the antimicrobial activity (Table 3, Fig. D, F, G). The roots contain antimicrobial components that are responsible for antibacterial activity, e.g., pterygospermin (Table 3, Fig. B), which also acts against fungus growth (Ruckmani et al. 1998a, b). A compound showing similar effects to that of pterygospermin was found in *Moringa oleifera* flowers (Das et al. 1957). The antimicrobial activity in *Moringa oleifera* roots is possibly due to the existence of 4-α-L-rhamnosyloxy benzyl isothiocyanate (Eilert et al. 1981) (Table 3, Fig. E). The chloroform fraction of the ethanol extract of the root contains deoxy-niazimicin (*N*-benzyl, *S*-ethyl thioformate) which has aglycone group, thought to be responsible for the antifungal and antibacterial effects (Nikkon et al. 2003). The *Moringa oleifera* bark extract exhibited antifungal properties (Bhatnagar et al. 1961), and its juice showed activity against *S. aureus* (Mehta et al. 2003). Also, *Moringa oleifera* leaf juice was able to show inhibitory effects against *P. aeruginosa* and *S. aureus*, both of which are pathogenic.

Antidiabetic Activity

Moringa oleifera have also antidiabetic properties. Leaf extracts showed potential to decrease blood glucose levels in type 2 diabetes modeled rats (Ndong et al. 2007). One study showed that blood glucose lowers within 3 h after ingesting (Mittal et al. 2007). Dark chocolate polyphenols (Grassi et al. 2005) as well as other polyphenols are responsible for lowering blood glucose (Al-Awwadi et al. 2004; Moharram et al. 2003). Since *Moringa oleifera* leaves contain quercetin-3-glycoside and other polyphenols (Ndong et al. 2007), it holds the potential of possibly treating diabetes. With its wide availability, the antidiabetic property of *Moringa oleifera* can be commercialized by using proper technology.

Table 3 Major active constituent found in *Moringa oleifera*

Active constituent	Major application	References
 (**A**)	Anticancer Blood pressure Lowering effects	Guevara et al. (1999) Faizi et al. (1998a, b, c)
 (**B**)	Antibacterial and fungicidal effects	
 R = H (**C**)	Cholesterol Lowering effects	Ghasi et al. (2000)
 (**D**)	Antibacterial	Fahey (2005)
 (**E**)	Antibacterial	Fahey (2005)
 (**F**)	Antibacterial	Fahey (2005)
 (**G**)	Antibacterial	Fahey (2005)

Niazimicin (A), pterygospermin (B), β-sitosterol (C), benzyl isothiocyanates (D), 4-(-L-rhamnosyloxy) benzyl isothiocyanate (E), 4-(4′-O-acetyl-α-L-rhamnopyranosyloxy) benzyl isothiocyanate (F), 4-(α-L-rhamnopyranosyloxy) benzyl glucosinolates (G)

Antifertility Activity

The aqueous roots and bark extract of *Moringa oleifera* contain substances that show potential for antifertility activity (Prakash et al. 1987). It may induce estrogenic and progestational activities or activities against these to affect fertility (Shukla et al. 1988a, b, c, d). Another study showed that the leaf extracts of *Moringa*

oleifera with a dose of 175 mg/kg of starting dry material are fully effective in abortion (Nath et al. 1992a, b).

Antioxidant Activity

Moringa oleifera has high concentrations of antioxidants (Chumark et al. 2008), especially in the aqueous extracts of its leaves, seeds, and fruits (Singh et al. 2009). Reportedly, alcoholic extracts of freeze-dried *Moringa oleifera* leaves showed the most antioxidant activity (Lalas and Tsaknis 2002; Siddhuraju and Becker 2003a, b). Quercetin, kaempferol, and other phenolic compounds are suggested to be responsible for antioxidant properties (Bajpai et al. 2005; Siddhuraju and Becker 2003a, b). These compounds showed antioxidant activity against hepatocyte growth factor-induced methionine phosphorylation (Labbe et al. 2009). *Moringa oleifera* seed exhibits higher radical scavenging activity compared to palm oil (Ogbunugafor et al. 2011).

Anti-asthmatic Activity

Moringa oleifera plant alkaloid is similar to ephedrine in terms of action against asthma. Reportedly, moringine (benzylamine) helps bronchioles to relax (Kirtikar and Basu 1975). A study evaluating the safety and effectiveness of seeds to treat asthma patients showed that *Moringa oleifera* seed kernels have shown a relevant decrease in the symptoms of asthma and overall improvement in the respiratory system (Agrawal and Mehta 2008).

Anti-inflammatory Activity

Moringa oleifera root extracts helped to reduce inflammation significantly in rat paw edema induced by carrageenan (Ezeamuzie et al. 1996; Khare et al. 1997). The N-butanol extract of *Moringa oleifera* seeds has exhibited activity against airway inflammation induced by ovalbumin in guinea pigs (Mahajan et al. 2009). *Moringa oleifera* contains active compounds that have potential to reduce inflammation as a result of chronic diseases (Muangnoi et al. 2011).

Analgesic Activity

Several *Moringa* species have reportedly shown analgesic effects. Alcoholic extracts of *Moringa oleifera* fruits exhibited significant analgesic activity in animals (Rao et al. 2008). Hot plate and tail immersion method provided evidence that the alcoholic extracts of *Moringa oleifera* leaves and seeds show noteworthy analgesic activity (Sutar et al. 2008).

CNS Activity

Moringa oleifera root aqueous extracts were tested for their antiepileptic effects, against seizures induced by penicillin, movement, serotonin levels in the brain (5-HTT), neurotransmitters like dopamine, and hormones like norepinephrine, in albino rats (Rastogi et al. 2009). In the rat models of Alzheimer's disease, Ganguly and Guha (2008) tested the ethanol extracts of *Moringa oleifera* leaves and their effects on dopamine, norepinephrine, and serotonin levels and overall EEG wave pattern.

Anthelmintic Activity

The activity of *Moringa oleifera* against helminths was reported by Rastogi et al. (2009), where the ethanolic extracts of *Moringa oleifera* with various concentrations were used to measure inhibitory activity against *Pheretima posthuma* earthworms. The time of worm paralysis and death were recorded as results, with piperazine citrate (10 mg/mL) as the standard reference and control group being distilled water (Rastogi et al. 2009).

In Ocular Diseases

Moringa oleifera leaves, pods, and their extracts or powders are rich in vitamin A which could be used to treat vitamin A deficiency, since its deficiency can cause blindness and other eye problems. Studies have shown that the leaves can provide sufficient vitamin A to resist the formation of cataracts in eyes (Pullakhandam and Failla 2007). *Moringa oleifera* was suggested as a supplementary food due to its rich vitamin A source by the Integrated Child Development Scheme Supplementary Food (ICDS-SFP) (Nambiar et al. 2003).

Anticancer Activity

Moringa oleifera exhibited the anticancer activity against the breast and colorectal cancer cell lines (Al-Asmari et al. 2015). The leaves and barks of *Moringa oleifera* showed the notable characteristics against the cancer cell lines. Some active constituents were reported against the breast and colorectal cancer. These chemical compounds are eugenol, isopropyl isothiocyanate, D-allose, and hexadecanoic acid ethyl ester (Al-Asmari et al. 2015).

Future Prospect

Moringa oleifera has long been established as an abundant source of nutrients, particularly in the developing countries where the leaves are dried and milled for easy storage and added as a powder for daily dietary intake. The powder is also used to enrich food products. *Moringa oleifera* has sufficient amount of nutrients; this gives opportunities for developing countries to rely less on expensive imported vitamin and mineral dietary supplements which are generally used to treat malnutrition. Studies conducted on *Moringa oleifera* have shown that there are some properties of the various plant parts that could be useful for health. However, the preliminary studies were limited to animal models and cell lines; human trials are still on hold. However, human studies should be conducted since the plant is edible. Niazimicin, found in *Moringa oleifera* seeds, has been described as an antitumor promoter, although its mechanism of inhibiting carcinogenesis still needs further investigation. The mechanism of *Moringa oleifera* constituents acting against HSV-1 infection also needs to be further examined.

Conclusion

If *Moringa oleifera* plants are largely cultivated under favorable climate conditions, growth would be maximum; thus this would provide a large yield of its various parts. The different parts of the plant can then be used to isolate components that hold potential benefit for human health.

References

Abdelmalek SMA, Alkhawaja B, Darwish DA (2016) Perceptions and use of medicinal herbs among college students at a Jordanian university in Amman-Jordan: traditions supersedes education. J Tradi Med Clin Natur 2016(5):191

Abrams B, Duncan D, Hertz-Piccioto I (1993) A prospective study of dietary intake and acquired immune deficiency syndrome in HIV-seropositive homosexual men. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr 8:949–958

Agrawal B, Mehta A (2008) Antiasthmatic activity of *Moringa oleifera* Lam: a clinical study. Ind J Pharmacol 40:28–31

Al-Asmari AK, Albalawi SM, Athar MT, Khan AQ, Al-Shahrani H, Islam M (2015) *Moringa oleifera* as an anti-cancer agent against breast and colorectal cancer cell lines. PLoS One 10:e0135814. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0135814

Al-Awwadi N, Azay J, Poucheret P, Cassanas G, Krosniak M, Auger G, Gasc F, Rouanet GC, Teissedre PL (2004) Antidiabetic activity of red wine polyphenolic extract, ethanol, or both in streptozotocin-treated rats. J Agric Food Chem 52:1008–1016

Anjorin TB, Ikokoh P, Okolo S (2010) Mineral composition of *Moringa oleifera* leaves, pods and seeds from two regions in Abuja, Nigeria. Int J Agric Biol 12:431–434

Anwar F, Bhanger MI (2003) Analytical characterization of *Moringa oleifera* seed oil grown in temperate regions of Pakistan. J Agric Food Chem 51:6558–6563

Anwar F, Ashraf M, Bhanger MI (2005) Interprovenance variation in the composition of Moringa oleifera oilseeds from Pakistan. J Am Oil Chem Soc 82: 45–51

Aslam M, Anwar F, Nadeem R, Rashid U, Kazi TG, Nadeem M (2005) Mineral composition of *Moringa oleifera* leaves and pods from different regions of Punjab, Pakistan. Asian J Plant Sci 4:417–421

Asres K (1995) The major constituents of the acetone fraction of Ethiopian *Moringa stenopetala* leaves. Mansoura J Pharmacol Sci 11:55–64

Awas T, Demissew S (2009) In: Svein E, Harald A, Birhanu T, Shiferaw B (eds) Ethnobotanical study of medicinal plants in Kafficho people, southwestern Ethiopia. Proceedings of the 16th International Conference of Ethiopian Studies, vol 3. NTNU-Trykk Press, Trondheim, pp 711–726

Bajpai M, Pande A, Tewari SK, Prakash D (2005) Phenolic contents and antioxidant activity of some food and medicinal plants. Int J Food Sci Nutr 56:287–291

Berger MR, Habs M, Jahn SA, Schmahl S (1984) Toxicological assessment of seeds from *Moringa oleifera* and *Moringa stenopetala*, two highly efficient primary coagulants for domestic water treatment of tropical raw waters. East Afr Med J 61:712–716

Berkes F, Colding J, Folke C (2003) Navigating social-ecological systems: building resilience for complexity and change. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp 251–257

Bharali R, Tabassum J, Azad MRH (2003) Chemomodulatory effect of *Moringa oleifera*, lam, on hepatic carcinogen metabolizing enzymes, antioxidant parameters and skin papilloma genesis in mice. Asia Pac J Cancer Prev 4:131–139

Bhatnagar SS, Santapau H, Desai JDH, Yellore S, Rao TNS (1961) Biological activity of Indian medicinal plants. Part 1. Antibacterial, antitubercular and antifungal action. Indian J Med Res 49:799–805

Caceres A, Lopez S (1991) Pharmacological properties of *Moringa oleifera*: 3. Effect of seed extracts in the treatment of experimental pyodermia. Fitoterapia 62:449–450

Caceres A, Saravia A, Rizzo S, Zabala L, De Leon E, Nave F (1992) Pharmacologic properties of *Moringa oleifera.* 2: screening for antispasmodic, anti-inflammatory and diuretic activity. J Ethnopharmacol 36:233–237

Chumark P, Khunawat P, Sanvarinda Y, Phornchirasilp S, Morales NP, Phivthong-Ngam L, Ratanachamnong P, Srisawat P, Pongrapeeporn KU (2008) The in vitro and ex vivo antioxidant properties, hypolipidaemic and antiatherosclerotic activities of water extract of *Moringa oleifera* Lam. leaves. J Ethnopharmacol 116:439–446

Costa-Lotufo LV, Khan MTH, Ather A, Wilke DV, Jimenez PC, Pessoa C, Moraes MD (2005) Studies of the anticancer potential of plants used in Bangladeshi folk medicine. J Ethnopharmacol 99:21–30

D'souza J, Kulkarni AR (1993) Comparative studies on nutritive values of tender foliage of seedlings and mature plants of *Moringa oleifera* Lam. J Econ Taxon Bot 17:479–485

Dahot MU (1988) Vitamin contents of flowers and seeds of *Moringa oleifera*. Pak J Biochem 21:1–24

Dangi SY, Jolly CI, Narayana S (2002) Antihypertensive activity of the total alkaloids from the leaves of *Moringa oleifera*. Pharm Biol 40:144–148

Das BR, Kurup PA, Rao PL, Narasimha PL (1957) Antibiotic principle from *Moringa pterygosperma*. VII. Antibacterial activity and chemical structure of compounds related to pterygospermin. Indian J Med Res 45:191–196

Dillard CJ, German JB (2000) Phytochemicals: nutraceuticals and human health: a review. J Sci Food Agric 80:1744–1756

Eilert U, Wolters B, Nadrtedt A (1981) The antibiotic principle of seeds of *Moringa oleifera* and *Moringa stenopetala*. Planta Med 42:55–61

Ezeamuzie IC, Ambakederemo AW, Shode FO, Ekwebelem SC (1996) Anti-inflammatory effects of *Moringa oleifera* root extract. Pharm Biol 34:207–212

Fahey JW (2005) *Moringa oleifera*: a review of the medical evidence for its nutritional, therapeutic, and prophylactic properties. Part 1. Trees Life J 1:5

Fahey JW, Dinkova-Kostova AT, Talalay P (2004) The "Prochaska" microtiter plate bioassay for inducers of NQO1. In: Sies H, Packer L (eds) Chapter 14. Methods in enzymology. Elsevier Science, San Diego, CA, pp 243–258

Faizi S, Siddiqui B, Saleem R, Saddiqui S, Aftab K (1994a) Isolation and structure elucidation of new nitrile and mustard oil glycosides from *Moringa oleifera* and their effect on blood pressure. J Nat Prod 57:1256–1261

Faizi S, Siddiqui BS, Saleem R, Siddiqui S, Aftab K, Gilani AH (1994b) Isolation and structure elucidation of new nitrile and mustard oil glycosides from *Moringa oleifera* and their effect on blood pressure. J Nat Prod 57:1256–1261

Faizi S, Siddiqui BS, Saleem R, Siddiqui S, Aftab K, Gilani AH (1995) Fully acetylated carbamate and hypotensive thiocarbamate glycosides from *Moringa oleifera*. Phytochemistry 38:957–963

Faizi S, Siddiqui B, Saleem R, Saddiqui S, Aftab K (1998a) Bioactive compounds from the leaves and pods of *Moringa oleifera*. New Trends In Natural Products Chemistry. 175–183

Faizi S, Siddiqui BS, Saleem R, Aftab K, Shaheen F, Gilani AH (1998b) Hypotensive constituents from the pods of *Moringa oleifera*. Planta Med 64:225–228

Faizi S, Siddiqui BS, Saleem R, Aftab K, Shaheen F, Gilani AH (1998c) Hypotensive constituents from the pods of *Moringa oleifera*. Planta Med 64:225–228

Fuglie LJ (1999) The miracle tree: *Moringa oleifera*: natural nutrition for the tropics, p. 172. Church World Service, Dakar. 68 pp.; revised in 2001 and published as The miracle tree: the multiple attributes of *Moringa*

Fuglie LJ (2000) New Uses of Moringa Studied in Nicaragua. ECHO Development Notes #68, June, 2000

Fuglie LJ (2001) The miracle tree: *Moringa oleifera*: natural nutrition for the tropics. Training Manual Church World Service, Dakar, Senegal

Galan MV, Kishan AA, Silverman AL (2004) Oral broccoli sprouts for the treatment of Helicobacter pylori infection: a preliminary report. Dig Dis Sci 49:1088–1090

Ganguly R, Guha D (2008) Alteration of brain monoamines and EEG wave pattern in rat model of Alzheimer's disease and protection by *Moringa oleifera*. Indian J Med Res 128:744–751

García-Alvarado JSS, Verde-Star MJ, Heredia NL (2011) Traditional uses and scientific knowledge of medicinal plants from Mexico and Central America. J Herbs Spices Med Plants 8:37–89

Gassenschmidt U, Jany KD, Tauscher B, Niebergall H (1995) Isolation and characterization of a flocculating protein from *Moringa oleifera* Lam. Biochim Biophys Acta 1243:477–481

Ghasi S, Wobodo EN, Ofili JO (2000) Hypocholesterolemic effects of crude extract of leaf of *Moringa oleifera* Lam in high fat diet fed Wistar rats. J Ethnopharmacol 69:21–25

Gilani AH, Aftab K, Shaheen F (1992) Antispasmodic activity of active principle from *Moringa oleifera*. In: Capasso F, Mascolo N (eds) Natural drugs and the digestive tract. EMSI, Rome, pp 60–63

Gilani AH, Aftab K, Suria A, Siddiqui S, Saleem R, Siddiqui BS, Faizi S (1994) Pharmacological studies on hypotensive and spasmolytic activities of pure compounds from *Moringa oleifera*. Phototherapy Res 8:87–91

Gilani AH, Janbaz KH, Shah BH (1997) Quercetin exhibits hepatoprotective activity in rats. Biochem Soc Trans 25:85

Grassi D, Lippi C, Necozione S, Desideri G, Ferri C (2005) Short-term administration of dark chocolate is followed by a significant increase in insulin sensitivity and a decrease in blood pressure in healthy persons. Am J Clin Nutr 81:611–614

Guevara AP, Vargas C, Sakurai H (1999) An antitumor promoter from *Moringa oleifera* Lam. Mutat Res 440:181–188

Gupta M, Mazumder UK, Chakrabarti S, Bhattacharya S, Rath N, Bhawal SR (1997) Anti-epileptic and anti-cancer activity of some indigenous plants. Indian J Physiol Allied Sci 51:53–56

Hameed-Un-Nisa L, Shehnaz D, Faizi S (1998) Measurement of sympatholytic activity of *Moringa oleifera*. New Trends in Natural Products. Chemistry (6th International Symposium on Natural Products Chemistry). Harwood Amsterdam 269–277

Haristoy X, Fahey JW, Scholtus I, Lozniewski A (2005) Evaluation of antimicrobial effect of several isothiocyanates on Helicobacter pylori. Planta Med 71:326–330

Hartwell JL (1971) Plants used against cancer: a survey 1967–1971. Lloydia:30–34

Jayavardhanan KK, Suresh K, Panikkar KR, Vasudevan DM (1994) Modulatory potency of drumstick lectin on the host defense system. J Exp Clin Cancer Res 13:205–209

Johnson BC (2005) Clinical perspectives on the health effects of *Moringa Oleifera*: a promising adjunct for balanced nutrition and better health. KOS Health Publications August, La Cañada, CA

Kar A, Choudhary BK, Bandyopadhyay NG (1999) Preliminary studies on the inorganic constituents of some indigenous hypoglycaemic herbs on oral glucose tolerance test. J Ethnopharmacol 64:179–184

Khare GC, Singh V, Gupta PC (1997) A new Leucoanthocyanin from *Moringa oleifera* gum. J Ind Chem Soc 74:247–248

Kirtikar KR, Basu BD (1975) In: Singh B, Singh MP (eds) Indian medicinal plants, Dehradun, Periodical Experts Book Agency, pp 676–683

Labbe D, Provencal M, Lamy S, Boivin D, Gingras D, Beliveau R (2009) The flavonols quercetin, kaempferol, and myricetin inhibit hepatocyte growth factor-induced medulloblastoma cell migration. J Nutr 139:646–652

Lalas S, Tsaknis J (2002) Extraction and identification of natural antioxidant from the seeds of the *Moringa oleifera* tree variety of Malawi. JAOSC 79:677–683

Mahajan SG, Banerjee A, Chauhan BF, Padh H, Nivsarkar M, Mehta AA (2009) Inhibitory effect of n-butanol fraction of *Moringa oleifera* Lam. Seeds on ovalbumin-induced airway inflammation in a guinea pig model of asthma. Int J Toxicol 28:519–527

Makonnen E, Hunde A, Damecha G (1997) Hypoglycaemic effect of *Moringa stenopetala* aqueous extract in rabbits. Phytother Res 11:147–148

Manzoor M, Anwar F, Iqbal Tand M.I. Bhnager MI (2007). Physicochemical characterization of *Moringa concanensis* seeds and seed oil. J Am Oil Chem Soc 84: 413–419

Mazumder UK, M Gupta M, Chakrabarti SPal D (1999) Evaluation of hematological and hepatorenal functions of methanolic extract of *Moringa oleifera* Lam. root treated mice. Indian J Exp Biol 37:612–614

Mehta LK, Balaraman R, Amin AH, Bafna PA, Gulati OD (2003) Effect of fruits of *Moringa oleifera* on the lipid profile of normal and hypercholesterolaemic rabbits. J Ethnopharmacol 86:191–195

Mittal M, Mittal P, Agarwal AC (2007) Pharmacognostical and phytochemical investigation of antidiabetic activity of *Moringa oleifera* lam leaf. Indian Pharm 6:70–72

Moharram FA, Marzouk MS, El-Toumy SA, Ahmed AA, Aboutabl EA (2003) Polyphenols of Melaleuca quinquenervia leaves— pharmacological studies of grandinin. Phytother Res 17:767–773

Monica GM (2005) Miracle tree. KOS Health Publications, Ottawa, pp 340–355
Morton JF (1991) The horseradish tree, *Moringa pterygosperma* (Moringaceae). A boon to arid lands. Econ Bot 45:318–333
Muangnoi C, Chingsuwanrote P, Praengamthanachoti P, Svasti S, Tuntipopipat S (2011) *Moringa oleifera* pod inhibits inflammatory mediator production by lipopolysaccharide-stimulated RAW 264.7 murine macrophage cell lines. Inflammation 35:445–455
Mughal MH, Ali G, Srivastava PS, Iqbal M (1999) Improvement of drumstick (*Moringa pterygosperma* Gaertn.) – a unique source of food and medicine through tissue culture. Hamdard Med 42:37–42
Murakami A, Kitazono Y, Jiwajinda S, Koshimizu K, Ohigashi H (1998) Niaziminin, a thiocarbamate from the leaves of *Moringa oleifera*, holds a strict structural requirement for inhibition of tumor-promoter-induced Epstein-Barr virus activation. Planta Med 64:319–323
Nadkarni AK (1976) Indian Materia Medica. Popular Prakashan Pvt. Ltd, Bombay, pp 810–816
Nambiar VS, Bhadalkar K, Daxini M (2003) Drumstick leaves as source of vitamin A in ICDS-SFP. Indian J Pediatr 70:383–387
Nath D, Sethi N, Singh RK, Jain AK (1992a) Commonly used Indian abortifacient plants with special reference to their teratologic effects in rats. J Ethnopharmacol 36:147–154
Nath D, Sethi N, Singh RK, Jain AK (1992b) Commonly used Indian abortifacient plants with special reference to their teratologic effects in rats. J Ethnopharmacol 36:147–154
Nath D, Sethi N, Srivastav S, Jain AK, Srivastava R (1997) Survey on indigenous medicinal plants used for abortion in some districts of Uttar Pradesh. Fitoterapia 68:223–225
Ndong M, Uehara M, Katsumata S, Suzuki K (2007) Effects of oral administration of *Moringa oleifera* Lam on glucose tolerance in gotokakizaki and wistar rats. J Clin Biochem Nutr 40:229–233
Nikkon F, Saud ZA, Rehman MH, Haque ME (2003) In vitro antimicrobial activity of the compound isolated from chloroform extract of *Moringa oleifera* Lam. Pak J Biol Sci (22):1888–1890
Nisa LH, Shehnaz D, Faizi S (1998) Measurement of sympatholytic activity of *Moringa oleifera*. New Trends in Natural Products Chemistry [6th International Symposium on Natural Products Chemistry], Harwood Amsterdam 269–277
Ogbunugafor HA, Eneh FU, Ozumba AN, Igwo-Ezikpe MN, Okpuzor J, Igwilo IO, Adenekan SO, Onyekwelu OA (2011) Physico-chemical and antioxidant properties of *Moringa oleifera* seed oil. Pak J Nutr 10:409–414
Olsen A (1987) Low technology water purification by bentonite clay and *Moringa oleifera* seed flocculation as performed in Sudanese villages. Effects on Schistosoma mansoni cercariae. Water Res 21:517–522
Omoruyi BE, Bradley G, Afolayan AJ (2012) Ethnomedicinal survey of medicinal plants used for the management of HIV/AIDS infection among local communities of Nkonkobe Municipality, Eastern Cape, South Africa. J Med Plant Res 6:3603–3608
Pal SK, Mukherjee PK, Saha BP (1995) Studies on the antiulcer activity of *Moringa oleifera* leaf extract on gastric ulcer models in rats. Phytother Res 9:463–465
Pari L, Kumar NA (2002) Hepatoprotective activity of *Moringa oleifera* on antitubercular drug-induced liver damage in rats. J Med Food 5:171–177
Prakash AO, Tewari PK, Shukla S, Mathur R, Tewati KK (1987) Postcoital antifertility effect of some medicinal plants in rats. Indian Drug 25:40–44
Prazuck T, Tall F, Nacro B, Rochereau A, Traore A, Sanou T, Malkin JE, Apaire-Marchais V, Masson D, Dublanchet A (1993) HIV infection and severe malnutrition: a clinical epidemiology study in Burkina Faso. AIDS 7:103–108
Pullakhandam R, Failla ML (2007) Micellarization and intestinal cell uptake of beta-carotene and lutein from drumstick (*Moringa oleifera*) leaves. J Med Food 10:252–257
Quisumbing E (1978) Medicinal plants of the Philippines. Katha Publishing Co., Inc., Quezon City, pp 346–349
Ramachandran C, Peter KV, Gopalakrishnan PK (1980) Drumstick (*Moringa oleifera*): a multipurpose Indian vegetable. Econ Bot 34:276–283

Rao CH, Hussain MT, Verma AR, Kumar N, Vijayakumar M, Reddy GD (2008) Evaluation of the analgesic and anti-inflammatory activity of *Moringa concanensis* tender fruits. Tradit Med 3:95–103

Rastogi T, Bhutda V, Moon K, Aswar KB, Khadabadi SS (2009) Comparative studies on anthelmintic activity of *Moringa oleifera* and *Vitex Negundo*. Asian J Res Chem 2:181–182

Ruckmani K, Davimani S, Jayakar B, Anandan R (1998a) Anti-ulcer activity of the alkali preparation of the root and fresh leaf juice of *Moringa oleifera* Lam. Anc Sci Life 17:220–223

Ruckmani K, Kavimani S, Anandan R, Jaykar B (1998b) Effect of *Moringa oleifera* Lam on paracetamol-induced hepatoxicity. Indian J Pharm Sci 60:33–35

Sairam TV (1999) Home remedies, Vol. II. A handbook of herbal cures for commons ailments. India Penguin, New Delhi, p 55

Shaw BP, P Jana (1982) Clinical assessment of Sigru (*Moringa oelifera* Lam) on Mutrakrichra (lower urinary tract infection) NAGARJUN 231–235

Shukla S, Mathur R, Prakash AO (1988a) Antifertility profile of the aqueous extract of *Moringa oleifera* roots. J Ethnopharmacol 22:51–62

Shukla S, Mathur R, Prakash AO (1988b) Biochemical and physiological alterations in female reproductive organs of cyclic rats treated with aqueous extract of *Moringa oleifera* Lam. Acta Eur Fertil 19:225–232

Shukla S, Mathur R, Prakash AO (1988c) Anti-implantation efficacy of *Moringa oleifera* Lam. and *Moringa concanensis* Nimmo in rats. Int J Crude Drug Res 26:29–32

Shukla S, Mathur R, Prakash AO (1988d) Antifertility profile of the aqueous extract of *Moringa oleifera* roots. J Ethnopharmacol 22:51–62

Siddhuraju P, Becker K (2003a) Antioxidant properties of various solvent extracts of total phenolic constituents from three different agro-climatic origins of drumstick tree (*Moringa oleifera* Lam.). J Agric Food Chem 15:2144–2155

Siddhuraju P, Becker K (2003b) Antioxidant properties of various solvent extracts of total phenolic constituents from three different agro climatic origins of drumstick tree (*Moringa oleifera* Lam.) leaves. J Agric Food Chem 51:2144–2155

Singh BN, Singh BR, Singh RL, Prakash D, Dhakarey R, Upadhyay G, Singh HB (2009) Oxidative DNA damage protective activity, antioxidant and anti-quorum sensing potentials of *Moringa oleifera*. Food Chem Toxicol 47:1109–1116

Somali MA, Bajnedi MA, Al-Faimani SS (1984) Chemical composition and characteristics of *Moringa peregrina* seeds and seed oil. J Am Oil Chem Soc 61:85–86

Sreelatha S, Padma PR (2009) Antioxidant activity and total phenolic content of *Moringa oleifera* leaves in two stages of maturity. Plant Foods Hum Nutr 64:303–311

Stohs SJ, Hartman MJ (2015) Review of the safety and efficacy of *Moringa oleifera*. Phytother Res 29:796–804

Sutar NG, Bonde CG, Patil VV, Narkhede SB, Patil AP, Kakade RT (2008) Analgesic activity of seeds of *Moringa oleifera* Lam. Int J Green Pharm 2:108–110

Talreja T (2010) Screening of crude extract of flavonoids of *Moringa oleifera* against bacteria and fungal pathogen. J Phytology 2:31–35

Tarafder CR (1983) Ethnogynecology in relation to plants: 2. Plants used for abortion. J Econ Taxon Bot 4:507–516

Thurber MD, Fahey JW (2009) Adoption of *Moringa oleifera* to combat under-nutrition viewed through the lens of the "diffusion of innovations" theory. Ecol Food Nutr 48:212–225

Verma KR, Mishra G, Singh P, Jha KK, Khosa RL (2011) Alpinia galangal- an important medicinal plant: a review. Der Pharm Sin 2:142–154

Zhang M, Zhao H, Wang T, Xie C, Zhang D, Huang Y, Wang X, Sheng J (2017) Solid-state fermentation of *Moringa oleifera* leaf meal using *Bacillus pumilus* CICC 10440. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 92:2083–2089. https://doi.org/10.1002/jctb.5203

Anticancer Mechanistic Insights of Epigallocatechin-3-Gallate, an Active Ingredient of Green Tea (*Camellia sinensis*)

Bilal Ahmad Mir, Saiema Rasool, Muneeb U. Rehman, Insha Amin, and Rayeesa Ali

Introduction

The natural compounds derived from plants have been used since immemorial times by human. The health-promoting effect of certain natural compounds has fascinated the human toward natural phytocompounds for prevention and treatment of diseases. Currently scientists are doing a great deal of research in exploring the natural compounds and their photochemistry for promoting human health. The beauty of natural compounds is that they have minimum toxicity and highly effective in therapeutic action. Green tea is one of the natural product derived from *Camellia sinensis* plant and is being consumed globally next to water. Green tea is known for its health-boosting effects since ancient times. The health-boosting effect of green tea is due to its rich photochemistry. Polyphenols in green tea are mainly responsible for its health-promoting effect. The health-boosting compounds present in green tea are catechins, and among catechins the epigallocatechin gallate (EGCG) is one of the most common and effective types of catechin in green tea. The green tea catechins inhibit the carcinogenesis by modulation of different cellular signaling pathways which are key for the promotion of tumors (Khan et al. 2006). The anticancer mechanism of EGCG has been investigated in vitro in different cell culture system

B. A. Mir · M. U. Rehman · I. Amin
Molecular Biology Lab, Faculty of Veterinary Sciences and Animal Husbandry, Division of Veterinary Biochemistry, Sheri Kashmir University of Agricultural Science and Technology (SKUAST-K), Srinagar, Jammu and Kashmir, India

S. Rasool (✉)
Forest Biotech Lab, Faculty of Forestry, Department of Forest Management, University Putra Malaysia, Serdang, Selangor, Malaysia

R. Ali
Faculty of Veterinary Sciences and Animal Husbandry, Division of Veterinary Pathology, Sheri Kashmir University of Agricultural Science and Technology (SKUAST-K), Srinagar, Jammu and Kashmir, India

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_5

(Yang and Wang 2011). This is an amazing area of research to explore the exact mechanism involved in anticancer effects of green tea catechins in animals and humans. It has been recently found that EGCG inhibited mammary tumor induced in mouse model (Yanaga et al. 2002). Another study reported that EGCG reduced tumor mass in breast cancer xenograft model (Mineva et al. 2013). These studies summarized the significant role of EGCG present in green tea in chemoprevention. This review summarizes the effects of green tea catechins in different cancer signaling pathways and metabolism. EGCG is the main concern of this review to evaluate the anticancer properties of this molecule which has diverse action in different tumorigenesis.

Green Tea and Its Composition

Tea is the common consumable agent globally which serves as tasty beverage and exerts its health-boosting effect instantly. Tea is being consumed in the different forms like some people prefer green tea, some black tea, and some milk-added tea. Tea is obtained from a specific plant known as *Camellia sinensis*. The green tea beverage exhibits significant health-promoting effects in humans (Cabrera et al. 2006). The green tea has complex chemical composition. It contains certain important phytocompounds like polyphenols, flavonoids, flavonols, and other compounds such as proteins, lipids, polysaccharides, and vitamins. Polyphenols including flavonoids and phenolic acid account for 30% of dry weight of green tea (Balentine et al. 1997). The catechins are the main flavonoids present in green tea. The major catechins present in green tea include epigallocatechin, epicatechin, epicatechin-3-gallate, and EGCG (Hastak et al. 2003a). 2.5% of caffeine is also present in green tea as an active compound which acts as a key molecule in the prevention of skin and lung carcinogenesis in different animal models (Yang et al. 2009).

Bioavailability and Biotransformation of Green Tea Catechins

The green tea catechins are less absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract (GIT) due to polyphenolic structures which form large hydration shell in hydrogen bonding. Oral administrations of green tea catechins have less than 0.2% bioavailability in animal models and humans (Lambert and Yang 2003). Although EGCG is believed to enter into the cells by passive diffusion, certain specific transporter proteins likeIA2 and IB3 are involved in its transportation (Roth et al. 2011). After the oral consumption of two cups of green tea, the plasma concentration of green tea catechins reaches up to 0.5 μM (Lee et al. 2002). The administration of higher oral doses of EGCG leads the peak plasma concentration of 2–9 and 7.5 μM in animal model and humans, respectively (Yang et al. 2008). Green tea catechins are mostly metabolized in the liver and intestine. The various metabolic transformations involved in

biotransformation of green tea catechins include glucuronide conjugation, methylation, sulfotransferase-mediated sulfation, and ring fission (Sang et al. 2011). After the absorption of green tea, catechins from GIT are delivered to the liver where higher concentration of metabolic enzymes like glucuronyltransferases (Strassburg et al. 1999) and sulfotransferases (Matsui and Homma 1994) is present which properly metabolizes them and finally releases them into the blood circulation system.

Anticancer Mechanism of Action of Green Tea

The therapeutic effect of green tea catechins for wide range of diseases including cancers has been reported by various researchers. The probable anticancer mechanism involved in green tea catechin supplementation is briefly described as follows and in Fig. 1.

1. Green tea prevents certain enzymes and proinflammatory cytokines like cyclooxygenase, lipoxygenases, and TNF-α and different interleukin pathways and lastly impedes the tumor promotion.

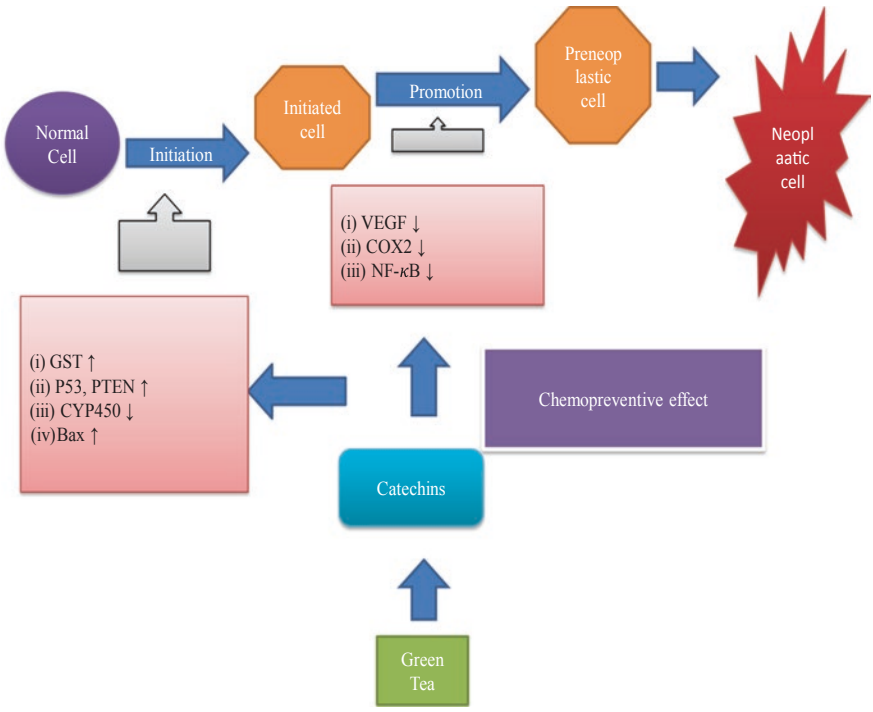


Fig. 1 Anticancer mechanism of green tea catechins

2. Green tea stimulates the p53 gene activation that is involved in tumor suppression and inhibits the activity of transcriptional factors such as NFκB.
3. The potent antioxidant effect of green tea leads to inhibition of carcinogenesis development by scavenging free radicals and neutralization of oxidants (Osada et al. 2001).
4. The key anticancer mechanism involved in supplementation of green tea catechins is the modulation of certain specific gene activity which is involved in promotion, development, and progression of carcinogenesis.

Anticancer Effect of Green Tea via Modulation of Signaling Pathway

Cancer is uncontrolled growth of cells and is a multifactorial imperfection including genetic alterations, metabolic alterations, and physical alterations. The currently available anticancer allopathic drugs are full of side effects, costly, and less effective. The plant-derived natural compounds have potent anticancer effects and are economical and easily available, and the most important thing is that they have minimum side effects. Various natural compounds derived from plants are showing anticancer property via modulation of different cellular signaling pathways (Rahmani et al. 2014). The anticancer effect of green tea by modulation of certain cell signaling and metabolic pathways is discussed as under.

Effects of Green Tea Catechins on Tumor Suppressor and Proliferator Gene Modulation

Tumor suppressor gene is responsible for regulation and suppression of genes involved in tumorigenesis. Mutation or inactivation of tumor suppressor gene leads to the development of tumor. Green tea plays a noteworthy role in p53 gene activation. The rate of transcription and acetylation activity involved in p53 gene is augmented by EGCG and GTP by impeding class 1 deacetylase activity (Thakur et al. 2012a). One more study reported that EGCG present in green tea leads to elimination of cancer cells by promoting apoptosis through inducing p53 gene-dependent pathways of apoptosis (Hastak et al. 2003a). It has been studied that EGCG the major constituent of green tea strongly activates p53 and Bax protein expression in breast cancer cells (Roy et al. 2005). Other studies revealed that EGCG at 10–20 μmol/L leads to p53-dependent programmed cell death of JB6 cells by mitochondrial dysfunction pathway. Epigallocatechin-3-gallate is also causing alteration in p16 methylation pattern from the methylated state to unmethylated state due to depletion of folic acid. Green tea catechins inhibit the growth of melanomas by significant suppression of histone deacetylase (HDAC) genes and augmentation of

histone acetyltransferase (HAT) activity (Prasad and Santosh 2015). In human colorectal cancer, the downregulation of transcriptional activity of the proliferative gene NUDT6 is mediated by supplementation of green tea catechins (Sukhthankar et al. 2010).

Effects of Green Tea Catechins on Proteasome Inhibitory Activity

Proteasome targeting has become a famous approach in the treatment of different carcinomas as most of the intracellular tumor-associated proteins are tarnished by ubiquitin proteasome pathways (Ciechanover et al. 2000). Proteasome-mediated protein degradation not only serves as wastebin for useless and aged proteins but also controls the cellular signaling pathways by activation or inhibition of cell cycle, apoptosis, and transcription factors (Naujokat and Hoffmann 2002), since cancer cell proliferation and resistance of cancer cell against anticancer drugs essentially depend on proteasome activity (Hideshima et al. 2001). Therefore pathways mediated by proteasomal degradation are being considered as effective targets for carcinogenesis promotion. Commonly used proteasome inhibitor is imatinib which mediates its anticancer action by inhibition of proteasome (Kane et al. 2006). EGCG has been reported to inhibit chymotrypsin activity of proteasome (Nam et al. 2001). EGCG has potential to inhibit the proteasome of whole cell resulting in accumulation of the higher concentration of substrates of proteasome like p27 and IκB-α which in turn arrest the cell growth in G phase (Yang and Wang 2011). EGCG does not affect the proteasome activity of normal cells, but it only alters proteasomal activity in cancerous cells (Kuhn et al. 2005). Therefore, the anticancerous effect of green tea is attributed to its ability to inhibit the proteasomal activity by its phytocompound EGCG which is going to act as an effective anticancer agent in the future.

Effects of Green Tea Catechins on Prolylcis/Trans Isomerase (Pin1) Modulation

Peptidyl prolyl cis/trans isomerase (Pin1) is responsible for isomerization of the peptide bond of some residues of specific phosphorylated serine or threonine amino acids and preceding the amino acid proline in various proteins which are specifically involved in various cellular functions including transcription, mitosis, differentiation, and response to the DNA damage (Wulf et al. 2005). Epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG) is one of the most important and active anticancer compounds present in green tea and exhibits its anticancer effect by modulation of different cell signaling pathways. Pin1 plays an essential role in complete activation of various cellular signal transduction pathways including NF-κB (Lee et al.

2010), AP-1 (Dong et al. 1997), and β-catenin (Ryo et al. 2001). Pin1 exhibits its key role in various signaling pathways of oncogenesis (Yang and Wang 1993) and is significantly upregulated in different tumors including breast (Wulf et al. 2001), colorectal (Kim et al. 2005), prostate (Ayala et al. 2003), and thyroid (Nakashima et al. 2004). Pin1 inhibition in tumor cells exerts apoptosis and inhibits their phenotypic transformation (Ryo et al. 2002). It has been reported that EGCG inhibits the activation of HER-2/neu activation signal downstreaming in certain cancer cells including head and breast (Masuda et al. 2003). Neu/ras oncogenic signaling is downstreamed by Pin1 expression (Wulf et al. 2004). Therefore, we summarized that EGCG may act directly to target Pin1 in order to inhibit the lethal progression of oncogenic signaling pathways and neoplastic cell transformation. The effective inhibitors of Pin1 may acts as valuable agents for cancer development in future.

Effect of Green Tea Catechins on Apoptosis

Apoptosis is a programmed cell death or physiological death of cells. However there is imbalance between cell division and cell death in cancer cells. Cancer cells show resistance against apoptosis. Epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG) has been reported to reduce the tumor proliferation by the promoting apoptotic pathways in cancer cells by downregulation of NFκB activity which in turn stimulates cell for apoptosis (Yang and Wang 1993). It has been recently studied that polyphenols present in green tea enhance the transcriptional activity of p21/waf1 and Bax genes responsible for apoptosis and also accelerate the proteasomal degradation of class HDACs and prompt the Histone H3 acetylation which in turn leads to inhibition of cell cycle and apoptosis in the prostate cancer cells (Thakur et al. 2012b). EGCG has been reported to induce apoptosis of cancer cell by blocking cell division at G1 phase subsequently followed by enhanced expression of P53 tumor suppressor gene and upregulation of proapoptotic proteins (Kuo and Lin 2003). Other studies also reported that EGCG shows dose- and time-dependent inhibition in proliferation of cancer cells and effective apoptotic induction in cancer cells (Qin et al. 2007). EGCG has exerted its antiapoptotic effect in human hepatocellular cancer cells but not in normal hepatocytes by increasing the membrane potential of mitochondrial membrane and arresting of cell cycle at G0/G1 phase, increased expression of caspase-3, and downregulation of NFκB (Zhang et al. 2015) (Fig. 2).

Effect of Green Tea Catechins on Angiogenesis

Angiogenesis is the recruitment of new blood vessels to the tumor cells in order to provide efficient nutrition and route to enter the blood circulation for metastasis. The state of vascularity of tumor indicates its potential of metastasis. Tumors with

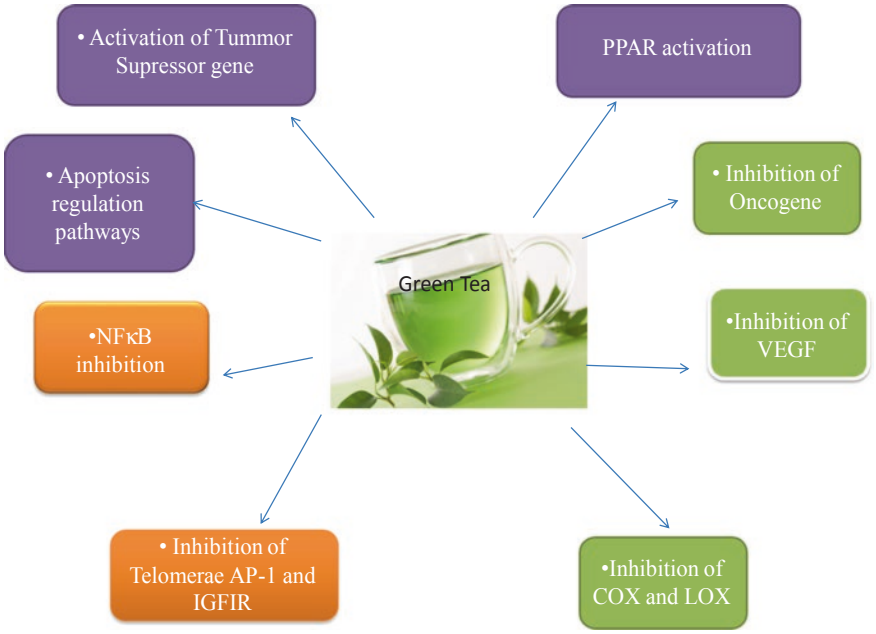


Fig. 2 Modulation of various pathways involved in initiation, promotion, and progression of carcinogenesis by green tea catechins

higher degree of vascularity are their metastatic potential. Angiogenesis inhibition plays a significant role in tumor prevention and its metastasis. Studies have reported that epigallocatechin-3-gallate has strong ability to inhibit vascularity and proliferation of tumor in nude mice (Jung et al. 2001). EGCG has also been reported to suppress the growth, angiogenesis, and cancer cell proliferation of breast tumor by inhibiting redox-sensitive NFκB pathways. Previously it was reported that EGCG inhibits angiogenesis process by blocking Erk-1 signaling pathways and activation of Erk-2 and VEGF expression (Jung et al. 2001). FOXO transcriptional factor plays a major role in tissue homeostasis and in certain lethal disease like cancer and diabetes. EGCG inhibits the angiogenesis of tumor cells by increasing the transcriptional activity of FOXO (Shankar et al. 2008).

Effect of Green Tea Catechins on NFκB

NFκB is a redox-sensitive nuclear transcription factor present mainly in cytoplasm of cell and is transported to nucleus upon activation due to cellular responses to certain stimuli such as free radicals, stress, and bacterial and viral antigens. NFκB in cytoplasm is regulated in inactivated state by IκB (inhibitory protein). NFκB activation results in increased expression of antiapoptotic genes and forces the cell

to take away the physiological mechanism of cell death and triggers the release of inflammatory cytokines (TNF-α, IL1, IL6, and IL8) (Guttridge et al. 1999). NFκB signaling facilitates the metastasis of cancer cell by regulating epithelial to mesenchymal transition of cells increasing the activity of metalloproteinases which in turn triggers the weakening of extracellular matrix for an erosion of cancer cells (Huber et al. 2004). Finally NFκB promotes the tumor proliferation by increasing vascularity of tumors through upregulation of VEGF (vascular endothelial growth factor) and its respective receptors (Xie et al. 2010). EGCG which is the major polyphenolic constituent of green tea has been reported to suppress the transcriptional activity of gene encoding NFκB and accompanied by reduction in antiapoptotic protein (Bcl-2) levels and augmentation of Bax proteins via P53 gene activation (Kedar et al. 2003). Reactive oxygen species play a key role in activation of NFκB signaling pathways, and inhibition of the NFκB activation by EGCG supplementation is attributed to its potent antioxidant and free radical scavenging activity (Lee et al. 2004). Another study reported that EGCG has potent ability in inhibiting the overexpression of HIF-1α and NFκB in breast cancer cells (Gu et al. 2013).

Effect of Green Tea Catechins on Androgen Receptors

In different kinds of tumors, it has been seen that there is overexpression of androgen receptors. Natural compound having effective chemopreventive properties has been found to downregulate the cancer-triggering genes including suppression of androgen. EGCG in green tea have been found to suppress proliferation of cells, reduction in expression of prostate-specific antigen (PSA), and transcriptional activity of androgen receptors in various types of cell lines (Chuu et al. 2009a). Androgen-regulated PSA have been found to be inhibited by EGCG.

Effect of Green Tea Catechins on Telomerase

Telomeres are specific structural entity mostly found at the end of chromosomes. Telomeres play a significant role in aging, and their overexpression has been found in most of cancers. It has been found that green tea is quite effective in management of telomerase activity and inhibits the pathogenesis of tumor formation. Epigallocatechin in green tea has been found to reduce 50–60% of telomerase activity in drug-sensitive and drug-resistant lung cancer cell line incubated for 24 h (Sadava et al. 2007). Earlier studies reported that epigallocatechin inhibits the telomerase activity in tumor-inducing human papillomavirus type 18- (HPV 18-), certain immortalized endocervical cell (HEN-18), and cells of ectocervical cell line (HEC-18) (Yokoyama et al. 2004). The beauty of EGCG lies in its strong ability in inhibiting telomerase activity among different catechins (Naasani et al. 1998).

Effect of Green Tea Catechins on Wnt Signaling

The canonical Wnt signaling pathway leads to the accumulation of β-catenin inside cytoplasm and facilitates its translocation into the nucleus to activate transcriptional activity of certain proto-oncogenes (Cyclin D1, Cmyc, and COX-2) and transcription factors (Ju et al. 2005). Supplementation of EGCG in Apcmin/+ mice has inhibited the Wnt signaling (Ju et al. 2005). Nuclear levels of β-catenin in human colorectal cell line were significantly reduced following the treatment with EGCG (Singh and Katiyar 2013). The phosphorylation of β-catenin is subsequently followed by downregulation of prostaglandins (PGE-2) which induced higher levels of MMP2 and MMP9 following the treatment of cancer cells with EGCG (Singh and Katiyar 2013). EGCG was reported to inhibit the tumorigenesis in hepatocytes by inhibiting the Wnt signaling pathway (Godeke et al. 2013).

Effect of Green Tea Catechins on MicroRNA

MicroRNA are noncoding, small endogenous RNAs that regulate the expression and stability of genes. The dysregulation of miRNA affects the hallmarks of carcinogenesis such as increased proliferative signaling, evasion of growth suppressors, angiogenesis, and metastasis of cancer cells (Bartel 2009). EGCG supplementation in human hepatocellular leads to the alteration in miRNA levels which in turn triggered the changes in different cancer signaling pathways. EGCG in human HepG2 cancer cells leads to the upregulation of miR-16 which in turn facilitated apoptosis by downregulation of bcl-2 proteins (Tsang and Kwok 2010). Recently it was reported that EGCG supplementation has upregulated the miR-16 expression in breast cancer cell line 4TI (Jang et al. 2013). EGCG also upregulated the expression of miR-210 in human and animal lung cancer cells which in turn prevents the proteasomal degradation of HIF-1α (Wang et al. 2011).

Effect of Green Tea Catechins on Different Carcinomas

Effect of Green Tea Catechins on Chronic Myeloid Leukemia

Chronic myeloid leukemia (CML) is nowadays a common hematopoietic cancer characterized by uncontrolled proliferation of myeloid cells. Millions of people around the world are suffering from this devastating and dreadful disease. The currently used drugs against the CML are tyrosine kinase inhibitors like imatinib. BCR-ABL tyrosine kinase acts as the novel molecular target in CML therapy (Druker et al. 2001). But it has been observed that some CML patients show low sensitivity and low therapeutic response for tyrosine kinase inhibitors (Perl and

Carroll 2011). These studies indicate the need of finding new and effective therapeutic interventions in CML. EGCG in green tea have been recently reported as an effective therapeutic agent against CML. The mechanism responsible for inhibiting myeloid cell proliferation is that EGCG induces clustering of lipid rafts in human CML cells and cell death through the sGC/ASM pathway (Huang et al. 2015).

Effect of Green Tea Catechins on Breast Cancer

Breast cancer is one of the major malignancies and fatal diseases in women around the world. The pathogenesis of breast cancer is a complicated process which finally results uncontrolled proliferation of cells due to loss of regulatory mechanism. It has been reported that small set of specialized cells known as cancer stem cells (CSC) are responsible for initiating tumorigenesis within tumor (Rathone and Wang 2013). These cells are self-differentiating and resistant to chemotherapy. The effective resistance mechanism of CSC cells against the conventional chemotherapy forces the researchers to find a novel and effective agent against CSC in breast cancer patients. The biomolecule commonly known as signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (STAT3) plays a major role in maintaining the self-renewal and resistance property of CSC. Constant activation of STAT3 in different human malignancies leads to profound tumorigenesis and very weak prognosis (Turkson and Jove 2000). Current studies have observed that STAT3 activation plays a key role in breast carcinogenesis (Azare et al. 2011). EGCG in green tea have been recently found as an effective compound to reduce CSC cells in breast carcinogenesis by inhibiting STAT3 phosphorylation which in turn inhibited the translocation of STAT3 in nucleus. As a result, the gene expression responsible for tumorigenesis of CSC cells is downregulated. Thus EGCG reduced the CSC cells in breast cancer by modulating STAT3 pathways (Chung and Vadgama 2015).

Effect of Green Tea Catechins on Digestive Tract Carcinomas

Digestive tract like the esophagus, stomach, and intestine is susceptible to tumorigenesis, and the gastric and colon cancers are common nowadays globally. The lining of esophagus and stomach and intestine are quite often exposed to different kinds of carcinogenic compounds. Green tea catechin supplementation prevents tumorigenesis in the intestine of rats by elevating the E-cadherin proteins in the plasma membrane and subsequently decreasing the levels of c-Myc, nuclear β-catenin, and phospho-AKT (Ju et al. 2005). The aberrant crypt foci (ACF) formation in intestine induced by azoxymethane (AOM) in mice was reversed by supplementation of green tea extract in mice (Ju et al. 2003). Shimadazo et al. reported that green tea catechins have strong potential to inhibit the ACF formation in the colonic mucosa by inhibiting the insulin growth factor (IGF) signaling pathway (Shimizu

et al. 2008a). Liver cancer is the sixth most commonly occurring carcinoma and the second leading cause of death due to tumors all over the world (Ferlay et al. 2015). EGCG of green tea has been reported to have the protective effect against the liver carcinogenesis (Sakata et al. 2004).

Effect of Green Tea Catechins on Prostate Cancer

Prostate cancer is the most common cause of mortality in males in the USA. This cancer is taking the life of more than 29 000 people annually. Green tea catechins inhibited the propagation of prostate cancer cells and expression of prostate-specific antigen (PSA) (Chuu et al. 2009b). It was reported that catechins of green tea promote DNA methylation and acetylation of histone proteins in cancer cells and inhibit their progression (Balasubramanian et al. 2010). Green tea catechins have been reported to inhibit the development of prostate adenocarcinoma in mice by increasing the apoptosis, reducing the IGF1 levels, and restoring the levels of IGF-binding protein-3 (Gupta et al. 2001; Adhami et al. 2004). The suppression of tumor growth in prostate cells by catechins of green tea is also associated with the alleviating levels of phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K) phosphorylated forms of AKT and ERK1/2 (Adhami et al. 2004).

Effect of Green Tea Catechins on Cervical Cancers

Cervical cancer is the leading and second most common cause of death in women. EGCG of green tea exerts inhibitory effect on cervical cancer proliferation. Green tea catechins promote the apoptosis of cervical cancer cells by markedly enhancing the expression of P53 and P21 genes and reducing the expression of HPV-E7 proteins (Zou et al. 2010; Singh et al. 2010). The proliferation of cancer cells is inhibited by green tea catechins through amplification of G-2 phase in mitotic cell cycle. The main mechanism behind the apoptosis of cervical cancer cells is the profound reduction in membrane potential of mitochondria and augmentation of phosphatidylserine residues of mitochondrial membrane (Al-Hazzani and Alshatwi 2011).

Synergistic Anticancer Activity of Green Tea Catechins with Different Allopathic Anticancer Drugs

It has been observed that EGCG in combination with various drugs has shown positive correlation in countering the tumorigenesis of different kinds of tumors both in in vivo and in vitro studies. EGCG combined with sulindac (NASID) increased the

Table 1 List of antitumor agents that have exhibited synergistic anticancer therapeutic effects with EGCG

Cancerous tissue	Anticancer agent used in experiment	References
Head, neck, and lung	Curcumin celecoxib, luteolin erlotinib, 5-fluorouracil, tamoxifen sulindac	(Qiao et al. 2011a; Stearns et al. 2010)
Breast	Raloxifene, curcumin, resveratrol, tocotrienol, 4-hydroxytamoxifen, trichostatin A, tamoxifen	(Liang et al. 2010a; Farabegoli et al. 2010a)
Prostate	Docetaxel, bortezomib, sulforaphane, resveratrol, doxorubicin, genistein, NS398 quercetin, paclitaxel	(Chuu et al. 2009b; Siddiqui et al. 2011)
Ovaries	Sulforaphane, cisplatin, trans-palladiums	(Chan et al. 2006)
Leukemia	Curcumin, benzyl isothiocyanate, cytosine, celastrol, arabinoside, H_2O_2	(Lee et al. 2011)
Pancreas	TRAIL, celecoxib, thymoquinone	(Tang et al. 2012)
Colon	Sulforaphane, sodium butyrate	(Qiao et al. 2011b)

expression of growth arrest and DNA damage-inducible gene 153 by 12 times as compared to the alone treatment with EGCG (Fujiki et al. 2002). Similarly in case of intestinal neoplasia of mice, EGCG in combination with sulindac showed prominent reduction in tumor growth from 72.3 to 32%, whereas EGCG alone was found to be less effective (Suganuma et al. 2001). Paclitaxel and EGCG combination completely eradicated human prostate cancer development in xenograft mouse model (Stearns and Wang 2011a). Tables 1 and 2 show the combinations of compounds which show synergistic action with EGCG against various tumors.

Clinical Trials

The limited data is available for anticancer effects of green tea catechins in human trials. Human trials are going on globally by researchers to study the chemopreventive effects of EGCG in humans. Although the EGCG and other catechins of green tea are not available in purified form in market, the green tea is globally available which is quite economical and can be administered orally (Sartippour et al. 2002). EGCG has exhibited potent clinical results as compared to traditional anticancer drugs. Green tea catechins target the specific biochemical and molecular signaling pathways involved in tumor cell proliferation (Fujiki et al. 1999). The currently used conventional anticancer drugs exert their toxic insults, but the EGCG supplementation in clinical trials till date was reported to have acceptable safety outline (Hastak et al. 2003b). It was reported in prospective cohort study of 8000 individuals that daily supplementation of green tea resulted delayed cancer progression. The delivery of EGCG in capsulated forms (200 mg p.o.) for 12 weeks improved the health status of patients suffering from human papilloma virus (Ahn et al. 2003). It has recently been reported first time that 90% of prostate cancer prevention can be obtained by green tea catechins supplementation in persons which are susceptible to

Table 2 Modulation of anticancer drug activity by epigallocatechin-3-gallate in experimental studies

Drug name	Type of cancer	Mechanism of action	Effects of combination of drugs with EGCG	Events induced by EGCG
Doxorubicin (Liang et al. 2010b) 5-fluorouracil5 Tamoxifen (Stearns et al. 2010)	Prostate cancer (Stearns et al. 2010) Colon cancer Bladder cancer Stomach cancer Chemo-resistant Hepatocellular Carcinoma	Modification in pharmacokinetics of drug	Bioavailability of anticancer drug consumed orally is increased The concentration of anticancer drug in tumor cells is enhanced Acceleration of chemo sensitization to cancer cells	Retention of anticancer drug by blocking its efflux (Kuo and Lin 2003) Modification in enzyme activity involved in drug metabolism Reduction in activity of YP-gP efflux pump of tumor cells (Liang et al. 2010b; Farabegoli et al. 2010b) Enhanced upregulation of multidrug resistance gene 1 (MDR1) (Stearns et al. 2010) Decrease in expression of BCRP
Tamoxifen (Farabegoli et al. 2010b) TSA (Li et al. 2010)		Binding and interaction with hormone receptor complex	Proliferation of cancer cells responsive to estrogen is decreased Cancer cells are sensitized to anticancer drugs through steroid receptors Proliferation of prostate cancer cells are inhibited	Leads to binding of Estrogen receptors (Tu et al. 2011) Downregulation of androgen binding in prostate cancer cells (Chuu et al. 2009c)
Taxane (Stearns and Wang 2011b) Gemcitabine Vorinostat SU-541611 Celecoxib13	Prostate cancer (Stearns and Wang 2011b) Melanoma (Nihal et al. 2010) Neuroblastoma (Mohan et al. 2011) Pancreas Urothelial carcinoma (Huang et al. 2012)	Alteration in signaling of cell cycle, angiogenesis, and apoptosis	Arrest of cell cycle and induction of apoptosis Inhibition of tumor cell growth Inhibition of angiogenesis by synergistic action blocked the metastasis of tumor cells	Acceleration in activity of proapoptotic genes (Nihal et al. 2010) Modification in activity of bcl_2 proteins Alteration in signaling pathways involved in cell cycle and apoptosis pathways (Mohan et al. 2011) Reduction in proteins that trigger angiogenesis and metastasis

develop prostate cancer (Bettuzzi et al. 2006). Another study revealed that human colorectal cancers can be prevented significantly by daily consumption of green tea (Shimizu et al. 2008b).

Conclusion

This chapter summarizes the mechanisms of green tea catechins in inhibiting the proliferation of different tumors. The multiple mechanisms include potent scavenging free radical ability, modulation of different signaling pathways, methylation, DNA damage, and enhancement of activity of conventional anticancer drugs through synergistic action. The anticancer properties of green tea catechins are attributed to its prooxidant action which directly interacts with proteins and phospholipids of membrane and regulates the signal transduction pathways, activation of caspases, inhibition of transcriptional factors activity, and release of cytochrome c (Kim et al. 2014). The beauty of EGCG is that it induces apoptosis only in cancer cell lines but not in normal cells. Limited human trials have been conducted to investigate the anticancer action of EGCG and other catechins of green tea, but in animal models, its potent anticancer action is well documented. Therefore the catechins of green tea generally and EGCG in particular could be developed as an advanced and future anticancer drugs. Taking abovementioned anticancer potential of green tea into account, it is highly advisable to have green tea consumption regularly in our diets.

References

Adhami VM, Siddiqui IA, Ahmad N, Gupta S, Mukhtar H (2004) Oral consumption of green tea polyphenols inhibits insulin-like growth factor-I-induced signaling in an autochthonous mouse model of prostate cancer. Cancer Res 64:8715–8722

Ahn WS, Yoo J, Huh SW, Kim CK, Lee JM, Namkoong SE et al (2003) Protective effects of green tea extracts (polyphenon E and EGCG) on human cervical lesions. Eur J Cancer Prev 12:383–390

Al-Hazzani AA, Alshatwi AA (2011) Catechin hydrate inhibits proliferation and mediates apoptosis of SiHa human cervical cancer cells. Food Chem Toxicol 49:3281–3265

Ayala G, Wang D, Wulf G, Frolov A, Li R et al (2003) The prolyl isomerase Pin1 is a novel prognostic marker in human prostate cancer. Cancer Res 63:6244–6251

Azare J, Doane A, Leslie K, Chang Q, Berishaj M, Nnoli J, Mark K, Al-Ahmadie H, Gerald W, Hassimi M, Viale A, Stracke M, Lyden D, Bromberg J (2011) STAT3 mediates expression of autotaxin in breast cancer. PLoS One 6:e27861

Balasubramanian S, Adhikary G, Eckert RL (2010) The Bmi-1 polycomb protein antagonizes the (−)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate-dependent suppression of skin cancer cell survival. Carcinogenesis 31:496–503

Balentine DA, Wiseman SA, Bouwens LCM (1997) The chemistry of tea flavonoids. Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr 37:693–704

Bartel DP (2009) MicroRNAs: target recognition and regulatory functions. Cell 136:215–233

Bettuzzi S, Brausi M, Rizzi F, Castagnetti G, Peracchia G, Corti A (2006) Chemoprevention of human prostate cancer by oral administration of green tea catechins in volunteers with high grade prostate intraepithelial neoplasia: a preliminary report from a one-year proof-of-principle study. Cancer Res 66:1234–1240

Cabrera C, Artacho R, Giménez R (2006) Beneficial effects of green tea: a review. J Am Coll Nutr 25:79–99

Chan MM, Soprano KJ, Weinstein K, Fong D (2006) Epigallocatechin-3-gallate delivers hydrogen peroxide to induce death of ovarian cancer cells and enhances their cisplatin susceptibility. J Cell Physiol 207:389–396

Chung SS, Vadgama JV (2015) Curcumin and Epigallocatechin Gallate inhibit the Cancer stem cell phenotype *via* Down-regulation of STAT3–NFκBSignaling. Anticancer Res 35:39–46

Chuu CP, Chen RY, Kokontis JM, Hiipakka RA, Liao S (2009a) Suppression of androgen receptor signaling and prostate specific antigen expression by (−)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate in different progression stages of LNCaP prostate cancer cells. Cancer Lett 275:86–92

Chuu CP, Chen RY, Kokontis JM, Hiipakka RA, Liao S (2009b) Suppression of androgen receptor signaling and prostate specific antigen expression by (−)- epigallocatechin-3-gallate in different progression stages of LNCaP prostate cancer cells. Cancer Lett 275:86–92

Chuu CP, Chen RY, Kokontis JM, Hiipakka R (2009c) A, and Liao S: suppression of androgen receptor signaling and prostate specific antigen expression by (−)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate in different progression stages of LNCaP prostate cancer cells. Cancer Lett 275:86–92

Ciechanover A, Orian A, Schwartz AL (2000) Ubiquitin-mediated proteolysis: biological regulation *via* destruction. BioEssays 22:442–451

Dong Z, Ma W, Huang C, Yang CS (1997) Inhibition of tumor promoter-induced activator protein 1 activation and cell transformation by tea polyphenols, (−)-epigallocatechin gallate, and theaflavins. Cancer Res 57:14–19

Druker BJ, Talpaz M, Resta DJ, Peng B, Buchdunger E et al (2001) Efficacy and safety of a specific inhibitor of the BCR-ABL tyrosine kinase in chronic myeloid leukemia. N Engl J Med 344:1031–1037

Farabegoli F, Papi A, Bartolini G, Ostan R, Orlandi M (2010a) ()-Epigallocatechin-3- gallate down-regulates Pg-P and BCRP in a tamoxifen resistant MCF-7 cell line. Phytomedicine 17:356–362

Farabegoli F, Papi A, Bartolini G, Ostan R, Orlandi M (2010b) Epigallocatechin-3- gallate down-regulates Pg-P and BCRP in a tamoxifen resistant MCF-7 cell line. Phytomedicine 17:356–362

Ferlay J, Soerjomataram I, Dikshit R, Eser S, Mathers C, Rebelo M et al (2015) Cancer incidence and mortality worldwide: sources, methods and major patterns in GLOBOCAN 2012. Int J Cancer 136:359–386

Fujiki H, Suganuma M, Okabe S, Sueoka E, Suga K, Imai K et al (1999) Mechanistic findings of green tea as cancer preventive for humans. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 220:225–229

Fujiki H, Suganuma M, Imai K, Nakachi K (2002) Green tea: cancer preventive beverage and/or drug. Cancer Lett 188:9–13

Godeke J, Maier S, Eichenmuller M, Muller-Hocker J, von Schweinitz D, Kappler R (2013) Epigallocatechin-3-gallate inhibits hepatoblastoma growth by reactivating the Wnt inhibitor SFRP1. Nutr Cancer 65:1200–1207

Gu JW, Makey KLK, Tucker B et al (2013) EGCG, a major green tea catechin suppresses breast tumor angiogenesis and growth via inhibiting the activation of HIF-1 and NF B, and VEGF expression. Vasc Cell 6:42–51

Gupta K, Hastak N, Ahmad JS, Lewin H (2001) Mukhtar, inhibition of prostate carcinogenesis in TRAMP mice by oral infusion of green tea polyphenols. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 98:10350–10355

Guttridge DC, Albanese C, Reuther JY, Pestell RG, Baldwin AS (1999) NF-kappaB controls cell growth and differentiation through transcriptional regulation of cyclin D1. Mol Cell Biol 19:5785–5799

Hastak K, Gupta S, Ahmad N, Agarwal MK, Agarwal ML et al (2003a) Role of p53 and NF- B in epigallocatechin- 3-gallate-induced apoptosis of LNCaP cells. Oncogene 22:4851–4859

Hastak K, Gupta S, Ahmad N, Agarwal MK, Agarwal ML, Mukhtar H (2003b) Role of p53 and NFkappaB in epigallocatechin-3-gallate-induced apoptosis of LNCaP cells. Oncogene 22:4851–4859

Hideshima T, Richardson P, Chauhan D, Palombella VJ, Elliott PJ, Adams J, Anderson KC (2001) The proteasome inhibitor PS-341 inhibits growth, induces apoptosis, and overcomes drug resistance in human multiple myeloma cells. Cancer Res 61:3071–3086

Huang KH, Kuo KL, Chen SC, WengTI CYT, Tsai YC et al (2012) Downregulation of glucose-regulated protein (GRP) 78 potentiates cytotoxic effect of celecoxib in human urothelial carcinoma cells. PLoS One 7:33615

Huang Y, MotofumiKumazoe JB, Yamada S, Takai M, Hidaka S, Yamashita S, Kim Y, Won YS, Murata M, Tsukamoto S, Tachibana H (2015) Green tea polyphenol epigallocatechin-*O*-gallate induces cell death by acid sphingomyelinase activation in chronic myeloid leukemia cells. Oncol Rep 34:1162–1168

Huber MA, Azoitei N, Baumann B, Grünert S, Sommer A, Pehamberger H, Kraut N, Beug H, Wirth T (2004) NF-κB is essential for epithelial-mesenchymal transition and metastasis in a model of breast cancer progression. J Clin Investig 114:569–581

Jang JY, Lee JK, Jeon YK, Kim CW (2013) Exosome derived from epigallocatechin gallate treated breast cancer cells suppresses tumor growth by inhibiting tumor associated macrophage infiltration and M2 polarization. BMC Cancer 13:421–429

Ju J, Liu Y, Hong J, Huang MT, Conney AH, Yang CS (2003) Effects of green tea and high-fat diet on arachidonic acid metabolism and aberrant crypt foci formation in an azoxymethane-induced colon carcinogenesis mouse model, Nutr. Cancer 46:172–178

Ju J, Hong J, Zhou JN, Pan Z, Bose M, Liao J et al (2005) Inhibition of intestinal tumorigenesis in Apcmin/+mice by (−)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate, the major catechin in green tea. Cancer Res 65:10623–10631

Jung YD, Kim MS, Shin BA et al (2001) EGCG, a major component of green tea, inhibits tumour growth by inhibiting VEGF induction in human colon carcinoma cells. Br J Cancer 84:844–850

Kane RC, Farrell AT, Sridhara R, Pazdur R (2006) United States food and drug administration approval summary: bortezomib for the treatment of progressive multiple myeloma after one prior therapy. Clin Cancer Res 12:2955–2960

Kedar H, Sanjay G, Nihal MKA, Munna LA, Mukhtar H (2003) Role of p53 and NF-B in epigallocatechin-3-gallate-induced apoptosis of LNCaP cells. Oncogene 22:4851–4859

Khan N, Afaq F, Saleem M, Ahmad N, Mukhtar H (2006) Targeting multiple signaling pathways by green tea polyphenol (−)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate. Cancer Res 66:2500–2505

Kim CJ, Cho YG, Park YG, Nam SW, Kim SY et al (2005) Pin1 overexpression in colorectal cancer and its correlation with aberrant beta-catenin expression. World J Gastroenterol 11:5006–5009

Kim HS, Quon MJ, Kim JA (2014) New insights into the mechanisms of polyphenols beyond antioxidant properties; lessons from the green tea, epigallocatechin 3-gallate. Redox Biol 2:187–195

Kuhn DJ, Lam WH, Kazi A, Daniel KG, Song S, Chow LM, Chan TH, Dou QP (2005) Synthetic peracetate tea polyphenols as potent proteasome inhibitors and apoptosis inducers in human cancer cells. Front Biosci 10:1010–1023

Kuo PL, Lin CC (2003) Green tea constituent ()-epigallocatechin- 3-gallate inhibits Hep G2 cell proliferation and induces apoptosis through p53-dependent and Fas-mediated pathways. J Biomed Sci 10:219–227

Lambert JD, Yang CS (2003) Mechanisms of cancer prevention by tea constituents. J Nutr 133:326–333

Lee MJ, Maliakal P, Chen L, Meng X, Bondoc FY, Prabhu S et al (2002) Pharmacokinetics of tea catechins after ingestion of green tea and (−)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate by humans: formation of different metabolites and individual variability. Cancer Epidemiol Biomark Prev 11:1025–1032

Lee KM, Yeo M, Choue JS, Jin JH, Park SJ, Cheong JY et al (2004) Protective mechanism of epigallocatechin-3-gallate against helicobacter pylori-induced gastric epithelial cytotoxicity via the blockage of TLR-4 signaling. Helicobacter 9:632–642

Lee JH, Jin H, Shim HE, Kim HN, Ha H et al (2010) Epigallocatechin-3-gallate inhibits osteoclastogenesis by down-regulating c-Fos expression and suppressing the nuclear factor-kappaB signal. Mol Pharmacol 77:17–25

Lee TC, Cheng IC, Shue JJ, Wang TC (2011) Cytotoxicity of arsenic trioxide is enhanced by () epigallocatechin-3-gallate via suppression of ferritin in cancer cells. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 250(1):69–77

Li Y, Yuan YY, Meeran SM, Tollefsbol TO (2010) Synergistic epigenetic reactivation of estrogen receptor-alpha (ERalpha) by combined green tea polyphenol and histone deacetylase inhibitor in ERalpha-negative breast cancer cells. Mol Cancer 9:274–279

Liang G, Tang A, Lin X, Li L, Zhang S, Huang Z et al (2010a) Green tea catechins augment the antitumor activity of doxorubicin in an in vivo mouse model for chemoresistant liver cancer. Int J Oncol 371:111–123

Liang G, Tang A, Lin X, Li L, Zhang S, Huang Z et al (2010b) Green tea catechins augment the antitumor activity of doxorubicin in an in vivo mouse model for chemoresistant liver cancer. Int J Oncol 31:11–23

Masuda M, Suzui M, Lim JT, Weinstein IB (2003) Epigallocatechin-3-gallate inhibits activation of HER-2/neu and downstream signaling pathways in human head and neck and breast carcinoma cells. Clin Cancer Res 9:3486–3491

Matsui M, Homma H (1994) Biochemistry and molecular biology of drug-metabolizing sulfotransferase. Int J Biochem 26:1237–1247

Mineva ND, Paulson KE, Naber SPA, Yee S, Sonenshein GE (2013) Epigallocatechin-3-gallate inhibits stem-like inflammatory breast cancer cells. PLoS One 8:e73464

Mohan N, Karmakar S, Banik NL, Ray SK (2011) SU5416 and EGCG work synergistically and inhibit angiogenic and survival factors and induce cell cycle arrest to promote apoptosis in human malignant neuroblastoma SH-SY5Y and SK-N-BE2 cells. Neurochem Res 36:1383–1396

Naasani I, Seimiya H, Tsuruo T (1998) Telomerase inhibition, telomere shortening, and senescence of cancer cells by tea catechins. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 249:391–396

Nakashima M, Meirmanov S, Naruke Y, Kondo H, Saenko V et al (2004) Cyclin D1 overexpression in thyroid tumours from a radio-contaminated area and its correlation with Pin1 and aberrant beta-catenin expression. J Pathol 202:446–455

Nam S, Smith DM, Dou QP (2001) Ester bond-containing tea polyphenols potently inhibit proteasome activity *in vitro* and *in vivo*. J Biol Chem 276:13322–13330

Naujokat C, Hoffmann S (2002) Role and function of the 26S proteasome in proliferation and apoptosis. Lab Investig 82:965–980

Nihal M, Roelke CT, Wood GS (2010) Anti-melanoma effects of vorinostat in combination with polyphenolic antioxidant (−)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG). Pharm Res 27:1103–1114

Osada K, Takahashi M, Hoshina S, Nakamura M, Nakamura S et al (2001) Tea catechins inhibit cholesterol oxidation accompanying oxidation of low density lipoprotein in vitro. Comp Biochem Physiol Part C Toxicol Pharmacol 128:153–164

Perl A, Carroll M (2011) BCR-ABL kinase is dead; long live the CML stem cell. J Clin Invest 121:22–25

Prasad R, Santosh KK (2015) Polyphenols from green tea inhibit the growth of melanoma cells through inhibition of class I histone deacetylases and induction of DNA damage. Genes Cancer 6:2–6

Qiao J, Gu C, Shang W, Du J, Yin W, Zhu M et al (2011a) Effect of green tea on pharmacokinetics of 5-fluorouracil in rats and pharmacodynamics in human cell lines in vitro. Food Chem Toxicol 49(6):1410–1415

Qiao J, Gu C, Shang W, Du J, Yin W, Zhu M et al (2011b) Effect of green tea on pharmacokinetics of 5-fluorouracil in rats and pharmacodynamics in human cell lines in vitro. Food Chem Toxicol 49(6):1410–1415

Qin J, Xie LP, Zheng XY et al (2007) A component of green tea, (−)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate, promotes apoptosis in T24 human bladder cancer cells via modulation of the PI3K/Akt pathway and Bcl-2 family proteins. Biochem Biophys Res Comm 354:852–857

Rahmani AH, Al Zohairy MA, Aly SM, Khan MA (2014) Curcumin: a potential candidate in prevention of cancer via modulation of molecular pathways. Biomed Res Int 8:15

Rathone K, Wang HC (2013) Mesenchymal and stem-like cell targeting in suppression of chronically induced breast carcinogenesis. Cancer Lett 333:113–123

Roth M, Timmermann BN, Hagenbuch B (2011) Interactions of green tea catechins with organic anion-transporting polypeptides. Drug Metab Dispos 39:920–926

Roy AM, Baliga MS, Katiyar SK (2005) Epigallocatechin-3- gallate induces apoptosis in estrogen receptor-negative human breast carcinoma cells via modulation in protein expression of p53 and Bax and caspase-3 activation. Mol Cancer Ther 4:81–90

Ryo A, Nakamura M, Wulf G, Liou YC, Lu KP (2001) Pin1 regulates turnover and subcellular localization of beta-catenin by inhibiting its interaction with APC. Nat Cell Biol 3:793–801

Ryo A, Liou YC, Wulf G, Nakamura M, Lee SW et al (2002) PIN1 is an E2F target gene essential for Neu/Ras-induced transformation of mammary epithelial cells. Mol Cell Biol 22:5281–5295

Sadava D, Whitlock E, Kane SE (2007) The green tea polyphenol, epigallocatechin-3-gallate inhibits telomerase and induces apoptosis in drug-resistant lung cancer cells. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 360:233–237

Sakata R, Ueno T, Nakamura T, Sakamoto M, Torimura T, Sata M (2004) Green tea polyphenol epigallocatechin-3-gallate inhibits platelet-derived growth factor-induced proliferation of human hepatic stellate cell line LI90. J Hepatol 40:52–59

Sang S, Lambert JD, Ho CT, Yang CS (2011) The chemistry and biotransformation of tea constituents. Pharmacol Res 64:87–99

Sartippour MR, Shao ZM, Heber D, Beatty P, Zhang L, Liu C et al (2002) Green tea inhibits vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) induction in human breast cancer cells. J Nutr 132:2307–2311

Shankar S, Chen Q, Srivastava RK (2008) Inhibition of PI3K/AKT and MEK/ERK pathways act synergistically to enhance antiangiogenic effects of EGCG through activation of FOXO transcription factor. J Mol Signal 3:71–78

Shimizu M, Shirakami Y, Sakai H, Adachi S, Hata K, Hirose Y et al (2008a) (−)-Epigallocatechin gallate suppresses azoxymethane-induced colonic premalignalesions in male C57BL/KsJ-db/db mice. Cancer Prev Res 1:298–304

Shimizu M, Fukutomi Y, Ninomiya M et al (2008b) Green tea extracts for the prevention of metachronous colorectal adenomas: a pilot study. Cancer Epidemiol Biomark Preven 17:3020–3025

Siddiqui IA, Asim M, Hafeez BB, Adhami VM, Tarapore RS, Mukhtar H (2011) Green tea polyphenol EGCG blunts androgen receptor function in prostate cancer. FASEB J 25:1198–1207

Singh T, Katiyar SK (2013) Green tea polyphenol, (−)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate, induces toxicity in human skin cancer cells by targeting beta-catenin signaling. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 273:418–424

Singh M, Tyagi S, Bhui K, Prasad S, Shukla Y (2010) Regulation of cell growth through cell cycle arrest and apoptosis in HPV 16 positive human cervical cancer cells by tea polyphenols. Investig New Drugs 28:216–224

Stearns ME, Wang M (2011a) Synergistic effects of the green tea extract epigallocatechin- 3-gallate and taxane in eradication of malignant human prostate tumors. Transl Oncol 4:147–156

Stearns ME, Wang M (2011b) Synergistic effects of the green tea extract epigallocatechin-3-gallate and taxane in eradication of malignant human prostate tumors. Transl Oncol 4:147–156

Stearns ME, Amatangelo MD, Varma D, Sell C, Goodyear SM (2010) Combination therapy with epigallocatechin-3-gallate and doxorubicin in human prostate tumor modeling studies: inhibition of metastatic tumor growth in severe combined immunodeficiency mice. Am J Pathol 177(6):3169–3179

Strassburg CP, Nguyen N, Manns MP, Tukey RH (1999) UDP-glucuronosyltransferase activity in human liver and colon. Gastroenterology 116:149–160

Suganuma M, Ohkura Y, Okabe S, Fujiki H (2001) Combination cancer chemoprevention with green tea extract and sulindac shown in intestinal tumor formation in min mice. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 127:69–72

Sukhthankar M, Choi CK, English A, Kim JS, Baek SJ (2010) A potential proliferative gene, NUDT6, is down-regulated by green tea catechins at the posttranscriptional level. J Nutr Biochem 21:98–106

Tang SN, Fu J, Shankar S, Srivastava RK (2012) EGCG enhances the therapeutic potential of gemcitabine and CP690550 by inhibiting STAT3 signaling pathway in human pancreatic cancer. PLoS One 7:310–367

Thakur VS, Gupta K, Gupta S (2012a) Green tea polyphenols increase p53 transcriptional activity and acetylation by suppressing class I histone deacetylases. Int J Oncol 41:353–361

Thakur VS, Gupta K, Gupta S (2012b) Green tea polyphenols causes cell cycle arrest and apoptosis in prostate cancer cells by suppressing class I histone deacetylases. Carcinogenesis 33:377–384

Tsang WP, Kwok TT (2010) Epigallocatechin gallate up-regulation of miR-16 and induction of apoptosis in human cancer cells. J Nutr Biochem 21:140–146

Tu SH, Ku CY, Ho CT, Chen CS, Huang CS, Lee CH et al (2011) Tea polyphenol (−) epigallocatechin- 3-gallate inhibits nicotine- and estrogen-induced alpha9-nicotinic acetylcholine receptor upregulation in human breast cancer cells. Mol Nutr Food Res 55:455–466

Turkson J, Jove R (2000) STAT proteins: novel molecular targets for cancer drug discovery. Oncogene 19:6613–6626

Wang H, Bian S, Yang CS (2011) Green tea polyphenol EGCG suppresses lung cancer cell growth through upregulating miR-210 expression caused by stabilizing HIF-1alpha. Carcinogenesis 32:1881–1889

Wulf GM, Ryo A, Wulf GG, Lee SW, Niu T et al (2001) Pin1 is overexpressed in breast cancer and cooperates with Ras signaling in increasing the transcriptional activity of c-Jun towards cyclin D1. EMBO J 20:3459–3472

Wulf G, Garg P, Liou YC, Iglehart D, Lu KP (2004) Modeling breast cancer in vivo and ex vivo reveals an essential role of Pin1 in tumorigenesis. EMBO J 23:3397–3407

Wulf G, Finn G, Suizu F, Lu KP (2005) Phosphorylation-specific prolyl isomerization: is there an underlying theme? Nat Cell Biol 7:435–441

Xie T-X, Xia Z, Zhang N, Gong W, Huang S (2010) Constitutive NF-kappaB activity regulates the expression of VEGF and IL-8 and tumor angiogenesis of human glioblastoma. Oncol Rep 23:725–732

Yanaga H, Fujii T, Koga T, Araki R et al (2002) Prevention of carcinogenesis of mouse mammary epithelial cells RIII/MG by epigallocatechin gallate. Int J Mol Med 10:311–315

Yang CS, Wang ZY (1993) Tea and cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 85:1038–1049

Yang CS, Wang H (2011) Mechanistic issues concerning cancer prevention by tea catechins. Mol Nutr Food Res 55:819–831

Yang CS, Sang S, Lambert JD, Lee MJ (2008) Bioavailability issues in studying the health effects of plant polyphenolic compounds. Mol Nutr Food Res 52:139–151

Yang CS, Wang X, Lu G, Picinich SC (2009) Cancer prevention by tea: animal studies, molecular mechanisms and human relevance. Nat Rev Cancer 9:429–439

Yokoyama M, Noguchi M, Nakao Y, Pater A, Iwasaka T (2004) The tea polyphenol, (−)-epigallocatechin gallate effects on growth, apoptosis, and telomerase activity in cervical cell lines. Gynecol Oncol 92:197–204

Zhang Y, Duan W, Owusu L, Wu D, Xin Y (2015) Epigallocatechin-3 gallate induces the apoptosis of hepatocellular carcinoma LM6 cells but not non-cancerous liver cells. Int J Mol Med 35:117–124

Zou C, Liu H, Feugang JM, Hao Z, Chow HH, Garcia F (2010) Green tea compound in chemoprevention of cervical cancer. Int J Gynecol Cancer 204:617–624

Bioactive Profile of Edible Ripened Split Beans of Three Wild Landraces of Coastal *Canavalia*

Suvarna J. Shreelalitha, Prabhavathi Supriya, and Kandikere R. Sridhar

Introduction

Protein-energy malnutrition is one of the major problems in developing countries owing to dependence largely on monocarbohydrate diet (e.g., maize or rice), which has insufficient quantities of essential nutrients (proteins, fats, vitamin A, iodine, zinc, and iron) (Boye et al. 2010). Edible legumes (peas, lentils, and beans) as well as wild legumes (winged bean, cluster bean, and velvet bean) serve as inexpensive sources of protein-energy against limited supply of meat and animal products (Singh et al. 2007; Boye et al. 2010). About 30 wild legumes growing in different parts of India are consumed by the rural or tribal population in India as nutraceutical sources (Arora et al. 1980; Gunjatkar and Vartak 1982; Mohan and Janardhanan 1995; Viswanathan et al. 1999, 2001; Vadivel and Janardhanan 2005; Narayanan and Kumar 2007; Sridhar et al. 2016). Utilization of such wild legumes has received more attention in the recent past owing to their nutritional as well as health benefits.

The vast and long coastal region of the Indian subcontinent is endowed with several underexplored and economically valuable wild legumes (e.g., *Alysicarpus*, *Canavalia*, *Sesbania*, *Tephrosia*, and *Vigna*) (Arun et al. 1999; Rao and Suresh 2001; Rao and Sherieff 2002; Sridhar and Bhagya 2007). In the coastal sand dunes and mangroves, two landraces of *Canavalia cathartica* are widely distributed (Arun et al. 1999; Seena et al. 2007). Similarly, another wild legume *Canavalia maritima* on the coastal sand dunes received little attention although widely distributed in the pantropical region (Nakanishi 1988). These three landraces possess valuable agrobotanical traits especially fast growth, large seeds, high quantity of seed yield, and tolerance to adverse conditions (temperature, salinity, burial, and pest attack) (Arun et al. 2003; Seena and

S. J. Shreelalitha
Department of Biotechnology, St. Aloysius College, Mangalore, Karnataka, India

P. Supriya · K. R. Sridhar (✉)
Department of Biosciences, Mangalore University, Mangalore, Karnataka, India

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_6

Fig. 1 Horizontal spread of *Canavalia cathartica* on the coastal sand dunes of the Southwest India (**a**) with ripened pods (**b**), ripened beans (**c**), and split beans (**d**); horizontal spread of *C. maritima* on the coastal sand dune of Southwest India (**e**) with ripened pods (**f**), ripened beans (**g**), and split beans (**h**)

Sridhar 2006; Sridhar and Seena 2006; Seena et al. 2007). During the survey of ethnic knowledge of coastal inhabitants of the southwest coast of India, it was realized that *Canavalia* spp. also provide nutritional and health benefits (Bhagya and Sridhar 2009). The fishermen community usually employs many traditional approaches to consume the ripened beans similar to common green and leafy vegetables. They gather the ripened beans of *Canavalia* spp. and eliminate the seed coat along with testa followed by cooking like other vegetables for consumption. Nutritional qualities of ripened split beans (devoid of seed coat and testa) of *Canavalia* spp. have been evaluated recently and ascertained their adequacy for human consumption (Sridhar et al. 2016). Therefore, the present study envisaged to expand further by evaluation of bioactive components and antioxidant potential of uncooked and cooked ripened split beans (devoid of seed coat and testa) to project their nutraceutical or medicinal qualities.

Ripened Beans and Processing

Greenish yellow ripened pods of *Canavalia cathartica* were collected from plants grown on five independent coastal sand dunes of Someshwara (12°47′N, 74°52′E) and Nethravathi mangrove (12°50′N, 74°51′E) of Southwest India (post-monsoon season) (Fig. 1). The ripened beans were separated from the pods, seed coat along

with testa was removed, and cotyledons (split beans) were divided into two groups in five replicates. The first group was sun-dried 2–3 days, powdered (Wiley Mill, mesh # 30), and preserved in airtight glass containers. The second group was pressure-cooked (6.5 L, Deluxe stainless steel; *TTK* Prestige™, Prestige Ltd., India) with freshwater (1:3 v/v) followed by sun drying and milling.

Assessment of Bioactive Components

Total Phenolics

The total phenolics of the split bean flours were determined after extracting twice with methanol (50%) in a water bath (95 ± 1 °C, 10 min) (Rosset et al. 1982). The pooled extract was made up to 10 mL; the extract (0.5 mL) was mixed with equal quantity of distilled water and treated with Na_2CO_3 (5 mL in NaOH, 0.1 N). After incubation (10 min), Folin-Ciocalteu's reagent (0.5 mL) (diluted 1:2 v/v) was added, and OD was read (725 nm; UV-VIS spectrophotometer-118, SYSTRONICS, Ahmedabad, Gujarat, India). Tannic acid served as a standard.

Orthodihydric Phenols

Orthodihydric phenol content of split bean flours was estimated according to Mahadevan and Sridhar (1985). A 250 μL of ethanol extract (100 mg, 30 mL 80% ethanol) was mixed with HCl (0.05 N, 1 mL); Arnow's reagent (1 mL) (sodium nitrate, 10 g; sodium molybdate, 10 g; distilled water, 100 mL), distilled water (10 mL), and NaOH (1 N, 2 mL) were added; and the OD was measured (515 nm). Catechol (Sisco Research Laboratories, Mumbai, India; purity, 98%) served as standard (20–100 μL).

Tannins

Tannin content of split bean flours was determined by vanillin-HCl method (Burns 1971). The flour (1 g) was treated with methanol (10 mL, 28 °C, 12 h), vortexed, and decanted. The process was repeated with the precipitate. The pooled supernatant was made up to 25 mL. The extract (1 mL) was treated with reagent mixture (5 mL) (1:1, 4% vanillin in methanol and 8% concentrated HCl in methanol). After 20 min the color developed was read at 500 nm with catechin (Sigma-Aldrich, 98% HPLC grade, USA) (50–250 μg) as standard.

Canavanine

To estimate canavanine of split bean flours, ammonium disodium pentacyanoamminoferrate dihydrate reagent (PCAF) ($Na_2NH_4[Fe(CN)_5NH_3]\cdot 2H_2O$) (1% w/v) (Sigma-Aldrich, # 09710, USA) (100 mg) was dissolved in double-distilled water (10 mL) in a volumetric flask, exposed to light and air for an hour to undergo spontaneous oxidation, and preserved (4 °C, can be preserved up to 1 month in a brown glass bottle). Phosphate buffer (pH, 7) [29.54 mL 0.2 M NaOH (solution A) and 50 mL 0.2 M KH_2PO_4 (solution B)] was made up to 500 mL with distilled water and stored at low temperature. The pH was set to 7 for solution A followed by addition of solution B, and final pH was adjusted to 7. Aqueous solution of canavanine derived from *Canavalia ensiformis* (Sigma-Aldrich, # C 1625, purity ≥98%) (2 mg/10 mL) was prepared as standard and preserved (4 °C). As observed by Fearon and Bell (1954), addition of PCAF (5–10 drops) to the standard or sample (5 mL, pH 7) within 10 min resulted in an appearance of a red to purple color, which indicated positive reaction, and the OD was read (462 nm). The flour sample (50 mg) was homogenized with phosphate buffer (10 mL). The suspension was centrifuged (3500 rpm, 10 min) at room temperature. The supernatant was filtered through Whatman (# 1) filter paper and made up to 10 mL. 1 mL of the suspension was diluted to 5 mL with distilled water, and five drops of PCAF reagent was added. The OD was read (462 nm) using phosphate buffer as blank.

Vitamin C

With minor modifications, vitamin C content of split bean flours was estimated according to Roe (1954). The sample (1 g) was extracted in TCA (5%, 10 mL). An aliquot (0.2 mL) was made up to 1 mL in TCA (5%), and 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine (DNPH) (1 mL) was added. The reaction mixture was boiled (10 min), cooled to room temperature; sulfuric acid (65%, 4 mL) was added, incubated at room temperature (30 min); and the OD was measured (540 nm). Ascorbic acid (Sisco Research Laboratories, Mumbai, India; purity, 99.8%) served as standard.

Trypsin Inhibition Assay

Trypsin inhibition activity of the split bean flour was determined by enzymatic assay as outlined by Kakade et al. (1974). Freshly ground flour (1 g) was extracted with NaOH (0.01 N, 50 mL), the suspension was made up to 2 mL with distilled water, and 2 mL trypsin solution (4 mg in 200 mL 0.001 M HCl) was added to each test tube and incubated in water bath (37 °C, 10 min). To each tube, 5 mL BAPNA [(40 mg N-a-benzoyl-DL-arginine p-nitroanilide hydrochloride) (Aldrich, 85711–4; purity, 99%) in dimethyl sulfoxide (1 mL) diluted (to 100 mL) with tris buffer at 37 °C)] was

added; after incubation (10 min) the reaction was terminated by addition of acetic acid (30%, 1 mL), thoroughly mixed and filtered; and absorbance of the filtrate was measured (410 nm) against reagent blank (1 mL 30% acetic acid containing 2 mL each trypsin and distilled water +5 mL BAPNA solution). One unit of trypsin activity (TIu/mg) is defined as 1 μM of p-nitroanilide released per min by the enzyme.

Hemagglutinin Assay

The hemagglutinin activity was assessed based on Occenã et al. (2007). Split bean flour (2 g) was suspended in NaCl (0.9%, 20 mL), shaken vigorously (1 min), and allowed to stand (1 h) followed by centrifugation (2000 g, 10 min) to obtain clear solution, which was filtered and used as crude agglutinin extract. Heparinized blood samples (5 mL) of different groups (A, B, O) were collected, and RBCs were separated from the whole blood suspension by centrifugation (2000 g, 10 min). One volume of RBCs was diluted with four volumes of cold saline (0.9%) and centrifuged (2000 g, 10 min), and the supernatant was discarded. The pellet was washed with saline thrice until the supernatant became colorless. Washed erythrocytes (4 mL) were suspended in phosphate buffer (0.0006 M, pH 7.4) (100 mL). Trypsin solution (2%, 1 mL) was added to washed erythrocytes (10 mL), mixed, and incubated (37 °C, 1 h). The trypsinized erythrocytes were washed (4–5 times in saline) to remove traces of trypsin. The packed cells (1.2–1.5 mL) obtained were suspended in saline (100 mL).

Hemagglutinin activity of split bean flour was assessed by microtiter plate method. Microtiter plate (8 rows of 12 wells) was used. The first well served as the test in which the crude agglutinin extract was added. The 12th well served as the control in which the crude agglutinin extract was not present. The saline (0.3 mL) was dispensed to each well (# 2 to # 12). Serial dilution was made from the well # 2 to well # 11. The suspension of trypsinized RBC (in saline 2%, 0.3 mL) was dispensed to wells # 1 to # 12. The contents were mixed and incubated at room temperature (4 h). The hemagglutination pattern in each well was noted, and the hemagglutinating unit per gram (Hu/g) was calculated: $Hu/g = (Da \times Db \times S) \div V$ (where Da, dilution factor of extract in well # 1, is the crude agglutinin extract where it remains as 1 if the original extract is not diluted; Db, dilution factor of well containing 1 Hu is the well in which hemagglutination is first seen; S, mL original extract/g split bean flour; V, volume of extract in well # 1).

Antioxidant Assessment

To prepare the split bean flour extract for antioxidant assay, the sample (10 mg) was extracted in methanol (10 mL, w/v) and centrifuged (4500 rpm, 15 min). A known amount of the supernatant was used for the antioxidant assays.

Total Antioxidant Assay

To determine the total antioxidant activity, to split bean extract (0.1 mL), reagent mixture (1 mL) was added (sulfuric acid, 0.6 M + sodium phosphate, 28 mM + ammonium molybdate, 4 mM) (Prieto et al. 1999). The samples were incubated (95 °C, 90 min) and cooled to room temperature followed by OD measurement of phosphomolybdenum complex (695 nm) with methanol (0.1 mL) as blank. The antioxidant activity was expressed as the number of gram equivalents of ascorbic acid per gram (μM AAEs/g).

Reducing Power Assay

Reducing activity of split bean flours was determined employing the method outlined by Oyaizu (1986) with a slight modification. Different concentrations (200–1000 μg) of the sample extracted in methanol were taken; phosphate buffer (0.2 M, pH 6.6, 2.5 mL) was added followed by addition of potassium ferricyanide ($K_3Fe(CN)_6$) (1%, 2.5 mL). The contents were mixed well and incubated (50 °C, 20 min). After incubation, TCA (10%, 2.5 mL) was added and centrifuged (3000 rpm, 10 min); to the supernatant (2.5 mL), equal volume of distilled water was added and mixed. To this mixture, ferric chloride (0.1%, 0.5 mL) was added and the OD was measured (700 nm). Higher absorbance of the reaction mixture indicated greater reducing power. The assay was carried out in triplicates to express the mean values.

Data Analysis

Variations in total phenolics, tannins, orthodihydric phenols, canavanine, vitamin C, total antioxidant activity, and reducing power between uncooked and cooked beans were assessed by *t*-test using Statistica version 8.0 (StatSoft Inc. 2008). Three-way ANOVA (followed by Holm-Sidak's method) was employed to assess the interaction between three landraces (mangrove *Canavalia cathartica*, dune *C. cathartica*, and dune *C. maritima*), four bioactive components (total phenolics, tannins, canavanine, and vitamin C), and two processes (uncooked and cooked) (SigmaPlot, version # 11, Systat Inc., San Jose, USA).

Bioactive Components

The total phenolic and tannin contents were significantly higher in uncooked than in cooked split beans of all landraces ($p < 0.05$) (Fig. 2). Canavanine content was significantly higher in uncooked than in cooked split beans of *C. cathartica* and *C.*

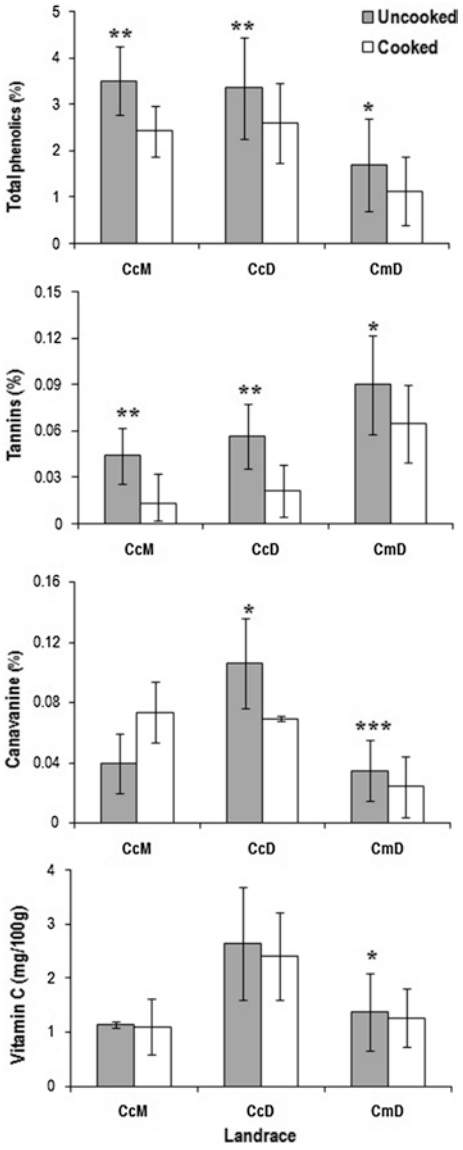


Fig. 2 Total phenolics, tannins, canavanine, and vitamin C of uncooked and cooked split beans of three *Canavalia* landraces of the Southwest India (*, $p < 0.05$; **, $p < 0.01$; ***, $p < 0.001$)

maritima of coastal sand dunes ($p < 0.05$), while vitamin C content was significantly higher in uncooked split beans of only *C. maritima* of coastal sand dunes ($p < 0.05$). The content of orthodihydric phenols was higher in uncooked than in cooked split beans of *C. cathartica* landraces ($p < 0.001$), while it was not detectable in *C. maritima* of coastal sand dunes (Table 1). Split beans of all the three landraces were devoid of trypsin inhibition activity. The hemagglutinin activity was eliminated in cooked split beans of *C. cathartica* landraces, while only O^+ blood group retained one-third of hemagglutinin activity in cooked *C. maritima* of coastal sand dunes.

Table 1 Orthodihydric phenols, trypsin inhibition activity, and hemagglutinin activity of uncooked and cooked split beans of three landraces of *Canavalia* (orthodihydric phenols: $n = 5$, mean ± SD)

	Mangrove		Coastal sand dune			
	Canavalia cathartica		*Canavalia cathartica*		*Canavalia maritima*	
	Uncooked	Cooked	Uncooked	Cooked	Uncooked	Cooked
Orthodihydric phenols (%)	0.019 ± 0.001*	0.007 ± 0.002	0.026 ± 0.001*	0.011 ± 0.001	ND	ND
Trypsin inhibition activity	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND
Hemagglutinin activity (Hu/g)						
A + ve	120	NA	120	NA	120	0
B + ve	80	NA	80	NA	140	0
O + ve	80	NA	80	NA	120	40

Asterisks across the cooked and uncooked samples are significantly different (*t*-test: $*p < 0.001$)
ND not detectable, *NA* no agglutination

Phenolic compounds are the most important groups of secondary metabolites in plants, which are abundantly present in the seed coats of legumes, and are responsible for antinutritional properties. Lowered phenolics and tannins in cooked split beans are due to removal of seed coat and testa. Total phenolics in uncooked split beans were lesser than ripened seeds (Bhagya et al. 2006, 2007, 2009); it further decreased significantly on cooking. As the tannins and orthodihydric phenols lowered in cooked split beans, they serve as bioactive compounds rather than potential antinutrients.

Low canavanine in uncooked split beans may be due to removal of seed coat as canavanine is known to accumulate in seed coat (Williams and Hunt 1967). Canavanine content of split beans was lower than ripened beans (D'Cunha and Sridhar 2010). Canavanine content of the uncooked split beans decreased significantly on cooking. As seen in phenolics, canavanine is known to accumulate in seed coat, and low canavanine content in uncooked split beans was mainly due to removal of seed coat and testa (Williams and Hunt 1967). Similar to canavanine, the lectin "con A" is also present in seed coat as well as cotyledons of *Canavalia ensiformis*, which prevents insect herbivory (Oliveira et al. 1999; Niveditha and Sridhar 2012). The ripened split beans devoid of seed coat and low accumulation of lectin in cotyledons in ripened stage are responsible for lack of hemagglutinin activity against human erythrocytes.

Although hemagglutinin activity was substantially high in uncooked split beans (80–120 Hu/g), on cooking it was completely eliminated, which was supported by significant increased in vitro protein digestibility on cooking denoting safe levels of antinutritional components to support their edibility (Sridhar et al. 2016). The hemagglutination activity in legumes is commonly linked with the presence of lectins (e.g., concanavalin), which interferes absorption of nutrients by binding to the brush border mucosa (Liener 1980; Niveditha and Sridhar 2012). Although cooked dry seeds, sprouted seeds, and ripened beans of *C. maritima* are potential source of protein, its bioavailability is limited due to presence of lectin "con M." However, the hemagglutinin activity was completely knocked off in cooked split beans except for human erythrocytes O^+ blood group in *C. maritima* of the coastal sand dune (decreased to one-third). Decrease in globulin fraction of uncooked split beans on cooking might be responsible for overall quality improvement especially the in vitro protein digestibility (Sridhar et al. 2016), elimination of hemagglutinin activity, and moderate antioxidant activities. The split beans of three landraces were devoid of trypsin inhibition activity as seen in ripened beans (Bhagya et al. 2006, 2007) which is another advantage of elimination of antinutritional potential of split beans.

Bioactive Potential

The total antioxidant activity of uncooked split beans of *C. cathartica* was higher in mangrove than in coastal sand dune landrace as well as *C. maritima* of coastal sand dunes, which significantly decreased on cooking. The reducing power of

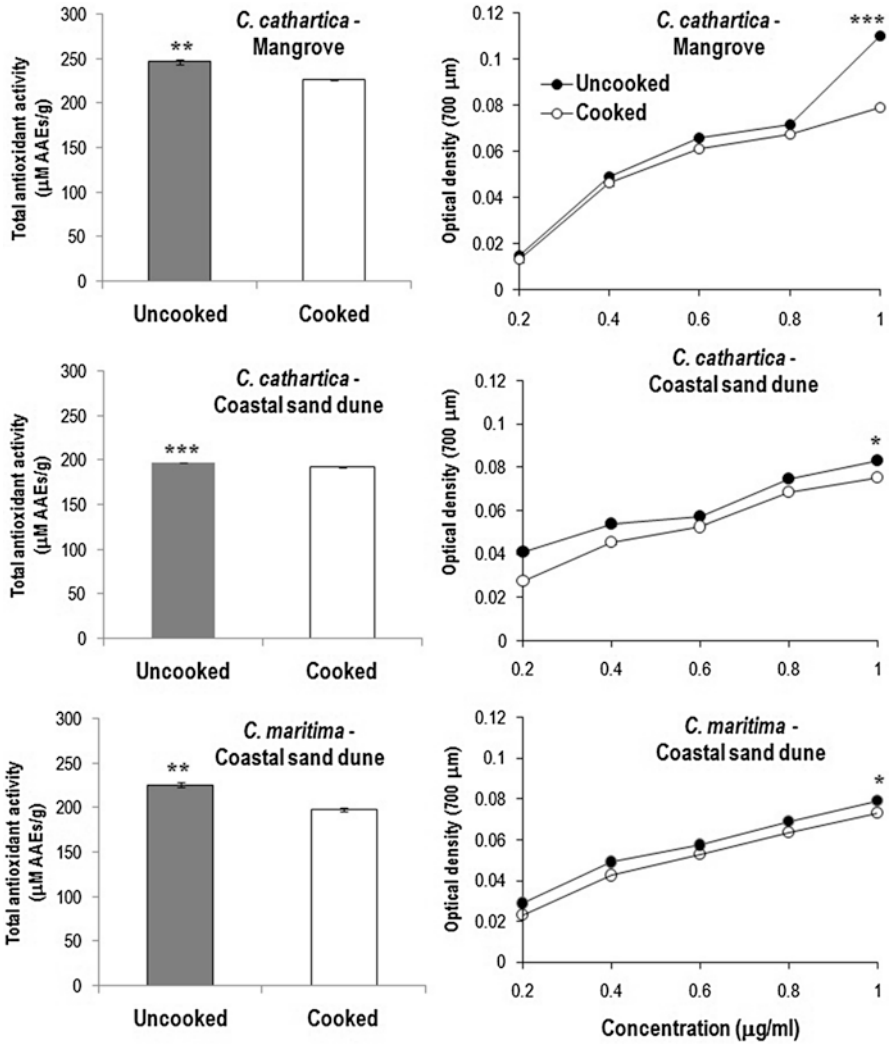


Fig. 3 Total antioxidant activity and reducing power of uncooked and cooked split beans of three *Canavalia* landraces of the Southwest India (*, $p < 0.05$; **, $p < 0.01$; ***, $p < 0.001$)

split beans was at higher range in the mangrove *C. cathartica* than the coastal sand dune *C. cathartica* as well as *C. maritima* (Fig. 3). In all landraces, uncooked split beans showed significantly higher reducing power compared to cooked split beans ($p < 0.05$).

Phenolic compounds are known to function synergistically to promote human health by enhancing antioxidant activity, impacting cellular processes associated with apoptosis, platelet aggregation, blood vessel dilation, enzyme activities (associated with starch, protein, and/or lipid digestion), carcinogen activation, and detoxification (Shahidi and Wanasundara 1992; Tapiero et al. 2002; McDougall

Table 2 Three-way ANOVA of the interaction between the landraces (mangrove *Canavalia cathartica*, dune *C. cathartica*, and dune *C. maritima*), bioactive components (total phenolics, tannins, canavanine, and vitamin C), and processes (without cooking and cooking)

Treatment	df	F	*p*
Landrace	2	343.025	<0.001
Bioactive component	3	7451.633	<0.001
Process	1	221.863	<0.001
Landrace × bioactive component	6	343.708	<0.001
Landrace × process	2	6.159	0.004
Bioactive component × process	3	198.115	<0.001
Landrace × bioactive component × process	6	7.998	<0.001

and Stewart 2005). Canavanine content in split beans is comparable or lower than domesticated *Vicia* spp. (0.07–0.1 vs. 0.05–0.3%), and such concentration seems to be safe or advantageous in controlling colon tumors in rat model (Thomas et al. 1986; Enneking and Wink 2000). Canavanine administration at 1% in the diet consisting of protein greater than 15.7% is shown to improve the longevity of BALB/c mice (Brown 2005). There seems to be an interaction between level of dietary protein and canavanine with respect to lifespan in mice. The hemagglutination activity in legume seeds has been linked with the presence of lectins (concanavalin), as it interferes with the absorption of nutrients by adhering to the brush borders (Liener 1980). Hemagglutinin activity against human erythrocytes was completely eliminated in cooked split beans and serves as a potential source of human nutrition. Vitamin C content in split beans of both landraces was higher than ripened seeds (Bhagya et al. 2006, 2007) and not significantly decreased on cooking. The presence of vitamin C and other antioxidants is reflected in total antioxidant activity of uncooked and cooked split beans.

Various methods of elimination of antinutritional components of seeds of wild legumes have been reviewed by Bhat and Karim (2009). However, small quantities of several so-called antinutritional components possess health-promoting capabilities (e.g., antioxidants, phenolics, phytic acid, and selenium; anticarcinogenic, phytic acid and saponins; hypocholesterolemic, saponins; hypoglycemic, phytic acid) (Koratkar and Rao 1997; Shamsuddin et al. 1997; Combs and Gray 1998; Cardador-Martinez et al. 2002). Considerable protein digestibility of split beans and decrease in antinutritional components to low levels on cooking show the edible quality of all landraces of coastal *Canavalia* (Sridhar et al. 2016). Three-way ANOVA revealed highly significant difference between bioactive components (total phenolics, tannins, canavanine, and vitamin C), landraces (mangrove and coastal sand dunes), and processes (uncooked and cooked) ($p < 0.001$) (Table 2). Holm-Sidak's method showed highly significant difference between landrace: (1) *C. cathartica* of mangrove vs. *C. maritima* of coastal sand dunes ($p < 0.001$); (2) between *C. cathartica* vs. *C. maritima* of coastal sand dunes ($p < 0.001$); (3) between total phenolics vs. tannic acid ($p < 0.001$), vs. canavanine ($p < 0.05$), vs. vitamin C ($p < 0.001$); tannic acid vs. vitamin C ($p < 0.05$); canavanine vs. vitamin C ($p < 0.05$); between total phenolics vs.

tannic acid, vs. canavanine, vs. vitamin C of all three landraces ($p < 0.001$). Based on the ANOVA, among the bioactive components, the total phenolics of all landraces attained optimum level without affecting the nutritional value of split beans, while its component was also at optimum to serve as antioxidant to protect the human health. Recently, attempt to preserve the dried ripened split beans of *C. maritima* has been attempted using electron beam irradiation to prevent fungal infestation (Supriya et al. 2014). It has resulted in fungal decontamination (decrease in fungal incidence and elimination of mycotoxins) and improvement of shelf life of dry split beans (at least up to 6 months) could be achieved at 10 kGy.

Conclusions

Removal of seed coat and testa of the ripened beans of three landraces of coastal region of Southwest India eliminated several antinutritional factors. The contents of total phenolics, tannins, orthodihydric phenols, canavanine, and vitamin C in ripened split beans of all landraces were lowered on cooking; they attained optimum level as nutraceuticals to promote human health. Lack of trypsin inhibition as well as hemagglutinin activities is an additional advantage for human consumption. Besides, decrease in antinutritional components and optimum level of bioactive components is responsible for antioxidant activity as well as reducing power. To conclude, the ripened split beans of three landraces of coastal wild legume *Canavalia* are endowed with nutritional components with adequate bioactive components to serve as future nutraceutical and health-promoting indigenous food commodity.

Acknowledgments Authors are grateful to Mangalore University for permission to carry out this study in the Department of Biosciences. Sridhar K.R. gratefully acknowledges the UGC-BSR Faculty Fellowship by the UGC, New Delhi. Shreelalitha S.J. acknowledges the UGC, New Delhi, for the award of research fellowship under the scheme RFSMS. Supriya P. is grateful to BRNS, Bhabha Atomic Research Centre, Mumbai, for the award of research fellowship.

References

Arora RK, Chandel KPS, Joshi BS, Pant KC (1980) Rice bean: tribal pulse of eastern India. Econ Bot 34:260–263

Arun AB, Beena KR, Raviraja NS, Sridhar KR (1999) Coastal sand dunes - a neglected ecosystem. Curr Sci 77:19–21

Arun AB, Sridhar KR, Raviraja NS, Schmidt E, Jung K (2003) Nutritional and antinutritional components of *Canavalia* spp. seeds from the west coast sand dunes of India. Plant Foods Hum Nutr 58:1–13

Bhagya B, Sridhar KR (2009) Ethnobiology of coastal sand dune legumes of southwest India. Indian J Tradit Knowl 9:611–620

Bhagya B, Sridhar KR, Seena S, Young C-C, Arun AB, Nagaraja KV (2006) Nutritional qualities and *in vitro* starch digestibility of ripened *Canavalia cathartica* beans of coastal sand dunes of southern India. Elec J Environ Agric Food Chem 5:1241–1252

Bhagya B, Sridhar KR, Seena S, Bhat R (2007) Nutritional qualities of ripened beans of mangrove legume *Canavalia cathartica* Thouars. J Agric Technol 3:255–274
Bhagya B, Sridhar KR, Raviraja NS, Young C-C, Arun AB (2009) Nutritional and biological qualities of ripened beans of *Canavalia maritima* of coastal sand dunes of India. C R Biol 332:25–33
Bhat R, Karim AA (2009) Exploring the nutritional potential of wild and underutilized legumes. Compr Rev Food Sci Food Saf 8:305–331
Boye J, Zare F, Pletch P (2010) Pulse proteins: Processing, characterization, functional properties and applications in food and feed. Food Res Int 43:414–431
Brown DL (2005) Canavanine-induced longevity in mice may require diets with greater than 15.7% protein. Nutr Metab 2:7. https://doi.org/10.1186/1743-7075-2-7
Burns R (1971) Methods for estimation of tannins in grain sorghum. Agron J 63:511–512
Cardador-Martinez A, Loarca-Pina G, Oomah BD (2002) Antioxidant activity in common beans (*Phaseolus vulgaris* L.). J Agric Food Chem 50:6975–6980
Combs GF, Gray WP (1998) Chemopreventive agents: selenium. Pharmacol Ther 79:179–192
D'Cunha M, Sridhar KR (2010) L-canavanine and L-arginine in two wild legumes of the genus *Canavalia*. Inst Integr Omics Appl Biotechnol J 1:29–33
Enneking D, Wink M (2000) Towards the elimination of anti-nutritional factors in grain legumes. In: Knight R (ed) Current plant science and biotechnology in agriculture, vol 34. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, pp 375–384
Fearon WR, Bell EA (1954) Canavanine: detection and occurrence in *Colutea arborescens*. J Biochem 59:221–224
Gunjatkar N, Vartak VD (1982) Enumeration of wild legumes from Pune District, Maharashtra. J Econ Taxon Bot 3:1–9
Kakade ML, Rackis JJ, McGhee JE, Puski G (1974) Determination of trypsin inhibitor activity of soy products, a collaborative analysis of an improved procedure. Cereal Chem 51:376–382
Koratkar R, Rao AV (1997) Effect of soybean saponins on azoxymethane-induced preneoplastic lesions in the colon of mice. Nutr Cancer 27:206–209
Liener I (1980) Heat-labile antinutritional factors. In: Summerfield J, Bunting AH (eds) Advances in legume science. Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew, pp 151–170
Mahadevan A, Sridhar R (1985) Methods in physiological plant pathology, 3rd edn. Sivakami Publications, Chennai
McDougall GJ, Stewart D (2005) The inhibitory effects of berry polyphenols on digestive enzymes. Biofactors 23:189–195
Mohan VR, Janardhanan K (1995) Chemical determination of nutritional and antinutritional properties in tribal pulses. J Food Sci Technol 32:465–469
Nakanishi H (1988) Dispersal ecology of the maritime plants in the Ryukyu Islands, Japan. Ecol Res 3:163–174
Narayanan MKR, Kumar NA (2007) Generated knowledge and changing trends in utilization of wild edible greens in Western Ghats. Indian J Tradit Knowl 6:204–216
Niveditha VR, Sridhar KR (2012) Concanavalin and canavanine in seeds of coastal sand dune legumes (*Canavalia*). Adv Biotech 11:30–34
Occenã IV, Majica E-RE, Merca FE (2007) Isolation of partial characterization of a lectin from the seeds of *Artocarpus camansi* Blanco. Asian J Plant Sci 6:757–764
Oliveira AEA, Sales MP, Machado OLT, Fernandes KVS, Xavier-Filho J (1999) The toxicity of Jack bean (*Canavalia ensiformis*) cotyledon and seed coat proteins to the cowpea weevil (*Callosobruchus maculatus*). Entomol Exp Appl 92:249–255
Oyaizu M (1986) Studies on products of browning reactions: Antioxidative activities of products of browning reaction prepared from glucosamine. Jpn J Nutr 44:307–315
Prieto P, Pineda M, Aguilar M (1999) Spectrophotometric quantitation of antioxidant capacity through the formation of a phosphomolybdenum complex: Specific application to the determination of vitamin E. Anal Biochem 269:337–341
Rao TA, Sherieff AN (2002) Coastal Ecosystem of the Karnataka State, India II - Beaches. Karnataka Association for the Advancement of Science, Bangalore

Rao TA, Suresh PV (2001) Coastal ecosystems of the Karnataka State, India I - Mangroves, Karnataka Association for the Advancement of Science, Bangalore

Roe JH (1954) Chemical determination of ascorbic, dehydroascorbic and diketogluconic acids. In: Glick D (ed) Methods of biochemical analysis, vol 1. InterScience Publishers, New York, pp 115–139

Rosset J, Bärlocher F, Oertli JJ (1982) Decomposition of conifer needles and deciduous leaves in two Black Forest and two Swiss Jura streams. Int Rev Gesamten Hydrobiol 67:695–711

Seena S, Sridhar KR (2006) Nutritional and microbiological features of little known legumes, *Canavalia cathartica* Thouars and *C. maritima* Thouars of the southwest coast of India. Curr Sci 90:1638–1650

Seena S, Sridhar KR, Arun AB (2007) *Canavalia cathartica* of southwest coast of India - a neglected wild legume. Plant Gen Res Newsl 150:16–20

Shahidi F, Wanasundara PK (1992) Phenolic antioxidants. Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr 32:67–103

Shamsuddin AM, Vucenik I, Cole KE (1997) IP6: a novel anticancer agent. Life Sci 61:343–354

Singh RJ, Chung GH, Nelson RL (2007) Landmark research in legumes. Genome 50:525–537

Sridhar KR, Bhagya B (2007) Coastal sand dune vegetation: a potential source of food, fodder and pharmaceuticals. Livest Res Rural Dev 19:Article # 84: http://www.cipav.org.co/lrrd/lrrd19/6/srid19084.htm

Sridhar KR, Seena S (2006) Nutritional and antinutritional significance of four unconventional legumes of the genus *Canavalia* - a comparative study. Food Chem 99:267–288

Sridhar KR, Shreelalitha SJ, Supriya P, Arun AB (2016) Nutraceutical attributes of ripened split beans of three *Canavalia* landraces. J Agric Technol 12:1275–1295

StatSoft Inc. (2008) Statistica, Version # 8. StatSoft, Tulsa, Oklahoma, USA

Supriya P, Sridhar KR, Ganesh S (2014) Fungal decontamination and enhancement of shelf life of edible split beans of wild legume *Canavalia maritima* by the electron beam irradiation. Radiat Phys Chem 96:5–11

Tapiero H, Tew KD, Nguyen BG, Mathe G (2002) Polyphenols: do they play a role in the prevention of human pathologies? Biomed Pharmacother 56:200–207

Thomas FA, Rosenthal GA, Gold DV, Dickey K (1986) Growth inhibition of a rat colon tumor by L-canavanine. Cancer Res 46:2898–2903

Vadivel V, Janardhanan K (2005) Nutritional and antinutritional characteristics of seven South Indian wild legumes. Plant Foods Hum Nutr 60:69–75

Viswanathan MB, Thangadurai D, Tamilvendan K, Ramesh N (1999) Chemical analysis and nutritional assessment of *Teramnus labialis* (L.) Spreng. (Fabaceae). Plant Foods Hum Nutr 54:345–352

Viswanathan MB, Thangadurai D, Ramesh N (2001) Biochemical valuation of *Neonotonia wightii* (Wight and Arn.) Lackey (Fabaceae). Food Chem 75:275–279

Williams SE, Hunt GE (1967) Canavanine distribution in jackbean fruit during fruit growth. Planta 77:192–202

Modern Molecular Biology Technologies and Higher Usability of Ancient Knowledge of Medicinal Plants for Treatment of Human Diseases

Venkatesh Vaidyanathan, Vijay Naidu, Anower Jabed, Khanh Tran, Prasanna Kallingappa, Chi Hsiu-Juei Kao, Alice Wang, Nishi Karunasinghe, Radha Pallati, Gareth Marlow, Shaik Noor Ahmad, and Lynnette R. Ferguson

V. Vaidyanathan (✉) · C. H.-J. Kao · A. Wang · L. R. Ferguson
Discipline of Nutrition and Dietetics, FM & HS, University of Auckland, Auckland, New Zealand

Auckland Cancer Society Research Centre, Auckland, New Zealand
e-mail: v.vaidyanathan@auckland.ac.nz; b.kao@auckland.ac.nz; l.ferguson@auckland.ac.nz

V. Naidu
School of Engineering, Computer and Mathematical Sciences, Auckland University of Technology, Auckland, New Zealand
e-mail: vijay.naidu@aut.ac.nz

A. Jabed · K. Tran
Department of Molecular Medicine and Pathology, FM & HS, University of Auckland, Auckland, New Zealand
e-mail: a.jabed@auckland.ac.nz; kb.tran@auckland.ac.nz

P. Kallingappa
Department of Molecular Medicine and Pathology, FM & HS, University of Auckland, Auckland, New Zealand

Vernon Jenson Unit, FM & HS, University of Auckland, Auckland, New Zealand
e-mail: p.kallingappa@auckland.ac.nz

N. Karunasinghe
Auckland Cancer Society Research Centre, Auckland, New Zealand
e-mail: n.karunasinghe@auckland.ac.nz

R. Pallati
Discipline of Nutrition and Dietetics, FM & HS, University of Auckland, Auckland, New Zealand
e-mail: rpal628@aucklanduni.ac.nz

G. Marlow
Experimental Cancer Medicine Centre, Cardiff University, Cardiff, UK
e-mail: MarlowG@cardiff.ac.uk

S. N. Ahmad
Department of Genetic Medicine, King Abdulaziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia
e-mail: nshaik@kau.edu.sa

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_7

Abbreviations

AKR1C3	*Aldo-keto reductase family 1 member C3*
BH-FDR	Benjamini and Hochberg False Discovery Rate
BLOSUM	BLOcks SUbstitution Matrix
BONF	Bonferroni correction
DASH	Dynamic allele-specific hybridization
DNA	Deoxyribonucleic acid
dNDPs	Deoxynucleotide diphosphates
dNTPs	Deoxynucleotide triphosphates
FASTA	FAST-All
gDNA	Genomic DNA
GeCKO	Genome-scale CRISPR knock-out
GWAS	Genome-wide association studies
HDR	Homology-directed repair
HOXB8	*Homeobox B8*
HWE	Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium
IBS	Identical by state
LD	Linkage disequilibrium
MAFFT	Multiple alignment using fast Fourier transform
ME	Minimum evolution
ML	Maximum likelihood
MP	Maximum parsimony
mRNA	Messenger ribonucleic acid
NJ	Neighbour joining
NHER	Non-homologous end joining
PAM	Point accepted mutations
PCa	Prostate cancer
PSA	Prostate-specific antigen
RFLP	Restriction fragment length polymorphism
RNA	Ribonucleic acid
RNAi	RNA interference
sgRNA	Single guide RNA
shRNA	Short hairpin RNA
SNP	Single nucleotide polymorphism
TALEN	Transcription activator-like effector nuclease
UPGMA	Unweighted pair group method with arithmetic means
ZFN	Zinc finger nuclease

Introduction

The process of treating the sick and/or injured with medicinal plants and/or plant products is very old, perhaps as old as the lithographic history of humankind itself. The link between humans and the quest for naturally obtained substances to be used against various discomforts to well-being dates from ages ago. Interestingly, the naturally obtained substances used for treating the sick and/or injured did provide comfort to the ill, as is well documented in the various evidences such as clay slabs and various books (Petrovska 2012), even holy books such as the Vedas (from India) (Tucakov 1971).

Knowledge of medicinal plants' usage is the result of a number of years of struggles against illnesses and deaths (Petrovska 2012). Some investigators have used different plants such as barks of trees, seeds, and fruit bodies and various other parts of the plants such as roots, leaves, and even flowers (Petrovska 2012) and even fungi (Kao et al. 2013). One of the most ancient written proofs of the preparation of drugs using medicinal plants has been identified on a Sumerian clay slab found in Nagpur, Maharashtra, India, and is estimated to be around 5000 years old (Kelly 2009). It comprised 12 recipes for drug preparation referring to over 250 various plants, some of them alkaloid such as poppy, henbane, and mandrake (Kelly 2009). Modern-day science has also acknowledged the bioactive components from various plants, and their actions thus are included in pharmacotherapy even till date (Petrovska 2012).

A wide range of drugs of plant origin, known to us since ancient times, has been in use throughout the last millennium (Pan et al. 2013), yet the exact number of users and frequency of usage of medicinal plants are still unknown (Smith-Hall et al. 2012). Since the knowledge and scope of medicinal plants are crucial in both developing and developed countries (Smith-Hall et al. 2012), and yet, it finds a limited scope in modern healthcare system in the post-genomic area, as mentioned by Pan et al. (2013), we have discussed some modern technologies that are used in molecular medicine, knowledge of which, we believe, will improve the overall impact of medicinal plants in treating human diseases in today's world.

We believe that the various molecular biology technologies discussed in this chapter bind to form a very strong story and aid in identifying the actual cause of any diseases and target the gene pathways and/or genes, thereby rendering the treatment with medicinal plants much more effective, as shown in Fig. 1. This modern approach to an age-old practice is also a one of its kind thought process. Here we have discussed a systematic approach to molecular diagnostics of human diseases by first identifying a gene (or genes) of interest pertaining to any particular pathway and then checking if there are single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) in the gene(s) of interest. The SNPs are then genotyped, following which a series of analyses are done to identify the SNP and gene of interest for the population in concern. This helps build a very tight story towards the identification of specific targets for medicinal plant and/or plant products to attack. It is then crucial to validate the proposed gene and SNP of interest by knocking it down and/or out by genome editing, which shall be discussed in details further.

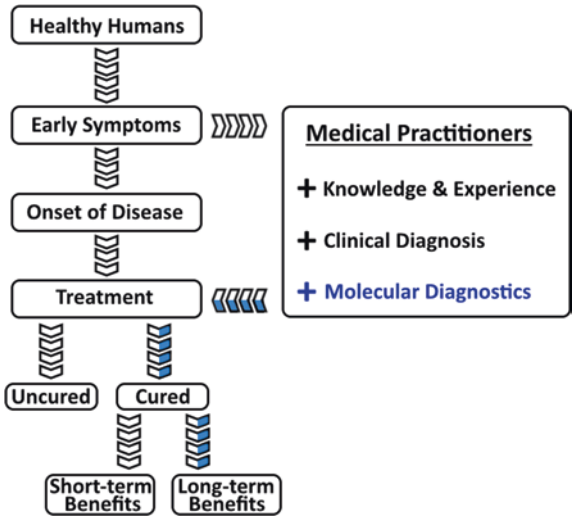


Fig. 1 A systematic order of the event with and without the implementation of molecular diagnostics by medical practitioners. After the identification of early symptoms of any disease, any individual normally visit a medical practitioner who, using his/her knowledge and experience along with the understanding of the patient's discomfort and clinical diagnosis, treats the established diseases (in most cases, by then). The treatment may or may not cure the disease. Moreover, the cure may be for a short-term or for a long-term. However, if molecular diagnostics is included in the battery of analyses (marked in blue), the treatment will eventually lead to cure, which will be for long-term, as it will predominantly be pertaining to the alteration of gene function

SNP Genotyping and Identification of Gene and SNP of Interest

Genetic variations are a major factor that contributes to the differences in various diseases susceptibly amongst individuals even belonging to the same family (Tweardy and Belmont 2009). SNPs are the variations in deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) sequence that occur when only a single nucleotide in the genome alters and is retained to be transferred to the subsequent progeny or progenies. SNPs are the most commonly occurring variations in the human genome. Functional SNPs with non-synonymous alterations could contribute to changes in protein structure(s) leading to different phenotypic characteristics (Anderson et al. 2006). Sometimes, even if the protein produced as a function of SNP is similar to the wild-type protein, still there could be a destabilization of the amino acid interactions and hydrogen-bonding networks, which may eventually lead to varied gene function (Saleh et al. 2016).

Whole-genome association analyses pertaining to complex human diseases are useful in understanding the way of these diseases (Hu et al. 2005). A number of research groups working on different human diseases have identified that there is an association between disease susceptibility and SNPs (Ciampa et al. 2011; Liu et al.

2011; Orr and Chanock 2008; Pomerantz et al. 2011), which are hence being increasingly used as potential biomarkers for various diseases including cancers such as of the prostate (Vaidyanathan et al. 2017).

The SNP genotyping methods can be classified based on their chemical properties and differential hybridization and the enzyme-based methods, although some genotyping methods rely on both bases (Ding and Jin 2009). The differential hybridization method of SNP genotyping involves the thermodynamic differences between hybridization of the target and matched probes against the target and mismatched probes (Ding and Jin 2009). The probes used, however, must clearly distinguish between the matched and the mismatched target(s); thus, the application of SNPs is highly dependent on their flanking sequences (Ding and Jin 2009). Examples of this kind of genotyping include Affymetrix array and dynamic allele-specific hybridization (DASH) (Bichenkova et al. 2011; Ding and Jin 2009). One of the earliest methods for the identification of SNPs used an enzyme-based method (Todd et al. 2001). Restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) employs certain endonuclease enzymes which can recognize and cleave specific DNA sequences and was thus a very useful technique in identifying SNPs (Todd et al. 2001). TaqMan assay combines the advantage of both differential hybridization and enzymes for SNP genotyping (Shen et al. 2009). TaqMan utilizes allele-specific probes with fluorophores linked to their 5′ end, which provides fluorescent signals after the correct probes bind to the SNP target, due to the 5′ nuclease enzyme cleavage and release of fluorophore (Shen et al. 2009). Selection of the most appropriate SNP genotyping methods depends on the amount of samples and SNPs to be screened due to cost-effectiveness. Sequenom MassARRAY iPLEX is a highly sensitive and specific differential hybridization method. It is designed to distinguish genotypes rapidly by combining iPLEX Gold chemistry with matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time-of-flight mass spectrometry (MALDI-TOF MS). The MassEXTEND primer extension chemistries along with the high-density SpectroCHIP arrays allow for a high-throughput analysis of up to 40 SNPs in a single reaction (Gabriel et al. 2009; Wright et al. 2008).

Owing to the extremely complex and heterogeneous nature of most life-threatening diseases, SNPs from any one particular gene are highly unlikely to have a strong predictive value for the risk and the subsequent prognosis. Therefore, using multiple functional SNPs of genes that are associated with prostate cancer (PCa) pathology would have a better predictive value of PCa risk and aggressiveness than a single gene SNP can offer (Anderson et al. 2006). Since Sequenom MassARRAY iPLEX is a cost-effective genotyping tool (Syrmis et al. 2011) and one of the most commonly used methods to genotype SNPs, we will be discussing this in details in this chapter.

The most important aspect of this exercise, however, is to understand the results obtained by using SNP genotyping. PLINK is an unrestricted, open-source whole-genome association study package created to conduct a set of standard, large-scale investigation in a computationally systematic way (Purcell et al. 2007). PLINK has various constructive attributes for managing and inspecting genetic information. It has various benefits such as reading data in numerous formats, concatenating two or

more files, extricating subsets (SNPs), and compressing information in a binary file format to name some (Purcell et al. 2007).

Phylogenetic Tree

Phylogenetic study is the means of deducing or determining evolutionary associations or relationships (Brinkman and Leipe 2002). Phylogeny is the evolutionary background and lineage of a species (Brown 2002). The evolutionary history deduced from phylogenetic study is usually represented as branching, treelike figures that illustrate an evaluated ancestry of the inherited associations amid organisms, molecules, or both (Brown 2002). Phylogenetics is occasionally known as a cladistics in view of the fact that the term "clade", a group of descendants from a particular pedigree, is obtained from the Greek term for branch. Nevertheless, cladistics is a specific approach of hypothesizing in relation to evolutionary associations (Brinkman and Leipe 2002).

The main purpose of phylogenetic trees (or phylogenetics) is to reassemble the correct linealogical links amongst associated biological sequences. The biological sequences typically are nucleic acid (DNA) or amino acid (protein) sequences. The other purpose is to determine the time of separation amid them (sequences) from the time they last shared a common predecessor in family (ancestor) (Brown 2002).

The use of phylogenetics is important to understand how closely are certain genes related and can be used to better understand the function(s) of the genes too.

Genetic Engineering Techniques to Study the Genes of Interest

Traditionally, validation of the involvement of a gene in the mechanism of a drug of interest was primarily performed by pharmacological approaches, wherein certain chemical compounds were used to inhibit the action of the gene products, and thus concludes about the function of the drug (Reddy and Zhang 2013). However, one of the main limitations of this approach is that the pharmacological compounds often have more than one target, which makes it difficult to distinguish between the genuine effects of the gene of interest and the off-target actions of the compounds (Reddy and Zhang 2013). To avoid this, in recent times, certain developments in gene technology have led to the emergence of novel methods for validating gene functions in drug discovery studies.

Genetic engineering was born in the late 1970s, drawing examples from the processes occurring in nature already (Fig. 2), when exogenous DNA could be taken up or randomly integrated into genome by yeast or bacteria was shown (Griffiths et al. 2000), using restriction enzymes (Fig. 3). Later on, in the late 1970s, Mario Capecchi

Fig. 2 Schematic diagram of principle of natural homologous recombination. Damage to one strand by either internal or external factors would result in the recruitment of damage control machinery of cell, which would take help from its homologous strand to repair its damaged sister strand by the process called homologous recombination

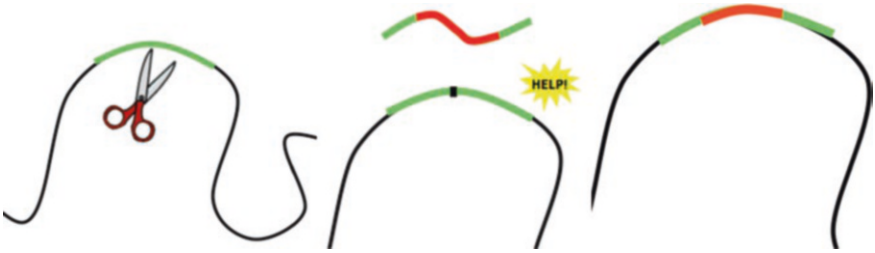


Fig. 3 Schematic diagram of increase of homologous recombination efficiency by exogenous DNA donor template

showed gene targeting by DNA microinjection into a cell's nucleus would stimulate cellular homologous recombination (Capecchi 1980). This made it possible for the first time to modify the expression of specific gene in the genome of mammals (Capecchi 1980). In 1989, Mario Capecchi, Martin Evans, and Oliver Smithies created the world's first knock-out (KO) mouse for which they got Nobel Prize in 2007 (Hansen 2007). This has been permitting scientists to study the role of specific genes in different disciplines of biology including development, physiology, and pathology.

In the last few decades, scientists were able to use "reverse genetics" as an approach to understand gene function and linking up genotype to phenotype (Gilchrist and Haughn 2010). Genetic modification using KO and knock-in (KI) or RNA interference (RNAi) has been successfully used to study gene function (Gilchrist and Haughn 2010). In the pursuit for genome editing tool development and transposon-mediated modification of endogenous gene, site-specific recombinase technology, such as Cre/loxP (Ledbetter et al. 2014) and FLP/FRT systems (Park et al. 2011), has been developed. However, the efficiency of exploration of gene function in vivo was affected by random insertion of transposons into genome, temporary knock-down (KD) effect and less efficiency of RNAi, and labour-intensive recombinase technologies (Gottumukkala et al. 2013).

Instead of indirect assessment on gene products, modern gene function validating methods directly reduce the level of gene expression (KD) by targeting its corresponding messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA) (Witkos et al. 2011). More recently, clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats (CRISPR) and CRISPR-associated (Cas) gene (CRISPR/Cas9)-based approaches allow direct intervention on the gene of interest and permanently interfere with its function (KO) (Boettcher and McManus 2015). Latest development in CRISPR/Cas9-based methods not only allows KOofa single/multiple gene(s) but also at genome-wide scale (Boettcher and McManus 2015).

Gene Knock-Down

RNA Interference (RNAi)

Inhibition of mRNA translation by short interfering RNA is the most frequently used RNAi method. RNAi is a phenomenon of mRNA degradation in which short double-stranded RNA (dsRNA) is the initiating factor for post-transcriptional gene silencing (PTGS) (Boettcher and McManus 2015; Fire et al. 1998) and is a conserved biological response to double-stranded RNA that mediates resistance to both endogenous parasites and exogenous pathogenic nucleic acids (Hannon 2002). RNAi plays a vital role in triggering a cascade of events that lead to the degradation or blocking of the corresponding mRNA in a sequence-specific manner (Hayafune et al. 2006) and subsequently to a reduction in the levels of the corresponding protein (Hannon 2002). In addition, RNAi has also emerged as an important regulator for the expression of endogenous transcripts (Hannon 2002). The power and utility of RNAi and its recent advances have driven its incredibly rapid adaption as a tool for the stable silencing of genes in a variety of different animal species including mammals (Kelly 2009).

RNAi is triggered by dsRNAs in the form of invading RNA viruses or by using artificial dsRNA molecules (Boettcher and McManus 2015; Shen et al. 2009). The dsRNAs homologous to the target mRNA are converted into 21–23 nt siRNA duplexes by RNase III enzyme called dicer in the cytoplasm (Meister and Tuschl 2004), and these siRNA duplexes are assembled into a multi-protein RNA-induced silencing complex (RISC) in the cytoplasm. Functional RISC has helicase, exonuclease, and endonuclease activities and also comprises homology-searching domains (Nykanen et al. 2001). Within RISC, the small interfering RNA (siRNA) molecule becomes separated, and the “sense” strand is degraded. RISC uses the unwound antisense strand as a guide strand to base pair with the target mRNA to disrupt the function of the specific gene (Elbashir et al. 2001). To protect from the invading virus dsRNAs, host organisms utilize the RNAi pathway to destroy cognate RNAs.

On the other hand, microRNA(s) (miRNA) can be produced from intergenic regions of genome that regulates endogenous gene expression or artificially intro-

duced molecules such as short hairpin RNA (shRNA) or miRNA (sh/miRNA). The hairpin RNAs are first transcribed in the cell nucleus as long primary transcripts that possess a 5′ cap and a poly-A tail (Lee et al. 2002; Murchison and Hannon 2004). The transcribed primary transcript is cleaved in the nucleus by Drosha enzyme and produces a 70 nt hairpin transcript (pre-miRNA) (Lee et al. 2003; Zeng and Cullen 2004). The pre-sh/miRNA transcripts are transported to the cytoplasm by exportin 5 through nuclear pores. In the cytoplasm, the pre-miRNA transcripts are cleaved by dicer enzyme, and the small ds-transcripts are loaded into RISC complex (Meister and Tuschl 2004). Hairpin-based RNAi pathway mediates either cleavage or translation termination. A perfect match of mRNA and antisense strand in RISC induces cleavage of target mRNA (most plant miRNAs) (Bartel 2004) (Fig. 4).

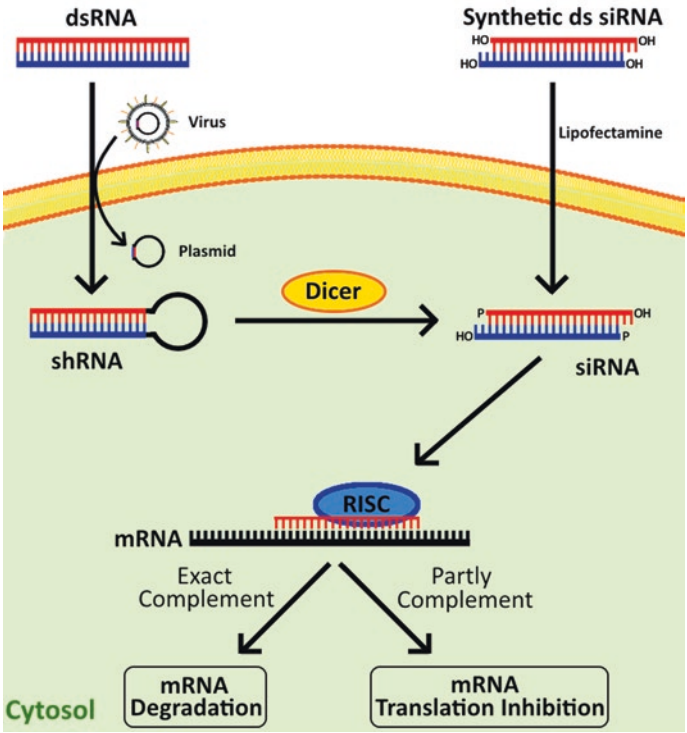


Fig. 4 RNAi pathways. Hairpin-based RNAi pathway: Long dsRNA molecules are cleaved by Drosha to produce shRNA/miRNA inside the nucleus. Hairpin RNA molecules are then transported to the cell cytoplasm and again processed into siRNA molecules by dicer. The siRNA molecules are then incorporated into RISC. The duplex RNA is unwound leaving the antisense strand to guide RISC to complementary mRNA for subsequent translational inhibition. RNAi pathway: Long dsRNA molecules are cleaved to produce siRNA molecules by dicer. The siRNA molecules are then incorporated into RISC. The duplex RNA is unwound leaving the antisense strand to guide RISC to complementary mRNA for subsequent mRNA degradation

Gene Knock-Out

In recent years, there were a number of major breakthroughs in gene targeting technology developing tools that can precisely, cheaply, and efficiently edit genome such as zinc finger nuclease (ZFN), transcription activator-like effector nuclease (TALEN), and CRISPR/Cas9 (Boettcher and McManus 2015). Principally, all three new genome editing techniques (i.e. ZFN, TALEN, and CRISPR/Cas9) apply double-strand breaks (DSB), followed by DSBs being corrected by error-prone non-homologous end joining (NHEJ) and/or homologous recombination (HR) (Boettcher and McManus 2015; Chen et al. 2016).

These reagents can be used to precisely alter the genomes of higher organisms by exploiting endogenous DNA repair machinery.

Zinc Finger Nuclease (ZFNs)

ZFNs represent the first artificial restriction enzymes engineered by fusing a DNA-binding domain to a DNA cleavage domain. Zinc finger domains can be engineered with a series of zinc fingers to target unique sequences within a specific genomic locus, subsequently fused to FokI nuclease (Boettcher and McManus 2015). Paired ZFNs recognizing two adjacent DNA sites and the FokI cleavage domain must dimerize to cleave DNA initiating either non-homologous end joining (NHER) or homology-directed repair (HDR) (Figs. 5 and 8), resulting in the disruption or change of function of the targeted gene. The utility of ZFNs is limited by their long synthesis time, high cost, and nonmodular assembly process (Boettcher and McManus 2015; Chen et al. 2016).

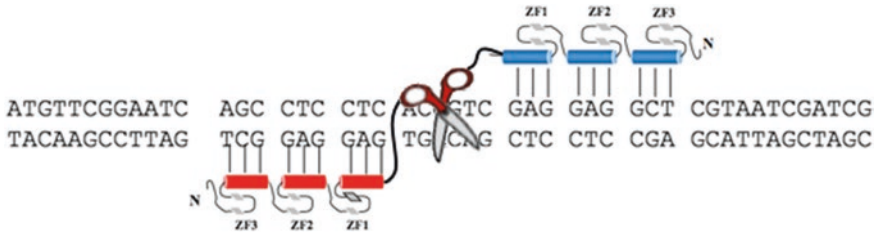


Fig. 5 A genomic double-strand break, illustrated for ZFN cleavage. A pair of three-finger ZFNs is shown at the top in association with the gene of interest. If a homologous donor DNA construct is provided, repair mechanism can proceed by HDR using the DNA construct as a donor template. Otherwise, the double-strand break can be repaired by NHEJ pathway, leading to mismatch bases at the cleavage site. These may be deletions, insertions, and base substitutions

Fig. 6 Schematic diagram of TALEN action. Heterodimeric TALENs bind to target DNA sequences to direct a fok1 nuclease domain to generate DSB between binding sites. These engineered nucleases frequently induce breaks that can be repaired via either error-prone NHEJ or HDR (Figs. 6 and 8)

Transcription Activator-Like Effector Nuclease (TALENs)

TALENs, a type of restriction enzymes, represented a huge step forward to introduce double-strand cuts on specific sequences of DNA—like ZFNs. TALENs are made by fusing transcription activator-like effectors, which can be engineered to bind to target gene sequence of interest and a FokI nuclease that cut at specific locations in a non-sequence-specific manner (Fig. 6) (Boettcher and McManus 2015; Chen et al. 2016).

CRISPR/Cas9

Clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats, or CRISPR, are genomic loci originally observed in *Escherichia coli* composed of short DNA repeats with spacers interspersed. CRISPR loci have been found in a variety of Archaea and bacterial genomes. This relatively novel family of repeats was initially discovered in 1987. CRISPR loci include repeats, spacers, a leader sequence, and CRISPR-associated (Cas) genes.

Mechanistically, CRISPR-Cas system-driven immunity in bacteria works in three major steps (Boettcher and McManus 2015):

1. Acquisition, uptake of foreign DNA sequence, and integration as new CRISPR spacers into CRISPR locus
2. Expression, where Cas proteins are produced and the CRISPR RNA (crRNA) targeting sequences are transcribed from DNA sequences known as protospacers
3. Interference, where crRNA-Cas ribonucleoprotein complexes mediate cleavage of DNA in a sequence-specific manner upstream of the protospacer adjacent motif (PAM) in any genomic location (Fig. 7)

The CRISPR loci in bacterial systems include Cas genes, a leader sequence, and several spacer sequences (in red, blue, and yellow) derived from engineered or foreign DNA that are separated by short direct-repeat sequences (in blue) (Fig. 7). Individual CRISPR RNAs (crRNAs) are generated by processing of the CRISPR

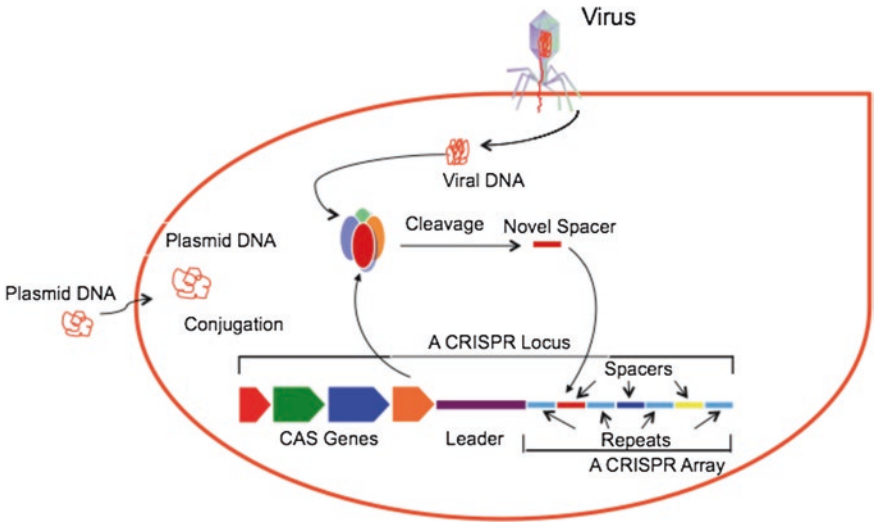


Fig. 7 Bacterial CRISPR/CAS immunity system

transcripts (van der Oost et al. 2014). Cas proteins and the crRNA make an effector complex that recognizes a target DNA sequence in a sequence-specific manner. Cleavage of the target sequence occurs and is followed by DNA repair by the endogenous cellular repair machinery or using exogenous donor template known as KI (Nurnberg et al. 2016).

The bacterial CRISPR-Cas system can be exploited for genome editing in mammalian system. Once the CRISPR components (Cas9 protein and single guide RNA (sgRNA), equivalent of bacterial crRNA) are delivered inside the mammalian cells, the expression, if CRISPR components are delivered through plasmid system, and interference steps are similar to bacterial system. Site-specific homologous sequences can also be delivered inside the cells in the form of a single-stranded DNA or as part of a plasmid to aid the specific homologous recombination event, i.e. HDR. When the cleavage at the specific loci takes place, it can be either repaired by NHEJ or HDR. The common pathway of CRISPR/ZFN/TALENs exploited for genome editing in higher organisms is shown in Fig. 8.

Genome-Scale CRISPR/Cas9 Knock-Out (GeCKO)

One of the challenges in identifying molecular mechanisms of novel compounds is that their mechanisms often relate to a group of genes rather than just a single gene. To validate such a group of genes by using single KO would therefore require a high cost and a large amount of time. The latest development in CRISPR/Cas9 technology in the last 3 years has enabled the KO of nearly 20,000 genes at the same time using GeCKO (Konermann et al. 2015).

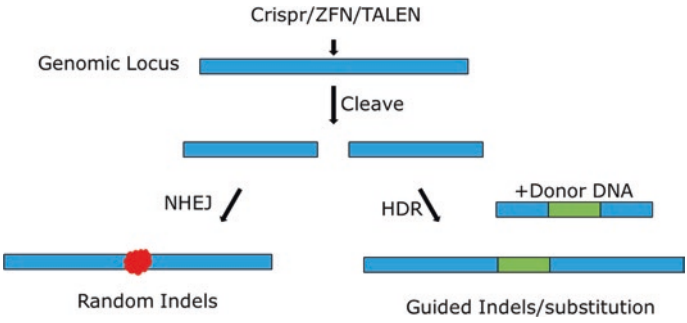


Fig. 8 Manipulation of CRISPR/ZFN/TALENs for genome editing in higher organisms: CRISPR/ZFN/TALENs are targeted to genomic locus of interest. Due to nuclease activity, once the DNA is cleaved at specific locus, the locus can be repaired by either NHEJ leading to random insertion or deletions (indels) or HDR leading to guided indels or substitutions

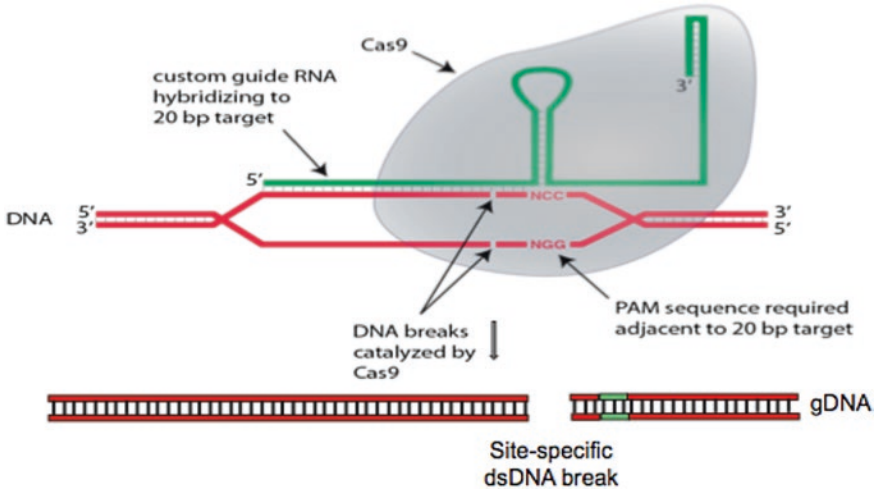


Fig. 9 CRISPR Loci and targeting of DNA sequence in mammalian system

Similar to single CRISPR/Cas9 KO, GeCKO also involves two major parts, including CRISPR/Cas9 and sgRNA, as is shown in Fig. 9. However, instead of using only one sgRNA each time, GeCKO utilizes a library containing more than 100,000 sgRNAs targeting nearly 20,000 different genes (Konermann et al. 2015).

The result of this process is a mixed population of cells, which contains different subgroups of cells, each of which has one certain gene KO, as is shown in Fig. 10. On these cells, the selection process is applied either in the form of a novel compound or a known drug to enrich for specific cells surviving those selections. Analysing the survived cell clones allows us to identify which genes are important for the sensitivity and resistance of the drug in the target cells (Konermann et al. 2015).

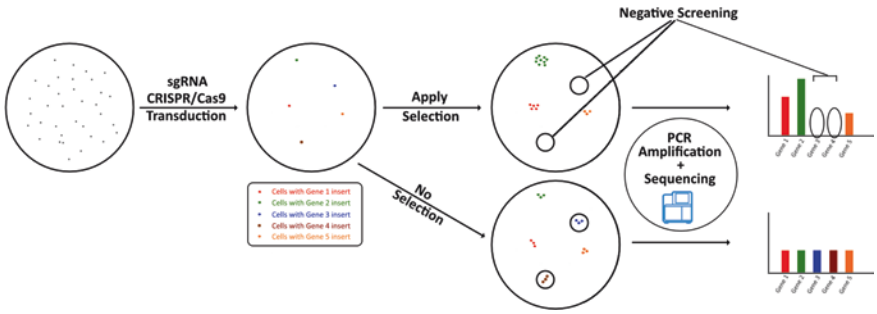


Fig. 10 A schematic plan of Genome-scale CRISPR/Cas9 KO

Animal Studies

The ultimate aim of all these modern-day technologies is to hasten the process of discovering either the novel or more efficient or sustainable way to treat the ailments chiefly in human beings (Chen et al. 2016). Before any novel treatment can be tried directly in human beings, it needs to undergo a kind of quality control in the form of animal studies.

In general, there are two set criteria for any animal studies:

1. To show that the novel treatment could work in humans
2. To show that it does not elicit adverse reactions

Quite often, most of the animal studies fail even after passing the crucial first criteria due to their potential harmful effect on human beings. The major reason for this is due to the novel treatment discovered being synthetic (man-made), which might not have undergone any selection process in the evolution (Stock 2008). In case of the treatments from natural sources, such as medicinal plants, it is more likely to pass the second criteria as both ancestors of humans and plants have sustained millions of years of common natural selection process during evolution (Stock 2008).

To begin with, to show any treatment works in animal model, we require the laboratory animal to mimic the similar human ailments that we want the treatment for. The common animals that are used for animal studies are rodents for obvious reasons, and most often, the ailment that we want to treat in humans does not manifest itself either in great numbers, which we require for statistical reasons, or is completely absent (Abubakar et al. 2016). So, to generate these humanized disease models in animals, in the past, we greatly relied on breeding for mutations, which could take decades, or the embryonic stem cells, which could easily take around 2–5 years.

However, thanks to the advent of the most recent cutting-edge gene editing technologies, as discussed in above sections, now we could create the human disease models we want in rodents at brisk rate. One technology that is revolutionizing the modification of genes in laboratory animals, and is worthy of mention, is CRISPR/

Cas9 (Chen et al. 2016). Just to exemplify this, now the intended disease model(s) can be created with good success rate in a short time span of time, sometimes within just 3 months. The mechanism of CRISPR/Cas9 has already been explained in preceding sections. The use of these technologies to generate human disease models in rodents or any other animals is outside the purview of this chapter and thus not discussed in here.

Steps to Decode the Function of Genes in Human Diseases and Role of Medicinal Plants

It is crucial, we believe, for anybody prescribing medicinal plants to patients to know the working structure of a few molecular biology diagnostic technologies to understand the mechanism of human diseases better. Here, we have given examples of various methods such as SNP genotyping, its associated precursor steps, and the data analyses and gene KD and KO to validate the gene of interest associated with any disease. We have used the example of PCa in this chapter, as we have done extensive work with regard to this major.

Selection of SNPs of Interest

SNPs in the intronic and exonic regions and also in intergenic regions should be considered for analysis when understanding the effect of SNPs on various human diseases (Vaidyanathan et al. 2017). SNPs can be identified by a thorough literature search of the published genome-wide association studies (GWAS) or SNP genotyping pertaining to the diseases to be treated or pathways associated in disease outcome (Vaidyanathan et al. 2017).

Normally research articles published on or after the year 2000 are considered for SNP genotyping studies to maintain the current trend of research (Vaidyanathan et al. 2017). Care should be taken to identify studies from the same region or comprising individuals of the same ethnicities, as certain genotypes work dissimilar across different regions and/or ethnicities (Vaidyanathan et al. 2017).

Collection of Blood Samples and DNA Extraction

Blood samples from each volunteer (patient and healthy control) need to be collected in Vacutainer® tubes (Becton Dickinson) containing ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA). EDTA works as an anti-coagulating agent. An aliquot of the sample collected must then be used for the genomic DNA extraction.

Each individual's DNA can be extracted using a genomic DNA extraction kit (commercially available) following the manufacturers' protocol either with the aid of a fully automated machine or manually. The extracted DNA samples then need to be tested for purity and concentration. The DNA templates need to be highly pure as the following polymerase chain reaction (PCR) process could be affected by RNA and protein contaminants present. The ratio of absorbance reading at 260 nm and 280 nm wavelength of UV light NanoDrop® ND-1000 Spectrophotometer (Thermo Fisher Scientific) should be between 1.7 and 2.0 (A260/A280 = 1.7–2.0). This represents highly pure DNA.

SNP Genotyping of Candidate Genes

SNP Genotyping of Candidate Genes by iPLEX MassARRAY

MassARRAY iPLEX Gold (Sequenom®) utilizes just a single-base extension of the dideoxynucleotide triphosphates (ddNTPs) at the allele of interest (SEQUENOM 2006). The basic working principle of this protocol is that two possible alleles in a SNP can be distinguished by the different masses of ddNTPs using mass spectrometry. Different SNPs comprise of extension primers of different length and mass. This variation in the mass of the extension primers allows for easy distinction of different SNPs in the same MassARRAY assay. Each extension primer should be approximately 15–30 nucleotides long and should produce products with masses in the range of 4500 Da and 9000 Da (SEQUENOM 2006). A single MassARRAY experiment can accommodate as many as 40 SNPs at the same time. Detection of the mass-specific products can be achieved by using MALDI-TOF MS. The mass spectrometry data can then be translated into genotype calls with known ddNTPs and extension primer mass via MassARRAY® Typer 4.0.2 software for analysis (SEQUENOM 2006).

Chronologically, after extracting genomic DNA from the blood sample, the next step of an iPLEX MassARRAY is PCR amplification of sequences around the SNPs of interest. Setting up a PCR reaction involves the dissolution of 10x reaction buffer (usually provided with PCR amplification kits); MgCl2, which acts as a cofactor for DNA polymerase; deoxynucleotide triphosphates (dNTPs); forward and reverse primers; the genomic DNA; and Taq DNA polymerase in nuclease-free water. The forward and reverse primers are designed to bind to the DNA sequence at around 200 bps upstream and downstream of the SNP of interest. HotStar Taq DNA Polymerase (Sequenom®) is activated at 95 °C, and the condition is maintained for 5 min in a thermocycler. This step of maintaining 95 °C ensures that the double strand of the DNA is denatured, and the forward and reverse primers can bind at the specific regions, at a temperature which suits Taq DNA polymerase to function well, as the next few repetitive steps are completely dependent on this step. Next action in a standard PCR cycle involves a repeat of three steps over a number of times. These three steps are a short denaturation step (95 °C for around 30–45 s), a step to allow the primers to anneal (55 °C for around 45–60 s), and an extension step to

allow the dNTPs to bind, while the Taq DNA polymerase aids in the process of duplication of the DNA strand with the SNP of interest (72 °C around 120 s). These steps are carried out to denature the double-stranded DNA, help in the forward and reverse primers to anneal, and extend or multiply the gene of interest using dNTPs and Taq DNA polymerase. Following these three steps is another major step of around 7 min—final extension at about 72 °C.

Once the PCR is completed, the remaining dNTPs need to be removed using shrimp alkaline phosphatase (SAP) (SEQUENOM 2006). SAP enzymes dephosphorylate dNTPs to deoxynucleotide diphosphates (dNDPs) rendering them unavailable for the following iPLEX extension reaction. Next, during the iPLEX extension reaction, the extension primers anneal to the amplified PCR products specifically to near the SNP (SEQUENOM 2006). The extension primers were extended by one nucleotide with mass-modified ddNTPs complementary to the SNP sites. The ddNTPs terminate the extension of primers.

After the PCR amplification of the gene with the SNP of interest is carried out, resin desalting is required for optimization of mass spectrometric analysis (SEQUENOM 2006). Since sodium (22 Da) and potassium (38 Da) ions have a similar mass to A/C (24 Da) and C/G (40 Da), certain SNPs can be difficult to be discriminated if these ions are present in solutes. Resin forms a complex with the free ions thus retaining and removing them from mass spectrometry analysis. Mass spectrometry analysis is carried out using a SEQUENOM® machine (SEQUENOM 2006).

The overall flow chart of the iPLEX process of SNP genotyping is provided in Fig. 11.

Genotype calling was performed using the standard post-processing calling parameters in SEQUENOM Type 4.0 software (SEQUENOM 2006). Each 384-well plate prepared for genotyping contained known HAPMAP control samples, negative controls (water), and repeats of samples used in different locations in the 384-well plate for validation of the genotyping procedure.

An example result plate using SNP rs6162 and PCa samples is shown in Fig. 12. The green-coloured wells depict the wells in which the entire procedure of SNP genotyping and subsequent result calling was successful, and the light green- and light yellow-coloured wells are also indicators of lesser quality successful results, whereas the red-coloured wells depict failures. These may be due to the presence of blanks or negative controls in the well.

SNP Genotyping of Candidate Genes by TaqMan Assay

SNPs can be genotyped using the Applied Biosystems (ABI) TaqMan MGB diallelic discrimination system. TaqMan SNP genotyping assays can be obtained either predesigned (assay-on-demand) or custom-made through Assay-by-Design service by ABI. The reactions can be prepared using 20x Primer (forward and reverse primers) and TaqMan probe labelled dye mix (FAM, VIC), 2x TaqMan Genotyping Master Mix, DNase-free water, and 10 ng/μL sample DNA as well

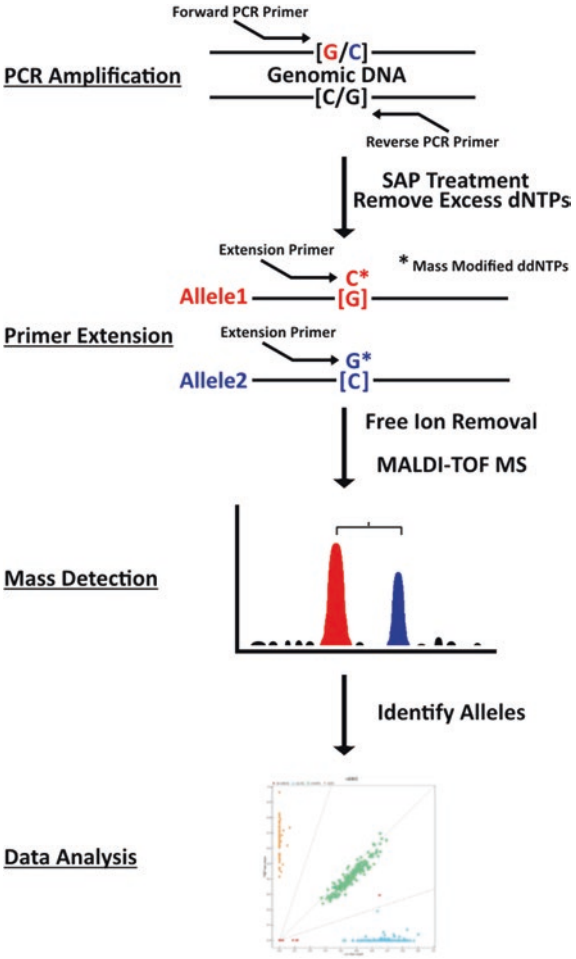


Fig. 11 iPLEX flow chart

as no-template controls (blank) in a total well volume of 5 µL. The PCR amplification can be performed using the ABI Prism 7900 HT sequence-detector machine using the following conditions, as an example: 95 °C for 10 min, followed by 40 cycles at 92 °C for 15 s, and 60 °C for 1 min.

After PCR amplification, the allelic discrimination results can be determined by performing an endpoint read. They can be analysed using the SDS 2.1 software program. The software program "calls" the genotypes depending on the fluorescence signal given through PCR amplification which exceeds the level of background.

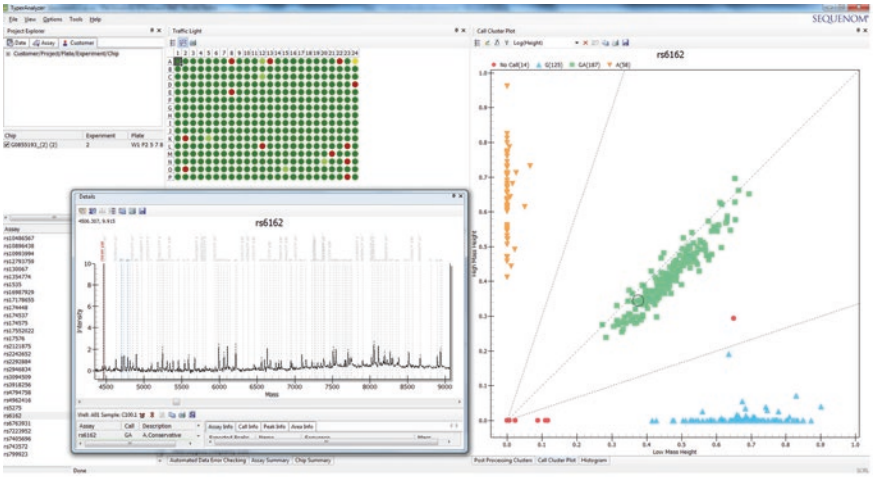


Fig. 12 An example of result plate after calling the alleles in a SNP

Statistical Analysis

SNP Data Cleaning

Before going ahead with analysing the data obtained after the Sequenom® procedure, checking the genotypes for compliance with Hardy-Weinberg Equilibrium (HWE) and for linkage disequilibrium using PLINK is a good practice (Purcell et al. 2007).

Data Analysis

A structured association approach similar to the one proposed by Vaidyanathan et al. in 2017 or PCa can be followed. This provides a simple but powerful method, to detect population stratification, and is implemented in PLINK (Vaidyanathan et al. 2017).

PLINK's clustering approach is based on the genome-wide average proportion of alleles shared identical by state (IBS) between two individuals SNPs, i.e. pairing up the SNPs based on genetic identity (Purcell et al. 2007). The IBS clustering is used to test whether the SNPs of two individuals belong to the same population. Following the stratification analysis, we performed a standard case-control association test using a Cochran-Mantel-Haenszel statistic (1df (degree of freedom)) that tests for SNP-disease association conditional on the clustering. This accounts for stratification effects, as has been reported by Vaidyanathan et al. (2017).

To avoid the possibility of false positives with multiple SNP testing, statistical significance can be restricted by the most conservative Bonferroni correction (BONF) along with the less conservative Benjamini and Hochberg false discovery

rate (BH-FDR) for multiple testing corrections. However, as in most cases, the tested SNPs are already shown to be statistically significantly associated with risk for most diseases by other researchers; variations that demonstrated significant association to risk of PCa before BONF and BH-FDR may also be considered for analyses (Vaidyanathan et al. 2017).

Association Analysis

To assess if the genes that were identified using a literature search and the SNPs present in them have an association with the samples begotten from a particular cohort, the data generated by SNP genotyping is first assessed for association analysis. To perform association analysis using PLINK, one needs genotype data in two text files, i.e. a pedigree file (.ped) and a map file (.map).

The command to perform an association analysis with multiple corrections is as follows:

```
plink --file mydata --assoc –adjust
```

The above command outputs two files: one for the association (plink.assoc) which gives the results for the association analysis and the other for adjustment (plink.assoc.adjusted) which gives the results for the association analysis with multiple adjustments. Figure 13 shows the two input files (.map and .ped), a command prompt console of the completed association analysis, and the two output files (plink.assoc and plink.assoc.adjusted) for PCa data (as an example) with 138 SNPs for 566 samples between two groups, i.e. between aggressive cancer patients and control patients from a New Zealand population as explained in Vaidyanathan et al. (2017).

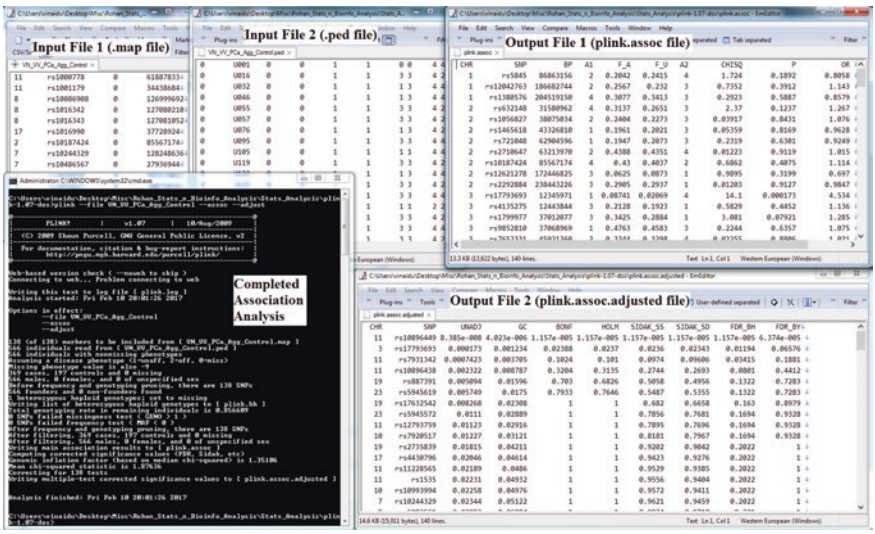


Fig. 13 Association analysis using PLINK showing the two input files, completed association analysis on a command prompt console and the two output files

The association analysis generates data to analyse and understand the effect of gene x environment interactions with regard to the disease of interest. However, the total genes of interest that were first considered before carrying out SNP genotyping should further be analysed for gene-only effect as well in the cohort. This is carried out by an interaction analysis, after adjusting for the demographic factors which are statistically identified to have a significant association with the patients having the disease(s) to be treated by using medicinal plants and/or plant products.

Interaction Analysis

It is possible that certain diseases may be driven by external or environmental factors rather the genes have a main say. In order to identify the gene-specific cause of any particular human disease, it is important to analyse the data generated by SNP genotyping by reducing the statistical influence of the environmental factors on the disease (identified by using simple student t-test). Once the association of certain genes is established, it is easier to target it in various populations.

To perform logistic interaction analysis using PLINK, one needs genotype data in three binary files, i.e. a BED file (.bed), a BIM file (.bim), and a FAM file (.fam) and a covariate file (.text) containing the covariates (environmental factors).

The command to perform a logistic interaction analysis with multiple corrections is as follows:

```
plink --bfile mydata --logistic --genotypic --covar covariates.txt --covar-name C1,C2 --adjust
```

The above command outputs two files: one for the association logistics (plink.assoc.logistic) which gives the results for the association logistic analysis and the other for adjustment (plink.assoc.logistic.adjusted) which gives the results for the association logistic analysis with multiple adjustments. Figure 14, shows the three input files (.bed, .bim and .fam), a covariate file (.text), a command prompt console of the completed interaction analysis, and the two output files (plink.assoc.logistic and plink.assoc.logistic.adjusted) for PCa data with 138 SNPs and four covariates (i.e. age, C1; BMI, C2; smoking habits, C3; and alcohol consumption, C4) for 566 samples between two groups, i.e. between aggressive cancer patients and control patients from a New Zealand population. Similar strategy can be applied for a linear model as explained in Vaidyanathan et al. (2017).

Epistasis Analysis

Once the SNPs have been genotyped, it is also crucial to see the effect of SNP x SNP interaction on the progression of that particular disease of interest. This is carried out by performing epistasis analysis using PLINK; one needs genotype data in two text files, i.e. a pedigree file (.ped) and a map file (.map).

The command to perform an epistasis analysis is as follows:

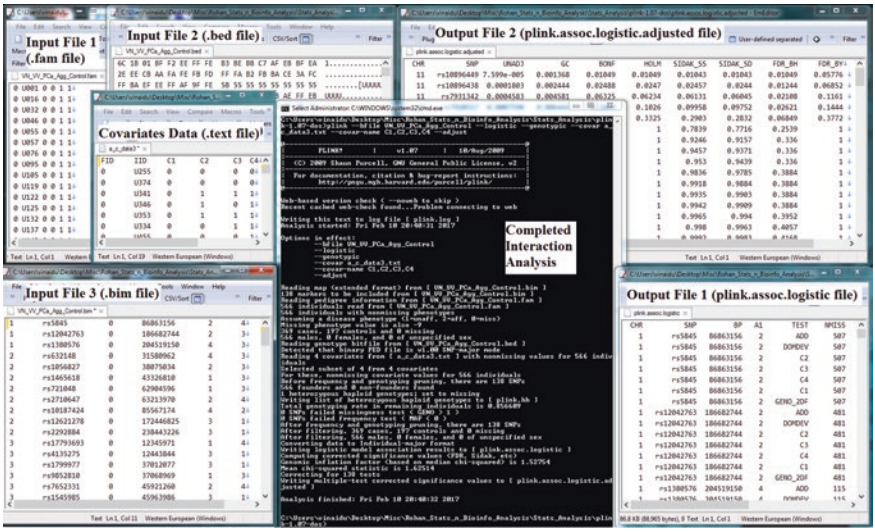


Fig. 14 Interaction analysis using PLINK showing the three input files, covariate file, completed interaction analysis on a command prompt console, and the two output files

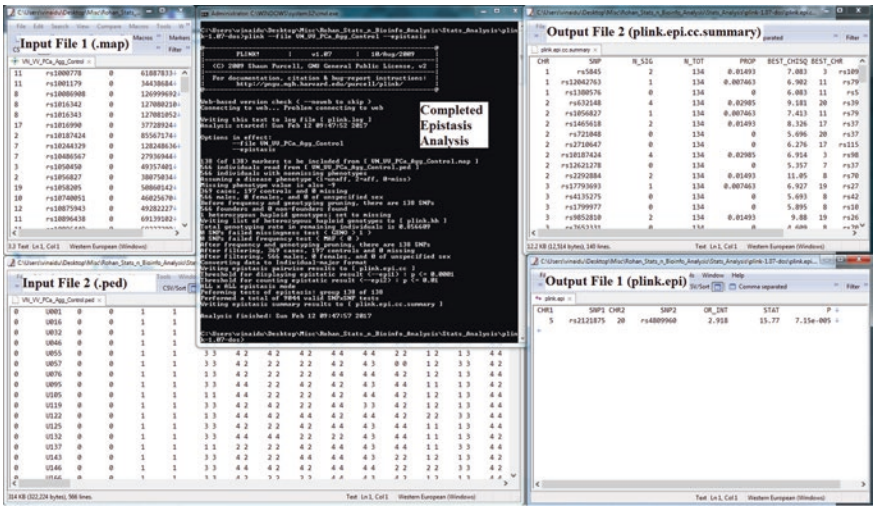


Fig. 15 Epistasis analysis using PLINK showing the two input files, completed epistasis analysis on a command prompt console and the two output files

plink --file mydata --epistasis

The above command outputs two files: one for the epistasis (plink.epi) which gives the results for the best epistasis analysis and the other for summary (plink.epi.cc.summary) which gives the results for all the epistasis analysis that were performed. Figure 15, for example, shows the two input files (.map and .ped), a com-

mand prompt console of the completed epistasis analysis, and the two output files (plink.epi and plink.epi.cc.summary) for PCa data with 138 SNPs for 566 samples between two groups, i.e. between aggressive cancer patients and control patients from a New Zealand population as explained in Vaidyanathan et al. (2017). We identified a unique SNP x SNP interaction by this scheme.

Phylogenetic Tree Generation: Four Steps

Once a gene of interest is identified after undergoing the aforementioned analyses, it is important to see if the genes have a shared evolutionary history. This aids in tackling the gene much better. There are four basic steps to generate a phylogenetic tree as shown in Fig. 16:

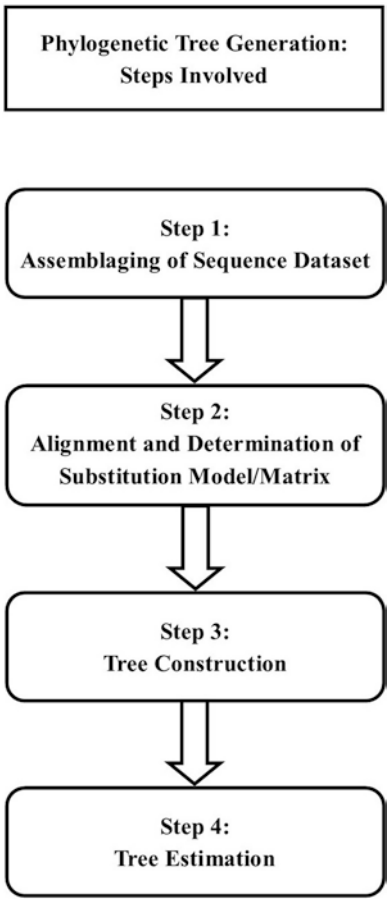


Fig. 16 The four standard steps for generating a phylogenetic tree

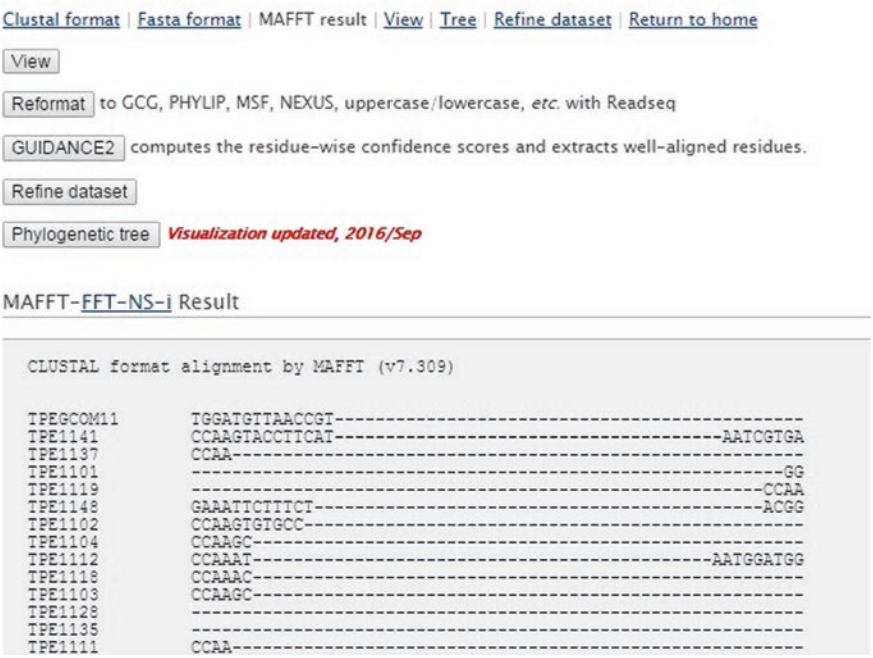


Fig. 17 Output of a multiple sequence alignment approach using MAFFT (Katoh et al. 2002; Katoh and Standley 2013). Figure 18 represents the Jalview (Waterhouse et al. 2009) output of a multiple sequence alignment using MAFFT

1. **Assemblaging of sequence dataset:** In this step, a group of homologous sequence dataset (either DNA or protein sequences) is compiled in either FASTA or Clustal format.
2. **Alignment and determination of substitution model/matrix:** In this step, the sequence dataset is aligned using openly available alignment programmes. Multiple sequence alignment approach will be used in this step to align the homologous sequence dataset. It is very crucial to choose a proper substitution matrix for a proper meaningful alignment. It is standard practice to use either BLOSUM or JTT matrix for amino acid sequences and PAM matrix for nucleic acid sequences. Figure 17 shows the output of a multiple sequence alignment using a freely available online tool known as MAFFT (Katoh et al. 2002; Katoh and Standley 2013).
3. **Tree construction:** In this step, a phylogenetic (or an evolutionary) tree is constructed from the aligned sequences. There are three different types of trees that can be constructed in this step depending on the circumstances and as discussed in the types of phylogenetics/phylogenetic trees (Table 1). Figure 19 shows a circular tree of 51 sequences, as an example, belonging to the TridenT Polymorphic Engine (TPE) virus (and its 50 variants) after representing their hexadecimal sequences into biological sequences (in this case—DNA).

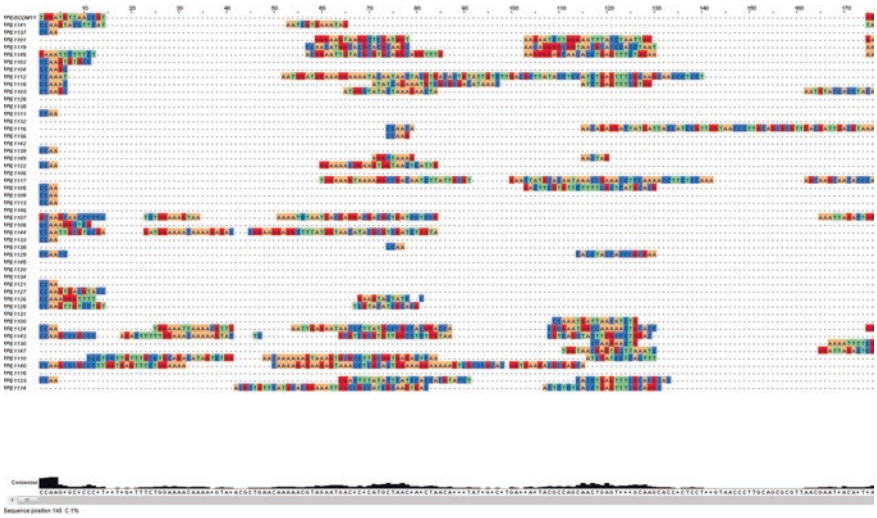


Fig. 18 Jalview (Waterhouse et al. 2009) output of a multiple sequence alignment approach using MAFFT (Katoh et al. 2002; Katoh and Standley 2013)

Table 1 Comparative analysis of the three different types of phylogenetic trees

Feature	Cladistics	Phenetics	Evolutionary systematics
Homology	Of prime significance	Not employed	Essential
Evolutionary similarity	None employed except apomorphies	All types employed (i.e. apomorphies, convergences, evolutionary reversals, parallelisms, and plesiomorphies)	All types employed (i.e. apomorphies, convergences, evolutionary reversals, parallelisms, and plesiomorphies)
Fossils	Possibly employed, but of no better significance than living species	Not employed	Possibly very essential
Association interpreted by classification or tree	Genealogy	Complete similarity or dissimilarity	Both complete similarity or dissimilarity and genealogy
Estimates (rates) of evolution	Not employed	Not employed	Very essential
Character weighting	Not employed	Not employed	Employed
Evolutionary and ecological information	Employed but occasionally	Not employed	Possibly very essential
Conversion of tree into classification	Classification literally represents branching framework (pattern) on cladogram	No complete rules; random grades of complete similarity/ dissimilarity selected to determine taxa	Classification indicates both degree of dissimilarity amongst taxa and branching framework

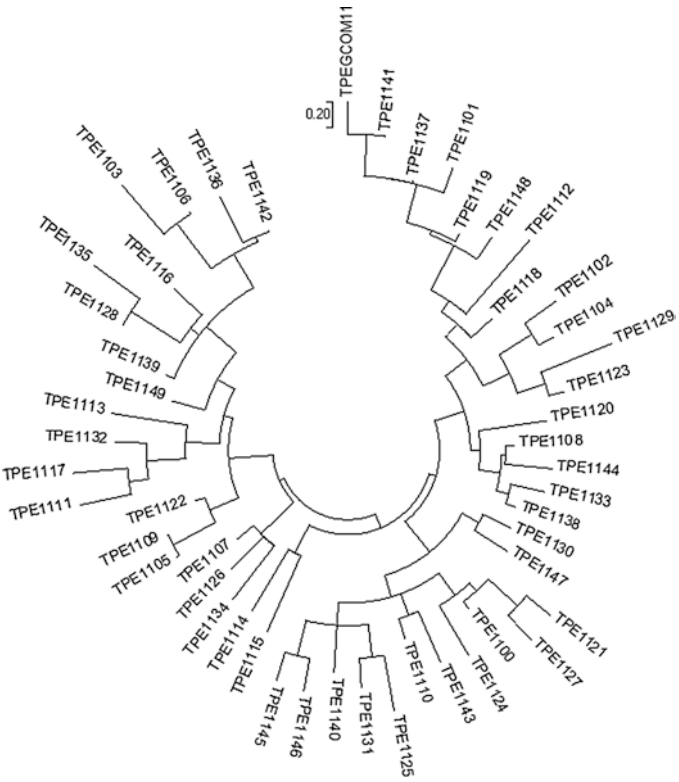


Fig. 19 Circular phylogenetic tree of 51 sequences

4. **Tree estimation:** In this step, a tree is estimated with the help of traditional statistical analysis in such a way as to evidently indicate the suitable information. Distance-based approaches such as unweighted pair group method with arithmetic means (UPGMA), neighbour joining (NJ), and minimum-evolution (ME) or discrete-based methods such as maximum parsimony (MP) and maximum likelihood (ML) can be employed to construct a significant tree. UPGMA and NJ are faster methods that use clustering algorithm, whereas ME, MP, and ML are slower methods that use optimality criterion.

Comparative analysis of different statistical analysis approaches used to estimate a tree is shown in Table 2.

Gene Knock-Down and Knock-Out

Gene Knock-Down

The following steps are carried out to KD the gene(s) of interest:

Table 2 Comparative analysis of different types of statistical analysis methods employed to construct a tree

Distance-based method	**Features**	**Limitations**
Unweighted pair group method with arithmetic means (UPGMA)	Faster and uses clustering algorithm	Loss of information
Neighbour joining (NJ)	Faster and uses clustering algorithm	Loss of information
Minimum evolution (ME)	Faster and uses optimality criterion	Loss of information
Discrete (or character)-based method	**Features**	**Limitations**
Maximum parsimony (MP)	Fast, powerful, and uses optimality criterion	Frequent statistical power depletion
Maximum likelihood (ML)	Powerful and uses optimality criterion	Sometimes slower and frequent statistical power depletion

Step 1: Designing miRNA—Selection of miRNA sequences for targeting gene of interest miRNA duplexes can be designed (gene sequence can be retrieved from the NCBI database) using online tools like BLOCK-iT™ RNAi designer tool (e.g. Invitrogen, USA). The BLOCK-iT™ RNAi designer tool utilizes proprietary algorithm to design miRNA sequences.

Step 2: Generation of single miRNA expression constructs—Both lyophilized single-stranded sense and antisense miRNA oligos are diluted in Tris-EDTA (TE) buffer to a final concentration of 200 μM. Each of the above oligos was mixed to the final concentration of 50 μM. The single-strand oligos are annealed according to the manufacturer's procedure at room temperature in a 0.5 mL sterile microcentrifuge tube.

Step 3: Identification of single miRNA inserts—Screening of single miRNA inserts is done by the plasmid DNA preparation using available DNA miniprep kits and quantification of DNA followed by restriction enzyme digest of the plasmid DNA. The correct size of miRNA inserts after restriction digestion can be visualized by gel electrophoresis.

Step 4: Transfection of mammalian cells—For transfection of cells, 2×10^5 cells are cultured in 24-well tissue culture plate containing 0.5 mL of fresh medium containing 10% FBS. Cells are cultured at 37 °C in a CO_2 incubator 12–16 h prior to transfection (to reach approximately 70–80% confluence). In order to express miRNAs transiently in cells, transfection efficiency of cells can be optimized using different transfection reagents available such as Lipofectamine 2000, Lipofectamine LTX, and FuGENE 6. The mixture of DNA and lipid is added to the cell well, mixed gently by rocking the plate back and forth, and allowed to grow for 48 h at 37 °C in a CO_2 incubator. After 4–6 h of transfection, the medium is replaced with fresh medium with 10% FBS and penicillin-streptomycin antibiotics. To increase transfection efficiency of cells, cells are subjected to shock using 10% glycerol for 3 min after 20 min of transfection period. This is then followed by gentle PBS wash to get rid of residues of glycerol.

Step 5: In vitro knock-down analysis by Western blot—For in vitro analysis of gene KD, transfected cells are lysed using lysis buffer (100 mM Tris (pH 8), 5 mM EDTA, 0.1% SDS, and 200 mM NaCl). The protein concentration of the lysates can be measured by BCA protein assay kit in accordance to the manufacturer's guidelines. Total protein is subjected to SDS-PAGE along with Benchmark™ pre-stained protein ladder (e.g. Invitrogen, USA). A transfer sandwich is set up and placed on the iBlot gel transfer device (e.g. Invitrogen, USA).

Protein transfer is done in 7 min, and the efficiency of transfer is checked by Ponceau staining. The membrane is then blocked with blocking buffer for 2 h at room temperature. Primary antibody is added to the membrane for overnight incubation at room temperature. A secondary antibody with HRP conjugate is added to the membrane and incubated at room temperature for 2 h. To visualize the target protein bands, the membrane is treated with enzyme-linked chemiluminescence detection reagents (A and B) from Amersham, for example.

Gene Knock-Out (CRISPR/Cas 9 System)

The following steps are carried out to KO the gene(s) of interest:

Step 1: Procedure for generating sgRNA expression vectors—Targeting sgRNAs are designed based on the rules outlined in Mali et al. (2013). The bicistronic pX335 (Addgene) expression vector expressing Cas9 nickase or wild-type Cas 9 system (pX458) is digested with BbsI and phosphorylates with T4 PNK (e.g. NEB). The linearized vector is gel purified, and a pair of DNA oligos for each targeting site is annealed and ligated to the linearized vector.

Step 2: Cell culture and transfection—Cell lines are cultured in growth medium supplemented with 10% foetal bovine serum, 100 U/mL penicillin, 100 μg/mL streptomycin, and 2 mmol/L L-glutamine in a 37 °C humidified incubator with 5% CO_2. For transfection, cells are co-transfected with two plasmids expressing mammalian codon-optimized Cas9 and sgRNA (single targeting), along with plasmid expressing GFP (e.g. Addgene) to check for transfection efficiency, using Lipofectamine 2000 (e.g. Life Technologies) following the manufacturer's protocol.

Step 3: Surveyor nuclease assay and RFLP analysis for genome modification—Transfected cells are incubated for 72 h prior to genomic DNA extraction. Genomic DNA is extracted from cells using PureLink genomic DNA (gDNA) mini kit (e.g. from Life Technologies) following the manufacturer's protocol. The genomic region flanking the Cas9 target sites is PCR amplified followed by the QIAquick spin column (e.g. QIAGEN) purification. Purified PCR products are subjected to a reannealing process by heat and cold to enable heteroduplex formation. The products are treated with Surveyor mutation detection kit (e.g. Transgenomics) and run on DNA gel. PCR products are also used for RELF analysis. PCR products are digested with specific restriction enzymes and separated on DNA gel. Finally, in order to confirm indels, amplified DNA sequence is cloned into a TOPO TA vector (e.g. Invitrogen) followed by Sanger sequencing.

Step 4: Protein analysis—KO cell clonal lines are cultured until 80% confluency. The consequence of gene KO is determined by Western blot analysis.

Gene Knock-Out (GeCKO)

The following steps are carried out to KO the gene(s) of interest:

Step 1: The first step of a genome-scale CRISPR/Cas9 KO (GeCKO) screen involves transducing cells with a genome-wide library of sgRNAs. To date, there are two approaches that have been proposed for these steps. In one-vector model by Shalem et al. (2014), cells are transduced with the Cas9-containing vector and sgRNAs at the same time. To increase the efficiency of the transduction, Sanjana et al. (2014) proposed to use a two-vector approach, in which cells are first transduced with blasticidin-Cas9 to select a permanent Cas9-expressing cell population. A second transduction is then performed with a library of puromycin sgRNAs with such a low multiplicity of infection that each cell is likely to be transduced with a maximum of one single gRNA.

Step 2: In the second step of a GeCKO screen, cell libraries are further selected by the treatment of compounds of interest. The control library and the survival cells after the treatment selection are then subjected to DNA extraction and deep sequencing in the third step(s).

Step 3: In the bioinformatics analysis step, sequencing data files are demultiplexed to FASTQ files. The output files are further trimmed to select only 20 bp of the sgRNA amplicons, which are then aligned and then exported into sam and bam files for the sorting steps by either one or combination of three analysis packages, which have been introduced, including RIGER, MAGECK, and MAGECK-MLE. Analysis results are then further analysed by gene enrichment tools to identify genes and pathways responsible for the drug sensitivity and resistance.

Once a gene of interest is identified after the aforementioned methods, we can screen the medicinal plants which can affect the expression of the same gene for better patient outcome. This will help save a lot of revenue as well, and the scheme of plans will be very strict, thereby reducing the chances of human errors by a trial and error approach.

Discussion

Molecular diagnostics is the future for human healthcare system (Green 2005). There are a number of advantages of using molecular technologies in diagnosing and treating human diseases (Green 2005; Vaidyanathan et al. 2017). There are a number of approaches that can be taken to identify the genic cause of health issues in humans. There are many aspects, in turn, which affect the expression of those genic factors too, as was explained in Vaidyanathan et al. in 2017 with PCa being the disease studied in a population of New Zealand men (Vaidyanathan et al. 2017).

In this chapter, we have proposed that molecular diagnostics, including the validation of results using animal studies, will be highly beneficiary for using the efficiency of medicinal plant(s) and/or plant product(s) in combatting various human diseases, including and not limited to various cancers. To further our point, we would draw an example from the findings of our group while working on aggressive PCa.

One of our recent research publications identified that the G allele of the SNP rs12529 in the gene *Aldo-Keto Reductase family 1 member C3* (*AKR1C3*) was significantly associated with lower prostate-specific antigen (PSA) levels (a test for clinical diagnosis of PCa) in PCa and benign urology disease groups compared to healthy controls (Karunasinghe et al. 2013). The SNP rs12529 does not appear in the GWAS pertaining to PCa, probably due to the pro-cancer modulation effects brought to the forefront only after the interaction(s) with confounding factors (Karunasinghe et al. 2016). It is even more interesting because an isoquinoline alkaloid found in a Chinese traditional medicinal plant, berberine (2,3-methylenedioxy-9,10-dimenthoxyproto-berberine chloride), was recently demonstrated to inhibit the AKR1C3 enzyme without having much influence on the transcription and eventually protein levels (Tian et al. 2016). According to Tian et al. (2016), berberine can also suppress cell proliferation as well as testosterone production in 22Rv1 PCa cell line (Tian et al. 2016). This is a perfect demonstration of how the knowledge of molecular diagnostics can benefit the use of medicinal plants for treating human diseases and vice versa.

There are a number of other examples; medicinal plants and/or plant product(s) have been used for various diseases, but an in-depth knowledge of molecular mechanism of diseases, especially the ones pertaining to life-threatening conditions such as various cancers, can lead to a better patient outcome. With a bulk of the developed and developing countries relying heavily on medicinal plants (Petrovska 2012) and most modern pharmaceutical companies too relying on identifying the active bio-component in medicinal plants, it is absolutely vital that this ever-advancing field of study—molecular biology—be employed to prepare better sustainable drug(s) to combat a number of ailments.

References

Abubakar AA, Noordin MM, Azmi TI, Kaka U, Loqman MY (2016) The use of rats and mice as animal models in ex vivo bone growth and development studies. Bone Joint Res 5:610–618

Anderson JE, Hansen LL, Mooren FC, Post M, Hug H, Zuse A, Los M (2006) Methods and biomarkers for the diagnosis and prognosis of cancer and other diseases: towards personalized medicine. Drug Resist Updat 9:198–210

Bartel DP (2004) MicroRNAs: genomics, biogenesis, mechanism, and function. Cell 116:281–297

Bichenkova EV, Lang Z, Yu X, Rogert C, Douglas KT (2011) DNA-mounted self-assembly: new approaches for genomic analysis and SNP detection. Biochim Biophys Acta 1809:1–23. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbagrm.2010.11.002

Boettcher M, McManus MT (2015) Choosing the right tool for the job: RNAi, TALEN or CRISPR. Mol Cell Endocrinol 58:575–585. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.molcel.2015.04.028

Brinkman FSL, Leipe DD (2002) Phylogenetic analysis. In: Baxevanis AD, Ouellette BFF (eds) Bioinformatics: a practical guide to the analysis of genes and proteins. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, USA, pp 323–358

Brown T (2002) Molecular phylogenetics, 2nd edn. Wiley-Liss, Oxford

Capecchi MR (1980) High efficiency transformation by direct microinjection of DNA into cultured mammalian cells. Cell 22:479–488

Chen S, Sun H, Miao K, Deng CX (2016) CRISPR-Cas9: from genome editing to cancer research. Int J Biol Sci 12:1427–1436. https://doi.org/10.7150/ijbs.17421

Ciampa J, Yeager M, Amundadottir L, Jacobs K, Kraft P, Chung C, Wacholder S, Yu K, Wheeler W, Thun MJ, Divers WR, Gapstur S, Albanes D, Virtamo J, Weinstein S, Giovannucci E, Willett WC, Cancel-Tassin G, Cussenot O, Valeri A, Hunter D, Hoover R, Thomas G, Chanock S, Chatterjee N (2011) Large-scale exploration of gene-gene interactions in prostate cancer using a multistage genome-wide association study. Cancer Res 71:3287–3295

van der Oost J, Westra ER, Jackson RN, Wiedenheft B (2014) Unravelling the structural and mechanistic basis of CRISPR-Cas systems. Nat Rev Micro 12:479–492

Ding C, Jin S (2009) High-throughput methods for SNP genotyping. Methods Mol Biol 578:245–254. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-60327-411-1_16

Elbashir SM, Harborth J, Lendeckel W, Yalcin A, Weber K, Tuschl T (2001) Duplexes of 21-nucleotide RNAs mediate RNA interference in cultured mammalian cells. Nature 411:494–498

Fire A, Xu S, Montgomery MK, Kostas SA, Driver SE, Mello CC (1998) Potent and specific genetic interference by double-stranded RNA in Caenorhabditis elegans. Nature 391:806–811

Gabriel S, Ziaugra L, Tabbaa D (2009) SNP genotyping using the Sequenom MassARRAY iPLEX platform. Curr Protoc Hum Genet 2:12. https://doi.org/10.1002/0471142905.hg0212s60

Gilchrist E, Haughn G (2010) Reverse genetics techniques: engineering loss and gain of gene function in plants. Brief Funct Genomics 9:103–110. https://doi.org/10.1093/bfgp/elp059

Gottumukkala S, Dwarakanath CD, Sudarsan S (2013) Ribonucleic acid interference induced gene knockdown. J Indian Soc Periodontol 17:417–422. https://doi.org/10.4103/0972-124X.118309

Green DM (2005) Improving health care and laboratory medicine: the past, present, and future of molecular diagnostics. Proc (Bayl Univ Med Cent) 18:125–129

Griffiths A, Miller J, Suzuki D, Lewontin R, Gelbart W (2000) Recombinant DNA technology in eukaryotes, an introduction to genetic analysis. W. H. Freeman and Company, New York

Hannon GJ (2002) RNA interference. Nature 418:244–251

Hansen T (2007) The nobel prize in physiology or medicine 2007. Scand J Immunol 66:603–603. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-3083.2007.02041.x

Hayafune M, Miyano-Kurosaki N, Takaku H, Park WS (2006) Silencing of HIV-1 gene expression by siRNAs in transduced cells. Nucleosides Nucleotides Nucleic Acids 25:795–799

Hu N, Wang C, Hu Y, Yang HH, Giffen C, Tang ZZ, Han XY, Goldstein AM, Emmert-Buck MR, Buetow KH, Taylor PR, Lee MP (2005) Genome-wide association study in esophageal cancer using GeneChip mapping 10K array. Cancer Res 65:2542–2546

Kao C, Jesuthasan AC, Bishop KS, Glucina MP, Ferguson LR (2013) Anti-cancer activities of Ganoderma lucidum: active ingredients and pathways. Func Foods Health Disease 3:48–65

Karunasinghe N, Lange K, Yeo Han D, Goudie M, Zhu S, Wang AH, Bishop K, Ferguson LR, Masters JG (2013) Androgen pathway related gene variants and prostate cancer association in auckland men. Curr Pharmacogenomics Pers Med 11:22–30

Karunasinghe N, Zhu Y, Han DY, Lange K, Zhu S, Wang A, Ellett S, Masters J, Goudie M, Keogh J, Benjamin B, Holmes M, Ferguson LR (2016) Quality of life effects of androgen deprivation therapy in a prostate cancer cohort in New Zealand: can we minimize effects using a stratification based on the aldo-keto reductase family 1, member C3 rs12529 gene polymorphism? BMC Urol 16:1–14. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12894-016-0164-4.

Katoh K, Standley DM (2013) MAFFT multiple sequence alignment software version 7: improvements in performance and usability. Mol Biol Evol 30:772–780

Katoh K, Misawa K, Kuma Ki, Miyata T (2002) MAFFT: a novel method for rapid multiple sequence alignment based on fast Fourier transform. Nucleic Acids Res 30:3059–3066. https://doi.org/10.1093/nar/gkf436

Kelly K (2009) History of Medicine. Facts on File, New York, pp 29–50

Konermann S, Brigham MD, Trevino AE, Joung J, Abudayyeh OO, Barcena C, Hsu PD, Habib N, Gootenberg JS, Nishimasu H, Nureki O, Zhang F (2015) Genome-scale transcriptional activation by an engineered CRISPR-Cas9 complex. Nature 517:583–588. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature14136

Ledbetter DJ, Thomson JG, Piedrahita JA, Rucker Iii EB (2014) 5 - Gene targeting in embryonic stem cells, II: conditional technologies A2 - pinkert, carl A, transgenic animal technology, 3rd edn. Elsevier, London, pp 141–165

Lee Y, Jeon K, Lee JT, Kim S, Kim VN (2002) MicroRNA maturation: stepwise processing and subcellular localization. EMBO J 21:4663–4670

Lee Y, Ahn C, Han J, Choi H, Kim J, Yim J, Lee J, Provost P, Radmark O, Kim S, Kim VN (2003) The nuclear RNase III Drosha initiates microRNA processing. Nature 425:415–419

Liu H, Wang B, Han C (2011) Meta-analysis of genome-wide and replication association studies on prostate cancer. Prostate 71:209–224. https://doi.org/10.1002/pros.21235

Mali P, Esvelt KM, Church GM (2013) Cas9 as a versatile tool for engineering biology. Nat Methods 10:957–963

Meister G, Tuschl T (2004) Mechanisms of gene silencing by double-stranded RNA. Nature 431:343–349

Murchison EP, Hannon GJ (2004) miRNAs on the move: miRNA biogenesis and the RNAi machinery. Curr Opin Cell Biol 16:223–229

Nurnberg ST, Zhang H, Hand NJ, Bauer RC, Saleheen D, Reilly MP, Rader DJ (2016) From loci to biology: Functional Genomics of Genome-Wide Association for Coronary Disease. Circ Res 118:586–606. https://doi.org/10.1161/circresaha.115.306464

Nykanen A, Haley B, Zamore PD (2001) ATP requirements and small interfering RNA structure in the RNA interference pathway. Cell 107:309–321

Orr N, Chanock S (2008) Common genetic variation and human disease. Adv Genet 62:1–32

Pan S-Y, Zhou S-F, Gao S-H, Yu Z-L, Zhang S-F, Tang M-K, Sun J-N, Ma D-L, Han Y-F, Fong W-F, Ko K-M (2013) New perspectives on how to discover drugs from herbal medicines: CAM's outstanding contribution to modern therapeutics. Evid Based Complement Alternat Med 2013:25. https://doi.org/10.1155/2013/627375

Park YN, Masison D, Eisenberg E, Greene LE (2011) Application of the FLP/FRT system for conditional gene deletion in yeast Saccharomyces cerevisiae. Yeast 28:673–681. https://doi.org/10.1002/yea.1895

Petrovska BB (2012) Historical review of medicinal plants' usage. Pharmacogn Rev 6(11):1–5

Pomerantz MM, Werner L, Xie W, Regan MM, Lee GS, Sun T, Evan C, Petrozziello G, Nakabayashi M, Oh WK, Kantoff PW, Freedman ML (2011) Association of prostate cancer risk Loci with disease aggressiveness and prostate cancer-specific mortality. Cancer Prev Res (Phila) 4:719–728

Purcell S, Neale B, Todd-Brown K, Thomas L, Ferreira MA, Bender D, Maller J, Sklar P, de Bakker PI, Daly MJ, Sham PC (2007) PLINK: a tool set for whole-genome association and population-based linkage analyses. Am J Hum Genet 81:559–575

Reddy AS, Zhang S (2013) Polypharmacology: drug discovery for the future. Expert Rev Clin Pharmacol. Doi: https://doi.org/10.1586/ecp.12.74

Saleh MA, Solayman M, Paul S, Saha M, Khalil MI, Gan SH (2016) Impacts of nonsynonymous single nucleotide polymorphisms of adiponectin receptor 1 gene on corresponding protein stability: a computational approach. Biomed Res Int 2016:12. https://doi.org/10.1155/2016/9142190

SEQUENOM I (2006) MassARRAY® Assay Design 3.1 Software User's Guide, San Diego

Shalem O, Sanjana NE, Hartenian E, Shi Xi, Scott DA, Mikkelson T, Heckl D, Ebert BL, David ER, Doench JD, Zhang F (2014) Genome-scale CRISPR-cas9 knockout screening in human cells. Science 343(6166):84–87

Shen GQ, Abdullah KG, Wang QK (2009) The TaqMan method for SNP genotyping. Methods Mol Biol 578:293–306. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-60327-411-1_19

Smith-Hall C, Larsen HO, Pouliot M (2012) People, plants and health: a conceptual framework for assessing changes in medicinal plant consumption. J Ethnobiol Ethnomed 8:43. https://doi.org/10.1186/1746-4269-8-43

Stock JT (2008) Are humans still evolving?: Technological advances and unique biological characteristics allow us to adapt to environmental stress. Has this stopped genetic evolution? EMBO Rep 9:S51–S54. https://doi.org/10.1038/embor.2008.63

Syrmis MW, Moser RJ, Whiley DM, Vaska V, Coombs GW, Nissen MD, Sloots TP, Nimmo GR (2011) Comparison of a multiplexed MassARRAY system with real-time allele-specific PCR technology for genotyping of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus. Clin Microbiol Infect 17:1804–1810. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1469-0691.2011.03521.x

Tamura K, Nei M (1993) Estimation of the number of nucleotide substitutions in the control region of mitochondrial DNA in humans and chimpanzees. Mol Biol Evol 10:512–526

Tian Y, Zhao L, Wang Y, Zhang H, Xu D, Zhao X, Li Y, Li J (2016) Berberine inhibits androgen synthesis by interaction with aldo-keto reductase 1C3 in 22Rv1 prostate cancer cells. Asian J Androl 18:607–612

Todd R, Donoff RB, Kim Y, Wong DT (2001) From the chromosome to DNA: Restriction fragment length polymorphism analysis and its clinical application. J Oral Maxillofac Surg 59:660–667

Tucakov J (1971) Healing with plants – phytotherapy. Beograd: Culture:180–190

Tweardy DJ, Belmont JW (2009) "Personalizing" academic medicine: opportunities and challenges in implementing genomic profiling. Transl Res 154:288–294

Vaidyanathan V, Naidu V, Kao CH-J, Karunasinghe N, Bishop KS, Wang A, Pallati R, Shepherd P, Masters J, Zhu S, Goudie M, Krishnan M, Jabed A, Marlow G, Narayanan A, Ferguson L (2017) Environmental factors and risk of aggressive prostate cancer among a population of New Zealand men - a genotypic approach. Mol BioSyst 13:681–698. https://doi.org/10.1039/C6MB00873A

Waterhouse AM, Procter JB, Martin DM, Clamp M, Barton GJ (2009) Jalview Version 2--a multiple sequence alignment editor and analysis workbench. Bioinformatics 25:1189–1191

Witkos T, Koscianska E, Krzyzosiak W (2011) Practical Aspects of microRNA Target Prediction. Curr Mol Med 11:93–109. https://doi.org/10.2174/156652411794859250

Wright WT, Heggarty SV, Young IS, Nicholls DP, Whittall R, Humphries SE, Graham CA (2008) Multiplex MassARRAY spectrometry (iPLEX) produces a fast and economical test for 56 familial hypercholesterolaemia-causing mutations. Clin Genet 74:463–468

Zeng Y, Cullen BR (2004) Structural requirements for pre-microRNA binding and nuclear export by Exportin 5. Nucleic Acids Res 32:4776–4785

EST (Expressed Sequence Tag): A Technique for Identification of Plant Secondary Metabolite Genes

Aruna G. Joshi and Ashutosh R. Pathak

Introduction

Plants are the major sources of various secondary metabolites as over 2,00,000 are produced by them (Dixon and Strack 2003; Kutchan and Dixon 2005). However, plants synthesize them as a defense mechanism to sustain in wild environment. These metabolites also have medicinal value and are used to treat infections, health disorders, and illness in humans (Wyk and Wink 2004). They are routinely used by pharmaceutical, herbal, flavor, and aroma industries for various purposes. Pharmaceuticals have a high market value, and about 25% of drugs contain at least one active ingredient of plant origin (Rischer et al. 2006). Synthesis of these metabolites is under the control of different genes, and they are expressed in a particular tissue or cell type that varies with time, physiology, and environmental conditions of the plant (Pichersky and Gang 2000). Plant genomes are known to contain approximately 20,000–60,000 genes, out of which 15–25% help in biosynthesis of secondary metabolites (Bevan et al. 1998; Somerville and Somerville 1999). To unravel the biosynthetic pathways of different secondary metabolites, identification and sequencing of different gene involved for the same is essential, which can be used in metabolic engineering of plants. Whole genome sequencing is laborious and expensive, for organisms with large genome sizes. There may be genome expansion, due to retrotransposon repeats, which makes it less attractive for higher plants (Bennetzen 2002).

A. G. Joshi (✉) · A. R. Pathak
Faculty of Science, Department of Botany, The Maharaja Sayajirao University of Baroda, Vadodara, Gujarat, India

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_8

Plant Genome Analysis Utilizing ESTs

Functional genomics are powerful tools for identifying expressed genes. One of the popular and relatively cheap methods in transcriptome analysis is generation and analysis of expressed sequence tags (ESTs). They are typically unedited and automatically processed small sequences (200–800 bp), generated by single pass sequencing of randomly selected cDNA clones. It provides information of the genes being expressed in particular tissue at that particular time (Hatey et al. 1998). These cDNA libraries contain tens of thousands of clones and sequencing of the 5′ and 3′ ends from these libraries allows the identification of different transcripts. It is useful for the purposes of gene identification and/or confirmation of gene functions in plants whose genome sequences are not available (Parkinson and Blaxter 2009). In this technique, sequencing of cDNAs is done followed by comparison with databases which are the repository of genes. By comparing the sequences, putative functions for cDNA clones may be determined (Velculescu et al. 1995). Hence it is an important tool by which one can understand plant genome structure, gene expression, and its functions (Lopez et al. 2005). Identification of gene sequences helps in functional analyses of genes involved in secondary metabolite biosynthesis, which in turn has led to understand the metabolic systems of plants (Yonekura-Sakakibara and Saito 2009). First use of this technique dates back in the 1980s when it was used for sequencing inserts from 178 clones derived from a rabbit muscle cDNA library (Putney et al. 1983). Then a decade later, this technique was accepted as an alternative method for genome sequencing projects (Adams et al. 1991). In case of plants, EST was first used in *A. thaliana* (Hofte et al. 1994); it helps in identification of significant portions of an organism's gene content. Hence it is a key step toward genome sequencing projects (van der Hoeven et al. 2002). On 1 January 2013, a record number of 74,186,692 public entries were listed in dbEST (www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/genbank/dbest/dbest_summary/). The highest number of ESTs was for humans (87,04,790), whereas in case of plants, the highest number is for *Zea mays* (20,19,137). Table 1 summarizes the list of the top 10 plant species for which highest number of ESTs was submitted in dbEST.

Table 1 Plant species with highest number of ESTs in dbEST database

Plant	No. of ESTs
Zea mays	20,19,137
Arabidopsis thaliana	15,29,700
Glycine max	14,61,722
Triticum aestivum	12,86,372
Oryza sativa	12,53,557
Panicum virgatum	7,20,590
Brassica napus	6,43,881
Hordeum vulgare + subsp. *Vulgare*	5,01,838
Vitis vinifera	4,46,664
Phaseolus coccineus	3,91,150

Due to cost-effectiveness, it is routinely used for isolation and expression of several genes responsible for the biosynthesis of secondary metabolites (Ohlrogge and Benning 2000; Brandle et al. 2002; Lopez et al. 2005). In addition to gene discovery, this technique is also useful in providing information on gene functions and clarifying structural gene annotation and for development of molecular markers (Yonekura-Sakakibara and Saito 2009; Kalia et al. 2011), construction of genome maps (Paterson et al. 2000), confirming the coding regions of genome (Adams et al. 1991), analyzing phylogenetic relationships between the species (Nishiyama et al. 2003), helping in interpretation of transcriptome activity (Ewing et al. 1999; Ogihara et al. 2003) as well as providing the basis for development of DNA chips (Schena et al. 1995; Chen et al. 1998). One of the first uses of EST collection was in identification of genes involved in ricinoleic acid biosynthetic pathway (van de Loo et al. 1995). Till date many genes of different plant secondary metabolite pathways have been identified through EST analysis; however, due to random selection of cDNAs, there are chances to miss the rare transcripts, and only 60% of genes can be analyzed (Bonaldo et al. 1996). This can be overcome by next-generation sequencing technologies like Roche-454 GS FLX, ABI SOLiD, Illumina GAII, HeliScope, etc. which reduce the cost and complexity of sequencing, rendering large-scale EST analyses that are more feasible (Morozova et al. 2009; Simon et al. 2009). Earlier the sequencing was done using Sanger method which could generate very less ESTs as compared to high-throughput technique like GS FLX which generated a vast number of ESTs (McCombie et al. 1992; Bainbridge et al. 2006). GS FLX technique is being widely used for de novo sequencing and EST analyses in plants by many researchers (Wang et al. 2009; Luo et al. 2010a, b).

Development and processing of ESTs involve several steps, and finally the sequences have to be compared with the available sequences using various databases.

Expressed Sequence Tag (EST)

Methodology

The mRNAs are isolated from the tissue/cell, and cDNAs are synthesized to generate ESTs (Fig. 1).

After generation and sequencing of cDNA clones, different steps of processing are carried out to avoid contamination in the final result. Once the assembled sequences are obtained, possible functions of genes can be assigned through downstream annotation process which is achieved via database similarity searches.

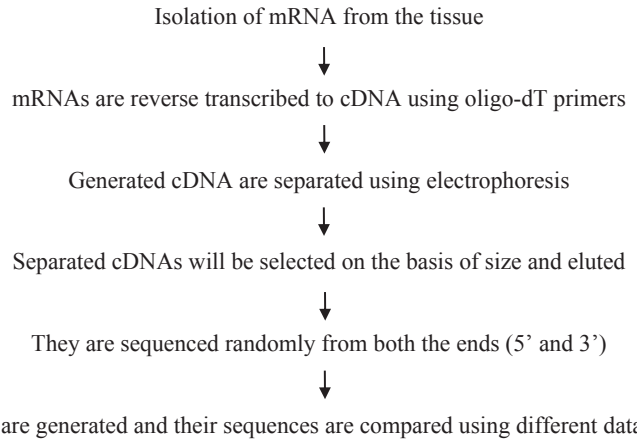


Fig. 1 Steps for generation of ESTs from cDNA library of an isolated mRNA

Processing of cDNA Sequence

Before comparison of sequences with databases, the raw sequences must be processed to remove the contaminant sequences, e.g., sequence of vector, and to achieve this, various steps are followed.

Preprocessing

The generated cDNAs certainly contain many contaminants which have to be processed before final sequencing. To achieve this, different databases are used, which many a times are specific for the type of contaminants one wants to remove. Ribosomal RNA (rRNA), vector, and adaptor sequences are considered to be the major contaminants in ESTs analysis. The vector sequences are trimmed to reduce the overall noise in EST data which in turn improves the efficacy of subsequent analyses. This is generally done using BLAST as it identifies the contaminants before ESTs are clustered (Altschul et al. 1990). VecScreen (www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/VecScreen/VecScreen.html), UniVec (www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/VecScreen/UniVec.html), and EMVec (www.ebi.ac.uk/blastall/vectors.html) are also used for removal of vector, linker, and adapter sequences from cDNAs (Nagaraj et al. 2006). Other contaminants which are repetitive elements of the genomes like LINEs (long interspersed elements), SINEs (short interspersed elements), etc. are removed using either RepeatMasker (www.repeatmasker.org/; Phred 2006) or MaskerAid (blast.wustl.edu/maskeraid; Bedell et al. 2000). Any low-complexity regions in EST data can also be removed using DUST (ftp.ncbi.nih.gov/blast/; Wan et al. 2003). The isolated mRNA contains poly(A) tail which should be trimmed to 6–10 adenines to achieve high-quality ESTs and is done using Trimest (http://emboss.sourceforge.

net/apps/#Apps) and Trimseq (emboss.sourceforge.net/apps/#App). TIGR plant repeat database (www.tigr.org/tdb/e2k1/plant.repeats/) also helps in identification and removal of plant repeats (Nagaraj et al. 2006).

Clustering and Assembly of EST

The main purpose of clustering is to collect the overlapping sequences of ESTs into a unique cluster which will help in reducing the redundancy and error rates by generating contiguous consensus sequences in each cluster. The EST cluster is generated in such a manner that single gene is grouped in single index class which provides information for particular gene (Burke et al. 1999). There are mainly two ways for clustering according to Ptitsyn and Hide (2005): stringent method and loose method. The former is a conservative technique and requires stringent criteria to join the sequences, with a requirement of high levels for sequence identity. Hence the grouping of ESTs in this method results in relatively accurate clusters but generates shorter sequence consensuses with low coverage of expressed genes, whereas loose clustering generates less accurate but longer-sequence consensuses and also groups two sequences if they share overlaps above a given threshold. Phrap (www.phrap.org/; Ewing and Green 1998) and CAP3 (genome.cs.mtu.edu/cap/cap3.html; Huang and Madan 1999) are among the most extensively used programs for sequence clustering and assembly.

Database Similarity Searches

Finally the processed EST sequences are searched for sequence similarity and to identify the putative functions genes. The sequences can be aligned to the genome sequence of either the same (*cis* alignment) or other related species (*trans* alignment, if a reference genome sequence is not available). Different BLAST programs like BLASTN (to search ESTs against nucleotide sequence database) and BLASTX (to search against protein databases from NCBI) serve as a universal tool for database similarity searches (Altschul et al. 1997). This is discussed further in database for EST analysis section.

Databases for EST Analysis

Plant genes express differently from time to time in various tissues; hence, an EST dataset will contain only the information of expressed genes. Placing ESTs into clusters is a difficult step (Parkinson and Blaxter 2004), and to solve this problem, different databases for clustering analysis are useful in identifying genes of secondary metabolite biosynthesis; for this, many databases are publically available.

One of the major databases for sequence similarity searches is NCBI (National Center for Biotechnology Information; www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/) (Altschul et al. 1997) and dbEST (database for Expressed Sequence Tag; www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/dbEST/), which is a division of GenBank at NCBI that contains sequence data and other information on EST for a number of organisms including plants. Other databases like DDBJ (DNA Data Bank of Japan; www.ddbj.nig.ac.jp/index-e.html) and EMBL-EBI (European Molecular Biology Laboratory- European Bioinformatics Institute; www.ebi.ac.uk/) contain EST datasets from all available species like plants, animals, and microorganisms. Database such as TIGR (The Institute for Genome Research) Gene Indices (www.tigr.org/tdb/tgi/) helps in searching the individual sequences on the basis of homology between species (Lee et al. 2005), whereas PlantGDB (Plant Genome Database; http://www.plantgdb.org/) contains all the available plant ESTs selected from the above databases (Duvick et al. 2008). Till 2011 PlantGDB has provided EST datasets for 22,93,800 sequences which includes 848 plants distributed in 157 families with 428 genera (Ogata and Suzuki 2011). Database from the Department of Plant Gene Research, Kazusa DNA Research Institute (www.kazusa.or.jp/en/plant/database.html), provides information on EST of *Arabidopsis thaliana* and *Lotus japonicas* and many other databases specific to the plant ESTs for sequence similarity searches (Yonekura-Sakakibara and Saito 2009).

KEGG (Kyoto Encyclopedia of Genes and Genomes) database (www.genome.jp/kegg/plant/) became operational in 1995 and is a link between genomic information with functional information (Kanehisa and Goto 2000). It consists of three databases: PATHWAY, GENES, and LIGAND. PATHWAY is for representation of functional information represented graphically for different cellular processes. GENES database has collection of gene catalogs for all the sequenced/partially sequenced genomes. LIGAND is for the collection of chemical compounds and enzyme molecules and their reactions (Kanehisa and Goto 2000). EGENES (www.genome.jp/kegg-bin/create_kegg_menu?category=plants_egenes) is a new database of the KEGG which links the genomic information with functional information (Kanehisa et al. 2006). The genomic information in EGENES is a collection of EST contigs constructed from assembly of ESTs. There are many plant species whose genome is not sequenced, and for them there is a new expansion in KEGG which uses ESTs for reconstructing metabolic pathways (Masoudi-Nejad et al. 2007). Different steps of processing EST sequences using KEGG have been described previously (Masoudi-Nejad et al. 2004, 2006; Moriya et al. 2005). Table 2 lists some of the commonly used databases for EST analysis.

MetaCyc (www.metacyc.org) and AraCyc (http://arabidopsis.org/tools/aracyc/) are databases which can be used to computationally predict the metabolic pathway complement of the genome (Zhang et al. 2005). There are about 60 plant-specific pathways in MetaCyc, whereas AraCyc is a species-specific database which contains enzymes and pathways present in *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Other user-friendly plant databases are MapMan (Usadel et al. 2005) (gabi.rzpd.de/projects/MapMan/),

Table 2 EST databases

Name	URL
dbEST at NCBI	http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/dbEST/index.html
DDBJ	http://ddbj.nig.ac.jp/index-e.html
EMBL-EBI	http://ebi.ac.uk/embl.html
Kazusa EST database	http://www.kazusa.or.jp/en/plant/database.html
Plant GDB	http://www.plantgdb.org/
TIGR plant gene indices	http://www.tigr.org/tdb/tgi/plant.html
UniGene at NCBI	http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/UniGene/
University Minnesota	http://ccgb.umm.edu/
KGENES	http://www.genome.jp/kegg-bin/creare_kegg_
ESTree db	http://www.itb.cnr.it/estree
TbestDB	http://www.tbestdb.bcm.umontreal.ca
Pscroph database	http://www.pscroph.ucdavis.edu
Mendel-GFDb and Mendel-ESTS	http://www.mendel.ac.uk/
US Mirror	http://genome.cornell.edu/
Sputnik	http://www.mips.gsf.de/proj/sputni

Kazusa Plant Pathway Viewer (KaPPA-View) (Tokimatsu et al. 2005), and Atomic Reconstruction of Metabolism (ARM) (Arita 2004) (www.metabolome.jp/software/plonejavaapplet.2006-06-29.9364604635/). Some databases focus on a specific secondary metabolite pathway, e.g., the Flavonoid Viewer (www.metabolome.jp/software/FlavonoidViewer/FlavonoidViewer). TrichOME (www.planttrichome.org/) is database of EST sequence analysis for species containing trichomes (Dai et al. 2010).

Completion of genome sequencing in model plants paves a novel way for the elucidation of genetic principles behind the huge diversity of plant secondary metabolism. Based on this, strategies such as transcriptomics have been developed and successfully employed for gene identification. EST sequences are generated by a single pass and hence may have a higher error rate than sequences that are verified by multiple sequencing runs. Although there is no real substitute of whole genome sequencing, EST analysis will certainly avoid the problems related to large genome size and retrotransposon repetitiveness (Tang et al. 2003). Generation of EST sequences provides the low-cost identification of a target gene and provides information about gene expression and metabolism in the plant tissues. Deriving information from EST datasets requires bioinformatics tools and software that allow comparisons of large sequence datasets. EST databases accelerate the research that helps to understand the expressed genes which are regulators of the secondary metabolite biosynthesis. In the last decade, this technique has been useful in revealing the genes of metabolic pathways and their interconnections. The list of plants in which genes for different secondary metabolite pathways have been identified using this technique are summarizes in Table 3.

Table 3 List of plant species in which the genes of secondary metabolite pathways have been identified using ESTs

Plant	Secondary metabolite pathway	References
Actaea racemosa	Terpenoid/sterol, phenylpropanoid, and alkaloid biosynthesis	Spiering et al. (2011)
Adonis aestivalis	Carotenoid biosynthesis	Li et al. (2008)
Arabidopsis thaliana	Phenylpropanoid biosynthesis	Costa et al. (2003)
	Fatty acid biosynthesis	White et al. (2000)
Artemisia annua	Isoprenoid, flavonoid monoterpene, and sesquiterpene biosynthesis	Bertea et al. (2006)
	Sesquiterpene biosynthesis	Teoh et al. (2006)
Astragalus sinicus	Terpenoids and polyketides biosynthesis	Zhang et al. (2015)
Beta vulgaris	Phenylpropanoid, stilbenoid, diarylheptanoid, gingerol, flavonoid, terpenoid, α-linolenic acid, fatty acid, carotenoid, flavon, flavonol, ubiquinone, terpenoid-quinone, diterpenoid, benzoxazinoid, linoleic, isoquinoline alkaloid, tropane alkaloid, piperidine alkaloid, pyridine alkaloid, sesquiterpenoid, indole alkaloid, caffeine, monoterpenoid, anthocyanin, lipoic acid, and betalain biosynthesis	Fugate et al. (2014)
Bixa orellana	Fatty acid, flavonoid, phenylpropanoids, alkaloids, terpenoids, and steroids biosynthesis	Soares et al. (2011)
Bougainvillea spectabilis 'Speciosas'	Sesquiterpenoid, sesquiterpene, terpene, terpenoid, triterpenoid, phenylpropanoid,, flavonoid, anthocyanins, and betalain biosynthesis	Xu et al. (2015)
Camellia sinensis	Phenylpropanoid and flavonoid biosynthesis	Park et al. (2004)
	Flavonoids and alkaloids biosynthesis	Chen et al. (2005)
	Flavonoid biosynthesis	Phukon et al. (2012)
	Caffeine and catechin biosynthesis	Taniguchi et al. (2012)
	Phenylpropanoid biosynthesis	Wang et al. (2012); Yang et al. (2012)
Cannabis sativa	Cannabinoids, flavonoids, and anthocyanin biosynthesis	Duraisamy et al. (2015)
Catharanthus roseus	Alkaloid, flavonoid, and monoterpenoid indole alkaloid biosynthesis	Murataa et al. (2006)
	Terpenoid indole alkaloid biosynthesis	Shukla et al. (2006)
	Triterpene biosynthesis	Murata et al. (2008)
	Terpenoid indole alkaloid biosynthesis	Mishra et al. (2011)
Centella asiatica	Centelloside biosynthesis	Kim et al. (2014)
Chlorophytum borivilianum	Saponin, flavonoid and alkaloid biosynthesis	Kalra et al. (2013)
Cistus creticus subsp. *creticus*	Flavonoid and terpenoid biosynthesis	Falara et al. (2008)
Citrus sinensis	Phenylpropanoid and flavonoid biosynthesis	Lucheta et al. (2007)

(continued)

Table 3 (continued)

Plant	Secondary metabolite pathway	References
Cryptomeria japonica	Agatharesinol and other norlignan, betailains, flavonoid, anthocyanin, isoquinoline alkaloid, and phenylpropanoid biosynthesis	Yoshida et al. (2007)
Dendrocalamus latiflorus	Flavonoid and flavonol biosynthesis	Gao et al. (2011)
Epimedium sagittatum	Flavonoid biosynthesis	Zeng et al. (2010)
Fritillaria cirrhosa	Steroidal alkaloid biosynthesis	Sun et al. (2011)
Ginkgo biloba	Phenylpropanoid, terpenoid, and alkaloid biosynthesis	Wang et al. (2010)
Glycine max	Isoflavonoid biosynthesis	Livingstone et al. (2009)
Glycyrrhiza uralensis	Glycyrrhizin biosynthesis	Li et al. (2010)
Humulus lupulus	Terpenoid, terpenophenolic, bitter acid, xanthohumol, and flavonoid biosynthesis	Nagel et al. (2008)
	Terpene and prenylflavonoid biosynthesis	Wang et al. (2008)
Huperzia serrata	Alkaloids, terpenoids, flavone/flavonoids, and anthocyanin biosynthesis	Luo et al. (2010a, b)
Jatropha curcas	Fatty acid and triacylglycerol biosynthesis	Costa et al. (2010)
	Fatty acid and flavonol biosynthesis	Natarajan et al. (2010)
	Fatty acid and steroids biosynthesis	Chen et al. (2011a, b)
Lavandula angustifolia	Isoprenoid biosynthesis	Lane et al. (2010)
Lotus japonicas	Flavonoid biosynthesis	Endo et al. (2002)
Lupinus albus	Phenylpropanoid and isoflavone biosynthesis	Tian et al. (2009)
Lycopersicon hirsutum	Methyl ketones biosynthesis	Fridman et al. (2005)
Malus domestica	Terpenoid, ester, flavonoid, and anthocyanin biosynthesis	Newcomb et al. (2006)
Medicago sativa	Steroids and tropinone biosynthesis	Hays and Skinner (2001)
Medicago truncatula	Steroid, phenylpropanoid, flavonoid, and fatty acid biosynthesis	Covitz et al. (1998)
	Triterpene saponin biosynthesis	Suzuki et al. (2002)
	Phenylpropanoid, lignin, flavonoid, isoflavonoid, and terpenoid biosynthesis	Aziz et al. (2005)
Melaleuca alternifolia	Fatty acid, terpene, and phenylpropanoid biosynthesis	Shelton et al. (2002)

(continued)

Table 3 (continued)

Plant	Secondary metabolite pathway	References
Mentha × *piperita*	Monoterpene, sesquiterpene, isoprenoid, and flavonoid biosynthesis	Lange et al. (2000)
	Terpenoid, isoflavonoid, monoterpenoid, menthol, limonene, shikimate, terpene, phenylpropanoid, tetrahydrobenzylisoquinoline, monoterpenoid, monoterpenoid indole alkaloids, and isoquinoline alkaloid biosynthesis	Roy et al. (2011)
Mesembryanthemum crystallinum	Phenylpropanoid, terpenoids, amines, and tetrapyrroles biosynthesis	Kore-eda et al. (2004)
Ocimum basilicum	Phenylpropene and terpene biosynthesis	Gang et al. (2001)
Ocimum basilicum cv Sweet Dani	Monoterpene biosynthesis	Iijima et al. (2004)
Panax ginseng	Ginsenoside biosynthesis	Jung et al. (2003); Kim et al. (2006); Chen et al. (2011a, b); Devi et al. (2012); Li et al. (2013)
	Fatty acid, benzophenanthridine alkaloid, phenylpropanoids, ally alcohols, alkaloids, flavonoids, isoflavonoids, and ginsenoside biosynthesis	Choi et al. (2005)
	Fatty acid, isoprenoid, and ginsenoside biosynthesis	Sathiyamoorthy et al. (2010)
	Isoprenoid and ginsenoside biosynthesis	Sathiyamoorthy et al. (2011)
Pandanus fascicularis	Terpenoid, shikimate, phenylpropanoid, isoprenoid, flavonoids, and alkaloids biosynthesis	Vinod et al. (2010)
Panicum virgatum	Lignin biosynthesis	Srivastava et al. (2010)
Papaver somniferum	Benzylisoquinoline alkaloid and phenylpropanoid biosynthesis	Zulak et al. (2007)
	Benzylisoquinoline alkaloids biosynthesis	Pienkny et al. (2009); Desgagné-Penix et al. (2010)
	Benzylisoquinoline alkaloids biosynthesis	Priya et al. (2012)
Polygonum minus	Flavonoid biosynthesis	Roslan et al. (2012)
Pueraria lobata	Isoflavone biosynthesis	He et al. (2011)
Poplar hybrid H11–11 (*Populus trichocarpa* × *P. deltoides*),	Phenylpropanoid biosynthesis	Christopher et al. (2004)
Ricinus communis	Ricinoleic acid biosynthesis	van de Loo et al. (1995)
	Ricinoleate biosynthesis	Lu et al. (2007)
Rosa chinensis cv. Old Blush	Terpenoid, isoprenoid, carotenoid, sesquiterpene, and anthocyanin biosynthesis	Channeliere et al. (2002)

(continued)

Table 3 (continued)

Plant	Secondary metabolite pathway	References
Rosa hybrid	Sesquiterpene and anthocyanin biosynthesis	Guterman et al. (2002)
Salvia fruticosa	Terpenoid, phenylpropanoid, flavonoid, and alkaloid biosynthesis	Chatzopoulou et al. (2010)
Salvia miltiorrhiza	Terpenoid, diterpenoid, coumarine, lignin, flavonoid, alkaloid, fatty acid, and phenylpropanoid biosynthesis	Yan et al. (2010)
Sesamum indicum	Sesame lignans (sesamin and sesamolin) biosynthesis	Suh et al. (2003)
Solanum habrochaites	Terpenoid and flavonoid biosynthesis	Besser et al. (2009)
Solanum lycopersicum 'M82'	Rutin, chlorogenic acid, and sesquiterpene biosynthesis	Schilmiller et al. (2010)
Sorghum bicolor	Sorgoleone and phenylpropanoid biosynthesis	Baerson et al. (2008)
Stevia rebaudiana	Steviol glycoside biosynthesis	Brandle et al. (2002); Richman et al. (2005)
Sugarcane	Isoprenoid, phenylpropanoid, flavonoid, and indole alkaloid biosynthesis	França et al. (2001)
Ocimum basilicum	Phenylpropanoid, phenylpropenes, and terpenoid biosynthesis	Gang et al. (2001)
Ocimum basilicum (Cv. CIM-Saumya)	Terpenoid, phenylpropanoid/flavonoid, alkaloid, tocopherol, and carotenoid biosynthesis	Misra et al. (2013)
Taiwania cryptomerioides	Flavonoid biosynthesis	Chen et al. (2004)
	Ginsenosides, monoterpenoid indole alkaloids, phenylpropanoid, and terpenoid-quinone biosynthesis	Lee et al. (2006)
Tamarix androssowii	Fatty acid and isoprenoid biosynthesis	Wang et al. (2006)
Theobroma cacao	Phenylpropanoid and fatty acid biosynthesis	Naganeeswaran et al. (2012)
Vitis pseudoreticulata	Phenylpropanoid biosynthesis	Xu et al. (2009)
Vitis vinifera	Flavonoid, isoflavonoid, lignin and terpenoids biosynthesis	Terrier et al. (2001)
	Phenylpropanoid pathway, lignin, flavonol, anthocyanin, proanthocyanidin, and isoflavonoid biosynthesis	da Silva et al. (2005)
Withania somnifera	Carotenoid, terpenoid, and flavonoid biosynthesis	Peng et al. (2007)
	Withanolide biosynthesis	Senthil et al. (2010)

Conclusion

In the era of functional genomics, transcriptomics – a global study of transcription, along with genomics – has undoubtedly contributed to plant science research. Among the different techniques which are used for identification of genes, large-scale EST analysis attracts due to cost-effectiveness and efficiency. ESTs have also

been used for discovery of the genes that are differentially expressed in various tissues, cell types, or developmental stages of the same or different plant genotypes. The method is relatively rapid for identification of novel genes and is commonly used in development of molecular markers. Availability of large amounts of data in the form of ESTs will provide an opportunity for the discovery of novel genes. Apart from gene identification, ESTs have other applications in plant science like marker development and microarray analysis. However there is no real substitute of whole genome sequencing, but due to the large genome size of plants, EST analysis certainly avoids the problems associated with it and overcomes the retrotransposon repetitiveness.

References

Adams MD, Kelley JM, Gocayne JD, Dubnick M, Polymeropoulos MH, Xiao H et al (1991) Complementary DNA sequencing: expressed sequence tags and human genome project. Science 252:1651–1656

Altschul SF, Madden TL, Schaffer AA, Zhang J, Zhang Z, Miller W et al (1997) Gapped BLAST and PSI-BLAST: a new generation of protein database search programs. Nucleic Acids Res 25:3389–3402

Arita M (2004) The metabolic world of *Escherichia coli* is not small. PNAS 101(6):1543–1547

Aziz N, Paiva NL, May GD, Dixon RA (2005) Transcriptome analysis of alfalfa glandular trichomes. Planta 221:28–38

Baerson SR, Dayan FE, Rimando AM, Nanayakkara NPD, Liu CJ, Schroder J et al (2008) A functional genomics investigation of allelochemical biosynthesis in *Sorghum bicolor* root hairs. J Biol Chem 283(6):3231–3247

Bainbridge MN, Warren RL, Hirst M, Romanuik T, Zeng T, Go A et al (2006) Analysis of the prostate cancer cell line LNCaP transcriptome using a sequencing-by-synthesis approach. BMC Genomics 7:246

Bedell JA, Korf I, Gish W (2000) MaskerAid: a performance enhancement to RepeatMasker. Bioinformatics 16:1040–1041

Bennetzen JL (2002) Mechanisms and rates of genome expansion and contraction in flowering plants. Genetica 115:29–36

Bertea CM, Voster A, Verstappen FWA, Vei MM, Beekwilder J, Bouwmeester HJ (2006) Isoprenoid biosynthesis in *Artemisia annua*: Cloning and heterologous expression of a germacrene A synthase from a glandular trichome cDNA library. Arch Biochem Biophys 448:3–12

Besser K, Harper A, Welsby N, Schauvinhold I, Slocombe S, Li Y et al (2009) Divergent regulation of terpenoid metabolism in the trichomes of wild and cultivated tomato species. Plant Physiol 149(1):499–514

Bevan M, Bancroft I, Bent E, Love K, Goodman H, Dean C et al (1998) Analysis of 1.9 Mb of contiguous sequence from chromosome 4 of *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Nature 391(6666):485–488

Bonaldo MF, Lennon G, Soares MB (1996) Normalization and subtraction: two approaches to facilitate gene discovery. Genome Res 6:791–806

Brandle JE, Richman A, Swanson AK, Chapman BP (2002) Leaf ESTs from *Stevia rebaudiana*: a resource for gene discovery in diterpene synthesis. Plant Mol Biol 50:613–622

Burke J, Davison D, Hide W (1999) d2_cluster: a validated method for clustering EST and full-length cDNAsequences. Genome Res 9:1135–1142

Channeliere S, Riviere S, Scalliet G, Szecsi J, Jullien F, Dolle C et al (2002) Analysis of gene expression in rose petals using expressed sequence tags. FEBS Lett 515:35–38

Chatzopoulou FM, Makris AM, Argiriou A, Degenhardt J, Kanellis AK (2010) EST analysis and annotation of transcripts derived from a trichome-specific cDNA library from *Salvia fruticosa*. Plant Cell Rep 29:523–534

Chen JJW, Wu R, Yang PC, Huang JY, Sher YP, Han MH et al (1998) Profiling expression patterns and isolating differentially expressed genes by cDNA microarray system with colorimetry detection. Genomics 51:313–324

Chen L, Zhao LP, Gao QK (2005) Generation and analysis of expressed sequence tags from the tender shoots cDNA library of tea plant (*Camellia sinensis*). Plant Sci 168:359–363

Chen MS, Wang GJ, Wang RL, Wang J, Song SQ, Xu ZF (2011a) Analysis of expressed sequence tags from biodiesel plant *Jatropha curcas* embryos at different developmental stages. Plant Sci 181:696–700

Chen S, Luo H, Li Y, Sun Y, Wu Q, Niu Y et al (2011b) 454 EST analysis detects genes putatively involved in ginsenoside biosynthesis in *Panax ginseng*. Plant Cell Rep 30:1593–1601

Chen YR, Lee YR, Wang SY, Chang ST, Shaw JF, Chu FH (2004) Establishment of expressed sequence tags from Taiwania (*Taiwania cryptomerioides* Hayata) seedling cDNA. Plant Sci 167:955–957

Choi DW, Jung JD, Ha YI, Park HW, In DS, Chung HJ et al (2005) Analysis of transcripts in methyl jasmonate-treated ginseng hairy roots to identify genes involved in the biosynthesis of ginsenosides and other secondary metabolites. Plant Cell Rep 23:557–566

Christopher ME, Miranda M, Major IT, Constabel CP (2004) Gene expression profiling of systemically wound-induced defences in hybrid poplar. Planta 219:936–947

Costa GGL, Cardoso KC, Del Bem LEV, Lima AC, Cunha MAS, de Campos-Leite L et al (2010) Transcriptome analysis of the oil-rich seed of the bioenergy crop *Jatropha curcas* L. BMC Genomics 11:462

Costa MA, Collins RE, Anterola AM, Cochrane FC, Davin LB, Lewis NG (2003) An *in silico* assessment of gene function and organization of the phenylpropanoid pathway metabolic networks in *Arabidopsis thaliana* and limitations thereof. Phytochemistry 64:1097–1112

Covitz PA, Smith LS, Long SR (1998) Expressed sequence tags from a root-hair-enriched *Medicago truncatula* cDNA Library. Plant Physiol 117:1325–1332

da Silva FG, Iandolino A, Al-Kayal F, Bohlmann MC, Cushman MA, Lim H et al (2005) Characterizing the grape transcriptome. analysis of expressed sequence tags from multiple *Vitis* species and development of a compendium of gene expression during berry development. Plant Physiol 139:574–597

Dai X, Wang G, Yang DS, Tang Y, Broun P, Marks DM et al (2010) TrichOME: A comparative omics database for plant trichomes. Plant Physiol 152:44–54

Desgagné-Penix I, Khan MF, Schriemer DC, Cram D, Nowak J, Facchini PJ (2010) Integration of deep transcriptome and proteome analyses reveals the components of alkaloid metabolism in opium poppy cell cultures. BMC Plant Biol 10:252

Devi BSR, Kim YJ, Selvi SK, Gayathri S, Altanzul K, Parvin S et al (2012) Influence of potassium nitrate on antioxidant level and secondary metabolite genes under cold stress in *Panax ginseng*. Russ J Plant Physiol 59(3):318–325

Dixon RA, Strack D (2003) Phytochemistry meets genome analysis and beyond. Phytochemistry 62:815–816

Duraisamy GS, Mishra AK, Jakse J, Matousek J (2015) Computational prediction, target identification and experimental validation of mirnas from expressed sequence tags in *Cannabis sativa* L. Res Rev J Bot Sci 4(2):32–42

Duvick J, Fu A, Muppirala U, Sabharwal M, Wilkerson MD, Lawrence CJ (2008) PlantGDB: a resource for comparative plant genomics. Nucleic Acids Res 36:D959–D965

Endo M, Hakozaki H, Kokubun T, Masuko H, Takahata Y, Tsuchiya T (2002) Generation of 919 expressed sequence tags from immature flower buds and gene expression analysis using expressed sequence tags in the model plant *Lotus japonicus*. Genes Genet Syst 77(4):277–282

Ewing B, Green P (1998) Base-calling of automated sequencer traces using phred. II. Error probabilities. Genome Res 8:186–194

Ewing R, Kahla A, Poirot O, Lopez F, Audic S, Claverie J (1999) Large-scale statistical analyses of rice ESTs reveal correlated patterns of gene expression. Genome Res 9:950–959

Falara V, Fotopoulos V, Margaritis T, Anastasaki T, Pateraki I, Bosabalidis AM et al (2008) Transcriptome analysis approaches for the isolation of trichome-specific genes from the medicinal plant *Citrus creticus* subsp. *creticus*. Plant Mol Biol 68:633–651

França SC, Roberto PG, Marins MA, Puga RD, Rodrigues A, Pereira JO (2001) Biosynthesis of secondary metabolites in sugarcane. Genet Mol Biol 24(1–4):243–250

Fridman E, Wang J, Iijima Y, Froehlich JE, Gang DR, Ohlrogge J et al (2005) Metabolic, genomic and biochemical analyses of glandular trichomes from the wild tomato species *Lycopersicon hirsutum* identify a key enzyme in the biosynthesis of methyl ketones. Plant Cell 17:1252–1267

Fugate KK, Fajardo D, Schlautman B, Ferrareze JP, Bolton MD, Campbell LG et al (2014) Generation and characterization of a sugar beet transcriptome and transcript-based SSR markers. Plant Genome 7(2):1–13

Gang DR, Wang J, Dudareva N, Nam KH, Simon JE, Lewinsohn E et al (2001) An investigation of the storage and biosynthesis of phenylpropenes in sweet basil. Plant Physiol 125:539–555

Gao ZM, Li CL, Peng ZH (2011) Generation and analysis of expressed sequence tags from a normalized cDNA library of young leaf from Ma bamboo (*Dendrocalamus latiflorus* Munro). Plant Cell Rep 30:2045–2057

Guterman I, Shalit M, Menda N, Piestun D, Dafny-Yelin M, Shalev G et al (2002) Rose scent: Genomics approach to discovering novel floral fragrance–related genes. Plant Cell 14:2325–2338

Hatey F, Tosser-Klopp G, Clouscard-Martinato C, Mulsant P, Gasser F (1998) Expressed sequence tags for genes: a review. Genet Sel Evol 30:521–541

Hays DB, Skinner DZ (2001) Development of an expressed sequence tag (EST) library for *Medicago sativa*. Plant Sci 161:517–526

He XZ, Blount JW, Ge S, Tang Y, Dixon RA (2011) A genomic approach to isoflavone biosynthesis in kudzu (*Pueraria lobata*). Planta 233:843–855

Hofte H, Desprez T, Amselem J, Chiapello H, Rouze P, Caboche M et al (1994) An inventory of 1152 expressed sequence tags obtained by partial sequencing of cDNAs from *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Plant J 4:1051–1061

Huang X, Madan A (1999) CAP3: a DNA sequence assembly program. Genome Res 9:868–877

Iijima Y, Gang DR, Fridman E, Lewinsohn E, Pichersky E (2004) Characterization of geraniol synthase from the peltate glands of sweet basil. Plant Physiol 134:370–379

Jung JD, Park HW, Hahn Y, Hur CG, In DS, Chung HJ et al (2003) Discovery of genes for ginsenoside biosynthesis by analysis of ginseng expressed sequence tags. Plant Cell Rep 22:224–230

Kalia RK, Rai MK, Kalia S, Singh R, Dhawan AK (2011) Microsatellite markers: an overview of the recent progress in plants. Euphytica 177:309–334

Kalra S, Puniya BL, Kulshreshtha D, Kumar S, Kaur J, Ramachandran S. De novo transcriptome sequencing reveals important molecular networks and metabolic pathways of the plant, *Chlorophytum borivilianum*. PLoS One 2013;8(12):e 83336

Kanehisa M, Goto S, Hattori M, Aoki-Kinoshita KF, Itoh M, Kawashima S et al (2006) From genomics to chemical genomics: new developments in KEGG. Nucleic Acids Res 34:D3540–DD357

Kanehisa M, Goto S (2000) KEGG: Kyoto Encyclopedia of genes and genomes. Nucleic Acids Res 28(1):27–30

Kim MK, Lee BS, In JG, Sun H, Yoon JH, Yang DC (2006) Comparative analysis of expressed sequence tags (ESTs) of ginseng leaf. Plant Cell Rep 25:599–606

Kim OT, Um Y, Jin ML, Kim YC, Bang KH, Hyun DY et al (2014) Analysis of expressed sequence tags from *Centella asiatica* (L.) Urban hairy roots elicited by methyl jasmonate to discover genes related to cytochrome P450s and glucosyltransferases. Plant Biotechnol Rep 8:211–220

Kore-eda S, Cushman MA, Akselrod I, Bufford D, Fredrickson M, Clark E et al (2004) Transcript profiling of salinity stress responses by large-scale expressed sequence tag analysis in *Mesembryanthemum crystallinum*. Gene 341:83–92

Kutchan T, Dixon RA (2005) Secondary metabolism: nature, chemical reservoir under deconvolution. Curr Opin Plant Biol 8:227–229

Lane A, Boecklemann A, Woronuk GN, Sarker L, Mahmoud SS (2010) A genomics resource for investigating regulation of essential oil production in *Lavandula angustifolia*. Planta 231:835–845

Lange BM, Wildung MR, Stauber EJ, Sanchez C, Pouchnik D, Croteau R (2000) Probing essential oil biosynthesis and secretion by functional evaluation of expressed sequence tags from mint glandular trichomes. PNAS 97(6):2934–2939

Lee CH, Chan MH, Wang YN, Chu FH (2006) Gene Investigation into the Inner bark of Taiwania (*Taiwania cryptomerioides*). Bot Stud 47:111–118

Lee Y, Tsai J, Sunkara S, Karamycheva S, Pertea G, Sultana R (2005) The TIGR Gene Indices: clustering and assembling EST and known genes and integration with eukaryotic genomes. Nucleic Acids Res 33:D71–D74

Li C, Zhu Y, Guo X, Sun C, Luo H, Song J et al (2013) Transcriptome analysis reveals ginsenosides biosynthetic genes, microRNAs and simple sequence repeats in *Panax ginseng* C. A. Meyer. BMC Genomics 14:245

Li R, Links MG, Gjetvaj B, Sharpe A, Hannoufa A (2008) Development of an *Adonis aestivalis* expressed sequence tag population as a resource for genes of the carotenoid pathway. Genome 51(11):888–896

Li Y, Luo HM, Sun C, Song JY, Sun YZ, Wu Q et al (2010) EST analysis reveals putative genes involved in glycyrrhizin biosynthesis. BMC Genomics 11:268

Livingstone JM, Seguin P, Stromvik MV (2009) An *in silico* study of the genes for the isoflavonoid pathway enzymes in soybean reveals novel expressed homologues. Can J Plant Sci 90(4):453–469

Lopez C, Piegu B, Cooke R, Delseny M, Tohme J, Verdier V (2005) Using cDNA and genomic sequences as tools to develop SNP strategies in cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz). Theor Appl Genet 110:425–431

Lu C, Wallis JG, Browse J (2007) An analysis of expressed sequence tags of developing castor endosperm using a full-length cDNA library. BMC Plant Biol 7:42

Lucheta AR, Silva-Pinhati ACO, Basílio-Palmieri AC, Berger IJ, Freitas-Astúa J, Crstofani M (2007) An *in silico* analysis of the key genes involved in flavonoid biosynthesis in *Citrus sinensis*. Genet Mol Biol 30(Suppl 3):819–831

Luo H, Li Y, Sun C, Wu Q, Song J, Sun Y et al (2010a) Comparison of 454-ESTs from *Huperzia serrata* and *Phlegmariurus carinatus* reveals putative genes involved in lycopodium alkaloid biosynthesis and developmental regulation. BMC Plant Biol 10:209

Luo H, Sun C, Li Y, Wu Q, Song J, Wang D et al (2010b) Analysis of expressed sequence tags from the *Huperzia serrata* leaf for gene discovery in the areas of secondary metabolite biosynthesis and development regulation. Physiol Plant 139:1–12

Masoudi-Nejad A, Goto S, Jauregui R, Ito M, Kawashima S, Moriya Y et al (2007) EGENES: Transcriptome based plant database of genes with metabolic pathway information and expressed sequence tag indices in KEGG. Plant Physiol 144:857–866

Masoudi-Nejad A, Jauregui R, Kawashima S, Goto S, Kanehisa M, Endo TR (2004). The kingdom of plantae EST indices: a resource for plant genomics community. Genome informatics: The 15th International Conference on Genome Informatics, Pacifico Yokohama, Japan, 16–18 December 2004, p 102

Masoudi-Nejad A, Tonomura K, Kawashima S, Itoh M, Kanehisa M, Endo T et al (2006) EGassembler: online bioinformatics service for large-scale processing, clustering and assembling ESTs and genomic DNA fragments. Nucleic Acids Res 34:W459–W462

McCombie WR, Adams MD, Kelley JM, FitzGerald MG, Utterback TR, Khan M et al (1992) *Caenorhabditis elegans* expressed sequence tags identify gene families and potential disease gene homologues. Nat Genet 1:124–131

Mishra RK, Gangadhar BH, Yu JW, Kim DH, Park SW (2011) Development and characterization of EST based SSR markers in Madagascar periwinkle (*Catharanthus roseus*) and their transferability in other medicinal plants. POJ 4(3):154–162

Misra RC, Maiti P, Chanotiya CS, Shanker K, Ghosh S (2013) Methyl jasmonate-elicited transcriptional responses and pentacyclic triterpene biosynthesis in sweet basil. Plant Physiol 164(2):1028–1044

Moriya Y, Itoh M, Okuda S, Kanehisa M (2005) KAAS: KEGG automatic annotation server. Genome informatics: The 16th International Conference on Genome Informatics, Pacifico Yokohama. Japan, 19–21 December 2005, p 005–1

Morozova O, Hirst M, Marra MA (2009) Applications of new sequencing technologies for transcriptome analysis. Annu Rev Genomics Hum Genet 10:135–151

Murata J, Roepke J, Gordon H, De Luca V (2008) The leaf epidermome of *Catharanthus roseus* reveals its biochemical specialization. Plant Cell 20:524–542

Murataa J, Bienzleb D, Brandlec JE, Sensend CW, De Luca V (2006) Expressed sequence tags from Madagascar periwinkle (*Catharanthus roseus*). FEBS Lett 580:4501–4507

Naganeeswaran SA, Subbian EA, Ramaswamy M (2012) Analysis of expressed sequence tags (ESTs) from cocoa (*Theobroma cacao* L) upon infection with *Phytophthora megakarya*. Bioinformation 8(2):65–68

Nagaraj SH, Gasser RB, Ranganathan S (2006) A hitchhiker's guide to expressed sequence tag (EST) analysis. Brief Bioinform 8(1):6–21

Nagel J, Culley LK, Lu Y, Liu E, Matthews PD, Stevens JF (2008) EST analysis of hop glandular trichomes identifies an O-Methyltransferase that catalyzes the biosynthesis of xanthohumol. Plant Cell 20:186–200

Natarajan P, Kanagasabapathy D, Gunadayalan G, Panchalingam J, Shree N, Sugantham PA et al (2010) Gene discovery from *Jatropha curcas* by sequencing of ESTs from normalized and full-length enriched cDNA library from developing seeds. BMC Genomics 11:606

Newcomb RD, Crowhurst RN, Gleave AP, Rikkerink EHA, Allan AC, Beuning LL et al (2006) Analyses of expressed sequence tags from apple. Plant Physiol 141:147–166

Nishiyama T, Fujita T, Shin IT, Seki M, Nishide H, Uchiyama I et al (2003) Comparative genomics of Physcomitrella patens gametophytic transcriptome and *Arabidopsis thaliana*: implication for land plant evolution. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:8007–8012

Ogata Y, Suzuki H (2011) Plant expressed sequence tags databases: practical uses and the improvement of their searches using network module analysis. Plant Biotechnol 28:351–360

Ogihara Y, Mochida K, Nemoto Y, Murai K, Yamazaki Y, Shin IT et al (2003) Correlated clustering and virtual display of gene expression patterns in the wheat life cycle by large-scale statistical analyses of expressed sequence tags. Plant J 33:1001–1011

Ohlrogge J, Benning C (2000) Unraveling plant metabolism by EST analysis. Curr Opin Plant Biol 3:224–228

Park JS, Kim JB, Hahn BS, Kim KH, Ha SH, Kim JB et al (2004) EST analysis of genes involved in secondary metabolism in *Camellia sinensis* (tea), using suppression subtractive hybridization. Plant Sci 166:953–961

Parkinson J, Blaxter M (2009) Expressed sequence tags: an overview. In: Parkinson J (ed) Expressed sequence tags (ESTs): generation and analysis, vol 533. Humana Press, New York, pp 1–12

Parkinson J, Blaxter M (2004) Expressed sequence tags: analysis and annotation. Methods Mol Biol 270:93–126

Paterson AH, Bowers JE, Burow MD, Draye X, Elsik CG, Jiang CX et al (2000) Comparative genomics of plant chromosomes. Plant Cell 12:1523–1540

Peng FY, Reid KE, Liao N, Schlosser J, Lijavetzky D, Holt R et al (2007) Generation of ESTs in *Vitis vinifera* wine grape (*Cabernet Sauvignon*) and table grape (*Muscat Hamburg*) and discovery of new candidate genes with potential roles in berry development. Gene 402:40–50

Phred, Phrap and Consed (2006) Laboratory of Phil Green, Department of Genome Sciences, University of Washington. http://www.phrap.org. Accessed 17 Feb 2006

Phukon M, Namdev R, Deka D, Modi MK, Sen P (2012) Construction of cDNA library and preliminary analysis of expressed sequence tags from tea plant (*Camellia sinensis* (L) O. Kuntze). Gene 506:202–206

Pichersky E, Gang DR (2000) Genetics and biochemistry of secondary metabolites in plants: an evolutionary perspective. Trends Plant Sci 5(10):439–445

Pienkny S, Brandt W, Schmidt J, Kramell R, Ziegler J (2009) Functional characterization of a novel benzylisoquinoline O-methyltransferase suggests its involvement in papaverine biosynthesis in opium poppy (*Papaver somniferum* L). Plant J 60:56–67

Priya A, Tripathi H, Yadav DK, Khan F, Gupta V, Shukla RK et al (2012) Functional annotation of expressed sequence tags of *Papaver somniferum*. Plant Omics J 5(3):223–230

Ptitsyn A, Hide W (2005) CLU: a new algorithm for EST clustering. BMC Bioinformatics 6(Suppl 2):S3

Putney SD, Herlihy WC, Schimmel P (1983) A new troponin T and cDNA clones for 13 different muscle proteins, found by shotgun sequencing. Nature 302:718–721

Richman A, Swanson A, Humphrey T, Chapman R, McGarvey B, Pocs R et al (2005) Functional genomics uncovers three glucosyltransferases involved in the synthesis of the major sweet glucosides of *Stevia rebaudiana*. Plant J 41:56–67

Rischer H, Orešič M, Seppänen-Laakso T, Katajamaa M, Lammertyn F, Ardiles-Diaz W et al (2006) Gene-to-metabolite networks for terpenoid indole alkaloid biosynthesis in *Catharanthus roseus* cells. PNAS 103:5614–5619

Roslan ND, Yusop JM, Baharum SN, Othman R, Mohamed-Hussein ZA, Ismail I et al (2012) Flavonoid biosynthesis genes putatively identified in the aromatic plant *Polygonum minus* via expressed sequences tag (EST) analysis. Int J Mol Sci 13:2692–2706

Roy S, Chauhan R, Maheshwari N, Gupta S, Gupta DK, Sharma A (2011) *In silico* approaches in comparative genomics, structure prediction and functional characterization of secondary metabolite proteins of *Mentha* sp. Plant Omics J 4(7):354–363

Sathiyamoorthy S, In JG, Gayathri S, Kim YJ, Yang DC (2010) Generation and gene ontology based analysis of expressed sequence tags (EST) from a *Panax ginseng* C. A. Meyer roots. Mol Biol Rep 37:3465–3472

Sathiyamoorthy S, In JG, Lee BS, Kwon WS, Yang DU, Kim JH et al (2011) *In silico* analysis for expressed sequence tags from embryogenic callus and flower buds of *Panax ginseng* C. A. Meyer. J Ginseng Res 35(1):21–30

Schena M, Shalon D, Davis R, Brown P (1995) Quantitative monitoring of gene expression patterns with a complimentary DNA microarray. Science 270:467–470

Schilmiller AL, Miner DP, Larson M, McDowell E, Gang DR, Wilkerson C et al (2010) Studies of a biochemical factory: Tomato trichome deep expressed sequence tag sequencing and proteomics. Plant Physiol 153:1212–1223

Senthil K, Wasnik NG, Kim YJ, Yang DC (2010) Generation and analysis of expressed sequence tags from leaf and root of *Withania somnifera* (Ashwagandha). Mol Biol Rep 37:893–902

Shelton D, Leach D, Baverstock P, Henry R (2002) Isolation of genes involved in secondary metabolism from *Melaleuca alternifolia* (Cheel) using expressed sequence tags (ESTs). Plant Sci 162:9–15

Shukla AK, Shasany AK, Gupta MM, Khanuja SPS (2006) Transcriptome analysis in *Catharanthus roseus* leaves and roots for comparative terpenoid indole alkaloid profiles. J Exp Bot 57(14):3921–3932

Simon SA, Zhai J, Nandety RS, McCormick KP, Zeng J, Mejia D et al (2009) Short-read sequencing technologies for transcriptional analyses. Annu Rev Plant Biol 60:305–333

Soares VLF, Rodrigues SM, de Oliveira TM, de Queiroz TO, Lima LS, Hora-Junior BT et al (2011) Unraveling new genes associated with seed development and metabolism in *Bixa orellana* L. by expressed sequence tag (EST) analysis. Mol Biol Rep 38:1329–1340

Somerville C, Somerville S (1999) Plant functional genomics. Science 285:380–383

Spiering MJ, Urban LA, Nuss DL, Gopalan V, Stoltzfus A, Eisenstein E (2011) Gene identification in black cohosh (*Actaea racemosa* L.): expressed sequence tag profiling and genetic screening yields candidate genes for production of bioactive secondary metabolites. Plant Cell Rep 30:613–629

Srivastava AC, Palanichelvam K, Ma J, Steele J, Blancaflor EB, Tang Y (2010) Collection and analysis of expressed sequence tags derived from laser capture microdissected switchgrass (*Panicum virgatum* L. Alamo) vascular tissues. Bioenergy Res 3(3):278–294

Suh MC, Kim MJ, Hur CG, Bae JM, Park YI, Chung CH et al (2003) Comparative analysis of expressed sequence tags from *Sesamum indicum* and *Arabidopsis thaliana* developing seeds. Plant Mol Biol 52:1107–1123

Sun C, Sun Y, Song J, Li C, Li X, Zhang X et al (2011) Discovery of genes related to steroidal alkaloid biosynthesis in *Fritillaria cirrhosa* by generating and mining a dataset of expressed sequence tags (ESTs). J Med Plant Res 5(21):5307–5314

Suzuki H, Achnine L, Xu R, Matsuda SPT, Dixon RA (2002) A genomics approach to the early stages of triterpene saponin biosynthesis in *Medicago truncatula*. Plant J 32:1033–1048

Tang S, Kishore VK, Knapp SJ (2003) PCR-multiplexes for a genome-wide framework of simple sequence repeat marker loci in cultivated sunflower. Theor Appl Genet 107(1):6–19

Taniguchi F, Fukuoka H, Tanaka J (2012) Expressed sequence tags from organ-specific cDNA libraries of tea (*Camellia sinensis*) and polymorphisms and transferability of EST-SSRs across *Camellia* species. Breed Sci 62:186–195

Teoh KH, Polichuk DR, Reed DW, Nowak G, Covello PS (2006) *Artemisia annua* L. (Asteraceae) trichome-specific cDNAs reveal CYP71AV1, a cytochrome P450 with a key role in the biosynthesis of the antimalarial sesquiterpene lactone artemisinin. FEBS Lett 580:1411–1416

Terrier N, Ageorges A, Abbal P, Romieu C (2001) Generation of ESTs from grape berry at various developmental stages. J Plant Physiol 158:1575–1583

Tian L, Peel GJ, Lei Z, Aziz N, Dai X, He J et al (2009) Transcript and proteomic analysis of developing white lupin (*Lupinus albus* L.) roots. BMC Plant Biol 9:1

Tokimatsu T, Sakurai N, Suzuki H, Ohta H, Nishitani K, Koyama T et al (2005) KaPPA-view: a web-based analysis tool for integration of transcript and metabolite data on plant metabolic pathway maps. Plant Physiol 138:1289–1300

Usadel B, Nagel A, Thimm O, Redestig H, Blaesing OE, Palacios-Rojas N et al (2005) Extension of the visualization tool MapMan to allow statistical analysis of arrays, display of corresponding genes, and comparison with known responses. Plant Physiol 138:1195–1204

van de Loo FJ, Broun P, Turner S, Somerville C (1995) An oleate 12 hydroxylase from *Ricinus communis* L. is a fatty acyl desaturase homolog. PNAS 92:6743–6747

van der Hoeven R, Ronning C, Giovannoni J, Martin G, Tanksley S (2002) Deductions about the number, organization and evolution of genes in the tomato genome based on analysis of a large EST collection and selective genomic sequencing. Plant Cell 14:1441–1456

Velculescu VE, Zhang L, Vogelstein B, Kinzler KW (1995) Serial analysis of gene expression sequence. Science 270:484–487

Vinod MS, Sankararamasubramanian HM, Priyanka R, Ganesan G, Parida A (2010) Gene expression analysis of volatile-rich male flowers of dioecious *Pandanus fascicularis* using expressed sequence tags. J Plant Physiol 167:914–919

Wan H, Li L, Federhen S, Wootton JC (2003) Discovering simple regions in biological sequences associated with scoring schemes. J Comput Biol 10:171–185

Wang G, Tian L, Aziz N, Broun P, Dai X, He J et al (2008) Terpene biosynthesis in glandular trichomes of Hop. Plant Physiol 148:1254–1266

Wang W, Wang Y, Zhang Q, Qi Y, Guo D (2009) Global characterization of *Artemisia annua* glandular trichome transcriptome using 454 pyrosequencing. BMC Genomics 10:465

Wang YC, Yang CP, Liu GF, Jiang J, Wu JH (2006) Generation and analysis of expressed sequence tags from a cDNA library of *Tamarix androssowii*. Plant Sci 170:28–36

Wang YQ, Shen JK, Berglund T, Ohlsson AB, Tang XF, Zhou ZK et al (2010) Analysis of expressed sequence tags from *Ginkgo* mature foliage in China. Tree Genet Genomes 6:357–365

Wang YS, Gao LP, Wang ZR, Liua YJ, Suna ML, Yanga DQ et al (2012) Light-induced expression of genes involved in phenylpropanoid biosynthetic pathways in callus of tea (*Camellia sinensis* (L.) O. Kuntze). Sci Hort 133:72–83

White JA, Todd T, Newman T, Focks N, Girke T, de Ilarduya OM et al (2000) A new set of *Arabidopsis* expressed sequence tags from developing seeds: the metabolic pathway from carbohydrates to seed oil. Plant Physiol 124:1582–1594

Wyk BEV, Wink M (2004) Medicinal plants of the World. Briza Publications, Pretoria

Xu SX, Huang QY, Lin CS, Lin FC, Lin LX, Shen QY (2015) Rapid generation and analysis of expressed sequence tags to uncovering inflorescence secondary metabolism of *Bougainvillea spectabilis* 'Speciosas' by pyrosequencing. Euphytica 205:747–759

Xu Y, Zhu Z, Xiao Y, Wang Y (2009) Construction of a cDNA library of *Vitis pseudoreticulata* native to China inoculated with *Uncinula necator* and the analysis of potential defence-related expressed sequence tags (ESTs). S Afr J Enol Vitic 30(1):65–71

Yan YP, Wang ZZ, Tian W, Dong ZM, Spencer DF (2010) Generation and analysis of expressed sequence tags from the medicinal plant *Salvia miltiorrhiza*. Sci China Life Sci 53(1):273–285

Yang D, Liua Y, Suna M, Zhao L, Wang Y, Chen X (2012) Differential gene expression in tea (*Camellia sinensis* L.) calli with different morphologies and catechin contents. J Plant Physiol 169:163–175

Yonekura-Sakakibara K, Saito K (2009) Functional genomics for plant natural product biosynthesis. Nat Prod Rep 26:1466–1487

Yoshida K, Nishiguchi M, Futamura N, Nanjo T (2007) Expressed sequence tags from *Cryptomeria japonica* sapwood during the drying process. Tree Physiol 27:1–9

Zeng S, Xiao G, Guo J, Fei Z, Xu Y, Roe BA et al (2010) Development of a EST dataset and characterization of EST-SSRs in a traditional Chinese medicinal plant *Epimedium sagittatum* (Sieb. Et Zucc.) Maxim. BMC Genomics 11:94

Zhang P, Foerster H, Tissier CP, Mueller L, Paley S, Karp PD et al (2005) MetaCyc and AraCyc. metabolic pathway databases for plant research. Plant Physiol 138:27–37

Zhang X, Wang J, Cao K, Xu C, Cao W (2015) An expressed sequence tags analysis for leaves of Chinese milk vetch (*Astragalus sinicus*). Legume Res 38(1):1–8

Zulak KG, Cornish A, Daskalchuk TE, Deyholos MK, Goodenowe DB, Gordon PMK et al (2007) Gene transcript and metabolite proWling of elicitor-induced opium poppy cell cultures reveals the coordinate regulation of primary and secondary metabolism. Planta 225:1085–1106

Terpenoids: An Activator of "Fuel-Sensing Enzyme AMPK" with Special Emphasis on Antidiabetic Activity

S. R. Smitha Grace, Girish Chandran, and Jyoti Bala Chauhan

Introduction

The increased prevalence of type 2 diabetes, with the attendant increase in morbidity and mortality, poses a substantial therapeutic challenge. *Type 2 diabetes* is a complex polygenic disease with a strong genetic component, as indicated by the high prevalence in certain ethnic groups and by studies of identical twins. Nevertheless, the rapid increase in the prevalence of obesity-associated disease conditions, including type 2 diabetes, in worldwide populations suggests the contribution of environmental factors. A widely accepted explanation lays on the frequent consumption of processed foods with a high-calorie content and the reduction in physical exercise due to sedentary lifestyle in modern urban environment. Disruption of energy balance has led to an increased prevalence of these conditions. Type 2 diabetes is characterized by altered lipid and glucose metabolism (fasting or postprandial hyperglycemia, dyslipidemia) as a consequence of combined insulin resistance in the skeletal muscle, liver, and adipose tissue and relative defects of insulin secretion by β-cells that may arise due to an imbalance between energy intake and expenditure. Insulin resistance occurs when a normal dose of hormone is unable to elicit its metabolic responses. Insulin is the primary anabolic hormone that stimulates uptake and storage of fuel substrates while inhibiting substrate production in peripheral tissues. It lowers blood glucose levels by facilitating glucose uptake, mainly into skeletal muscle and fat tissue, and by inhibiting endogenous glucose

S. R. Smitha Grace (✉) · G. Chandran
Department of Studies in Biotechnology, Pooja Bhagavat Memorial Mahajana Education Centre, Post Graduate Wing of SBRR Mahajana First Grade College, Mysuru, Karnataka, India

J. B. Chauhan
DOS in Biotechnology, Microbiology & Biochemistry, Pooja Bhagavat Memorial Mahajana Education Centre, Post Graduate Wing of SBRR Mahajana First Grade College, Mysuru, Karnataka, India

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_9

production in the liver. Peripheral insulin resistance is associated with lipid partitioning in specific compartments, i.e., muscle and liver, more than with obesity per se. Usually, after an asymptomatic period of insulin resistance, hyperglycemia appears when pancreatic β-cells fail to secrete sufficient amounts of insulin to meet the metabolic demand. In the natural history of type 2 diabetes, pancreatic β-cells initially compensate for insulin resistance by hypersecretion of insulin, but with time, progressive *β*-cell failure leads to insulin deficiency and hyperglycemia ensues. Progression in diabetes leads to the development of chronic complications such as blindness, kidney failure, neuropathy, cardiovascular diseases, and amputations. Thus, novel ways to prevent and treat type 2 diabetes are urgently needed (Squirrell 1999).

AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK) is the downstream component of a protein kinase cascade that acts as an intracellular energy sensor. Over the last few years, accumulating evidence has demonstrated that AMPK is a major regulator of cellular and whole-body energy homeostasis that coordinates metabolic pathways in order to balance nutrient supply with energy demand. However, it is activated by an increase in the cellular AMP/ATP ratio induced by metabolic stress, hormone, and nutrient signals. Once activated AMPK phosphorylates a number of downstream substrates, the overall effect of which is to switch on catabolic pathways that generate ATP and switch off ATPconsuming anabolic pathways by acute regulation of the activity of key enzymes in metabolism and chronic regulation of the expression of key transcription factors. This pivotal role of AMPK places it in an ideal position of therapeutic drug target in the treatment of diabetes, obesity, and other metabolic disorders. Therefore, the intense search for novel AMPK activators by rational drug design, screening of vast chemical libraries, and testing of various plant extracts has produced numerous promising compounds (Marín-Aguilar et al. 2017).

Among the latest developments is the activation of AMPK by naturally occurring dietary constituents and plant products—termed phytochemicals. Owing to their efficacy and safety, phytochemicals are considered as an alternative to the conventional therapy for diabetes. The rising popularity of using phytochemicals for diabetes therapy is supported by a substantial progress in identifying the molecular pathways involved, including AMPK.

Several herbal plants improve medical conditions. Such plants contain many bioactive phytochemicals. **Terpenoids** (also called “isoprenoids”) constitute one of the largest families of natural products accounting for more than 40,000 individual compounds of both primary and secondary metabolisms. In particular, terpenoids are contained in many herbal plants, and several terpenoids have been shown to be available for pharmaceutical applications, for example, artemisinin and Taxol as malaria and cancer medicines, respectively. Various terpenoids are contained in many plants for not only herbal use but also dietary use. Terpenoids contained in herbal or dietary plants, which can activate AMPK, can “fuel sensor” that control energy homeostasis; daily eating of these terpenoids might be useful for the management for obesity-induced metabolic disorders, such as type 2 diabetes, hyperlipidemia, insulin resistance, and cardiovascular diseases. Since there is a renewed interest on AMPK activators from natural products, therefore, in this review we

have discussed **terpenoids – an activator of "fuel-sensing enzyme AMPK" with special emphasis on antidiabetic activity**.

Plants as a Source of New Medicines

Putting aside the excitement surrounding the human genome, in the present era, we see the emergence of a new class of prescription medicine containing complex mixtures of plant extracts playing an important role in the search for "new medicines and effective therapies" (Clark 1996). Prior to the advances in synthetic chemistry and the discovery of antimicrobials in the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries, plants provided the major source of medicines. Evidence of their use as long as 50,000 years ago comes from the Middle Eastern grave site of a Neanderthal man containing plant specimens. The hugely diverse plant kingdom, consisting of some 250,000–300,000 species, continues to evolve and adapt to a multiplicity of environmental conditions and to protect from pathogens and predators.

Phytochemicals (from the Greek word phyto, meaning plant) are biologically active, naturally occurring chemical compounds found in plants, which provide health benefits for humans further than those attributed to macronutrients and micronutrients (Phillipson 2001). They protect plants from disease and damage and contribute to the plant's color, aroma, and flavor. In general, the plant chemicals that protect plant cells from environmental hazards such as pollution, stress, drought, UV exposure, and pathogenic attack are called as **phytochemicals**. Recently, it is clearly known that they have roles in the protection of human health, when their dietary intake is significant. More than 4000 phytochemicals have been cataloged and are classified by protective function, physical characteristics, and chemical characteristics, and about 150 phytochemicals have been studied in detail. A wide-ranging dietary phytochemicals are found in fruits, vegetables, legumes, whole grains, nuts, seeds, fungi, herbs, and spices. Broccoli, cabbage, carrots, onions, garlic, whole wheat bread, tomatoes, grapes, cherries, strawberries, raspberries, beans, legumes, and soy foods are common sources. Phytochemicals accumulate in different parts of the plants, such as in the roots, stems, leaves, flowers, fruits, or seeds. Many phytochemicals, particularly the pigment molecules, are often concentrated in the outer layers of the various plant tissues. Levels vary from plant to plant depending upon the variety, processing, cooking, and growing conditions (Koehn and Carter 2005).

Phytochemicals are also available in supplementary forms, but evidence is lacking that they provide the same health benefits as dietary phytochemicals. These compounds are known as **secondary plant metabolites** and have biological properties such as antioxidant activity, antimicrobial effect, modulation of detoxification enzymes, stimulation of the immune system, decrease of platelet aggregation, and modulation of hormone metabolism and antidiabetic and anticancer property. There are more than thousand known and many unknown phytochemicals. It is well-known that plants produce these chemicals to protect themselves. Phytochemicals

are not essential nutrients and are not required by the human body for sustaining life but have important properties to prevent or to fight some common diseases. Because of this property, many studies have been undertaken to reveal the health benefits of phytochemicals. The list of phytochemical compounds present in medicinal herbs in relation to disease management and human health are as follows:

Phenolic Compounds: Phenolic compounds are phytochemicals that have one or more aromatic rings with at least one hydroxyl group. Plant phenolics include:

(a) **Flavonoids**: Flavonoids are low-molecular-weight polyphenolic antioxidants.
(b) **Phenolic acids**: Phenolic acids are aromatic secondary plant metabolites widely spread in plants. Phenolic acids that occur naturally can be divided into two main categories: cinnamic acid derivatives like ferulic acid and caffeic acid and benzoic acid derivatives.
(c) **Stilbenes**: Stilbenes are a family of secondary metabolites derived from phenylpropanoid pathway that consist a trans-ethene double bond substituted with a phenyl on both carbon atoms of the double bond.
(d) **Lignans**: Lignans are plant polyphenolic compounds derived from phenylalanine through dimerization of substituted cinnamic acid alcohols.
(e) **Tannins**: Tannins are polyphenols that are obtained from various parts of different plants belonging to multiple species. It is found in abundance in the tree bark, wood, fruit, fruit pod, leaves, and roots and also in plant gall. Tannins can be classified into two broad groups—hydrolysable tannins and condensed tannins.
(f) **Alkaloids**: Alkaloids are phytochemicals that contain nitrogen and are derived from various amino acids.
(g) **Saponins**: Saponins are plant compounds that occur either as steroid alkaloids, glycosides of triterpenoids, or steroids.
(h) **Cardiac Glycosides**: Cardiac glycosides are plant secondary metabolites that have a glycoside unit and act on the contractile action of the cardiac muscle.
(i) **Sterols**: Phytosterols are subgroup of steroids that have structures and functions similar to cholesterol.
(j) **Terpenoids**: Terpenoids are compounds synthesized from five-carbon isoprene units mainly isopentenyl pyrophosphate and its isomerdimethylallyl pyrophosphate by terpene synthases (Table 1) (Fig. 1).

In this review, we provide an overview of the role of "**Terpenoids – An activator of " *fuel sensing enzyme AMPK*" with special emphasis on antidiabetic activity.**

Terpenoids

The terpenoids are a class of natural products which have been derived from five-carbon isoprene units. Most of the terpenoids have multi-cyclic structures that differ from one another by their functional groups and basic carbon skeletons. These types

Table 1 Biological activities of phytochemicals

Classification	Main groups of compounds	Biological function
NSA (non-starch polysaccharides)	Cellulose, hemicellulose, gums, mucilages, pectins, lignins	Water holding capacity, delay in nutrient absorption, binding toxins, and bile acids
Antibacterial and antifungal	Terpenoids, alkaloids, phenolics	Inhibitors of microorganisms, reduce the risk of fungal infection
Antioxidants	Polyphenolic compounds, flavonoids, carotenoids, tocopherols, ascorbic acid	Oxygen free radical quenching, inhibition of lipid peroxidation
Anticancer	Carotenoids, polyphenols, curcumin, flavonoids	Inhibitors of tumor, inhibited development of lung cancer, antimetastatic activity
Detoxifying agents	Reductive acids, tocopherols, phenols, indoles, aromatic isothiocyanates, coumarins, flavones, carotenoids, retinoids, cyanates, phytosterols	Inhibitors of procarcinogen activation, inducers of drug binding of carcinogens, inhibitors of tumorogenesis
Others	Alkaloids, terpenoids, volatile flavor compounds, biogenic amines	Neuropharmacological agents, antioxidants, cancer chemoprevention

of natural lipids can be found in every class of living things and therefore considered as the largest group of natural products. Many of the terpenoids are commercially interesting because of their use as flavors and fragrances in foods and cosmetics, for example, menthol and sclareol, or because they are important for the quality of agricultural products, such as the flavor of fruits and the fragrance of flowers like linalool. Terpenes are widespread in nature, mainly in plants as constituents of essential oils. Their building block is the hydrocarbon isoprene, $CH2 = C(CH3)–CH=CH2$. Terpene hydrocarbons therefore have molecular formula $(C5H8)n$, and they are classified according to the number of isoprene units:

(a) **Hemiterpenoids**: Consist of a single isoprene unit. The only hemiterpene is the isoprene itself, but oxygen-containing derivatives of isoprene such as isovaleric acid and prenol are classified as hemiterpenoids.
(b) **Monoterpenoids**: Biochemical modifications of monoterpenes such as oxidation or rearrangement produce the related monoterpenoids. Monoterpenoids have two isoprene units. Monoterpenes may be of two types, i.e., linear (acyclic), or contain rings, e.g., geranyl pyrophosphate, eucalyptol, limonene, citral, camphor, and pinene.
(c) **Sesquiterpenes**: Sesquiterpenes have *three isoprene* units, e.g., artemisinin, bisabolol and farnesol, oil of flowers, or cyclic compounds, such as eudesmol, found in eucalyptus oil.
(d) **Diterpenes**: They are composed of four isoprene units. They derive from geranylgeranyl pyrophosphate. There are some examples of diterpenes such as cembrene, kahweol, taxadiene, and cafestol. Retinol, retinal, and phytol

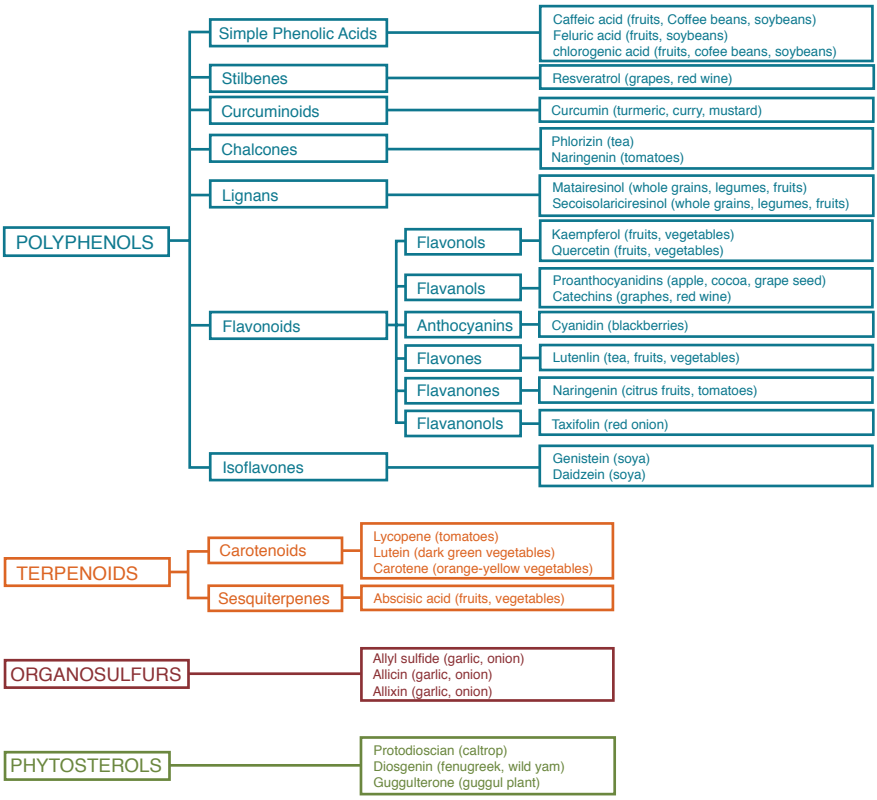


Fig. 1 Classification of dietary phytochemical (Gonzalez-Castejon and Rodriguez-Casado 2011)

are the biologically important compounds while using diterpenes as the base.

(e) **Triterpenes**: It consists of *six* isoprene units, e.g., lanosterol and squalene found in wheat germ and olives (Yadava et al. 2014).

Diversity of Terpenoids in Nature

Nature relies on an intricate network of biosynthetic pathways to produce a lot of small organic molecules required to support life. Terpenoids (also called "isoprenoids") constitute one of the largest families of natural products accounting for more than 40,000 individual compounds of both primary and secondary metabolisms. Most of them are of plant origin, and hundreds of new structures are reported every year. All organisms naturally produce some terpenoids as part of primary metabolism, but many produce terpenoids via secondary metabolism. Isopentenyl diphosphate (IPP) and its isomer dimethylallyl diphosphate (DMAPP) are the universal

five-carbon precursors of all terpenoids. After isotope-labeling studies by Rohmer et al., it has been shown that there is an alternate pathway to terpenoids that do not originate from acetyl-CoA. The complete pathway has been finally elucidated in 2002. This alternative MVA-independent pathway has been named the methylerythritol phosphate (MEP) pathway, which has been identified in both bacteria and plants. Plants use both pathways although they are compartmentalized: MVA to the cytoplasm and possibly to mitochondria to provide sterols, the side chain of ubiquinone, and sesquiterpenes (C15) and MEP to plastids providing plastidial terpenoids, for example, isoprene (C5), monoterpenes (C10), diterpenes (C20, including gibberellins and the phytyl tail of tocopherols and chlorophylls), and carotenoids (C40) (Goto et al. 2010).

Pharmaceutical Application of Terpenoids

Plants have an enormous capacity to synthesize huge amounts of diverse terpenoids, particularly via the combination of the terpenoid biosynthetic route and other secondary metabolic pathways. In addition to universal physiological, metabolic, and structural functions, many specific terpenoids function in various situations, including communication and defense. Members of the isoprenoid group also include industrially useful polymers (e.g., rubber and chicle) and agrochemicals (e.g., pyrethrins and azadirachtin). It is known that several herbal plants improve medical conditions. Such plants contain many bioactive phytochemicals. In particular, terpenoids are contained in many herbal plants, and several terpenoids have been shown to be available for pharmaceutical applications, for example, artemisinin and Taxol as malaria and cancer medicines, respectively. Various terpenoids are contained in many plants for not only herbal medicine use but also dietary use. Terpenoids also improve the skin tone, increase the concentration of antioxidants in wounds, and restore inflamed tissues by increasing blood supply. Terpenoids also improve lung function. Terpenoids have shown to reduce diastolic blood pressure and lower the sugar level in blood in hypertensive and diabetic patients, respectively, in the management of peripheral neuropathy, a complication associated with diabetes mellitus (Saxena et al. 2013).

Diabetes Mellitus

Diabetes mellitus is a disorder caused by the total (or relative) absence of insulin, which manifests clinically as an elevated blood glucose. Diabetes mellitus either classified as insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM) or non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (NIDDM). In 1998, a new classification system based upon the etiological factors at work in diabetes was proposed by the

WHO and has now become the accepted system for classifying diabetes mellitus:

1. **Type 1 diabetes**: immune-mediated and idiopathic forms of β-cell dysfunction, which lead to absolute insulin deficiency. This is an autoimmune-mediated disease process which gives rise to absolute deficiency of insulin and therefore total dependency upon insulin for survival.
2. **Type 2 diabetes**: disease of adult onset, which may originate from insulin resistance and relative insulin deficiency or from a secretory defect. This is a disease which appears to have a very strong genetic predisposition and is caused by a combination of inadequate insulin secretion and an insensitivity of the body tissues to insulin so leaving patients with this condition relatively deficient in insulin.
3. **Type 3 diabetes**: this covers a wide range of specific types of diabetes including various genetic defects in insulin action and diseases of the exocrine pancreas.
4. **Type 4 diabetes**: is gestational diabetes.

Morbidity: Diabetes places a huge burden of illness on sufferers and society. People with diabetes in the age group 45–64 years are 23 times more likely to be registered blind than the nondiabetic population of the same age. Diabetic retinopathy is the lead cause of blindness in this age group. Diabetes often affects the kidneys, and up to 40% of people who develop type 1 diabetes before the age of 30 years can expect to develop diabetes-related nephropathy. A significant number of these will progress to renal failure requiring long-term renal dialysis treatment. Thirty percent of people with diabetes develop diabetic neuropathy leading to a range of problems including from foot ulceration, sexual difficulties, cardiac arrhythmias, and sudden death.

Mortality: It is thought that 20,000 people per year die prematurely because of diabetes-associated disease. Most of these deaths are from the macrovascular complications of diabetes such as myocardial infarcts and cerebrovascular accidents. The number of people dying prematurely in the diabetic population is double that of the nondiabetic population.

Clinical Features and Etiology

Type 1 diabetes typically presents in the teens with a short history of weight loss, incredible thirst, and polyuria (passing lots of urine). Such patients are often thin, there is very often no family history of diabetes, and although the cause of the illness is not known, it is thought to be triggered by a viral infection.

Type 2 diabetes typically presents later in life. Such patients are often overweight at diagnosis, and there is often a strong family history of the disease. It is not

known why the disease develops, but it may be related to overeating. In contrast to type 1 diabetes, patients with type 2 diabetes are often asymptomatic when it is diagnosed, and the diagnosis is often made while a doctor is investigating some other complaint.

Type 2 Diabetes

Type 2 diabetes is characterized by the abnormal metabolism of glucose and fat, due to improper resistance to the actions of insulin in the skeletal muscle, liver, and fat. In the natural history of type 2 diabetes, pancreatic β-cells initially compensate for insulin resistance by secreting excess insulin. However with time, progressive β-cell failure leads to insulin deficiency and overt hyperglycemia. Progression in diabetes leads to the development of chronic complications such as retinopathy, neuropathy, nephropathy, etc.

At present, oral therapy for type 2 diabetes relies on several approaches targeted to reduce hyperglycemia, namely, sulfonylureas, which increase insulin release from pancreatic islets; α-glucosidase inhibitors, which inhibit gut glucose absorption; metformin, which acts to reduce hepatic glucose output through inhibition of gluconeogenesis; and peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-activator thiazolidinediones (TZDs), which promote insulin sensitization. These therapies have either limited efficacy or significant mechanism-based side effects like hypoglycemia, flatulence, body weight gain, or enhancement of gastrointestinal problems.

Evidence accumulated over the past few years indicates that the AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK) may be a good target for the pharmacologic treatment of type 2 diabetes.

AMP-Activated Protein Kinase (AMPK)

The AMPK belongs to the family of energy-sensing enzymes that are activated by cellular stresses resulting in ATP depletion, thus acting like a "fuel gauge." Upon activation, AMPK functions to restore cellular ATP by both inhibiting ATP consumption processes and accelerating ATP generation processes. The cascade is activated by stresses such as prolonged exercise, electrical stimulation in skeletal muscle, ischemia in heart muscle, heat shock, as well as inhibition of tricarboxylic acid cycle or oxidative phosphorylation. AMPK is activated by an increase in AMP/ATP and creatine/phosphocreatine (pCr) ratios, resulting in allosteric modification, and/or through mechanism involving phosphorylation of the subunit by upstream kinases (AMPKKs).

Structure of AMPK

AMPK is a highly evolutionarily conserved serine/threonine kinase and found in all eukaryotic species. It exists as a heterotrimeric complex consisting of a catalytic (α1 or α2) subunit and two regulating (β1 or β2 and γ1, γ2, or γ3) subunits, all of which are encoded by separate genes; therefore, at least 12 combinations are possible. At the molecular level, the catalytic α-subunits contain a classical serine/threonine kinase domain at the N-terminus while a regulatory domain at the C-terminus, which is involved in complex formation with β and γ subunits. The β subunits contain C-terminal region that interacts with α and γ subunits and serves as the scaffold of the heterotrimeric complex. In addition, the central part of β subunits contains a specific sequence "N-isoamylase domain" required for AMPK complexes binding to glycogen. The γ subunits contain N-terminal four tandem repeats of cystathionine-β-synthase sequences (CBS) to form two Bateman domains, which selectively bind adenosine-containing molecules, such as AMP or ATP. AMPK α consists of 548 amino acids (aa), and it contains catalytic domain (1–312aa), an autoinhibitory domain (312–392 aa), and a subunit-binding domain (392–548 aa). The catalytic domain has a site of phosphorylation at Thr172 which is required to be phosphorylated for its activation by AMPKK (Fig. 2).

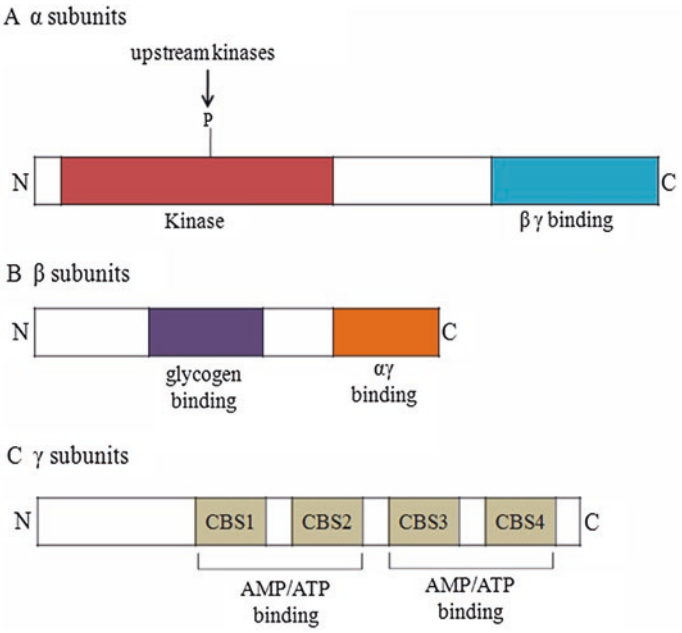


Fig. 2 Typical domain structure of α, β, and γ subunits of AMPK. (Mohammad Nasir Uddin et al. 2013)

Role of AMPK in Skeletal Muscle

Skeletal muscle is the main site for glucose disposal in the body, and there are two ways to stimulate glucose uptake in skeletal muscle: insulin dependent and insulin independent. Insulin resistance is one of the early defects detected in the muscle of diabetic patients, and insulin resistance is caused mainly due to defect in insulin-signaling pathways. Decrease in insulin-stimulated tyrosine phosphorylation of the insulin receptor and insulin receptor-1 substrate (IRS-1) and in IRS-1-associated phosphatidylinositol-3 kinase (PI-3 kinase) activity leading to the problem in translocation of glucose transporter (GLUT4) from microvesicle to membrane.

Currently no pharmacological approach is being pursued to correct these defects in insulin-signaling pathway. Therefore, targeting insulin-independent pathway to restore glucose disposal can be explored as an alternative approach. There are sufficient data available to support the hypothesis that exercise enhances muscle glucose disposal in diabetic patients through an insulin-independent mechanism. **Mimicking exercise-like effect through drug could be an attractive approach to improve blood glucose level**. Muscle contraction leads to increase in AMP/ATP and Cr/pCr levels leading to robust increase in AMPK activity which is well correlated with contraction-mediated glucose uptake in muscle. It's suggested that AMPK plays an important role in contraction-mediated glucose disposal.

Role of AMPK in Liver

In the liver, activated AMPK inactivates ACC at transcriptional and posttranslational level and also inhibits HMG-CoA reductase, the rate-limiting enzyme in cholesterol synthesis by phosphorylation. Like skeletal muscle, in the liver also, activated AMPK decreases malonyl CoA synthesis resulting in increased β-oxidation through enhanced CPT-1 activity. Type 2 diabetic patients are often associated with hypertriglyceridemia and high cholesterol, the potential risk factors for cardiovascular problems. Activated AMPK could reduce this risk by controlling elevated level of free fatty acid, TG, and cholesterol. The elevation of fasting plasma glucose is associated with type 2 diabetes, and it is regulated by gluconeogenesis, a process which makes glucose from noncarbohydrate source in the liver. Gluconeogenic enzymes like phosphoenolpyruvate carboxy kinase (PEPCK) and glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase are the major players. Thus, AMPK, by inhibiting hepatic glucose output and increasing muscle glucose uptake, could control elevated blood glucose level in the body.

Role of AMPK in Adipocytokine Signaling

Adiponectin and leptin, the two adipocytokines produced and secreted from adipose tissues, play an important role in the pathogenesis of type 2 diabetes. Adiponectin increases free fatty oxidation through ACC, an AMPK target gene, and also enhances insulin sensitivity both in the skeletal muscle and liver. There is an inverse relationship with the level of blood plasma adiponectin and insulin resistance. These results indicate that adiponectin behaves like an ideal AMPK activator. Leptin has both central and peripheral mechanisms through which it controls energy expenditure. Being secreted from adipose tissue, leptin binds to its receptor in the brain and exhibits its effect through JAK-STAT (Janus kinases-signal transducers and activators of transcription) pathway. The activation of AMPK by leptin causes inhibition of ACC, which in turn stimulates skeletal muscle fatty acid oxidation indicating that its insulin sensitization action might be through reduction in free fatty acid level, the potential precursor of insulin resistance (Misra and Chakrabarti 2007).

AMPK as a Pharmacological Target: Present and Promise

AMPK Activity Is Critical to Cell Physiology in Different Tissues and Organs

AMPK functions as a ser/thr kinase which provides an evolutionary conserved cellular energy sensor. This kinase is a focal point for metabolic control in all eukaryotes, where it regulates many aspects of physiology. It is well-established that AMPK and its yeast ortholog Snf1 control a large number of diverse processes; they include the response to nutrient limitation or other environmental changes, transcription, transport across the nuclear envelope, cell growth, cell cycle progression, mitosis, cell polarity, development, and auto- and mitophagy. As a result of these contributions, AMPK is vital to the function of several organs and tissues in metazoans. Owing to its pivotal role in the control of glucose homeostasis and carbohydrate, lipid, and protein metabolism, AMPK is a key player in many human diseases and disorders. In particular, the low activation state of AMPK could contribute to the increase in type 2 diabetes and obesity. Moreover, as essential regulator of glucose homeostasis and lipid metabolism, AMPK has become an important therapeutic target in type 2 diabetes. AMPK is a global target as it regulates different diversified signals in metabolic pathways.

On the basis of the merits associated with this target, an ideal AMPK activator is expected to increase muscle glucose transport and muscle insulin sensitivity, enhance fat oxidation in muscle and liver, inhibit hepatic gluconeogenesis, decrease cholesterol and triglyceride synthesis in liver, and devoid problems associated with present antidiabetic drugs (gastrointestinal problem, body weight increase, etc.). Three different kinds of AMPK activators have been reported so far. First, PPARg

activators, rosiglitazone and pioglitazone, activate AMPK without direct binding but by increasing the cellular AMP/ATP ratio. Second, AICAR, an analog of natural activator AMP, activates AMPK through direct binding followed by allosteric modification. Lastly, metformin, an AMPK activator, does not affect AMP/ATP ratios or bind to AMPK but acts through an unknown mechanism. PPARg agonist rosiglitazone, the leading antidiabetic drug, although an activator of AMPK, is associated with PPARg-related side effects, like weight gain and edema.

Therefore, it is a great challenge for the pharmaceutical companies to get a safe but efficacious AMPK activator. We also need to remember that there are certain difficulties associated with AMPK, which makes it a difficult pharmacological target:

1. AMPK is a heterotrimeric protein and so far no crystal structure is available.
2. Each subunit contains two or more isoforms.
3. The AMP-binding site is not well defined.

Despite these limitations, several pharmaceutical companies are working on this target and have reported several AMPK activators in preclinical studies (Fig. 3).

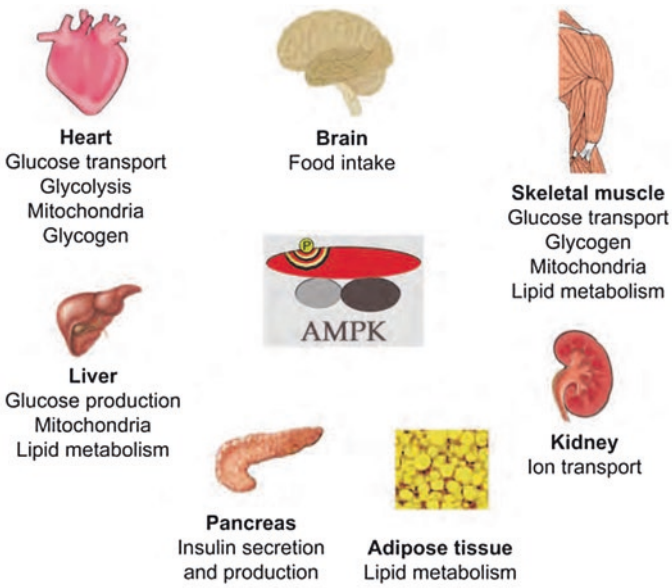


Fig. 3 The role of AMPK in different organs and tissues (Mohammad Nasir Uddin et al. 2013)

Organization and Activation of AMPK

AMPK senses a drop in cellular energy as it is induced by a reduction in glucose availability or other metabolic stresses. The overall consequence of AMPK activation is a change in metabolism; thus, when the AMP/ATP ratio increases, AMPK becomes activated in order to rescue the energy balance. As a result of AMPK activation, the cellular metabolism switches from anabolic to catabolic processes. This metabolic shift is accomplished by the AMPK-dependent phosphorylation of multiple targets which are located in different cellular organelles and compartments. The heterotrimeric enzyme AMPK contains one catalytic subunit that is encoded by two genes (1 and 2). The regulatory and subunits are encoded by two and three genes, respectively. The two subunits (1, 2) can be myristoylated and phosphorylated, and these modifications may impact the activation and intracellular localization of AMPK. The subunits (1, 2, 3) bind AMP and ATP in a mutually exclusive fashion; this AMP binding is important to the activation of the enzyme.

Activators of AMPK

AMP-activated protein kinase can be activated by various types of metabolic stress that lead to ATP depletion, such as conditions of low nutrient supply or prolonged exercise, or via an increase in intracellular Ca^{2+} concentration. The upstream kinases, LKB1 and calcium/calmodulin-dependent protein kinase kinase-β (CaMKKβ), activate AMPK by phosphorylating Thr172 in the activation loop of the catalytic α-subunit. The finding that CaMKKβ can also activate AMPK, independently of LKB1, broadened the potential for AMPK to be used for therapy in cancers that have mutant LKB1 and thus low AMPK activation. The more well-known activators of AMPK include several pharmacological agents that stimulate the LKB1 pathway. Metformin, the most widely prescribed type 2 diabetes drug for more than 30 years, has been shown to activate AMPK in an LKB1-dependent manner. Metformin mimics an energetic stress because it inhibits the mitochondrial complex I in hepatocytes and cancer cells which leads to the decrease in intracellular ATP and an increase in glycolysis and lactate production. Consistent with this, diabetic patients treated with metformin had a lower incidence of cancer compared to those on other medications. Phenformin, a biguanide more potent than metformin, and A-769662, a direct AMPK activator developed by Abbott, also delayed tumorigenesis in a mouse cancer model. 5-Amino-1-β-Dffff-ribofuranosyl-imidazole-4-carboxamide, or AICAR, is an analog of AMP and widely used to activate AMPK in experiments. Interestingly, AMPK is also activated by ionizing radiation (IR) in lung, prostate, and breast cancer cells, independent of LKB1. Among the most recent developments is the activation of AMPK by naturally occurring dietary constituents and plant products (Kim and He 2013).

Activation of AMPK by Phytochemicals

It was not until about 5 years ago that AMPK began to be recognized as a target for various phytochemicals. In addition to pharmaceutical agents, numerous naturally occurring compounds and phytochemicals have been shown to activate AMPK. Among them are:

- **Polyphenols**: a structural class of natural or synthetic products characterized by the presence of multiples of phenol structure units. Despite the structural variance, numerous polyphenols are capable of activating AMPK, and they exert beneficial effects on type 2 diabetes and metabolic syndrome. These include resveratrol from red grapes; quercetin from many plant units including fruits, vegetables, and grains; genistein found in a number of plants such as soybeans; epigallocatechin gallate from green tea; berberine from *Coptis chinensis*; and curcumim from *Curcuma longa*. Mechanisms of activation of AMPK by these compounds appear to require the elevation of AMP levels because many of these compounds are known to inhibit mitochondrial ATP production. Resveratrol, quercetin, epigallocatechin-3-gallate, and curcumin target and inhibit the mitochondrial F_1F_0-ATPase/ATP synthase, whereas berberine is associated with the inhibition of respiratory chain complex I. The molecular mechanism of AMPK activation by resveratrol, berberine, and quercetin has further been supported by the observation that these compounds fail to activate AMPK in cells expressing AMP-insensitive (R531G) AMPKγ2 subunit.
- **Ginsenoside**: *Panax ginseng* has been long known to have favorable effects in type 2 diabetes and metabolic syndrome. Ginsenosides, a class of tetracyclic triterpene glycosides, are the major pharmacological ingredients in ginseng. To date, more than 80 structurally different ginsenosides have been isolated from the plant genus *Panax*, and a number of ginsenosides, including Rb1, Rb2, Rc, Re, Rg1, Rg2, and Rg3, have been reported to activate AMPK, resulting in an increased glucose uptake, decreased hepatic triglyceride and cholesterol levels, and inhibition of lipogenesis and hepatic glucose production. The mechanisms for AMPK activation by ginsenosides are largely unknown; however, presumably these compounds are likely to activate AMPK via AMP-dependent mechanisms because the ginsenoside, Rb1, has been reported to increase the intracellular AMP/ATP ratio.
- **α-Lipoic acid**: α-Lipoic acid (ALA), a naturally occurring dithiol compound derived from octanoic acid, has a critical role in mitochondrial bioenergetics reactions by acting as a cofactor for pyruvate dehydrogenase and α-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase. Owing to its powerful antioxidant property, ALA has gained substantial attention for use in managing diabetic complications. Recent studies have also demonstrated that ALA exerts beneficial effects on metabolic syndrome, lipotoxic cardiomyopathy, and endothelial dysfunction through the activation of AMPK in various tissues. Although the underlying mechanisms for AMPK regulation by ALA are poorly understood, Shen et al. have reported that ALA increases the intracellular calcium level in C2C12 myotubes, suggesting

that CaMKK, but not LKB1, is responsible for AMPK activation. In the hypothalamus, where AMPK is implicated in the regulation of appetite, ALA suppresses AMPK activity, leading to reduced food intake. Further examination is required to understand the molecular mechanism of the regulation of AMPK by ALA.

- **Resveratrol**: Resveratrol (trans-3,5,4′-trihydroxystilbene) is a dietary polyphenol compound, found in a wide variety of plant species including grapes, red wines, berries, and peanuts. Recently, resveratrol has been reported as a potent AMPK activator and useful in the treatment of diabetes and metabolic syndrome. Murase et al. reported resveratrol as an exercise substitutive agent, which, through AMPK activation, induces energy metabolism and is effective for preventing or ameliorating obesity, diabetes, hyperglycemia, insulin resistance, hypercholesterolemia, hepatic hypertrophy, or fatty liver. In this invention, the AMPK activation potential of resveratrol was evaluated on the basis of phosphorylation of AMPK α and β.
- **Nootkatone**: Nootkatone, [4, 4a, 5, 6, 7, 8-hexahydro-6-isopropenyl-4, 4a-dimethyl-2(3H) naphthalenone], present in grapefruit peels, has received much attention as flavor because of its characteristic flavor and taste of grapefruit. Although its physiological activity has hardly been reported, recently, Murase et al. found nootkatone as potent AMPK activator. Murase et al. (2010) claimed that nootkatone has strong AMPK-activating action in muscle cells which promotes glucose and lipid metabolism.
- **Cucurbitane triterpenoid**: Cucurbitane-type triterpenoids are isolated from *Momordica charantia* L (Cucurbitaceae family), and it had been claimed that these compounds may act as glucose uptake stimulator, agonist for translocation of GLUT4 to the cell membrane, and AMPK activator.
- **Obovatol**: Obovatol, a phenolic constituent from *Magnolia obovata*, is well known for its antidepressive and antianxiety effect. Obovatol has been claimed as potent AMPK-activating agents, and it might be used in the treatment of diabetes and metabolic syndrome.
- **Glabridin**: Glabridin is a dietary isoflavan compound, one of the major active flavonoids in licorice (*Glycyrrhiza glabra*). It has been reported as a novel AMPK activator that would exert therapeutic effects in obesity-related metabolic disorders. Moreover, Park et al. (2006) disclosed glabridin as a strong AMPK activator and, therefore, potential drug target for diabetes and metabolic syndrome.
- **Damulin A and B**: Huh et al. (2011) reported two novel dammarane-type glycosides, named damulin A and B from *Gynostemma pentaphyllum* as strong AMPK activator. In vitro study revealed that both compounds, damulin A and B, strongly activate AMPK. Moreover, upon AMPK activation both compounds increased β-oxidation with increasing GLUT4 translocation to the plasma membrane. Taken together, the results clearly indicated that damulin A and B possess high antidiabetic and anti-obesity effect.
- **Other AMPK modulators**: Although intracellular energy levels are a major determinant of AMPK activity, AMPK is highly sensitive to the cellular level of reactive oxygen species (ROS). In many cases, oxidative stress results in intra-

cellular ATP depletion. However, recent studies have revealed that ROS can stimulate AMPK activity even without a decrease in cellular ATP. Oxidative modification of the AMPKα subunit appears to be a major mechanism by which AMPK is activated under conditions of oxidative stress. Therefore, any modulators capable of inducing intracellular ROS generation can activate AMPK without an associated decrease in ATP levels. Such a modulator is cryptotanshinone from *Salvia miltiorrhiza Bunge*, which exerts antidiabetic and anticancer effects through ROS-dependent AMPK activation. DNA-damaging agents, such as cisplatin or metals, including arsenite, vanadate, and cobalt, activate AMPK through ROS generation.

Conclusion

Diabetes has been considered as a global health burden by the World Health Organization (WHO), and it represents one of the leading causes of mortality and morbidity worldwide. Although several synthetic drugs have been developed as antidiabetic agents, their utility has been hampered due to their side effects and poor efficacy. In this scenario, research on natural products has gained importance due to their safety profile in toxicity studies. Terpenoids belong to an important class of natural products, and several terpenoids have been reported as antidiabetic agents. Its shown that various molecular mechanisms involved in the diabetes and progression of diabetic complications by inhibiting glucose absorption, glucose uptake, insulin secretion, enzymes involved in glucose metabolism, prevent the development of insulin resistance, strong antioxidant activity and inhibit the formation of advanced glycation end products, inhibition or expression of several genes which are responsible for diabetes and progression of diabetic complications.

Even several classes of novel natural products are established for the treatment, the utility is less because of untoward effects of drug therapy. So research had done so for on natural products to achieve better treatment than existed therapy with synthetic drugs. As a part of that, terpenoids exhibit promising role in the prevention and treatment of diabetes and diabetic complications like retinopathy, nephropathy, neuropathy, embryopathy, and other vascular dysfunctions.

As a sensor of cellular energy levels that acts on a diverse array of biological pathways, it is not surprising that AMPK plays a key role in the regulation of cell growth and metabolism. Thus, significant progress has been made in the discovery of novel and promising activators of AMPK and in resolving the mechanism of action of agents that activate AMPK in cells. However, considering the complexity of AMPK biology and the biochemical features associated with AMPK complexes, it is highly challenging to discover complex and/or tissue-selective AMPK activators. Nevertheless, the number of recent advances in the field has begun to make AMPK a feasible drug target. Consequently, several natural compounds, reported in the last few years, showed promise as AMPK activator which might have exciting potential for use in the treatment of metabolic diseases.

Terpenoids are capable of stimulating AMPK activity, favoring GLUT4 translocation, weight loss, and metabolic control. Here we propose triterpenes as natural multi-target agents, which represent promising therapeutic agents by acting on various molecular mechanisms leading not only to diabetes but also diabetic complications. Combinatorial therapy using antidiabetic triterpenoids may also be advantageous. Overall, research on the development of triterpenoids in diabetic therapy is in good progress. Safety profile of triterpenoids in toxicity studies represents an advantage for their clinical development. In this context, discovery of antidiabetic new triterpenoids from natural sources and detailed investigations including clinical evaluation on existing antidiabetic triterpenoids are needed for their development as effective and safe drugs for diabetic therapy.

Conflict of Interest The authors do not have any conflict of interest to declare.

References

Clark AM (1996) Natural Products As A Resource For New Drugs. Pharm Res 13(8):1133–1141

Gonzalez-Castejon M, Rodriguez-Casado A (2011) Dietary phytochemicals and their potential effects on obesity: A review. Pharmacol Res 64:438–455

Goto T, Takahashi N, Hirai S, Kawada T (2010) Various terpenoids derived from herbal and dietary plants function as ppar modulators and regulate carbohydrate and lipid metabolism. PPAR Res 2010:9

Huh YH, King J, Cohen J, Sherley JL (2011) SACK-expanded hair follicle stem cells display asymmetric nuclear Lgr5 expression with non-random sister chromatid segregation. Sci Rep 1:176. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep00176

Kim IY, He Y-Y (2013) Targeting the AMP-activated protein kinase for cancer prevention and therapy. Front Oncol 3:2

Koehn FE, Carter GT (2005) The evolving role of natural products in drug discovery. Nat Rev Drug Discov 4:206–220

Marín-Aguilar F, Pavillard LE, Giampieri F, Bullón P, Cordero MD (2017) Adenosine monophosphate (AMP)-activated protein kinase: a new target for nutraceutical compounds. Int J Mol Sci 18:288

Misra P, Chakrabarti R (2007) The role of AMP kinase in diabetes. Indian J Med Res 125:389–398

Nasir Uddin M, Sharma G, Choi HS, Lim S-IL, Oh WK (2013) AMPK activators from natural products: a patent review. Nat Prod Sci 19(1):1–7

Murase T, Misawa K, Haramizu S, Minegishi Y, Hase, T (2010) Nootkatone, a characteristic constituent of grapefruit, stimulates energy metabolism and prevents diet-induced obesity by activating AMPK. Am J Physiol-Endoc M299:E266–E275

Park IJ, Hwang JT, Kim YM, Ha J, Park OJ (2006). Differential modulation of AMPK signaling pathways by low or high levels of exogenous reactive oxygen species in colon cancer cells. Ann NY Acad Sci 1091:102–109

Phillipson JD (2001) Phytochemistry and medicinal plants. Phytochemistry 56:237–243

Saxena M, Saxena J, Nema R, Singh D, Gupta A (2013) Phytochemistry of medicinal plants. J Pharmacogn Phytochem 1(6):168–182

Squirrell D (1999) SpR ophthalmology Royal Hallamshire Hospital Sheffield. Judith Bush General Practitioner and clinical assistant in Ophthalmology , Diabetes Mellitus, 31-33. Environ Health Perspect 107:783–789

Yadava N, Yadava R, Goyalb A (2014) Chemistry of terpenoids. Int J Pharm Sci Rev Res 27(2):272–278

Active Compounds, Health Effects, and Extraction of Unconventional Plant Seed Oils

Hasene Keskin Çavdar

Abbreviations

AEE	Aqueous enzymatic extraction
ALA	α-Linolenic acid
CLnA	Conjugated linolenic acid
DHA	Docosahexaenoic
DPA	Docosapentaenoic acid
EPA	Eicosapentaenoic
GAE	Gallic acid equivalent
GAME	Gas-assisted mechanical extraction
GLA	γ-Linolenic acid
HDL	High-density lipoproteins
LA	Linoleic acid
LDL	Low-density lipoproteins
MAE	Microwave-assisted extraction
PEF	Pulsed electric field extraction
PUFAs	Polyunsaturated fatty acids
SC-CO_2	Supercritical carbon dioxide
SDA	Stearidonic acid
SFE	Supercritical fluid extraction
UAE	Ultrasound-assisted extraction
α-ESA	α-Eleostearic acid

H. Keskin Çavdar (✉)
Engineering Faculty, Food Engineering Department, The University of Gaziantep, Gaziantep, Turkey
e-mail: hasenekeskin@gantep.edu.tr

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_10

Introduction

In recent years, several researches have been carried out to discover the active compounds of the oils extracted from the seeds of exploited or underexploited plant species and their effects on human health with increasing health awareness among consumers. Many of these plant species contain significant amount of oil and are considered as a source of dietary or specialty oils with their valuable functional components. Recent researches have shown that those plant seed oils may serve as specialty oils for health promotion and disease prevention due to their special fatty acid composition and other beneficial bioactive components (Yu et al. 2006). The mentioned special plant species with high fixed oil content are defined in the transitional region between the medicinal plants and industrial raw materials.

The rapidly growing functional food and nutraceutical market are targeting bioactive lipid components, such as ω-3 fatty acids, phytosterols, tocopherols, and tocotrienols, for their health benefits (Temelli 2009). The important role of these compounds in the prevention and treatment of some chronic diseases and improvement of immunity system has been demonstrated in many studies. The seeds of black cumin, sesame, flax, nettle, pomegranate, grape, pumpkin, and mustard are the most common specialty oil sources that are used in alternative and folk medicine to prevent some chronic diseases and also improve immune function.

It is critical to consume the high-quality specialty oil preserving its valuable components. These oils are extracted traditionally by cold pressing to preserve the bioactive compounds, while novel extraction methods have been started to be used such as supercritical fluid, ultrasound, microwave-assisted extraction, or enzymatic aqueous extraction. Cold pressing is used substantially in the specialty oil extraction. However, cold pressing is restricted in terms of oil recovery and the high levels of residual oil left in the meal. Moreover, conventional solvent extraction depends on the use of organic solvents, which should be removed with the aid of subsequent evaporation. Heat-sensitive bioactive compounds can be damaged because of the heat applied during solvent evaporation. Additionally, government regulations on the use of organic solvents are getting stricter, and the safety of residual organic solvents in the final product is being questioned (Temelli et al. 2008). The present chapter provides an overview of the specialty oils derived from plant seeds, their bioactive compounds, health benefits, and therapeutic applications and, besides, novel extraction methods for these oils.

Specialty Oils

Some plant-based oils are classified as specialty oils owing to their high content of bioactive constitutes with established health benefits. Specialty oils consist of triacylglycerols mainly with a fatty acid composition rich in unsaturated fatty acids and minor constituents such as tocols, carotenoids, sterols, and squalene (Temelli et al.

2008; Turkay and Gurbuz 2013). Nowadays, these specialty high-value plant seed oils are gaining attention owing to their health benefits which are linked to their high content of special polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs) and other bioactive compounds (Van Hoed et al. 2009). These components give the oil important dietary properties. Nut oils (hazelnut, peanut, pecan, pistachio, and walnut), seed oils (apricot, borage, cherry, evening primrose, flax, grape, hiprose, pumpkin, sea buckthorn, sesame, etc.), cereal oils (oat, rice bran, and wheat germ), and oils of fruits and vegetables (buriti fruit, carrot, cloudberry, olive husk, and tomato) are classified under specialty oils (Temelli 2009). The gourmet and health-promoting specialty oils are distinguished from the major commodity oils by the following characteristics: (1) gentle processing (gentle extraction or cold pressing and gentle or no refining), (2) unique flavor and/or aroma, (3) unique health-promoting properties, (4) lower production amounts, and (5) higher prices (Moreau and Kamal-Eldin 2009).

Although the demand for specialty oils is expanding at a rapid pace, they are available in modest quantities and still regarded as a niche market compared to the commodity oils (Temelli et al. 2008). If the oils are to be used as dietary supplements, as health foods, as gourmet oils, or in the cosmetic industry, it is important that the seeds are to be handled, transported, and stored under conditions that will maintain quality. It may also be necessary to consider growing the crops in such a way as to minimize the level of pesticides (Gunstone 2006). Some trade organizations and government agencies have started to issue guidelines for quality and specifications for some functional specialty oils. However, some issues still remain on what methodologies should be used to validate the health and functional properties of nutraceutical specialty oils and the establishment of regulatory protocols to insure that products meet the quality and efficacy specifications (Hernandez 2016).

Health Effects of Specialty Oils

Traditionally plant seed-derived oil has been primarily used as a medium of cooking and a lubricant and is also utilized in pharmaceuticals and other industries. However, lately, the focus has been on identifying functional ingredients in oilseeds that can find therapeutic applications (Naik and Lele 2012). Numerous physiological and biochemical processes in the human body may produce oxygen-centered free radicals and other reactive oxygen species as by-products due to exposure to oxygen, smoke, exercise, carcinogens, toxins, UV light, or sunlight. Overproduction of such free radicals can cause reversible or irreversible oxidative damage to biomolecules such as lipids, proteins, and DNA. These damages may cause cancer, heart diseases, and arthritis and could accelerate aging of organisms (Cai et al. 2004; Siger et al. 2008; Van Hoed 2010).

The consumption of new and improved products such as cold-pressed specialty oils may improve human health and may prevent certain diseases mentioned (Siger et al. 2008). Most of these beneficial effects are due to antioxidant activity of spe-

cialty oils, especially when the presence of phenolic compounds and tocopherols is involved in the stability of oils. Unsaturated fatty acids, squalene, and carotenoids also affect the pro- and/or antioxidative processes in the oils (Tuberoso et al. 2007). Epidemiological studies have demonstrated that many of these antioxidant compounds possess anti-inflammatory, anti-atherosclerotic, antitumor, antimutagenic, anticarcinogenic, antibacterial, or antiviral activities to a greater or lesser extent (Cai et al. 2004).

Nutraceutical Applications of Specialty Oils

The list of the high-value seed oils rich in bioactives is almost endless. Some of the specialty oils are listed below including their main characteristic compositions, functional properties, and nutraceutical applications. The specialty oils mentioned were selected considering their prevalences documented in the literature and in the lists of specialty oil market. Moreover, some specialty oils which are getting attention in recent years were also given.

Almond (*Oleum amygdalae*) Oil

Almond oil includes significant amounts of the essential fatty acids. Almond oil is rich in β-zoosterol, squalene, and α-tocopherol, all of which are important constituents of healthy-looking skin (Ahmad 2010). It is used as a cosmeceutical and commonly used in skin care products. It is also marketed as an antiaging and anti-wrinkle skin product and a promoter of healthy hair and scalp (Hernandez 2016). Historically, almond oil had been used in ancient Chinese, Ayurvedic, and Greco–Persian schools of medicine to treat dry skin conditions such as psoriasis and eczema. Cardiovascular benefits have also been identified with almond oil increasing the levels of "good cholesterol" and high-density lipoproteins (HDL), while it reduces low-density lipoproteins (LDL) (Ahmad 2010).

Amaranth (*Amaranthus cruentus*) Seed Oil

Amaranth seed oil contains relatively high levels of squalene (Berganza et al. 2003). The oil comprises significant proportions of linoleic and oleic acid (León-Camacho et al. 2001). It has been sold as a nutritional supplement for improvement of the immune system. It is widely sold to improve skin health (Hernandez 2016). Regular consumption of amaranth oil reduces blood pressure and cholesterol levels improving antioxidant status and some immune parameters since amaranth seed oil may be a benefit for those with hypertension and cardiovascular disease (Martirosyan et al. 2007).

Apricot (*Prunus armeniaca*) Seed Kernel Oil

The main fatty acids are oleic (58.3–73.4%) and linoleic (18.8–31.7%). It also contains neutral lipids, glycolipids, phospholipids, and phytosterols (Turan et al. 2007). Apricot seed oil is used in cosmetics, particularly as a skin-conditioning agent, and is also available as a specialty oil for food use (Gunstone 2006).

Bitter Gourd (*Momordica charantia* L.) Seed Oil

The bitter gourd seed oil is unique since it comprises high amounts of conjugated fatty acid α-eleostearic acid (50–60%, α-ESA), a positional and geometric isomer of α-linolenic acid (C18:3 ω-3 or ALA) (Yoshime et al. 2016). This oil has been used in traditional folk medicine for the treatment of many diseases, such as diabetes and atherosclerosis. α-ESA suppresses the growth of DLD-1 human colon cancer cells by inducing apoptosis via lipid peroxidation. α-ESA, which is converted to conjugated linoleic acid in vivo, had a stronger suppressive effect than the conjugated linoleic acid on tumor cell growth (Nerurkar and Ray 2010; Tsuzuki et al. 2004). Grossmann et al. (Grossmann et al. 2009) have shown that α-ESA blocks breast cancer cell proliferation and induces apoptosis.

Black Cumin (*Nigella sativa*) Seed Oil

Black cumin seed oil is rich in linoleic and oleic acids as well as bioactive phytosterols and tocopherols (Ramadan et al. 2012). Black cumin seed and its oil have been traditionally used to promote health and prevent diseases. Their immunopotentiating, immunomodulating, and interferon-like activities have been documented in the literature (Lutterodt et al. 2010). Black cumin seed oil can be taken in the capsule form, and it can be used externally for curing skin diseases such as psoriasis and eczema (Ramadan 2007). Black cumin crude seed oil is mainly desirable for skin eruptions, paralysis, hemiplegia, back pain, rheumatism, and related inflammatory diseases (Lutterodt et al. 2010). The seed oil has been reported to possess antitumor, antioxidant, antibacterial, anti-inflammatory, hypoglycemic, central nervous system depressant, antioxidant, and immunostimulatory activities. These activities have been attributed to the fixed oil, volatile oil, or their components (Amin et al. 2010).

Black Currant (*Ribes nigrum*) Seed Oil

Black currant seed oil is of interest and of value because it contains γ-linolenic acid (C18:3 ω-6 or GLA) and stearidonic acid (C18:4 ω-3 or SDA) which are important metabolites of linoleic and linolenic acids, respectively. Black currant seed oil is also a rich source of tocopherols (1700 mg/kg). It is used in cosmetics and also as

dietary supplements (Gunstone 2006). It has a moderate immune-enhancing effect (Wu et al. 1999). Black currant seed oil reduces LDL cholesterol level and is helpful in premenstrual syndrome (Fa-lin et al. 2010; Philp 2003).

Borage (*Borago officinalis* L.) Seed Oil

Borage seed oil has one of the highest amounts of γ-linolenic acid (30–40%) of seed oils (Asadi-Samani et al. 2014). It is used for the treatment of various diseases such as multiple sclerosis, diabetes, heart diseases, rheumatoid arthritis, seborrheic dermatitis, neurodermatitis, and eczema (Hernandez 2016; Asadi-Samani et al. 2014).

Cactus Pear (*Opuntia ficus-indica* L.) Seed Oil

Cactus pear seed oil has high content of polyunsaturated fatty acids and vitamins. It is characterized by a high degree of unsaturation wherein linoleic acid (C18:2 ω-6 or LA) is the major fatty acid (56.1–77%) (Ramadan and Mörsel 2003). Nowadays, this oil is getting more attention. It is traditionally used as a cosmeceutical and commonly used in skin care products. Moreover, Ennouri et al. (Ennouri et al. 2006) observed a decrease in plasma total cholesterol and in cholesterol with no change in HDL-cholesterol concentrations after the addition of seed oil (25 g/kg) to the diet in rats (Ennouri et al. 2006).

Coriander (*Coriandrum sativum*) Seed Oil

Coriander seed oil is unique because of its high amount of petroselinic acid (C18:1 ω-12). The location of unsaturation in this fatty acid is at the 6,7-position, which is rare among octadecanoic acid and can hence produce unique derivatives that cannot be achieved with other seed oils (Placek 1963; Sahib et al. 2013). It is handled in cosmetics, body-care products, and perfumes (Opdyke 1973). It reduces triglyceride levels and LDL and very-low-density lipoprotein (VLDL) cholesterol and improves HDL cholesterol. Coriander oil has also mild anti-inflammatory effect with good skin tolerance (Sahib et al. 2013; Reuter et al. 2008).

Evening Primrose (*Oenothera biennis* L.) Seed Oil

The primrose seed oil is rich in γ-linolenic acid and γ-tocopherol. Evening primrose seed oil was found to contain lipophilic triterpenoidal esters such as 3-O-*trans*-caffeoyl derivatives of betulinic and oleanolic acid (Boskou 2017). Evening primrose oil is used as a supplement for skin disorders such as eczema, psoriasis, and acne. It is also used for rheumatoid arthritis and weak bones (osteoporosis) (Hernandez 2016).

Fenugreek (*Trigonella foenum-graecum* L.) Seed Oil

It consists of mainly unsaturated acids, namely, linoleic, linolenic, and oleic acids (Ciftci et al. 2011). The oil is used in folk medicine owing to its evaluated hypolipidemic, hypoglycemic, antidiabetic, reno-protective, and antioxidant effects (Hamden et al. 2010). Al-Oqail et al. (Al-Oqail et al. 2013) demonstrated the decrease in the cell viability of the cancerous cells exposed to seed oil of fenugreek. Abdel-Daim et al. (Abdel-Daim et al. 2014) evaluated the role of fenugreek oil as a protective agent against deltamethrin-induced toxicity in rats. The authors showed that fenugreek oil maintained the hematological parameters, namely, red blood cell ranges, platelet counts, hemoglobin, and hematocrit values. Fenugreek oil restored the biochemical changes such as cholesterol, triglycerides, urea, uric acid, creatinine, and enzyme alanine aminotransferase to normal levels. Additionally, fenugreek oil also prevented the lipid peroxidation and oxidative stress in a dose-dependent manner (Venkata et al. 2017). The oil is used in flavoring many canned foods and syrups and as an ingredient in some perfumes (Gu et al. 2017).

Flax (*Linum usitatissimum* L.) Seed Oil

Flaxseed oil (or linseed oil) contains a high level of essential fatty acids, quality proteins, soluble and insoluble fibers, flavonoids, and phenolic acids. This oil is desirable since more than 70% of flaxseed oil consists of the polyunsaturated fatty acids and most of the fatty acids constitute essential ω-3 and essential ω-6 fatty acids (Sovilj 2010). It is the most abundant plant source of ω-3 fatty acid, specifically α-linolenic acid. Supplementation of ALA from flaxseed oil significantly reduced inflammatory markers, including C-reactive protein, serum amyloid A, IL-6, and soluble VCAM-1, in dyslipidemic patients (Rallidis et al. 2003; Rallidis et al. 2004). Flaxseed oil can reduce colon cancer (Dwivedi et al. 2005; Williams et al. 2007) and decrease the growth and metastasis of human estrogen receptor-negative breast cancer in nude mice fed diets containing flaxseed products (Wang et al. 2005). More detailed benefits of the flaxseed oil were reviewed by Oomah and Verghese et al. (Oomah 2001; Verghese et al. 2011).

Grape-Seed Oil

Grape-seed oil is rich in unsaturated fatty acids, especially linoleic acid (Martinello et al. 2007), tocopherols, antioxidant-effective tocotrienols (Matthäus 2008), and high levels of hydrophilic constituents, such as phenolic compounds, and lipophilic constituents, such as vitamin E, unsaturated fatty acids, and phytosterols. Grape-seed oil has beneficial properties for health that are mainly detected by in vitro studies, such as anti-inflammatory, cardioprotective, antimicrobial, and anticancer properties, and may interact with cellular and molecular pathways (Garavaglia et al. 2016). Moreover, this seed oil is a good anticholesteremic, dietetic oil, which

reduces LDL cholesterol and raises HDL cholesterol, providing the anticholesterol effect and protecting against heart problems (Beveridge et al. 2005).

Hemp (*Cannabis sativa* L.) Seed Oil

Hemp seed oil is 80% polyunsaturated fatty acids and is an exceptionally rich source of the two essential fatty acids linoleic acid (18,2, ω-6) and α-linolenic acid (18,3, ω-3) (Callaway 2004). It possesses a well-balanced proportion of linoleic acid and α-linolenic acid in the ratio 3:1. This balance is unique among the specialty oils and has been claimed optimal for human nutrition (Simopoulos 2002). The oil, because of this feature and the presence of γ-linolenic acid, is ideal as an ingredient for light body oils and lipid-enriched creams, known for their high penetration into the skin (Oomah et al. 2002a). Hemp seed oil has health-promoting effects over a wide range of acute and chronic conditions, e.g., from the rapid healing of simple cuts and burns to influenza, various skin problems, other allergic symptoms, and inflammatory diseases. These effects may be linked to the unique fatty acid profile of hemp seed oil and its direct impact on the subsequent metabolism of dietary essential fatty acids to eicosanoids, which include prostaglandins and other important metabolites (Callaway 2004; Leizer et al. 2000). Hemp seed oil has also demonstrated positive health effects on lipid metabolism, cardiovascular health, immunomodulatory effects, and dermatological diseases (Montserrat-De La Paz et al. 2014).

Milk Thistle (*Silybum marianum* L.) Seed Oil

This oil includes essential phospholipids and a relatively high content of vitamin E (Fathi-Achachlouei and Azadmard-Damirchi 2009). Milk thistle oil is a rich source of antioxidants and flavonolignans (silymarin). The oil can be used in the treatment of many diseases including viral hepatitis and cirrhosis (Harrabi et al. 2016). This oil is popular because of its benefit on the liver. It supports the regeneration of the liver and generates a natural barrier against such poisons as alcohol, medicine, pesticides, or heavy metals. It provides the production of bile and prevents the creation of gallstones.

Niger (*Guizotia abyssinica* Cass) Seed Oil

The seed oil is rich in linoleic acid and α-tocopherol, and thus, it is a good source of vitamin E. It is used for both edible and industrial purposes (Gunstone 2006). The high level of vitamin K1 may be the most unique health-promoting characteristic of niger seed oil. Niger seed oil appears to be nutritionally valuable, as the high content of linoleic acid is known to prevent cardiovascular diseases and to be the precursor of structural components of plasma membranes and of some metabolic regulatory compounds (Ramadan et al. 2012).

Pomegranate (*Punica granatum* L.) Seed Oil

Pomegranate seed oil has a high level of ω-5 punicic acid, gallic acid, and phytosterols (Carvalho Filho 2014). Pomegranate seed oil has been well reported for its potential health benefits, such as antioxidant properties, lipoperoxidation, and activity of antioxidant enzymes, immune function, lipid metabolism, estrogene content, skin photoaging inhibition effect, and protective effect against nephrotoxicity (Goula et al. 2018). The polyphenols and phytosterols of pomegranate seed oil are considered to be useful for wound healing, tempering inflammatory responses, preventing wrinkle formation, reducing redness, and alleviating itchy skin (Khoddami et al. 2014). It reduces hepatic triacylglycerol accumulation and acts as a chemopreventive agent against hormone-related human cancers (prostate, breast) (Caligiani et al. 2010).

Pumpkin (*Cucurbita pepo* L.) Seed Oil

This oil has a high level of linoleic and oleic acids (Boskou 2017). Pumpkin seed oil is used in foods like salad dressing to add flavor and as supplement that is sold for suggested health benefits including prevention of cardiovascular disease and prevention of benign prostatic hyperplasia (Hernandez 2016). The most critical health benefit attributed to pumpkin seed oil is preventing the growth and reducing the size of the prostate. Pumpkin seed oil can retard the progression of hypertension and mitigate hypercholesterolemia and arthritis. Reduced bladder and urethral pressure and improved bladder compliance have been linked to pumpkin seed lipid components. Pumpkin seed oil has been found to alleviate diabetes by promoting hypoglycemic activity (Stevenson et al. 2007).

Sesame (*Sesamum indicum* L.) Seed Oil

Sesame oil is a good source of polyunsaturated fatty acids. Vitamin E and phenols, mainly γ-tocopherol and the lignans sesamin and sesamolin, display an abundance of biological activities (Boskou 2017). Sesame oil is used in the West for specialized cooking for its characteristic flavor. It also commonly used in Asian countries in supplements and in therapeutic and cosmetic applications. It suppresses oxidative stress in vivo, lowering of cholesterol level in blood, and protection of the liver from oxidative damage (Hernandez 2016). Phytochemical compounds in sesame seed such as sesamin, sesamol, and anthrasesamone F have been proven to have in vitro/in vivo antioxidant activity. Moreover, sesamin and sesamolin showed anti-inflammatory, antihypertensive, and anticarcinogenic effects in several studies (Zhou et al. 2016). The oil has wide medical and pharmaceutical application. The oil has been used for healing wounds for thousands of years. It is naturally antibacterial for common skin pathogens and fungi. Sesame oil neutralizes oxygen radicals when it is used before and after radiation treatments as UV protector. Oil-soluble

toxins on the skin are attracted to sesame oil molecules that can then be washed away with hot water and a mild soap. Internally, the oil molecules attract oil-soluble toxins and carry them into the blood stream and then out of the body as waste (Anilakumar et al. 2010).

White Mahlab (*Prunus mahaleb*) Seed Oill

White mahlab seed oil has a high content of unsaturated fatty acids, high quantity of tocopherols with γ-tocopherol as the major tocopherol isomer. α-Eleostearic acid, which is a conjugated fatty acid, is rarely found in vegetable oils and has beneficial effects on human health. It is used in various industries including the food and pharmaceutical industries (Sbihi et al. 2014). Mahlab has been used as a tonic for sensory organs and the heart in folk medicine, in the treatment of asthma, and in relief of pains arising from the liver, kidney, and gastrointestinal troubles. The plant is robust and insensitive to diseases and is used as a stock in the grafting of cherry and marasca. Also in Arabia, the seeds are used as sedative and vasodilator as well as for scenting and preservation purposes (Alma et al. 2012).

Bioactive Compounds and Their Health Effects

Although a precise consensus definition of bioactives has not yet been established, the term generally describes food components considered to possibly provide health benefits beyond that of previously accepted understanding of fundamental nutrition (Hernandez 2016). Bioactive compounds in plants can be defined as secondary plant metabolites eliciting pharmacological or toxicological effects in human and animals (Azmir et al. 2013). Edible unrefined oils are good sources of valuable natural bioactive substances such as polyunsaturated fatty acids, tocopherols and tocotrienols, free and esterified sterols, various phenols, lignans, squalene, triterpene alcohols, carotenoids, and chlorophylls which are very important for human health (Boskou 2017; Muneeshwari et al. 2017). Bioactive components, especially antioxidative constituents, play an imperative role in the nutritional and health impact of edible oils (Muneeshwari et al. 2017). The potential health benefits of bioactives can encompass reduced heart disease, mitigated cancer risk, improved plasma cholesterol levels, reduced inflammation, enhanced brain function, improved gastrointestinal health, loss of retained body fat, and many others (Puri et al. 2012).

Polyunsaturated Fatty Acids

High-value seed oils are taken to be those that contain one or more polyunsaturated fatty acids with desirable bioactivity (Catchpole et al. 2009). Polyunsaturated fatty acids are fatty acids that contain two or more double bonds in the carbon chain.

Most PUFAs are essential fatty acids and have to be provided to the body through an adequate diet. They are usually classified as ω-3 and ω-6, depending on the position of the first double bond from the methyl end of the carbon chain. α-Linolenic, eicosapentaenoic (20,5ω-3 or EPA), docosapentaenoic (22,6 ω-3 or DPA), and docosahexaenoic (22,6 ω-3 or DHA) acids are examples of ω-3 PUFAs, whereas linoleic acid and γ-linolenic acid are examples of ω-6 PUFAs (Temelli et al. 2008). The main sources of EPA, DPA, and DHA are fish oils. Since the objective of this chapter is plant-derived specialty oils, only PUFAs such as LA, ALA, and GLA will be discussed (Temelli et al. 2008). The most commonly extracted specialty oils are those that are rich in γ-linolenic acid and/or α-linolenic acid (Catchpole et al. 2009).

Linoleic Acid

Linoleic acid, an essential fatty acid of ω-6 series, has a physiological role in maintaining the water permeability barrier of the skin as a constituent of acylglycosyl ceramides. Besides its structural role of polyunsaturated fatty acids in cell membranes, linoleic acid gives rise to arachidonic acid, which is the major precursor of a series of bioactive metabolites called *eicosanoids*, which regulate a large number of physiological processes. Linoleic acid deficiency, which can be cured/prevented by an intake in as low as 1% of the dietary energy, results in poor growth and development of infants, a scaly dermatitis, and an impaired immune response (Sanders 2016). Linoleic acid reduces LDL cholesterol with minimal effects on HDL cholesterol (Mensink and Katan 1992). However, in recent years, there are concerns about the effects of elevated dietary linoleic acid on human health related to its role in inflammation and its possible activity as a promoter of cancer in animals. There seems to be no clear path to understanding if it has a role in the promotion of cancer, although it is intriguing to consider the use of very low linoleic acid diets to hinder tumor growth by deprivation of cell membrane structural requirements. Studies of the effects of a wide range of linoleic acid consumption may help determine dietary recommendations that are optimal for human health (Jandacek 2017). Linoleic acid comprises more than 50% of the total fatty acids found in black cumin, evening primrose, poppy, grape, and hemp seed oils (Table 1).

α-Linolenic Acid

α-Linolenic acid belongs to the ω-3 family and is referred to as the essential precursor of the longer chain ω-3 PUFA (commonly known as ω-3 fatty acids) because it is the metabolic precursor from which longer chain ω-3 fatty acids are synthesized (Barceló-Coblijn and Murphy 2009). ALA can be metabolized into eicosapentaenoic acid and docosahexaenoic acid (Shahidi and Senanayake 2006). Long-chain *ω*-3 fatty acids, including *α*-linolenic, eicosapentaenoic, and docosahexaenoic acids, have been shown to exert beneficial effects in the prevention of cancer, heart disease, hypertension, and autoimmune disorders (Yu et al. 2006). ALA could be

Table 1 Fatty acid composition of some selected specialty seed oils

Oilseed source	C14:0	C15:0	C16:0	C16:1	C17:0	C17:1	C18:0	C18:1 ($n-12$)	C18:1 ($n-9$)	C18:1 ($n-7$)	C18:2 ($n-6$)	C18:3 ($n-3$)
Apricot kernel	–	–	4.92	0.63	0.05	0.12	1.21	–	70.83	–	21.96	0.08
Bitter gourd	–	–	1.50	–	–	–	32.4	–	1.5	–	2.6	–
Black cumin	1.51	–	12.5	–	–	–	3.16	–	24.1	–	55.3	0.99
Black currant	0.1	–	6.1	0.2	–	–	1.72	–	11.62	–	45.52	15.62
Cactus pear	0.6	–	27.3	1.7	–	–	2.6	–	14.6	–	45.3	7.3
Coriander	–	–	5.54	–	–	–	1.36	67.0	7.86	–	15.9	–
Evening primrose	–	–	6.0	0.1	–	–	1.6	–	8.3	0.6	73.8	0.1
Fenugreek	0.1	0.1	11.2	0.1	0.4	0.2	3.9	–	15.6	–	47.3	18.5
Flax	–	–	6.86	0.14	–	–	4.59	–	15.07	0.87		58.31
Grape	–	–	4.5	–	–	–	2.1	–	17.6	0.8	64.5	0.6
Hemp	–	–	5.62	0.31	–	–	–	–	11.90	–	55.05	16.70
Milk thistle	–	–	8.4	–	–	–	4.6	–	27.7	–	51.7	0.2
Mustard	–	–	4.15	0.11	–	–	1.4	–	26.28	–	10.68	8.16
Neetle	–	–	25.4	0.1	–	–	2.3	–	4.8	–	22.7	6.6
Niger	4.4	–	12.0	–	–	–	3.0	–	13.5	–	65.4	0.1
Pomegranate	–	–	4.40	–	–	–	2.29	–	7.12	–	6.63	–
Poppy	–	–	9.79	0.13	–	–	1.93	–	11.94	1.09	74.47	0.60
Pumpkin	–	–	11.5	0.1	–	–	5.6	–	37.7	–	44.0	0.2
Sesame	–	–	9.4	0.1	–	–	5.6	–	41.8	–	41.3	0.7

C18:3 ($n-6$)	C18:3 ($n-9$)	C18:3 ($n-5$)	C18:4 ($n-3$)	C20:0	C20:1	C20:2 ($n-6$)	C20:5 ($n-3$)	C22:0	C22:1 ($n-9$)	C22:6 ($n-3$)	C24:0	References
–	–	–	–	0.10	0.10	–	–	–	–	–	–	Turan et al. (2007)
–	61.5	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	Nyam et al. (2009)
–	–	–	–	–	–	2.44	–	–	–	–	–	Ramadan (2007)
14.04	–	–	3.2	0.2	1.2	0.3	–	0.1	–	–	<0.1	Bakowska-Barczak et al. (2009)
0.3	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	Dubois et al. (2007)
1.0	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	0.77	0.57	–	Ramadan et al. (2003)
9.5	–	–	–	0.3	0.3	0.1	–	0.1	0.1	–	–	Kapoor and Huang (2006)
1.3	–	–	–	–	0.2	0.1	–	0.7	0.1	–	0.3	Ciftci et al. (2011)
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	Bozan and Temelli (2008)
0.4	–	–	–	0.2	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	Dubois et al. (2007)
3.4	–	–	–	2.50	1.44	–	–	0.40	–	–	–	Montserrat-De La Paz et al. (2014)
–	–	–	–	2.9	0.9	–	–	2.3	–	–	0.7	Fathi-Achachlouei and Azadmard-Damirchi (2009)
–	–	–	–	0.53	9.68	–	–	0.53	38.76	–	–	Ryan et al. (2007)
–	–	–	–	–	2.1	–	–	–	1.2	–	–	Guil-Guerrero et al. (2003)
–	–	–	–	0.2	–	–	0.9	0.3	–	–	0.1	Dubois et al. (2007)
–	–	78.23	–	0.40	0.70	–	–	–	–	–	–	Khoddami et al. (2014)
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	Bozan and Temelli (2008)
–	–	–	–	0.4	0.1	–	–	0.1	–	–	–	Haiyan et al. (2007)
–	–	–	–	0.6	0.2	–	–	0.1	–	–	–	Haiyan et al. (2007)

beneficial by simply acting as the precursor of EPA and DHA. The studies on the health benefits of DHA alone or together with EPA preceded the interest in the potential beneficial effects of ALA (Barceló-Coblijn and Murphy 2009). Many of the chronic conditions, cardiovascular disease, diabetes, cancer, obesity, autoimmune diseases, rheumatoid arthritis, asthma, and depression are associated with increased production of thromboxane A_2, leukotriene B_4, IL-1β, IL-6, tumor necrosis factor, and C-reactive protein. All these factors increase by increases in ω-6 fatty acid intake and decrease by increases in ω-3 fatty acid intake, either ALA or EPA and DHA (Simopoulos 2002). More detailed positive health effects of ALA on cardiovascular diseases, plasma lipid level, and its anti-arrhythmic, anti-inflammatory, and neuroprotective properties were reviewed by Barceló-Coblijn and Murphy (Barceló-Coblijn and Murphy 2009). Flaxseed and perilla seed oils are the richest sources of the ω-3 fatty acid and α-linolenic acid, typically in the range of 55–60%. A third important source of ALA is hemp seed oil, which contains about 20% ALA in addition to 0.5–2% stearidonic acid and 1–4% γ-linolenic acid. Other sources of ALA include the less exploited seed oils of chia, kiwi, and lingonberry (Hernandez and Kamal-Eldin 2013a).

γ-Linolenic Acid

The most common polyunsaturated fatty acids occurring in seed oils are linoleic acid and α-linolenic acid, but in a few species, the α-linolenic acid is accompanied or replaced by GLA that is now recognized as an interesting fatty acid with beneficial health properties (Gunstone 2006). The isomeric ω-6 fatty acid, GLA (*cis* 6, *cis* 9, *cis* 12-octadecatrienoic acid), is produced in the body as an intermediate in the metabolism of linoleic acid by the action of enzyme delta-6-desaturase. However, this reaction is very slow and is further restricted during nutritional deficiencies of vitamins and minerals and also during inflammatory conditions like arthritis and psoriasis (Kapoor and Huang 2006). Because of the limitations, supplementation with preformed GLA is becoming important. γ-Linolenic acid and GLA-rich oils have been studied for several beneficial biological effects in areas such as platelet aggregation, blood lipids, obesity, atopic eczema, and immune functions (Hernandez 2016). GLA induces inhibition of platelet aggregation and thrombosis and inhibition of smooth muscle proliferation and reduction in both systolic and diastolic blood pressure (Hernandez and Kamal-Eldin 2013a). γ-Linolenic acid may promote health via the modulation of prostaglandin balance (PGE1 versus PGE2) (Moreau and Kamal-Eldin 2009). GLA has been shown to exert tumoricidal activity against a variety of cancers including cancers of the breast, pancreas, colon, brain, etc. (Kapoor and Huang 2006). Kapoor and Huang (Kapoor and Huang 2006) reported that this fatty acid can play an important function in the modulation of the inflammatory processes linked to several pathologies such as cancer, diabetes, heart disease, arthritis, and Alzheimer's disease. GLA is found naturally in limited plant species. The significant commercial sources of GLA include the seed oils of borage (18–26 g/100 g GLA), black currant (15–20 g/100 g GLA), and evening primrose (7–10 g/100 g GLA). It is also found in hemp seed oil at 1–6% (Huang and Huang 2006).

Conjugated Linolenic Acid (CLnA)

Conjugated linolenic acid is a mixture of positional and geometric isomers of octadecatrienoic acid (α-linolenic acid, *cis* 9, *cis* 12, *cis* 15–18:3 ω-3) found in plant seeds. Conjugated linolenic acid has been widely studied for its bioactive properties. Indeed, CLnA isomers have been attributed to exhibit several health benefits including anticarcinogenic, lipid metabolism regulation, anti-inflammatory, antiobese, and antioxidant activities (Yuan et al. 2014). CLnA is present in high amounts in some seed oils. Takagi and Itabashi (Takagi and Itabashi 1981) reported the occurrence of calendic acid (8t,10t,12c-18:3; 62.2%) in pot marigold seed oil, punicic acid (c9c,11t,13c-18:3; 83.0%) in pomegranate seed oil, α-eleostearic acid (9c,11t,13t-18:3) in tung (67.7%), and bitter gourd (56.2%) seed oils, as well as catalpic acid (9t,11t,13c-18:3; 42.3%) in catalpa seed oil. Among plant seeds containing CLnA, bitter gourd and pomegranate are edible plants, and catalpa is used in Chinese medicine. Bitter gourd in particular is an important cultivated food crop in Asia (Shahidi 2006).

The metabolic products of the ω-6 fatty acids promote inflammation, blood clotting, and tumor growth, while the ω-3 fatty acids are generally viewed as anti-inflammatory. Therefore, it is important to maintain a balance of ω-3 and ω-6 fatty acids in the diet as these two substances work together to promote health (O'brien 2009). An unbalanced ω-6/ω-3 ratio in favor of ω-6 PUFAs is highly prothrombotic and pro-inflammatory, which contributes to the prevalence of atherosclerosis, obesity, diabetes, cancer, heart disease, arthritis, and depression (O'brien 2009; Simopoulos 2016). The optimal dose or ratio of ω-6/ω-3 varies from 1/1 to 4/1 depending on the disease under consideration (O'brien 2009). Table 1 presents fatty acid compositions of different specialty oils. The fatty acid composition of plant seed oils varies depending on plant origin, genetic factors, ripening grade of fruit, and specific climatic conditions (Velasco et al. 2005). Among the oils presented, mustard seed had a different fatty acid profile, insofar as the fat was primarily monounsaturated due to its exceptionally high content of erucic acid (C22:1). There is some suggestion that erucic acid-rich mustard may bear a cardiotoxic or prooxidant substrate (Ryan et al. 2007).

Phenolic Compounds

Phenolic compounds are organic molecules with a hydroxylated benzene ring. They are secondary metabolites in plants, synthesized both in normal and in stress conditions. Although seeds are very rich in phenolic compounds, a relatively small amount remains in the seed oil upon pressing/extraction. Thus, it is not expected that levels of phenolic compounds will reach levels in seed oils as high as in, for example, extra virgin olive oil, which is known to be very rich in phenolics (Van Hoed 2010). Oilseeds generally contain phenolic compounds of various chemical natures, including flavonoids, lignans, phenolic acids, tannins, and tocopherols (Wanasundara et al. 1997).

Phenols present in the seed oil have the potential for applications in the promotion of health and prevention of oxidative damages caused by radicals (Siger et al. 2008; Dimitrios 2006). Researchers and food manufacturers have become more interested in polyphenols due to their potent antioxidant properties, their abundance in the diet, and their credible effects in the prevention of various oxidative stress-associated diseases. The preventive effects of phenolic compounds in terms of cardiovascular and neurodegenerative diseases and cancer are deduced from epidemiologic data as well as in vitro and in vivo and result in respective nutritional recommendations (Dai and Mumper 2010). Phenolic compounds exhibit a wide range of health-promoting effects, such as antiallergenic, anti-artherogenic, anti-inflammatory, antimicrobial, antioxidant, antithrombotic, cardioprotective, and vasodilatory effects. The beneficial effects derived from phenolic compounds have been attributed to their antioxidant activity. Most of their activities are directly linked with their reducing capabilities, but research indicates as well their capacity to modulate enzymes and to bind to proteins (Van Hoed 2010).

The main compounds reported for most seed oils are phenolic acids, such as protocatechuic acid (typical for pumpkin seed oil), p-(or 4-) hydroxybenzoic acid, vanillic acid (widely present), salicylic acid, quercetin, cinnamic acid, p-coumaric acid, ferulic acid, sinapic acid, elenolic acid, 3,4-dihydroxybenzoic acid, ellagic acid, and gallic acid. Further, vanillin and 3,4-dihydroxybenzaldehyde are reported in some seed oils. In grape-seed oil, oligomeric phenolic compounds have been reported, such as catechin, epicatechin, epicatechin-3-O-gallate, and oligomeric procyanidins, as well as traces of resveratrol (Van Hoed 2010; da Silva and Jorge 2017). The individual phenolics of pumpkin seed oil were defined as tyrosol, vanillic acid, vanillin, luteolin, and sinapic acid by Andjelkovic et al. (Andjelkovic et al. 2010). The antioxidant activity and the various healthful properties of sesame seed and sesame seed oil are attributed to the presence of lignans such as sesamin, sesamolin, sesaminol, sesangolin, 2-episalatin, and others (Dimitrios 2006). Further, more detailed studies are needed to elucidate the complex phenolic profiles in these oils, and standardized methods are needed to assess uniformly their levels in the oils (Van Hoed 2010). For specialty oils, the highest total phenolic contents in terms of gallic acid equivalent (GAE) were reported for caraway seed oil (3530 mg GAE/kg) (Yu et al. 2005), followed by black cumin seed oil (3500 mg GAE/kg) (Ramadan et al. 2012) and milk thistle seed oil (3070 mg GAE/kg) (Parry et al. 2006). A slightly higher phenolic content was recorded for carrot seed oil (1980 mg GAE/kg) and cranberry seed oil (1610 mg GAE/kg) (Yu et al. 2005). Moderate amounts of total phenolic content was found in hemp seed oil (440 mg GAE/kg) (Yu et al. 2005) and grape-seed oil (59–360 mg GAE/kg). Pomegranate seed oil (93.42 mg GAE/kg) (Amri et al. 2017), kenaf seed oil (32 mg GAE/kg) (Chew et al. 2017), pumpkin seed oil (24.71–50.93 mg GAE/kg) (Andjelkovic et al. 2010), quince seed oil (64.03 mg GAE/kg), flaxseed oil (17.67 mg GAE/kg), sesame seed oil (28.06 mg GAE/kg), and poppy seed oil (Górnaś et al. 2014) have lower total phenolic contents.

Tocol

Tocopherols and tocotrienols (collectively known as tocols) are monophenolic compounds and summarized under the term vitamin E and are a group of fat-soluble antioxidants with a chromanol ring and a hydrophobic side chain (phytyl in the case of tocopherols, isoprenyl in the case of tocotrienols) (Schwartz et al. 2008; Shahidi and Ambigaipalan 2015). Tocopherols and tocotrienols have similar basic chemical structures. The difference between tocopherol and tocotrienols is that the tocopherols have a saturated side chain, while the tocotrienols have an unsaturated side chain containing three double bonds. The tocopherol and tocotrienol homologues are named α, β, γ, and δ depending on the position and number of the methyl substitutions on the aromatic side of the chromanol ring (Seppanen et al. 2010).

Tocols have also attracted the attention of nutritionists and clinicians because of their possible role in the prevention of cancer and atherosclerosis due to their antioxidant potential (Bonvehi et al. 2000). These molecules serve as antioxidants by preventing propagation of free radical reactions. Indeed, these molecules can scavenge free radicals in the body, thereby preventing them from damaging cell membranes and genetic material and changing the character of fats and proteins. One example is the protection that vitamin E grants to polyunsaturated fatty acids, which are especially vulnerable to destructive oxidation. It is predicted that vitamin E requirements increase if the intake of polyunsaturates is high; a ratio of 0.4 mg α-tocopherol/g polyunsaturates is recommended (Foster et al. 2009; Ju et al. 2009). Cohort studies show that tocopherols, as effective antioxidants, can protect against carcinogenesis. Some studies found a significant inverse association between dietary intake of vitamin E and the risk of lung cancer (Ju et al. 2009). *γ*-Tocopherol, for instance, has been reported to be more potent than *α*-tocopherol in decreasing platelet aggregation and LDL oxidation and delaying intra-arterial thrombus formation. Likewise, tocotrienols have been shown to inhibit cholesterol biosynthesis and are discussed in the context of reducing the risk of breast cancer. Hence, concurrent administration of various tocopherols and tocotrienols may result in increased antioxidant, antitumor, and hypocholesterolemic potential (Schwartz et al. 2008).

Tocopherols and tocotrienols must be obtained from the diet because humans cannot synthesize them (Foster et al. 2009). The tocopherols are mainly present in oilseeds, oils, meats, and green parts of higher plants, while the tocotrienols are mostly found in the germ and bran fraction of certain seeds and cereals. The most abundant natural antioxidants in vegetable oils are the α- and γ-tocopherols (Seppanen et al. 2010). Table 2 reports the tocopherol content of some specialty oils. Pomegranate seed oil is an excellent source of β-tocopherol with a content of 2794 mg/kg oil (Caligiani et al. 2010), while white mahlab seed oil is a superior source of γ-tocopherol with a content of 1925 mg/kg (Sbihi et al. 2014). Borage seed oil has high level of δ-tocopherol (1432 mg/kg) (Czaplicki et al. 2011). Rosehip seed oil is one of the specialty oils containing lowest tocopherol content (Zlatanov 1999).

Table 2 Tocopherols (mg kg^{-1}) in some specialty seed oils

Specialty oil	α-Tocopherol	β-Tocopherol	γ-Tocopherol	δ-Tocopherol	References
Amaranth	234	191	102	90.9	Czaplicki et al. (2011)
Apricot kernel	19.51	0.38	475.11	12.64	Turan et al. (2007)
Bitter gourd	442.2	196.6	539.3	172.1	Nyam et al. (2009)
Black cumin	260	30	24	50	Ramadan et al. (2012)
Black currant	36.9	0.2	55.4	6.9	Zlatanov (1999)
Borage	nd	nd	171	1432	Czaplicki et al. (2011)
Cactus pear	56	12	33	5	Ramadan and Mörsel (2003)
Camelina	69.5	nd	599	5.15	Czaplicki et al. (2011)
Coriander	86	672	162	347	Ramadan et al. (2003)
Evening primrose	222	nd	433	7.72	Czaplicki et al. (2011)
Fenugreek	824	12	18	1	Ciftci et al. (2011)
Fig	46	–	3918	76.50	Cihat Icyer et al. (2017)
Grape-seed	325.39	nd	31.73	1.63	Ramadan et al. (2003)
Hemp	34	6	733	25	Oomah et al. (2002b)
Kenaf	200.1	790	638.6	nd	Nyam et al. (2009)
Linseed	64.4	nd	495	3.46	Czaplicki et al. (2011)
Milk thistle	378.6	20.9	18.3	28.1	Fathi-Achachlouei and Azadmard-Damirchi (2009)
Mustard	178.78	nd	400.15	13.09	Shrestha et al. (2013)
Niger	861	331	570	185	Ramadan et al. (2003)
Pomegranate	423	2794	27	207	Caligiani et al. (2010)
Poppy	91.7	nd	201	nd	Czaplicki et al. (2011)
Pumpkin	151.9	nd	613.2	41.4	Nyam et al. (2009)
Rosehip	19	nd	71	1.8	Zlatanov (1999)
Roselle	36.8	31.9	706.5	46.0	Nyam et al. (2009)
Sesame	nd	nd	837	nd	Czaplicki et al. (2011)
White mahlep	258.4	nd	1925	432.2	Sbihi et al. (2014)

nd not detected

Sterol and Stanols

With the high demand for "natural" products by consumers, more companies are searching for new sources of natural antioxidants. One potential source of natural antioxidants is a class of substances called sterols (Segall and Artz 2006). Plant sterols and plant stanols, known commonly as phytosterols, are plant-derived compounds that are structurally related to cholesterol. Plants produce more than 40 different types of phytosterols (or plant sterols) (Kerrihard and Pegg 2015). Most plant sterols have a double bond in the C-5 position in the nucleus, while others are totally saturated and are called stanols (Yuan et al. 2017). Plant oils are major dietary sources of phytosterols, whereas phytostanols occur mainly in cereals, such as wheat and rye (Weber and Mukherjee 2006).

Phytosterols exist in all foods of plant origin and are known to have several bioactive properties with possible benefits for human health (Cherif 2012). Many beneficial effects have been shown for the sitosterol, β-sitosterol, campesterol, and stigmasterol which are the most common and have an average 20% of sterols in our diets. Phytosterols, in general, are of interest, due to their antioxidant activity and impact on health (Hamden et al. 2017). Phytosterols are also considered to have anti-inflammatory, antibacterial, anti-atherosclerotic, antioxidative, anti-ulcerative, and antitumor properties in humans (Cherif 2012). In recent years, phytosterols also have been reported to play a role in reducing the incidence of several common cancers, possibly by slowing the cell cycle progression, the induction of apoptosis, and the inhibition of tumor metastasis (Hernandez 2016). The mechanism of action in cancer reduction is unclear, but current evidence suggests that phytosterols may reduce oxidative stress by promoting the activity of antioxidative enzymes (Kerrihard and Pegg 2015; Vivancos and Moreno 2005). Moreover phytosterols are known to reduce plasma's low-density lipoprotein cholesterol, although the precise mechanism of action is not fully understood. The main effect of phospholipid is thought to be due to a decrease in intestinal cholesterol absorption due to the displacement of cholesterol in mixed micelles (Hernandez 2016; Plat and Mensink 2005).

It is believed the typical modern Western diet does not include high enough concentrations of phytosterols for optimal health. Although phytosterol-enriched products have been introduced into the European and the US markets in recent years, consumption rates of phytosterols are still well below optimum levels (Hamden et al. 2017). However, it is worth noting that the consumption of the recommended effective dose of 2 g/day is highly infeasible when consuming phytosterols in their endogenous form. For example, one would need to consume approximately 80 g of rice bran oil to achieve the desired quantities of phytosterols, and other specialty oils would require even higher rates of consumption (Kerrihard and Pegg 2015).

The best dietary sources of phytosterol are unrefined plant oils, seeds, nuts, and legumes (Awad and Fink 2000). Table 3 presents the contents of the most common sterols found in specialty seed oils. Black currant seed oil has the distinctly highest

Table 3 β-Sitosterol, campesterol, stigmasterol, and total phytosterol content (mg/100 g) of selected specialty seed oils

Specialty oil	β-Sitosterol	Campesterol	Stigmasterol	Total	References
Almond	207.1	5.5	5.17	Nr	Maguire et al. (2004)
Amaranth	559.5	198	18.5	1249	Szterk et al. (2010)
Apricot kernel	273.67	12.19	2.22	335.7	Turan et al. (2007)
Bitter gourd	265	60.2	57.8	886.2	Yoshime et al. (2016)
Black cumin	1190	230	320	376	Ramadan et al. (2012)
Black currant	3984–5053	403.3–511.2	23.7–31.0	5787–6894	Bakowska-Barczak et al. (2009)
Borage	56.6	43.8	nd	196	Czaplicki et al. (2011)
Cactus pear	675	166	30	933	Ramadan and Mörsel (2003)
Camelina	221	82	traces	349	Czaplicki et al. (2011)
Coriander	146.4	50.8	154.8	518.6	Ramadan and Mörsel (2002c)
Evening primrose	749	55.3	traces	857	Czaplicki et al. (2011)
Fenugreek	598–668	123–317	30–104	1420–1883	Ciftci et al. (2011)
Flax	162.5	97.5	2.4	513.2	Szterk et al. (2010)
Grape	6.66–6.74	0.01–0.93	1.02–1.08	Nr	Garavaglia et al. (2016)
Hemp	320	71	11	Nr	Mo et al. (2013)
Kenaf	589	72.6	40.9	703	Chew et al. (2017)
Milk thistle	61.79–68.9	6.8–8.44	10.07–13.27	1790–2010	Fathi-Achachlouei and Azadmard-Damirchi (2009)
Niger	203	71.3	66	422.2	Ramadan et al. (2003)
Pomegranate	604.9	57.9	21	Nr	Caligiani et al. (2010)
Primrose	749	55.3	traces	857	Czaplicki et al. (2011)
Pumpkin	nd	nd	nd	179	Czaplicki et al. (2011)
Pumpkin	81.38	nd	9.85	154.1	da Silva and Jorge (2017)
Quince	260	32	20	356	Nogala-Kalucka et al. (2010)
Sea buckthorn	158	33	8	511	Nogala-Kalucka et al. (2010)
Sesame	241	62.6	15	516	Czaplicki et al. (2011)
Viper's bugloss	137	263	18	744	Nogala-Kalucka et al. (2010)

Nr not reported; *nd* not detected

total phytosterol content in the range of 5787–6894 mg/100 g, followed by milk thistle seed oil (1790–2010 mg/100 g), fenugreek seed oil (1420–1883 mg/100 g), and amaranth seed oil (1249 mg/100 g) (Table 3). Pumpkin and borage seed oils have the lowest phytosterol contents of 154 and 196 mg/100 g, respectively. Czaplicki et al. (Czaplicki et al. 2011) reported that pumpkin seed oil does not contain the major sterols, while it contains Δ7-avenasterol (32.6 mg/100 g oil), α-spinasterol + β-sitosterol (96 mg/100 g oil), Δ5,24-stigmastadiene (42.8 mg/100 g oil), and Δ7,22,25-stigmastatrienol (7.6 mg/100 g oil). On the other hand, (da Silva and Jorge 2017) reported that total sterol content of pumpkin seed oil is 154.1 with a composition of β-sitosterol (81.38 mg/100 g), stigmasterol (9.85 mg/100 g), and stigmastanol (61.64 mg/100 g).

Squalene

Squalene is a highly unsaturated aliphatic hydrocarbon ($C_{30}H_{50}$) with important biological properties (Nyam et al. 2009). Squalene is synthesized by all plants and animals, including humans, but in widely varying quantities. It is a precursor of steroid hormones, vitamin D, cholesterol in animals, and phytosterols in plants. It can reduce the level of reactive oxygen species in vitro and act against oxidative DNA damage in human mammary epithelial cells (Yuan et al. 2017).

Squalene has been shown to act as a potent scavenger of singlet oxygen, thereby inhibiting oxidative damage induced by UV radiation and presenting possible protection against the formation of cancerous tumors in the colon, breast, and prostate (Kerrihard and Pegg 2015). A number of animal studies showed that dietary squalene has distinct anticarcinogenic effects. It was shown that squalene presents inhibitory action in carcinogenesis models of skin, colon, and lung cancer (Temelli et al. 2008). Another possible benefit of squalene related to cancer is that it has been shown to reduce side effects associated with chemotherapy. Squalene is also used as an ingredient in delivery systems for vaccines. Squalene, in conjunction with surfactants, is capable of enhancing the immune response to antigens. The enhanced response promotes an increased effectiveness of the vaccine (Kerrihard and Pegg 2015).

Most vegetable oils contain very small amounts of squalene with olive oil, one of the highest, containing between 0.41 and 0.54% (599 mg/100 g) (Gunstone 2006; Tuberoso et al. 2007). *Amaranthus* oil is unusual among vegetable oils in that it has a relatively high level (6–8%, 2260–5940 mg/100 g) of squalene, and this concentration can be raised tenfold by short-path high-vacuum distillation (Gunstone 2006) (Table 4). Kiwi, cranberry, and pumpkin seed oils are also good sources of squalene, 826.2, 671.5, and 352.9 mg/100 g, respectively. Squalene was not detected in flaxseed, black cumin, poppy, and sesame seed oils (Table 4).

Table 4 Squalene (mg/100 g) in some specialty plant seed oils

Specialty oil	Squalene	References
Amaranth	2260–5940	Berganza et al. (2003)
Kiwi	826.2	Van Hoed et al. (2009)
Cranberry	671.5	Van Hoed et al. (2009)
Pumpkin	352.9	Tuberoso et al. (2007)
Blueberry	178.1	Van Hoed et al. (2009)
Pomegranate	84.6	Caligiani et al. (2010)
Kiwi	82.6	Van Hoed et al. (2009)
Apricot kernel	12.6–43.9	Rudzińska et al. (2017)
Blackberry	17.0	Van Hoed et al. (2009)
Roselle	14.51	Nyam et al. (2009)
Bitter gourd	12.95	Nyam et al. (2009)
Almond	9.5	Maguire et al. (2004)
Hemp	8.05	Montserrat-De La Paz et al. (2014)
Cactus pear	5.5	R'bia et al. (2017)
Kenaf	3.69	Nyam et al. (2009)
Flax	1–4.3	Tańska et al. (2016)
Milk thistle	0.95	Dabbour et al. (2014)
Quince	0.067	Górnaś et al. (2013)
Evening primrose	Traces	Czaplicki et al. (2011)
Black cumin	nd	Rudzińska et al. (2016)
Poppy	nd	Czaplicki et al. (2011)
Sesame	nd	Czaplicki et al. (2011)

nd not detected

Carotenoids and Vitamin A

Carotenoids are widely distributed in nature and synthesized by photosynthetic organisms. The primary chemical structure of carotenoids is a symmetrical C-40 polyisoprenoid with an extensive conjugated double-bond system (Wanasundara et al. 1997). Carotenoids are highly colored minor components of many oils. The main bioactivity of the common carotenoids is as provitamin A and as high-strength antioxidants (Catchpole et al. 2009). Of all carotenoids, β-carotene has the highest provitamin A activity, approximately twice that of α- and γ-carotene (Temelli et al. 2008). Vitamin A is essential for vision and immunity (Hernandez and Kamal-Eldin 2013a). Besides the provitamin A function performed by carotene, the carotenoids present antioxidant capacity, as they protect the cell against lipid oxidation, thus preventing the risk of degenerative diseases, such as cancer, heart diseases, and cell degeneration (da Silva and Jorge 2017). Recently, it has been demonstrated that intake of carotenoid-rich foods can decrease the risk of free radical-mediated cancers, tumors, and cardiovascular disease (Wanasundara et al. 1997). The antioxidant potentials of carotenoids have been reported for the prevention of free radical-initiated diseases, including atherosclerosis, cataracts, age-related muscular degeneration, and multiple sclerosis (Lee and Min 2006). Dietary vegetable oils not only

Table 5 β-Carotene content (mg/kg) of selected specialty seed oils

Specialty oil	β-Carotene	References
Coriander	892	Ramadan et al. (2003)
Niger	702	Ramadan et al. (2003)
Black cumin	593	Ramadan et al. (2003)
Cactus pear	525	Ramadan and Mörsel (2003)
Hemp	19.9	Oomah et al. (2002b)
Grape	11.94	da Silva and Jorge (2017)
Japanese quince	10.77	Górnaś et al. (2014)
Pumpkin	6.84	Górnaś et al. (2014)
Pomegranate	3.17	Amri et al. (2017)
Flax	1.87	Górnaś et al. (2014)
Blueberry	1.32	Parry et al. (2005)
Poppy	1.04	Górnaś et al. (2014)
Almond	0.49	Górnaś et al. (2014)
Sesame	0.37	Górnaś et al. (2014)
Red raspberry	0.082	Parry et al. (2005)
Milk thistle	nd	Parry et al. (2006)

nd not detected

provide variable levels of carotenoids to the human body, but they also aid carotenoid absorption (Hernandez and Kamal-Eldin 2013a).

Among fats and oils, vitamin A is available in considerable amounts in butter and in very high amounts in fish liver oils, especially cod liver oil (Ramadan and Mörsel 2003). Total carotenoid-rich oils are mainly buriti fruit, carrot, rosehip, tomato, and wheat germ oils in terms of specialty oils (Temelli et al. 2008). Coriander seed oil is a good source of β-carotene (892 mg kg) among the specialty oils. It is followed by niger seed oil (702 mg/kg), black cumin seed oil (593 mg/kg), and cactus pear seed oil (525 mg/kg) as tabulated in Table 5. However, the β-carotene content can be influenced by the stage of fruit ripeness, the extraction process, and the storage conditions. Thus, oils extracted from older fruits may contain more carotene pigments and oils from younger fruits more chlorophyll pigments (Ramadan and Mörsel 2003).

Vitamin K

Vitamin K is present in green leafy vegetables, and a form of the vitamin is synthesized by the resident bacteria in the large intestine and then absorbed from the cecum. Some vegetable oils are also good sources of this important vitamin, although the content of the different oils varies quite considerably (Foster et al. 2009). The most important form of the vitamin K complex is phylloquinone (vitamin K_1), which is provided by plants. The other forms are the menaquinones (vitamin K_2), which are different by the length and the unsaturation degree of the side chain (Leray 2015).

The significance of dietary vitamin K has recently increased. Vitamin K is a fat-soluble vitamin that functions as a coenzyme and is involved in the synthesis of a number of proteins participating in blood clotting and bone metabolism. Vitamin K also plays a role as a cofactor for posttranslational carboxylation of specific glutamate residues to γ-carboxyglutamate residues in several blood coagulation factors and coagulation inhibitors in the liver, as well as a variety of extrahepatic proteins such as the bone protein osteocalcin. Vitamin K reduces the risk of heart disease, kills cancer cells, enhances skin health, and may have antioxidant properties (Damon et al. 2005; Otles and Cagindi 2007; Ramadan 2012; Shearer 1992).

The phylloquinone requirement of the adult human is extremely low. The vitamin K_1 level is very low in most foods. Among edible oils, the best sources of phylloquinone were rapeseed oil (*ca* 1.5 μg/g) and soybean oil (*ca* 1.30 μg/g) (Piironen et al. 1997; Ramadan 2011). Ramadan and Mörsel (Ramadan and Mörsel 2002a) reported that niger, black cumin, and coriander seed oils were characterized by high levels of phylloquinone, especially niger seed oil which contains more than 0.2% of total oil vitamin K_1. Vitamin K_1 content of niger and black cumin seed oil is 263 and 116.2 mg/100 g (Ramadan and Mörsel 2002a). Coriander seed oil has 42.8 mg vitamin K_1 in 100 g (Ramadan and Mörsel 2002a), while cactus pear seed oil has 4.7 mg vitamin K_1 in 100 g (Ramadan and Mörsel 2003). Pumpkin seed oil, a specialty of Styria in Austria, contains a high phylloquinone concentration of 113 μg/100 g (Jakob and Elmadfa 1996). For mustard seed oil, among the carotenoids, lutein was predominant (78.15 μg/g oil) in the mustard seed oil, with only a trace amount of β-carotene (Vaidya and Choe 2011).

Sphingolipids

Sphingolipids and their phosphorylated derivatives are ubiquitous bioactive components of cells. They are structural elements in the lipid bilayer and contribute to the dynamic nature of the membrane (Michaelson et al. 2016). Plant sphingolipids do not only serve as structural components of cellular membranes but are also involved in different physiological functions (Tellier et al. 2014). The hydrolyzed products of sphingolipids are used by cells to regulate growth, differentiation, and apoptosis. There is evidence that sphingolipids inhibit colon carcinogenesis in experimental animals at a human diet-equivalent concentration. They may reduce colon cancer risk in humans and inhibit skin cancer development (Ratha et al. 2006; Vesper et al. 1999). In addition to colon cancer inhibition activity, sphingolipids were found to have other beneficial effects. In short- and long-term animal studies (feeding experiments with rats), sphingolipids were found to reduce plasma cholesterol, a risk factor for atherosclerosis. Also, the sphingolipids in foods may protect humans against bacterial toxins and viruses (Fang et al. 2006). It has been suggested that dysregulation of sphingolipid metabolism can lead to diseases such as neurodegenerative diseases, cardiovascular diseases, chronic inflammation, or cancer (Gangoiti et al. 2010). However, the molecular determinants of sphingolipid functions are still

poorly understood. Because of their structural complexity, powerful analytical tools are required to identify a large number of individual sphingolipid molecules with a high degree of structural accuracy (Tellier et al. 2014). Sphingolipids form a significant proportion of the lipids present in higher plants, with some studies suggesting that they constitute up to 10% of plant lipids. Novel plant lipid structures are still being discovered, and over 200 have been identified in various different species to date (Michaelson et al. 2016).

Phospholipids

Phospholipids are the primary component of cell membranes and play an important role in all cell functions (Foster et al. 2009). Phospholipid content of seed oils may be as high as 10% of their total lipids, depending on the type of seed examined. Several studies have indicated that phospholipids chelate trace metals, thus acting as a secondary antioxidant, and subsequently increase oxidative stability of the oil. However, it has been documented that phospholipids can act as synergists with tocopherols and flavonoids. It has also been suggested that phospholipids may participate in antioxidant activity by releasing protons and bringing about rapid decomposition of hydroperoxides without the formation of free radicals (Wanasundara et al. 1997). As a class of natural antioxidants, phospholipids represent the most controversial group of antioxidants in that in many in vivo assays, they have been shown to be pro-oxidant. By contrast, many lipid model studies show that phospholipids, alone and in conjunction with other antioxidants, have the ability to stabilize lipids. Phospholipids have cholesterol-reducing and liver-protecting effects as well as brain-improving functions (Ramadan and Mörsel 2002b). Black currant and rosehip contain 1.3 and 1.4 g phospholipid per kg of seed oils, respectively (Zlatanov 1999).

Plant Seed Oil Extraction Methods

The extraction and refining processes of commodity oils are designed to produce a final product that is mostly neutral triglycerides, and thus, most other potential bioactive compounds are removed during the refining steps (Hernandez 2016).

New specialized uses of edible oils and other lipids in food supplements, pharmaceutical products, and cosmetic applications require more sophisticated methods of processing and chemical modification (Hernandez and Kamal-Eldin 2013b). The production of specialty oil from oilseeds is an important business, and food industry is always searching the best extraction technology to improve the oil output of the seeds as well as ways to control the composition of the oil itself. Specialty oils are generally produced using conventional methods of mechanical pressing and/or solvent extraction similar to commodity oils (Temelli et al. 2008). The major chal-

lenges of solvent extraction are longer extraction time, requirement of costly and high-purity solvent, evaporation of the huge amount of solvent, low extraction selectivity, thermal decomposition of thermolabile compounds, and undesirable solvent residue in the oil. The cold-pressing procedure involves neither heat nor chemical treatments; however, a major drawback of cold pressing is the high level of residual oil left in the meal. To overcome these limitations of conventional extraction methods, new, clean, and promising extraction techniques are introduced. These techniques are referred to as nonconventional extraction techniques and becoming alternatives to replace conventional extraction (Temelli 2009; Azmir et al. 2013). These novel extraction techniques include ultrasound-assisted extraction (UAE), microwave-assisted extraction (MAE), supercritical fluid extraction (SFE), aqueous enzymatic extraction (AEE), pulsed electric field extraction (PEF), and gas-assisted mechanical extraction (GAME). Some of these techniques are considered as green techniques. Those methods are designed in such a manner that potential beneficial minor components in the oil are preserved, and in the case of gourmet oils, the flavor and aroma of the oil remain in the final product (Hernandez 2016).

Conventional Extraction Methods

Chemical Extraction

Soxhlet is a standard technique and is still considered as one of the reference methods to compare success of newly developed extraction alternatives (Azmir et al. 2013; Wang and Weller 2006). Wide industrial applications, better reproducibility and efficiency, and less extract manipulation are the advantages of Soxhlet extraction over the other novel extraction methods (Wang and Weller 2006). However, the main disadvantage of conventional Soxhlet extraction for specialty oils rich in bioactive compounds is the degradation of fat-soluble bioactive compounds and undesirable solvent residue left in the oil (Temelli et al. 2008). Thermal decomposition and degradation of fat-soluble bioactive components cannot be ignored since the extraction is usually performed at the boiling point of the solvent for a long time and solvent is removed from the final product at harsh processing conditions (Wang and Weller 2006). Those decomposition and degradations cause damages and modifications in the bioactivity of the final product.

The chemical extraction of edible oil typically involves organic solvents such as hexane. When the oil has been obtained after solvent is removed, a trace percentage of the solvent may still be present in the final oil. Hexane use is under greater scrutiny due to increasing government restrictions, consumer concerns regarding the safety on the use of organic solvents in food processing, and demands are for "natural" or organic products, processed without the use of organic solvents (Temelli 2009; Hernandez and Kamal-Eldin 2013a; Wang and Weller 2006).

Cold Pressing

Over the last few years, increased interest in cold-pressed plant oils has been observed as these oils have better nutritive properties than those after refining. Cold pressing is the oldest, simple, and ecological method and does not require much energy (Siger et al. 2008). Even though cold pressing at temperatures below 60 °C is used extensively in the specialty oil market, cold pressing is limited in terms of oil recovery and the high levels of residual oil left in the meal (Temelli 2009; Temelli et al. 2008). Oil extraction efficiency with hot pressing is higher than cold pressing, but due to the heat generated during the compressing, the quality of the resulting oil is lower and the oil extracted by cold pressing preserves its natural properties and is free of chemical materials; therefore, the demand for oils obtained by cold-pressing approach is getting increased (Bakhshabadi et al. 2017).

Cold pressing has the advantages of pure, fresh products processed in an environmentally friendly manner. They are *trans*-fat free and retain nutrients and natural flavors. Also, the conventional refining processes used on commodity oils normally cause the removal of these valuable bioactives; as a result, the majority of specialty oils from seeds, nuts, and fruits are recovered by cold pressing (Hernandez 2016).

Novel Extraction Techniques

Supercritical Fluid Extraction

Supercritical carbon dioxide (SC-CO_2) extraction is a promising technology getting popular as a cost-effective and environmentally friendly method and meets the consumer demand for "natural" products (Mitra et al. 2009). SC-CO_2 has attracted interest as an alternative "green" solvent for the extraction of oils to organic solvents used in fat and oil processing (Wang and Weller 2006; Sahena et al. 2009). SFE uses no or only minimal organic solvent in extraction (Wang and Weller 2006). Research carried out has shown that SC-CO_2 is effective in recovering specialty oils rich in bioactive compounds from nuts, seeds, cereals, fruits, and vegetables. The use of SC-CO_2 to extract high-value nutraceutical lipids and other bioactive compounds is now being used in several commercial applications (Temelli et al. 2008).

Advantages of extraction with SC-CO_2 include (1) low processing temperatures; (2) minimal thermal degradation of the minor components of interest; (3) ease of separation of extraction solvent, resulting in no solvent residue left in the product; and (4) the fact that processing in the CO_2 environment minimizes undesirable oxidation reactions, which is especially beneficial for the sensitive bioactive components of specialty oils such as sterols, tocols, carotenoids, and polyunsaturated fatty acids (Temelli et al. 2008). Low temperature and absence of oxygen and light avoid thermal degradation and decomposition of possible labile compounds during extraction (Brusotti et al. 2014). Moreover, SC-CO_2 is physiologically harmless at the very low levels at which it is present in foods (because it is easily removed by sim-

ple expansion to common environmental pressures) (Sahena et al. 2009). SFE can achieve higher yield and quality of plant seed oil than conventional extraction. Bernardo-Gil et al. (Bernardo-Gil et al. 2002) reported that the contents of free fatty acids, sterols, triacylglycerols, and tocopherols in the hazelnut oil extracted by SFE were comparable with those obtained with *n*-hexane extraction. However, the SFE-extracted oil was more protected against oxidation of the unstable polyunsaturated fatty acids than the *n*-hexane-extracted oil (Wang and Weller 2006). Mohammed et al. (Mohammed et al. 2016) demonstrated that the black seed oil extracted using SC-CO_2 has higher biological activity compared with those of oil obtained by cold pressing. The physicochemical properties of black seed oil for supercritical CO_2 extraction showed that better quality oil could be obtained using SC-CO_2 (Mohammed et al. 2016).

Gas-Assisted Mechanical Extraction of Oilseeds

The application of SC-CO_2 for oil extraction may be limited due to the high CO_2 consumption and the long extraction duration. Recently, it was proposed to combine supercritical fluid extraction with mechanical expression. This technology called gas-assisted mechanical expression has been successfully applied to recover oil from oilseed crops, showing higher yields, shorter extraction time, and less consumed CO_2 (Mhemdi et al. 2016). In that process, CO_2 is dissolved in the oil contained in the seed cells. Then expression of the oil–CO_2 mixture is done in a hydraulic press or in a screw press. The resultant press cake has a lower residual oil content than that produced by conventional pressing at the same conditions, because part of the oil has been displaced by CO_2. The oil obtained via this process is unfractionated, of high quality, and free of harmful solvents. This technique is desirable since it combines the high yields of (supercritical) solvent extraction and the high oil quality of hydraulic pressing and supercritical extraction but does not require the large quantities of solvent used in supercritical solvent extraction (Willems and ABd 2012).

Aqueous Enzymatic Extraction

Enzyme-based aqueous oil extraction from plant seed is a potential alternative to conventional solvent-based extraction methods. This method offers the possibility of greener chemistry as pressure mounts on the food industry and even pharmaceutical companies to identify cleaner routes for the extraction of new compounds (Puri et al. 2012). This process is environmentally friendly, safer, and healthier, and simultaneous oil and protein extraction can be done without compromising the quality. As a consequence, aqueous enzymatic extraction is a promising green technique both for oilseed processing and also to extract the desired compound (Kumar et al. 2017). The eco-friendly technology for oil extraction uses water as solvent instead of organic chemicals relevant to safety and health concerns (Puri et al. 2012).

However, aqueous extraction processes have the disadvantage of resulting in low oil yields. The low extraction yields can be overcome by using enzymes, such as cellulases, hemicellulases, and pectinases, that hydrolyze the structural polysaccharides forming the cell wall of oilseeds or that hydrolyze the proteins, which form the cell and lipid body membranes and facilitate oil release from the oil bodies. Thus, the soluble components diffuse into water, and the released oil forms a separate liquid phase (Goula et al. 2018). As a result, better release and more efficient extraction of bioactives are achieved (Puri et al. 2012). Aqueous extraction of oilseeds, with or without enzyme, produces oil with similar or better qualities than conventional extraction methods such as direct hexane extraction or prepress solvent extraction (Jung et al. 2012).

Latif and Anwar (Latif and Anwar 2011) found that enzyme-assisted aqueous extraction increased the oil extraction yield from sesame seed as well as the quality of the extracted oil. Oxidative stability, antioxidant activity, and tocopherol profile of sesame seed oil obtained after enzymatic extraction were better than that obtained after hexane extraction (Latif and Anwar 2011; Marathe et al. 2017).

Although aqueous enzyme oil extraction has huge potential, application of this technology is still limited because of the factors such as high cost for enzyme production and downstream processing, long incubation time, and unavoidable added step (de-emulsification) in the process. Nevertheless, due to the wide applications of aqueous enzymatic extraction, commercial enzyme production has been expedited, and as of now the enzyme production has become cheaper. Similarly, the downstream processing costs could be minimized by adapting suitable technologies than the conventional process (Kumar et al. 2017). If the above limitations can be overcome, then enzyme-based extraction could provide an opportunity to not only increase extraction yields but also to enhance product quality by enabling the use of milder processing conditions such as lower extraction temperatures (Puri et al. 2012). In the last decade, it has been proposed that those limitations may overcome with the aid of accelerated enzyme-catalyzed reaction technologies (Goula et al. 2018; Jiao et al. 2014; Long et al. 2011).

Ultrasound-Assisted Extraction

Ultrasound is an emerging technology that has been utilized in food science for processing, preservation, and extraction. Ultrasound is a form of energy generated by sound waves of frequency range that encompasses from 20 KHz (that exceeds the hearing limit of human) to GHz with division between power (Vilkhu et al. 2008). Ultrasound has been recognized for potential application in the extraction of herbals and oils, proteins, and bioactive compounds from plant or animal materials (Ahmadi Kamazani et al. 2014).

Numerous oleaginous seeds have been extracted under ultrasound. In the past years, researchers have shown ultrasound-assisted extraction to result in high yields and high-quality oils, allowing faster extraction with great recoveries. Ultrasound can also reduce the operating temperature allowing the extraction of thermolabile

compounds such as bioactive compounds (Wang and Weller 2006; Gayas and Kaur 2017). Furthermore, ultrasound-assisted extraction can enhance extraction rates with or without using solvents and provide the opportunity to use alternative generally recognized as safe solvents by improving their extraction performance (Gayas and Kaur 2017; Tiwari 2015).

When used as a pretreatment before extraction, alone or in combination with other novel or conventional techniques, ultrasound has enhanced the oil extraction yield for almond, apricot, and rice bran, and scanning electron micrographs showed a destructuring of cell walls due to ultrasonic cavitation (Rostagno and Prado 2013). Ultrasonic pretreatment of the almond and apricot seeds before aqueous oil extraction and aqueous enzymatic oil extraction provided significantly higher yield with reduction in extraction time (Vilkhu et al. 2008). The use of supercritical CO_2 in combination with an ultrasonic probe with a working frequency of 20 kHz introduced inside a high-pressure supercritical fluid extractor-enhanced oil yields by ~30% from almond while reducing the extraction time (Tiwari 2015). A combination of ultrasound and SC-CO_2 significantly increased the extraction rate of amaranth oil from seeds (Bruni et al. 2002) and almond oil (Riera et al. 2004). The scale-up to industrial applications still needs to be explored and optimized and represents a major step with respect to sustainable utilization and exploitation of molecules in real life (Tiwari 2015).

Microwave-Assisted Extraction

In the last decade, microwave-assisted extraction techniques have been widely used for high-added value compound extraction and vegetable oil recovery from plant materials (Koubaa et al. 2016). Microwave technology is a rapid, safe, and low-cost technique for the extraction of essential oils, fats, and oils and does not need samples devoid of water. However, it still uses organic solvents, such as hexane, and therefore cannot be considered as a green technology (Danlami et al. 2014). Besides, Kazamani et al. (Koubaa et al. 2016) reported that microwave pretreatment and microwave-assisted extraction of oilseeds represent a great alternative for conventional extraction methods of oils. Assisting the extractions by microwave leads to enhanced yields and/or nutraceutical value of the seed oil.

The extraction mechanism of microwave-assisted extraction is supposed to involve three sequential steps described by Alupului et al. (Alupului et al. 2012): (1) separation of solutes from active sites of sample matrix under increased temperature and pressure, (2) diffusion of solvent across sample matrix, and (3) release of solutes from sample matrix to solvent. Generally, elevated temperatures result in improved extraction efficiencies. However, for the extraction of thermolabile compounds, high temperatures may cause the degradation of extracts. In this case, the chosen power during MAE has to be set correctly to avoid excess temperatures, leading to possible solute degradation (Wang and Weller 2006). Open-vessel operation at atmospheric pressure condition is better suited to thermolabile species (e.g., organometals) since it uses low temperatures relative to closed-vessel systems (Castro and Priego-Capote 2012). Moreover, in some cases, only selective heating

of the sample matrix is brought about by immersing the sample in a microwave transparent solvent (hexane and chloroform). This approach is useful for thermolabile compounds to prevent their degradation (Danlami et al. 2014).

Compared to the untreated samples, most of the studies conducted on oil-assisted extraction or oilseed pretreatment by microwave showed similar or higher oil quality. Microwave-treated seeds generate oils with an enhanced content of desirable nutraceuticals, such as phytosterols and tocopherols, canolol, and phenolic compounds, which increase the oxidative stability of the oil and extends its shelf life (Koubaa et al. 2016). Alternatively, microwave irradiation can be utilized in accelerated enzyme-catalyzed reactions for natural products and oil extraction (Jiao et al. 2014). This microwave-assisted aqueous enzymatic extraction may be a promising alternative for novel and green extraction of plant seed oil.

Pulsed-Electric Field Extraction

The application of pulsed electric fields and high-voltage electrical discharges (HVED) for oil extraction from oilseeds and its functional ingredients has received increasing interest during the last past decade (Shorstkii et al. 2017). This minimally invasive method allows avoidance of undesirable changes in heat-sensitive biological materials, which are typical for other techniques such as thermal, chemical, and enzymatic ones (Boussetta et al. 2012). The main advantages of PEF pretreatment are related to the possibility of nonthermal extraction even at high electric field strength ($E > 20$–30 kV/cm) due to its short pretreatment time (10^{-5}–10^{-2} s) without any significant temperature increase. With no or little addition of organic solvents or enzymes, extraction assisted by PEF pretreatment is usually conducted in green solvent such as water or ethanol (Yu et al. 2016). HVED may be the other alternative for the enhancement of aqueous extraction from oilseeds which has the disadvantages of lower oil yield, high water consumption, and the addition of de-emulsification operation (Grémy-Gros et al. 2008). PEF results in the rupture of cell membranes when submitted to an external electric field, increasing the electrical conductivity and the permeability of intracellular material. HVED affects both the cell walls and membranes and can cause more extensive damage to the product. This technology is based on the phenomenon of electrical breakdown in water, which induces physical (e.g., shock waves) and chemical (e.g., formation of O_3) processes that affect the cell, enhancing the release of intracellular components. PEF can increase mass transfer during extraction by destroying membrane structure of plant materials for enhancing extraction yield and decreasing extraction time (Azmir et al. 2013).

PEF has been used in applications such as oil extraction from sesame (Sarkis et al. 2015), peanut (Zeng et al. 2010), and oil recovery from other plant products, such as maize, olives, and soybeans (Mercer and Armenta 2011). Guderjan et al. (Guderjan et al. 2007; Guderjan et al. 2005) reported the application of PEF treatment for the improvement of recovery and quality of oils extracted from oil-rich plants (Boussetta et al. 2012). The authors showed that the pretreatment with PEF improved the oil extraction yield significantly. Moreover, this electrical pretreatment had a significant effect on the oil quality, increasing the concentrations of

bioactive compounds such as of tocopherols, polyphenols, total antioxidants, and phytosterols in the obtained oils (Sarkis et al. 2015).

Conclusions and Future Perspectives

This chapter reviews the unconventional plant seed-derived specialty oils, their bioactive compounds, functional properties, nutraceutical/therapeutic applications, and novel extraction techniques. The use of unconventional cold-pressed seed oils introduced to the market quite recently seems to be accelerated in the near future owing to the presence of health-promoting bioactive compounds. These oils have been widely used in traditional, nutritional and medicinal applications. Specialty seed oils are rich in bioactive compounds such as polyunsaturated fatty acids, tocopherols, phytosterols, squalene, carotenoids, and phenolic acids which are linked to positive health benefits of these oils. The potential health benefits of bioactives can encompass reduced heart disease, mitigated cancer risk, improved plasma cholesterol levels, reduced inflammation, enhanced brain function, improved gastrointestinal health, loss of retained body fat, and many others (Puri et al. 2012). Recently several epidemiological studies have demonstrated that unconventional plant seed oils and their bioactive compounds have extensive anti-inflammatory, antiatherosclerotic, antitumor, antimutagenic, anticarcinogenic, antibacterial, or antiviral activities to a greater or lesser extent. However, more scientific research and clinical studies are required to evaluate the health-promoting effects, functional properties, biological activities, and nutritional value of unconventional plant seed oils. By this way, these compounds will have more potential roles in modern diets, pharmaceutical, cosmetics, and food industry.

These oils are traditionally extracted by cold pressing that involves no heat or chemical treatment and thus may preserve more health beneficial components. Novel alternative eco-friendly and safe extraction methods have been started to be used such as supercritical fluid, ultrasound, microwave-assisted extraction, pulsed electrical field, enzymatic aqueous extraction, or their combinations presenting advantages of lower extraction time, improved extraction yields, and higher reproducibility. However, most of these techniques are successfully applied at the laboratory or bench scale. Thus, further investigations are needed to enhance the design and scale-up of these new extraction methods for their industrial applications.

References

Abdel-Daim MM, Abd Eldaim MA, Mahmoud MM (2014) Trigonella foenum-graecum protection against deltamethrin-induced toxic effects on haematological, biochemical, and oxidative stress parameters in rats. Can J Physiol Pharmacol 92(8):679–685

Ahmad Z (2010) The uses and properties of almond oil. Complement Ther Clin Pract 16(1):10–12

Ahmadi Kamazani N, Tavakolipour H, Hasani M, Amiri M (2014) Evaluation and analysis of the ultrasound-assisted extracted tomato seed oil. J Food Biosci Technol 4:57–66

Alma MH, Karaogul E, Ertas M, Altuntas E, Karaman S, Diraz E (2012) Chemical composition of seed oil from turkish prunus mahaleb l. Anal Chem Lett 2(3):182–185

Al-Oqail MM, Farshori NN, Al-Sheddi ES, Musarrat J, Al-Khedhairy AA, Siddiqui MA (2013) In vitro cytotoxic activity of seed oil of fenugreek against various cancer cell lines. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev 14(3):1829–1832

Alupului A, Calinescu I, Lavric V (2012) Microwave extraction of active principles from medicinal plants. UPB Sci Bull B 74(2):1454–2331

Amin S, Mir SR, Kohli K, Ali B, Ali M (2010) A study of the chemical composition of black cumin oil and its effect on penetration enhancement from transdermal formulations. Nat Prod Res 24(12):1151–1157

Amri Z, Lazreg-Aref H, Mekni M, El-Gharbi S, Dabbaghi O, Mechri B et al (2017) Oil characterization and lipids class composition of pomegranate seeds. BioMed Res Int 2017:2037341

Andjelkovic M, Van Camp J, Trawka A, Verhé R (2010) Phenolic compounds and some quality parameters of pumpkin seed oil. Eur J Lipid Sci Technol 112(2):208–217

Anilakumar KR, Pal A, Khanum F, Bawa AS (2010) Nutritional, medicinal and industrial uses of sesame (*Sesamum indicum* L.) seeds-an overview. Agríc Conspec Sci 75(4):159–168

Asadi-Samani M, Bahmani M, Rafieian-Kopaei M (2014) The chemical composition, botanical characteristic and biological activities of borago officinalis: a review. Asian Pac J Trop Med 7(Suppl 1):S22–SS8

Awad AB, Fink CS (2000) Phytosterols as anticancer dietary components: evidence and mechanism of action. J Nutr 130(9):2127–2130

Azmir J, Zaidul I, Rahman M, Sharif K, Mohamed A, Sahena F et al (2013) Techniques for extraction of bioactive compounds from plant materials: a review. J Food Eng 117(4):426–436

Bakhshabadi H, Mirzaei H, Ghodsvali A, Jafari SM, Ziaiifar AM, Farzaneh V (2017) The effect of microwave pretreatment on some physico-chemical properties and bioactivity of black cumin seeds' oil. Ind Crop Prod 97:1–9

Bakowska-Barczak AM, Schieber A, Kolodziejczyk P (2009) Characterization of Canadian black currant (*Ribes nigrum* L.) seed oils and residues. J Agric Food Chem 57(24):11528–11536

Barceló-Coblijn G, Murphy EJ (2009) Alpha-linolenic acid and its conversion to longer chain n−3 fatty acids: Benefits for human health and a role in maintaining tissue n−3 fatty acid levels. Prog Lipid Res 48(6):355–374

Berganza BE, Moran AW, Rodríguez GM, Coto NM, Santamaría M, Bressani R (2003) Effect of variety and location on the total fat, fatty acids and squalene content of amaranth. Plant Foods Hum Nutr 58(3):1–6

Bernardo-Gil MG, Grenha J, Santos J, Cardoso P (2002) Supercritical fluid extraction and characterisation of oil from hazelnut. Eur J Lipid Sci Technol 104(7):402–409

Beveridge TH, Girard B, Kopp T, Drover JC (2005) Yield and composition of grape seed oils extracted by supercritical carbon dioxide and petroleum ether: varietal effects. J Agric Food Chem 53(5):1799–1804

Bonvehi JS, Coll FV, Rius IA (2000) Liquid chromatographic determination of tocopherols and tocotrienols in vegetable oils, formulated preparations, and biscuits. J AOAC Int 83(3):627–634

Boskou D (2017) Edible cold pressed oils and their biologically active components. J Exp Food Chem 3:e108

Boussetta N, Reess T, Vorobiev E, Lanoisellé J-L (2012) Pulsed electrical discharges: principles and application to extraction of biocompounds. In: Lebovka N, Vorobiev E, Chemat F (eds) Enhancing extraction processes in the food industry. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp 145–172

Bozan B, Temelli F (2008) Chemical composition and oxidative stability of flax, safflower and poppy seed and seed oils. Bioresour Technol 99(14):6354–6359

Bruni R, Guerrini A, Scalia S, Romagnoli C, Sacchetti G (2002) Rapid techniques for the extraction of vitamin e isomers from amaranthus caudatus seeds: ultrasonic and supercritical fluid extraction. Phytochem Anal 13(5):257–261

Brusotti G, Cesari I, Dentamaro A, Caccialanza G, Massolini G (2014) Isolation and characterization of bioactive compounds from plant resources: the role of analysis in the ethnopharmacological approach. J Pharm Biomed Anal 87:218–228
Cai Y, Luo Q, Sun M, Corke H (2004) Antioxidant activity and phenolic compounds of 112 traditional Chinese medicinal plants associated with anticancer. Life Sci 74(17):2157–2184
Caligiani A, Bonzanini F, Palla G, Cirlini M, Bruni R (2010) Characterization of a potential nutraceutical ingredient: pomegranate (*Punica granatum* L.) seed oil unsaponifiable fraction. Plant Foods Hum Nutr 65(3):277–283
Callaway J (2004) Hempseed as a nutritional resource: an overview. Euphytica 140(1):65–72
Carvalho Filho JM (2014) Pomegranate seed oil (*Punica granatum* L.): a source of punicic acid (conjugated α-linolenic acid). J Human Nutri Food Sci 2(1):1–11
Castro MDL, Priego-Capote F (2012) Microwave-assisted extraction. In: Lebovka N, Vorobiev E, Chemat F (eds) Enhancing extraction processes in the food industry. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp 85–122
Catchpole O, Tallon S, Eltringham W, Grey J, Fenton K, Vagi E et al (2009) The extraction and fractionation of specialty lipids using near critical fluids. J Supercrit Fluid 47(3):591–597
Cherif AO (2012) Phytochemicals components as bioactive foods. In: Bioactive compounds in phytomedicine. InTech, London
Chew S-C, Tan C-P, Nyam K-L (2017) Comparative study of crude and refined kenaf (*Hibiscus cannabinus* L.) seed oil during accelerated storage. Food Sci Biotechnol 26(1):63–69
Ciftci ON, Przybylski R, Rudzinska M, Acharya S (2011) Characterization of fenugreek (trigonella foenum-graecum) seed lipids. J Am Oil Chem Soc 88(10):1603–1610
Cihat Icyer N, Toker OS, Karasu S, Tornuk F, Kahyaoglu T, Arici M (2017) Microencapsulation of fig seed oil rich in polyunsaturated fatty acids by spray drying. J Food Meas Charac 11(1):50–57
Czaplicki S, Ogrodowska D, Derewiaka D, Tańska M, Zadernowski R (2011) Bioactive compounds in unsaponifiable fraction of oils from unconventional sources. Eur J Lipid Sci Technol 113(12):1456–1464
da Silva AC, Jorge N (2017) Bioactive compounds of oils extracted from fruits seeds obtained from agroindustrial waste. Eur J Lipid Sci Technol 119(4):1600024
Dabbour I, Al-Ismail K, Takruri H, Azzeh F (2014) Chemical characteristics and antioxidant content properties of cold pressed seed oil of wild milk thistle plant grown in jordan. Pak J Nutr 13:67–78
Dai J, Mumper RJ (2010) Plant phenolics: extraction, analysis and their antioxidant and anticancer properties. Molecules 15(10):7313–7352
Damon M, Zhang NZ, Haytowitz DB, Booth SL (2005) Phylloquinone (vitamin k 1) content of vegetables. J Food Compost Anal 18(8):751–758
Danlami JM, Arsad A, Zaini A, Abbas M, Sulaiman H (2014) A comparative study of various oil extraction techniques from plants. Rev Chem Eng 30(6):605–626
Dimitrios B (2006) Sources of natural phenolic antioxidants. Trends Food Sci Technol 17(9):505–512
Dubois V, Breton S, Linder M, Fanni J, Parmentier M (2007) Fatty acid profiles of 80 vegetable oils with regard to their nutritional potential. Eur J Lipid Sci Technol 109(7):710–732
Dwivedi C, Natarajan K, Matthees DP (2005) Chemopreventive effects of dietary flaxseed oil on colon tumor development. Nutr Cancer 51(1):52–58
Ennouri M, Fetoui H, Bourret E, Zeghal N, Attia H (2006) Evaluation of some biological parameters of opuntia ficus indica. 1. Influence of a seed oil supplemented diet on rats. Bioresour Technol 97(12):1382–1386
Fa-lin Z, Zhen-yu W, Yan H, Tao Z, Kang L (2010) Efficacy of black currant oil soft capsule, a Chinese herbal drug, in hyperlipidemia treatment. Phytother Res 24:S2
Fang F, Chen H, Ho C-T, Rosen RT (2006) Sphingolipids. In: Shahidi F (ed) Nutraceutical and specialty lipids and their co-products. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp 127–136
Fathi-Achachlouei B, Azadmard-Damirchi S (2009) Milk thistle seed oil constituents from different varieties grown in Iran. J Am Oil Chem Soc 86(7):643–649

Foster R, Williamson C, Lunn J (2009) Briefing paper: culinary oils and their health effects. Nutr Bull 34(1):4–47

Gangoiti P, Camacho L, Arana L, Ouro A, Granado MH, Brizuela L et al (2010) Control of metabolism and signaling of simple bioactive sphingolipids: implications in disease. Prog Lipid Res 49(4):316–334

Garavaglia J, Markoski MM, Oliveira A, Marcadenti A (2016) Grape seed oil compounds: biological and chemical actions for health. Nutr Metab Insights 9:59

Gayas B, Kaur G (2017) Novel oil extraction methods in food industry: A review. J Oilseed Brass 1(1):1–11

Górnaś P, Siger A, Juhņeviča K, Lācis G, Šnē E, Segliņa D (2014) Cold-pressed Japanese quince (chaenomeles japonica (thunb.) lindl. Ex spach) seed oil as a rich source of α-tocopherol, carotenoids and phenolics: A comparison of the composition and antioxidant activity with nine other plant oils. Eur J Lipid Sci Technol 116(5):563–570

Górnaś P, Siger A, Segliņa D (2013) Physicochemical characteristics of the cold-pressed Japanese quince seed oil: new promising unconventional bio-oil from by-products for the pharmaceutical and cosmetic industry. Indus Crop Prod 48(C):178–182

Goula AM, Papatheodorou A, Karasavva S, Kaderides K (2018) Ultrasound-assisted aqueous enzymatic extraction of oil from pomegranate seeds. Waste and Biomass Valorization. 9(1):1–11

Grémy-Gros C, Lanoisellé J-L, Vorobiev E (2008) Application of high-voltage electrical discharges for the aqueous extraction from oilseeds and other plants. In: Vorobiev E, Lebovka N (eds) Electrotechnologies for extraction from food plants and biomaterials. Springer, New York, NY, pp 217–236

Grossmann ME, Mizuno NK, Dammen ML, Schuster T, Ray A, Cleary MP (2009) Eleostearic acid inhibits breast cancer proliferation by means of an oxidation-dependent mechanism. Cancer Prev Res 2(10):879–886

Gu L-B, Liu X-N, Liu H-M, Pang H-L, Qin G-Y (2017) Extraction of fenugreek (trigonella foenum-graceum L.) seed oil using subcritical butane: characterization and process optimization. Molecules 22(2):228

Guderjan M, Elez-Martínez P, Knorr D (2007) Application of pulsed electric fields at oil yield and content of functional food ingredients at the production of rapeseed oil. Innov Food Sci Emerg Technol 8(1):55–62

Guderjan M, Töpfl S, Angersbach A, Knorr D (2005) Impact of pulsed electric field treatment on the recovery and quality of plant oils. J Food Eng 67(3):281–287

Guil-Guerrero J, Rebolloso-Fuentes M, Isasa MT (2003) Fatty acids and carotenoids from stinging nettle (Urticadioica L.). J Food Compost Anal 16(2):111–119

Gunstone FD (2006) Minor speciality oils. In: SHAHIDI F (ed) Nutraceutical and specialty lipids and their co-products. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp 91–136

Haiyan Z, Bedgood DR, Bishop AG, Prenzler PD, Robards K (2007) Endogenous biophenol, fatty acid and volatile profiles of selected oils. Food Chem 100(4):1544–1551

Hamden K, Keskes H, Elgomdi O, Feki A, Alouche N (2017) Modulatory effect of an isolated triglyceride from fenugreek seed oil on of α-amylase, lipase and ace activities, liver-kidney functions and metabolic disorders of diabetic rats. J Oleo Sci 66(6):633–645

Hamden K, Masmoudi H, Carreau S, Elfeki A (2010) Immunomodulatory, β-cell, and neuroprotective actions of fenugreek oil from alloxan-induced diabetes. Immunopharmacol Immunotoxicol 32(3):437–445

Harrabi S, Curtis S, Hayet F, Mayer P (2016) Changes in the sterol compositions of milk thistle oil (*Silybum marianum* L.) during seed maturation. Grasas Aceites 67(1):123

Hernandez EM (2016) Specialty oils: functional and nutraceutical properties. In: Sanders TAB (ed) Functional dietary lipids food formulation, consumer issues and innovation for health. Woodhead Publishing, Cambridge, pp 69–101

Hernandez EM, Kamal-Eldin A (2013a) Biochemical and bioactive properties of fats and oils. In: Processing and nutrition of fats and oils. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd., Hoboken, NJ, pp 39–63

Hernandez EM, Kamal-Eldin A (2013b) Processing of oils for functional and nutritional applications. In: Processing and nutrition of fats and oils. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd., West Sussex, pp 109–124
Huang Y-W, Huang C-Y (2006) Gamma-linolenic acid (gla). In: Shahidi F (ed) Nutraceutical and specialty lipids and their co-products. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp 169–180
Jakob E, Elmadfa I (1996) Application of a simplified hplc assay for the determination of phylloquinone (vitamin k1) in animal and plant food items. Food Chem 56(1):87–91
Jandacek RJ (2017.: Multidisciplinary Digital Publishing Institute) Linoleic acid: a nutritional quandary. Healthcare 5(2):25
Jiao J, Li Z-G, Gai Q-Y, Li X-J, Wei F-Y, Fu Y-J et al (2014) Microwave-assisted aqueous enzymatic extraction of oil from pumpkin seeds and evaluation of its physicochemical properties, fatty acid compositions and antioxidant activities. Food Chem 147:17–24
Ju J, Picinich SC, Yang Z, Zhao Y, Suh N, Kong A-N et al (2009) Cancer-preventive activities of tocopherols and tocotrienols. Carcinogenesis 31(4):533–542
Jung S, Moura JMLN, Campbell KA, Johnson LA (2012) Enzyme-assisted aqueous extraction of oilseeds. In: Lebovka N, Vorobiev E, Chemat F (eds) Enhancing extraction processes in the food industry. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp 477–518
Kapoor R, Huang Y-S (2006) Gamma linolenic acid: an antiinflammatory omega-6 fatty acid. Curr Pharm Biotechnol 7(6):531–534
Kerrihard AL, Pegg RB (2015) Utilizing the bioactive contents of specialty oils and fats. In: Talbot G (ed) Specialty oils and fats in food and nutrition: properties, processing and applications. Woodhead Publishing Ltd., Cambridge, pp 317–348
Khoddami A, Man YBC, Roberts TH (2014) Physico-chemical properties and fatty acid profile of seed oils from pomegranate (*Punica granatum* L.) extracted by cold pressing. Eur J Lipid Sci Technol 116(5):553–562
Koubaa M, Mhemdi H, Barba FJ, Roohinejad S, Greiner R, Vorobiev E (2016) Oilseed treatment by ultrasounds and microwaves to improve oil yield and quality: an overview. Food Res Int 85:59–66
Kumar SJ, Prasad SR, Banerjee R, Agarwal DK, Kulkarni KS, Ramesh K (2017) Green solvents and technologies for oil extraction from oilseeds. Chem Cent J 11(1):9
Latif S, Anwar F (2011) Aqueous enzymatic sesame oil and protein extraction. Food Chem 125(2):679–684
Lee JH, Min DB (2006) Nutraceuticals, aging, and food oxidation. In: Akoh CC (ed) Handbook of functional lipids. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp 325–350
Leizer C, Ribnicky D, Poulev A, Dushenkov S, Raskin I (2000) The composition of hemp seed oil and its potential as an important source of nutrition. J Nutraceut Funct Med Foods 2(4):35–53
León-Camacho M, García-González DL, Aparicio R (2001) A detailed and comprehensive study of amaranth (*Amaranthus cruentus* L.) oil fatty profile. Eur Food Res Technol 213(4):349–355
Leray C (2015) Lipids: nutrition and health. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL
Long J-J, Fu Y-J, Zu Y-G, Li J, Wang W, Gu C-B et al (2011) Ultrasound-assisted extraction of flaxseed oil using immobilized enzymes. Bioresour Technol 102(21):9991–9996
Lutterodt H, Luther M, Slavin M, Yin J-J, Parry J, Gao J-M et al (2010) Fatty acid profile, thymoquinone content, oxidative stability, and antioxidant properties of cold-pressed black cumin seed oils. LWT-Food Sci Technol 43(9):1409–1413
Maguire L, O'sullivan S, Galvin K, O'connor T, O'brien N (2004) Fatty acid profile, tocopherol, squalene and phytosterol content of walnuts, almonds, peanuts, hazelnuts and the macadamia nut. Int J Food Sci Nutr 55(3):171–178
Marathe SJ, Jadhav SB, Bankar SB, Singhal RS (2017) Enzyme-assisted extraction of bioactives. In: Puri M (ed) Food bioactives extraction and biotechnology applications. Springer International Publishing AG, Cham, pp 171–204
Martinello M, Hecker G, del Carmen Pramparo M (2007) Grape seed oil deacidification by molecular distillation: analysis of operative variables influence using the response surface methodology. J Food Eng 81(1):60–64

Martirosyan DM, Miroshnichenko LA, Kulakova SN, Pogojeva AV, Zoloedov VI (2007) Amaranth oil application for coronary heart disease and hypertension. Lipids Health Dis 6(1):1

Matthäus B (2008) Virgin grape seed oil: is it really a nutritional highlight? Eur J Lipid Sci Technol 110(7):645–650

Mensink RP, Katan MB (1992) Effect of dietary fatty acids on serum lipids and lipoproteins. A meta-analysis of 27 trials. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 12(8):911–919

Mercer P, Armenta RE (2011) Developments in oil extraction from microalgae. Eur J Lipid Sci Technol 113(5):539–547

Mhemdi H, Koubaa M, El Majid A, Vorobiev E (2016) Solute and gas assisted mechanical expression for green oil recovery from rapeseed hulls. Indus Crop Prod 92:300–307

Michaelson LV, Napier JA, Molino D, Faure J-D (2016) Plant sphingolipids: their importance in cellular organization and adaption. Biochim Biophys Acta-Mol Cell Biol Lipids 1861(9):1329–1335

Mitra P, Ramaswamy HS, Chang KS (2009) Pumpkin (cucurbita maxima) seed oil extraction using supercritical carbon dioxide and physicochemical properties of the oil. J Food Eng 95(1):208–213

Mo S, Dong L, Hurst WJ, Van Breemen RB (2013) Quantitative analysis of phytosterols in edible oils using apci liquid chromatography–tandem mass spectrometry. Lipids 48(9):949–956

Mohammed NK, Abd Manap MY, Tan CP, Muhialdin BJ, Alhelli AM, Meor Hussin AS (2016) The effects of different extraction methods on antioxidant properties, chemical composition, and thermal behavior of black seed (*Nigella sativa* L.) oil. Evidence-Based Complementary and Alternative Medicine: eCAM 2016:6273817

Montserrat-De La Paz S, Marín-Aguilar F, García-Giménez M, Fernández-Arche M (2014) Hemp (*Cannabis sativa* L.) seed oil: analytical and phytochemical characterization of the unsaponifiable fraction. J Agric Food Chem 62(5):1105–1110

Moreau RA, Kamal-Eldin A (2009) Introduction. In: Moreau RA, Kamal-Eldin A (eds) Gourmet and health-promoting specialty oils. AOCS, Urbana, IL, pp 1–13

Muneeshwari P, Hemalatha G, Kanchana S, Pushpa G, Mini M, Chidambaranathan N (2017) Effect of refining process on the phenol compound and antioxidant activity of refined and virgin oils. Int J Pure App Biosci 5(2):1192–1198

Naik AS, Lele S (2012) Functional lipids and bioactive compounds from oil rich indigenous seeds. Int J Nutr Food Sci 6:69–72

Nerurkar P, Ray RB (2010) Bitter melon: antagonist to cancer. Pharm Res 27(6):1049–1053

Nogala-Kalucka M, Rudzinska M, Zadernowski R, Siger A, Krzyzostaniak I (2010) Phytochemical content and antioxidant properties of seeds of unconventional oil plants. J Am Oil Chem Soc 87(12):1481–1487

Nyam K, Tan C, Lai O, Long K, Man YC (2009) Physicochemical properties and bioactive compounds of selected seed oils. LWT-Food Sci Technol 42(8):1396–1403

O'brien RD (2009) Fats and oils: formulating and processing for applications, 3rd edn. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL

Oomah BD (2001) Flaxseed as a functional food source. J Sci Food Agric 81(9):889–894

Oomah BD, Busson M, Godfrey DV, Drover JCG (2002a) Characteristics of hemp (*Cannabis sativa* L.) seed oil. Food Chem 76(1):33–43. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0308-8146(01)00245-X

Oomah BD, Busson M, Godfrey DV, Drover JC (2002b) Characteristics of hemp (*Cannabis sativa* L.) seed oil. Food Chem 76(1):33–43

Opdyke D (1973) Monographs on fragrance raw materials: coriander oil. Food Cosmet Toxicol 11(6):1077–1081

Otles S, Cagindi O (2007) Determination of vitamin k1 content in olive oil, chard and human plasma by rp-hplc method with uv–vis detection. Food Chem 100(3):1220–1222

Parry J, Hao Z, Luther M, Su L, Zhou K, Yu LL (2006) Characterization of cold-pressed onion, parsley, cardamom, mullein, roasted pumpkin, and milk thistle seed oils. J Am Oil Chem Soc 83(10):847–854

Parry J, Su L, Luther M, Zhou K, Yurawecz MP, Whittaker P et al (2005) Fatty acid composition and antioxidant properties of cold-pressed marionberry, boysenberry, red raspberry, and blueberry seed oils. J Agric Food Chem 53(3):566–573

Philp HA (2003) Hot flashes-a review of the literature on alternative and complementary treatment approaches. Altern Med Rev 8(3):284–302

Piironen V, Koivu T, Tammisalo O, Mattila P (1997) Determination of phylloquinone in oils, margarines and butter by high-performance liquid chromatography with electrochemical detection. Food Chem 59(3):473–480

Placek LL (1963) A review on petroselinic acid and its derivatives. J Am Oil Chem Soc 40(8):319–329

Plat J, Mensink RP (2005) Plant stanol and sterol esters in the control of blood cholesterol levels: mechanism and safety aspects. Am J Cardiol 96(1):15–22

Puri M, Sharma D, Barrow CJ (2012) Enzyme-assisted extraction of bioactives from plants. Trends Biotechnol 30(1):37–44

R'bia O, Chkioua C, Hellal R, Herchi W, Smiti SA (2017) Antioxidant and antibacterial activities of opuntia ficus indica seed oil fractions and their bioactive compounds identification. Turk J Biochem 42(4):481–491

Rallidis LS, Paschos G, Liakos GK, Velissaridou AH, Anastasiadis G, Zampelas A (2003) Dietary α-linolenic acid decreases c-reactive protein, serum amyloid a and interleukin-6 in dyslipidaemic patients. Atherosclerosis 167(2):237–242

Rallidis LS, Paschos G, Papaioannou ML, Liakos GK, Panagiotakos DB, Anastasiadis G et al (2004) The effect of diet enriched with α-linolenic acid on soluble cellular adhesion molecules in dyslipidaemic patients. Atherosclerosis 174(1):127–132

Ramadan MF (2007) Nutritional value, functional properties and nutraceutical applications of black cumin (*Nigella sativa* L.): an overview. Int J Food Sci Technol 42(10):1208–1218

Ramadan MF (2011) Bioactive phytochemicals, nutritional value, and functional properties of cape gooseberry (physalis peruviana): an overview. Food Res Int 44(7):1830–1836

Ramadan MF (2012) Functional properties, nutritional value, and industrial applications of niger oilseeds (guizotia abyssinica cass.). Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr 52(1):1–8

Ramadan MF, Asker MMS, Tadros M (2012) Antiradical and antimicrobial properties of cold-pressed black cumin and cumin oils. Eur Food Res Technol 234(5):833–844

Ramadan MF, Kroh LW, Mörsel J-T (2003) Radical scavenging activity of black cumin (*Nigella sativa* L.), coriander (*Coriandrum sativum* L.), and niger (Guizotia abyssinica cass.) crude seed oils and oil fractions. J Agric Food Chem 51(24):6961–6969

Ramadan MF, Mörsel J-T (2002a) Direct isocratic normal-phase hplc assay of fat-soluble vitamins and β-carotene in oilseeds. Eur Food Res Technol 214(6):521–527

Ramadan MF, Mörsel J-T (2002b) Characterization of phospholipid composition of black cumin (*Nigella sativa* L.) seed oil. Nahrung/Food 46(4):240

Ramadan MF, Mörsel J-T (2002c) Oil composition of coriander (*Coriandrum sativum* L.) fruit-seeds. Eur Food Res Technol 215(3):204–209

Ramadan MF, Mörsel J-T (2003) Oil cactus pear (opuntia ficus-indica L.). Food Chem 82(3):339–345

Ratha J, Majumdar KN, Mandal SK, Bera R, Sarkar C, Saha B et al (2006) A sphingolipid rich lipid fraction isolated from attenuated leishmania donovani promastigote induces apoptosis in mouse and human melanoma cells in vitro. Mol Cell Biochem 290(1):113–123

Reuter J, Huyke C, Casetti F, Theek C, Frank U, Augustin M et al (2008) Anti-inflammatory potential of a lipolotion containing coriander oil in the ultraviolet erythema test. J Dtschl Dermatol Ges 6(10):847–851

Riera E, Golas Y, Blanco A, Gallego J, Blasco M, Mulet A (2004) Mass transfer enhancement in supercritical fluids extraction by means of power ultrasound. Ultrason Sonochem 11(3):241–244

Rostagno MA, Prado JM (2013) Natural product extraction: principles and applications, vol 21. Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge

Rudzińska M, Górnaś P, Raczyk M, Soliven A (2017) Sterols and squalene in apricot (*Prunus armeniaca* L.) kernel oils: the variety as a key factor. Nat Prod Res 31(1):84–88

Rudzińska M, Hassanein MMM, Abdel–Razek AG, Ratusz K, Siger A (2016) Blends of rapeseed oil with black cumin and rice bran oils for increasing the oxidative stability. J Food Sci Technol 53(2):1055–1062

Ryan E, Galvin K, O'Connor TP, Maguire AR, O'Brien NM (2007) Phytosterol, squalene, tocopherol content and fatty acid profile of selected seeds, grains, and legumes. Plant Foods Hum Nutr 62(3):85–91

Sahena F, Zaidul I, Jinap S, Karim A, Abbas K, Norulaini N et al (2009) Application of supercritical CO_2 in lipid extraction–a review. J Food Eng 95(2):240–253

Sahib NG, Anwar F, Gilani AH, Hamid AA, Saari N, Alkharfy KM (2013) Coriander (*Coriandrum sativum* L.): a potential source of high-value components for functional foods and nutraceuticals-a review. Phytother Res 27(10):1439–1456

Sanders TAB (2016) Introduction: the role of fats in human diet. In: Sanders TAB (ed) Functional dietary lipids food formulation, consumer issues and innovation for health. Woodhead Publishing, Cambridge, pp 1–20

Sarkis JR, Boussetta N, Tessaro IC, Marczak LDF, Vorobiev E (2015) Application of pulsed electric fields and high voltage electrical discharges for oil extraction from sesame seeds. J Food Eng 153:20–27

Sbihi HM, Nehdi IA, Al-Resayes SI (2014) Characterization of white mahlab (*Prunus mahaleb* L.) seed oil: a rich source of α-eleostearic acid. J Food Sci 79(5):C795–C801

Schwartz H, Ollilainen V, Piironen V, Lampi A-M (2008) Tocopherol, tocotrienol and plant sterol contents of vegetable oils and industrial fats. J Food Compost Anal 21(2):152–161

Segall SD, Artz WE (2006) Frying lipids. In: Akoh CC (ed) Handbook of functional lipids. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp 185–202

Seppanen CM, Song Q, Csallany AS (2010) The antioxidant functions of tocopherol and tocotrienol homologues in oils, fats, and food systems. J Am Oil Chem Soc 87(5):469–481

Shahidi F (2006) Nutraceutical and specialty lipids and their co-products. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL

Shahidi F, Ambigaipalan P (2015) Phenolics and polyphenolics in foods, beverages and spices: antioxidant activity and health effects – a review. J Funct Foods 18(Part B):820–897

Shahidi F, Senanayake SPJN (2006) Nutraceutical and speciality lipids. In: Shahidi F (ed) Nutraceutical and specialty lipids and their co-products. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp 1–26

Shearer M (1992) Vitamin k metabolism and nutriture. Blood Rev 6(2):92–104

Shorstkii I, Mirshekarloo MS, Koshevoi E (2017) Application of pulsed electric field for oil extraction from sunflower seeds: electrical parameter effects on oil yield. J Food Process Eng 40(1):e12281

Shrestha K, Gemechu FG, De Meulenaer B (2013) A novel insight on the high oxidative stability of roasted mustard seed oil in relation to phospholipid, maillard type reaction products, tocopherol and canolol contents. Food Res Int 54(1):587–594

Siger A, Nogola-Kalucka M, Lampart-Szczapa E (2008) The content and antioxidant activity of phenolic compounds in cold-pressed plant oils. J Food Lipids 15(2):137–149

Simopoulos AP (2002) The importance of the ratio of omega-6/omega-3 essential fatty acids. Biomed Pharmacother 56(8):365–379

Simopoulos AP (2016) An increase in the omega-6/omega-3 fatty acid ratio increases the risk for obesity. Nutrients 8(3):128

Sovilj MN (2010) Critical review of supercritical carbon dioxide extraction of selected oil seeds. Acta Period Technol 41:105–120

Stevenson DG, Eller FJ, Wang L, Jane J-L, Wang T, Inglett GE (2007) Oil and tocopherol content and composition of pumpkin seed oil in 12 cultivars. J Agric Food Chem 55(10):4005–4013

Szterk A, Roszko M, Sosińska E, Derewiaka D, Lewicki PP (2010) Chemical composition and oxidative stability of selected plant oils. J Am Oil Chem Soc 87(6):637–645

Takagi T, Itabashi Y (1981) Occurrence of mixtures of geometrical isomers of conjugated octadecatrienoic acids in some seed oils: analysis by open-tubular gas liquid chromatography and high performance liquid chromatography. Lipids 16(7):546–551

Tańska M, Roszkowska B, Skrajda M, Dąbrowski G (2016) Commercial cold pressed flaxseed oils quality and oxidative stability at the beginning and the end of their shelf life. J Oleo Sci 65(2):111–121

Tellier F, Maia-Grondard A, Schmitz-Afonso I, Faure J-D (2014) Comparative plant sphingolipidomic reveals specific lipids in seeds and oil. Phytochemistry 103:50–58

Temelli F (2009) Perspectives on supercritical fluid processing of fats and oils. J Supercrit Fluid 47(3):583–590

Temelli F, Saldaña MDA, Moquin PHL, Sun M (2008) Supercritical fluid extraction of specialty oils. In: Martínez JL (ed) Supercritical fluid extraction of nutraceuticals and bioactive compounds. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp 51–101

Tiwari BK (2015) Ultrasound: a clean, green extraction technology. TrAC, Trends Anal Chem 71:100–109

Tsuzuki T, Tokuyama Y, Igarashi M, Miyazawa T (2004) Tumor growth suppression by α-eleostearic acid, a linolenic acid isomer with a conjugated triene system, via lipid peroxidation. Carcinogenesis 25(8):1417–1425

Tuberoso CI, Kowalczyk A, Sarritzu E, Cabras P (2007) Determination of antioxidant compounds and antioxidant activity in commercial oilseeds for food use. Food Chem 103(4):1494–1501

Turan S, Topcu A, Karabulut I, Vural H, Hayaloglu AA (2007) Fatty acid, triacylglycerol, phytosterol, and tocopherol variations in kernel oil of malatya apricots from turkey. J Agric Food Chem 55(26):10787–10794

Turkay S, Gurbuz H (2013) A new strategy for edible vegetable oil production. Lipid Technol 25(1):11–13

Vaidya B, Choe E (2011) Effects of seed roasting on tocopherols, carotenoids, and oxidation in mustard seed oil during heating. J Am Oil Chem Soc 88(1):83–90

Van Hoed V (2010) Phenolic compounds in seed oils. Lipid Technol 22(11):247–249

Van Hoed V, De Clercq N, Echim C, Andjelkovic M, Leber E, Dewettinck K et al (2009) Berry seeds: a source of specialty oils with high content of bioactives and nutritional value. J Food Lipids 16(1):33–49

Velasco L, Rojas-Barros P, Fernández-Martínez JM (2005) Fatty acid and tocopherol accumulation in the seeds of a high oleic acid castor mutant. Ind Crop Prod 22(3):201–206

Venkata KCN, Bagchi D, Bishayee A (2017) A small plant with big benefits: Fenugreek (trigonella foenum-graecum linn.) for disease prevention and health promotion. Mol Nutr Food Res 61:6

Verghese M, Boateng J, Walker LT (2011) Flax seed (linum usitatissimum) fatty acids. In: Watson RR, Patel VB (eds) Nuts and seeds in health and disease prevention. Academic Press, San Diego, pp 487–498

Vesper H, Schmelz E-M, Nikolova-Karakashian MN, Dillehay DL, Lynch DV, Merrill AH (1999) Sphingolipids in food and the emerging importance of sphingolipids to nutrition. J Nutr 129(7):1239–1250

Vilkhu K, Mawson R, Simons L, Bates D (2008) Applications and opportunities for ultrasound assisted extraction in the food industry—a review. Innov Food Sci Emerg Technol 9(2):161–169

Vivancos M, Moreno JJ (2005) B-sitosterol modulates antioxidant enzyme response in raw 264.7 macrophages. Free Radic Biol Med 39(1):91–97

Wanasundara P, Shahidi F, Shukla V (1997) Endogenous antioxidants from oilseeds and edible oils. Food Rev Int 13(2):225–292

Wang L, Chen J, Thompson LU (2005) The inhibitory effect of flaxseed on the growth and metastasis of estrogen receptor negative human breast cancer xenograftsis attributed to both its lignan and oil components. Int J Cancer 116(5):793–798

Wang L, Weller CL (2006) Recent advances in extraction of nutraceuticals from plants. Trends Food Sci Technol 17(6):300–312

Weber N, Mukherjee KD (2006) Plant sterols and steryl esters in functional foods and nutraceuticals. In: Shahidi F (ed) Nutraceutical and specialty lipids and their co-products. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp 483–508

Willems P, ABd H (2012) Gas-assisted mechanical expression of oilseeds. In: Lebovka N, Vorobiev E, Chemat F (eds) Enhancing extraction processes in the food industry. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp 341–359

Williams D, Verghese M, Walker L, Boateng J, Shackelford L, Chawan C (2007) Flax seed oil and flax seed meal reduce the formation of aberrant crypt foci (acf) in azoxymethane-induced colon cancer in fisher 344 male rats. Food Chem Toxicol 45(1):153–159

Wu D, Meydani M, Leka LS, Nightingale Z, Handelman GJ, Blumberg JB et al (1999) Effect of dietary supplementation with black currant seed oil on the immune response of healthy elderly subjects. Am J Clin Nutr 70(4):536–543

Yoshime LT, de Melo ILP, Sattler JAG, de Carvalho EBT, Mancini-Filho J (2016) Bitter gourd (*Momordica charantia* L.) seed oil as a naturally rich source of bioactive compounds for nutraceutical purposes. Nutrire 41(1):12

Yu X, Gouyo T, Grimi N, Bals O, Vorobiev E (2016) Pulsed electric field pretreatment of rapeseed green biomass (stems) to enhance pressing and extractives recovery. Bioresour Technol 199:194–201

Yu L, Parry JW, Zhou K (2006) Fruit seed oils. In: Shahidi F (ed) Nutraceutical and specialty lipids and their co-products. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp 73–90

Yu LL, Zhou KK, Parry J (2005) Antioxidant properties of cold-pressed black caraway, carrot, cranberry, and hemp seed oils. Food Chem 91(4):723–729

Yuan G-F, Chen X-E, Li D (2014) Conjugated linolenic acids and their bioactivities: a review. Food Funct 5(7):1360–1368

Yuan C, Xie Y, Jin R, Ren L, Zhou L, Zhu M et al (2017) Simultaneous analysis of tocopherols, phytosterols, and squalene in vegetable oils by high-performance liquid chromatography. Food Anal Methods 10(11):3716–3722

Zeng X-A, Han Z, Zi Z-H (2010) Effects of pulsed electric field treatments on quality of peanut oil. Food Control 21(5):611–614

Zhou L, Lin X, Abbasi AM, Zheng B (2016) Phytochemical contents and antioxidant and antiproliferative activities of selected black and white sesame seeds. BioMed Res Int 2016:8495630

Zlatanov MD (1999) Lipid composition of Bulgarian chokeberry, black currant and rose hip seed oils. J Sci Food Agric 79(12):1620–1624

Nutritional and Bioactive Profiles of Sprouted Seeds of Mangrove Wild Legume *Canavalia cathartica*

Dorothy D. Anita and Kandikere R. Sridhar

Introduction

Continues increase in population resulted in high demand for food leading to outpace the rate of food production from agricultural lands and oceans. Owing to insufficiency in food supply, the hungry population in developing countries has raised by 1% for every 2–2.5% increase in prices by mismatching purchase power and cost of food commodities (Gahukar 2009). In addition to inadequate food supply, population in the developing countries of tropical region are facing protein-energy malnutrition (PEM) due to overdependence on cereal-based diets, scarcity of fertile farmland and degradation of natural resources (FAO 2000). One of the possible avenues to fulfil the demands for protein-energy requirements is to depend on indigenous or underutilized or traditional wild legumes as evidenced by the African wild legumes (Ezeagu et al. 1996; Petzke et al. 1997; Bhat and Karim 2009). Exploring the wild legumes with promising quantity of proteins, fibre, minerals, essential amino acids, essential fatty acids, vitamins and nutraceuticals would strengthen the nutrition, health and food security at least at the regional level. The traditional knowledge of tribals or local people in exploitation of wild legumes as source of food is utmost importance for popularization and invention of future food source.

Canavalia cathartica is one of the common wild legumes in southwest coast of India (Rao and Suresh 2001; Rao and Sherieff 2002; Seena and Sridhar 2006; Seena et al. 2007). The landrace of *C. cathartica* exits in mangroves differs from that of coastal sand dunes of Southwest India (Seena et al. 2007). Nutritional and antinutritional qualities of seeds, ripened beans, repined split beans and tender pods of *C. cathartica* distributed in coastal regions have been studied by various

D. D. Anita
Department of Zoology, St. Aloysius College, Mangalore, Karnataka, India

K. R. Sridhar (✉)
Department of Biosciences, Mangalore University, Mangalore, Karnataka, India

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_11

investigators (Seena and Sridhar 2006; Bhagya and Sridhar 2007; Bhagya et al. 2006; D'Cunha 2009; Sridhar et al. 2016). Ripened split beans of *C. cathartica* as well as *C. maritima* serve as nutritional source for local dwellers and fishermen community in the Southwest India (Sridhar et al. 2016). In addition, the ripened split beans are endowed with bioactive components and antioxidant potential capable to serve as good nutraceutical source (Shreelalitha et al. 2018).

Germination of seeds has been considered as one of the nutritionally beneficial processes. For instance, sprouting edible legume seeds significantly increases the proteins (Osman 2007; Alonso et al. 2000; Mubarak 2005), vitamin C (Riddoch et al. 1998), protein digestibility (Schelze et al. 1997; Alonso et al. 2000; Shimelis and Rakshit 2007; Ghavidel and Prakash 2007; Sangronis and Machado 2007) and improves the sensory attributes of the food product (Vanderstoep 1981; Deshpande et al. 1984). In addition, sprouted seeds confer other advantages like decreased total/resistant starch (Urbano et al. 1995), decreased nitrogen-free extractives owing to induction of amylolytic enzymes (Osman 2007), decreased/knockoff nonprotein amino acid canavanine (Bell 1960; Rosenthal 1970; Nakatsu et al. 1996) and decreased antinational components (e.g. alkaloids, phytates, trypsin inhibitors and α-galactosidases) (Muzquiz et al. 1998; Trugo et al. 2000). Seed germination shortens the cooking time, cooking enhances the protein digestibility and decreases the antinutritional components (Trugo et al. 2000). In view of inadequate information on the impact of germination of *C. cathartica* seeds, the present chapter focuses on the nutritional and bioactive potential of germinated seeds collected from mangroves of Southwest India.

Seed Samples and Processing

Seeds from the dry pods of *Canavalia cathartica* Thouars from five locations of the Nethravathi mangroves, Mangalore, Southwest India (12°50′ N, 74°49′ E), were harvested during the post-monsoon season (February–April). Healthy seeds were separated in the laboratory and sun-dried for 2 days, and seed characteristics were studied. The hilum portion of the seed was mechanically scarified to break the dormancy and allowed to germinate in five sets on the wet cotton until the radical emerged about 1–1.5 cm (~4–5 days). The seed coat was removed, and each set was divided in to two parts. The first part was sun-dried until the moisture decreases below 10% (3–4 days), while the second part was cooked in a pressure cooker (6.5 L; Deluxe stainless steel; *TTK* Prestige™, Prestige Ltd., India) with freshwater (1.3 v/v) followed by sun-drying. The dried uncooked and cooked germinated seeds were powdered (Wiley mill, mesh # 30), and the flour was stored in airtight containers in refrigerator for analysis.

Assessment of Nutritional and Bioactive Components

Proximate composition like moisture, ash, total lipids, crude fibre (AOAC 1995), crude protein (Humphries 1956), carbohydrates (Müller and Tobin 1980), starch (Sadasivam and Manickam 1992) and calorific value (Ekanayake et al. 1999) were assessed. Minerals such as sodium, potassium, calcium, phosphorus, magnesium, iron, copper, zinc and manganese were assessed according to the AOAC (1995). The amino acids (Brand et al. 1994; Hofmann et al. 1997, 2003), protein fractions (Humphries 1956; Gheyasuddin et al. 1970) and nonprotein nitrogen (Humphries 1956; Sadasivam and Manickam 1992) were assessed by different methods. The in vitro protein digestibility (Akeson and Stahmann 1964), essential amino acid (EAA) score, protein digestibility corrected to amino acid score (PDCAAS) and protein efficiency ratio (PER) (Alsmeyer et al. 1974; FAO-WHO 1991, 1998) were assessed or calculated by standard methodology and formulae.

Bioactive components like total phenolics (Rosset et al. 1982), tannins (Burns 1971), canavanine (D'Cunha and Sridhar 2010), trypsin inhibition activity (Kakade et al. 1974) and hemagglutinin activity against human erythrocytes (Occenã et al. 2007) were assessed by different methods.

Significant difference in nutritional and bioactive components between uncooked and cooked germinated seeds was assessed based on the *t*-test using Statistica version # 8.0 (StatSoft Inc. 2008).

Nutritional Composition

Seed Qualities

The wild legume *C. cathartica* chosen in the present study produces considerable quantity of seeds in mangrove habitats. The whole seeds are large with L-B ratio 1.44, and mass of cotyledons is up to 72.1% that facilitates easy handling (Table 1). Germination of seed followed by thermal treatment provides additional information for optimal use in food products owing to adequate quantity of proteins, carbohydrates, energy and low lipid content.

Proximal Qualities

The moisture content in uncooked and cooked geminated seeds is less than 9% with significant difference ($p < 0.05$) (Table 2). The crude protein significantly decreased on cooking (34.4 vs. 30.2%) ($p < 0.01$), so also the starch content (99.9 vs. 50.9 mg/100 g) ($p < 0.001$). The total lipid (2.7 vs. 3.3 g/100 g; $p < 0.001$) and

Table 1 Physical characteristics of dry seeds of *Canavalia cathartica* of mangroves

Dry weight	
Seed (g/seed)	0.86 ± 0.12 (100%)
Cotyledon (g/seed)	0.62 ± 0.09 (72.1%)
Coat (g/seed)	0.24 ± 0.03 (27.9%)
Dimension	
Length (cm)	1.72 ± 0.11
Width (cm)	1.21 ± 0.16
Thickness (cm)	0.84 ± 0.07
Hilum (cm)	1.10 ± 0.11
L-B ratio[a]	1.44 ± 0.20

$n = 20$; mean ± SD
[a]Length-breadth ratio

Table 2 Proximate composition of germinated seeds of *Canavalia cathartica* of mangroves on dry weight basis

	Uncooked	Cooked
Moisture (g/100 g)	8.01 ± 0.32*	7.34 ± 0.29
Crude protein (g/100 g)	34.37 ± 0.44**	30.21 ± 0.88
Crude lipid (g/100 g)	2.65 ± 0.10	3.32 ± 0.09***
Crude fibre (g/100 g)	2.02 ± 0.25	2.54 ± 0.35
Ash (g/100 g)	3.88 ± 0.51	3.89 ± 0.62
Carbohydrates (g/100 g)	57.08 ± 1.70	60.14 ± 1.62*
Starch (mg/100 g)	99.9 ± 3.44***	50.85 ± 0.90
Calorific value (kJ/100 g)	1627 ± 29	1634 ± 18

$n = 5$; mean ± SD; *t*-test: *$p < 0.05$, **$p < 0.01$, ***$p < 0.001$

carbohydrates (57.1 vs. 60.1 g/100 g; $p < 0.05$) were significantly increased on cooking. The crude fibre, ash and calorific value of uncooked seeds are not significantly altered on cooking.

The crude protein content of germinated seeds of *C. cathartica* is higher than seeds of many underutilized edible legumes like winged bean (*Neonotonia wightii*) (Viswanathan et al. 2001), velvet bean (*Mucuna monosperma*), green gram (*Phaseolus aureus*), black gram (*Phaseolus mungo*, *P. lunatus* and *P. vulgaris*) (Gupta and Wagle 1978; Baudoin and Maquet 1999; Trugo et al. 2000), pigeon pea (*Cajanus cajan*) (Nwokolo 1987), chickpea (*Cicer arietinum*) (Khan et al. 1979; Jambunathan and Singh 1980), mung bean, cowpea (*Vigna radiata* and *V. unguiculata*) (Khan et al. 1979; Nwokolo and Oji 1985) and thermally treated gila beans (*Entada scandens*) (Vadivel et al. 2008) (30.2 vs. 19.1–23.3%). The crude protein content of germinated seeds is higher than germinated seeds of jack bean (*Canavalia ensiformis*) (34.4 vs. 20%) (Akpapunam and Sefa-Dedeh 1997) and four cowpea cultivars of Nigeria (*Vigna unguiculata*) (34.4 vs. 21.7–26.6%) (Giami et al. 2001).

The total lipids in cooked seeds by Soxhlet extraction is higher than dry seeds and germinated seeds of coastal sand dune landrace (3.3 vs. 1.3–2.7%) (Arun et al. 2003; D'Cunha et al. 2009) but lower than many wild legumes and edible legumes

(e.g. *Atylosia scarabaeoides*, *Canavalia gladiata*, *Lablab purpureus*, *Neonotonia wightii, Sesbania bispinosa* and *Vigna trilobata*) (3.3 vs. 4.6–12.3%) (Arinathan et al. 2003; Pugalenthi et al. 2004).

The crude fibre in germinated seeds increased on cooking (2 vs. 2.5%; $p > 0.05$), which is higher than roasted and cooked seeds of mangrove *C. cathartica* but lower than other *Canavalia* spp. (*C. ensiformis*, *C. gladiata* and *C. maritima*: 8.5–17.43%) (Bressani et al. 1987). The crude fibre content is lower than the four varieties of germinated Nigerian cowpea (2 vs. 2.6–3.6%) (Giami et al. 2001). Although low fibre diets are nutritionally appreciable in improvement of digestibility by trapping less proteins and carbohydrates (Balogun and Fetuga 1986), the high fibre in diet is known for several health benefits (e.g. lowering blood cholesterol and reducing risk of large bowel cancer) (Anderson et al. 1995; Salvin et al. 1997).

The carbohydrates in germinated seeds are significantly increased cooking ($p < 0.05$), which is higher than *C. maritima* of coastal sand dunes (57.1–60.1 vs. 50.5%) (Seena et al. 2005) and edible legumes like peanuts (*Arachis hypogea*) and soybean (*Glycine max*) (57.1–60.1 vs. 20.9–26.1%) (Rao et al. 1999). It is also higher than three germinated Nigerian cowpea varieties (57.1 vs. 53.9–55.4%) (Giami et al. 2001). The high quantity of carbohydrates in seeds is helpful in combating the intestinal cancer and responsible for lowering the glycemic index leading to prevention of type II diabetes (Venn and Mann 2004). The quantity of starch was low in germinated seeds and significantly decreased on cooking. The starch content in seeds is known to provide desired texture to the processed foods.

The calorific value of germinated seeds did not significantly vary on cooking (1627 vs. 1634 kJ/100 g; $p > 0.05$), which is higher than edible legumes (1358–1426 kJ/100 g) as well as wild legumes (e.g. *Mucuna pruriens* and *Entada scandens*: 1516–1541 kJ/100 g) (Vadivel and Pugalenthi 2007; Vadivel et al. 2008).

Mineral Composition

Among the nine minerals assessed, the calcium content is highest in uncooked seeds followed by magnesium, phosphorus, potassium and sodium (Table 3). Except for phosphorus, copper and zinc, rest of the minerals decreased significantly on cooking. The Na-K and Ca-P ratios ranged between 0.26–0.38 and 1.39–1.43, respectively. Unlike non-germinated seeds, germinated cooked seeds did not drain the minerals severely on cooking (Seena et al. 2006). Except for copper, none of the minerals fulfilled the NRC-NAS (1989) stipulated pattern for adults. It is interesting to note that the mineral content of germinated seeds of mangrove *C. cathartica* is lower compared to the coastal sand dune landrace (D'Cunha et al. 2009). As seen in cooked seeds, seed roasting also did not decrease the minerals in *C. cathartica* (Seena et al. 2006). However, the Na-K and Ca-P ratios are desirable because low Na-K ratio (<1) is known to control high blood pressure (Yusuf et al. 2007) and high Ca-P ratio (>1) prevents the loss of calcium in urine as well as restores calcium in bones (Shills and Young 1988).

Table 3 Mineral composition of germinated seeds of *Canavalia cathartica* of mangroves on dry weight basis (mg/100 g)

	Uncooked	Cooked	Dietary allowance[a]
Sodium	50.71 ± 6.31***	29.37 ± 4.27	500
Potassium	133.17 ± 16.59**	110.81 ± 14.42	2000
Calcium	222 ± 27.64*	200.65 ± 26.10	800
Phosphorus	155.07 ± 19.31	144.86 ± 18.84	800
Magnesium	160.52 ± 19.99**	100.65 ± 13.09	280–350
Iron	7.32 ± 1.01*	6.65 ± 0.87	10
Copper	1.52 ± 0.20	1.39 ± 0.18	1.5–3
Zinc	5.35 ± 0.67	5 ± 0.65	15
Manganese	1.37 ± 0.17**	1.11 ± 0.14	2–5
Na-K ratio	0.38	0.26	0.25
Ca-P ratio	1.43	1.39	1.00

$n = 5$, mean ± SD; t-test: *$p < 0.05$, **$p < 0.01$, ***$p < 0.001$
[a]NRC-NAS 1989 Pattern for adults

Amino Acid Composition

Among the amino acids, the glutamic acid is highest followed by aspartic acid and leucine in uncooked as well as cooked seeds, while tryptophan is not detectable (Table 4). Cooking significantly increased all amino acids except for glutamic acid. The EAA ratio of cystine + methionine, leucine, tyrosine + phenylalanine and lysine in uncooked seeds and cystine + methionine, tyrosine + phenylalanine and lysine in cooked seeds are below 100. Overall, the amino acid profile of cooked seeds is better than uncooked seeds. Based on the EAA score, threonine, valine, isoleucine, leucine and histidine are comparable or higher than FAO-WHO (1991) recommended pattern for adults. Except for sulphur amino acids, other EAA are comparable to seeds of soybean, rice and germinated soybeans (Livsmedelsverk 1988; Bau et al. 1994; Trugo et al. 2000). However, the amino acid profile of uncooked as well as cooked germinated seeds of *C. cathartica* of coastal sand dunes is higher than that of mangrove landrace (D'Cunha et al. 2009).

Protein Bioavailability

The total proteins decreased significantly in cooked seeds (29.5 vs. 26.2%) ($p < 0.001$) (Table 5). The albumins constituted the major protein fraction in uncooked (62.4%) as well as cooked (69.2%) seeds without significant difference ($p > 0.05$). The globulins and glutelins decreased drastically on cooking (5 vs. 1.2%) ($p < 0.001$). However, in uncooked seeds the prolamins ($p < 0.01$) and glutelins ($p < 0.001$) are significantly high. The total protein content of uncooked and cooked germinated seeds (26.2–29.5%) is comparable with dry seeds of coastal sand dunes

Table 4 Amino acid composition of germinated seeds of *Canavalia cathartica* of mangroves on dry weight basis (g/100 g protein)

	Uncooked	Cooked	Soybean[a]	Rice[b]	FAO-WHO Pattern[c]
Glutamic acid	15.03 ± 0.16***	11.50 ± 0.28			
Aspartic acid	9.02 ± 0.10	9.50 ± 0.23**			
Serine	4.18 ± 0.05	4.74 ± 0.12***			
Threonine	3.54 ± 0.04 (104.1)	3.92 ± 0.10*** (105.3)	3.8	3.2	3.4
Proline	2.92 ± 0.03	3.27 ± 0.08***			
Alanine	3.33 ± 0.04	3.82 ± 0.09***			
Glycine	2.98 ± 0.03	3.42 ± 0.08***			
Valine	3.60 ± 0.04 (102.9)	4.15 ± 0.10*** (118.6)	4.6	6.6	3.5
Cystine	0.70 ± 0.01	0.81 ± 0.07***	1.7	1.2	2.5[d]
Methionine	0.26 ± 0.003 (38.4)[d]	0.34 ± 0.01*** (46)[d]	1.2	2.6	
Isoleucine	3.18 ± 0.04 (113.6)	3.66 ± 0.09*** (130.7)	4.6	4.3	2.8
Leucine	5.93 ± 0.07 (89.9)	6.79 ± 0.17*** (102.9)	7.7	8.2	6.6
Tyrosine	2.92 ± 0.03	3.26 ± 0.08***	1.2–3.4	3.7	6.3[e]
Phenylalanine	3.30 ± 0.04 (98.7)[e]	3.78 ± 0.09*** (88.9)[e]	1.29–4.8	5.1	
Tryptophan	BDL	BDL	0–1.2	1.3	1.1
Lysine	4.33 ± 0.05 (74.7)	4.99 ± 0.12*** (86)	6.1	3.7	5.8
Histidine	2.13 ± 0.02 (112.1)	2.22 ± 0.05* (116.8)	2.5	2.4	1.9
Arginine	3.61 ± 0.04	4.28 ± 0.11***			

$n = 5$, mean ± SD; EAA score in parenthesis; *t*-test: *$p < 0.05$; **$p < 0.01$, ***$p < 0.001$
[a]Bau et al., 1994; [b]Livsmedelsverk 1988; [c]FAO-WHO 1991 pattern for adults; [d]cystine + methionine; [e]Tyrosine + phenylalanine

(*C. cathartica*: 28.3%; *C. maritima*, 29.3%) (Seena et al. 2005, 2006) and exceeded than *Psophocarpus* (15.2%) (Viswanathan et al. 2001), *Canavalia gladiata* (20.8%), *C. ensiformis* (Rajaram and Janardhanan 1992) and *Cassia floribunda* (16.3–17.7%) (Vadivel and Janardhanan 2001). The total protein content is more than the germinated seeds of *C. cathartica* of coastal sand dunes (26.2–29.5 vs. 8.4–19.8% (D'Cunha et al. 2009). Among the protein fractions, albumins are highest followed by globulins, while in dry seeds, it was opposite (Seena et al. 2006). The albumins of germinated seeds did not decrease significantly on cooking (18.4 vs. 18.1%). In addition, the A-G ratio drastically increased in cooked seeds (3.7 vs. 15) depicts lowering or elimination of antinutritional factors. As the albumins are known to be rich in sulphur amino acids and other EAA (Baudoin and Maquet 1999), there seems to be significant raise of several EAA in cooked seeds (see Table 6).

Table 5 Protein fractions and nonprotein nitrogen of germinated seeds of *Canavalia cathartica* of mangroves on dry weight basis (g/100 g)

	Uncooked	Cooked
Total proteins	29.54 ± 0.57** (100)	26.15 ± 0.62 (100)
Albumins	18.42 ± 0.01 (62.36)	18.10 ± 0.20 (69.22)
Globulins	4.99 ± 0.29** (16.89)	1.21 ± 0.07 (4.63)
Prolamins	1.15 ± 0.02 (3.89)	3.40 ± 0.29* (13.08)
Glutelins	4.96 ± 0.27** (16.89)	3.42 ± 0.31 (13.08)
A-G ratio[a]	3.69	14.96
Nonprotein nitrogen	4.61 ± 0.23**	3.62 ± 0.14

$n = 5$, mean ± SD; % in parenthesis; *t*-test, *$p < 0.01$; **$p < 0.001$
[a]Albumin-globulin ratio

Table 6 In vitro protein digestibility (IVPD)

	Fresh	Cooked
IVPD (%)	56.88 ± 4.04	63.89 ± 2.41*
PDCAAS[a]		
Threonine	59.22	73.66
Valine	58.51	75.76
Cystine + methionine	21.84	29.39
Isoleucine	64.64	83.51
Leucine	51.11	65.73
Tryptophan	0	0
Tyrosine + phenylalanine	56.16	71.09
Lysine	42.46	54.97
Histidine	63.77	74.65
PER[b]		
PER_1	1.88	2.56
PER_2	1.92	2.27
PER_3	0.61	1.02

$n = 5$, mean ± SD; *t*-test, *$p < 0.05$ and protein digestibility corrected amino acid score (PDCAAS) and protein efficiency ratio (PER) of germinated seeds of *Canavalia cathartica* of mangroves
[a]Calculated according to FAO-WHO, 1991; [b]calculated according to Alsmeyer et al., 1974

The IVPD is significantly higher in cooked than in uncooked seeds (63.9 vs. 56.9%) ($p < 0.05$) (Table 6). Increase in PDCAAS in cooked seeds is evident in almost all EAA except for tryptophan. The PER is also substantially increased in cooked seeds. The IVPD of cooked germinated seeds of mangrove *C. cathartica* is lower than coastal sand dune landrace (63.9 vs. 71.7%) (D'Cunha et al. 2009), but it is higher than the

Table 7 Antinutritional and nutraceutical components of germinated seeds of *Canavalia cathartica* on dry weight basis

	Fresh	Cooked
Total phenolics (g/100 g)	2.06 ± 0.36* (100)	1.02 ± 0.12 (49.52)
Tannins (g/100 g)	0.001 ± 0.0001* (100)	0.0004 ± 0.0001 (40)
Canavanine (g/100 g)	0.12 ± 0.001** (100)	0.08 ± 0.001 (66.67)
Trypsin inhibition activity	NP	NP
Hemagglutinin activity (Hu/g)		
A^+	100	NA
B^+	120	40
O^+	120	NA

$n = 5$, mean ± SD; t-test: *$p < 0.01$, **$p < 0.001$; % in parenthesis; NP, not present, NA, no agglutination

velvet bean (*Mucuna pruriens*) (63.9 vs. 49.7) (Bhat and Sridhar 2008). Significant increase in IVPD between uncooked and cooked seeds depicts partial elimination or inactivation of antinutritional factors (Poel et al. 1991). The IVPD in defatted soybean flours was also linked with decreased protein-dependent antinutrients (e.g. trypsin and chymotrypsin) by Abu-Tarboush (1998). In our study, the IVPD of cooked germinated seeds increased owing to lack of trypsin inhibitors and significant decrease of other antinutritional factors (e.g. total phenolics, tannins, canavanine and lectins) (Cheryan 1980; Reddy et al. 1985) (see Table 7). Due to increased IVPD, the PDCAAS is also raised in EAA except for tryptophan. Determination of PER is one of the important measures to evaluate the protein quality. Friedman (1996) has classified proteins into three groups based on PER (poor, <1.5; moderate, 1.5–2; high >2). In our study, PER_1 and PER_2 in cooked germinated seeds are high (2.27–2.56), while PER_3 is relatively poor (1.02). However, the average of PER belongs to the moderate category (1.95). It is possible to uplift the PER in cooked germinated seeds of *C. cathartica* through blending suitable flours depending on the type of food product.

Fatty Acids

Extraction of lipids from uncooked and cooked germinated seeds of mangrove *C. cathartica* by hot-extraction (Soxhlet) (AOAC 1995) and cold-extraction (chloroform-methanol-water) (Bligh and Dyer 1959) methods showed difference in fatty acid methyl esters (FAMEs) (Anita et al. 2014). On evaluation of FAMES (Padua-Resurreccion and Banzon 1979; Nareshkumar 2007), lauric, myristic, arachidic and palmitoleic acids exceeded the quantities present in soybean on hot-extraction (Wahnon et al. 1988; Cho 1989). In both methods oleic, linoleic and linolenic acids were higher in germinated seeds than in cooked seeds. The cold-extraction resulted in favourable ratios of TUFA/TSFA, C14:0 + C15:0 + (C16:0/C18:0) and ω-6/ω-3

(Simopoulos 2002). Uncooked and cooked germinated seeds in both methods of extraction resulted in ω-6/ω-3 ratio ranging from 2.2 to 3.1. Those food stuffs possessing a ratio 2.5 are known to reduce the cell proliferation of colorectal cancer, while a ratio between 2 and 3 is known to suppress the inflammation by rheumatoid arthritis.

Bioactive Components

Among the antinutritional or nutraceutical components, total phenolics ($p < 0.01$), tannins ($p < 0.01$) and canavanine ($p < 0.001$) were significantly decreased on cooking, while seeds were devoid of trypsin inhibition activity (Table 7). The hemagglutinin activity was completely eliminated in blood groups A^+ and O^+, while it decreased substantially against blood group B^+. The canavanine content in germinated seeds is very low compared to *C. gladiata* and coastal sand dune *C. cathartica* (0.1 vs. 2.5–5.1%) (Ekanayake et al. 2007; D'Cunha 2009) may be due to impact of germination. Its concentration in uncooked and cooked germinated seeds is comparable to the seeds of *Vicia articulata* and *V. ervilia* (0.08–0.12 vs. 0.05–0.3%), which has been considered nutritionally safe/beneficial (Enneking and Wink 2000). Cooking tender pods, dry seeds and germinated seeds significantly decreased the canavanine content (D'Cunha 2009). Total phenolics and tannins are well-known antioxidants (Hertog et al. 1997; Hagerman et al. 1998) while the canavanine as an anticancer agent (Swaffar et al. 1994). Usually the globulins of seeds consist of lectins, in which decreased of more than fourfold in cooked germinated seeds (5 vs. 1.2%) might be the major cause for drastic reduction of hemagglutinin activity.

Conclusion

In view of protein-energy malnutrition in developing countries, there is an urgent need to identify indigenous wild food resources with desired traits for human nutrition. Recently, three landraces of coastal *Canavalia* gained importance, and their seeds have been evaluated for feasibility for human consumption. Based on the evaluation of seeds (dry, sprouted and ripened) and ripened split beans, the latter devoid of seed coat and testa on cooking showed suitable nutritional qualities (high protein, high energy, low fat, essential fatty acids, essential amino acids and high protein bioavailability). Similar to the ripened split beans, the cooked germinated seeds of mangrove landrace *Canavalia cathartica* endowed with most of the desired qualities suitable as human diet. In addition, germination has eliminated the antinutritional factors or reduced below threshold level. In addition to nutritional advantages, the cooked germinated seeds of *C. cathartica* seem serving as nutraceutical in preventing lifestyle-dependent human ailments. Future studies need to focus on the cultivation of coastal landraces of *Canavalia* under different agroclimatic conditions to fulfil soil binding, soil quality improvement and green manure and to supplement livestock fodder.

Acknowledgement Authors are grateful to the Mangalore University for permission to carry out this study in the Department of Biosciences. The first author (DDA) acknowledges the University Grants Commission, New Delhi, India and Mangalore University for the award of Junior Research Fellowship under the scheme Research Fellowship in Sciences for Meritorious Students. The corresponding author (KRS) acknowledges the award University Grants Commission-Basic Science Research Faculty Fellowship by the University Grants Commission, New Delhi, India.

References

Abu-Tarboush HM (1998) Irradiation inactivation of some antinutritional factors in plant seeds. J Agric Food Chem 46:2698–2708

Akeson WR, Stahmann MA (1964) A pepsin pancreatin digest index of protein quality. J Nutr 83:257–261

Akpapunam MA, Sefa-Dedeh S (1997) Some physicochemical properties and anti-nutritional factors of raw, cooked and germinated jack bean (*Canavalia ensiformis*). Food Chem 59:121–125

Alonso R, Aguirre A, Marzo F (2000) Effects of extrusion and traditional processing methods on antinutrients and *in vitro* digestibility of protein and starch in faba and kidney beans. Food Chem 68:159–165

Alsmeyer RH, Cunningham AE, Happich ML (1974) Equations predict PER from amino acid analysis. Food Technol 28:34–38

Anderson JW, Johnstone BM, Cook-Newell ME (1995) Meta-analysis of the effects of soy protein intake on serum lipids. New Eng J Med 333:276–282

Anita DD, Sridhar KR, Kumar SN (2014) Total lipids and fatty acid methyl esters of germinated seeds of mangrove wild legume. Curr Nutr Food Sci 10:187–195

AOAC (1995) Official methods of analysis, 16th edn. Association of Official Analytical Chemists, Washington, DC

Arinathan V, Mohan VR, De Britto AJ (2003) Chemical composition of certain tribal pulses in South India. Int J Food Sci Nutr 54:209–217

Arun AB, Sridhar KR, Raviraja NS, Schmidt E, Jung K (2003) Nutritional and antinutritional components of *Canavalia* spp. seeds from the west coast sand dunes of India. Pl Foods Hum Nutr 58:1–13

Balogun AM, Fetuga BL (1986) Chemical composition of some underexploited leguminous crop seeds in Nigeria. J Agric Food Chem 34:189–192

Bau HM, Vallaume C, Lin CF, Evard J, Quemener B, Nicolas JP, Mejean L (1994) Effect of solid state fermentation using *Rhizopus oligosporus* sp. T-3 on elimination of antinutritional substances and modification of biochemical constituents of defatted rape seed meal. J Sci Food Agric 65:315–322

Baudoin JP, Maquet A (1999) Improvement of protein and amino acid content in seeds of food legumes – a case study in *Phaseolus*. Biotech Agron Soc Environ 3:220–224

Bell EA (1960) Canavanine in the Leguminosae. Biochem J 75:618–620

Bhagya B, Sridhar KR (2007) Composition and nutritive value of tender pods of mangrove wild legume *Canavalia cathartica* of southwest coast of India. Trop Subtrop Agroecosys 7:177–191

Bhagya B, Sridhar KR, Seena S, Young C-C, Arun AB, Nagaraja KV (2006) Nutritional qualities and *in vitro* starch digestibility of ripened *Canavalia cathartica* beans of coastal sand dunes of southern India. Elec J Environ Agric Food Chem 5:1241–1252

Bhat R, Karim AA (2009) Exploring the nutritional potential of wild and underutilized legumes. Compre Rev Food Sci Food Saf 8:305–331

Bhat R, Sridhar KR (2008) Effect of electron beam irradiation on the quality characteristics of an underutilized economically valued tropical legume *Mucuna pruriens* L. DC. Electr J Environ Agric Food Chem 7:2565–2581

Bligh EG, Dyer WJ (1959) A rapid method of total lipid extraction and purification. Can J Biochem Physiol 37:911–917

Brand WA, Tegtmeyer AR, Hilkert A (1994) Compound-specific isotope analysis, extending towards 15N/14N and 13C/12C. Org Geochem 21:585–594

Bressani R, Brenes RS, Garcia A, Elias LG (1987) Chemical composition, amino acid content and protein quality of *Canavalia* spp. seeds. J Sci Food Agric 40:17–23

Burns R (1971) Methods for estimation of tannins in grain sorghum. Agron J 63:511–512

Cheryan M (1980) Phytic acid interactions in food systems. Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr 13:297–335

Cho BHS (1989) Soybean oil: its nutritional value and physical role related to polyunsaturated fatty acid metabolism. American Soybean Association Technical Bulletin, Creve Couer #4HN6

D'Cunha M (2009) Ecological and biochemical studies on Sand Dune Canavalia of West Coast of India. Ph.D. thesis in Biosciences, Mangalore University, Mangalore, India

D'Cunha M, Sridhar KR (2010) L-canavanine and L-arginine in two wild legumes of the genus *Canavalia*. Inst Integr Omics Appl Biotechnol J 1:29–33

D'Cunha M, Sridhar KR, Young C-C, Arun AB (2009) Nutritional evaluation of germinated seeds of coastal sand dune wild legume *Canavalia cathartica*. Int Food Res J 16:249–260

Deshpande SS, Sathe SK, Salunkhe DK (1984) Dry beans of *Phaseolus*: a review, part 3. Process CRC Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr 21:137–195

Ekanayake S, Jansz ER, Nair BM (1999) Proximate composition, mineral and amino acid content of mature *Canavalia gladiata* seeds. Food Chem 66:115–119

Ekanayake S, Skog K, Asp NG (2007) Canavanine content in sword beans (Canavalia *gladiata*): analysis and effect of processing. Food Chem Toxicol 45:797–803

Enneking D, Wink M (2000) Towards the elimination of anti-nutritional factors in grain legumes. In: Knight R (ed) Current plant science and biotechnology in agriculture, vol 34. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, pp 375–384

Ezeagu IE, Metges CC, Proll J, Petzke KJ, Akinsoyinu AO (1996) Chemical composition and nutritive value of some wild-gathered tropical plant seeds. Food Nutr Bull 17:275–278

FAO (2000) Food insecurity: when people live with hunger and fear starvation. FAO, Rome

FAO-WHO (1991) Protein quality evaluation: reports of a joint FAO-WHO expert consultation, food and nutrition paper # 51. Food and agriculture Organization of the United Nations. FAO, Rome

FAO-WHO (1998) Preparation and use of food-based dietary guidelines. Report of joint FAO-WHO consultation. Technical report series # 880. FAO, Geneva

Friedman M (1996) Nutritional value of proteins from different food sources – a review. J Agric Food Chem 44:6–29

Gahukar RT (2009) Food security: the challenges of climate change and bioenergy. Curr Sci 96:26–28

Ghavidel RA, Prakash J (2007) The impact of germination and dehulling on nutrients, antinutrients, in-vitro iron and calcium bioavailability and *in vitro* starch and protein digestibility of some legume seeds. LWT – Food Sci Technol 40:1292–1299

Gheyasuddin S, Cater CM, Mattil KF (1970) Preparation of a colourless sunflower protein isolate. Food Technol 24:242–243

Giami SY, Akusu MO, Emelike JN (2001) Valuation of selected food attributes of four advances lines of ungerminated and germinated Nigerian cowpea (*Vigna unguiculata* (L.) Walp.). Pl Food Hum Nutr 56:61–73

Gupta CN, Wagle DS (1978) Proximate composition and nutritive value of *Phaseolus mungoreus*. A cross between *Phaseolus mungo* and *Phaseolus aureus*. J Food Sci Technol 15:34–35

Hagerman AE, Riedl KM, Jones GA, Sovik KN, Ritchard NT, Hartfield PW, Riechel TL (1998) High molecular weight plant polyphenolics (tannins) as biological antioxidants. J Agric Food Chem 46:1887–1892

Hertog MGL, Sweetnam PM, Fehily AM, Elwood PC, Kromhout D (1997) Antioxidant flavonols and ischaemic heart disease in a Welsh population of men – the Caerphilly study. Am J Clin Nutr 65:1489–1494

Hofmann D, Gehre M, Jung K (2003) Sample preparation techniques for the determination of natural 15N/14N variations in amino acids by gas chromatography-combustion-isotope ratio mass spectrometry (GC-C-IRMS). Isotopes Environ Health Stud 39:233–244

Hofmann D, Jung K, Bender J, Gehre M, Schüürmann G (1997) Using natural isotope variations of nitrogen in plants as an early indicator of air pollution stress. J Mass Spectrom 32:855–863

Humphries EC (1956) Mineral composition and ash analysis. In: Peach K, Tracey MV (eds) Modern methods of plant analysis, vol 1. Springer, Berlin, pp 468–502

Jambunathan R, Singh U (1980) Studies on Desi and Kabuli chickpea (*Cicer arietinum*) cultivars. 1. Chemical composition. In: Proceedings of the International Workshop on Chickpea Improvement. ICRISAT, Andhra Pradesh, India, pp 61–66

Kakade ML, Rackis JJ, McGhee JE, Puski G (1974) Determination of trypsin inhibitor activity of soy products, a collaborative analysis of an improved procedure. Cereal Chem 51:376–382

Khan AM, Jacobson I, Eggum OB (1979) Nutritive value of some improved varieties of legumes. J Sci Food Agric 30:390–400

Livsmedelsverk S (1988) Energi Och Näringsämnen. The Swedish Food Administration, Stockholm

Mubarak AE (2005) Nutritional composition and antinutritional factors of mung bean seeds (Phaseolus aureus) as affected by some home traditional processes. Food Chem 89:489–495

Müller HG, Tobin G (1980) Nutrition and good processing. Croom Helm Ltd., London

Muzquiz M, Pedrosa MM, Cuadrado C, Ayet G, Burbano C, Brenes A (1998) Variation of alkaloids, alkaloid esters, phytic acid and phytase activity in germinated seeds of *Lupinus albus* and *L. luteus*. In: Jansman AJM, Hill GD, Huisman J, van der Poel AFB (eds) Recent advances of research in antinutritional factors in legume seeds and rapeseed, EAAP publication # 93. Wageningen Press, Wageningen, pp 387−−390

Nakatsu S, Matsuda M, Sakagami T, Takahashi T, Yamatato S (1996) Decomposition of canavanine in process of germination in the seeds of *Canavalia gladiata*. Seikagaku 38:67–71

Nareshkumar S (2007) Capillary gas chromatography method for fatty acid analysis of coconut oil. J Plant Crops 35:23–27

NRC-NAS (1989) Recommended dietary allowances. National Academy Press, Washington, DC

Nwokolo E (1987) Nutritional evaluation of pigeon pea meal. Pl Foods Hum Nutr 37:283–290

Nwokolo E, Oji DIM (1985) Variation in metabolizable energy content of raw or autoclaved white and brown varieties of three tropical grain legumes. Anim Food Sci Technol 13:141–146

Occenã IV, Majica E-RE, Merca FE (2007) Isolation of partial characterization of a lectin from the seeds of *Artocarpus camansi* Blanco. Asian J Plant Sci 6:757–764

Osman MA (2007) Changes in nutrient composition, trypsin inhibitor, phytates, tannins and protein digestibility of *Dolichos Lablab* seeds [*Lablab Purpureus* (L) sweet] occurring during germination. J Food Technol 5:294–299

Padua-Resurreccion AB, Banzon JA (1979) Fatty acid composition of the oil from progressively maturing bunches of coconut. Philip J Coconut Stud 4:1–15

Petzke KJ, Ezeagu IE, Proll J, Akinsoyinu AO, Metges CC (1997) Amino acid composition, available lysine content and *in vitro* protein digestibility of selected tropical crop seeds. Plant Foods Hum Nutr 50:151–162

Poel AFBV, Gravandecl S, Boer H (1991) Effect of different processing methods on the tannin content and protein digestibility of faba bean. J Anim Feed Sci Technol 33:49–58

Pugalenthi M, Vadivel V, Gurumoorthi P, Janardhanan K (2004) Comparative nutritional evaluation of little known legumes, *Tamarindus indica*, *Erythrina indica* and *Sesbania bispinosa*. Trop Subtrop Agroecosys 4:107–123

Rajaram N, Janardhanan K (1992) Nutritional and chemical evaluation of raw seeds of *Canavalia gladiata* (Jacq) DC. and *C. ensiformis* DC, the underutilized food and fodder crops in India. Plants Foods Hum Nutr 42:329–336

Rao BSN, Deosthale YG, Pant KC (1999) Nutritive value of Indian Foods. Indian Council of Medical Research, National Institute of Nutrition, India

Rao TA, Sherieff AN (2002) Coastal ecosystem of the Karnataka State, India II – Beaches. Karnataka Association for the Advancement of Science, Bangalore, India

Rao TA, Suresh PV (2001) Coastal ecosystems of the Karnataka State, India – 1. Mangroves. Karnataka Association for the Advancement of Science, Bangalore, India

Reddy NR, Pierson MD, Sathe SK, Salunkhe DK (1985) Dry bean tannins, a review of nutritional implications. J Am Oil Chem Soc 62:541–549

Riddoch CH, Mills CF, Duthie GG (1998) An evaluation of germinating beans as a source of vitamin C in refugee foods. Eur J Clin Nutr 52:115–118

Rosenthal GA (1970) Investigation of canavanine biochemistry in the jack bean, *Canavalia ensiformis* (L.) DC. 1. Canavanine utilization in the developing plant. Plant Physiol 46:273–276

Rosset J, Bärlocher F, Oertli JJ (1982) Decomposition of conifer needles and deciduous leaves in two Black Forest and two Swiss Jura streams. Int Rev Ges Hydrobiol 67:695–711

Sadasivam S, Manickam A (1992) Biochemical methods for agricultural sciences. Wiley Eastern Ltd., New Delhi

Salvin J, Jacobs DR, Marquart L (1997) Whole grain consumption and chronic disease: protective mechanisms. Nutr Canc 27:14–21

Sangronis E, Machado CJ (2007) Influence of germination on the nutritional quality of *Phaseolus vulgaris* and *Cajanus cajan*. LWT J Sci Technol 40:116–120

Schelze H, Savelkoul FH, Verstegen MW, van der Poel AF, Tamminga S, Groot NS (1997) Nutritional evaluation of biologically treated white kindly beans (*Phaseolus vulgaris* L.) in pigs: Ileal and amino acid digestibility. J Anim Sci 75:3187–3194

Seena S, Sridhar KR (2006) Nutritional and microbiological features of little known legumes, *Canavalia cathartica* Thouars and *C. maritima* Thouars of the southwest coast of India. Curr Sci 90:1638–1650

Seena S, Sridhar KR, Arun AB (2007) *Canavalia cathartica* of southwest coast of India – a neglected wild legume. Plants Gen Res Newslett 150:16–20

Seena S, Sridhar KR, Arun AB, Young C-C (2006) Effect of roasting and pressure-cooking on nutritional and protein quality of seeds of mangrove legume *Canavalia cathartica* from southwest coast of India. J Food Comp Anal 19:284–293

Seena S, Sridhar KR, Bhagya B (2005) Biochemical and biological evaluation of an unconventional legume, *Canavalia maritima* of coastal sand dunes of India. Trop Subtrop Agroecosys 5:1–14

Shills MEG, Young VR (1988) Modern nutrition in health and disease. In: Neiman DC, Buthepodorth DE, Nieman CN, Nutrition, WmC Brown Publishers, Dubugue, 276–282

Shimelis EA, Rakshit SK (2007) Effect of processing on antinutritional and in vitro protein digestibility of kidney bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris* L.) verities grown in East Africa. Food Chem 103:161–172

Shreelalitha J, Supriya P, Sridhar KR (2018) Bioactive profile of edible ripened split beans of three wild landraces of coastal Canavalia. In: Öztürk M, Hakeem KR (eds) Medicinal and aromatic plant species in human health, Phytochemistry, vol 3. Springer International, New York

Simopoulos AP (2002) The importance of the ratio of omega-6/omega-3 essential fatty acids. Biomed Pharmacother 56:365–379

Sridhar KR, Shreelalitha SJ, Supriya P, Arun AB (2016) Nutraceutical attributes of ripened split beans of three *Canavalia* landraces. J Agric Technol 12:1277–1297

StatSoft Inc. (2008) Statistica, Version # 8. StatSoft, Tulsa, OK

Swaffar DS, Ang CY, Desai PB, Rosenthal GA (1994) Inhibition of the growth of human pancreatic cancer cells by the arginine antimetabolite L-canavanine. Cancer Res 54:6045–6048

Trugo LC, Donangelo CM, Trugo NMF, Knudsen KEB (2000) Effect of heat treatment on nutritional quality of germinated legume seeds. J Agric Food Chem 48:2082–2086

Urbano G, Lopez-Jurdo M, Hernandez J, Fernandez M, Moreu MC, Frias J, Dias-Pollan C, Prodanov M, Vidal-Valverde C (1995) Nutritional assessment of raw, heated and germinated lentils. J Agric Food Chem 43:1871–1877

Vadivel V, Janardhanan K (2001) Nutritional and anti-nutritional attributers of the under-utilized legume, *Cassia floribunda* Cav. Food Chem 73:209–215

Vadivel V, Pugalenthi M (2007) Biological value and protein quality of raw and processed seeds of *Mucuna pruriens* var. *utilis*. Livestock Res Rural Dev 19:7 http://www.cipav.org.co/lrrd/lrrd19/7/vadi19097.htm

Vadivel V, Pugalenthi M, Megha S (2008) Biological evaluation of protein quality of raw and processed seeds of gila bean (*Entada scandens* Benth). Trop Subtrop Agroecosys 8:125–133

Vanderstoep J (1981) Effect of germination on the nutritive value of legumes. Food Technol 35:83–85

Venn BJ, Mann JI (2004) Cereal grains, legumes and diabetes. Eur J Clin Nutr 58:1443–1461

Viswanathan MB, Thangadurai D, Ramesh N (2001) Biochemical evaluation of *Neonotonia wightii* (Wight and Arn) Lackey (Fabaceae). Food Chem 75:275–279

Wahnon R, Mokady S, Cogan U (1988) Proceedings of 19th World Congress. International Society for Fat Research, Tokyo

Yusuf AA, Mofio BM, Ahmed AB (2007) Proximate and mineral composition of *Tamarindus indica* Linn 1753 seeds. Sci World J 2:1–4

Contribution of Jojoba (*Simmondsia chinensis*) Products in Human Health

Jameel R. Al-Obaidi

Introduction

Jojoba [*Simmondsia chinensis*, (Link) Schneider] pronounced ho-**HO**-ba is an always green, dioecious woody bush native to the desert of North and Central America (Kumar et al. 2012). The plant also has been cultivated for many years worldwide, such as in Argentina, Chile, India, Tunisia, the Palestinian territories and Egypt, due to its high commercial importance. The gender of jojoba plant can only be distinguished from their flowers. Jojoba seedlings can take more than 4 years to produce flowers. As a dioecious crop, the plant produces female and male flowers. Jojoba leaf shape helps to bring wind-borne pollens to the female flower (Fig. 1a). The oil produced from jojoba seeds which make up more than half of the plant seed is commonly known as liquid wax, which has importance in the pharmaceutical, cosmetic and lubricant industries (Cappillino et al. 2003; Al-Soqeer et al. 2012). Native Americans used the crushed dry seed oil for skin treatment and therapeutic purposes (McKeon 2016). The knowledge about the plants and its medicinal values has been transferred through Spanish missionaries during the early eighteenth century. Jojoba oil is exceptional in its molecular structure and high shelf stability under high pressure and heat conditions. Different from other plant-based oil, it has a chain of fatty acids and higher unsaturated alcohol-based esters (Jangra et al. 2014; Fouillen et al. 2013; Fouts et al. 2015; Miklaszewska and Banaś 2016). The wax formula features of jojoba oil make it capable to lasts significantly longer than other crop oils, making it an addition to any skincare product. Jojoba has scientists and agriculturists concern worldwide over the last few decades as a promising industrial crop for semiarid lands (Coates et al. 2006). However, the area used for jojoba plantation is reducing significantly due to a number of restraints (Reddy and Chikara 2010).

J. R. Al-Obaidi (✉)
Agro-Biotechnology Institute Malaysia (ABI),
C/O MARDI Headquarters, Serdang, Selangor, Malaysia

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_12

Fig. 1 (**a**) Jojoba leaves. (**b**) Jojoba fruits. (**c**) Jojoba dry seeds

The plant oil production was estimated around 1800 kg/ha (Yang et al. 2014). This plant has been planted to avert desertification issue in some parts of India, Egypt and Saudi Arabia (Ashraful et al. 2014), and for that reason, the plant may have multiple roles: medicinal, economical and environmental.

Jojoba Oil and Its Involvement in Human Health

Jojoba seeds are dark brown coffee bean-like in shape but larger in size (Fig. 1b, c). More than 60% of those seeds are golden liquid and were called "jojoba wax" or "jojoba oil". The oil composes of single esters of long-chain fatty acids and C_{20} and C_{22} alcohols, together with small triglyceride esters. Being almost glycerine-free, jojoba oil is distinctive among the rest of the plant-based oils (Sánchez et al. 2016). A summary of different medicinal, pharmacological and human health-related applications of jojoba plant is listed in Table 1. Traditionally, the Native Americans used extracts from crushed seeds to treat sunburn, wounds, renal colic, hair loss treatment, headache and sores (Ranzato et al. 2011). In comparison with hundreds of thousands of known plant species, jojoba seeds produce very unique ester-based waxy oil similar to the natural human sebaceous gland oil (Fig. 2) (Ayerza and Coates 2004) which make the oil the best candidate for skincare products (Henderson 2015). Previously, a study has revealed the existence of compounds called tocopherols in jojoba oil (Tobares et al. 2003). It has been reported that γ-tocopherol as a main basic component compose more than 79%, followed by α-tocopherol which makes up to 20% of the tocopherol compound; which is available in the form of vitamin E and helps in eliminating free radicals (El-Mallah and El-Shami 2009). It is believed that jojoba's oil molecular structure is more stable in comparison to other plant oils. As can be noticed in Fig. 2, the double bonds in jojoba oil structure are located far from each other and are uneven from the centre. In typical plant oils, the double bonds are close to each other. These close double bands may attract free radicals making these kinds of oil not suitable to be applied on the skin and difficult to manipulate (Busson-Breysse et al. 1994). This is one of the reasons for not recommending plant-based oils for skin health-related product. However, this is not the case for jojoba oil which recently reported to be involved in skin nourishment for its antioxidant, anti-ageing and prevention from free radicals (Bakry et al. 2016). Due

Table 1 Summary of the medicinal and industrial applications of jojoba (*Simmondsia chinensis*)

Plant parts or products	Applications	References
Ethanolic seed extract	Inhibit oxidative stress induced by fumonisins (mycotoxins)	Abdel-Wahhab et al. (2010)
Meal (left over after oil extraction)	Livestock feed	Bouali et al. (2008)
Oil	Bioenergy	Le Dréau et al. (2009)
Simmondsin and its derivatives	Antifungal	Abbassy et al. (2007)
Oil	Anti-inflammatory (e.g. treatment for throat inflammation, wound treatment)	Habashy et al. (2005), Ranzato et al. (2011)
Oil	Relief for headaches	Ranzato et al. (2011)
Oil and seed extracts	Antimicrobial and antifungal	Abu-Salem and Ibrahim (2014), Elnimiri and Nimir (2011), Menghani et al. (2012)
Leaves (flavonoid compounds)	Antioxidant and lipoxygenase inhibitor	Abdel-Mageed et al. (2014)
Leaves and seed coats	Antibacterial and anticancer	Al-Qizwini et al. (2014)
Oil	Lipoxygenase inhibitor	Abdul-Hafeez et al. (2014)
Simmondsin and its derivatives	Antioxidant	Al-Qizwini et al. (2014), Manoharan et al. (2016)
Oil	Pharmaceuticals	Sánchez et al. (2015)
Oil	Skincare treatment/skin health	Henderson (2015), Bakry et al. (2016)
Meal	Anti-rodent	Chaudhary and Tripathi (2015)
Oil	Antifungal/insecticidal properties	Abdel-Mageed et al. (2016)
Crude extracts	Cyclooxygenase inhibitor (anticarcinogenic)	Abdel-Mageed et al. (2016)
Oil	Free radical elimination	El-Mallah and El-Shami (2009)
Oil	Skin anti-ageing	Ainbinder and Touitou (2017), Cvačka and Vrkoslav (2016)
Oil	Replacement of sperm whale oil	Miwa et al. (1979), Wisniak (1987)
Oil	Stroke and diabetes treatment	Manoharan et al. (2016)
Oil	Anti-virus properties	Sánchez et al. (2015)
Oil	Hair health	Haskin and Aguh (2017)

to the structure of jojoba oil, it is proposed that the oil has the ability to prevent the accumulation of molecules in the first layer of the human skin which is usually affected by direct sun exposure (Ainbinder and Touitou 2017; Cvačka and Vrkoslav 2016). Large-scale production of jojoba oil started in the early 1970s last century, as an effort of finding replacement for the high-value sperm whale oil (Miwa et al. 1979; Wisniak 1987). By comparing the structures in Fig. 2, and due to the similarity between the two structures, there is no wonder why jojoba has been used for that purpose (Hill and Hofer 2009). Besides its importance in cosmetic and skincare,

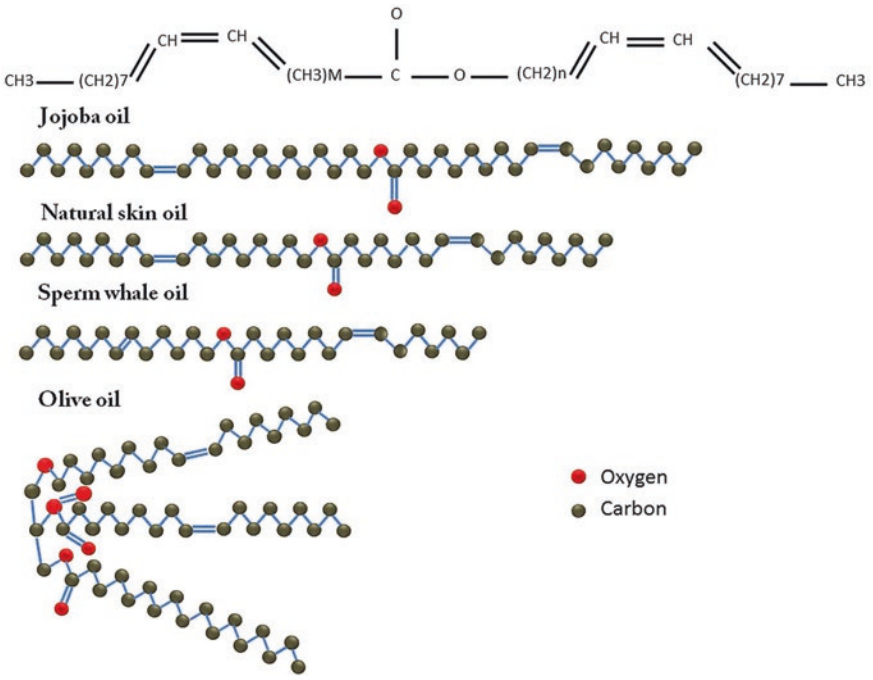


Fig. 2 Jojoba oil structure

jojoba oil also has anti-inflammatory activity (Habashy et al. 2005). The oil exhibits the anti-inflammatory activities against rat and resulted reduction in oedema and prostaglandin E2 content. Besides the oil, alcoholic seed extract showed antioxidant effects and can protect rat liver against FB1-induced hepatotoxicity. This might be due to the presence of jojobenoic acid in the seed extract (Abdel-Wahhab et al. 2016). In a recent report, phytochemical screening of jojoba oil showed antioxidant properties with potential use for inhibition and managing of many sicknesses such as stroke and diabetes (Manoharan et al. 2016). Such reports indicating the possible ability of using jojoba oil as antioxidant for treatment of some chronic diseases will open new prospects in pharmaceuticals and health-related industries; however more in-depth research on the antioxidant properties and more trail on animals or cell lines are needed to confirm these claims. Jojobyl alcohols (11-eicosenol, 13-docosenol and 15-tetracosenol) are produced from jojoba oil using biorefinery process. This compound is produced through two-step crystallizations using waste from fish processing industry as a catalyst (Sánchez et al. 2015). This compound has pharmaceutical and medicinal properties against viruses which make jojoba oil more valuable (Sánchez et al. 2015). Jojoba oil as carrier oil is reported to be involved in hair health (Haskin and Aguh 2017). The oil plays an important role in reducing white hair and promotes hair health by decreasing scalp dryness. In conclusion, jojoba oil has high medicinal value for its anti-inflammatory, antioxidant and potential anticancer properties. The oil is also considered very important in

human skin and health applications with an ability to heal acne by acting as a deep cleanser. As a liquid wax, it can enter deep into the hair follicle and dissolve the sebum deposits and help remove the comedone, clearing out the blockage. Eczema and psoriasis treatment also can be performed using jojoba oil-based products. Treatment of dry hand and cracked feet also can be done by applying jojoba oil which forms a waxy layer that helps the skin to keep moisture in and gives a smooth feel to the skin (Bright 2015).

The Use of Jojoba Leaves and Root Extracts in Health Applications

The most famous product when it comes to jojoba plant is the liquid wax (jojoba oil) and its derivatives. But the importance of this plant is not solely depending on the production of seed oil, but it extends to the other parts of the plant. The extract from the leaves of jojoba together with other plant extracts is reported to be used in the production of cosmetic products to treat sensitive skin stress with anti-inflammatory, cell activator agents and antioxidants due to the ability of those extracts in decreasing active oxygen molecules which promote ageing process (Tanaka et al. 2006). Leaf extract from jojoba contains many flavonoids and lignans (Abdel-Mageed et al. 2014). Alcoholic extract from the jojoba leaves is subjected to antioxidant assay with DPPH, and those results showed that ten flavonoid compounds exhibit antioxidant and lipoxygenase inhibitory effects, while lignans have shown moderate antioxidant effect (Abdel-Mageed et al. 2014). Besides the leaf extract (male and female), extract from seed shelf also exhibits antioxidant activity (using DPPH assay) (Al-Qizwini et al. 2014). The importance of this plant as a good source of phenolics in particular the flavonoid content may increase the interest of research concerning this plant and also help pharmaceutical as well as general medication industries to use this plant as a source of natural starting material. Another report had been published recently showing the importance of leaf extract and its potential pharmaceutical and medicinal properties which had been conducted by Abdul-Mageed and his group (Abdel-Mageed et al. 2016). The group found two compounds with promising cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) inhibition activities. It has been reported that COX-2 play an important role in the production of prostaglandins, apoptosis inhibition, spread of tumour cell and carcinogenesis (Wang 2005; Xu et al. 2014; Echizen et al. 2016). For that reason, COX-2 inhibitors such as jojoba leaf extract have shown potent anticancer activity by increasing apoptosis rate, decreasing angiogenesis and reducing invasiveness, which make it a decent goal in cancer treatment (Huss et al. 2002; Cao et al. 2010). Due to the link between health concerns and chemical-based food additive, there are growing demands by consumers for food product prepared with natural preservatives such as plant-based additives (Delves-Broughton 2012). That directed the research to seek of natural antimicrobials suitable for food industry. Alcoholic extract from jojoba root which

contains compound such as alkaloids, saponins and steroids showed promising antimicrobial activity against few food-borne pathogenic bacteria such as *Bacillus cereus*, *Salmonella typhimurium* and *Staphylococcus aureus* as well as two pathogenic fungi *Candida albicans* and *Aspergillus flavus*, and this suggests potential use as natural plant-based additives in food industry against the causative agent of food contamination and food spoilage (Abu-Salem and Ibrahim 2014).

Simmondsin and Its Derivatives: Contribution to Human Health

Simmondsin (2-cyanomethylene)-3 hydroxy 4,5 dimethoxycyclohexyl ß-d-glucoside) and its derivatives are molecules extracted from jojoba plant (Lievens et al. 2003). These molecules exhibit direct and indirect interaction with human health. Earlier reports showed levels of toxicity of simmondsin (Booth et al. 1974). However, many reports following that study indicate the ability of simmondsin to control animal diet and reduce food intake and control body weight (Boozer and Herron 2006; Flo et al. 1998; Tang et al. 2005). The fact that simmondsin can control appetite through oral administration has been studied widely (Lievens et al. 2003, 2009). However, there is no solid concrete conclusion about the side effect of using simmondsin products; in another word there is no answer for the question "is the use of simmondsin products safe for human?" For example, earlier reports have shown the ability to detoxify simmondsin for safer use (Banigan and Verbiscar 1980; d'Oosterlynck 1997); the ability of simmondsin to reduce lipid and prevent cancer after being administered with metabolite detoxification agents has been claimed (Wong et al. 2003). While abnormal physiological changes has been noticed when simmondsin given to Wistar rats suggesting that simmondsin not only facilitates satiation but have multiple positive and negative effects (Lievens et al. 2009). More in-depth comparative studies should be useful by comparing the simmondsin effect before and after detoxification in different doses on different host animals.

Conclusion and Perspective

Jojoba (*Simmondsia chinensis*) has an important value and great potential for commercial cultivation as a profitable crop for medicinal and pharmaceutical applications, not only because it is a source of nonedible lubricant but also a source of many metabolites with remarkable biological activities. As stated in this chapter, these compounds were extracted and isolated from different parts of jojoba. Some studies have been conducted in the past for examining medicinal, pharmacological and cosmetic uses. The importance of the plant not only comes from the unique liquid wax of the plant seed but also from the leaf extracts, roots and seed shelf.

Jojoba meal resulted from the oil extraction process from the seed contains a high protein yield. It can be used as fish male replacement.

However, regarding jojoba medicinal properties, further studies are still essential to examine important popular uses of the jojoba products and to observe jojoba detoxified compound through various in vivo and in vitro experiments. Such studies could encourage people to prioritize this plant, since many popular applications in various cosmetic and healthcare product purposes have been reported, showing a great potential of pharmacological relevance. Additionally, future phytochemical studies of this plant are important to obtain the best knowledge of the chemical composition of different extracts of the plant, in order to distinguish the actual important compounds related to healthcare and medicinal products. In conclusion, this chapter may provide visions for future research direction at both medicinal and pharmacological validations of jojoba oil/extracts and validation as a good source of bioactive compound for natural products for potential application in human health industry. Considering the fact that the plant can be cultivated in arid and semiarid areas, the expansion in plant cultivation will not affect the traditional farming practice.

Acknowledgements The author is grateful to E. I Ahmad Kamil, author also would like to thank the National Institutes of Biotechnology Malaysia (NIBM).

References

Abbassy MA, Abdelgaleil SAM, Belal A-SH, Rasoul MAAA (2007) Insecticidal, antifeedant and antifungal activities of two glucosides isolated from the seeds of Simmondsia chinensis. Ind Crop Prod 26(3):345–350. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.indcrop.2007.04.005

Abdel-Mageed WM, Bayoumi SAL, Al-wahaibi LH, Li L, Sayed HM, Abdelkader MSA et al (2016) Noncyanogenic Cyanoglucoside cyclooxygenase inhibitors from Simmondsia chinensis. Org Lett 18(8):1728–1731. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.orglett.6b00206

Abdel-Mageed WM, Bayoumi SALH, Salama AAR, Salem-Bekhit MM, Abd-Alrahman SH, Sayed HM (2014) Antioxidant lipoxygenase inhibitors from the leaf extracts of Simmondsia chinensis. Asian Pac J Trop Med 7:S521–S526. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1995-7645(14)60284-4

Abdel-Wahhab MA, Joubert O, El-Nekeety AA, Sharaf HA, Abu-Salem FM, Rihn BH (2016) Dietary incorporation of jojoba extract eliminates oxidative damage in livers of rats fed fumonisin-contaminated diet. [Fumonisin B1, natural products, health hazards, jojoba seed, liver, mycotoxins, oxidative stress]. Hepatoma Res 2(3):78–86

Abdel-Wahhab M, Sharaf H, Abou-Salem F (2010) Jojoba extract counteracts oxidative stress in rats fed fumonisin-contaminated diet. Toxicol Lett 196:S328. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.toxlet.2010.03.1036

Abdul-Hafeez EY, Karamova NS, Ilinskaya ON (2014) Antioxidant activity and total phenolic compound content of certain medicinal plants. Int J Biosci 5(9):213–222. https://doi.org/10.12692/ijb/5.9.213-222

Abu-Salem F, Ibrahim HM (2014) Antimicrobial activity and phytochemicals screening of jojoba (Simmondsia chinensis) root extracts and latex. Int J Biol Biomol Agric Food Biotechnol Eng 8:516–522

Ainbinder D, Touitou E (2017) Skin photo damage prevention: state of the art and new prospects. In: Farage MA, Miller KW, Maibach HI (eds) Textbook of aging skin. Springer Berlin Heidelberg, Berlin, pp 709–722

Al-Qizwini H, Ekbal AL-K, Mhaidat NM, Maraqa A (2014) Antioxidant and antimicrobial activities of jordanian simmondsia chinensis (link) C.K. Schneid. European Scientific J 10(27):229–241

Al-Soqeer A, Motawei MI, Al-Dakhil M, El-Mergawi R, Al-Khalifah N (2012) Genetic variation and chemical traits of selected new jojoba (Simmondsia chinensis (link) Schneider) genotypes. J Am Oil Chem Soc 89(8):1455–1461. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11746-012-2034-x

Ashraful AM, Masjuki HH, Kalam MA, Rizwanul Fattah IM, Imtenan S, Shahir SA et al (2014) Production and comparison of fuel properties, engine performance, and emission characteristics of biodiesel from various non-edible vegetable oils: a review. Energy Convers Manag 80:202–228. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.enconman.2014.01.037

Ayerza R, Coates W (2004) Composition of chia (Salvia hispanica) grown in six tropical and subtropical ecosystems of South America. Trop Sci 44(3):131–135. https://doi.org/10.1002/ts.154

Bakry AM, Abbas S, Ali B, Majeed H, Abouelwafa MY, Mousa A et al (2016) Microencapsulation of oils: a comprehensive review of benefits, techniques, and applications. Compr Rev Food Sci Food Saf 15(1):143–182. https://doi.org/10.1111/1541-4337.12179

Banigan TF, Verbiscar AJ (1980) Detoxification of botanical foodstuffs. Google Patents.

Booth AN, Elliger CA, Waiss AC Jr (1974) Isolation of a toxic factor from jojoba meal. Life Sci 15(6):1115–1120. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0024-3205(74)80008-1

Boozer CN, Herron AJ (2006) Simmondsin for weight loss in rats. Int J Obes 30(7):1143–1148

Bouali A, Bellirou A, Boukhatem N, Hamal A, Bouammali B (2008) Enzymatic detoxification of jojoba meal and effect of the resulting meal on food intake in rats. Nat Prod Res 22(7):638–647. https://doi.org/10.1080/14786410701614341

Bright S (2015) 12 Surprising benefits of jojoba oil for Beautiful Skin & Hair. [Web page]. Natural living ideas

Busson-Breysse J, Farines M, Soulier J (1994) Jojoba wax: its esters and some of its minor components. J Am Oil Chem Soc 71(9):999. https://doi.org/10.1007/bf02542268.

Cao H, Yu R, Choi Y, Ma Z-Z, Zhang H, Xiang W et al (2010) Discovery of cyclooxygenase inhibitors from medicinal plants used to treat inflammation. Pharmacol Res 61(6):519–524. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.phrs.2010.02.007

Cappillino P, Kleiman R, Botti C (2003) Composition of Chilean jojoba seeds. Ind Crop Prod 17(3):177–182. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0926-6690(02)00096-1

Chaudhary V, Tripathi RS (2015) Feeding deterrence effects of defatted jojoba (Simmondsia chinensis) meal against Indian gerbil, Tatera indica (Hardwicke). Proc Natl Acad Sci India B Biol Sci 87:1–8. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40011-015-0633-7

Coates W, Ayerza R, Palzkill D (2006) Supplemental pollination of jojoba—a means to increase yields. Ind Crop Prod 24(1):41–45. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.indcrop.2005.12.002

Cvačka J, Vrkoslav V (2016) Liquid chromatography – mass spectrometry of wax esters. In: Wenk MR (ed) Encyclopedia of Lipidomics. Springer Netherlands, Dordrecht, pp 1–9

Delves-Broughton J (2012) Natural antimicrobials as additives and ingredients for the preservation of foods and beverages. In: Natural food additives, ingredients and flavourings. Woodhead Publishing, Cambridge, pp 127–161

d'Oosterlynck A (1997) Method for separating the toxic resinous fraction from prepared whole jojoba seeds or jojoba seed press-cake. Google Patents

Echizen K, Hirose O, Maeda Y, Oshima M (2016) Inflammation in gastric cancer: interplay of the COX-2/prostaglandin E2 and toll-like receptor/MyD88 pathways. Cancer Sci 107(4):391–397. https://doi.org/10.1111/cas.12901

El-Mallah MH, El-Shami SM (2009) Investigation of liquid wax components of Egyptian jojoba seeds. J Oleo Sci 58(11):543–548. https://doi.org/10.5650/jos.58.543

Elnimiri K, Nimir H (2011) Biological and chemical assessment of the Sudanese jojoba (Simmondsia chinensis) oil. Int J Nat Prod Pharm Sci 2(1):28–39

Flo G, Van Boven M, Vermaut S, Decuypere E, Daenens P, Cokelaere M (1998) Effect of Simmondsin derivatives on food intake: dose−response curves in rats. J Agric Food Chem 46(5):1910–1913. https://doi.org/10.1021/jf971002e

Fouillen L, Colsch B, Lessire R (2013) Chapter 7: The lipid world concept of plant lipidomics. In: Dominique R (ed) Advances in botanical research, vol 67. Academic Press, London, pp 331–376

Fouts C, Pavlovic A, Rohde S, Quinn J (2015) Derivatives of esters. Google Patents

Habashy RR, Abdel-Naim AB, Khalifa AE, Al-Azizi MM (2005) Anti-inflammatory effects of jojoba liquid wax in experimental models. Pharmacol Res 51(2):95–105. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.phrs.2004.04.011

Haskin A, Aguh C (2017) Ethnic hair care products. In: Aguh C, Okoye GA (eds) Fundamentals of ethnic hair: the Dermatologist's perspective. Springer International Publishing, Cham, pp 67–75

Henderson A (2015) Oil blend for skin treatment. Google Patents

Hill K, Hofer R (2009) Chapter 9.1 Natural fats and oils. In: Sustainable solutions for modern economies. The Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge, pp 167–237

Huss U, Ringbom T, Perera P, Bohlin L, Vasänge M (2002) Screening of ubiquitous plant constituents for COX-2 inhibition with a scintillation proximity based assay. J Nat Prod 65(11):1517–1521. https://doi.org/10.1021/np020023m

Jangra S, Kharb P, Mitra C, Uppal S (2014) Early diagnosis of sex in jojoba, Simmondsia chinensis (link) Schneider by sequence characterized amplified region marker. Proc Natl Acad Sci India B: Biol Sci 84(2):251–255. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40011-013-0226-2

Kumar S, Mangal M, Dhawan AK, Singh N (2012) Biotechnological advances in jojoba [Simmondsia chinensis (link) Schneider]: recent developments and prospects for further research. Plant Biotechnol Rep 6(2):97–106. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11816-011-0211-2.

Le Dréau Y, Dupuy N, Gaydou V, Joachim J, Kister J (2009) Study of jojoba oil aging by FTIR. Anal Chim Acta 642(1–2):163–170. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.aca.2008.12.001

Lievens S, Flo G, Decuypere E, Van Boven M, Cokelaere M (2003) Simmondsin: effects on meal patterns and choice behavior in rats. Physiol Behav 78(4–5):669–677. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0031-9384(03)00039-8

Lievens S, Verbaeys I, Flo G, Briers R, Decuypere E, Cokelaere M (2009) Disruption of the behavioral satiety sequence by simmondsin. Appetite 52(3):703–710. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.appet.2009.03.010

Manoharan S, Vishnupriya V, Gayathri R (2016) Phytochemical analysis and in vitro antioxidant activity of Jojoba oil. J Pharm Sci Res 8(6):512–516

McKeon TA (2016) Chapter 11: Emerging industrial oil crops. In: Industrial oil crops. AOCS Press, Champaign, IL, pp 275–341

Menghani E, Khan S, Soni M (2012) Search for antimicrobial potentials from simmondsia chinensis. Int J Pharm Sci Res 3(7):2093. https://doi.org/10.13040/IJPSR.0975-8232.3(7).2093-97

Miklaszewska M, Banaś A (2016) Biochemical characterization and substrate specificity of jojoba fatty acyl-CoA reductase and jojoba wax synthase. Plant Sci 249:84–92. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.plantsci.2016.05.009

Miwa T, Rothfus J, Dimitroff E (1979) Extreme—pressure lubricant tests on jojoba and sperm whale oils. J Am Oil Chem Soc 56(8):765–770

Ranzato E, Martinotti S, Burlando B (2011) Wound healing properties of jojoba liquid wax: an in vitro study. J Ethnopharmacol 134(2):443–449. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jep.2010.12.042

Reddy MP, Chikara J (2010) Biotechnology advances in jojoba (Simmondsia chinensis). In: Ramawat KG (ed) Desert plants: biology and biotechnology. Springer Berlin Heidelberg, Berlin, Heidelberg, pp 407–421

Sánchez M, Avhad MR, Marchetti JM, Martínez M, Aracil J (2016) Jojoba oil: a state of the art review and future prospects. Energy Convers Manag 129:293–304. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.enconman.2016.10.038

Sánchez M, Marchetti JM, Boulifi NE, Martínez M, Aracil J (2015) Jojoba oil biorefinery using a green catalyst. Part I: simulation of the process. Biofuels Bioprod Biorefin 9(2):129–138. https://doi.org/10.1002/bbb.1522

Sánchez M, Marchetti JM, El Boulifi N, Martínez M, Aracil J (2015) Jojoba oil biorefinery using a green catalyst. Part II: feasibility study and economical assessment. Biofuels Bioprod Biorefin 9(2):139–146. https://doi.org/10.1002/bbb.1521

Tanaka K, Matsukuma S, Suzuki T (2006) Cosmetics. Google patents

Tang Q, Brown JH, Fu W (2005) Simmondsin processing methods and products. Google Patents

Tobares L, Guzmán C, Maestri D (2003) Effect of the extraction and bleaching processes on jojoba (Simmondsia chinensis) wax quality. Eur J Lipid Sci Technol 105(12):749–753. https://doi.org/10.1002/ejlt.200300841

Wang Z (2005) The role of COX-2 in Oral Cancer development, and chemoprevention/ treatment of Oral Cancer by selective COX-2 inhibitors. Curr Pharm Des 11(14):1771–1777. https://doi.org/10.2174/1381612053764887

Wisniak J (1987) The chemistry and Technology of Jojoba oil. American Oil Chemists' Society, Champaign, IL

Wong Y, Wang Y, Reilly P (2003). Jojoba product for reducing weight, blood lipid levels and for the prevention and treatment of cancer. Google Patents.

Xu L, Stevens J, Hilton MB, Seaman S, Conrads TP, Veenstra TD et al (2014) COX-2 inhibition potentiates Antiangiogenic Cancer therapy and prevents metastasis in preclinical models. Sci Transl Med 6(242):242ra284. https://doi.org/10.1126/scitranslmed.3008455

Yang L, Takase M, Zhang M, Zhao T, Wu X (2014) Potential non-edible oil feedstock for biodiesel production in Africa: a survey. Renew Sust Energ Rev 38:461–477. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rser.2014.06.002

Aflatoxins in Plant-Based Foods

Amir Ismail, Muhammad Riaz, Yun Yun Gong, Saeed Akhtar, and Jin Sun

Introduction

Aflatoxins are the secondary metabolites of five different species of *Aspergillus* (*A.*) mold including *A. niger*, *A. flavus*, *A. fumigatus*, *A. nomius*, and *A. parasiticus*. Aflatoxins were discovered in the 1960s due to the death of thousands of turkeys who feed on fungal-contaminated groundnut meal. Until now 17 different types of aflatoxins are reported, but the aflatoxins most toxic to human health are aflatoxin B_1 (AFB_1), aflatoxin G_1 (AFG_1), aflatoxin B_2 (AFB_2), and aflatoxin G_2 (AFG_2), respectively. Aflatoxins are reported in a number of food commodities of both plant and animal origins such as cereals, spices, fruits, animal feed, meat and meat products, and milk and milk products. However, the higher reported values of aflatoxins are from plant-based foods. Aflatoxins are named on the basis of their fluorescence property: AFB_1 gives blue color under ultraviolet (UV) light, and AFG_1 gives green color, while aflatoxin M_1 (AFM_1) is named on the basis of its presence in milk (Ismail et al. 2016).

More than five billion people mostly residing in the developing countries are exposed to aflatoxin through contaminated plant-based food primarily. Aflatoxins now have been regarded as serious concern for public health as both AFB_1 and AFG_1 are classified as group 1 category carcinogen, while aflatoxin M_1 (AFM_1) is categorized as group 2B category carcinogen by the International Agency for Research on

A. Ismail (✉) · M. Riaz · S. Akhtar
Institute of Food Science and Nutrition, Bahauddin Zakariya University, Multan, Pakistan
e-mail: amirismail@bzu.edu.pk; riaz@bzu.edu.pk

Y. Y. Gong
School of Food Science and Nutrition, University of Leeds, Leeds, UK
e-mail: y.gong@leeds.ac.uk

J. Sun
School of Food Science and Technology, Jiangnan University, Wuxi, China
e-mail: sunj@jiangnan.edu.cn

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_13

Cancer (IARC). Aflatoxins are reported as cytotoxic, genotoxic, hepatotoxic, and immunosuppressing agents. On account of their highly toxic impacts on human health, strict regulations are adopted worldwide for aflatoxins.

High levels of aflatoxin contamination are reported mostly in tropical or subtropical areas as compared to temperate zones due to the suitable environmental conditions for the growth of fungus responsible for the production of aflatoxins. However, the trade of food commodities all around the world means that aflatoxin-contaminated foods might be consumed by the people living in every corner of the world. Plant foods are especially rich in aflatoxins as compared to animal-based foods due to the fact that plants are more exposed to environmental contaminants like fungi and are ultimately rich in mycotoxins such as aflatoxins. Worldwide a number of reports are published which confirm the prevalence of aflatoxins above their permissible limits in different plant groups.

In this chapter we will describe the toxic impacts of aflatoxins on human health, regulations adopted for aflatoxins in different countries, different techniques used for the quantification of aflatoxins, and prevalence of aflatoxins in some major plant groups like cereals, fruits, spices, and animal feeds. Furthermore, different strategies to limit the production of aflatoxins will also be discussed.

Aflatoxin Impact on Human Health

Aflatoxicosis or early known as turkey X disease was first discovered in 1960 when hundred thousands of turkey died in England, the investigations of which lead to the discovery of aflatoxins. Perhaps the most severe aflatoxicosis in history occurred in Kenya in 2004 and has led to more than 100 deaths. Most recently in Tanzania, more than ten deaths and many hospitalized cases were reported to be associated with aflatoxin acute exposure. Aflatoxins are reported to functionally damage the liver, the kidney, and the immunity system of humans. The most toxic and most abundant aflatoxin is AFB_1 which can be permeable through the placenta and hence can adversely affect the fetus. AFB_1 is absorbed in the duodenum, while it is converted into its most toxic form, i.e., exo-AFB_1-8,9-epoxide (AFBO), inside the liver by cytochrome P450 enzymes, primarily CYP 3A4 subtype in human. AFBO is highly active so that it binds covalently with DNA, resulting in DNA mutation especially the mutation at codon 249 of tumor inhibition gene P53 which initiates tumor development. International agency for research on cancer has classified AFB_1 as group 1 category carcinogen (IARC); however, in most of the food/feed items, aflatoxins exist together as mixtures, and more recently this mixture of aflatoxins is also being categorized as group 1 category carcinogen. AFM_1 is a less toxic metabolite of AFB_1 produced in the liver of dairy animals consuming AFB_1-contaminated feed and classified as group 2B carcinogen by IARC. It has been estimated that the health implications of aflatoxicosis in humans result in around $143 million loss each year (IARC Publication list 2012; Monson et al. 2015).

The health impacts of aflatoxins are dependent on the amount of toxin ingested and the exposure time; based on these factors, aflatoxin toxicity might be acute or chronic. In mammals, the reported symptoms of aflatoxin acute toxicity are ataxia, loss of appetite, jaundice, lethargy as well as inflammation in the liver, and death in severe cases. On the other hand, the symptoms of chronic exposure to aflatoxins are cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma, immunity system disorders, loss of appetite, reduced milk production, and reduced overall growth. In humans the most prominent health impact of aflatoxin toxicity is hepatocellular carcinoma especially when co-occurring with hepatitis B virus infection. Globally reported cases of hepatocellular carcinoma are 0.55–0.60 million cases/year, and out of these 0.025–0.15 million cases are linked with aflatoxin-contaminated foods (Ismail et al. 2017; Verheecke et al. 2016; Wild and Gong 2010).

Animal species are reported to have varying levels of sensitivity toward aflatoxin toxicity. The most sensitive animals toward both acute and chronic toxicities are duck and turkeys. The dose response may vary considerably with respect to type of food, race, age, and gender. In a number of species, the females are reported more resistant as compared to males, while the sensitivity is much higher in young as compared to adults (WHO 2002).

Aflatoxin Regulations

Owing to their highly toxic nature and global prevalence, the aflatoxins are strictly being monitored, and more than 120 countries are reported to have legislations against aflatoxins in food and feed items. The major purpose of setting maximum allowable limits for aflatoxins in different food commodities is to protect the consumer health. The variations in aflatoxin legislations have a huge impact on world food trade as food commodities on the basis of their aflatoxin level can be accepted by some countries but not by others due to the differences in maximum allowable limits for aflatoxins within countries. The possible factors in setting the legal limits for aflatoxins are socioeconomic condition, climatic characters, agricultural profile, data available regarding the prevalence of aflatoxins, food security status, instrumental techniques, political situation, and business prospects (Bui-Klimke et al. 2014).

Although several countries have established their own maximum permissible limits, the most widely acceptable limits are those recommended by the international standard agencies such as Codex Alimentarius Commission and Food and Agriculture Organization. Aflatoxins' permissible levels vary among different food types. The strictest legislations are adopted for AFM_1 in milk and milk products due to the fact that dairy products are more frequently consumed by the infants and elderly who have least immunity level among all age groups. The European Union, Australian, Sweden, and Iranian limit for aflatoxin M_1 in milk is 0.05 μg/kg, while in the USA, Serbia, India, and Brazil, it is 0.5 μg/kg. European Union maximum allowable limit for AFM_1 in human milk is 0.025 μg/kg. The maximum limit for

AFM_1 in cheese adopted by the European Union and Switzerland is 0.25 μg/kg. The maximum allowable limit for AFM_1 in butter adopted by Switzerland, Iran, and the Netherlands is 0.02 μg/kg (Ismail et al. 2016).

The maximum limits for aflatoxins range between 0 and 50 μg/kg. The European Union limit for total aflatoxins in food items is 4 μg/kg and is applicable in more than 29 countries including Germany, Italy, and France. The maximum limit for aflatoxins in food items as adopted by more than 17 countries including the USA, Mexico, and Brazil is 20 μg/kg. The maximum permissible limit for AFB_1 in more than 29 countries including Germany, the Netherlands, and France is 2 μg/kg and is the most widely acceptable limit. The second most widely adopted permissible limit for AFB_1 is 5 μg/kg and is adopted by more than 21 countries including Italy and Israel (Egmond and Jonker 2003).

Maximum limit of aflatoxins in animal feed samples is generally higher as compared to food samples. The maximum permissible limit for aflatoxins in animal feed samples adopted by most of the countries is 20 μg/kg, and European Union maximum permissible limit for aflatoxins in animal feed samples is 5 μg/kg, while in Korea it is 50 μg/kg (Khayoon et al. 2010).

Analytical Techniques

Foods being a complex of different nutrients and anti-nutritional factors require extraction of aflatoxins with the help of suitable solvents such as methanol, chloroform, etc. prior to their analysis. The most commonly employed methods for the detection and quantification of aflatoxins are the enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) and high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) with fluorescence detection or mass spectrophotometric method which has seen more increasing use recently, in particularly when multiple mycotoxin targets are analyzed simultaneously. The oldest technique for the detection of aflatoxins is thin-layer chromatography (TLC), but it is seldom used now. Depending on matrix types and aflatoxin concentration in the matrix, liquid-liquid extraction method or solid-phase extraction using C18 or imuno-affinity columns has been used for sample preparation in order to improve sensitivity. Less commonly employed methods for the detection of aflatoxins are mass spectrophotometric method, spore-based, and immune sensor-based enzyme assays.

A major hurdle in the detection of aflatoxins especially in developing countries is the cost of analysis. Both HPLC and ELISA techniques are costly and therefore are difficult to afford. TLC being a cheaper technology is used in a number of developing countries, but the researchers have to face the difficulties in getting the results published by using this technology. Moreover, the detection of aflatoxins through TLC suits best for qualitative analysis only; for quantitative analysis the technique is not much reliable. A more economical approach is to use TLC as initial sorter of positive samples, and then only the positive samples can be quantified by using HPLC or ELISA.

Prevalence of Aflatoxins in Different Plants

Aflatoxins are reported in a number of plant-based food commodities including cereals, spices, dry fruits, and plant-based animal feed items. The presence of aflatoxins in animal products such as milk, cheese, or butter also finds its roots in plants due to the fact that when dairy animals consume fungal-contaminated fodder, they secrete aflatoxins in their milk. Chances of aflatoxin contamination are more in tropical areas as compared to temperate climates due to environmental suitability for the production of aflatoxins by responsible fungus species. Aflatoxin contamination is more in stored food/fodder as compared to fresh commodities. Food and feed items from developing countries are reported more contaminated as compared to developed countries due to less implementation of rules and regulations, improper storage conditions, economic constraints, and lack of knowledge.

Prevalence of Aflatoxins in Cereals

Cereals are most vulnerable to mold attack, and therefore aflatoxins might be produced in the fields or after harvest, i.e., during storage or transportation. It has been estimated that more than 25% of the world's cereal production is contaminated by mycotoxins especially the aflatoxins. Reports on the prevalence of aflatoxins in different cereals from various countries of the world are presented in Table 1. In 9 studies from different countries, from a total of 3714 samples, 1246 samples (33.54%) were found positive for aflatoxins. Maize, rice, and barley samples from

Table 1 Global prevalence of aflatoxins in different types of cereals

Country	Product	Aflatoxin type	Positive sample/ total sample	Range/mean (μg/kg)	Reference
Zimbabwe	Maize	AFB_1	80/388	0.75–26.60/3.21[a]	Murashiki et al. (2018)
Vietnam	Maize	AFB_1	799/2370	1.0–34.80/13.10	Lee et al. (2017)
Pakistan	Rice	Total AFs	73/208	<0.04–32.20/6.36	Iqbal et al. (2016)
China	Rice	AFB_1	235/370	0.03–20/0.60[a]	Lai et al. (2015)
Turkey	Wheat flour	AFB_1	0/69	–	Kara et al. (2015)
	Maize flour	AFB_1	16/24	0.041–1.12/0.19	
Spain	Cereals	Total AFs	0/67	–	Vidal et al. (2013)
Algeria	Wheat	AFB_1	30/53	<0.05–37.42/…	Riba et al. (2010)
Ethiopia	Barley	AFB_1	13/115	0.00–12.30/8.70[a]	Ayalew et al. (2006)

[a]Mean of positive samples only; *AFs* aflatoxins; *AFB_1* aflatoxin B_1

Vitenam, Pakistan, and Ethiopia, respectively, were found to have maximum aflatoxin levels. Among the cereals maize and barley are the most contaminated crops by the aflatoxins, while relatively less aflatoxin levels are reported in wheat and rice samples. However, on the basis of frequency of consumption, most aflatoxin consumption by humans occurs through rice and wheat, and therefore the total intake of aflatoxins from these two crops would be higher than any other food commodities. Furthermore, a number of factors affect the contamination levels of aflatoxins in cereals such as storage time, processing conditions, season of the year, and geographical location Ismail et al. 2018; Kos et al. 2014).

Prevalence of Aflatoxins in Fruits

Fruits have a protective covering or peel that prevents the inside of the fruit from microbial attacks as well as from mycotoxins. However, the fruit wounds may become the site of microbial attacks and ultimately result in the site for production of aflatoxins. In general the edible portions of fresh fruits such as orange, apple, and mangoes are reported to have less aflatoxins. The chances of aflatoxin contamination are more in dry fruits due to the fact that in drying process, the fruits are sun dried openly in uncontrolled environment providing optimum conditions for the production of aflatoxins. The chances of aflatoxin contamination in dried fruits may be reduced if firm and ripened fruits are dried under controlled conditions. The production of aflatoxins depends on a number of factors. Aflatoxin production increases with an increase in total soluble solids; the unripen fruits contain less aflatoxins; while the over ripened contain the highest contamination levels, less aflatoxin production is reported if fruits are handpicked and solar dried as early as possible to a water activity level (a_w) below 0.80 and are also protected from moisture regain (Jackson and Al-Taher 2008).

The prevalence of aflatoxins in different fruits is reported in Table 2. From a total of 828 fruit samples, 277 samples (33.45%) were found positive for aflatoxins. Alarmingly higher levels of aflatoxins (<0.006–136,000 μg/kg) were reported from India and Morocco by Sharma et al. (2013) and Juan et al. (2008), respectively; while the rest of the countries showed aflatoxin contamination in the range of 0.045–110 μg/kg.

Prevalence of Aflatoxins in Spices

Spices are used as food additives since ancient times owing to their nutritional, coloring, flavoring, and preservative characteristics. The value of global production of spices is estimated to be more than US $ three billion/year. The steps involved in the processing of spices provide opportunities for the growth of fungus and ultimately

Table 2 Global prevalence of aflatoxins in different types of fruits

Country	Product	Aflatoxin type	Positive sample/ total sample	Range/mean (μg/kg)	Reference
Turkey	Roasted hazelnut	Total AFs	5/60	0.06–11.2/3.94[a]	Kabak (2016)
	Dried fig	Total AFs	16/130	0.06–28.2/3.80[a]	
Brazil	Cashew nuts	Total AFs	24/70	0.60–31.50/–	Milhome et al. (2014)
Greece	Dried vine fruits	AFB_1	6/26	0.045–0.60/0.15	Kollia et al. (2014)
Malawi	Nut-based foods	AFB_1	43/55	0.10–40.60/6.28	Matumba et al. (2014)
Saudi Arabia	Nuts	Total AFs	70/264	1.00–110/8.10	El tawila et al. (2013)
India	Nuts	Total AFs	27/58	0.5–136,000/1001	Sharma et al. (2013)
Pakistan	Dried apricot	Total AFs	4/20	0.50–10.80/4.55	Luttfullah and Hussain (2011)
	Dried fig	Total AFs	5/10	0.50–12.50/5.81	
Turkey	Pistachio	Total AFs	48/95	0.007–7.72/…	Set and Erkmen (2010)
Morocco	Walnut	AFB_1	6/20	<0.006–2500/360	Juan et al. (2008)
		Total AFs	6/20	<0.015–4320/730	
	Pistachio	AFB_1	9/20	<0.006–1430/158	
		Total AFs	9/20	<0.015–1450/163	

[a]Mean of positive samples only; *AFs* aflatoxins, *AFB_1* aflatoxin B_1

for the production of aflatoxins particularly in tropical and subtropical regions. Red chili is the second most consumed spice followed by black pepper and is also one of the food commodities which are most susceptible toward the production of aflatoxins. Aflatoxins might contaminate the red chili in fields, but the maximum production occurs during the drying and storage of chilies. Some other spices which are at high risk for the production of aflatoxins are nutmeg, turmeric, black pepper, and ginger. On the other hand, cinnamon, cloves, cumin, and *Mentha* are the spices which are reported to have fewer incidences of aflatoxin contamination indicating that these spices possess elevated antimicrobial activities (Kabak and Dobson 2017).

The prevalence of aflatoxins in different spices is presented in Table 3. From a total of 1372 samples of spices, 424 samples (30.9%) were found contaminated with aflatoxins. The range of aflatoxins in different spices was <0.02–79.71 μg/kg. Mean maximum aflatoxin concentration (15.50 μg/kg) was recorded for red pepper samples from Iran, while mean minimum concentration (0.45 μg/kg) was recorded for spices samples from China.

Table 3 Global prevalence of aflatoxins in different types of spices

Country	Product	Aflatoxin type	Positive sample/ total sample	Range/mean (μg/kg)	Reference
Nigeria	Ginger	Total AFs	66/120	0.11–9.52/0.54[a]	Lippolis et al. (2017)
		AFB_1	66/120	0.11–8.76/0.46[a]	
		AFB_2	44/120	0.13–1.01/0.09[a]	
Iran	Black pepper	Total AFs	5/40	<0.04–3.21/2.01	Barani et al. (2016)
	Red pepper	Total AFs	36/36	4.26–30.20/15.50	
Italy	Spices	AFB_1	20/130	0.59–5.38/0.31	Prelle et al. (2014)
China	Spices	Total AFs	53/480	<0.26–27.52/0.45	Zhao et al. (2013)
Turkey	Red chili	Total AFs	33/46	<0.04–37.38/4.27[a]	Ozbey and Kabak (2012)
	Black pepper		7/23	<0.04–0.46/0.24[a]	
Malaysia	Dried chili	Total AFs	52/80	<0.02–79.71/4.56	Jalili and Jinap (2012)
Spain	Paprika	Total AFs	38/64	<0.06–7.25/…	Santos et al. (2010)
	Chili		14/35	<0.06–2.49/…	
Brazil	Paprika	AFB_1	58/70	0.09–7.30/3.40[a]	Shundo et al. (2009)
Korea	Spices	Total Afs	12/88	0.08–4.46/…	Cho et al. (2008)
Ireland	Spices	AFB_1	20/130	<0.10–27.50/…	Riordan and Wilkinson (2008)
	Chili powder	Total AFs	10/30	<0.10–27.50/3.23	

[a]Mean of positive samples only; *AFs* aflatoxins; *AFB_1* aflatoxin B_1

Prevalence of Aflatoxins in Animal Fodder

Aflatoxin contamination in animal feed samples is reported from all around the globe. The most common causes of aflatoxin contamination in animal feed samples are lack of preventive measures before harvest, improper storage, and transportation facilities. During winter season fresh fodder is available; therefore, the chances of aflatoxin contamination above permissible limits are low, while in winter season stored fodder or commercial Vanda is used which might contain aflatoxins above permissible limits due to extensive storage time period and improper storage conditions. In developing countries the leftover bread samples are being sold to the street hawkers which after some day's collection sell these breads to the dairy farmers. By the time the bread reaches to the dairy farmers, it gets heavily contaminated, and therefore the chances of aflatoxin contamination are increased to several folds. The consumption of fungal-contaminated fodder by the dairy animals results in aflatoxin-contaminated milk; on the other hand, aflatoxins being lipophilic in nature are also stored in the liver and other fat tissues of animals which ultimately find their way to humans through food chain (Ismail et al. 2016).

Table 4 Global prevalence of aflatoxins in different types of animal fodder

Country	Product	Aflatoxin type	Positive sample/ total sample	Range/mean (μg/kg)	Reference
Pakistan	Vanda	AFB_1	32/50	<0.50–42.39/29.30	Chohan et al. (2016)
	Silage		5/23	<0.50–21.56/9.98	
	Cottonseed cake		17/25	<0.50–185.97/111.94	
Ethiopia	Dairy feed	AFB_1	156/156	7–419/97	Gizachew et al. (2016)
Italy	Soy feed	Total AFs	32/36	1–5.90/3.00	Gutleb et al. (2015)
Croatia	Dairy feed	AFB_1	73/325	1–304.6/8.41	Pleadin et al. (2015)
Spain	Barley	Total AFs	123/123	0.0002–0.75/0.14	Ibáñez-Vea et al. (2012)
Malaysia	Animal feed	Total AFs	8/42	<0.06–101.90/26.75[a]	Khayoon et al. (2010)
Tunisia	Sorghum	Total AFs	58/93	0.025–54.50/9.90	Ghali et al. (2009)
Kuwait	Animal feed	Total AFs	67/84	0.64–19.90/–	Dashti et al. (2009)

[a]Mean of positive samples only; *AFs* aflatoxins, *AFB_1* aflatoxin B_1

The prevalence of aflatoxins in different types of animal fodder is presented in Table 4. From a total of 957 samples of different types of animal feed, 571 samples (59.7%) were found contaminated with aflatoxins. The level of aflatoxins was found in the range of 0.002–419 μg/kg. Mean maximum aflatoxin level (111.94 μg/kg) was reported in cottonseed cake samples from Pakistan, while mean minimum level (0.14 μg/kg) was reported in barley samples from Spain.

Preventive Measures

Aflatoxins are not only limited with serious toxicological effects but are also directly linked with food security issues as the destruction of food through mold attack will ultimately bring food insecurity. Furthermore, aflatoxin prevalence above permissible limits affects global food trade and results in huge losses as a number of food consignments mostly coming from developing countries are rejected by the developed countries every year. Aflatoxin-producing mold species might contaminate the crops at each and every stage before their consumption, i.e., pre- and postharvest

contamination; therefore, preventive measures should be adopted right from the farms till the consumption of food. Aflatoxin control includes preventive measures to inhibit the growth of aflatoxin-producing fungal species and corrective/remedial actions to decontaminate the aflatoxins or to limit their production.

The preventive measures for aflatoxins are of two types, i.e., pre- and postharvest approaches. Aflatoxin-resistant crop varieties should be introduced particularly for the crops such as maize and peanuts which are more susceptible toward aflatoxin-producing molds. Aflatoxin-resistant germplasm should be identified by the biotechnologists; furthermore, conventional techniques of aflatoxin control such as crop rotation, timely sowing, and harvesting techniques are also necessary to minimize the chances of aflatoxin contamination. Aflasafe® (IITA) and Afla-guard® (Syngenta) are the recently introduced biocontrol systems which contain atoxigenic strains of aflatoxins; these biocontrol systems can control the production of aflatoxins above 90%. The postharvest management of aflatoxins includes storage at low temperature and at a_w below 0.80. Infected grains/other food items should be removed from the healthier food commodities through physical sorting or UV-/infrared-based sorters (Verheecke et al. 2016).

The most widely studied remedial technique against aflatoxins if already produced in food or feed items is the biological control. A number of strains of bacteria, yeast, and mold are reported to have potentials to degrade aflatoxins. A mixture of three different types of bacteria was reported to degrade 100% AFB_1 in pistachio nuts (Chen et al. 2015). More than 90% AFB_1 degradation was reported by Das et al. (2014) using two different strains of an edible mushroom (*P. ostreatus*), after an incubation at 30 °C for 15 days. Hackbart et al. (2014) also reported 100% AFB_1 degradation in potato dextrose agar medium at 30 °C after 5 days by using an *Ascomycota* (*Trichoderma reesei* QM941) and a *Zygomycota* (*Rhizopus oryzae* CCT7560).

Aflatoxin curative actions also include adsorption as well as physical and chemical reductions. A number of clay mineral mixtures are used for the binding of aflatoxins; the first commercially approved adsorbent for aflatoxins is Mycofix® (Biomin, Herzogenburg, Austria). Microbes are also used as aflatoxin adsorbent and therefore have the potential to reduce the bioaccessibility of aflatoxins. In one of our studies, we achieved 92% AFM_1 decontamination in artificially contaminated (spiked) milk samples at the level of 0.1 μg/L by using heat-killed cells of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (10^{10} cfu/mL). The possible mechanism behind the binding of aflatoxins with heat-killed cells is a non-covalent bonding of aflatoxins with microbial cell walls. However, this binding is weak as aflatoxins were by washing with phosphate saline buffer (PSB) solution, and therefore these mixtures are not used commercially up to now. Physical and chemical reduction methods for aflatoxins include ozonation, extrusion, nixtamalization, etc. These methods provide partial reductions in aflatoxin content and also do not fulfil the safety and economic parameters and therefore are not commercially employed up to now (Ismail et al. 2017; Udomkun et al. 2017).

Conclusions

Aflatoxins have become a serious threat for human life especially in the developing countries. Aflatoxins not only cause toxicity but are also producing global food insecurity. More than half of the world's population is exposed to the threat of aflatoxins. Aflatoxins are reported in many plant-based food commodities; however some plants are more susceptible than the others. Maize and barley in cereals, nuts in fruits, red chili in spices, and commercially prepared fodder of long storage life need special attention as they are more susceptible *to aflatoxins*. *Resistant crop varieties, proper crop management, controlled storage, and safe* transportation are necessary to limit the production of aflatoxins. To ensure aflatoxin-free plant foods, farmers and processors should be properly educated regarding the safe handling of food commodities. Although much research has been done in the field of aflatoxin degradation, further research to find safe and effective strategies for the degradation of aflatoxins is needed.

References

Ayalew A, Fehrmann H, Lepschy J, Beck R, Abate D (2006) Natural occurrence of mycotoxins in staple cereals from Ethiopia. Mycopathologia 162:57–63

Barani A, Nasiri Z, Jarrah N (2016) Natural occurrence of aflatoxins in commercial pepper in Iran. Food Agric Immunol 27:570–576

Bui-Klimke TR, Guclu H, Kensler TW, Yuan J, Wu F (2014) Aflatoxin regulations and global pistachio trade: insights from social network analysis. PLoS One 9(3):1–11

Chen Y, Kong Q, Chi C, Shan S, Guan B (2015) Biotransformation of aflatoxin B1 and aflatoxin G1 in peanut meal by anaerobic solid fermentation of Streptococcus thermophilus and lactobacillus delbrueckii subsp. bulgaricus. Int J Food Microbiol 211:1–5

Cho S, Lee C, Jang M, Son Y, Lee S, Choi I, Kim S, Kim D (2008) Aflatoxins contamination in spices and processed spice products commercialized in Korea. Food Chem 107:1283–1288

Chohan KA, Awan F, Ali MM, Iqbal U, Ijaz M (2016) Assessment of aflatoxin in dairy concentrate feeds, total mixed rations, silage and various feed ingredients in Pakistan. Pak J Zool 48:277–280

Das A, Bhattacharya S, Palaniswamy M, Angayarkanni J (2014) Aflatoxin B1 degradation during co-cultivation of Aspergillus flavus and Pleurotus ostreatus strains on rice straw. 3 Biotech 5(3):279–284

Dashti B, Al-Hamli S, Alomirah H, Al-Zenki S, Abbas AB, Sawaya W (2009) Levels of aflatoxin M1 in milk, cheese consumed in Kuwait and occurrence of total aflatoxin in local and imported animal feed. Food Control 20:686–690

Egmond HP, Jonker MA (2003) Worldwide regulations for mycotoxins in food and feed. FAO, Rome, Italy. ftp://ftp.fao.org/docrep/fao/007/y5499e/y5499e00.pdf. Accessed 18 Feb 2017

El tawila MM, Neamatallah A, Serdar SA (2013) Incidence of aflatoxins in commercial nuts in the holy city of Mekkah. Food Control 29:121–124

Ghali R, Belouaer I, Hdiri S, Ghorbel H, Maaroufi K, Hedilli A (2009) Simultaneous HPLC determination of aflatoxins B1, B2, G1 and G2 in Tunisian sorghum and pistachios. J Food Comp Anal 22:751–755

Gizachew D, Szonyi B, Tegegne A, Hanson J, Grace D (2016) Aflatoxin contamination of milk and dairy feeds in the greater Addis Ababa milk shed, Ethiopia. Food Control 59:773–779
Gutleb AC, Caloni F, Giraud F, Cortinovis C, Pizzo F, Hoffmann L, Bohn T, Pasquali M (2015) Detection of multiple mycotoxin occurrences in soy animal feed by traditional mycological identification combined with molecular species identification. Toxicol Rep 2:275–279
Hackbart HCS, Machado AR, Christ-Ribeiro A, Prietto L, Badiale-Furlong E (2014) Reduction of aflatoxins by Rhizopus oryzae and Trichoderma reesei. Mycotoxin Res 3:141–149
IARC Publications list (2012). http://www.iarc.fr/en/publications/list/. Accessed 21 Dec 2016
Ibáñez-Vea M, González-Peñas E, Lizarraga E, de Cerain AL (2012) Co-occurrence of aflatoxins, ochratoxin A and zearalenone in barley from a northern region of Spain. Food Chem 132:35–42
Ismail A, Gonçalves BL, de Neeff DV, Ponzilacqua B, Coppa CFSC, Hintzsche H, Sajid M, Cruz AG, Corassin CH, Oliveira CAF (2018) Aflatoxin in foodstuffs: occurrence and recent advances in decontamination. Food Res Int 113:74–85
Iqbal SZ, Asi MR, Hanif U, Zuber M, Jinap S (2016) The presence of aflatoxins and ochratoxin A in rice and rice products; and evaluation of dietary intake. Food Chem 210:135–140
Ismail A, Akhtar S, Levin RE, Ismail T, Riaz M, Amir M (2016) Aflatoxin M1: prevalence and decontamination strategies in milk and milk products. Crit Rev Microbiol 42(3):418–427
Ismail A, Levin RE, Riaz M, Akhtar S, Gong YY, de Oliveira CAF (2017) Effect of different microbial concentrations on binding of aflatoxin M1 and stability testing. Food Control 73:492–496
Ismail A, Riaz M, Levin RE, Akhtar S, Gong YY, Hameed A (2016) Seasonal prevalence level of aflatoxin M1 and its estimated daily intake in Pakistan. Food Control 60:461–465
Jackson LS, Al-Taher F (2008) Factors affecting mycotoxins production in fruits. In: Mycotoxins in fruits and vegetables. Academic Press Publishers, San Diego, CA, pp 75–104
Jalili M, Jinap S (2012) Natural occurrence of aflatoxins and ochratoxin A in commercial dried chili. Food Control 24:160–164
Juan C, Zinedine A, Molto´ JC, Idrissi L, Mañes J (2008) Aflatoxins levels in dried fruits and nuts from Rabat-Salé area, Morocco. Food Control 19:849–853
Kabak B (2016) Aflatoxins in hazelnuts and dried figs: occurrence and exposure assessment. Food Chem 211:8–16
Kabak B, Dobson ABW (2017) Mycotoxins in spices and herbs-an update. Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr 57(1):18–34
Kara GN, Ozbey F, Kabak B (2015) Co-occurrence of aflatoxins and ochratoxin A in cereal flours commercialised in Turkey. Food Control 54:275–281
Khayoon WS, Saad B, Yan CB, Hashim NH (2010) Determination of aflatoxins in animal feeds by HPLC with multifunctional column clean-up. Food Chem 118:882–886
Kollia E, Kanapitsas A, Markaki P (2014) Occurrence of aflatoxin B1 and ochratoxin A in dried vine fruits from Greek market. Food Addit Contam Part B Surveill 7:11–16
Kos JJ, Škrinjar MM, Mandić AI, Mišan AC, Bursić VP, Šarić BM, Janić-Hajnal EP (2014) Presence of aflatoxins in cereals from Serbia. Food Feed Res 41(1):31–38
Lai X, Liu R, Ruan C, Zhang H, Liu C (2015) Occurrence of aflatoxins and ochratoxin A in rice samples from six provinces in China. Food Control 50:401–404
Lee HS, Nguyen-Viet H, Lindahl J, Thanh HM, Khanh TN, Hien LTT, Grace D (2017) A survey of aflatoxin B in maize and awareness of aflatoxins in Vietnam. World Mycotoxin J 10(2):195–202
Lippolis V, Irurhe O, Porricelli ACR, Cortese M, Schena R, Imafidon T, Oluwadun A, Pascale M (2017) Natural co-occurrence of aflatoxins and ochratoxin A in ginger (Zingiber officinale) from Nigeria. Food Control 73:1061–1067
Luttfullah G, Hussain A (2011) Studies on contamination level of aflatoxins in some dried fruits and nuts of Pakistan. Food Control 22:426–429
Matumba L, Monjerezi M, Biswick T, Mwatseteza J, Makumba W, Kamangira D, Mtukuso A (2014) A survey of the incidence and level of aflatoxin contamination in a range of locally and imported processed foods on Malawian retail market. Food Control 39:87–91
Milhome MAL, Lima CG, de Lima LK, Lima FAF, Sousa DOB, Nascimento RF (2014) Occurrence of aflatoxins in cashew nuts produced in northeastern Brazil. Food Control 42:34–37
Monson MS, Coulombe RA, Reed KM (2015) Aflatoxicosis: lessons from toxicity and responses to aflatoxin B1 in poultry. Agriculture 5:742–777

Murashiki TC, Chidewe C, Benhura MA, Manema LR, Mvumi BM, Nyanga LK (2018) Effectiveness of hermetic technologies in limiting aflatoxin B and fumonisin B contamination of stored maize grain under smallholder conditions in Zimbabwe. World Mycotoxin J 11(3):459–469

Ozbey F, Kabak B (2012) Natural co-occurrence of aflatoxins and ochratoxin A in spices. Food Control 28:354–361

Pleadin J, Vulic A, Persi N, Skrivanko M, Capek B, Cvetnic Z (2015) Annual and regional variations of aflatoxin B1 levels seen in grains and feed coming from Croatian dairy farms over a 5-year period. Food Control 47:221–225

Prelle A, Spadaro D, Garibaldi A, Gullino ML (2014) Co-occurrence of aflatoxins and ochratoxin A in spices commercialized in Italy. Food Control 39:192–197

Riba A, Bouras N, Mokrane S, Mathieu F, Lebrihi A, Sabaou N (2010) Aspergillus section Flavi and aflatoxins in Algerian wheat and derived products. Food Chem Toxicol 48:2772–2777

Riordan MJO, Wilkinson MG (2008) A survey of the incidence and level of aflatoxin contamination in a range of imported spice preparations on the Irish retail market. Food Chem 107:2429–2435

Santos L, Marín S, Sanchis V, Ramos AJ (2010) Co-occurrence of aflatoxins, ochratoxin A and zearalenone in Capsicum powder samples available on the Spanish market. Food Chem 122:826–830

Set E, Erkmen O (2010) The aflatoxin contamination of ground red pepper and pistachio nuts sold in Turkey. Food Chem Toxicol 48:2532–2537

Sharma S, Gupta D, Sharma YP (2013) Aflatoxin contamination in chilgoza pine nuts (pinus gerardiana wall.) commercially available in retail markets of Jammu, India. Int J Pharma Bio Sci 4:751–759

Shundo L, de Almeida AP, Alaburda J, Lamardo LCA, Navas SA, Ruvieri V, Sabino M (2009) Aflatoxins and ochratoxin A in Brazilian paprika. Food Control 20:1099–1102

Udomkun P, Wiredu AN, Nagle M, Müller J, Vanlauwe B, Bandyopadhyay R (2017) Innovative technologies to manage aflatoxins in foods and feeds and the profitability of application – a review. Food Control 76:127–138

Verheecke C, Liboz T, Mathieu F (2016) Microbial degradation of aflatoxin B1: current status and future advances. Int J Food Microbiol 237:1–9

Vidal A, Marín S, Ramos AJ, Cano-Sancho G, Sanchis V (2013) Determination of aflatoxins, deoxynivalenol, ochratoxin A and zearalenone in wheat and oat based bran supplements sold in the Spanish market. Food Chem Toxicol 53:133–138

Wild CP, Gong YY (2010) Mycotoxins and human disease: a largely ignored global health issue. Carcinogenesis 31(1):71–82

World Health Organization (WHO) (2002) Evaluation of certain mycotoxins in food. World Health Organization, Geneva ISBN:9241209062

Zhao X, Schaffner DW, Yue T (2013) Quantification of aflatoxin risk associated with Chinese spices: point and probability risk assessments for aflatoxin B1. Food Control 33:366–377

Potential Roles for Endophytic Fungi in Biotechnological Processes: A Review

B. Shankar Naik

Introduction

Endophytic fungi are the microbes that grow intra- or intercellularly in the tissues of higher plants without causing symptoms on the plants in which they live and have proven to be rich source of bioactive natural products (Tan and Zou 2001). Almost every host plant studied so far is associated with some microorganism (Arnold et al. 2000; Shankar Naik et al. 2008). The host-endophyte symbiosis is a balanced antagonism between endophytic virulence and host defence response (Schulz and Boyle 2005). The endophyte gets benefit from the host plant by receiving organic nutrients, shelter, and guaranteed transmission to the next host generation and in turn provides host resistance to insects, drought, herbivore nematodes, and pathogens (Clay 1988; Redman et al. 2002). The endophyte-host association also plays an important role in structuring the plant communities by affecting the colonization, competition, co-existence, and soil nutrient dynamics (Lemons et al. 2005). Plants have several mechanisms to limit the growth of endophytes including producing a variety of toxic metabolites (Tanaka et al. 2002; Shankar Naik et al. 2006), but over a long period of co-evolution, endophytes have gradually formed a variety of tolerant mechanisms towards host metabolites by producing secondary metabolites, exoenzymes, and mycotoxins (Costa et al. 2000; Schulz et al. 2002). Several workers have reviewed that endophytes produce diverse secondary metabolites related to terpenes, flavonoids, alkaloids, quinines, cyclohexanes, and hydrocarbons; many of these compounds showed antimicrobial, antioxidant, antineoplastic, antileishmanial, and anti-proliferative activity and cytotoxicity (Shankar Naik et al. 2006; Wei et al. 2007; Zhou et al. 2009; Wang and Dai 2011) (Table 1). These secondary

B. Shankar Naik (✉)
Department of P.G. Studies and Research in Applied Botany, Bio-Science Complex, Kuvempu University, Shimoga, Karnataka, India

Department of Biology, Govt Science College, Chikmagalur, Karnataka, India

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_14

Table 1 Secondary metabolites produced from endophytic fungi

Metabolite	Endophytic fungi	Host plant	Activity	References
Colletotric acid	*Colletotrichum gloeosporioides*	*Artemisia mongolica* Fisch. ex Bess.	Antibacterial and antifungal (*Helminthosporium sativum*)	Zou et al. (2000)
Nodulisporic acids	*Nodulisporium* spp.	*Bontia daphnoides* L.	Anti-insecticidal	Bills et al. (2012)
Volatile antimicrobials	*Muscodor albus*	*Cinnamomum zeylanicum* Nees (cinnamon tree)	Antimicrobial	Strobel et al. (2001)
Naphthalene	*Muscodor vitigenus*	*Paullina paullinioides* (Liana)	Insect repellent against stem sawfly	Daisy et al. (2002)
Diplopyrone	*Diplodia mutila*	*Quercus suber* L. (cork oak)	Phytotoxic	Evidente et al. (2003)
Leucinostatin A	*Acremonium* spp.	*Taxus baccata* L.	Anti-oomycetes and anticancerous	Strobel et al. (1998)
Pestalotiopsis A and B	*Pestalotiopsis microspora*	*Taxus brevifolia* Nutt. (Pacific yew)	Anti-carcinogenic	Pulici et al. (1996)
Taxol	*Taxomyces andreanae*	*Taxus brevifolia* Nutt. (Pacific yew)	Anti-carcinogenic	Rodrigues (1996)
Taxol	*Tubercularia* spp.	*Taxus mairei* (Chinese southern yew)	Anticancerous (P388 cells, KB cells)	Wang et al. (2000)
Taxol	*Pestalotiopsis microspora*	*Taxus wallichiana* (Nepalese yew)	Anti-carcinogenic	Strobel et al. (1996)
Pestacin	*Pestalotiopsis microspora*	*Terminalia morobensis* Coode	Antioxidant, antifungal	Harper et al. (2003)
Cryptocin	*Cryptosporiopsis quercina*	*Tripterygium wilfordii* Hook. f.	Antifungal	Li et al. (2000)
Subglutinols A and B	*Fusarium Subglutinans*	*Tripterygium wilfordii* Hook. f.	Immunosuppressive	Lee et al. (1995)
Nodulisporic acids	*Hypoxylon pulicicidum* sp.		Biological control (insecticide)	Bills et al. (2012)
Gibberellins and indole acetic acid	*Paecilomyces formosus*	*Cucumis sativus* (cucumber)	Plant defence/plant growth	Khan et al. (2012)
Anthracenedione derivatives	*Guignardia* sp.	Mangrove plant	Potential anticancer activity	Zhang et al. (2010)

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

Metabolite	Endophytic fungi	Host plant	Activity	References
Camptothecin Periconicin A and B Phomol	Colletotrichum sp.	*Artemisia annua*	Antifungal	Guo et al. (2008)
Pyrrolidine A and B	*Acremonium zeae*	*Zea mays*	Antifungal	Guo et al. (2008)
Sordaricin	*Xylaria* sp.	*Garcinia dulcis*	Antifungal	Pongcharoen et al. (2008)

metabolites find wide-ranging applications in medicine, agriculture, and industry (Gunatilaka 2006). The increasing levels of drug resistance by diverse plant and human pathogens forced microbiologists to find novel antimicrobial metabolites from microbial origin (Molina et al. 2012). In addition, they have the potential to decompose environmental pollutants and improve the soil micro-environment (Xiao et al. 2010; Wang and Dai 2011). A few recent studies revealed that endophytes affect litter decomposition rates (Purahong and Hyde 2011), stimulate soil carbon sequestration, and alter the flux of greenhouse gases (CO_2 and N_2O) from soil to the atmosphere. They play a role in leaf senescence and survive in decomposing leaf litter as saprophytes (Purahong and Hyde 2011). The endophyte-host symbioses alter the concentration of sugars and water and modulate their oxidation balance, phytohormone signalling, and other metabolic pathways. Endophytes produce various alkaloids such as lolines, ergot alkaloids, lolitrems, and peramines (Saikkonen et al. 2013). The use of endophytic fungi might be a novel approach and important source for degradation of toxic pollutants which include hydrocarbons, polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), polyaromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), radionuclides, and metals. Russell et al. (2011) demonstrated the ability of endophytic fungal degradation of synthetic polymer polyester polyurethane (PUR) by production of serine hydrolases. The *Pestalotiopsis microspora* isolate was uniquely able to grow on PUR as the sole carbon source under both aerobic and anaerobic conditions. These non-saprobic fungi open a door to investigate on other fungal endophytes with biodegradable potential.

Endophytes as Producers of Novel Enzymes

Generally, fungal endophytes have the ability to utilize various organic compounds (carbon) which enables them in degradation of structural components such as glycose, oligosaccharides, cellulose, hemicelluloses, lignin, keratin, pectin, lipids, and proteins (Lumyong et al. 2002; Urairuj et al. 2003; Tomita 2003; Kudanga and Mwenje 2005) present in leaf litter and wood (Osono and Takeda 2001) by producing various extracellular enzymes which include pectinase, cellulase, lipase, proteinase, phenol oxidase, and lignin catabolic enzymes (Tan and Zou 2001; Bischoff

et al. 2009). These enzymes have potential in degradation of several macromolecule compounds into small molecules which could allow them to survive and reproduce despite plant defence mechanisms (Zikmundova et al. 2002). Lignocellulose is one of the most common biopolymers in nature and is composed mainly of cellulose, hemicelluloses, and lignin. Cellulose is a linear polymer of glucose units which can be hydrolysed by the action of endoglucanases, cellobiohydrolases, exoglucohydrolases, and β-glucosidases. Hemicellulose is a heterogeneous and branched polymer of pentoses, hexoses, and uronic acids. Complete enzymatic hydrolysis of xylan, the major polymer found in hemicelluloses, requires endo-β-1,4-xylanase, β-xylosidase, and several accessory enzymes, such as α-L-arabinofuranosidase, α-glucuronidase, α-galactosidase, acetylxylan esterase, and ferulic acid esterase. Degradation of lignocellulosic material has great importance for many industrial processes, and enzymatic hydrolysis has received attention due to its potential as an environmentally friendly process besides its enormous hydrolysis specificity (Chen et al. 2011) (Table 2).

Endophytic fungi also play an important role in degradation of plant debris. *Alternaria*, *Phoma*, and *Phomopsis* isolated from *Colophospermum mopane* (Jordaan et al. 2006; Wang and Dai 2011) exhibited lignocellulolytic activity. Wood-inhabiting fungal endophytes of Chilean tree species *Drimys winteri* and *Prumnopitys andina* were isolated and assayed for lignocellulolytic enzyme production and wood biodegradation. In *D. winteri*, an endophytic basidiomycete identified as *Bjerkandera* sp., and a deuteromycete classified as sterile fungi, whilst in *P. andina,* an unidentified basidiomycete, and also a sterile fungi able to develop a non-selective white-rot wood decay (Oses et al. 2006). Cellulose hydrolysis is achieved by endoglucanases and cellobiohydrolases, collectively termed cellulases. Hydrolysis of hemicellulose, a mixed polymer, occurs via the action of xylanases, mannanases, and other hydrolytic enzymes with broad substrate specificity. Cellulases are a complex enzyme system, comprising endo-1,4-b-D-glucanase, exo-1,4-b-glucanase, and D-glucosidase. These enzymes, together with other related enzymes, viz. hemicellulases and pectinases, are among the most important group of enzymes that are employed in the processing of lignocellulosic materials for the production of feed, fuel, and chemical feed stocks (Pandey et al. 1999). Cellulases and xylanases however find applications in several other areas, like in textile industry for fibre treatment and in retting process (Pandey et al. 1999). Cellulases can be used in the textile industry for bio-stoning and bio-finishing of cellulosic fibres, and hemicellulases can be applied for bio-bleaching of kraft pulps. Furthermore, in the food industry, cellulases and hemicellulases can be used for extraction and clarification of fruit and vegetable juices, and in the animal feed industry, these enzymes can promote an increase in the nutritive quality of feed and also in production of lignocellulosic ethanol (Pandey et al. 1999). Two species of *Acremonium* were able to produce cellulases and hemicellulases in submerged culture (SC) and in solid-state fermentation (SSF), using different carbon source (Almeida et al. 2011).

Xylanases have potential application in food, feed, paper, pulp, and textile industries (Pandey et al. 1999). These enzymes degrade plant fibres made of xylan hemicellulose producing xylose monomers. One of the most important xylanase

Table 2 Enzymes produced from endophytic fungi from different host plants

Endophytic fungi	Source plant	Enzymes	References
Colletotrichum sp.	*Cinnamomum iners*, *Camellia sinensis*	Cellulase, mannanase, protease, xylanase	Moy et al. (2002)
Phomopsis sp.	*Garcinia cowa* *Trichilia connaroides* *Cinnamomum iners*	Cellulase, mannanase, xylanase	Moy et al. (2002)
Colletotrichum sp. AHU9748	*Abelmoschus esculentus*	B-Galactosidase, rhamnogalacturonan lyase, acetylesterase	Grünig et al. (2008)
Acephala applanata	*Conifer roots*	Amylases, laccases, proteinases	Reddy et al. (1996)
Acremonium zeae	*Zea mays*	Xylanase	Bischoff et al. (2009)
Acremonium sp.	*Acrostichum aureum*	Amylase, cellulase, lipase	Maria et al. (2005)
Acremonium typhinum	*Poa ampla*	Proteinase	Sieber et al. (1991)
Acremonium terrícola *Cladosporium cladosporioides* *Fusarium lateritium* *Nigrospora sphaerica* *Penicillium aurantiogriseum* *Pestalotiopsis guepinii* *Xylaria* sp. *1*	*Opuntia ficus-indica* Mill. *(Cactaceae)*	Cellulase, protease, xylanase	Bezerra et al. (2012)
Alternaria chlamydospora	*Acanthus ilicifolius*	Cellulase, lipase, protease	Maria et al. (2005)
Alternaria sp. *Fusarium* sp.	*Acrostichum aureum*	Amylase, cellulase, lipase, protease	Maria et al. (2005)
Bjerkandera sp.	*Drimys winteri*	Cellulase, phenoloxidase	Oses et al. (2006)
Cladosporium sphaerospermum *Phoma tropica* *Phomopsis archeri* *Tetraploa aristata* *Xylaria* sp. *2*	*Opuntia ficus-indica* Mill. *(Cactaceae)*	Protease, xylanase	Bezerra et al. (2012)
Colletotrichum musae	*Musa cavendish*	*Acid phosphatase*	Bryant et al. (2007)
Cylindrocephalum sp.	*Alpinia calcarata* (Haw.) Roscoe	*Amylase*	Sunitha et al. (2012)
Discosia sp.	*Calophyllum inophyllum*	*Amylase*	Hegde et al. (2011)
Melanconium apiocarpum	*Alnus viridis*	*Laccase, amylase, cellulase*	Guo et al. (2008)

(continued)

Table 2 (continued)

Endophytic fungi	Source plant	Enzymes	References
Monodictys castaneae	*Opuntia ficus-indica* Mill. *(Cactaceae)*	*Xylanase*	Bezerra et al. (2012)
Monotospora sp.	*Cynodon dactylon*	*Laccase*	Weihua and Hongzhang (2008)
Mortierella hyalina	*Osbeckia stellata*	*Cellulase, lipase, protease, xylanase*	Bhagobaty and Joshi (2012)
Mycelia sterilia YY-*5*	*Rhus chinensis* Mill.	*Laccase*	Lumyong et al. (2002)
Neotyphodium lolii Epichloe festucae	*Poa ampla*	*þ − 1,6-glucanase*	Wang et al. (2006)
Neotyphodium sp.	*Poa ampla*	*Chitinase*	Saranpuetti et al. (2006)
Paecilomyces variabilis	*Osbeckia chinensis*	*Amylase, lipase, protease, xylanase*	Bhagobaty and Joshi (2012)
Penicillium sp.	*Camellia caduca Schima khasiana*	*Cellulase, lipase, protease, xylanase*	Bhagobaty and Joshi (2012)
Penicillium sp.	*Centella asiatica*	*Cellulase*	Devi et al. (2012)
Pestalotiopsis sp.	*Acanthus ilicifolius*	*Amylase, cellulase, lipase, protease*	Maria et al. (2005)
Pestalotiopsis sp.	*Manglietia garrettii*	*Cellulase, mannanase*	Moy et al. (2002)
Phoma sp.	*Garcinia cowa*	*Cellulase, mannanase, protease*	Moy et al. (2002)
Preussia minima Alternaria sp.	*Eremophila longifolia*	*Amylase*	Zhang et al. (2010)
Talaromyces flavus	*Potentilla fulgens*	*Lipase, protease, xylanase*	Bhagobaty and Joshi (2012)

applications is the pretreatment of pulps, prior to bleaching in pulp and paper industries and jute fibre upgradation (Beg et al. 2001). These enzymes release lignin fragments by hydrolyzing residual xylan, and the pretreatment with xylanase reduces the usage of chlorine as the bleaching agent. Xylanases are also used for bread-making and beer production. In recent years, lignin-degrading enzymes have been extensively studied because of their potential biotechnological applications in various industrial sectors. These applications include biotransformation of lignocellulosic biomass to feeds, fuels, and chemicals, bio-pulping, bio-bleaching of paper pulps, decolorizing and detoxifying kraft bleach effluents, degradation of highly toxic environmental chemicals, biosensor, cosmetics, food, and others (Maciel et al. 2010). Ligninolytic enzyme is a big family of various isoforms of extracellular enzyme, of which lignin peroxidase, manganese-dependent peroxidase, and laccase are the three major classes. These enzymes are directly involved not only in the degradation of lignin in their natural lignocellulosic substrates but also in the degradation of various xenobiotic compounds such as polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons

(PAHs) (Pointing 2001). White-rot fungi are regarded as the most efficient producers which secrete ligninolytic enzymes in nature. An endophytic *Pestalotiopsis* sp. is able to produce laccase under submerged fermentation (SF) and solid-state fermentation (SSF) with various lignocellulosic by-products as substrates (Chen et al. 2011). Laccases (benzenediol, oxygen oxidoreductases) are glycosylated polyphenol oxidases which degrade lignin efficiently (Kunamneni et al. 2008). These enzymes have important applications in pulp and paper industry, animal biotechnology, biotransformation, and detoxification of phenolic pollutants (Kunamneni et al. 2008).

Proteases [serine protease, cysteine (thiol) protease, aspartic protease, and metalloprotease] are the most important class of enzymes that catalyse total hydrolysis of protein and have been studied extensively since the advent of enzymology (Oliviera et al. 2010). They find application in a number of biotechnological processes, viz. in food processing and pharmaceuticals, leather industry, and detergent industry (Joo et al. 2003). The amylase family of enzymes has been well characterized through the study of various microorganisms. Amylases break down starch to give a variety of products including glucose, maltose, and dextrin which can be used for the synthesis of a number of industrially important compounds such as citric acid, ethanol, glutamic acid, lactic acid, lysine, and sorbitol (Maarel et al. 2002). These enzymes have found applications in the processed food industry, fermentation technology, and textile and paper industries (Pandey et al. 1999). A root endophytic fungus *Piriformospora indica* was able to show amylase activity on soluble starch (Kumar et al. 2012).

Lipases (triacylglycerol hydrolase) are hydrolytic enzymes capable of cleaving the ester bond of triacylglycerol and catalyse ester synthesis in vitro by shifting equilibrium of reaction (Contesini et al. 2010; Fernandes et al. 2007; Li and Zong 2010; Mohamed et al. 2011). These enzymes can be obtained from several organisms; however, microorganisms are most promising for this purpose (Fernandes et al. 2007; Salihu et al. 2012). Lipases have a wide array of industrial applications in the production and processing of detergents, oils, fats, and dairy products. In addition, they are also used in the preparation of therapeutic agents (Gog et al. 2012). Within the broad application field of lipases, synthesis of biodiesel is attracting great interest (Hasan et al. 2006). Among the microorganisms, yeasts have been used widely for the production of these enzymes, with special emphasis on the genus *Candida* sp. (Sharma et al. 2001; Salihu et al. 2011). It was shown that partially purified enzyme containing lipolytic activity, produced by submerged fermentation in a lower-cost cultivation medium by endophytic yeast *Candida guilliermondii*, can be used as a catalyst for the production of methyl oleate using methanol as substrate (Oliveira et al. 2014).

Chitin, a linear homopolymer of β-1,4-linked N-acetylglucosamine, is a constituent of the exoskeleton of insects and shells of crustaceans and forms the basic structural component of the fungal cell wall. Enzymes that degrade this insoluble polymer are chitinolytic enzymes or chitinases. Fungal chitinases play a major role in the ecosystem by degrading and cycling carbon and nitrogen from chitin (Kellner and Vandenbol 2010). Chitinases of fungi are also being studied for their potential

in biocontrol of phytophagous nematodes and plant pathogenic fungi (Gan et al. 2007). Plants also produce chitinases as a defence response to infection by pathogens (Regalado et al. 2000). Chitinases have many desirable properties and find use in control of microbes and tumours, wound healing, wastewater treatment, and drug delivery (Aoyagi et al. 2007; Hamman 2010). Chitinases are produced by many fungi including those associated with plants such as mycorrhiza and pathogens, bacteria, and endophytes (Rajulu et al. 2011).

Volatile Hydrocarbons from Endophytic Fungi

Many endophytic fungi are known to produce a wide spectrum of volatile organic compounds with potential energy applications which have been described as mycodiesel (Strobel 2014a, b). Many of these mycodiesel hydrocarbons are terpenes (pinene and bisabolene) which are actively being investigated as potential "drop-in" biofuels for replacing diesel and aviation due to their high energy densities (Wu et al. 2016). The genus *Muscodor* especially *M. albus* has evoked the general interest for searching volatile organic compounds from endophytes around the world (Sharma et al. 2001). Further, *Gliocladium roseum* (now *Ascocoryne sarcoides*) was isolated from *Eucryphia cordifolia* able to produce class I alkanes that are found in all diesel fuels (Tomsheck et al. 2010; Strobel et al. 2008). Endophytic *Gliocladium roseum* grown on cellulose substrate and a number of isolates belonged to *Nodulisporium* sp. produce a plethora of volatiles having fuel potential (Ahamed and Ahring 2011; Mends et al. 2012; Hassan et al. 2013). These include *Daldinia* spp., *Hypoxylon* spp., and *Annulohypoxylon* spp. (Hassan et al. 2013) and produce 1, 8 cineole along with ketones and hydrocarbons such as terpenoids, cyclohexanes, benzene derivatives, esters, ketones, and straight-chained ones (Tomsheck et al. 2010, Mends et al. 2012, Strobel 2014a, b). Similarly, an endophytic *Phomopsis* sp. growing in rain forests of South America (Singh et al. 2011) and *Phoma* sp. isolated from the roots of *Larrea tridentata* were found to produce several hydrocarbons with fuel potential (Strobel et al. 2011).

In ecosystems, plants compensate for their immobility by releasing volatile substances into the atmosphere and from roots into the soil constituting about 1% of secondary plant metabolites. These volatile substances promote plant communication and interaction with the surrounding environment (Schalchli et al. 2016). Volatile compounds are typically lipophilic liquids with high vapour pressures. These are lethal to a wide variety of plant and human pathogenic fungi and bacteria and are also effective against nematodes and certain insects (Strobel 2003). *M. albus* grown in richer media produce volatile compounds with higher inhibitory and killing effect capacity of the test organisms. 1-Butanol, 3-methyl-, acetate was the most biologically active, reducing growth of *Pythium ultimum*, *Rhizoctonia solani*, *Tapesia yallundae*, *Xylaria* sp., *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum*, *Cercospora beticola*, and *Fusarium solani* (Strobel et al. 2001). The fungal volatiles are known to stimulate or enhance soilborne biocontrol agents (Wheatley 2002). Fungal pathogens

Fusarium oxysporum and *S. sclerotiorum* are inhibited by the volatiles produced by the endophytic fungi *Colletotrichum truncatum* isolated from oilseed crop *Jatropha curcas* (Kumar and Kaushik 2013). The volatiles of *M. albus* are useful for the control of postharvest plant diseases, known as "mycofumigation" (Stinson et al. 2003). Some endophytic fungal volatiles effectively inhibit or kill the most common postharvest fruit pathogens (Park et al. 2010). The volatiles produced by endophytic fungi have been used to replace methyl bromide (MeBr), a traditional soil fumigant that is now being banned in much of the world because it depletes the ozone layer. In addition, the VHCs of *M. crispans* killed several human pathogens, including *Yersinia pestis*, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, and *Staphylococcus aureus* (Mitchell et al. 2010). Another endophyte, *M. fengyangensis*, killed the pathogen *Escherichia coli* (Zhang et al. 2010). Fumigation with VHCs produced by *M. albus* caused mortality of codling moth adults and neonate larvae (Strobel et al. 2010; Schalchli et al. 2016).

Biotransformation Mediated Through Endophytic Fungi

Biotransformation can be defined as the use of biological systems to produce chemical changes on compounds which are not easily prepared by the chemical methods (Borges et al. 2009b, b). In this process a molecule can be modified by transforming functional groups with or without degradation of carbon skeleton. Such modification results in the formation of novel and useful products (Borges et al. 2009b; Pimentel et al. 2011). Moreover, biotransformation process allows the production of enantiomerically pure compounds by region and stereoselectivity, thus eliminating the need for complicated separation and purification steps (Borges et al. 2008). Further, it can be carried out under mild conditions like ambient temperature and without the need of high pressure and extreme conditions. Besides, the reaction occurs under ecologically acceptable conditions with lower emissions of industrial residues and production of biodegradable residues and products, thus reducing the environmental problems (Pimentel et al. 2011). For this reason biotechnology using microbial cultures and/or their enzymatic systems alone has received increasing attention as a method for the conversion of lipids, monoterpenes, diterpenes, steroids, triterpenes, alkaloids, and lignans to produce novel bioactive molecules with potential for pharmaceutical and food industries (Bianchini et al. 2015). Microorganisms are able to catalyse a broad spectrum of chemical reactions. They also exhibit high substrate tolerance by accepting a large variety of compounds. Fungi have been used extensively for biotransformation studies (Borges et al. 2009a). Biotransformation can be effectively used in detoxification of toxic substances. The biotransformation of the phytoanticipins by four endophytic fungi isolated from *Aphelandra tetragona* was reported. Endophytic *Fusarium sambucinum* detoxified 2-benzoxazolinone (BOA) and 2-hydroxy-1,4-benzoxazin-3-one (HBOA) to N-(2-hydroxyphenyl)malonamic acid. Other endophytes such as *Plectosporium tabacinum, Gliocladium cibotii*, and *Chaetosphaeria* sp. transformed HBOA to 2-hydroxy-N-(2-hydroxyphenyl)

acetamide, N-(2-hydroxyphenyl)acetamide, N-(2-hydroxy-5-nitrophenyl)acetamide, N-(2-hydroxy-3-nitrophenyl)acetamide, 2-amino-3H-phenoxazin-3-one, 2-acetylamino-3H-phenoxazin-3-one, and 2-(N-hydroxy)acetylamino-3H-phenoxazin-3-one (Zikmundova et al. 2002). Molina et al. (2012) evaluated antimicrobial and biotransformation of terpenes by endophytic fungi isolate from *Dipteryx alata* Vog. Three fungal strains bioconverted α-pinene into verbenol compound with great industrial interest. Endophytic *Fusarium verticillioides* isolated from maize (*Zea mays* L.) detoxified 2-benzoxazolinone into 2-aminophenol and 2-acetamidophenol (Glenn et al. 2003). Gonda et al. (2016) studied decomposition of diclofenac, diflunisal, ibuprofen, mefenamic acid, and piroxicam using nine identified strains of endophytic and epiphytic fungi (from *Ascomycota*) isolated from a medicinal plant, *Plantago lanceolata* leaves. Endophytic *Aspergillus nidulans* and *Bipolaris tetramera* effectively decreased the concentration of NSAIDS in model solutions. The stereo- and regioselective synthesis of target compounds is one of the most important subjects in synthetic organic chemistry. The biotransformation of exogenous substances has been widely used and studied for the synthesis of chiral compounds (Hamada et al. 2003). Endophytic fungi have been employed to change the three-dimensional conformation of compounds because of their effective biotransformation enzymes. Borges et al. (2007) reported stereoselective biotransformation of thioridazine yielding major human metabolites thioridazine-2-sulfoxide and thioridazine-5-sulfoxide from *Asteraceae* plant hosts.

The microbial stereoselective biotransformation of flavans has been achieved with endophytic *Diaporthe* sp. isolated from *Camellia sinensis*. The endophytic fungus stereoselectively oxidized the C-4 position of (+)-catechin and (−)-epicatechin to give the corresponding 3,4-cis-dihydroxyflavan derivatives and oxidized (−)-epicatechin-3-O-gallate and (−)-epigallocatechin-3-O-gallate into 3,4-dihydroxyflavan derivatives. It was found that this microorganism promotes the 2R substitution in the same direction as the configuration of 3-hydroxyl function (Augusta et al. 2005).

Efforts have been made to study bio mimetic systems has been to demonstrate parallels between the phase I reactions of drugs and other xenobiotics in mammalian and microbial systems. This kind of study could be accomplished by using either isolated enzyme systems or whole intact organisms (Pupo et al. 2008). Some biocatalysts can accomplish reactions at sites that are difficult to access by organic synthesis, e.g. the selective functionalization of nonactivated positions in organic molecules such as the hydroxylation of aliphatic chains.

Propranolol (Prop) is a non-cardioselective β-adrenergic blocking agent that is widely used in the treatment of cardiovascular diseases. One fungus, *Glomerella cingulata*, isolated from *V. arenaria* can transform Prop into a more potent derivative (Borges et al. 2009b, b). In a similar study, endophytic *Phomopsis* sp., *Glomerella cingulata*, *Penicillium crustosum*, *Chaetomium globosum*, and *Aspergillus fumigatus* were able to biotransform propranolol (Prop) (Borges and Bonato 2011). Aphelandrine, a macrocyclic polyamine alkaloid found in the roots of different species of the genus *Aphelandra* (Acanthaceae), was metabo-

lized by several endophytes isolated from the roots of *A. tetragona* (Werner et al. 1997). *Fusarium moniliforme*, one of the most common endophytic fungi associated with corn (*Zea mays* L.), was able to metabolize 6-methoxy-benzoxazolinone and 2-benzoxazolinone (Benzoxazinone, a class of phytoanticipins that occurs in the Gramineae, Acanthaceae, Ranunculaceae, and Scrophulariaceae families) into N-(2-hydroxy-4-methoxyphenyl) and N-(2- hydroxyphenyl)malonamic acids, respectively (Yue et al. 1998; Borges et al. 2009b). An endophytic fungal strain was able to produce lepidimoide, an allelopathic substance, by using polysaccharides from *Abelmoschus esculentum* Moench (okra), which were added to the culture medium as a carbon source (Tanaka et al. 2002). Antimalarial alkaloids quinine, quinidine, cinchonidine, and cinchonine were biotransformed into their 1-N-oxide derivatives by endophytic *Xylaria* sp. isolated from *Cinchona pubescens* (Shibuya et al. 2003). Verza et al. (2009) reported the biotransformation of the tetrahydrofuran lignan, (−)-grandisin, by the endophytic fungus *Phomopsis* sp., obtained from *Viguiera arenaria*, led to the formation of a new compound which showed a trypanocidal activity similar to the natural precursor. Betulinic acid and betulonic acid are natural triterpenes found in many plants that exhibit important biological properties, e.g. antineuroblastoma and antiviral activity. The endophytic fungi *Arthrobotrys*, *Chaetophoma*, and *Colletotrichum dematium* showed mild and selective oxidation reactions that could convert betulinic acid to many oxygenated derivatives (Bastos and Magan 2007). The endophytic fungus *Coelomycetes* AFKR-3 isolated from young stems of yellow moonshed plant (*Arcangelisia flava* (L.) Merr.) has shown the capability to biotransform berberine (antimicrobial compound) into its 7-*N*-oxide derivative. This fungus can also biotransform the protoberberine alkaloid palmatine into a new derivative palmatine 7-*N*-oxide in liquid medium of glucose-yeast extract-peptone (Agustaa et al. 2014). Endophytic fungus *Umbelopsis isabellina* isolated from medicinal plant *Huperzia serrata* was found to transform ursolic acid, a pentacyclic triterpene, into 3b-hydroxy-urs-11-en-28,13-lactone, 3b,7b-dihydroxy-urs-11-en-28,13-lactone, and 1b,3b-dihydroxy-urs-11-en-28,13-lactone (Fu et al. 2011). The fungus *Aspergillus flavus* isolated as endophytic of the plant *Paspalum maritimum* Trin. was evaluated for its potential application in biotransformation reactions. The compounds chalcone, 3,4,5-trimethoxychalcone, and 2,3,4,4-tetramethoxychalcone were biotransformed, respectively, in dihydrochalcone (4), 3,4,5-trimethoxydihydrochalcone, and 2,3,4,4-tetramethoxydihydrocha lcone (Corrêa et al. 2014). The biotransformation of the major saponins in *Panax notoginseng*, including the ginsenosides by endophytic *Fusarium*, *Nodulisporium*, *Brevundimonas*, and *Bacillus*, was reported (Luo et al. 2013). Polyphyllin VII (PPL7) was biotransformed by endophytes from the medicinal plant *Paris polyphylla* Smith, var. yunnanensis. This produced a new compound, ZH-2, with pharmacological activity in vitro and in vivo. ZH-2 was more potent than PPL7 in selectively killing more chemoresistant than chemosensitive breast cancer cells (He et al. 2016).

Conclusion

Endophytic fungi have proved to be sources of economically and therapeutically important enzymes; however, endophytes have only recently been prospected for enzymes. New and more extensive studies using the well-known methods of fungal cultivation to optimize the production of enzymes are necessary. Recently, endophytes have gained attention and usefulness in biotransformation processes. Fungi have catalysed chemical transformations in a broad range of substrates yielding novel chemical entities that could be used as leads for drug design. Fungi have also been used as reliable models to study drug metabolism, an essential step in the drug development process. Modern, genetic, and genomic methods have led to a more comprehensive elucidation of some biochemical pathways for secondary fungal metabolite production and their functional diversity. The fungal genomic era has shown great and unexpected fungal ability for the biosynthesis of natural products. Genomic fungal sequences have revealed important information about novel gene clusters; however, collaborative work among chemists, mycologists, and geneticists is essential for better correlating the genomic information to the secondary metabolites and their functions.

References

Agustaa A, Wulansaria D, Praptiwia NA, Fathonia A (2014) Biotransformation of Protoberberine Alkaloids by the Endophytic Fungus Coelomycetes AFKR-3 Isolated from Yellow Moonsheed Plant (*Archangelisia flava* (L.) Merr.). Procedia Chem 13:38–43

Ahamed A, Ahring BK (2011) Production of hydrocarbon compounds by endophytic fungi *Gliocaldium* sp. grown on cellulose. Bioresource Tech 102:9718–9722

Almeida MN, Guimarães VM, Bischoff KM, Falkoski DL, Pereira OL, Gonçalves DSPO, Rezende ST (2011) Cellulases and hemicellulases from endophytic acremonium species and its application on sugarcane bagasse hydrolysis. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 165:594–610

Aoyagi S, Onishi H, Machida Y (2007) Novel chitosan wound dressing loaded with minocycline for the treatment of severe burn wounds. Int J Pharm 330:138–145

Arnold AE, Maynard Z, Gilbert GS, Coley PD, Kursar TA (2000) Are tropical fungal endophytes hyperdiverse? Ecol Lett 3:267–274

Augusta A, Maehara S, Ohashi K, Simanjuntak P, Shibuya H (2005) Stereoselective oxidation at C-4 of flavans by the endophytic fungus *Diaporthe* sp. isolated from a tea plant. Chem Pharm Bull 53:1565–1569

Bastos AC, Magan N (2007) Soil volatile fingerprints: use for discrimination between soil types under different environmental conditions. Sensors Actuators B Chem 125:556–562

Bezerra JD, Santos MG, Svedese VM, Lima DM, Fernandes MJ, Paiva LM, Souza-Motta CM (2012) Richness of endophytic fungi isolated from *Opuntia ficus-indica* Mill. (*Cactaceae*) and preliminary screening for enzyme production. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 28:1989–1995

Beg QK, Kapoor M, Mahajan L, Hoondal GS (2001) Microbial xylanases and their industrial applications: a review. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 56(3–4):326–338

Bhagobaty RK, Joshi SR (2012) Enzymatic activity of fungi endophytic on five medicinal plant species of the pristine sacred forests of Meghalaya, India. Biotechnol Bioprocess Eng 17:33–40

Bianchini LF, Arruda MFC, Vieira SR, Campelo PMS, Grégio AMT, Rosa EAR (2015) Microbial biotransformation to obtain new antifungals. Front Microbiol 6:1433. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2015.01433

Bills GF, González-Menéndez V, Martín J, Platas G, Fournier J, Persoh D, Stadler M (2012) *Hypoxylon* pulicicidum sp. nov. (Ascomycota, Xylariales), a pantropical insecticide-producing endophyte. PLoS One 7:46687

Bischoff KM, Wicklow DT, Jordan DB, de Rezende ST, Liu S, Hughes SR, Rich JO (2009) Extracellular hemicellulolytic enzymes from the maize endophyte *Acremonium zeae*. Curr Microbiol 58:499–503

Borges KB, De Souza Borges W, Pupo MT, Bonato PS (2007) Endophytic fungi as models for the stereoselective biotransformation of thioridazine. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 77(3):669–674

Borges KB, Bonato PS (2011) Enantioselective biotransformation of propranolol to the active metabolite 4-hydroxypropranolol by endophytic fungi. Quim Nova 34(8):1354–1357

Borges W, Borges K, Bonato P, Said S, Pupo MT (2009a) Endo-phytic fungi: natural products, enzymes and biotransformation reactions. Curr Org Chem 13:1137–1163

Borges KB, Borges WS, Durán-Patrón R, Pupo MT, Bonato PS, Collado IG (2009b) Stereoselective biotransformation using fungi as biocatalysts. Tetrahedron Asymmetry 20:385–397

Borges KB, Borges WS, Pupo MT, Bonato PS (2008) Stereoselective analysis of thioridazine-2-sulfoxide and thioridazine-5- sulfoxide: an investigation of rac-thioridazine biotransformation by some endophytic fungi. J Pharm Biomed Anal 46:945–952

Bryant MK, May KJ, Bryan GT, Scott B (2007) Functional analysis of a β-1,6-glucanase gene from the grass endophytic fungus Epichloë festucae. Fungal Genet Biol 44(8):808–817

Clay K (1988) Fungal endophytes of grasses: a defensive mutualism between plants and fungi. Ecology 69:10–16

Chen L, Yang X, Raza W, Li J, Liu Y, Qiu M, Zhang F, Shen Q (2011) *Trichoderma harzianum* SQR-T037 rapidly degrades allelochemicals in rhizospheres of continuously cropped cucumbers. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 89(5):1653–1663

Contesini FJ, Lopes DB, Macedo GA, Nascimento MG, Carvalho PO (2010) *Aspergillus* sp. lipase: potential biocatalyst for industrial use. J Mol Catal B Enzym 67:163–171

Corrêa RCG, Rhoden SA, Mota TR, Azevedo JL, (et al) (2014) Endophytic fungi: expanding the arsenal of industrial enzyme producers. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 41:1467–1478

Costa LSR, Azevedo JL, Pereira JO, Carneiro ML, Labate CA (2000) Symptomless infection of banana and maize by endophytic fungi impairs photosynthetic efficiency. New Phytol 147:609–615

Daisy BH, Strobel GA, Castillo U, Ezra D, Sears J, Weaver DK, Runyon JB (2002) Naphthalene, an insect repellent, is produced by *Muscodor vitigenus*, a novel endophytic fungus. Microbiology 148:3737–3741

Devi NN, Prabakaran JJ, Wahab F (2012) Phytochemical analysis and enzyme analysis of endophytic fungi from *Centella asiatica*. Asian Pac J Trop Biomed 2:1280–1284

Evidente A, Maddau L, Spanu E, Franceschini A, Lazzaroni S, Motta AJ (2003) Diplopyrone, a new phytotoxic tetrahydropyranpyran-2-one produced by Diplodia mutila, a fungus pathogen of cork oak. J Nat Prod 66:313

Fernandes MLM, Saad EB, Meira JA, Ramos LP, Mitchell DA, Krieger N (2007) Esterification and transesterification reactions catalysed by addition of fermented solids to organic reaction media. J Mol Catal B Enzym 44:8–13

Fu SB, Yang JS, Cui J, FengX SD (2011) Biotransformation of ursolic acid by an endophytic fungus from medicinal plant *Huperzia serrata*. Chem Pharm Bull 59(9):1180–1182

Gan Z, Yang J, Tao N, Liang L, Mi Q, Li J, Zhang K-Q (2007) Cloning of the gene Lecanicillium psalliotae chitinase Lpchi1 and identification of its potential role in the biocontrol of root-knot nematode Meloidogyne incognita. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 76:1309–1317

Glenn AE, Meredith FI, Morrison WH, Bacon CW (2003) Identification of intermediate and branch metabolites resulting from biotransformation of 2-benzoxazolinone by *Fusarium verticillioides*. Appl Environ Microbiol 69:3165–3169

Gog A, Roman M, Tos M, Paizs C, Irimie FD (2012) Biodiesel production using enzymatic transesterification – current state and perspectives. Renew Energy 39:10–16
Gonda S, Kiss-Szikszaib A, Szűcsa Z, Ballaa B, Vasasa G (2016) Efficient biotransformation of non-steroid anti-inflammatory drugs by endophytic and epiphytic fungi from dried leaves of a medicinal plant, *Plantago lanceolata* L. Int Biodet Biodeg 108:115–121
Grünig CR, Duò A, Sieber TN, Holdenrieder O (2008) Assignment of species rank to six reproductively isolated cryptic species of the *Phialocephala fortinii* s.1.-Acephala applanata species complex. Mycologia 100:47–67
Gunatilaka AAL (2006) Natural products from plant-associated micro- organisms: distribution, structural diversity, bioactivity, and implications of their occurrence. J Nat Prod 69:509–526
Guo LD, Huang GR, Wang Y (2008) Seasonal and tissue age influences on endophytic fungi of *Pinus tabulaeformis* (*Pinaceae*) in the Dongling Mountains, Beijing. J Int Plant Biol 50:997–1003
Hamada H, Kondo Y, Ishihara K, Nakajima N, Hamada H, Kurihara R, Hirata T (2003) Stereoselective biotransformation of limonene and limonene oxide by *Cyanobacterium*, *Synechococcus* sp. PCC 7942. J BiosciBioeng 96:481–584
Hamman JH (2010) Chitosan based polyelectrolyte complexes as potential carrier materials in drug delivery systems. Mar Drugs 8:1305–1322
Harper JK, Arif AM, Ford EJ et al (2003) Pestacin: a 1, 3-dihydro isobenzofuran from *Pestalotiopsis microspora* possessing antioxidant and antimycotic activities. Tetrahedron 59:2471–2476
Hasan F, Shah AA, Hameed A (2006) Industrial applications of microbial lipases. Enzym Microb Technol 39:235–251
He DX, Li GH, Gu XT, Zhang L, Mao AQ, Wei J, Liu DQ, Shi GY, Ma X (2016) A new agent developed by biotransformation of polyphyllin VII inhibits chemoresistance in breast cancer. Oncotarget 7(22):31814–31824
Hegde SV, Ramesha A, Srinvas C (2011) Optimization of amylase production from an endophytic fungi Discosia sp. isolated from *Calophyllum inophyllum*. Int J Agric Technol 7:805–813
Jordaan A, Taylor JE, Rossenkhan R (2006) Occurrence and possible role of endophytic fungi associated with seed pods of *Colophospermum mopane* (Fabaceae) in Botswana. S Afr J Bot 72:245–255
Kellner H, Vandenbol M (2010) Fungi unearthed: transcripts encoding lignocellulolytic and chitinolytic enzymes in forest soil. PLoS One 5(6):10971. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0010971
Khan AL, Hamayun M, Kang SM, Kim YH, Jung HY, Lee JH, Lee IJ (2012) Endophytic fungal association via gibberellins and indole acetic acid can improve plant growth under abiotic stress: an example of *Paecilomyces formosus* LHL10. BMC Microbiol 12:3
Kudanga T, Mwenje E (2005) Extracellular cellulase production by tropical isolates of *Aureobasidium pullulans*. Can J Microbiol 51:773–776
Kumar S, Kaushik N (2013) Endophytic fungi isolated from oil-seed crop Jatropha curcas produces oil and exhibit antifungal activity. PLoS One 8(2):1–8
Kumar V, Sahai V, Bisaria VS (2012) Production of amylase and chlamydospores by *Piriformospora indica*, a root endophytic fungus biocatalysis and agricultural. Biotechnology 1:124–128
Kunamneni A, Camarero S, García-Burgos C, Plou FJ, Ballesteros A, Alcalde M (2008) Engineering and applications of fungal laccases for organic synthesis. Microb Cell Factories 7(1):32
Lee J, Lobkovsky E, Pliam NB, Strobel GA, Clardy JJ (1995) Subglutinols A and B: immunosuppressive compounds from the endophytic fungus *Fusarium subglutinans*. J Org Chem 60:7076
Lemons A, Clay K, Rudgers JA (2005) Connecting plant-microbial interactions above and belowground: a fungal endophyte affects decomposition. Oecologia 145:595–604
Li JY, Strobel GA, Harper JK, Lobkovsky E, Clardy J (2000) Cryptocin, a potent tetramic acid antimycotic from the endophytic fungus *Cryptosporiopsis quercina*. Org Lett 2:767
Li N, Zong MH (2010) Lipases from the genus Penicillium: production, purification, characterization and applications. J Mol Catal B Enzym 66:43–54

Lumyong S, Lumyong P, McKenzie EHC, Hyde KD (2002) Enzymatic activity of endophytic fungi of six native seedling species from DoiSuthep-Pui National Park, Thailand. Can J Microbiol 48:1109–1112

Luo SL, Dang LZ, Li JF, Zou CG, Zhang KQ, Li GH (2013) Biotransformation of saponins by endophytes isolated from *Panax notoginseng*. Chem Biodivers 10(11):2021–2031

Maciel MJM, Silva ACE, Ribeiro HCT (2010) Industrial and biotechnological applications of ligninolytic enzymes of the basidiomycota: a review. Electron J Biotechnol 13:6

Maria GL, Sridhar KR, Raviraja NS (2005) Antimicrobial and enzyme activity of mangrove endophytic fungi of southwest coast of India. J Agric Technol 1:67–80

Mends MT, Yu E, Strobel GA, Hassan SRU, Booth E, Geary B, Sears J, Taatjes CA, Hadi M (2012) An endophytic *Nodulisporium* sp. producing volatile organic compounds having bioactivity and fuel potential. J Pet Environ Biotechnol 3:3

Mitchell AM, Strobel GA, Moore E, Robison R, Sears J (2010) Volatile antimicrobials from Muscodor crispans, a novel endophytic fungus. Microbiology 156:270–277

Mohamed SA, Abdel-Mageed HM, Tayel SA, El-Nabrawi MA, Fahmy AS (2011) Characterization of *Mucor racemosus* lipase with potential application for the treatment of cellulite. Process Biochem 46:642–648

Molina G, Pimentel MR, Bertucci TCP, Pastore GM (2012) Application of fungal endophytes in biotechnological processes. Chem Eng Trans 27:288–294

Moy M, Li HM, Sullivan R, White JF Jr, Belanger FC (2002) Endophytic fungal β-1,6-glucanase expression in the infected host grass. Plant Physiol 130:1298–1308

Oliveira ACD, Fernandes ML, Mariano AB (2014) Production and characterization of an extracellular lipase from *Candida guilliermondii*. Braz J Microbiol 45(4):1503–1511

Oses R, Valenzuela S, Freer J, Baeza J, Rodríguez J (2006) Evaluation of fungal endophytes for lignocellulolytic enzyme production and wood biodegradation. Int Biodeterior Biodegrad 57:129–135

Osono T, Takeda H (2001) Effects of organic chemical quality and mineral nitrogen addition on lignin and holocellulose decomposition of beech leaf litter by *Xylaria* sp. Eur J Soil Biol 37:17–23

Pandey A, Benjamin S, Soccol CR, Nigam P, Krieger N, Thomaz-Soccol V (1999) The realm microbial lipases in biotechnology. Biotechnol Appl Biochem 29:119–131

Park MS, Ahn J, Choi GJ, Choi YH, Jang KS, Kim JC (2010) Potential of the volatile-producing fungus *Nodulisporium* sp. CF016 for the control of postharvest diseases of apple. Plant Pathol J 26:253–259

Pimentel MR, Molina G, Dionısio AP, Marosticá MR Jr, Pastore GM (2011) The use of endophytes to obtain bioactive compounds and their application in biotransformation process. Biotechnol Res Int 2011:576286. https://doi.org/10.4061/2011/576286

Pointing SB (2001) Feasibility of bioremediation by white-rot fungi. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 57:20–33

Pongcharoen W, Rukachaisirikul V, Phongpaichit S, Kuhn T, Pelzing M, Sakayaroj J, Taylor WC (2008) Metabolites from the endophytic fungus *Xylaria* sp. PSU-D14. Phytochemistry 69:1900–1902

Pulici M, Sugawara F, Koshino H, Uzawa J, Yoshida S, Lobkovsky E, Clardy JJ (1996) A new isodrimeninol from Pestalotiopsis sp. J Org Chem 61:2122

Pupo MT, Borges KB, Borges WS, Bonato PS (2008) Fungal biotransformations: a powerful tool in drug metabolism studies. In: Saikai R, Bezbaruah RL, Bora TC (eds) Microbial biotechnology. New India Publishing Agency, New Delhi, pp 47–66

Purahong W, Hyde KD (2011) Effects of fungal endophytes on grass and non-grass litter decomposition rates. Fungal Divers 47:1–7

Rajulu MBG, Thirunavukkarasu N, Suryanarayanan TS, Ravishankar JP, Gueddari NEE, Moerschbacher BM (2011) Chitinolytic enzymes from endophytic fungi. Fungal Divers 47:43–53

Reddy PV, Lam CK, Belanger FC (1996) Mutualistic fungal endophytes express a proteinase that is homologous to proteases suspected to be important in fungal pathogenicity. Plant Physiol 111:1209–1218

Redman RS, Sheehan KB, Stout RG, Rodrigues RJ, Henson JM (2002) Thermotolerance conferred to plant host and fungal endophyte during mutualistic symbiosis. Science 298:1581

Regalado AP, Pinheiro C, Vidal S, Chaves I, Ricardo CPP, Rodrigues-Pousada C (2000) The *Lupinus albus* class-III chitinase gene, IF-3, is constitutively expressed in vegetative organs and developing seeds. Planta 210:543–550

Riyaz-Ul-Hassan S (2013) An Endophytic Nodulisporium sp. from Central America producing volatile organic compounds with both biological and fuel potential. J Microbiol Biotechnol 23(1):29–35

Rodrigues KF (1996) In: Redlin SC, Carris LM (eds) Endophytic fungi in grasses and woody plants. American Phytopathological Society Press, San Diego, CA, p 121

Russell JR, Huang J, Anand P, Kucera K, Sandoval AG, Dant-Zler KW, Hickman D, Jee J, Kimovec FM, Koppstein D, Marks DH, Mittrmiller PA, Nunez SJ, Santiago M, Townes MA, Vishnevetsky M, Williams NE, MPN V, Boulanger LA, Slack CB, Strobel SA (2011) Biodegradation of polyester polyurethane by endophytic fungi. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:6076–6084

Saikkonen K, Ruokolainen K, Huitu O, Gundel PE, Piltti T, Hamilton CE, Helander M (2013) Fungal endophytes help prevent weed invasions. Agric Ecosyst Environ 165:1–5

Salihu A, Alam MZ, AbdulKarim MI, Salleh HM (2012) Lipase production: an insight in the utilization of renewable agricultural residues. Resour Conserv Recycling 58:36–44

Salihu A, Alam MZ, Karim MIA, Salleh HM (2011) Optimization of lipase production by *Candida cylindracea* in palm oil mill effluent based medium using statistical experimental design. J Mol Catal B Enzym 69:66–73

Saranpuetti C, Tanaka M, Sone T, Asano K, Tomita F (2006) Determination of enzymes from *Colletotrichum* sp. AHU9748 essential for lepidimoide production from okra polysaccharide. J Biosci Bioeng 102:452–456

Schalchli H, Tortella GR, Rubilar O, Parra L, Hormazabal E, Quiroz A (2016) Fungal volatiles: an environmentally friendly tool to control pathogenic microorganisms in plants. Crit Rev Biotechnol 36(1):144–152

Schulz B, Boyle C (2005) The endophytic continuum. Mycol Res 109:661–686

Schulz B, Boyle C, Draeger S, Römmert A, Krohn K (2002) Endophytic fungi: a source of novel biologically active secondary metabolites. Mycol Res 106:996–1004

Shankar Naik B, Shashikala J, Krishnamurthy YL (2006) Study on the diversity of endophytic communities from rice (*Oryza sativa* L.) and their antagonistic activities in vitro. Microbiol Res 3:290–296

Shankar Naik B, Shashikala J, Krishnamurthy YL (2008) Diversity of endophytic fungal communities in shrubby medicinal plants of Western Ghat region, Southern India. Fungal Ecol 1:89–93

Sharma R, Chisti Y, Banerjeea UC (2001) Production, purification, characterization and applications of lipases. Biotechnol Adv 19:627–662

Shibuya H, Kitamura C, Maehara S, Nagahata M, Winarno H, Simanjuntak P, Kim HS, Wataya Y, Ohashi K (2003) Transformation of cinchona alkaloids into 1-N-oxide derivatives by endophytic *Xylaria* sp. isolated from *Cinchona pubescens*. Chem Pharm Bull 51:71–74

Sieber TN, Sieber-Canavesis F, Petrini O, Ekramoddoullah AK, Dorworth CE (1991) Characterization of Canadian and European Melanconium from some *Alnus* species by morphological, cultural, and biochemical studies. Can J Bot 69:2170–2176

Singh SK, Strobel GA, Knighton B, Geary B, Sears J, Ezra D (2011) An endophytic Phomopsis sp. possessing bioactivity and fuel potential with its volatile organic compounds. Microb Ecol 61:729–739

Stinson M, Ezra D, Hess WM, Sears J, Strobel G (2003) An endophytic *Gliocladium* of *Eucryphia cordifolia* producing selective volatile antimicrobial compounds. Plant Sci 165:913–922

Strobel GA (2003) Endophytes as sources of bioactive products. Microb Infect 5:535–544

Strobel GA (2014a) The story of mycodiesel. Curr Opin Microbiol 19:52–58
Strobel GA (2014b) The use of endophytic fungi for the conversion of agricultural wastes to hydrocarbons. Biofuels 5:447–455
Strobel GA, Dirksie E, Sears J, Markworth C (2001) Volatile microbials from a novel endophytic fungus. Microbiology 147:2943–2950
Strobel GA, Hess WM, Li JY, Ford E, Sears J, Sidhu RS, Summerell B (1998) Pestalotiopsis guepinii, a taxol producing endophyte of the Wollemi Pine, Wollemia nobilis. Aust J Bot 45:1073
Strobel GA, Knighton B, Kluck K, Ren Y, Livinghouse T, Griffen M, Spakowicz D, Sears J (2008) The production of myco-diesel hydrocarbons and their derivatives by the endophytic fungus *Gliocladium roseum* (NRRL 50072). Microbiology 154:3319–3328
Strobel GA, Singh SK, Hassan RUL, Mitchell A, Geary B, Sears J (2011) An endophytic/pathogenic *Phoma* sp. from creosote bush producing biologically active volatile compounds having fuel potential. FEMS Lett 320:87–94
Strobel GA, Tomsheck A, Geary B, Spakowicz D, Strobel S, Mattner S, Mann R (2010) Endophytic strain NRRL 50072 producing volatile organics is a species of Ascocoryne. Mycology 1:187–194
Strobel GA, Yang X, Sears J, Kramer R, Sidhu RS, Hess WM (1996) Taxol from *Pestalotiopsis microspora*, an endophytic fungus of Taxus *wallichiana*. Microbiology 142:435–440
Sunitha VH, Ramesha A, Savitha J, Srinivas C (2012) Amylase production by endophytic fungi *Cylindrocephalum* sp. isolated from medicinal plant *Alpinia calcarata* (Haw.) Roscoe. Braz J Microbiol 43:1213–1221
Tan RX, Zou WX (2001) Endophytes: a rich source of functional metabolites. Nat Prod Rep 18:448–459
Tanaka M, Yoshimura M, Suto M, Yokota A, Asano K, Sukara E, Tomita F (2002) Production of lepidimoide by an endophytic fungus from polysaccharide extracted from *Abelmoschus* sp.: identification of the product and the organism producing it. J Biosci Bioeng 93:531–536
Tomita F (2003) Endophytes in Southeast Asia and Japan: their taxonomic diversity and potential applications. Fungal Divers 14:187–204
Tomsheck AR, Strobel GA, Booth E, Geary B, Spakowicz D, Knighton B, Floerchinger C, SearsJ LO, Ezra D (2010) *Hypoxylon* sp., an endophyte of *Persea indica*, producing 1,8-cineole and other bioactive volatiles with fuel potential. Microb Ecol 60:903–914
Urairuj C, Khanongnuch C, Lumyong S (2003) Ligninolytic enzymes from tropical endophytic *Xylariaceae*. Fungal Divers 13:209–219
van der Maarel MJEC, van der Veen B, Uitdehaag JCM, Leemhuis H, Dijkhuizen L (2002) Properties and applications of starch converting enzymes of the α−amylase family. J Biotechnol 94(2):137–155
Verza M, Arakawa NS, Lopes NP, Kato MJ, Pupo MT, Said S, Carvalho I (2009) Biotransformation of a tetrahydrofuran lignin by the endophytic fungus *Phomopsis* sp. J Braz Chem Soc 20:195–200
Wang Y, Dai CC (2011) Endophytes: a potential resource for biosynthesis, biotransformation, and biodegradation. Ann Microbiol 61:207–215
Wang J, Li G, Lu H, Zheng Z, Huang Y, Su W (2000) Taxol from *Tubercularia* sp. strain TF5, an endophytic fungus of *Taxus mairei*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 193:249–253
Wang JW, Wu JH, Huang WY, Tan RX (2006) Laccase production by *Monotospora* sp., an endophytic fungus in *Cynodon dactylon*. Bioresour Technol 97:786–789
Wei GH, Yang XY, Zhang JW, Gao JM, Ma YQ, Fu YY, Wang P (2007) Rhizobialide: a new stearolactone produced by *Mesorhizobium* sp. CCNWGX022, a rhizobial endophyte from *Glycyrrhiza uralensis*. Chem Biodivers 4:893–898
Weihua Q, Hongzhang C (2008) An alkali-stable enzyme with laccase activity from entophytic fungus and the enzymatic modification of alkali lignin. Bioresour Technol 99:5480–5484
Werner C, Petrini O, Hesse M (1997) Degradation of the polyamine alkaloid aphelandrine by endophytic fungi isolated from *Aphelandra tetragona*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 155(2):147–153

Wheatley RE (2002) The consequences of volatile organic compound mediated bacterial and fungal interactions. Antonie Van Leewenhoek 81:357–364

Wu W, Tran W, Taatjes CA, Alonso-Gutierrez J, Lee TS, Gladden JM (2016) Rapid discovery and functional characterization of Terpene synthases from four Endophytic *Xylariaceae*. PLoS One 11(2):e0146983. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0146983

Xiao X, Luo SL, Zeng GM, Wei WZ, Wan Y, Chen L, Guo H, Cao Z, Yang LX, Chen JL, Xi Q (2010) Biosorption of cadmium by endophytic fungus (EF) *Microsphaeropsis* sp. LSE10 isolated from cadmium hyperaccumulator *Solanum nigrum* L. Bioresour Technol 101:1668–1674

Yue Q, Bacon CW, Richardson MD (1998) Biotransformation of 2-benzoxazolinone and 6-methoxy-benzoxazolinone by *Fusarium moniliforme*. Phytochemistry 48:451–454

Zhang JY, Tao LY, Liang YJ, Chen LM, Mi YJ, Zheng LS (2010) Anthracenedione derivatives as anticancer agents isolated from secondary metabolites of the mangrove endophytic fungi. Mar Drugs 8:1469–1481

Zhou L, Zhao J, Xu L, Huang Y, Ma Z, Wang J, Jiang W (2009) Antimicrobial compounds produced by plant endophytic fungi. In: De Costa P, Bezerra P (eds) Fungicides: chemistry, environmental impact and health effects, vol 91. Nova Science Publishers, New York, pp 116–119

Zikmundova M, Drandarov K, Bigler L, Hesse A, Werner C (2002) Biotransformation of 2-Benzoxazolinone and 2-Hydroxy-1,4-Benzoxazin-3-one by endophytic fungi isolated from *Aphelandra tetragona*. Appl Environ Microbiol 48(3):4863–4870

Zou WX, Meng JC, Lu H, Chen GX, Shi GX, Zhang TY, Tan RX (2000) Metabolites of Colletotrichum gloeosporioides, an endophytic fungus in Artemisia mongolica. J Nat Prod 63:1529

Vitamin E

Umaiyal Munusamy and Siti Nor Akmar Abdullah

Abbreviations

DMPBQ	2-methyl-6-phytylbenzoquinol
DMGGBQ	2, 3-dimethyl-5-geranylgeranyl benzoquinol
GGDP Reductase	geranylgeranyl diphosphate reductase
GGDP	Geranylgeranyl diphosphate
HGA	Homogentisate
HGGT	Homogentisate geranylgeranyl transferase
HPP	p-hydroxyphenylpyruvate
HPPD	p-hydroxyphenolpyruvate dioxygenase
HPT	Homogentisate phytyltransferase
MGGBQ	2-Methyl-6-geranylgeranylbenzoquinol
PDP	Phytyl diphosphate
PQ-9	Plastoquinol-9
PrBQMT	2-methyl-6-prenylbenzoquinol methyltransferase
TC	Tocopherol cyclase
γ-TMT	Gamma-tocopherol methyltransferase

U. Munusamy (✉)
Institute of Plantation Studies, Universiti Putra Malaysia, 43400, UPM, Serdang, Selangor, Malaysia

Centre for Research in Biotechnology for Agriculture (CEBAR), Level 3, Research Management & Innovation Complex, Universiti of Malaya, Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia

S. N. A. Abdullah (✉)
Institute of Plantation Studies, Universiti Putra Malaysia, 43400, UPM, Serdang, Selangor, Malaysia

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_15

Introduction

Plants produce a wide range of metabolites that are beneficial to human as food, medicines and industrial raw materials (Dudareva and Pichersky 2000; Oksman-Caldentey and Saito 2005). Plant-derived vitamins are of great interest because of their impact on human health (Asensi-Fabado and Munne-Bosch 2010). α-tocopherol and α-tocotrienol (component of vitamin E and chemically known as tocochromanols) (Horvath et al. 2006) are produced by two metabolic pathways, the shikimate and non-mevalonate pathways (Collakova and DellaPenna 2001). In plants, vitamin E plays various roles in plant growth and development (Horvath et al. 2006), while, in human and animals, vitamin E can protect membranes from photooxidation involving several signal transduction pathways (Ren et al. 2011). In addition, α-tocotrienol is considered as a promising anticancer agent due to its potent effects against a wide range of cancers, as a cholesterol-reducing agent and as a better neuroprotective agent compared to α-tocopherol (Ling et al. 2012; Viola et al. 2011). Given the important functions of α-tocopherol and α-tocotrienol in plants, humans and animals, in addition to its accumulation in plants, studies on its biosynthetic pathways in plants have been actively pursued. These studies resulted in the identification of the different enzymes involved in the production of α-tocochromanols (Fujita et al. 2009; Abbasi et al. 2007).

Vitamin E

Discovery of Vitamin E

In 1922, Evans and Bishop had discovered vitamin E when a substance from lettuce and alfalfa leaves was believed to maintain fertility in rats (Duracevic et al. 2010). In 1924, the term vitamin E for the unknown fertility factor was coined by Sure in analogy to the previously identified vitamins A, B, C and D (Patel et al. 2011). In 1936, according to Evans due to its role in fertility, this compound was named tocopherol from the Greek word “tocos” meaning birth and “phorein” meaning to bear (Gray 1996). While in 1937, Emerson had discovered four different forms, α, β, γ and δ-tocopherol in wheat germ oil (Tan 2005). In 1938, the α-tocopherol structure was elucidated by Fernholz, and only in 1963, Schudel elucidated the structure for α-tocotrienol. The identification of the chromanol ring with vitamin E activity leads to the designation of the term tocochromanols, a group of substances encompassing tocopherols and tocotrienols (Yoshida et al. 2007). The α-tocopherol had become the most important family of the vitamin E (Setiadi et al. 2003) and as a universal constituent of all higher plants (Horvath et al. 2006).

Availability of Vitamin E

The content of the tocochromanols differs between tissues (Crowell et al. 2008), species, subspecies, varieties or even between different cultivation techniques (geographic, climate, season, feeding) (Kruk et al. 2008; Sundl et al. 2007; Ryynanen et al. 2004). Most plant-derived foods especially fruits and vegetables contain low to moderate levels of vitamin E (Adzim Khalili et al. 2010). Due to the abundance of plant-derived foods in our diets, a significant and consistent source of vitamin E can be obtained (Chen et al. 2006). α-tocopherol exists in all plant species, green algae and cyanobacteria (Dormann 2007). The tocopherol levels vary in plants during the different development stages (Sen et al. 2007) and in response to a variety of abiotic stress conditions (Collakova and DellaPenna 2003b) such as light (Kruk et al. 2008), temperature, drought and salt stress (Collakova and DellaPenna 2003a). In addition, variations in the level of tocochromanols obtained can occur due to differences in processing procedure, storage time and sample preparation (Chen et al. 2006; Chun et al. 2006).

Leave Tissues

The most abundant form of tocochromanols found in the leaves is α-tocopherol, but α-tocotrienol is not detected in this tissue (Voll and Abbasi 2007). In addition, α-tocopherol can be abundantly found in mature leaves where the level of photosynthesis is higher (Kruk et al. 2008; Abbasi et al. 2007). It is also found in the thylakoid membranes of chloroplasts to protect the photosynthetic apparatus against oxidative stress and damages by protecting polyunsaturated fatty acids from lipid peroxidation (Chen and Bergman 2005; Koch et al. 2002).

Grains

A significant amount of tocochromanols are predominantly found in seeds (Zingg 2007). Cereal grains such as wheat, rice and barley contain both tocopherols and tocotrienols (Chen and Bergman 2005; Gopala Krishna et al. 1997). However, cereals such as oat contain more tocotrienols than tocopherols (Ryynanen et al. 2004). γ-Tocopherol is found mainly in plant seeds (Dormann 2007). Raw cashew nuts contain 0.29 and 1.10 mg/100 g of dry matter of α-tocopherols and γ-tocopherols, respectively (Gomez-Caravaca et al. 2010). Another study showed that γ-tocopherol is predominant in dicot seeds and usually contributes to more than 90% of the tocochromanols pool, while tocotrienols prevail in cereal endosperm (Rippert et al. 2004).

Fruits

Tocochromanols level changed during fruit ripening stage (Sakouhi et al. 2008; Abushita et al. 1997). The α-tocopherol contents in the fruit pericarp of the yellow and red pepper varieties of different origins showed different levels of α-tocopherol. It shows that red pepper fruits contained noticeably higher amount of tocopherol than the yellow pepper fruits (Koch et al. 2002). In oil palm fruits, tocotrienol can be found in mesocarp tissues (Nurniwalis et al. 2008) and also from kernel (Wan Omar et al. 2008).

Oils

In plant-derived oils, the oil is the major source of vitamin E (Corley 2009; Lau et al. 2008; Rodriguez Posada et al. 2007). Palm oil is a major commercial source of tocopherols and tocotrienols (Hunter and Cahoon 2007), but tocotrienol is the major component in palm oil (Sen et al. 2007). Olive oil is highly appreciated for its good taste, as well as for its nutritional properties which mainly related to α-tocopherol (Sakouhi et al. 2008). Silva et al. (2001) have demonstrated the presence of tocotrienols in *Iryanthera*. Raw cashew nut oil contains β-tocopherol (132.98 mg/100 g) and δ-tocopherol at much lower concentration (0.63 mg/100 g) (Gomez-Caravaca et al. 2010). Corn oil contains mainly γ-tocopherol, and soybean oil contains a high amount of δ-tocopherol (Zingg 2007). Tocopherol content in oilseed rape or canola ranges between 180 and 370 mg/kg (Endrigkeit et al. 2009). Salad oil contains tocopherols, provides added nutritional value and stabilises the fatty acid present in the oil (Sivakumar et al. 2005; Savidge et al. 2002; Bonnie and Choo 2000).

Potential Role of Vitamin E

The antioxidant activity varies among tocochromanols α-tocopherol > γ-tocopherol > δ-tocopherol > β-tocopherol (Kinen et al. 2000). They are also useful in nonbiological systems such as foods, cosmetics and pharmaceuticals (Oh et al. 2009; Panahi et al. 2003). Recent studies showed that tocotrienol has higher antioxidant potential than tocopherol (Bardhan et al. 2011). They usually can be found in soybean oil and palm oil (Hunter and Cahoon 2007). The γ and δ forms of tocopherols and especially tocotrienols confer the greatest degree of oxidative stability in vegetable oils that are exposed to prolonged high temperatures. This characteristic is particularly important for the performance of vegetable oils in food processing and bio-based lubricants (Yang et al. 2011).

Plant

Tocopherols are usually found in the membranes because of their lipophilic characters. The primary task of vitamin E in plant is as an antioxidant agent (Traber and Atkinson 2007) which protects membranes by preventing free radical damage (Dutta and Singh 2011), against photoinhibition (Fryer 1992), and helps in providing an optimal environment for photosynthesis (Sen et al. 2007). The main function of α-tocopherol is to react rapidly in a non-enzymic manner to scavenge the lipid peroxyl radicals before they are able to react with the lipid substrate (Strzalka et al. 2009; Ching and Mohamed 2001). α-tocopherol is most efficient at providing protection against peroxyl radicals in a membrane environment (Rippert et al. 2004). It also prevents lipid peroxidation during seed dormancy, germination and in early seedling (Horvath et al. 2006).

Human

Oxidation that damages the cell components is the starting point in several human diseases (Cha-Sook et al. 2005; Silva et al. 2001). α-tocopherol has been reported to possess non-antioxidant function which helps in protection against diseases. α-Tocopherol has an inhibitory effect on protein kinase C through activation of protein phosphatase (Azzi et al. 2002). It also explains the anti-atherosclerotic and antitumour effect of vitamin E in most cells (Barella et al. 2004). While at the cellular level, α-tocopherol will also act as a gene regulator in the upregulation of mRNA or protein synthesis (Rimbach et al. 2010; Gonzalez et al. 2007), it modulates the activity of several enzymes involved in signal transduction, perhaps through influencing protein-membrane interactions (Joseph et al. 1998). This in turn reduces the release of reactive oxygen species that will affect gene expression. In addition, α-tocopherol stabilises the structure of membranes (Bradford et al. 2003), to modulate the immune response (Muir et al. 2002) by enrichment of monocytes and neutrophils which leads to the reduction of the adhesion to human endothelial cells (Azzi 2004) and as a participant in electron transport chains (Kang and Pervaiz 2012). α-Tocopherol may affect the process of cellular trafficking especially in the intracellular traffic of enzymes and vesicles, membrane fusion and the release of the contents of vesicles (Arita et al. 1997). Tocotrienols in human are shown to have neuroprotective effects, to inhibit cholesterol synthesis by lowering LDL (Imsanguan et al. 2008; Ryynanen et al. 2004) and to reduce the growth of breast cancer cells in vitro (Nesaretnam et al. 1995). In addition, vitamin E also contributes in enhancing male fertility (Gasior et al. 2009; Catoni et al. 2008) and limiting the incidents of generative human disease such as heart disease (Misuna et al. 2008; Leong and Shui 2002; Pryor 2000), cancer (Miyazawa et al. 2009; Bermudez et al. 2007; Weber

et al. 1997), cataracts, neurological disorders (Ueda et al. 2009; Sachdev et al. 1999) and inflammation (Azzi and Stocker 2000; Upritchard 2000). Besides that, studies by Campbell et al. (2008) and Nesaretnam et al. (2004) also showed that δ-tocotrienols are effective in the inhibition of cancer cell growth and α- and γ-tocotrienol are able to inhibit solid tumour growth of carcinoma 180 and also Lewis lung carcinoma cells (Silva et al. 2001).

Animal

Vitamin E supplementation is also required for ruminants (Rippert et al. 2004) for prevention of various diseases and protection of integrity of tissues (Mcdowell et al. 1996). Pigs, when supplemented with vitamin E, are more red and less brown (O'Sullivan et al. 2002). Fish fed diets containing vitamin E increase the concentration of vitamin E in their tissues (Huang et al. 2004). Livestock producers, especially dairy cows' producers, will need higher levels of α-tocopherol to produce more nutritious milk (McDowell et al. 1996). Fish containing tocotrienol had a positive impact on the seafood quality in prolonging shelf life, enhancing the nutritional value in the seafood and also maintaining the colour of the seafood (Ng et al. 2008).

Vitamin E Deficiency

Plant

Vitamin E does not play the same role in plants as in human or animals because plant is a vitamin E producer. A very rare vitamin E deficiency observed in plant happens only during stress such as with extreme low temperature (Havaux et al. 2005), very high light (Porfirova et al. 2002) and oxidative stress induced by metals (Collin et al. 2008).

Human

In human, vitamin E deficiency is never caused by a poor diet (Brigelius-Flohe and Traber 1999). Instead, it is caused by three specific situations such as the inability of a person to absorb dietary fat (Traber and Sies 1996), prematurely born person (Kaempf and Linderkamp 1998) or very low birth weight infants (Kositamongkol et al. 2011). In elderly people, vitamin E deficiency causes Parkinson's disease and heart disease (Serafini 2000). In addition, it is also seen in individuals with rare disorders of fat metabolism such as abetalipoproteinaemia, a rare inherited disorder of fat metabolism that results in poor absorption of dietary fat including vitamin E (Peretti et al. 2010). A rare genetic condition caused by mutations in the gene of the tocopherol transfer protein will also cause vitamin E deficiency because these

individuals have an extremely poor capacity to absorb vitamin E (Ouahchi et al. 1995). Most of the symptoms of vitamin E deficiency will lead to the loss of the antioxidant protection it offers to cells. This protective effect also keeps vitamins A, B and C from oxidising to an inactive form, and when vitamin E is lacked, deficiency of these vitamins will also occur (http://www.scienceclarified.com).

Animal

Vitamin E deficiency in animal will cause nutritional muscular dystrophy (Abutarbush and Radostits 2003) and infertility in animals (Oda and El-Maddawy 2012). Other signs of vitamin E deficiency are related to damage of cell membranes (Evans 2000) and leakage of cell contents to external fluids. The diets of animals with low vitamin E will also cause skeletal myopathy (Hill et al. 2001), liver necrosis (Johnson et al. 2002) and neurodegenerative (Mohammed et al. 2007).

Structure and Chemistry

Tocochromanols are amphiphilic compound (Rippert et al. 2004; Collakova and DellaPenna 2001), and its isomers can be distinguished based on the number and positions of methyl groups on the chromanol ring (Dormann 2007). Four different forms (α, β, γ, δ) of tocochromanols (tocopherol and tocotrienol) exist (Chun et al. 2006; Rocheford et al. 2002). Tocopherols consist of a polar chromanol head group and a non-polar isoprenoid-derived tail (Fig. 1). The chromanol head group is

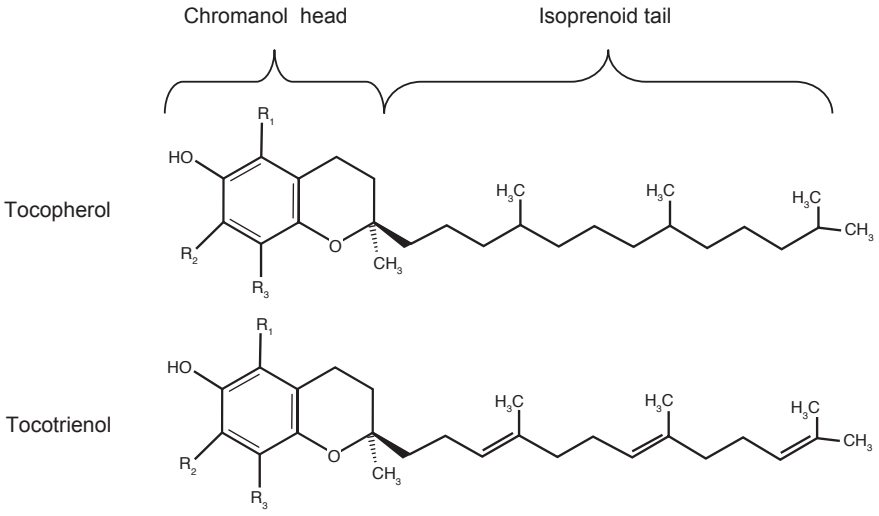


Fig. 1 General molecular structures of tocochromanols

bicyclic with three positions on the benzoquinone ring which can be methylated (Dormann 2007). The isoprenoid chain of tocopherol is fully saturated (Sen et al. 2007), whereas in tocotrienols, it contains three trans double bonds. The number and location of the methyl groups of the chromanol ring play an important role in influencing the biological activities of all the tocopherol and tocotrienol isoforms (Marsin Sanagi et al. 2006).

Biosynthesis of Tocochromanols in Plants

Tocochromanols are exclusively synthesised in the plastids of higher plants (Kumar et al. 2005), and the biosynthetic enzymes are found in the chloroplast. Tocochromanols are synthesised from precursors derived from two pathways: (a) shikimate pathway and (b) non-mevalonate pathway (Lee et al. 2007) (Fig. 2). This is the simplest biosynthesis route that can account for tocopherols and tocotrienols. However recent literature had shown that no cyclase enzyme that is specific to the tocotrienol biosynthetic pathway (Zbierzak et al. 2010). Based on Fig. 3, the condensation of PDP and HGA by HPT (Savidge et al. 2002) will produce intermediate product for tocopherol production which is MPBQ (Tian et al. 2007). Basically HGA serves as precursors for the synthesis of tocopherols, tocotrienols and also plastoquinol-9 (PQ-9) in chloroplasts of plants. The reaction also occurs when PDP is replaced by geranylgeranyl diphosphate (GGDP). Condensation of HGA and GGDP by homogentisate geranylgeranyl transferase (HGGT) will produce MGGBQ (Venkatesh et al. 2006). For tocopherols, the intermediate product of MPBQ will be methylated by PrBQMT to produce DMPBQ (Collakova and DellaPenna 2003b), while for tocotrienols, MGGBQ (2-methyl-6-geranylgeranylbenzoquinol) will be methylated by PrBQMT (prenylbenzoquinol methyltransferase) to produce DMGGBQ (2,3-dimethyl-5-geranylgeranyl benzoquinol) (Chen et al. 2006) (Fig. 4). From this step, the pathway will branch to transform DMPBQ and DMGGBQ into γ-tocochromanols (Sadre et al. 2006) by TC through cyclisation and methylation. Here, TC is involved in the formation of the chromanol ring structure in vitamin E biosynthetic pathway (DellaPenna 2005) (Fig. 5). This γ-tocochromanols will be further methylated by γ-TMT to produce α-tocochromanols (Sirikhachornkit et al. 2009) (Fig. 6). The remaining MPBQ and MGGBQ will be cyclised by TC to produce δ-tocochromanols, and further methylation by γ-TMT will produce β-tocochromanols (Collakova and DellaPenna 2003b) (Fig. 7). γ-TMT catalyses the final step in the synthesis of β-tocochromanols by using δ-tocochromanols as substrate (Hunter and Cahoon 2007) (Fig. 8). Enzymes that are involved in the production of vitamin E are summarised in Table 1.

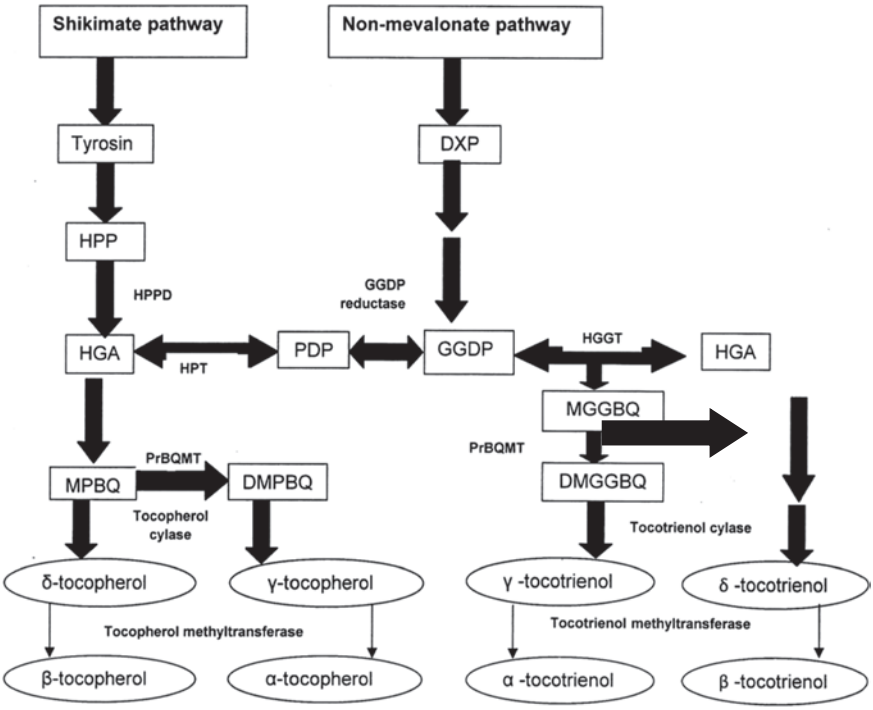


Fig. 2 Shikimate and non-mevalonate pathway for synthesis of α-tocochromanols in plants were based on Dormann (2007), Hunter and Cahoon (2007) and Cheng et al. (2003). Homogentisate acid (HGA) and phytyl diphosphate (PDP), derived from cytosolic aromatic amino acid metabolism and plastidic deoxyxylulose 5-phosphate pathway (DXP), respectively. PDP and GGDP (geranylgeranyl diphosphate) serve as substrates for the synthesis of α-tocochromanols (α-tocopherol and α-tocotrienol). Reactions between HGA and PDP or HGA with GGDP are carried out by homogentisate phytyltransferase (HPT) or homogentisate geranylgeranyl transferase (HGGT). The intermediate products 2-methyl-6-phytylbenzoquinol (DMPBQ) and 2,3-dimethyl-5-geranylgeranyl benzoquinol (DMGGBQ) will be further cyclised and methylated to produce α-tocochromanols. MPBQ and MGGBQ (2-methyl-6-geranylgeranyl benzoquinol) serve as substrate for the synthesis of β-tocochromanols. Enzymes in BOLD and UPPER CASE are specific to the synthesis of the subsequent intermediate products: p-hydroxyphenolpyruvate dioxygenase (HPPD), geranylgeranyl diphosphate reductase (GGDP reductase), 2-methyl-6-prenylbenzoquinol methyltransferase (PrBQMT), tocopherol cyclase (TC), and γ-tocopherol methyltransferase (γ-TMT). Substrates in upper case are specific to the synthesis of the subsequent intermediate products: p-hydroxyphenylpyruvate (HPP); 2-methyl-6-phytylbenzoquinol (MPBQ); and 2, 3-dimethyl-5-geranylgeranyl benzoquinol (DMGGBQ). Phytyl diphosphate (PDP) + Homogentisate (HGA) <=> 2-Methyl-6-phytylbenzoquinol (MPBQ) + Diphosphate + CO_2

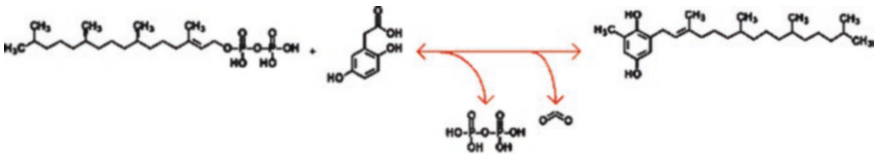


Fig. 3 Condensation reaction between PDP and HGA by HPT. 2-Methyl-6-phytylbenzoquinol (MPBQ) + S-Adenosyl-L-methionine <=>2,3-Dimethyl-5-phytylbenzoquinol (DMPBQ) + S-Adenosyl-L-homocysteine

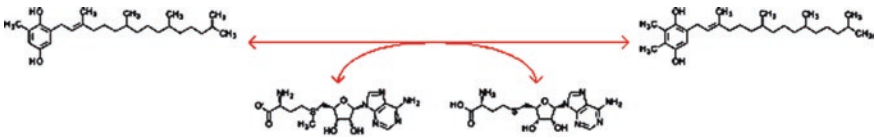


Fig. 4 Methylation reaction of MPBQ to produce DMPBQ. 2,3-Dimethyl-5-phytylbenzoquinol (DMPBQ)/(DMGGBQ) <=> γ-tocochromanols

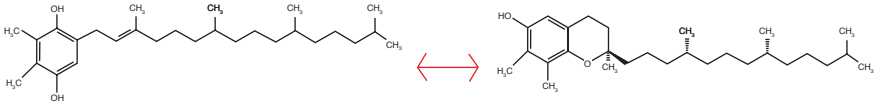


Fig. 5 Chromanol ring structure formation by tocopherol cyclase. S-Adenosyl-L-methionine + γ-tocochromanols <=> S-Adenosyl-L-homocysteine + α -tocochromanols

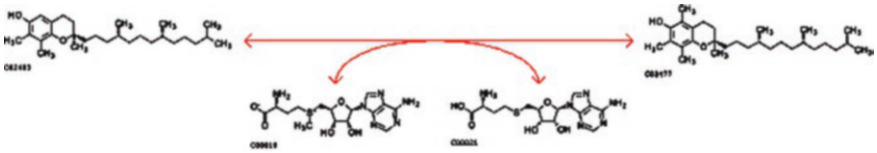


Fig. 6 Production of α-tocochromanols. 2-Methyl-6-phytylbenzoquinol (MPBQ)/(MGGBQ) <=> δ-tocochromanols

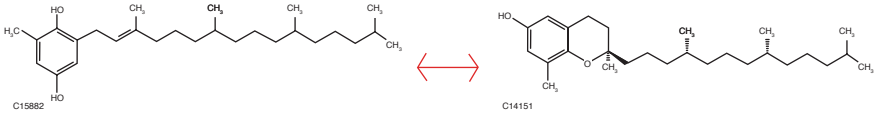


Fig. 7 Production of δ-tocochromanols. δ-tocochromanols + S-Adenosyl-L-methionine <=> β-tocochromanols + S-Adenosyl-L-homocysteine

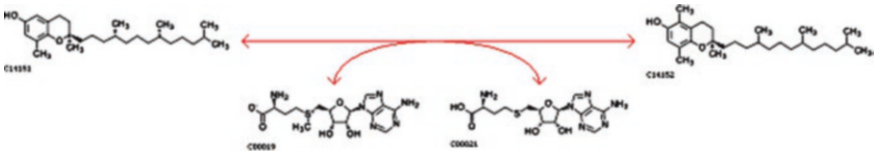


Fig. 8 Production of β-tocochromanols

Table 1 The different enzymes associated with tocochromanols biosynthesis

Enzymes	Reference
Homogentisate phytyltransferase (HPT)	Crowell et al. (2008) Venkatesh et al. (2006)
Tocopherol cyclase (TC)	Hass et al. (2006)
Tocopherol methyltransferase (γ-TMT)	Hass et al. (2006), Endrigkeit et al. (2009)
Homogentisate geranylgeranyl transferase (HGGT)	Horvath et al. (2006)
4-Hydroxyphenylpyruvate dioxygenase (HPPD)	Crowell et al. (2008), Raclaru et al. (2006)

Conclusion

In the vulnerable population of developing countries, nutrient deficiency will lead to health disaster. Elimination of nutrient deficiency has always been the priority agenda in the international organisations; however, it still remains as an unsolved major issue. Nutrient deficiency comprises many elements, and the element that was studied here is vitamin E. In this chapter, it was described that vitamin E consists of eight components which are α, β, γ and δ tocopherol and tocotrienol. The importance and the source of this component were described thoroughly in this chapter.

References

Abbasi AR, Hajirezaei M, Hofius D, Sonnewald U, Voll LM (2007) Specific roles of α and γ tocopherol in abiotic stress responses of transgenic tobacco. Plant Physiol 143:1720–1738

Abushita AA, Hebshi EA, Daood HG, Biacs PA (1997) Determination of antioxidant vitamins in tomatoes. Food Chem 60:207–212

Abutarbush SM, Radostits OM (2003) Congenital nutritional muscular dystrophy in a beef calf. Can Vet J 44:738–739

Adzim Khalili NAH, Rokiah MY, Asmah R, Siti Muskinah M, Abdum Manaf A (2010) Determination of radical scavenging activity and Vitamin A, C and E in organically grown Red Pitaya (*Hylocereus* sp.). Int Food Res J 17:405–409

Arita M, Nomura K, Arai H, Inoue K (1997) Alpha-tocopherol transfer protein stimulates the secretion of alpha-tocopherol from a cultured liver cell line through a brefeldin A-insensitive pathway. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 94(23):12437–12441

Asensi-Fabado MA, Munne-Bosch S (2010) Vitamins in plants: occurrence, biosynthesis and antioxidant. Trends Plant Sci 15:582–592

Azzi A (2004) The role of α-tocopherol in preventing disease. Eur J Nutr 43:18–25

Azzi A, Ricciarelli R, Zing JM (2002) Non-antioxidant molecular functions of α-tocopherol (vitamin E). FEBS Lett 519:8–10

Azzi A, Stocker A (2000) Vitamin E: non-antioxidant roles. Prog Lipid Res 39:231–255

Bardhan J, Chakraborty R, Raychaudhuri U (2011) The 21st century form of vitamin E--tocotrienol. Curr Pharm Des 17:2196–2205

Barella L, Muller PY, Schlachter M, Hunziker W, Stocklin E, Spitzer V, Meier N, de Pascual-Teresa S, Minihane AM, Rimbach G (2004) Identification of hepatic molecular mechanisms of action of alpha-tocopherol using global gene expression profile analysis in rats. Biochim Biophys 1689:66–74

Bermudez Y, Ahmadi S, Lowel NE, Kruk PA (2007) Vitamin E suppresses telomerase activity in ovarian cancer cells. Cancer Detection Prev 31:119–128

Bonnie TYP, Choo YM (2000) Valuable minor constituents of commercial red palm olein: carotenoids, vitamin E, ubiquinones and sterols. J Oil Palm Res 12:14–24

Bradford A, Atkinson J, Fuller N, R and RP (2003) The effect of vitamin E on structure of membrane lipid assemblies. J Lipid Res 44:1940–1945

Brigelius-Flohe R, Traber MG (1999) Vitamin E: function and metabolism. FASEB J 13:1145–1155

Campbell SE, Whaley SG, Phillips R, Aggarwal BB, Stimmel JB, Leesnitzer L, Blanchard SG, Stone WL, Christian M, Krishnan K (2008) Gamma tocotrienol and prostate cancer: the regulation of two independent pathways to potentiate cell growth inhibition and apoptosis. J Oil Palm Res:33–43

Catoni C, Peters A, Schaefer MH (2008) Life history trade-offs are influenced by the diversity, availability and interactions of dietary antioxidants. Anim Behav 76:1107–1119

Cha-Sook Y, Timothy JS, Joy ES, Robert SP (2005) Long-chain carboxychromanols are the major metabolites of tocopherols and tocotrienols in A549 lung epithelial cells but not *HepG2* cells. J Nutrition 135:227–232

Chen MH, Bergman CJ (2005) A rapid procedure for analyzing rice bran tocopherol, tocotrienol and γ-oryzanol contents. J Food Compos Anal 18:139–151

Chen S, Li H, Liu G (2006) Progress of vitamin E metabolic engineering in plants. Transgenic Res 15:655–665

Cheng Z, Sattler S, Maeda H, Sakuragi Y, Bryant DA, DellaPenna D (2003) Highly divergent methyltransferase catalyze reaction in tocopherol and plastoquinone synthesis in cyanobacteria and photosynthesis eukaryotes. Plant Cell 15:2343–2356

Ching LS, Mohamed S (2001) Alpha tocopherol content in 62 edible tropical plants. J Agric Food Chem 49:3101–3105

Chun J, Lee J, Ye L, Exler J, Eitenmiller RR (2006) Tocopherol and tocotrienol contents of raw and processed fruits and vegetables in the United States diet. J Food Compos Anal 19:196–204

Collakova E, DellaPenna D (2001) Isolation and functional analysis of homogentisate phytyltransferase from *Synechocystis* sp. PCC 6803 and *Arabidopsis*. Plant Physiol 127:1113–1124

Collakova E, DellaPenna D (2003a) The role of homogentisate phytyltransferase and other tocopherol pathway enzymes in the regulation of tocopherol synthesis during abiotic stress. Plant Physiol 133:930–940

Collakova E, DellaPenna D (2003b) Homogentisate Phytyltransferase activity is limiting for tocopherol biosynthesis in Arabidopsis. Plant Physiol 131:632–642

Collin VC, Eymery F, Genty B, Rey P, Havaux M (2008) Vitamin E is essential for the tolerance of Arabidopsis thaliana to metal induced oxidative stress. Plant Cell Environ 31:244–257

Corley RHV (2009) How much palm oil do we need? Environ Sci Policy 12:134–139

Crowell EF, McGrath JM, Douches DS (2008) Accumulation of vitamin E in potato (Solanum tuberosum) tubers. Transgenic Res, 17:205-217

DellaPenna D (2005) A decade of progress in understanding vitamin E synthesis in plants. J Plant Physiol 162:729–737

Dormann P (2007) Functional diversity of tocochromanols in plants. Planta 225:269–276

Dudareva N, Pichersky E (2000) Metabolic engineering of plant volatiles. Curr Opin Biotechnol 19:1–9

Duracevic SF, Dordevic J, Jasnic N, Dordevic I, Vujovic P, Cvijic G (2010) The influence of vitamin E supplementation on the oxidative status of rat liver. Arch Biol Sci Belgrade 62:677–681

Dutta A, Singh M (2011) Comparative analysis of aqueous extracts of amaranth and coriander in scavenging free radical activity and protection of DNA against oxidative damage. Chiang Mai J Sci 38:560–571

Endrigkeit J, Wang X, Cai D, Zhang C, Long Y, Meng J, Jung C (2009) Genetic mapping, cloning and functional characterization of the *BnaX.VTE4* gene encoding a γ-tocopherol methyltransferase from oilseed rape. Theor Appl Genet 119:567–575

Evans WJ (2000) Vitamin E, vitamin C, and exercise. Am J Clin Nutr 72:647s–652s

Evans HM, Bishop KS (1922) On the existence of a hitherto unrecognized dietary factor essential for reproduction. Science 56:650–651

Fernholz E (1938) On the constitution of α-tocopherol. J Am Chem Soc 60:700–705

Fryer MJ (1992) The antioxidant effects of thylakoid vitamin E (α-tocopherol). Plant Cell Environ 15:381–392

Fujita T, Ogbonna JC, Tanaka H, Aoyagi H (2009) Effects of reactive oxygen species on α-tocopherol production in mitochondria and chloroplasts of *Euglena gracilis*. J Appl Phycol 21:185–191

Gasior R, Pieszka M, Brzoska F (2009) Validation of a method or simultaneous determination of tocopherols and tocotrienols in cereals using normal phase HPLC. J Anim Feed Sci 18:173–192

Gomez-Caravaca AM, Verardo V, Caboni MF (2010) Chromatographic techniques for the determination of alkyl-phenols, tocopherols and other minor polar compounds in raw and roasted cold pressed cashew. J Chromatogr A 1217:7411–7417

Gonzalez R, Collado JA, Nell S, Briceno J, Tamayo MJ, Fraga E, Bernardos A, Lopez-Cillero P, Pascussi JM, Rufian S, Vilarem MJ, De la Mata M, Brigelius-Flohe R, Maurel P, Muntane J (2007) Cytoprotective properties of alpha tocopherol are related to gene regulation in culture D-galactosamine-treated human hepatocytes. Free Radic Biol Med 43:1439–1452

Gopala Krishna AG, Prabhakar JV, Aitzetmuller K (1997) Tocopherol and fatty acid composition of some Indian pulses. JAOCS 74:1603–1606

Gray NA (1996) Vitamin E: hype or hope. Orthop Nurs 15:55–57

Hass CG, Tang S, Leonard S, Traber MG, Miller JF, Knapp SJ (2006) Three non-allelic epistatically interacting methyltransferase mutations produce novel tocopherol (vitamin E) profiles in sunflower. Theor Appl Genet 113:767–782

Havaux M, Eymery F, Porfirova S, Rey P, Dormann P (2005) Vitamin E protects against photoinhibition and photooxidative stress in *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Plant Cell 17:3451–3469

Hill KE, Motley AK, Li X, May JM, Burk RF (2001) Combined selenium and vitamin E deficiency causes fatal myopathy in Guinea pigs. Nutr Interact Toxic 131:1798–1802

Horvath G, Wessjohann L, Bigirimana J, Jansen M, Guisez Y, Caubergs R, Horemans N (2006) Differential distribution of tocopherols and tocotrienols in photosynthetic and non-photosynthetic tissues. Phytochemistry 67:1185–1195

Horvath G, Wessjohann L, Bigirimana J, Monica H, Jansen M, Guisez Y, Caubergs R, Horemans N (2006) Accumulation of tocopherols and tocotrienols during seed development of grape (*Vitis vinifera* L. cv Albert Lavalle). Plant Physiol Biochem 44:724–731 http://www.scienceclarified.com

Huang CH, Higgs DA, Balfry SK, Devlin RH (2004) Effect of dietary vitamin E level on growth, tissue lipid peroxidation, and erythrocyte fragility of transgenic coho salmon, *Oncorhynchus kisutch*. Comp Biochem Physiol Part A 139:199–204

Hunter SC, Cahoon EB (2007) Enhancing vitamin E in oilseeds: unravelling tocopherol and tocotrienol biosynthesis. Lipids 42:97–108

Imsanguan P, Roaysubtawee A, Borirak R, Pongamphai S, Douglas S, Douglas PL (2008) Extraction of α-tocopherol and γ-oryzanol from rice bran. Food Sci Technol 41:1417–1424

Johnson EA, Shvedova AA, Kisin E, O'Callaghan JP, Kommineni C, Miller DB (2002) d-MDMA during vitamin E deficiency: effects on dopaminergic neurotoxicity and hepatotoxicity. Brain Res 19:150–163

Joseph JA, Shukitt-Hale B, Denisova NA, Prior RL, Cao G, Martin A, Tagilalatela G, Bickford PC (1998) Long-term dietary strawberry, spinach, or vitamin E supplementation retards the onset of age-related neuronal signal-transduction and cognitive behavioural deficits. J Neurosci 18:8047–8055

Kaempf DE, Linderkamp O (1998) Do healthy premature infants fed breast milk need vitamin E supplementation: alpha-and gamma-tocopherol levels in blood components and buccal mucosal cells. Pediatr Res 44:54–59

Kang J, Pervaiz S (2012) Mitochondria: redox metabolism and dysfunction. Biochem Res Int 14:1–14

Kinen MM, Kamal-Eldin A, Lampi AM, Hopia A (2000) Effects of α and γ-tocopherols on formation of hydroperoxides and two decomposition products from methyl linoleate. JAOCS 77:801–806

Koch M, Arango Y, Mock HP, Heise KP (2002) Factors influencing α-tocopherol synthesis in pepper fruits. J Plant Physiol 159:1015–1019

Kositamongkol S, Suthutvoravut U, Chongviriyaphan N, Feungpean B, Nuntnarumit P (2011) Vitamin A and E status in very low birth weight infants. J Perinatol 31:471–476

Kruk J, Szymanska R, Krupinska K (2008) Tocopherol quinone content of green algae and higher plants revised by a new high-sensitive fluorescence detection method using HPLC-effects of high light stress and senescence. J Plant Physiol 165:1238–1247

Kumar R, Raclaru M, Schubeler T, Gruber J, Sadre R, Luhs W, Zarhloul KM, Freidt W, Enders D, Frentzen M, Weier D (2005) Characterisation of plant tocopherol cyclase and their overexpression in transgenic *Brassica napus* seeds. FEBS Lett 579:1357–1364

Lau HLN, Choo YM, Ma AN, Chuah CH (2008) Selective extraction of palm carotene and vitamin E from fresh palm-pressed mesocarp fiber (*Elaeis guineensis*) using supercritical CO_2. J Food Eng 84:289–296

Lee K, Lee SM, Park SR, Jung J, Moon JK, Cheong JJ, Kim M (2007) Overexpression of *Arabidopsis* homogentisate phytyltransferase or tocopherol cyclase elevates vitamin E content by increasing gamma tocopherol level in lettuce (*Lactuca sativa* L.). Mol Cells 24:301–306

Leong LP, Shui G (2002) An investigation of antioxidant capacity of fruits in Singapore markets. Food Chem 76:69–75

Ling MT, Luk SU, Al-Ejeh F, Khanna KK (2012) Tocotrienol as a potential anticancer agent. Carcinogenesis 33:233–239

Marsin Sanagi M, Abu Naim A, Hussain A, Siregar SH, Sarjadi MS, Abd Aziz N (2006) Development and application of new modified Poly(styrene-divinylbenzene) adsorbents and chromatography stationary phases IRPA Project Number 09-02-06-0074-EA2. 111:1–246

Mcdowell LR, Williams SN, Hidiroglou N, Njeru CA, Hill GM, OchoA L, Wilkinson NS (1996) Vitamin E supplementation for the ruminant. Anim Feed Sci Technol 60:273–296

Misuna S, Swatsitang P, Jogloy S (2008) Fatty acids content and antioxidant capacity of peanut. KKU Scie J. 36:64–74

Miyazawa T, Shibata A, Sookwong P, Kawakami Y, Eitsuka TT, Asai A, Oikawa S, Nakagawa K (2009) Antiangiogenic and anticancer potential on unsaturated vitamin E (tocotrienol). J Nutr Biochem 20:79–86

Mohammed HO, Divers TJ, Summers BA, de Lhunta A (2007) Vitamin E deficiency and risk of equine motor neuron disease. Acta Vet Scand 49(1):17

Muir WI, Husband AL, Bryden WL (2002) Dietary supplementation with vitamin E modulates avian intestinal immunity. Br J Nutr 87:579–585

Nesaretnam K, Ambra R, Selvaduray KR, Radhakrishnan A, Reimann K, Razak G, Virgili F (2004) Tocotrienol-rich fraction from palm oil affects gene expression in tumors resulting from MCF-7 cell inoculation in athymic mice. Lipids 39:459–467

Nesaretnam K, Guthrie N, Chambers AF, Carrol KK (1995) Effects of tocotrienols on the growth of a human breast cancer cell line in culture. Lipids 30:1139–1143

Ng WK, Wang Y, Yuen KH (2008) Palm vitamin E for aquaculture feeds. J Oil Palm Res:1–7

Nurniwalis AW, Suhaimi N, Siti Nor Akmar A, Mohamad Arif MA (2008) Gene discovery via expressed sequence tags from the oil palm (*Elaeis guineensis* Jacq.) mesocarp. J Oil Palm Res 20:87–96

O'Sullivan MG, Byrne DV, Stagsted J, Andersen HJ, Martens M (2002) Sensory colour assessment of fresh meat from pigs supplemented with iron and vitamin E. Meat Sci 60:253–265

Oda SS, El-Maddawy ZK (2012) Protective effect of vitamin E and selenium combination on deltamethrin-induced reproductive toxicity in male rats. Exp Toxicol Pathol 64(7–8):813–819. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.etp.2011.03.001

Oh MM, Carey EE, Rajashekar CB (2009) Environmental stresses induce health-promoting phytochemicals in lettuce. Plant Physiol Biochem 47:578–583

Oksman-Caldentey KM, Saito K (2005) Integrating genomics and metabolomics for engineering plant metabolic pathways. Curr Opin Plant Biol 16:174–179

Ouahchi K, Arita M, Kayden H, Hentati F, Ben Hamida M, Sokol R, Arai H, Inoue K, Koenig M (1995) Ataxia with isolated vitamin E deficiency is caused by mutations in the alpha-tocopherol transfer protein. Nat Genet 9:141–145

Panahi M, Cheng X, Alli Z, Sardana R, Callaghan M, Phipps J, Altosaar I (2003) Plant derived recombinant human insulin like growth factor precursor prohormone IGF-1B caused differentiation of human neuroblastoma cell lines SH-SY5Y. Mol Breed 12:21–31

Patel V, Rink C, Khanna S, Sen CK (2011) Tocotrienols: the lesser known form of natural vitamin E. Indian J Exp Biol 49:732–738

Peretti N, Sassolas A, Roy CC, Deslanders C, Charcosset M, Castagnetti J, Pugnet-Chardon L, Moulin P, Labarge S, Bouthillier L, Lachaux A, Levy E (2010) Guidelines for the diagnosis and management of chylomicron retention disease based on a review of the literature and the experience of two centers. OJRD 5:1–13

Porfirova S, Bergmuller E, Tropf S, Lemke R, Dormann P (2002) Isolation of an *Arabidopsis* mutant lacking vitamin E and identification of a cyclise essential for all tocopherol biosynthesis. PNAS 99:12495–12500

Pryor WA (2000) Vitamin E and hearth disease: basic science to clinical intervention trials. Free Radic Biol Med 28:141–164

Raclaru M, Gruber J, Kumar R, Sadre R, Luhs W, Karim Zarhloul M, Friedt W, Frentzen M, Weier D (2006) Increase of the tocochromanol content in transgenic *Brassica napus* seeds by overexpression of key enzymes involved in prenylquinone biosynthesis. Mol Breed 18:93–107

Ren W, Zhao L, Zhang L, Wang Y, Cui L, Tang Y, Sun X, Tang K (2011) Molecular analysis of a homogentisate phytyltransferase gene from *Lactuca sativa* L. Mol Biol Rep 38:1813–1819

Rimbach G, Moehring J, Huebbe P, Lodge JK (2010) Gene regulatory activity α-tocopherol. Molecules 15:1746–1761

Rippert P, Scimemi C, Dubald M, Matringe M (2004) Engineering plant shikimate pathway for production of tocotrienol and improving herbicide resistance. Plant Physiol 134:1–9

Rocheford TR, Wong JC, Egesel CO, Lambert RJ (2002) Enhancement of vitamin E levels in corn. J Am College Nutr 21:191S–198S

Rodriguez Posada L, Shi J, Kakuda Y, Xue SP (2007) Extraction of tocotrienols from palm fatty acid distillates using molecular distillation. Sep Purif Technol 57:220–229

Ryynanen M, Lampi AM, Salo-Vaananen P, Ollilainen V, Piironen V (2004) A small scale sample preparation method with HPLC analysis for determination of tocopherols and tocotrienols in cereals. J Food Compos Anal 17:749–765

Sachdev P, Saharov T, Cathcart S (1999) The preventative role of antioxidants (Selegiline and vitamin E) in a rat model of tardive dyskinesia. Soc Biol Psychiatry 46:1672–1681

Sadre R, Gruber J, Frentzen M (2006) Characterization of homogentisate prenyltransferases involved in plastoquinone-9 and tocochromanol biosynthesis. FEBS Lett 580:5357–5362

Sakouhi F, Harrabi S, Absalon C, Sbei K, Boukhchina S, Kallel H (2008) α-Tocopherol and fatty acids contents of some Tunisian table olives (*Olea europaea* L.): changes in their composition during ripening and processing. Food Chem 108:833–839

Savidge B, Weiss JD, Wong YHH, Lassner MW, Mitsky TA, Shewmaker CK, Post-Beittenmiller D, Valentin HE (2002) Isolation and characterization of homogentisate phytyltransferase genes from *Synechocystis* sp. PCC 6803 and Arabidopsis. Plant Physiol 29:321–332

Schudel P, Mayer H, Metzger J, Ruegg R, Isler O (1963) Uber die Chemie des Vitamins E. Die Synthase von rac. All-trans-ζ_1-ε- Tocopherol. Helv Chim Acta 46:2517–2526

Sen CK, Khanna S, Roy S (2007) Tocotrienols in health and disease: the other half of the natural vitamin E family. Mol Asp Med 28:692–728

Serafini M (2000) Dietary vitamin E and T cell-mediated function in the elderly: effectiveness and mechanism of action. Int J Dev Neurosci 18:401–410

Setiadi DH, Chass GA, Torday LL, Varro A, Papp JG (2003) Vitamin E: models. Shortened side-chain models of α, ß, γ and δ tocopherol and tocotrienol-a density functional study. J Mol Struc (Theochem) 637:11–26

Silva DHS, Pereira FC, Zanoni MVB, Yoshida M (2001) Lipophilic antioxidants from *Iryanthera juruensis* fruits. Phytochemistry 57:437–442

Sirikhachornkit A, Shin JW, Baroli I, Niyogi KK (2009) Replacement of α-tocopherol by β-tocopherol enhances resistance to Photooxidative stress in a xanthophyll-deficient strain of *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii*. Eukaryot Cell 8:1648–1657

Sivakumar G, Bacchetta L, Gatti R, Zappa G (2005) HPLC screening of natural vitamin E from Mediterranean plant biofactories-a basic tool for pilot-scale bioreactors production of α-tocopherol. J Plant Physiol 162:1280–1283

Strzalka K, Szymanska R, Swiezewska E, Skorupinska-Tudek K, Suwalsky M (2009) Tocochromanols, plastoquinone and polyprenols in selected plant species from Chilean Patagonia. Acta Biol Cracoviensia Series Botanica 51:39–44

Sundl M, Murkovic M, Bandoniene D, Winklhofer-Roob BM (2007) Vitamin E content of foods: comparison of result obtained from food composition tables and HPLC analysis. Clin Nutr 26:145–153

Tan B (2005) Appropriated spectrum vitamin E and new perspective on demethyl tocopherols and tocotrienols. J Am Neutraceu Assoc 8:1–16

Tian L, Della Penna D, Dixon RA (2007) The *pds2* mutation is a lesion in the *Arabidopsis* homogentisate solanesyltransferase gene involved in plastoquinone biosynthesis. Plant 226:1067–1073

Traber MG, Atkinson J (2007) Vitamin E, antioxidant and nothing more. Free Radic Biol Med 43:4–15

Traber MG, Sies H (1996) Vitamin E in human: demand and delivery. Annu Rev Nutr 16:321–317

Ueda N, Suzuki Y, Rino Y, Takahashi T, Imada T, Takanashi Y, Kuroiwa Y (2009) Correlation between neurological dysfunction with vitamin E deficiency and gastrectomy. J Neurol Sci 287:216–220

Upritchard JE (2000) Effect of supplementation with tomato juice, vitamin E and vitamin CON LDL oxidations and products of inflammatory activity in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care 23:733–738

Venkatesh TV, Karunanandaa B, Free DL, Rottnek JM, Basziz SR, Valentin HE (2006) Identification and characterization of an *Arabidopsis* homogentisate phytyltransferase paralog. Planta 223:1134–1144

Viola V, Pilolli F, Piroddi M, Pierpaoli E, Orlando F, Provincialli M, Betti M, Mazzini F, Galli F (2011) Why tocotrienols work better: insights into the in vitro anticancer mechanism of vitamin E. Genes Nutr 7:29–41

Voll LM, Abbasi AL (2007) Are there specific in vivo roles for α- and γ-tocopherol in plants? Plant Signal Behav 2:486–488

Wan Omar WS, Willis LB, Rha C, Sinskey AJ, Ramli US, Mat Yunus AM, Ahmad Parveez GK, Sambanthamurthi R (2008) Isolation and utilization of acetyl-CoA carboxylase from oil palm (*Elaeis guineensis*) mesocarp. J Oil Palm Res 2:97–107

Weber P, Bendich A, Machlin LJ (1997) Vitamin E and human health: rationale for determining recommended intake levels. Nutrition 13:450–460

Yang W, Cahoon RE, Hunter SC, Zhang C, Han J, Borgschulte T, Cahoon EB (2011) Vitamin E biosynthesis: functional characterization of the monocot homogentisate phytyltransferase. Plant J 65:206–217

Yoshida Y, Saito Y, Jones LS, Shigeri Y (2007) Chemical reactivities and physical effects in comparison between tocopherols and tocotrienols: physiological significance and prospects as antioxidants. J Biosci Bioeng 104:439–445

Zbierzak AM, Kanwischer M, Wille C, Vidi PA, Gravalisco P, Lohman A, Briesen I, Porfirova S, Brehelin C, Kessier F, Dormann P (2010) Intersection of the tocopherol and plastoquinol metabolic pathways at the plastoglobule. Biochem J 425:389–399

Zingg JM (2007) Modulation of signal transduction by vitamin E. Mol Asp Med 28:481–506

Bioengineered Plants Can Be an Alternative Source of Omega-3 Fatty Acids for Human Health

Nita Lakra, Saquib Mahmood, Avinash Marwal, N. M. Sudheep, and Khalid Anwar

Introduction

Omega-3 fatty acids, also called as long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs), belong to the family of lipids, immediately after its acquaintance to human benefits, which resulted in the revolution in several branches of health and medicines (Mozaffarian and Wu 2011; Schmidt and Dyerberg 1994). The omega name corresponds to the location of double bond with respect to the methyl group present in the fatty acid molecule. Alpha-linolenic acid (ALA) is short-chain omega-3 fatty acid, which polymerizes to form long-chain omega-3 fatty acids such as docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) and eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA). This polymerization is quite low in the human body; hence, such long-chain omega-3 fatty acids need to be obtained/supplemented from diet. We reviewed the scientific literature on omega-3 fatty acids obtained from various sources and its health benefits to provide clinically relevant evidence-based information to ethnobotanists and physiologist. The purpose of this chapter is to summarize the current state of knowledge focusing on the health benefits of the long-chain omega-3 PUFA obtained naturally from plants and via transgenic approach, and in addition, reflecting the proteomics and genomics approach of these beneficial compounds will be highlighted.

Nita Lakra and Saquib Mahmood equally contributed to this work.

N. Lakra · S. Mahmood · K. Anwar (✉)
School of Life Sciences, Jawaharlal Nehru University, New Delhi, India

A. Marwal
Department of Biotechnology, Mohanlal Sukhadia University, Udaipur, Rajasthan, India

N. M. Sudheep
Department of Plant Science, School of Biological Sciences, RST Campus, Central University of Kerala, Kerala, India

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_16

Sources of Omega-3 Fatty Acids

A dietary source of omega-3 fatty acids ranges from plant kingdom to animals and microorganisms. These sources were divided in two major categories, namely, marine-based and land-based sources, which include oily fishes and other sea animals, dinoflagellates, protists and many plant species as listed in Table 1.

Marine-Based Source

Animal sources of omega-3 fatty acids living in marine water include oily fishes and dinoflagellates and protists. Marine animals especially fishes generally do not produce omega-3 fatty acids naturally (Albert et al. 1998), in fact these fishes obtain PUFA via marine microorganism through the ocean food chain which get accumulated in the form of fish oils (Lee et al. 2008). Even eggs and meat too contain a good amount of docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) and eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA). Microalgae and species of lower fungi accumulate a high percentage of EPA in the lipid fraction. Currently, marine fishes are the primary dietary sources of these polyunsaturated fatty acids or can be commercially obtained as supplements, which are available over the counter as pharmaceutical preparations (Kris-Etherton et al. 2002; Saravanan et al. 2010). Production and processing of fish oils is a costly manufacturing process, aimed at removing colour pigments, contaminants (dioxins, furans and/or polyaromatic hydrocarbons) and volatile components responsible for the oil's odour and flavour (Bimbo 2011). There is concern regarding the sustainability of fish, due to its decreasing populations from decades of overfishing (Pauly et al. 2005). Environmental pollution has resulted in the accumulation of dioxins and heavy metals in fish and must be tested to rule out dangerous levels of pollutants (Yokoo et al. 2003). Due to potential contamination, the benefits of obtaining PUFAs from fish are being questioned (Yokoo et al. 2003). It is cheaper and easier to remove oil from flaxseed, which is a renewable material, whereas fish is a diminishing source.

Land-Based Source

On the other hand, plant sources are rich in omega-3 fatty acids especially α-linolenic acid which varies as high as 63% depending on the plant source such as flaxseed (50%) and walnut (10%). Finding plant-based sources of the essential omega-3 fatty acid could provide a sustainable, renewable and inexpensive source of omega-3 fatty acid, compared to fish oils. Sacha inchi seeds have a unique fatty acid composition containing a large amount of unsaturated fatty acids (about 85% polyunsaturation), comprised of approximately 34% linoleic acid and 51% linolenic acid

Table 1 Various sources of omega-3 fatty acids

Scientific name	Common name	Type	Reference
Cannabis sativa	Hemp	Plant	Da Porto et al. (2012)
Juglans cinerea	Butternuts	Plant	Gharibzahedi et al. (2012)
Perilla frutescens	Perilla	Plant	Asif (2011)
Ficus carica	Fig seed oil	Plant	Ulbricht et al. (2006)
Carya illinoinensis	Pecan nuts	Plant	Toro-Vazquez et al. (1999)
Linum usitatissimum	Flaxseed	Plant	Cunnane et al. (1993)
Actinidia deliciosa	Kiwifruit seed	Plant	Bahramsoltani et al. (2014)
Corylus avellana	Hazel nuts	Plant	Bernardo-Gil et al. (2002)
Rubus occidentalis	Black raspberry	Plant	Parry and Yu (2004)
Vaccinium vitis-idaea	Lingonberry	Plant	Bere (2007)
Juglans regia	Persian walnuts	Plant	Amaral et al. (2003)
Camelina sativa	Camelina	Plant	Lu and Kang (2008)
Salvia hispanica	Chia seed	Plant	Ayerza et al. (2002)
Portulaca oleracea	Purslane	Plant	Liu et al. (2000)
Hippoglossus hippoglossus	Halibut	Seafood	Falk-Petersen et al. (1986)
Oncorhynchus tshawytscha	Salmon	Seafood	Erdal et al. (1991)
Xiphias gladius	Swordfish	Seafood	Smida et al. (2009)
Etrumeus teres	Herring	Seafood	Ersoy and Celik (2009)
Pollachius pollachius	Pollock	Seafood	Jensen et al. (2012)
Rastrelliger brachysoma	Mackerel	Seafood	Ahmad et al. (2016)
Gadus morhua	Cod	Seafood	Izquierdo (1996)
Engraulis encrasicolus	Anchovies	Seafood	Kaya and Turan (2010)
Ethmidium maculatum	Menhaden	Seafood	Durand and Seminario (2009)
Tuna thynnus	Tuna	Seafood	Saito et al. (1997)
Lopholatilus chamaeleonticeps	Tilefish	Seafood	Cladis et al. (2014)
Sardina pilchardus	Sardines	Seafood	Khoddami et al. (2009)
Perna canaliculus	Mussel	Seafood	Murphy et al. (2003)
Euphausia superb	Krill	Seafood	Bottino (1975)
Saccostrea cucullata	Rock oyster	Seafood	Mclean and Bulling (2005)
Loligo vulgaris	Squids	Seafood	Arts et al. (2001)
Arctocephalus forsteri	Seal	Seafood	Koep et al. (2007)
Thraustochytrium sp.		Protist	Burja et al. (2006)
Schizochytrium sp.		Protist	Barclay et al. (1994)
Crypthecodinium sp.		Protist	Ward and Singh (2005)
Phaeodactylum sp.	Diatom	Microalgae	Yongmanitchai and Ward (1991)
Monodus sp.		Microalgae	Vazhappilly and Chen (1998)
Mortierella sp.		Fungus	Shahidi and Wanasundara (1998)

(Guillen et al. 2003). Flaxseed oil is a rich source of *n*-3 and has been proven to have good bioavailability when used in bulk or emulsion in several studies.

Alternative Sources for Omega-3 Fatty Acids

For improving human health and allaying fear of fish stock collapse and risk of contamination, alternative sources of long-chain omega-3 (n-3) polyunsaturated fatty acids (LC3PUFA) could be one way to address these issues. A number of alternative sources of PUFA are available. ALA-rich oils would be appropriate supplements for vegetarians and vegans. Recent advances in processing techniques in the food industry genetically modified the traditional oils such as soybean and canola to produce enriched quantities of LC3PUFAs (Gillingham et al. 2011; Lemke et al. 2010). Functional foods may be whole, fortified, enriched and enhanced foods that provide health benefits beyond the provision of essential nutrients (Hasler 2002; Berntssen et al. 2010). The European market for functional foods is estimated to be valued in excess of two billion US dollars (Menrad 2003). Enriched or functional foods containing LC3PUFA from plant origin may offer an alternative to supplementation for vegetarians who account for around 6% of the population (Food Standards Agency 2008). Algae oils are a relatively recent innovation in the food industry, and these are contaminant-free and could be used to provide a direct, vegetarian source of DHA (Breivik 2007).

Omega-3 Fatty Acids in Health and Disease Control

There is now strong scientific evidence highlighting that an adequate LC3PUFA status is a key factor in the maintenance of health and can reduce the risk of chronic and inflammatory diseases (Welch et al. 2010). Clinical trials that have been conducted on volunteers subjected to diet rich in PUFA and lower in carbohydrates revealed remarkable upshot on all lipoproteins and circulating lipids, counting noteworthy dwindle in the high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL-C) ratio, which corresponds to strong predictor of cardiovascular disease (CVD) risk (Mensink and Katan 1992; Mozaffarian 2012). Similarly in a study on 80,000 women for a time span of 20 years, increased PUFA consumption was associated with significantly lower coronary heart disease (CHD) risk when replacing carbohydrates (Oh et al. 2005; Mente et al. 2009).

Consumption of plant- and microalgae-based omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids helps in lowering the risk of sudden cardiac death (SCD), myocardial infarction (MI), heart failure (HF) and atrial fibrillation (AF) (Lavie et al. 2009; Kromhout et al. 1985; Yokoyama et al. 2007). Mechanisms of action of omega-3 fatty acids revealed clear insight of its benefits on hemodynamic function (cardiac mechanics), cardiac function (including antiarrhythmic effects), arterial endothelial function and

prevent heart attack as well as decrease the overall risk of cardiovascular disease (Kris-Etherton et al. 2003). Docosahexaenoic acid and omega-3 fatty acid are necessary for the sound growth and better development of the brain and eye in children as well as for continuation of normal brain function in adults (Birch et al. 2007). Deficiencies of DHA are associated with deficits in learning. DHA deficiencies are associated with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder, unipolar depression, foetal alcohol syndrome, aggressive hostility, cystic fibrosis, adrenoleukodystrophy and phenylketonuria (Horrocks and Yeo 1999). Literature revealed further benefits of omega-3 fatty acids in the prevention and treatment of rheumatologic, gastrointestinal, respiratory illnesses and bone disorders (Sakaguchi et al. 1994; Ambrosone et al. 1998). Omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids (omega-3-PUFAs), such as eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA; 20:5 Δ5,8,11,14,17) and docosahexaenoic acid (DHA; 22:6 Δ4,7,10,13,16,19), have great impact on several diseases including hypertension, arthritis, cancer and other inflammatory and autoimmune disorders, but significant benefits are reported related to the disease of cardiovascular disorder (Fig. 1). Benefits of DHA and EPA in human health have been extensively evaluated through many studies (Kang and Weylandt 2008; Takahata et al. 1998). Omega-3 fatty acids have been shown to help DHA and EPA inhibit the proliferation of vascular smooth muscle cells, thus contributing to the prevention of atherosclerosis disease (Horrocks and Yeo 1999). DHA also plays a vital role in thraustochytrid cell life (Jain et al. 2007).

Omega-3 fatty acids have been shown to increase platelet responsiveness to subtherapeutic anticoagulation therapies, including aspirin. DHA is present in large amounts in neuron membrane phospholipids, where it is involved in proper function of the nervous system. PUFAs populate cellular membranes and serve as precursors for hormonelike eicosanoids. It also helps in decreasing the risk of lung, prostate and breast cancer (Freeman et al. 2006; Veierod et al. 1997). Omega-3 fatty acids are also associated with lower blood pressure, improve endothelial function, decrease triglyceride and remnant lipoprotein levels and decrease risk for thrombosis and arrhythmias (Kris-Etherton et al. 2003). EPA and DHA have been linked to

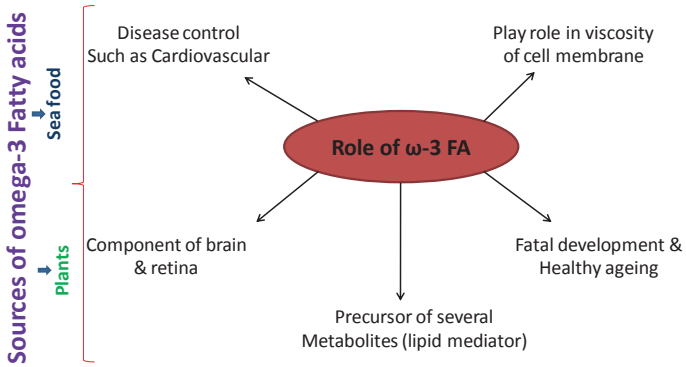


Fig. 1 Role of omega-3 fatty acids

promising results in prevention, weight management and cognitive function in those with very mild Alzheimer's disease and have neuroprotective properties against dementia, and lack of omega-3 PUFA in dietary supplements leads to the risk of cognitive decline or Alzheimer's disease (AD) (Fotuhi et al. 2009).

Omega-3 Polyunsaturated Fatty Acid Regulates Various Proteins

Several mechanisms have been proposed by which n-3 and n-6 PUFA exert their biological actions (Massaro et al. 2008; Adkins and Kelley 2010), however, the information available is scanty on explicitly define the proteins and pathways involved in the actions of PUFA. PUFAs form bioactive mediators which act on different receptors and proteins in the body (Wada et al. 2007). Proteins are important mediators of biological activities in all living cellular units. Proteome is comprised of all expressed proteins encoded by the genome of a cellular system (Schweigert 2007). Ahmed et al. (2014) showed that n-3 PUFAs regulate several proteins involved in lipid metabolism, carbohydrate, citric acid cycle and protein synthesis (Fig. 2). Study suggested an important functional role of dietary n-3 PUFA in regulating proteins involved in lipids, glucose metabolism and protein synthesis. The findings showed that high dietary n-3 PUFA reduced the expression of regucalcin, adenosine kinase and aldehyde dehydrogenase. On the other hand, diets high in n-3 PUFA increased the expression of apolipoprotein A-I, S-adenosylmethionine synthase, fructose-1, 6-bisphosphatase, ketohexokinase, malate dehydrogenase, GTP-specific succinyl CoA synthase, ornithine aminotransferase and protein disulfide isomerase-A3 (Ahmed et al. 2014).

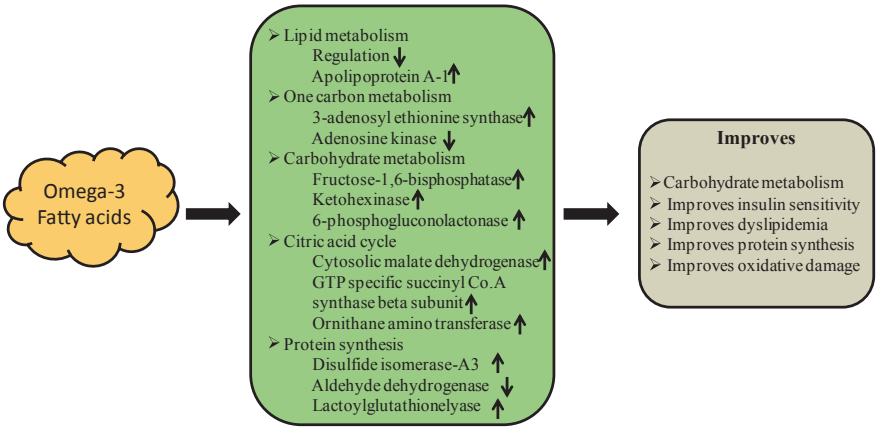


Fig. 2 Effect of omega-3 fatty acids on the regulation of various metabolic pathways. Source: Ahmed et al. Nutrition & Metabolism 2014, 11:6

Omega-3 Polyunsaturated Fatty Acid Biosynthetic Pathways

PUFAs constitute a large group of fatty acids containing long-chain carbonic molecules that include omega-3-fatty acids (Lozach 1986). Omega is the position of the first double bond when counted from the ethyl end, and the number "3" refers to the number of carbon atoms at that position from the methyl end. Eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA, C20:5, n-3) and docosahexaenoic acid (DHA, C22:6, n-3) are two typical omega-3 fatty acids. The prefixes "docosa" and "eicosa" are of Greek descent, meaning the 22 and 20 C-atoms present in DHA and EPA (Lozach 1986).

In plant cells, fatty acid biosynthesis occurs in the plastids with a successive concatenation of 2 carbon units resulting in production of the 16 or 18 carbon long fatty acids that predominate in cellular membranes. A soluble fatty acid desaturase is present in the plastid stroma for conversion of 18:0 into 18:1, where the number before the colon represents the total number of carbons in the fatty acid chain and the number after the colon indicates the number of double bonds. The 18:1 fatty acid is subsequently available for further desaturation by one of two parallel pathways operating in either the plastid or endoplasmic reticulum (ER). For instance, 18:1 may be converted to 18:2 in plastids by a membrane-bound fatty acid desaturase called FAD6, or the 18:1 may be exported from the plastids to the ER for conversion to 18:2 by a structurally related enzyme called FAD2. The FAD2 and FAD6 enzymes are similar at the polypeptide sequence level, with the exception that the FAD6 protein contains a longer N-terminal sequence that is characteristic of a chloroplast transit peptide. In a similar fashion, 18:2 may be converted into 18:3 in plastids by the FAD7 or FAD8 enzymes, which are encoded by two closely related genes in *Arabidopsis* or can be exported to the ER for conversion to 18:3 by the FAD3 enzyme. This latter group of enzymes (FAD7/FAD8 and FAD3) is referred to as omega-3 fatty acid desaturase, since they introduce a double bond at the omega-3 position of the fatty acid structure. Thus the FAD6 and FAD2 enzymes, which produce 18:2, and the FAD7/FAD8 and FAD3 enzymes, which produce 18:3, all play central roles in production of the PUFAs that are present in all plant species. The ER-localized desaturase FAD2 and FAD3 are also involved in the production of PUFA components of seed oils (Ohlrogge and Browse 1995), given the importance of these fatty acids to human nutrition and in determining stability of oils during cooking or other food applications (Bocianowski et al. 2012; Hu et al. 2006; Tian et al. 2014; Yang et al. 2012).

Alpha-linolenic acid (ALA) is an essential fatty acid and the substrate for the synthesis of longer-chain, more unsaturated omega-3 fatty acids, eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA), docosapentaenoic acid and docosahexaenoic acid (DHA), which are associated with human health benefits. The biosynthetic pathway includes a series of desaturation, elongation and beta-oxidation reactions, with the rate-limiting enzyme considered to be that catalysed by delta-6 desaturase (Fig. 3). SDA (stearidonic acid) is an intermediate in the pathway of EPA and DHA biosynthesis (Fig. 3), being the product of ALA desaturation by delta-6 desaturase. Since D6D is rate limiting for conversion of ALA to EPA, SDA is potentially another better substrate

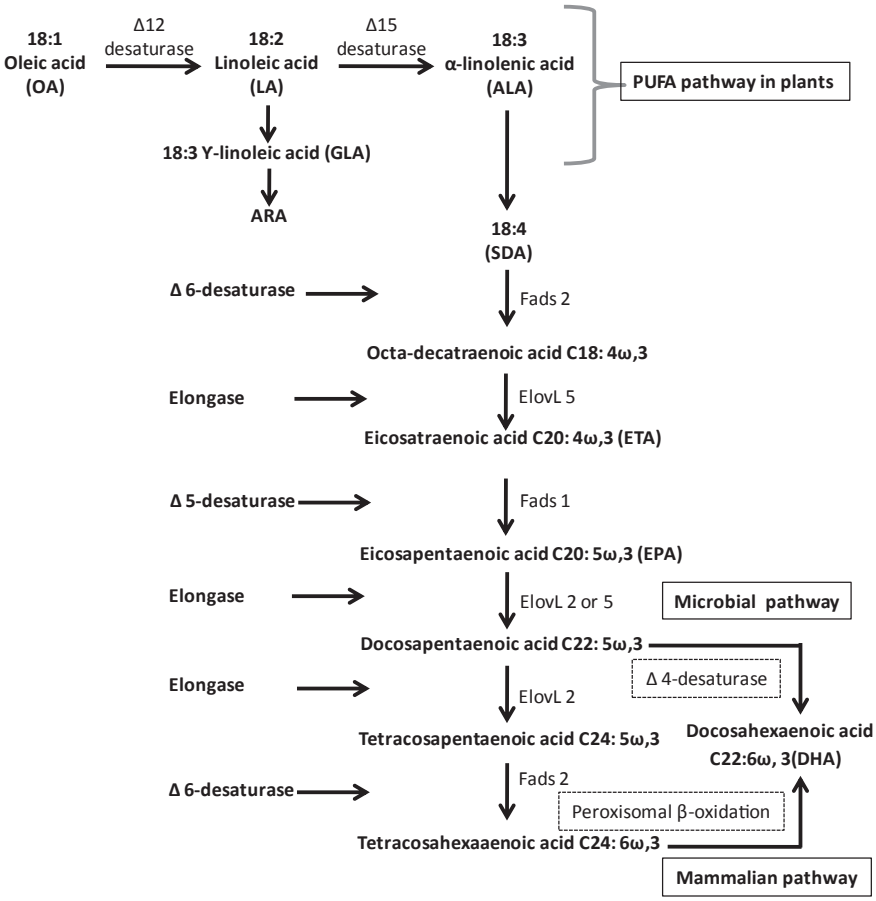


Fig. 3 Biosynthetic pathway of omega-3 fatty acids in plants and animals

for the biosynthesis of omega-3 PUFAs. There are few natural sources of SDA; it is found in *Echium* oil, where it contributes about 9–16% of fatty acids (Berti et al. 2007, Bioriginal 2014). Levels of SDA have been substantially increased in soybean oil by genetic modification (Ursin 2003).

Various different biosynthetic pathways for DHA and EPA have been deduced in marine microbes earlier (Venegas-Calerón et al. 2010; Petrie and Singh 2011). The traditional route by which diatoms and microalgae synthesize EPA, DHA and other omega-3 LC-PUFAs is via a series of alternating desaturation and elongation steps acting on long-chain (C18) polyunsaturated substrates, and this process is aerobic process. This process can be furthered into two distinct types of primary biosynthetic activities, the predominant "Δ6-pathway", in which introduction of a Δ6-desaturation into a C18 substrate is the first committed step, followed by C2 elongation and further Δ5-desaturation. Another pathway is alternative or "Δ8-pathway", which is a less common route, and this pathway starts with the C2

elongation of the C18 substrate, followed by two successive desaturation reactions (Δ8, Δ5) (Ruiz-Lopez et al. 2015). For the synthesis of DHA, this is initiated by the C2 elongation of EPA and further (Δ4) desaturation.

Animals, including humans, lack the Δ-12 and Δ-15 desaturase enzymes, which are essential for the synthesis of omega-3 and ω-6 fatty acids. As such they are not capable of building long-chain omega fatty acids and must acquire them from their diets. Humans and other animals obtain some DHA and intermediate products such as EPA through bioconversion of α-linolenic acid (18:3, omega-3) and some from direct consumption of DHA itself (Fig. 3; Innis 2003). Omega-3 fatty acids are typically synthesized from α-linolenic acids acquired from dietary plant sources and are hence regarded as biological sources of EPA and DHA. Further metabolism of α-linolenic acids is characterized by the action of the Δ-6 desaturase enzyme followed by the action of the elongase enzyme for the addition of a carbon atom to the molecular chain, leading to action by Δ-5 desaturase to form EPA. Earlier studies revealed the occurrence of the desaturation process of the long-chain fatty acids in endoplasmic reticulum (Innis 2003).

In the last decade, several genes have been identified from a range of different microbial sources for all these activities. Some prokaryotic and eukaryotic microorganisms (marine) take alternative route for synthesis of EPA or DHA that is anaerobic or polyketide synthase (PKS) pathway. Several genes of this pathway have been identified and characterized. In this pathway, malonyl-CoA is converted into omega-3 PUFAs by using processive polyketide synthase-like enzymatic system that is independent of any fatty acid intermediate formation (Metz et al. 2001). It was first described in *Shewanella pneumatophori* strain SCRC-2378, a marine bacteria, the complex consists of eight different PKS protein domains (Yazawa 1996).

Metabolic Fate of Alpha-Linolenic Acid in Humans

ALA in human nutrition becomes important in terms of long-term dietary intake, and its advantage over omega-3 fatty acids from fish is that the problem of insufficient vitamin E intake does not exist with high intake of ALA from plant sources. The ALA-rich lipids are gradually digested, first by gastric lipase and then by pancreatic lipases. The liberated free fatty acids are readily absorbed and incorporated into lymph chylomicrons, largely in the form of phospholipids. Chylomicron TAG is hydrolysed by lipoprotein lipase expressed on the endothelium; adipose tissue lipoprotein lipase is upregulated in the postprandial period which results in targeting of meal fatty acids for storage. In tissues, both ALA and LA can be converted into fatty acids of longer and more unsaturated chain via common pathway of alternate desaturation and elongation (Bezard et al. 2003; Nelson and Ackman 1998). However, in humans, the conversion of ALA to longer-chain essential fatty acids is very inefficient, (Bezard et al. 2003) possibly because of slow desaturation of ALA in the presence of excess LA in the tissues (Simopoulos 1991) and/or because of high susceptibility of ALA to oxidation (Pawlosky et al. 2001). It has been

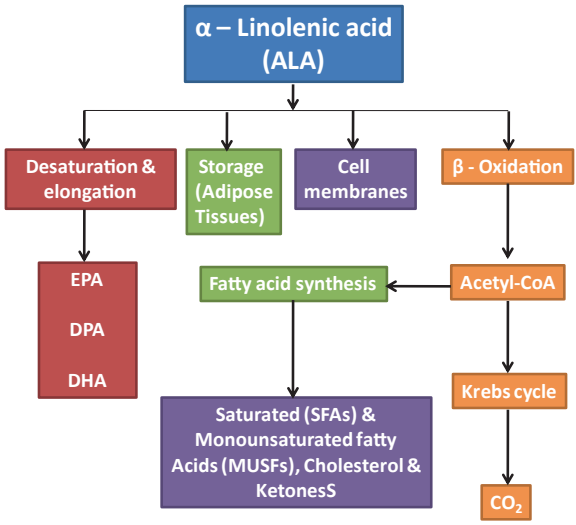


Fig. 4 Metabolic fate of omega-3 fatty acids in humans

postulated that the role of dietary ALA as a long-chain omega-3 precursor may become important in human nutrition in terms of long-term dietary intake.

Through these processes ALA from the diet can be made available to be incorporated into cell membranes and pools for storage (in adipose tissue), energy production (cell and tissue) or conversion to longer-chain omega-3 PUFAs (supposed to mainly occur in the liver). The metabolic fates of ALA are summarized in Fig. 4. ALA and SDA are converted to EPA and DHA through a series of elongation and desaturation processes occurring predominantly within the endoplasmic reticulum, excluding the last β-oxidation reaction which forms DHA and occurs in peroxisomes (Fig. 4). This pathway is believed to mainly occur within the liver (Nakamura and Nara 2004), but there is some evidence that the brain, retina and testis also have high expression of the genes encoding the relevant enzymes compared with other tissues (Agbaga et al. 2010; Sassa and Kihara 2014). D6D is encoded by the gene fatty acid desaturase 2 (Fads2) and has a preference for ALA over LA. SDA is converted to 20:4 omega-3 by the enzyme elongase-5, encoded by fatty acid elongase 5 (Elovl5). SDA is an intermediate in this metabolic pathway, being synthesized from ALA via the action of D6D (Fig. 4).

Metabolic Engineering of Pathways for Production of Omega-3 Polyunsaturated Fatty Acids (Omega-3 PUFAs) in Transgenic Plants

The increase in demand of these fatty acids as fish oil has led to putting enormous pressure on marine stock which is already in diminishing state (Cressey 2009). Increasing pollution of marine environment and an adequate lack of fish stock have

prompted the desperate search for an entirely new source of omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids, and the approach that meets the increasing demand should be sustainable and capable (Tocher 2009). Furthermore, product quality derived from fish oil is generally dependent on the season and location, and it can be affected by the ocean pollution. The process for purifying these fatty acids from fish oil itself is complicated as well (Lenihan-Geels et al. 2013).

New-generation GM crops are now also being developed for the production of recombinant medicines and industrial products, such as monoclonal antibodies, vaccines, plastics and biofuels. Alternative resources of n-3 PUFAs created by transgenic domestic animals would also be an economic approach. In a study, mfat-1 transgenic cattle expressed a *Caenorhabditis elegans* gene, mfat-1, encoding an n-3 fatty acid desaturase. Fatty acid analysis of tissue and milk showed that all of the examined n-3 PUFAs were greatly increased and simultaneously the n-6 PUFAs decreased in the transgenic cow. Kang et al. reported that expression of a humanized fat-1 gene (hfat-1), encoding an n-3 fatty acid desaturase from *Caenorhabditis elegans*, in mice resulted in a significant increase of n-3 fatty acids as well as a sharply decreased ratio of n-6/n-3 fatty acids in the hfat-1 transgenic mice (Kang et al. 2004). n-3 fatty acids in the milk of transgenic mice were also significantly increased.

Another alternative and novel sources of omega-3 fatty acids can be green manufactured from marine algal or algae-like microbial oils, which could eliminate many of the taste and odour problems associated with fish and discard the shortcomings of fish oil-based process. The process of culturing the algae or algae-like microorganism to accumulate the oil rich in omega-3 fatty acids was defined as "Omega-3 Biotechnology" (Gupta et al. 2012). Currently, the most common algae or algae-like microorganism used for the production of DHA belongs to the marine members of the families Thraustochytriaceae and Crypthecodiniaceae. Thraustochytrids include the genera *Schizochytrium* and *Ulkenia*, whereas dinoflagellate *Crypthecodinium* is a genus of the family Crypthecodiniaceae (Barclay et al. 1994; Borowitzka 2013; Klok et al. 2014).

For the last three decades, it has been continuously observed that the focus of research has shifted towards genetic engineering of crop plants to increase the possibility of rapid achievement of goal for enhancing nutritional value of crop plants. The genetic engineering technique allows altering genomic composition of the higher plants that changes their metabolism and physiology that leads to plants with improved yield quality (Mullet 1990). This technique allows using vast array of useful genes and also introduction of different desirable genes in single event in plants. Genetic engineering practices have been utilized to modify the plants genetically for enhancement of nutritional values of plants, to improve quality of the crops and for several other reasons such as increase the adaptability of plants in adverse conditions while maintaining the yield quality (Lemaux 2008). The site of the o3 desaturase reaction is the endoplasmic reticulum or chloroplasts (Heinz 1993), and a seed-specific o3 desaturase cDNA of perilla has recently been cloned and characterized (Chung et al. 1999). Additionally, mutants deficient in α-linolenate synthesis were isolated in linseed and *Arabidopsis* (Stymne et al. 1992; Browse et al. 1993).

Perilla oil is one of the important oil resources, because more than 60% of the total fatty acids in triacylglycerol (TG) is α-linolenic acid (Hilditch 1956).

Alpha-linolenic (ALA; 18:3 Δ9,12,15) is considered as essential fatty acids for higher animals including humans because they are essentially required in their diet but they lack the Δ12- and Δ15-desaturase activities that convert oleic acid (OA; 18:1 Δ9) to ALA. In vivo studies in humans show that only ∼5% of ALA is converted to EPA and <0.5% of ALA is converted to DHA (Williams and Burdge 2006). This low conversion efficiencies of ALA to omega-3-PUFAs lead to the lack of sufficient dietary omega-3-PUFAs which could compromise health. Obtaining of omega-3-PUFAs for fulfilling dietary consumption through oily fish, could risk the increasing the conditions such as cardiovascular disease, metabolic syndrome and obesity (Calder 2004; Nugent 2004; Williams and Burdge 2006; Poudyal et al. 2011). For increasing the intake of EPA and DHA to the sufficient amount through marine fishes, the adequate supply of marine fishes is difficult due to number of reasons such as, high degree of exploitation of marine fishes stock (Food and Agriculture Organisation of the United Nations, 2010), environment pollution of marine ecosystem (Domingo et al. 2007) and the marine fishes are poor producers of Omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids (omega-3-PUFAs) and the original source of omega-3-PUFAs are marine microalgae (e.g. diatoms), which are accumulating in fish lipids through food chain (Smith et al. 2011, b).

Countering the limited supply and increasing demand for omega-3-PUFAs, much research effort has focused on engineering oilseed plants to synthesize EPA and DHA. Such enormous potential to develop the use of terrestrial plant-based lipids is a significant approach; as such a substitution could relieve the aquaculture industry's pressures on forage fisheries. It would also lighten the human health problems associated with the presence of polychlorinated biphenyls and dioxins in fish feeds. Therefore, the concept of acquiring them from higher plants in commercial and significant quantities is particularly appealing. However, no oilseed species produces such products naturally, so there is an essential need to genetically engineer the agronomically viable oilseed species to synthesize these fatty acids.

Petrie et al. (2010, 2012) have recently described metabolic engineering of ω3 LC-PUFA in plants: after inserting seven biosynthesis genes of the docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) biosynthesis pathway from microalgae into the genome of *Arabidopsis thaliana*, they were able to obtain ω3 LC-PUFA levels in seeds similar to that observed in bulk fish oil. If applied to oilseed crops such as *Brassica napus*, this technology could potentially form the basis of a plant-based sustainable source to complement the existing marine fish oil supply.

In spite of identification and functional characterization of so many genes of the pathways involve in synthesis EPA and DHA, this whole process is not so straightforward as it might appear, for many limiting steps and for a number of reasons. The reconstitution of entire pathway for synthesis of EPA and DHA needs coordinated expression and activity of several genes, which vary in many transgenic systems. Apart from this, some other factors may hinder the synthesis of desired product such as the need of pre-existing substrate C18 di- or tri-unsaturated fatty acids for constituent enzymes in aerobic pathway. Similarly, in anaerobic pathway, the

requirement of malonyl-CoA is primary metabolites whose level is abundantly low. Moreover, the selective exclusion of EPA or DHA could take place in system where the capacity of EPA and DHA synthesis is introduced because the native enzymes of the pathways will be unfamiliar with these fatty acids in host system, or sometimes the "trapping" of biosynthetic intermediates in undesired metabolic dead ends could also take place due to activity of housekeeping enzymes (McCartney et al. 2004; Ruiz-Lopez et al. 2007). Considering all these functional characterizations of various genes of the entire pathways and the enzymatic activities they possess, an effort could be applied to reconstitute them through metabolic engineering in order to provide them the capacity to synthesize EPA and DHA in a heterologous system. Before the engineering of metabolic pathways for synthesis of (omega-3-PUFAs) in plant system, individual genes of pathways such as Δ6- and Δ5-desaturases were expressed and evaluated in plant system to know whether such activities are feasible in heterologous system or not after identification of all the biosynthetic genes needed for the synthesis and accumulation of omega-3-PUFAs by 2004 (Kinney 2006; Napier 2007). These events led the foundation of belief that engineering such pathways in plant system is feasible. First time in 2004, Qi et al. has shown the accumulation of EPA in the leaves of transgenic *Arabidopsis* plant, when they expressed genes of alternative pathway from algae *Isochrysis galbana* and *Euglena gracilis*. This event led to vegetative production and accumulation of EPA. Since all the plants ideally store target lipids in the form of triacylglycerol (TAG) that is terminal point in seed oil biosynthesis. Plant oils are rich in C18 fatty acids, including the essential fatty acids linoleic acid (18:2Δ9,12,n-6; LA) and α-linolenic acid ALA, but it is devoid of EPA and DHA (Saravanan et al. 2010). Next challenge was to produce and accumulate omega-3-PUFAs in plant seeds and this objective was achieved when the seed specific synthesis and accumulation was achieved by expression of genes fatty acyl-desaturases and elongases of conventional Δ6-pathway in transgenic tobacco (*Nicotiana tabacum*) and linseed (*Linum usitatissimum*), using the seed-specific promoters (Abbadi et al. 2004). In another attempt, a metabolic pathway was engineered in *Arabidopsis thaliana* using genes of alternating desaturation and elongation from using seed-specific promoters for the synthesis of DHA. DHA production up to 15% was observed in the seeds of transgenic plants (Petrie et al. 2012). Further works have been done on the optimization of pathways so that only desired fatty acids can be accumulated in seeds. The utilization of omega-3-specific desaturases that check the accumulation of unwanted omega-6 fatty acids and the application of acyl-CoA-dependent desaturases for the first committed (Δ6) step on the pathway led to further optimization and purity of the product (Domergue et al. 2005; Hoffmann et al. 2008; Cheng et al. 2010; Petrie et al. 2010). As a result, significant development took place in metabolic engineering of pathways, and a considerable level of omega-3-PUFAs such as EPA and DHA can accumulate in oil seeds of transgenic plants that is similar to what is found in marine fish oil.

The accumulation of EPA and DHA in model systems was achieved by using different approaches, and this was facilitated by identification of different genes from algae and other lower eukaryotes and the use of them in engineering metabolic

pathways in plant system. This metabolic engineering approach was further taken one step ahead, in order to direct the accumulation of omega-3-PUFAs in seeds of transgenic plants. After the successful engineering of metabolic pathway in order to synthesize EPA and DHA in model plants, this approach was further used in crop plants to address the challenges accompanied with generating a potential substitute in agriculturally important crop plants.

Later on, more complex metabolic engineering was done in *Brassica juncea* for the production of EPA in seeds, where there are series of transformation and expression of transgenes of alternating desaturation/elongation pathways. This led to the accumulation of arachidonic acid (20:4n-6, AA) in the n-6 and EPA. The plants seeds were so engineered that led to the conversion of ARA into EPA. This metabolic engineering also results into synthesis of DHA via Δ5 elongation and Δ4 desaturation reactions (Wu et al. 2005). Further, Ruiz-Lopez et al. (2014) have shown the significant increase in the level of EPA and DHA in the oil seeds of *Camelina sativa*, when a set of heterologous genes were expressed in *Camelina sativa*, which directs the synthesis of these fatty acids, and this also led to lowering the chances of accumulation of unwanted fatty acid intermediates. In another study, Petrie et al. (2014) has also shown the considerable accumulation of DHA level in seeds of *Camelina sativa*, when metabolic engineering of the pathway which directs the synthesis of DHA was achieved in *Camelina sativa*. In both studies, the significant increase in the level of DHA was achieved, while the level of EPA was low in the latter case. Until recently, modifications of oil composition could be achieved through traditional plant breeding, where natural diversity within closely related species could be exploited, or through mutagenesis. Transgenic technology widens the scope of modifications achievable in oil composition by allowing the introduction of a wider range of genetic elements than is otherwise possible. There has been considerable focus on the identification and analysis of enzymes and underlying genes involved in plant lipid biosynthesis. Coupled with efficient plant transformation systems for the key oilseed crops, canola and soybean, metabolic engineering of seed lipids in these two crops has become feasible. Genes encoding the fatty acid desaturase enzymes that catalyse these reactions have been identified and characterized from diverse sources including higher plants and fungi (17). Ursin (2003) has generated transgenic canola lines expressed in seeds, the Δ6 and Δ12 fatty acid desaturases isolated from the commercially grown fungus, *Mortierella alpina*, and the Δ15 fatty acid desaturase from canola (*Brassica napus*).

The fascinating observation of these studies in crop plants further validates the reconstitution of metabolic pathways performed in model plants in order to achieve the accumulation of DHA and EPA. Hence, working in crop plants like *Brassica juncea* and *Camelina sativa* delivers more opportunities in better manner for engineering the pathways in crop plants with the incorporation of heterologous genes in order to enhance the synthesis accumulations of target fatty acids.

Conclusion

Omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs) such as eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA) and docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) have been regarded as an important dietary component with multiple health benefits. It works through interaction with various proteins and act on cellular, molecular and physiological levels which have significant positive impact on improving health status of human beings. Currently, the primary dietary source of these fatty acids is marine fish, but the establishment of sustainable nonfish sources is important to overcome the fish-dependent limited supply of this critical long-chain unsaturated fatty acids.

The human body cannot naturally produce ALA, and its role in heart health is assigned primarily to its conversion to EPA and DHA in the human body. While the human body is able to synthesize EPA and DHA from ALA, the process is inefficient. An interesting approach for significant supply of omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs) is metabolic engineering of a crop plant with potential to synthesize these fatty acids. Multiple genes are required to construct the metabolic pathway for the synthesis of omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs) that work in coordination for the tissue-specific expression in transgenic plants. Genes involved in metabolic pathways were identified, and metabolic engineering was done to reconstruct the metabolic pathway in model plant system that led to the tissue specific synthesis and accumulation of EPA and DHA in transgenic model plants. This was followed by engineering of metabolic pathway in crop plants to generate the new source of these fatty acids in agriculturally important crop plants. *Brassica juncea* and *Camelina sativa* were engineered for the production of DHA and EPA, and the level of DHA was significantly increased in both cases, while the level of EPA was lower in the latter case. The interesting results achieved in these studies in crop plants encourage metabolic engineering of pathways in other crop plants to increase the level of DHA and EPA to the significant level. The whole study discharges more opportunities and encourages reconstruction of metabolic pathways in an effective manner in crop plants and the application of transgenic plants for the production of molecules which have multiple health benefits, and the need of the hour is to adapt and increase the agriculture-based production systems with low cost.

Acknowledgement Nita Lakra is thankful to University Grant Commission for providing D S Kothari Fellowship. Saquib Mahmood gratefully acknowledge Department of Biotechnology for providing JRF/SRF as financial support and Jawaharlal Nehru University, New Delhi is also acknowledged.

References

Abbadi A, Domergue F, Bauer J, Napier JA, Welti R, Zähringer U, Cirpus P, Heinz E (2004) Biosynthesis of very-long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids in transgenic oilseeds: constraints on their accumulation. Plant Cell 16:2734–2748

Adkins Y, Kelley DS (2010) Mechanisms underlying the cardioprotective effects of omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids. J Nutr Biochem 21:781–792

Agbaga MP, Mandal MN, Anderson RE (2010) Retinal very long-chain PUFAs: new insights from studies on ELOVL4 protein. J Lipid Res 51:1624–1642

Ahmad NI, Rozita W, Mahiyuddin W, Mohamad TRT, Ling CY, Daud SF, Hussein NC, Abdullah NA, Shaharudin R, Sulaiman LH (2016) Fish consumption pattern among adults of different ethnics in peninsular Malaysia. Food Nutr Res 60:32697

Ahmed AA, Balogun KA, Bykova NV, Cheema SK (2014) Novel regulatory roles of omega-3 fatty acids in metabolic pathways: a proteomics approach. Nutr Metab 11:6

Albert CM, Hennekens CH, O'Donnell CJ (1998) Fish consumption and risk of sudden cardiac death. JAMA 279:23–28

Amaral JS, Casal S, Pereira JA, Seabra RM, Oliveira BPP (2003) Determination of Sterol and Fatty Acid Compositions, Oxidative Stability, and Nutritional Value of Six Walnut (L.) Cultivars Grown in Portugal. Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry 51 (26):7698–7702

Ambrosone CB, Freudenheim JL, Sinha R (1998) Breast cancer risk, meat consumption and N-acetyltransferase (NAT2) genetic polymorphisms. Int J Cancer 75:825–830

Arts MT, Ackman RG, Holub BJ (2001) "Essential fatty acids" in aquatic ecosystems: a crucial link between diet and human health and evolution. Can J Fish Aquat Sci 58(1):122–137. https://doi.org/10.1139/f00-224

Asif M (2011) Health effects of omega-3, 6, 9 fatty acids: Perilla frutescens is a good example of plant oils. Orient Pharm Exp Med 11:51–59

Ayerza R, Coates W, Lauria M (2002) Chia seed (*Salvia hispanica* L.) as an omega-3 fatty acid source for broilers: influence on fatty acid composition, cholesterol and fat content of white and dark meats, growth performance, and sensory characteristics. Poultry Sci 81:826–837

Bahramsoltani R, Farzaei MH, Rahim R (2014) Medicinal plants and their natural components as future drugs for the treatment of burn wounds: an integrative review. Arch Dermatol Res 306:601–617

Barclay WR, Meager KM, Abril JR (1994) Heterotrophic production of long chain omega-3 fatty acids utilizing algae and algae-like microorganisms. J Appl Phycol 6:123–129. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF02186066

Ben Smida MA, Marzouk B, El Cafsi M (2009) The composition of fatty acids in the tissues of Tunisian swordfish (Xiphias gladius). Food Chem 115:522–528

Bere E (2007) Wild berries: a good source of omega-3. Eur J Clin Nutr 61:431–433

Bernardo-Gil MG, Grenha J, Santos J, Cardoso P (2002) Supercritical fluid extraction and characterisation of oil from hazelnut. Eur J Lipid Sci Technol 104:402–409

Berntssen MH, Olsvik PA, Torstensen BE, Julshamn K, Midtun T, Goksoyr A, Johansen J, Sigholt T, Joerum N, Jakobsen JV, Lundebye AK, Lock EJ (2010) Reducing persistent organic pollutants while maintaining long chain omega-3 fatty acid in farmed Atlantic salmon using decontaminated fish oils for an entire production cycle. Chemosphere 81(2):242–252

Berti M, Johnson BL, Dash S, Fischer S, Wilckens R (2007) Issues in new crops and new uses. In: Janick J, Whipkey A, Hevia F (eds) Echium: a source of stearidonic acid adapted to the northern Great Plains in the US. ASHS Press, Alexandria, VA, pp 120–125

Bezard J, Blond JP, Bernard A, Clouet AP (2003) The metabolism and bioavailability of essential fatty acids in animal and human tissues. Reprod Nutr Dev 34:539–568

Bimbo AP (2011) The production and processing of marine oils: the American oil chemists' society lipid library. http://www.lipidlibrary.aocs.org/processing/marine/index.htm

Bioriginal. Echium oil. http://www.bioriginal.com/learning-center/omega-ingredients/plant-sourced/echium-oil-eu/ (accessed 17/11/2014)

Birch EE, Garfield S, Castaneda Y, et al (2007) Visual acuity and cognitive outcomes at 4 years of age in a doubleblind, randomized trial of long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acid-supplemented infant formula. Early Hum Dev 83(5):279–284

Bocianowski J, Mikolajczyk K, Bartkowiak-Broda I (2012) Determination of fatty acid composition in seed oil of rapeseed (Brassica napus L.) by mutated alleles of the FAD3 desaturase genes. J Appl Genet 53:27–30

Borowitzka MA (2013) High-value products from microalgae – their development and commercialization. J Appl Phycol 25:743–756. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10811-013-9983-9

Bottino NR (1975) Lipid composition of two species of antarctic krill: euphausia superb and E. Crystallorophis. Comp Biochem Physio L 50B:479–484

Breivik H (2007) Long-chain Omega-3 Speciality oils. The Oily Press, Bridgwater

Browse J, McConn M, James D Jr, Miquel M (1993) Mutants of Arabidopsis deficient in the synthesis of α-linolenate. J Biol Chem 22:16345–16351

Burja AM, Radianingtyas H, Windust A, Barrow CJ (2006) Isolation and characterization of polyunsaturated fatty acid producing Thraustochytrium species: screening of strains and optimization of omega-3 production. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 72:1161–1169

Calder PC (2004) Fatty acids and cardiovascular disease: evidence explained and mechanisms explored. Clin Sci 10:1–11

Cheng B, Wu G, Vrinten P, Falk K, Bauer J, Qiu X (2010) Towards the production of high levels of eicosapentaenoic acid in transgenic plants: the effects of different host species, genes and promoters. Transgenic Res 19:221–229

Chung CH, Kim JL, Lee YC, Choi YL (1999) Cloning and characterization of a seed-specific o-3 fatty acid desaturase cDNA from Perilla frutescens. Plant Cell Physiol 40:114–118

Cladis DP, Kleiner AC, Freiser HH, Santerre CR (2014) Fatty acid profiles of commercially available finfish fillets in the United States. Lipids 49:1005–1018

Cressey D (2009) Aquaculture: future fish. Nature 458:398–400

Cunnane SC, Ganguli S, Menard C, Liede AC, Hamadeh MJ, Chenthomas Z, Wolever MS, Jenkins DJA (1993) High a-linolenic acid flaxseed (Linurn usiiaiissimurn): some nutritional properties in humans. Br J Nutr 69:443–453

Da Porto C, Decorti D, Tubaro F (2012) Fatty acid composition and oxidation stability of hemp (Cannabis sativa L.) seed oil extracted by supercritical carbon dioxide. Ind Crop Prod 36:401–404

Domergue F, Abbadi A, Zähringer U, Moreau H, Heinz E (2005) In vivo characterization of the first acyl-CoA D6-desaturase from a member of the plant kingdom, the microalga Ostreococcus tauri. Biochem J 389:483–490

Domingo JL, Bocio A, Falcó G, Llobet JM (2007) Benefits and risks of fish consumption part I. a quantitative analysis of the intake of omega-3 fatty acids and chemical contaminants. Toxicology 230:219–226

Durand SN, Seminario GM (2009) Status of and trends in the use of small pelagic fish species for reduction fisheries and for human consumption in Peru. In: Hasan MR, Halwart M (eds) Fish as feed inputs for aquaculture: practices, sustainability and implications, FAO fisheries and aquaculture technical paper no. 518. FAO, Rome, pp 325–369

Erdal JI, Evensen O, Kaurstad OK, Lillehaug A, Solbakken R, Thorud K (1991) Relationship between diet and immune response in Atlantic salmon (Salmo salar L.) after feeding various levels of ascorbic acid and omega-3 fatty acids. Aquaculture 98:363–379

Ersoy B, Celik M (2009) Essential elements and contaminants in tissues of commercial pelagic fish from the eastern Mediterranean Sea. J Sci Food Agric 89:1615–1621

Food and agriculture organization of the United Nations (2010) The state of world fisheries and aquaculture. Food and Agriculture Organization, Rome

Food standards agency (2008) Consumer attitudes survey 2007: England summary report. FSA, London

Fotuhi M, Mohassel P, Yaffe K (2009) Fish consumption, long-chain omega-3 fatty acids and risk of cognitive decline or Alzheimer disease: a complex association. Nat Clin Pract Neur 5(3):140–152

Freeman MP, Hibbeln JR, Wisner KL, Davis JM, Mischoulon D, Peet M, Keck PE, Marangell LB, Richardson AJ, Lake J, Stoll AL (2006) Omega-3 fatty acids: evidence basis for treatment and future research in psychiatry. J Clin Psychiatry 67:1–14

Gharibzahedi SMT, Mousavi SM, Hamedi M, Khodaiya F (2012) Comparative analysis of new Persian walnut cultivars: nut/kernel geometrical, gravimetrical, frictional and mechanical attributes and kernel chemical composition. Sci Hortic 135:202–209

Gillingham LG, Gustafson JA, Han SY, Jassal DS, Jones PJH (2011) High-oleic rapeseed (canola) and flaxseed oils modulated serum lipids and inflammatory biomarkers in hypercholesteraemic subjects. Br J Nutr 105(3):417–427

Guillen MD, Ruiz A, Cabo N, Chirinos R, Pascual G (2003) Characterization of Sacha Inchi (Plukenetia volubilis L.) oil by FTIR spectroscopy and 1H NMR. Comparison with linseed oil. J Am Oil Chem Soc 80:755–762

Gupta A, Barrow C, Puri M (2012) Omega-3 biotechnology: thraustochytrids as a novel source of omega-3 oils. Biotechnol Adv 30:1733–1745. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biotechadv.2012.02.014

Hasler CM (2002) Functional foods: benefits, concerns and challenges—a position paper from the American council on science and health. J Nutr 132(12):3772–3781

Heinz E (1993) Biosynthesis of polyunsaturated fatty acids. In: Moore TS Jr (ed) Lipid metabolism in plants. CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp 33–89

Hilditch TP (1956) The chemical constitution of natural fats. Chapman & Hall, London

Hoffmann M, Wagner M, Abbadi A, Fulda M, Feussner I (2008) Metabolic engineering of ω-3 very long chain polyunsaturated fatty acid production by an exclusively acyl-CoA-dependent pathway. J Biol Chem 283:22352–22362

Horrocks LA, Yeo YK (1999) Health benefits of docosahexaenoic acid (DHA). Pharmacol Res 40(3):211–225

Hu X, Sullivan-Gilbert M, Gupta M, Thompson SA (2006) Mapping of the loci controlling oleic and linolenic acid contents and development of fad2 and fad3 allele-specific markers in canola (Brassica napus L.). Theor Appl Genet 113:497–507

Innis SM (2003) Perinatal biochemistry and physiology of long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids. J Pediatr 143(4 Suppl):S1–S8

Izquierdo MS (1996) Essential fatty acid requirements of cultured marine fish larvae. Aquaculture Nutr 2:183–191

Jain R, Raghukumar S, Sambaiah K, Kumon Y, Nakahara T (2007) Docosahexaenoic acid accumulation in thraustochytrids: search for the rationale. Mar Biol 151:1657–1664

Jensen IJ, Maehre HK, Tommeras ESKE, Olsen RL, Elvevoll EO (2012) Farmed Atlantic salmon (Salmo salar L.) is a good source of long chain omega-3 fatty acids. Br Nutr Found Nutr Bullet 37:25–29

Kang JX, Wang J, Wu L, Kang ZB (2004) Transgenic mice: fat-1 mice convert n-6 to n-3 fatty acids. Nature 427:504

Kang JX, Weylandt KH (2008) Modulation of inflammatory cytokines by omega-3 fatty acids. Subcell Biochem 49:133–143

Kaya Y, Turan H (2010) Comparison of protein, lipid and fatty acids composition of anchovy (Engraulis encrasicolus L. 1758) during the commercial catching seasons. J Muscle Foods 21:474–483

Khoddami A, Ariffin AA, Bakar J, Ghazal HM (2009) Fatty acid profile of the oil extracted from fish waste (head, intestine and liver) (Sardinella lemuru). World Appl Sci J 7(1):127–131

Kinney AJ (2006) Metabolic engineering in plants for human health and nutrition. Curr Opin Biotechnol 17:130–138

Klok AJ, Lamers PP, Martens DE, Draaisma RB, Wijffels RH (2014) Edible oils from microalgae: insights in TAG accumulation. Trends Biotechnol 32:521–528. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tibtech.2014.07.004

Koep KSC, Hoffman LC, Dicks LMT, Slinde E (2007) Chemical composition of meat and blubber of the cape fur seal (Arctocephalus pusillus pusillus). Food Chem 100:1560–1565
Kris-Etherton PM, Harris WS, Appel LJ (2002) AHA scientific statement—fish consumption, fish oil, omega-3 fatty acids, and cardiovascular disease. For the Nutrition Committee. Circulation 106:2747–2757
Kris-Etherton PM, Harris WS, Appel LJ (2003) Fish consumption, fish oil, Omega-3 fatty acids, and cardiovascular disease. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 23:e20–e30
Kromhout D, Bosschieter EB, de Lezenne CC (1985) The inverse relation between fish consumption and 20-year mortality from coronary heart disease. N Engl J Med 312:1205–1209
Lavie CJ, Milani RV, Mehra MR, Ventura HO (2009) Omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids and cardiovascular diseases. J Am College Cardiol 54(7):585–594
Lee JH, O'Keefe JH, Lavie CJ, Marchioli R, Harris WS (2008) Omega-3 fatty acids for cardioprotection. Mayo Clin Proc 83:324–332
Lemaux PG (2008) Genetically Engineered Plants and Foods: A Scientist's Analysis of the Issues (Part I). Annual Review of Plant Biology 59 (1):771–812
Lemke SL, Vicini JL, Su H, Goldstein DA, Nemth MA, Krul ES, Harris WS (2010) Dietary intake of stearidonic acid-enhanced soybean oil increases the omega-3 index: randomised double-blind clinical study of efficacy and safety. Am J Clin Nutr 92:9
Lenihan-Geels G, Bishop KS, Ferguson LR (2013) Alternative sources of omega-3 fats: can we find a sustainable substitute for fish? Nutrients 5:1301–1315. https://doi.org/10.3390/nu5041301
Liu L, Howe P, Zhou YF, Xu ZQ, Hocart C, Zhang R (2000) Fatty acids and b-carotene in Australian purslane (Portulaca oleracea) varieties. J Chromatogr A 893:207–213
Lozach N (1986) Extension of rules A-1.1 and A-2.5 concerning numerical terms used in organic chemical nomenclature. Pure Appl Chem 58:1693–1696
Lu C, Kang J (2008) Generation of transgenic plants of a potential oilseed crop Camelina sativa by Agrobacterium -mediated transformation. Plant Cell Rep 27:273–278
Massaro M, Scoditti E, Carluccio MA, De Caterina R (2008) Basic mechanisms behind the effects of n-3 fatty acids on cardiovascular disease. Prostaglandins Leukot Essent Fatty Acids 79:109–115
McCartney AW, Dyer JM, Dhanoa PK, Kim PK, Andrews DW, McNew JA, Mullen RT (2004) Membrane-bound fatty acid desaturases are inserted co-translationally into the ER and contain different ER retrieval motifs at their carboxy termini. Plant J 37:156–173
Mclean CH, Bulling KR (2005) Difference in lipid profile of New Zealand marine species over four seasons. J Food Lipids 12:313–326
Menrad K (2003) Market and marketing of functional food in Europe. J Food Eng 56(2–3):181–188
Mensink RP, Katan MB (1992) Effect of dietary fatty acids on serum lipids and lipoproteins. A meta-analysis of 27 trials. Arterioscler Thromb 12:911–919
Mente A, de Koning L, Shannon HS, Anand SS (2009) A systematic review of the evidence supporting a causal link between dietary factors and coronary heart disease. Arch Intern Med 169(7):659–669
Metz JG, Roessler P, Facciotti D, Levering C, Dittrich F, Lassner M, Valentine R, Lardizabal K, Domergue F, Yamada A, Yazawa K, Knauf V, Browse J (2001) Production of polyunsaturated fatty acids by polyketide synthases in both prokaryotes and eukaryotes. Science 293:290–293
Mozaffarian D (2012) Omega-6 fatty acids and cardiovascular disease. Nutra foods 11:81–84
Mozaffarian D, Wu JH (2011) Omega-3 fatty acids and cardiovascular disease: effects on risk factors, molecular pathways, and clinical events. J Am Coll Cardiol 58:2047–2206
Mullet J (1990) Designing crops for resistance to environmental stress. AgBiotech News and Information 2, 435–436
Murphy KJ, Mann NJ, Sinclair AJ (2003) Fatty acid and sterol composition of frozen and freeze-dried New Zealand green lipped mussel (Perna canaliculus) from three sites in New Zealand, Asia Pacific. J Clin Nutr 2(1):50–60
Nakamura MT, Nara TY (2004) Structure, function, and dietary regulation of delta6, delta5, and delta9 desaturases. Annu Rev Nutr 24:345–376

Napier JA (2007) The production of unusual fatty acids in transgenic plants. Annu Rev Plant Biol 58:295–319
Nelson GJ, Ackman RG (1998) Absorption and transport of fat in mammals with emphasis on n-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids. Lipids 23:1005–1014
Nugent AP (2004) The metabolic syndrome. Nutr Bull 29:36–43
Oh K, Hu FB, Manson JE (2005) Dietary fat intake and risk of coronary heart disease in women: 20 years of follow up of the nurses' health study. Am J Epidemiol 161:672–679
Ohlrogge J, Browse J (1995) Lipid biosynthesis. Plant Cell 7:957–970
Parry J, Yu L (2004) Fatty acid content and antioxidant properties of cold-pressed black raspberry seed oil and meal. J Food Sci 69(3):189–193
Pauly D, Watson R, Adler J (2005) Global trends in world fisheries: impacts on marine ecosystems and food security. Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci 360:5–12
Pawlosky RJ, Hibbeln JR, Novotny JA, Salem N Jr (2001) Physiological compartmental analysis of a-linolenic acid metabolism in adult humans. J Lipid Res 42:1257–1265
Petersen SFP, Petersen IBF, Sargent JR, Haug T (1986) Lipid class and fatty acid composition of eggs from the Atlantic halibut (Hippoglossus hippog; ossus). Aquaculture 52:207–211
Petrie JR, Shrestha P, Belide S, Kennedy Y, Lester G, Liu Q, Divi UK, Mulder RJ, Mansour MP, Nichols PD, Singh SP (2014) Metabolic engineering *Camelina sativa* with fish oil-like levels of DHA. PLoS One 9:e85061
Petrie JR, Shrestha P, Mansour MP, Nichols PD, Liu Q, Singh SP (2010) Metabolic engineering of omega-3 long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids in plants using an acyl-CoA D6-desaturase with omega3-preference from the marine microalga *Micromonas pusilla*. Metab Eng 12:233–240
Petrie JR, Shrestha P, Zhou XR, Mansour MP, Liu Q, Belide S, Nichols PD, Singh SP (2012) Metabolic engineering plant seeds with fish oil-like levels of DHA. PLoS One 7(11):49165
Petrie JR, Singh SP (2011) Expanding the docosahexaenoic acid food web for sustainable production: engineering lower plant pathways into higher plants. AoB Plants 2011:plr011
Poudyal H, Panchal SK, Diwan V, Brown L (2011) Omega-3 fatty acids and metabolic syndrome: effects and emerging mechanisms of action. Prog Lipid Res 50:372–387
Qi B, Fraser T, Mugford S, Dobson G, Sayanova O, Butler J, Napier JA, Stobart AK, Lazarus CM (2004) Production of very long chain polyunsaturated omega-3 and omega-6 fatty acids in plants. Nat Biotech 22:739–745
Ruiz-Lopez N, Haslam RP, Napier JA, Sayanova O (2014) Successful high-level accumulation of fish oil omega-3 long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids in a transgenic oilseed crop. Plant J 77:198–208
Ruiz-Lopez N, Haslam RP, Usher SL, Napier JA, Sayanova O (2007) Engineering oilseeds for sustainable production of industrial and nutritional feedstocks: solving bottlenecks in fatty acid flux. Curr Opin Plant Biol 3:236–244
Ruiz-Lopez N, Haslam RP, Usher S, Napier JA, Sayanova O (2015) An alternative pathway for the effective production of the omega −3 long-chain polyunsaturated EPA and ETA in transgenic oilseeds. Plant Biotechnol J 13(9):1264–1275
Saito H, Ishihara K, Murase T (1997) The fatty acid composition in tuna (Bonito, Euthynnus pelamis) caught at three deferent localities from tropics to temperate. J Sci food Agric 73:53 È5
Sakaguchi K, Morita I, Murota S (1994) Eicosapentaenoic acid inhibits bone loss due to ovariectomy in rats. Prostaglandins Leukot Essent Fatty Acids 50:81–84
Saravanan P, Davidson NC, Schmidt EB, Calder PC (2010) Cardio-vascular effects of marine omega-3 fatty acids. Lancet 376:540–550
Sassa T, Kihara A (2014) Metabolism of very long-chain fatty acids: genes and pathophysiology. Biomol Ther (Seoul) 22:83–92
Schmidt EB, Dyerberg J (1994) Omega-3 fatty acids: current status in cardiovascular medicine. Drugs 47:405–424
Schweigert FJ (2007) Nutritional proteomics: methods and concepts for research in nutritional science. Ann Nutr Metab 51:99–107

Shahidi F, Wanasundara UN (1998) Omega-3 fatty acid concentrates: nutritional aspects and production technologies. Trends Food Sci Technol 9:230–240
Simopoulos AP (1991) Omega-3 fatty acids in health and disease and in growth and development. Am J Clin Nutr 54:438–463
Smith GI, Atherton P, Reeds DN, Mohammed BS, Rankin D, Rennie MJ, Mittendorfer B (2011) Dietary omega-3 fatty acid supplementation increases the rate of muscle protein synthesis in older adults: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Clin Nutr 93:402–412
Smith ADM, Brown CJ, Bulman CM (2011) Impacts of fishing low-trophic level species on marine ecosystems. Science 333:1147–1150
Stymne S, Tonnet LM, Green AL (1992) Biosynthesis of linolenate in developing embryos and cell-free preparations of high-linolenate linseed (Linum usitatissimum) and low-linolenate mutants. Arch Biochem Biophys 294:557–563
Takahata K, Monobe K, Tada M, Weber PC (1998) The benefits and risks of n-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 62:2079–2085
Tian E, Zeng F, MacKay K, Roslinsky V, Cheng B (2014) Detection and molecular characterization of two FAD3 genes controlling linolenic acid content and development of allele-specific markers in yellow mustard (Sinapis alba). PLoS One 9:e97430
Tocher D (2009) Issues surrounding fish as a source of x-3 long chain poly-unsaturated fatty acids. Lipid Technol 2:13–16
Toro-Vazquez JF, Charó-Alonso MA, Pérez-Briceño F (1999) Fatty acid composition and its relationship with physicochemical properties of pecan (Carya illinoensis) oil. Jacos 76(8):957–965
Ulbricht C, Basch E, Weissner W, Hackman D (2006) An evidence-based systematic review of herb and supplement interactions by the natural standard research collaboration. Informa healthcare. Expert Opin Drug Saf 5(5):719–772. https://doi.org/10.1517/14740338.5.5.719
Ursin VM (2003) Modification of plant lipids for human health: development of functional land-based omega-3 fatty acids. J Nutr 133:4271–4274
Vazhappilly R, Chen F (1998) Eicosapentaenoic acid and docosahexaenoic acid production potential of microalgae and their heterotrophic growth. JAOCS 75(3):393
Veierod MB, Laake P, Thelle DS (1997) Dietary fat intake and risk of lung cancer: a prospective study of 51,452 Norwegian men and women. Eur J Cancer Prev 6:540–549
Venegas-Calerón M, Sayanova O, Napier JA (2010) An alternative to fish oils: metabolic engineering of oil-seed crops to produce omega-3 long chain polyunsaturated fatty acids. Prog Lipid Res 49:108–119
Wada M, DeLong CJ, Hong YH, Rieke CJ, Song I, Sidhu RS, Yuan C, Warnock M, Schmaier AH, Yokoyama C (2007) Enzymes and receptors of prostaglandin pathways with arachidonic acid-derived versus Eicosapentaenoic acid-derived substrates and products. J Biol Chem 282:22254–22266
Ward OP, Singh A (2005) Omega-3/6 fatty acids: alternative sources of production. Process Biochem 40:3627–3652
Welch A, Shakya-Shrestha S, Lentjes MAH, Wareham NJ, Khaw K (2010) Dietary intake and status of n-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids in a population of fish-eating and non-fish eating meat-eaters, vegetarians, and vegans and the precursor-product ratio of α-linolenic acid to long-chain n-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids: results of from the EPIC-Norfolk cohort. Am J Clin Nutr 92:12
Williams CM, Burdge G (2006) Long-chain n-3 PUFA: plant v. marine sources. Proc Nutr Soc 65:42–50
Wu G, Truksa M, Datla N, Vrinten P, Baue J, Zank T, Cirpus P, Heinz E, Qiu X (2005) Stepwise engineering to produce high yields of very long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids in plants. Nat Biotechnol 23:1013–1017
Yang Q, Fan C, Guo Z, Qin J, Wu J, Li Q, Fu T, Zhou Y (2012) Identification of FAD2 and FAD3 genes in Brassica napus genome and development of allele-specific markers for high oleic and low linolenic acid contents. Theor Appl Genet 125:715–729
Yazawa K (1996) Production of eicosapentaenoic acid from marine bacteria. Lipids 31(Suppl):S297–S300

Yokoo EM, Valente JG, Grattan L, Schmidy SL, Platt I, Silbergeld EK (2003) Low level methylmercury exposure affects neuropsychological function in adults. Environ Health 2:8
Yokoyama M, Origasa H, Matsuzaki M (2007) Effects of eicosapentaenoic acid on major coronary events in hypercholesterolaemic patients (JELIS): a randomised open-label, blinded endpoint analysis [published correction appears in lancet 2007, 370:220]. Lancet 369:1090–1098
Yongmanitchai W, Ward OP (1991) Growth of and omega-3 fatty acid production by Phaeodactylum tricornutum under different culture conditions. Appl Environ Microbiol 57(2):419–425

Environmentally Friendly Plant-Based Natural Dyes: Extraction Methodology and Applications

Shahid Adeel, Fazal-Ur Rehman, Sana Rafi, Khalid Mahmood Zia, and Muhammad Zuber

Introduction of Natural Dyes

Nature has been bestowed with enormous color which add the beauty and influence the human. It is the sensation that inspires us through their presence in different items such as food, textile, decorative objects, printing (Silva et al. 2010). In the textile industry, dyes and pigment have a main role in imparting color and adding beauty to natural (wool, silk, cotton) and synthetic fabrics (nylon, polyester). In ancient times, people used natural dyes that were obtained from natural sources such as plant, animals, minerals, etc. and used for different purposes such as to decorate their cave, walls, their body, their fabrics, cosmetics, etc. Historically it is found that purple dye (Tyrian purple) obtained from murex shell has been utilized by Phoenicians and the Roman Empire. Madder, cochineal, and kermes for red and indigo and alkanet and marine algae for blue and purple have been used by Egyptian and ancient North African dyers (Garcia-Macias and John 2004; Guinot et al. 2006; Alam et al. 2007). However, their wide use went off in 1856 with the sudden discovery of synthetic color by W.H. Perkin called "mauve" that became an alternative to the Tyrian purple. This suddenly has caused the decline of natural dyes due to its excellent coloring properties, cost-effectiveness, brilliant shades, and high color depth. But recent studies revealed that use of synthetic dyes poses a series of health hazards to the environment due to their toxic wastes and complex structures which are nondegradable and disturb ecobalance. Consumers are more conscious about their health and are demanding the eco-friendly and sustainable products. For the reasons it has also been found that natural dyes are resuscitated and gained its

S. Adeel (✉)
Department of Chemistry, Govt. College University, Faisalabad, Pakistan
e-mail: Shahidadeel@gcuf.edu.pk

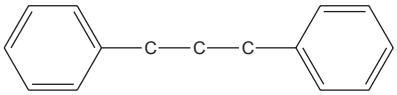
F.-U. Rehman · S. Rafi · K. M. Zia · M. Zuber
Department of Applied Chemistry, Govt. College University, Faisalabad, Pakistan

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_17

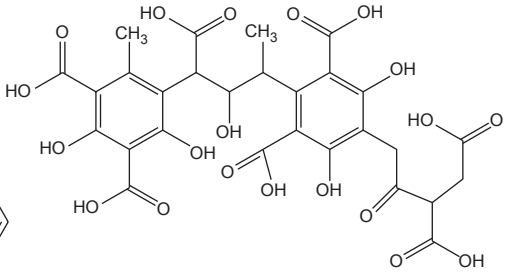
importance because of their biodegradable, biocompatible, and renewable nature and have owned with numerous bioactive components. However, with a lot of advantages, natural dyes have some limitation: colors obtained are non-reproducible, it is very costly to achieve bright shades, they give low color yield, and they have poor fastness properties. The need of auxiliaries and less technical information about their use has made it difficult to introduce them at commercial level. Researchers are finding new techniques to overcome their disadvantages via introduction of modern methods and improvement in conventional methods. Hence, the revival of natural dyes in applied walks of life is on the way either through conventional techniques or modern tools.

Environment Aspects

"Century of the environment" is the environment of 21 century and now people are much aware about toxic chemicals and want healthy environment. Release of harmful waste during manufacturing of synthetic dyes and their utilization in textile causes serious health issues; these effluents are not only damaging the environment but also causing global warming, ozone layer depletion, water pollution, disturbance in ecobalance, etc. (Zheng et al. 2011). Due to such hazardous effects, Germany, the USA, EU, the UK, etc. have banned the azo dye production that produces different 22 amines which are highly lethal. Traders, consumers, and suppliers are nowadays focusing on the utilization of eco-friendly products by analyzing their manufacturing, supply, application, and their waste effects to the environment (Banerjee and Sharma 2013). Most of the chemicals from textile industries which cause water pollution are difficult to remove. Because wastewater dyes have a complex structure and are very difficult to remove, for such purpose, different costly methods are employed, whereas natural dye waste has no such problem (Alsehri et al. 2014). Apart from these advantages, natural resources also act as treatment for effluent waste such as dried leaves of almond (*Terminalia catappa*) which produce natural dye and these leaves lower the pH level of water, absorb toxic chemicals from water due to the presence of flavonoids, humic acid, and tannin which act as cheapest source of adsorbent (Jenos et al. 2005; Demirbas 2009).



Flavonoid



Humic acid

Natural dyes that contain tannin can be utilized as a biomordant as well as green alternative to poisonous metal ions (Foo and Hameed 2010; Khan et al. 2012). Similarly walnut (*Juglans regia*) is not only used to dye fabric but also acts as an absorbent and removes basic dye (malachite green oxalate) from wastewater (Gunes and Atav 2017). Tannin that forms complex structure with metal ions that present as effluent in wastewater can be used as absorbent (Serrano et al. 2009).

Hence from a sustainable point of view, the natural colorants derived from plants, animals, and minerals are blessings for the ecosystem.

Classification

Natural dyes derived from natural sources such as plants, animals, minerals, and microorganisms have been classified on the basis of their:

1. Sources
2. Colors
3. Structures
4. Methods of applications

Here in this chapter we will just focus on the natural dyes based on their color (Fig. 1).

Color-Based Natural Dyes

Plants are the biggest source which provide the broad spectrum of shades which are isolated from different parts such as stem, bark, leaves, shoot, flowers, fruit, etc. These colors depend on different constituents present in different sources (Christie 2013). Some of the colors which are derived from plants, animals, and minerals are discussed below in detail.

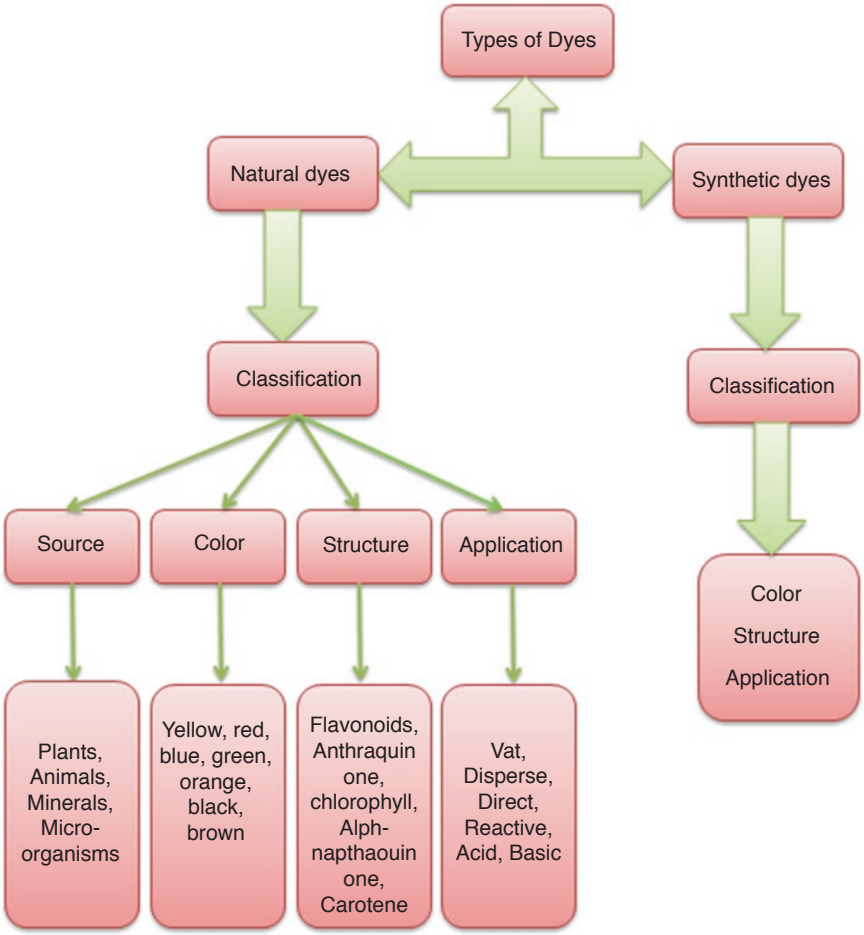
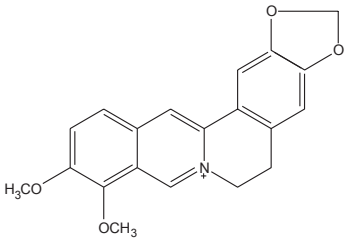


Fig. 1 A view of natural dyes classification

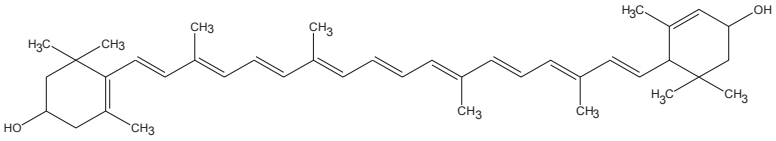
Yellow

Yellow color is abundantly present in the nature where about 28 number of yellow dyes are especially obtained from plants mainly depends on methoxy and hydroxyl substituted flavonoid structure i.e., isoflavones, flavones and flavonols. Other constituents responsible for the yellow color include alkaloids (such as berberine) and betaxanthin. Indian barberry (*Berberis aristata*), European barberry (*Berberis vulgaris*), Amur cork (*Phellodendron amurense*), and coptis root (*Rhizome coptidis*) have berberine structure and give a brilliant yellow color (Bart and Pilz 2011). Lutein present in marigold (*Tagetes erecta*), spinach (*Spinacia oleracea*), broccoli (*Brassica oleracea*), and cabbage (*Brassica oleracea*) and luteolin/butrin from dyer's rocket (*Reseda luteola*) also give a yellow color. Another plant species, i.e.,

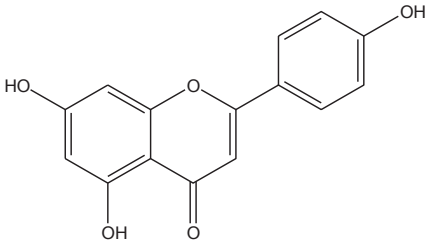
saw-wort (*Serratula tinctoria*), has been known since medieval times that yields a yellow color. All parts of saw-wort plant except the root contain flavonoids in excess amount mainly in the leaves which provide yellow color due to presence of luteolin and luteolin 7-O-glucoside (Guinot et al. 2009).



Berberine

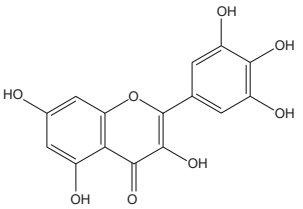


Lutein

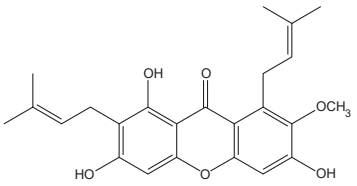


Luteolin

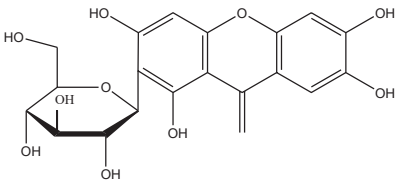
Similarly, Chinese bayberry (*Myrica rubra*) roots contain myricetin as flavonoid derivative and give a yellow color. Rutin from Japanese pagoda tree (*Sophora japonica*) flowers, mangostin from mangosteen (*Garcinia mangostana*), nictanthin from *night-flowering jasmine* (*Coral jasmine*), mangiferin from mango (*Mangifera indica*), isorhanmetin and quercetin from delphinium (*Delphinium zalil*) flowers, and carotenoids from African boxthorn (*Lycium ferocissimum*) and tomato (*Solanum lycopersicum*) give a light-yellow to dark-yellow color (Win and Swe 2008; Kiumarsi et al. 2017).



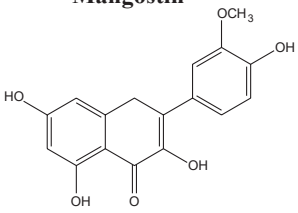
Myricetin



Mangostin



Mangiferin

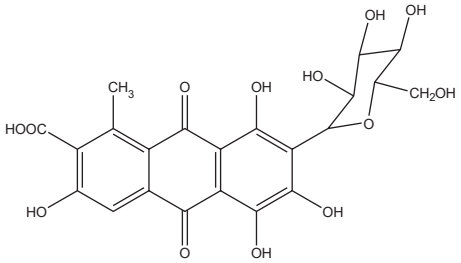


Isorhamnetin

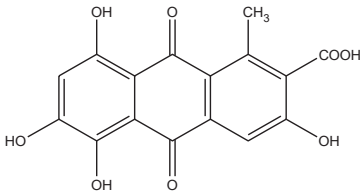
Natural minerals responsible for the yellow pigment include yellow ochre ($Fe_2O_3 \cdot H_2O$), raw sienna ($Fe_2O_3 \cdot MgO$), orpiment (As_2O_3), and litharge.

Red

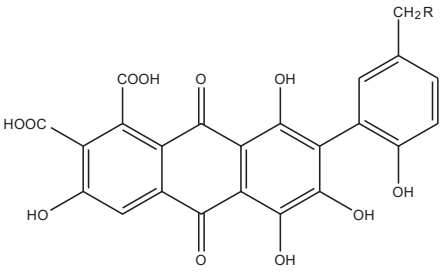
The red color is present in bark, root, and stem of different plants, and is also present in the dry bodies of insects that contain anthraquinone derivative dye. The red color has very good fastness to light and washing. Some of the common examples includes madder (*Rubia tinctorum*), lac (*Kerria lacca*), kermes (*Kermes ilicis*), cochineal (*Dactylopium coccus*), etc. (Ammayappan and Shakyawar 2016). Alizarin present in Indian madder (*Rubia cordifolia*) gives a red color. Carthamin and lycopene present in red bell peppers (*Capsicum annuum*), beetroot (*Beta vulgaris*), strawberries (*Fragaria ananassa*), cherries (*Prunus serotina*), and tomatoes (*Solanum lycopersicum*) also give a red color (Cheng et al. 2017).



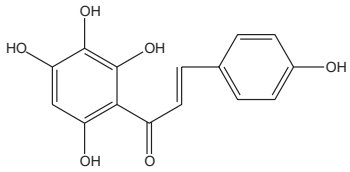
Carminic acid from Cochineal



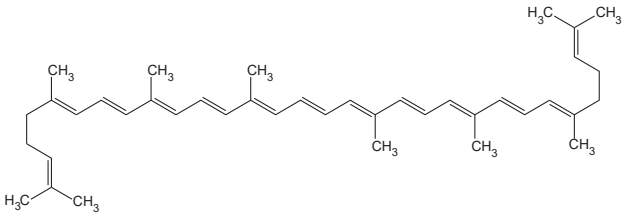
Kermesic acid from Kermes



Laccaic acid from Lac



Carthamin

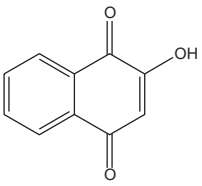


Lycopene

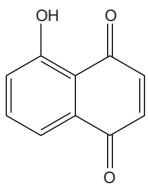
The red color is obtained from natural mineral sources such as red ochre (Fe_2O_3) and red lead (Pb_3O_4).

Orange

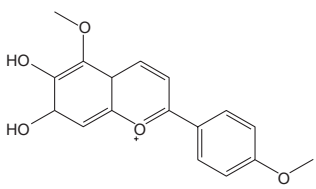
This color basically depends on naphthoquinone, aurones, carotenoids, and anthocyanidin structure, e.g., leaves of henna (*Lawsonia inermis*) contain lawsone, walnut (*Juglans regia*) contain juglone, leaves of Chikarot (*Bignonia chica*) contain carajurin, and carrots (*Daucus carota*) have β-carotene as main coloring component (Kiokias et al. 2016).



Lawsone



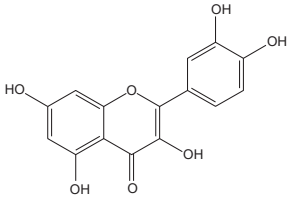
Juglone



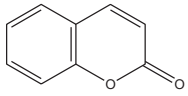
Carajurin

Brown/Black

Black and brown colors obtained from tannin-rich plant sources have also good fastness properties and have the ability to make firm bonding with natural fibers such as cotton, wool, and silk, e.g., harda (*Terminalia chebula*), custard (*Annona cherimola*), apple (*Malus domestica*), etc. Acacetin and quercetin obtained from the bark of babul/kikar (*Acacia nilotica*) provides light-brown to dark-brown color (Mohsin et al. 2016). Dyer's sumach (*Cotinus coggygria*) has been applied in textile and leather dyeing that yields brownish black color. Ober (*Albizia coriaria*) contains coumarin and tannin as major coloring component for brown color. Brown color is also obtained from coconut coir (Cocos nucifera) fibre and is used to dye cotton fabrics as reported by Jabar and Abayomi (2015).



Fisetin

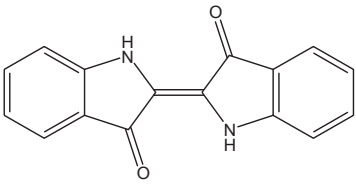


Coumarin

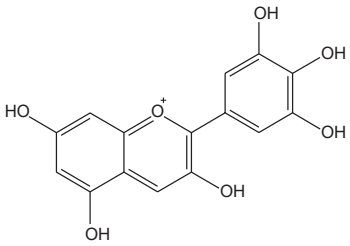
Black pigment is obtained from charcoal black, lamp black, ivory black, bone black, graphite, black chalk, and terre noire.

Blue/Purple

Blue colors have good color fastness to light and washing based on indigoid, anthocyanin, betacyanin structure e.g., woad (*Isatic tinctoria*), indigo (*Indigofera tinctoria*), Dyer's knotweed (*polygonum tinctorium*), Chinise indigo (*Persicaria tinctoria*), Chinese rain bell (*Strobilanthes flaccidifolius*) etc. (Laitonjam and Wangkheirakpam 2011). Similarly sea snails (*Nassarius mutabilis*), Murex (*Bolinus brandari*), cochineal (*Dactylopius coccus*), logwood (*Haematoxylum campechianum*) etc. are also examples of purple dye (Ahn et al. 2012). Blue pea flowers (*Clitoria ternatea*) have been used to provide blue colors (Sinha et al. 2012).



Indigo

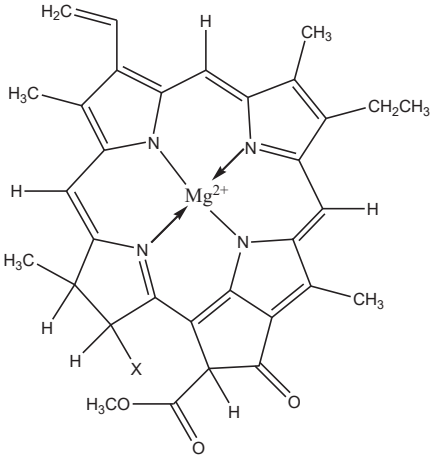


Anthocyanin

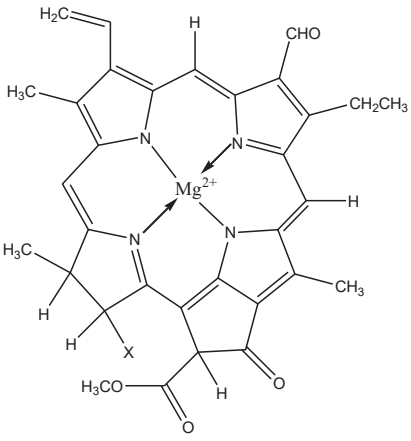
Ultramarine blue and azurite [$Cu_3(CO_3)_2(OH)_2$] are mineral sources that give blue pigment.

Green

Green color is abundantly present in the leaves of the plants as leaves are rich in chlorophyll that is responsible for this color. Chlorophyll is further divided into two groups, i.e., chlorophyll "a" and chlorophyll "b." They differ in their structure because chlorophyll "a" has a methyl group in its ring and gives a blue/green color, while chlorophyll "b" contains formyl group and gives green/yellow colors. Brimstone (*Morinda lucida*) leaves have been used to get green dye due to presence of chlorophyll.



Chlorophyll a



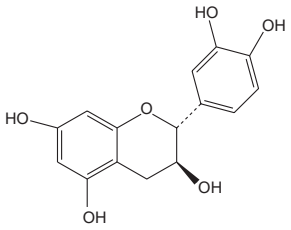
Chlorophyll b

Green pigment is also obtained from mineral sources such as malachite [$Cu_2{\cdot}(OH)_2{\cdot}CO_3$], Vedgiris [$Cu(CH_3COO)_2$], and terre verte.

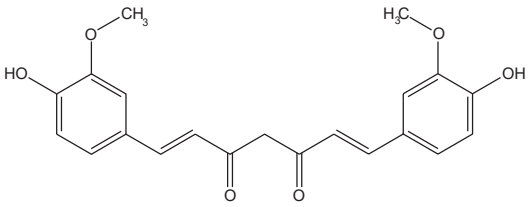
Functional Properties of Natural Dyes

Antimicrobial Characteristics

Textiles especially natural fibers are the main reason for growth of harmful microbes (bacteria, fungi) as these provide suitable environment such as oxygen, moisture, and nutrients. These microbes then transfer to the human skin when they come in contact and cause severe allergic response, dermal infection, and foul smell (Rajendran et al. 2011). Various antimicrobial agents such as polybiguanides, triclosan, nanoparticles of noble metals, quaternary ammonium compounds, etc. are used in textile finishing process to protect the fabric from their growth (Simoncic and Tomsic 2010). However these antimicrobial agents are not effective and cause severe skin disorder and carcinogenic effect during their handling. A recent study exposed the use of natural dyes for coloration as well as for eco-friendly antimicrobial finishing due to the presence of active constituents present in different parts of sources, e.g., curcumin from turmeric rhizomes (*Curcuma longa*), naphthoquinone from tegu (*Salvator merianae*), and catechin from cutch (*Acacia catechu*) bark (Dev et al. 2009; Prusty et al. 2010).



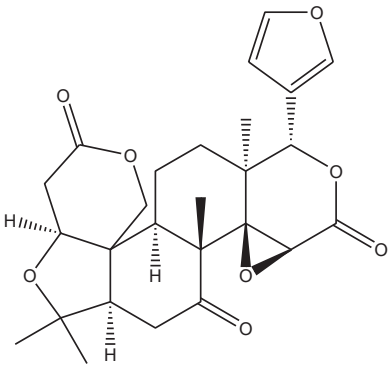
Catechin



Curcumin

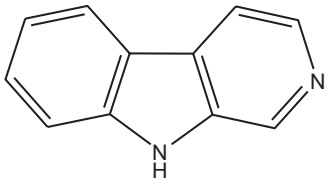
Rhubarb (*Rheum emodi*)-dyed wool fabric contains an anthraquinone-based structure that has the ability to show maximum antimicrobial activity against bacterial strains *Escherichia coli* and *Staphylococcus aureus* and fungal strains *Candida albicans* and *Candida tropicalis* (Khan et al. 2012). It is also stated that

biomordant used in natural dyeing process instead of metallic mordant not only increased the fixation of dye molecule on the fabric but also showed antimicrobial properties, as this contains tannin and polyphenols that have a high ability to increase the inhibition zone against microbes (Prabhu and Teli 2014). Fenugreek (*Trigonella foenum*), *tulsi* (*Ocimum sanctum*), clove (*Eugenia caryophyllata*), and nerium (*Nerium oleander*) contain flavonoids, tannin, phlobatinins, alkaloids, reducing sugars, and terpenoids as bioactive compounds, respectively. Similarly limonoids as active compound that are present abundantly in lilac (*Melia azedarach*) showed antimicrobial property against *S. aureus*, *S. epidermidis*, *B. cereus*, *E.coli*, *K. pneumonia*, *S. flexneri*, and *P. vulgaris*.



Limonoid

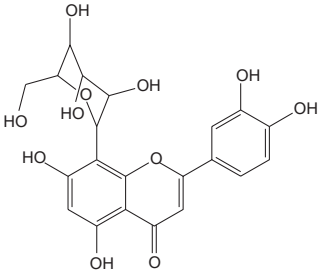
Nenaah (2010) extracted β-carboline from harmal (*Peganum harmala*) seeds and found significant antifungal activity. Other examples which include almond (*Terminalia catappa*), jackfruit (*Artocarpus heterophyllus*), teak (*Tectona grandis*), mulberry (*Morinda citrifolia*), lebbek (*Albizia lebbeck*), and asoka tree (*Saraca asoca*) show remarkable antimicrobial activity against various bacterial and fungal species (Prusty et al. 2010; Baliarsingh et al. 2012).



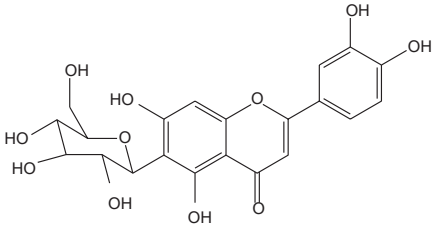
β-Carboline

Antioxidant Characteristics

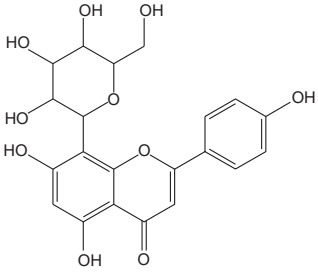
Antioxidant activity prohibits auto-formation of free radicals that may damage the living cells by several oxidant species, e.g., H_2O_2,. It causes DNA damage, protein degradation, and lipid peroxidation that can lead to brain damage, heart attack, and cancer. These severe oxidants may come from textile industries when fabric is treated with several oxidized reagents. Various antioxidant supplements are available to prevent an oxidant attack, but they are not as efficient as they should be. Extensive researches and reports reveal that plant-derived natural colorants contain polyphenol constituents such as flavonoids and tannin that have antioxidant properties, e.g., orientin, homoorientin, vitexin, and isovitexin as flavonoid derivatives from bamboo plants (*Bambusa vulgaris*) (Guo et al. 2013).



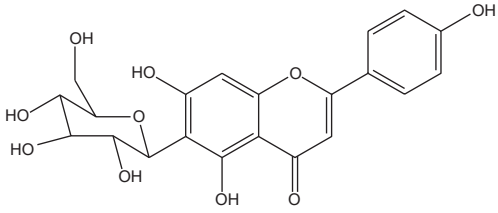
Orientin



homoorientin

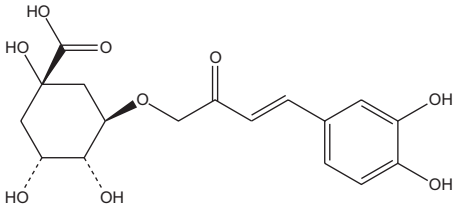


Vitexin



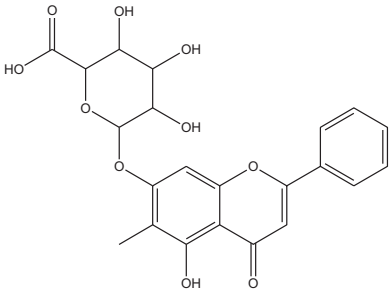
Isovitexin

Nahak and Sahu (2010) found that neem (*Azadirachta indica*) and mahaneem (*Melia azedarach*) contain phenolic compounds as major active species that have the ability to act as an antioxidant. Shahid et al. (2017) dyed silk fabric with honeysuckle (*Lonicera japonica*) and got light yellow-brown shades. They found that honeysuckle contains chlorogenic acid which is the main bioactive component responsible for the antioxidant property of the dyed sample.

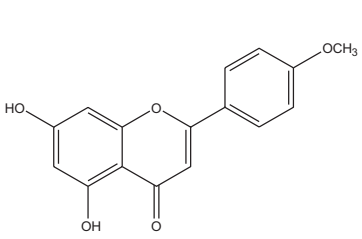


Chlorogenic acid

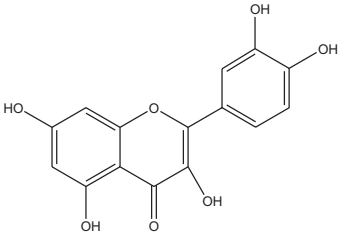
Similarly, Hwang and Hong (2016) examined the artificial silk "viscose rayon" dyed with gallnut (*Quercus infectoria*) extract and concluded that the fabric showed remarkable antioxidant property. Other examples of natural dye sources that have the ability to neutralize the free radicals that accelerate cellular aging are harmal (*Peganum harmala*) (Khlifi et al. 2013), carotenoids from tomato (*Solanum lycopersicum*) (Baaka et al. 2017), baicalin from skullcap (*Scutellaria baicalensis*) (Zhou et al. 2016), acacetin and quercetin from kikar (*Acacia nilotica*) (Rather et al. 2017), etc.



Baicalin



Acacetin



Quercetin

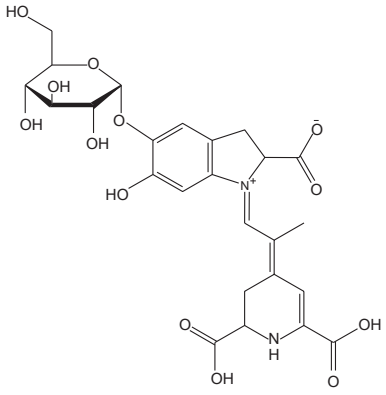
Deodorant Characteristics

Sweating which occurs due to the high temperature of the surrounding is a cooling response of the human body to maintain body temperature. This sweating contain various constituents such as carbohydrate, proteins, sulphur compounds, ketone etc. that are easily biodegradable by bacteria present in the atmosphere and release ammonia gas and acetic acid that is the main cause of unpleasant odor. Nowadays people are more sensitive about their health and want a clean and fresh environment (Cistea and Vilarem 2006). Recently it is observed that fabric dyed from natural sources absorbs odor-causing gas and keeps the body fresh, e.g., peony (*Paeonia suffruticosa*), clove (*Syzygium aromaticum*), gardenia (*Gardenia jasminoides*), coffee sludge (*Coffea canephora*), gallnut (*Quercus infectoria*), etc. (Lee et al. 2015). It was concluded from the studies of Lee et al. (2017) that dyed cotton, wool, and silk fabric with myrrh (*Commiphora myrrha*) and pine cone (*Pinus albicaulis*) extract exhibit noteworthy deodorizing property against ammonia and acetic acid. Hwang et al. (2008) dyed cotton, wool, and protein fabric with sickle senna (*Cassia tora*), pomegranate (*Punica granatum*), coffee sludge (*Coffea canephora*), and gardenia (*Quercus infectoria*) using different mordants and found that these natural dyes help to suppressed the unpleasant smell and keep the fabric fresh. Similar results have been found on natural fabric dyed with cork tree (*Quercus suber*), wood fern (*Dryopteris crassirhizoma*), makino (*Chrysanthemum boreale*), and wormwood (*Artemisia annua*) by Lee et al. (2010). Jung (2016) also examined deodorizing properties of gallnuts (*Quercus infectoria*), palm (*Areca catechu*), and pomegranate (*Pomegranate*) dyed on silk fabric. Jang and Jung (2016) also investigated sage weed (*Salvia plebeian*) which enhanced the deodorizing property of cotton fabric and made the environment hygienic. All these studies showed that colorants extracted from the plants can be used as substitutes of synthetic deodorants.

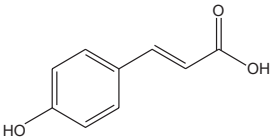
UV Protection Characteristics

UV radiation is an invisible light that comes from sunlight having a wavelength range of 200 to 400 nm. However, many advanced developments have led to ozone depletion which enables UV radiation to hit the surface of the earth straightforwardly and pose harmful effects on living organisms by disturbing their metabolism and causing skin cancer. Laborers, athletes, farmers, and fishermen are more susceptible to such rays as they have to spend more time under the sun. For such reason, many sunscreen lotions and creams and modified fabrics with enhanced functional properties have been commercially available to protect the skin against UV

radiation. However, recently, the focus shifted on to dyed textiles that absorb UV radiation and prevent their transfer to the human skin (Grifoni et al. 2011). Many researchers found that natural dyes have structures, i.e., flavonoid, curcumin, anthraquinone, etc., that are able to absorb such rays and provide shield to the skin. It was observed that raw silk fabric has bad UV protection property but when dyed with curcumin-containing natural dye showed remarkable anti-UV property. Curcumin obtained from rhubarb (*Rheum emodi*) and yellow gardenia (*Gardenia jasminoides*) when dyed on silk fabric makes the fabric highly UV protective. Similarly honeysuckle (*Lonicera periclymenum*) which contains chlorogenic acid when used to dye wool fabric behaves as excellent natural UV protective agent (Hou et al. 2012). Chattopadhyay et al. (2013) dyed wool fabric with eucalyptus (*Eucalyptus globulus*) leaves and found remarkable UV protective source (Mongkholrattanasit et al. 2011a, b). The studies of Hou et al. (2013) show that wool fabric dyed with natural dye obtained from orange peel (*Citrus sinensis*) showed higher UPF value as compared to the wool fabric dyed with synthetic dye. Similarly juglone extracted from Caucasian walnut (*Pterocarya fraxinifolia*) when dyed on wool fabric gives best result against UV radiation (Ebrahimi and Gashti 2015). Bonet-Aracil et al. (2016) found red, black, and green tea (*Camellia sinensis*) as anti-UV agents due to the presence of catechin component after dyeing of cotton fabric. Betalains obtained from pokeweed (*Phytolacca berries*) and flavonoids and hydroxycinnamic acid from curry plant (*Helichrysum italicum*), wild madder (*Rubia peregrine*), daphne (*Daphne gnidium*), lavender (*Lavandula stoechas*), and artichoke (*Cynara scolymus*) have shown fantastic anti-UV properties (Grifoni et al. 2014; Liu et al. 2014).



Betalains



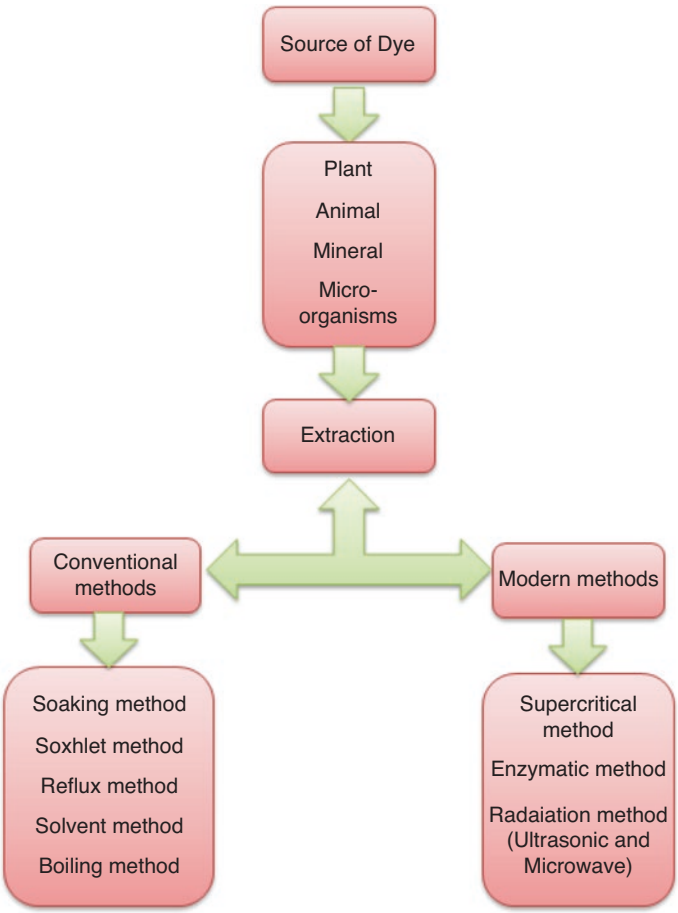
Hydroxycinnamic acid

Use of Sustainable Extraction and Dyeing Methodology in Natural Dyeing Process

There are two major methods for extraction of natural dyes on which its sustainability is revived owing to its extraction yields and good color characteristics. These methods include:

1. Conventional method
2. Modern method

Here is a flow sheet diagram of the extraction method.



Conventional Method

The pretreatment of fabric such as scouring, bleaching, and mercerization to increase the dyeing capability can cause pollution to the environment and consume water (Khandegar and Saroha 2013). The extraction of natural dye material with conventional methods such as soaking, immersion Soxhlet method, refluxing method, boiling method, and mechanical shaking has been used based on their component polarity and thermal stability due to which these methods require huge amount of solvent and time. Refluxing method has been utilized to extract the colorant from madder plant. Similarly, dye component from eucalyptus (*Eucalyptus globulus*) leaves such as quercetin and rutin has been extracted using reflux method (Mongkholrattanasit et al. 2010). Soxhlet method has been used in extracting colorant from pomegranate peel (*Punica granatum*). However these will not provide the effective color yield and color strength on fabric and also consume a lot of energy and labor.

Modern Methods

Technology basis extraction helps to reduce the water consumption and pollution to the environment by modifying the surface of the fabric and also extracted colorant effectively. These advanced methods include solid-phase microextraction, compressed gas, supercritical fluid extraction, pressurized liquid extraction, and radiation technology. It was found that compressed gas has been applied for the extraction of natural colorant such as carotenoid dye that gives high yield (Kulkarni et al. 2011). Supercritical fluid method contains compressed CO_2 gas. In this method, the material is dissolved with gas and converted into dissolved dye which is then absorbed on fabric effectively where the gas is recovered after dyeing process thus acts as sustainable extraction and dyeing method.

But the role of radiation-induced extraction and dyeing is gaining widespread popularity due to their rapid, clean, and uniform efficiency (Adeel et al. 2017).

The radiation method includes:

1. Gamma radiation
2. Plasma radiation
3. Microwave radiation
4. Ultraviolet radiation
5. Ultrasonic radiation

Gamma Radiation

Gamma radiation comprises of high energy of about 100 KeV having high frequency of 10^{19} Hz. These radiations have promising effect in extraction of natural dye, to modify fabric surface to make them highly hydrophilic and to improve their dye ability and provide high productive yield (Bhatti et al. 2012). The dye from red calico (*Alternanthera bittzickiana*) leaves is extracted by using different doses of gamma radiation where exposed cotton fabric has given excellent shades and fastness properties (Khan et al. 2014).

Microwave Radiation

Similarly, microwave rays can be a potential alternative to the conventional method of extraction and dyeing due to its less consumption of energy, solvent, and time of processing. It gives high color yield mainly because of its heating effect that is generated by the dipole rotation of the solvent that ultimately rises the temperature of the solvent to solubilize the coloring compound. Dabiri et al. (2005) used this technology to extract the coloring component such as purpurin and alizarin from madder (*Rubia tinctorum*). Similarly, mulberry (*Morinda citrifolia*) root consists of an anthraquinone-based structure that has been effectively extracted using microwave-assisted extraction.

Ultrasonic Radiation

Ultrasonic radiation is one of the effective methods in extracting coloring component from natural dyeing materials by generating a phenomenon of cavitation which is the expansion and collapse of microbubbles in the liquid media (Rumeau et al. 2004). Its role in extraction and dyeing of various natural and synthetic fabrics has been gaining much popularity due to its eco-friendly nature. Weng and Sheu (2000) used ultrasonic method to extract the anthraquinone-based dye from the Rhei Rhizoma (*Rheum palmatum*). Similarly, lac (*Kerria lacca*) dye has been extracted using ultrasonic treatment, and its performance has been compared with the result obtained by conventional method (Kamel et al. 2005). Natural dye from false daisy (*Eclipta prostrata*) has been used to dye cotton fabric using ultrasonic method that has given good dye uptake on fabric (Vankar et al. 2007). Sivakumar et al. (2011) extracted dye from green wattle (*Acacia decurrens*) bark, marigold (*Calendula officinalis*) flower, pomegranate (*Punica granatum*) rind, four-o'clock plant (*Mirabilis jalapa*) flowers, and cockscomb (*Celosia argentea*) flowers using sonicator technique and found effective color yield.

Plasma Technique

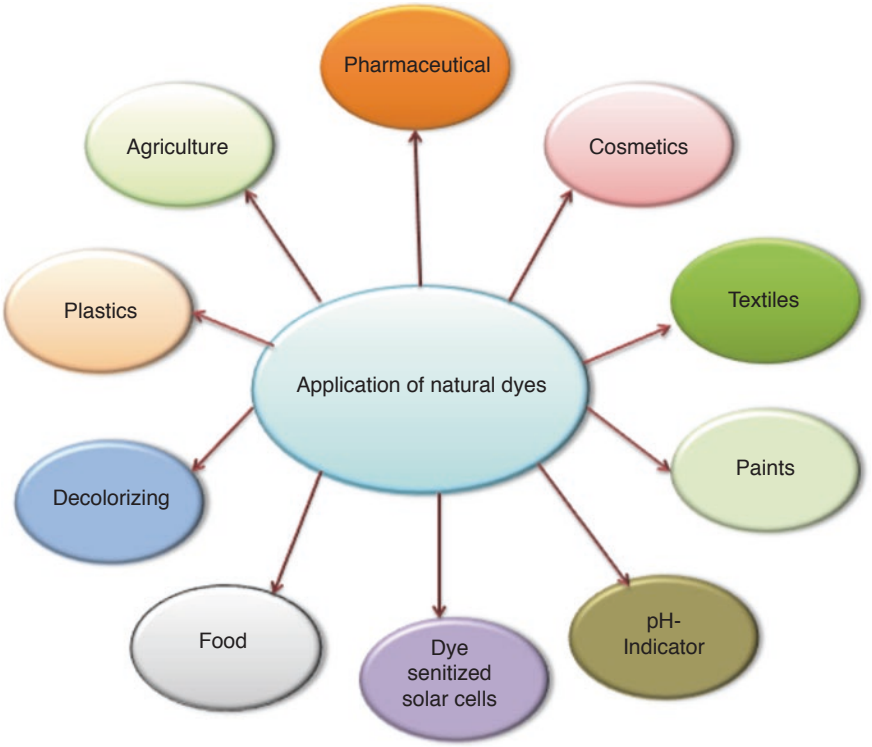
Plasma being ionized gases consist ions, electrons, neutrals, excited molecules, and photons. Cold plasma or low temperature plasma and atmospheric pressure plasma using oxygen, nitrogen, air, argon, helium or fluorine as gas source is an example of plasma technique that has the ability to modify the surface of the fabric without affecting the interior structure of the fabric and cause surface roughness, etching, coating, cleaning, oxidation, surface activation (Ren et al. 2017). This treatment helps to increase the absorbance of water, wetting property, wicking property, dyeing ability, capillary action, and adhesion of dye component to the fabric. Plasma technique also helps in improving the functional properties of the fabric such as antimicrobial, antioxidant, anti-UV, and flame-retardant properties. It is the most effective technique that consumes less water, energy, and chemicals and considers the environment factor (Ozguney et al. 2017). Gorjanc et al. (2016) used low-pressure plasma on cotton and bamboo yarn and dyed with Japanese knotweed (*Fallopia japonica*) and found remarkable dye ability and color strength. They found that this treatment increases the hydrophilicity of the fabric that increases the dye ability of the fabric. Similarly, Haji et al. (2016b) pretreated wool fabric with oxygen plasma to reduce the structural scale of fabric and increase the dye ability of wool fabric. The fabric was then dyed with grape (*Vitis vinifera*) leaves which were found to have good color strength. The same result has been found on oxygen plasma-treated wool fabric dyed with cotton pods (*Gossypium hirsutum*) (Haji et al. 2016, b). Dave et al. (2016) dyed atmospheric plasma-treated leather with natural dyes Eco Garnet brown, Eco Hill brown, Eco Turkey Red, and Eco smoky gray and achieved best results.

Ultraviolet Radiation

UV is an electromagnetic radiation whose wavelength ranges from 100 to 280 nm. Ultraviolet radiation has also played a role in the textile industry with various beneficial aspects such as involving a dry process and being inexpensive, time- and energy-efficient, and chemically effective particularly in wool, polyester, and cotton fabrics (Rehman et al. 2017). UV rays are utilized to change the surface of the fabric by improving its wetting, wicking, dyeing, antifelting, and hydrophobic properties. These rays also encourage to generate the polar group (carboxylic acid) on the fabric structure that makes the fabric hydrophilic and improves the interaction between the dye molecule and fabric. These rays improve the dye exhaustion that leave the less coloring component in the waste water and act as ecofriendly source to promote natural dyeing (Micheal and El-Zaher 2005). In a nutshell, the modern tools are now being welcomed to make the dyeing process more sustainable and eco-friendly.

Application of Natural Dyes

Natural dyes have a broad area of application due to its eco-friendly nature. These applications include textile, cosmetics, painting, inks, agriculture, dye-sensitized solar cells, decolorizing, pH indicator, pharmaceutical, etc. Some of these are discussed here in detail.

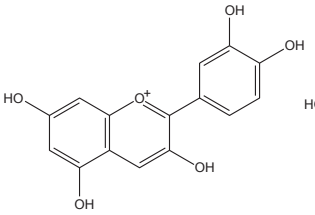


pH Indicator

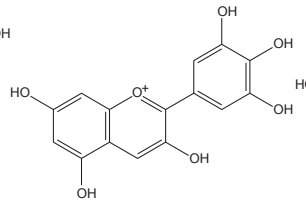
Indicator is a substance that tells us an end point in any acid-base titration as well as the visual colorimetric changes. Various synthetic indicators have been used such as phenolphthalein, methylene blue, methyl red, methyl orange, etc. But these synthetic ones are costly and impose pollution to the environment (Calogero et al. 2012; Zajko and Klimant 2013). Similarly in the food industry, its role is vital. These pH sensors mainly comprise of two part one is solid support and second is dye which is embedded on this film and whose color is change with varying of pH (Golasz et al. 2013). For such film preparation, various natural biodegradable polymers, i.e., chitosan, pectin, starch, and agar, have been used. Many examples

disclose the usage of plants as a natural pH indicator (Khan and Farooqui 2011; Chen and Gu 2013). However, it was first reported by Sir Robert Boyle in 1664. The component in the plants such as tea (*Camellia sinensis*), grapes (*Vitis vinifera*) etc. when react with acid or base it change its color. Some comprises just two colors, one on acid or one on base, while others show whole spectra.

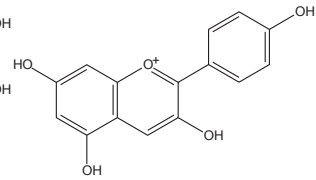
Anthocyanin is the most commonly used pH indicator as its color vigorously varies with the change of its surrounding environment due to the presence of a conjugated system present in its structure. These structures are cyanidin, delphinidin, pelargonidin, peonidin, and petunidin which change their structure when pH changes.



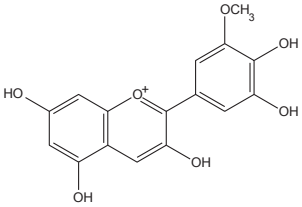
Cyanidin



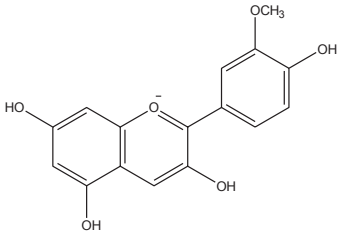
Delphinidin



Pelargonidin

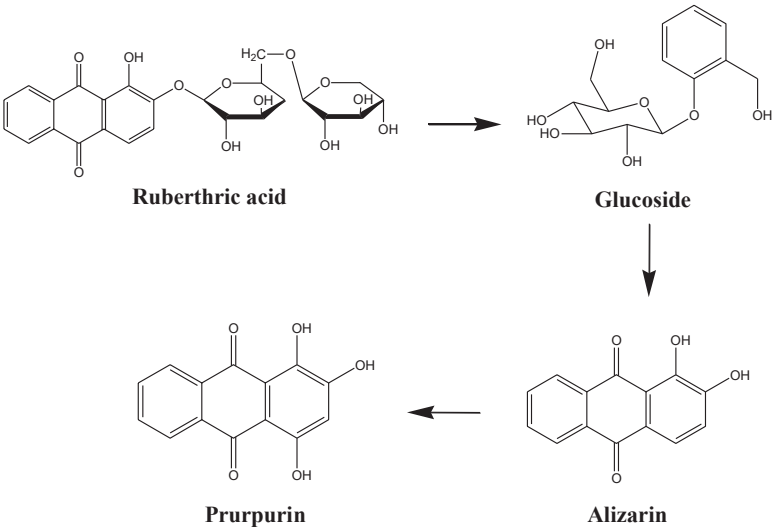


Petunidin



Peonidin

Anthocyanin is the subclass of the flavonoid group that gives blue, red, and purple color to the flower and leaves (Chandrasekhar et al. 2012). Many examples revealed the application of anthocyanin-containing natural dyes as pH indicator (Macial et al. 2015). One of the examples includes red cabbage (*Brassica oleracea*) that contains anthocyanin as main coloring component and gives different colors at different pH such as red to blue at low pH and green at high pH (Pourjavaher et al. 2017). Anthocyanin present in China rose (*Hibiscus rosa*), Mart. ex choisy (*Ipomoea fistulosa*), and blue pea (*Clitoria ternatea*) has been used as natural pH indicator. Similarly the dye obtained from *Acalypha wilkesiana* leaves is applied as pH indicator (Bhise et al. 2014). Madder (*Rubia tinctorum*) root also changes its structure as pH changes which ultimately gives different colors, e.g., ruberthyric acid to glucose to alizarin to purpurin.



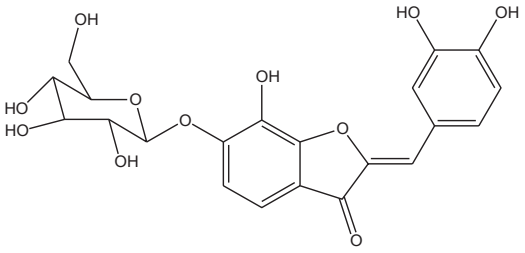
However it gives a red color in acidic pH. Similarly, sawdust gives a yellow color at low pH and red color at high pH. Carminic acid obtained from cochineal (*Dactylopius coccus*) gives yellow at low pH and purple at high pH. Curcumin from Indian curry powder (*Murraya koenigii*) gives yellow at neutral pH and red at alkaline pH. Chayroot (*Oldenlandia umbellata*) gives red at pH 10, yellow on pH 5–6, and green on pH acidic. Tea gives a dark color in basic media and lighter in acidic media. Other examples used as natural pH indicator obtained from natural sources are turmeric (*Curcuma longa*), jack tree heartwood (*Artocarpus heterophyllus*), ratanjot (*Alkanna tinctoria*), beetroot (*Beta vulgaris*), jungle flame (*Ixora coccinea*), etc. Hence natural dyes can be successfully used as alternative to synthetic indicator.

Dye-Sensitized Solar Cells

Solar energy is considered to be a free, clean, and renewable source of energy that fulfills the energy demand of global manufacturing system and can be used as alternative to the dropping energy source (Smestad and Steinfeld 2012). This energy has been utilized by manufacturing high efficient and low-cost photovoltaic cells in which electrons are excited to the high energy level by the photons and then collected to use as electrical energy. However their fabrication process was very complex and very costly and has been advanced by using dye-sensitized solar cells which are third-generation photovoltaic cells that have the same function with low-cost and high efficient results (Gratzel 2003). Here dyes are fixed on the TiO_2- or ZnO_2-based

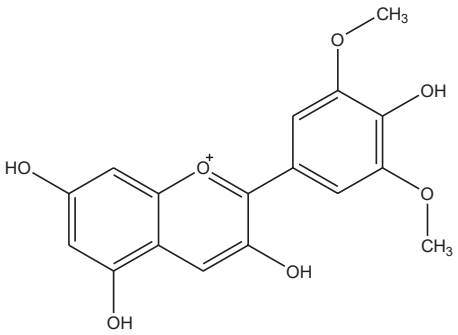
film surface and absorb photons from the sun, and these photons excite the electrons of dye molecule transferred to the conduction band (Gray 2003). Most of the synthetic sensitizers, for example, ruthenium complex dye (Ru polypyridyl complexes) and organic donor acceptor dyes (coumarin dye, cyanine dye, indoline dye), have been used, but these dyes contain high heavy metals that pose harmful effects to the environment (Patrocinio and Murakami Iha 2010). For such reason natural dyes are considered to be the main substituted, cheapest, sustainable, and acceptable efficient source of manufacturing dye-sensitized solar cells that are obtained from leaves, bark, flower, stem, root, shoot, and fruit of the plants. These sources contain various functional groups such as anthocyanin, flavonoids, carotenoids, cyanins, tannins, and chlorophyll that have been utilized as DSSC (Zhou et al. 2011).

Flavonoid-based natural dyes require less energy for their electron excitation and thus can be utilized efficiently for such purpose. Flavonoids are present abundantly and can be extracted from several plant sources. Many examples give us information of the use of flavonoids in DSSC application, e.g., bitter leaves (*Vernonia amygdalin*) comprise flavonoid structure and have been utilized as DSSC by Boyo et al. (2012). Ekanayake et al. (2013) found that dabai (*Canarium odontophyllum*) contained pelargonidin, cyanidin, and maritimein which are flavonoid structures. They used this plant as DSSC application and found efficient result.



Maritimein

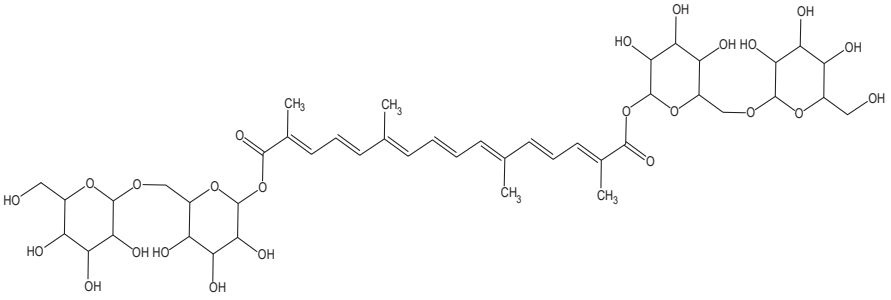
Anthocyanin-based natural colors have carbonyl and hydroxyl groups that make them water-soluble. Most of the natural dye-based solar cells are mainly comprised of anthocyanin (San Esteban and Enrriquez 2013). Different researchers used anthocyanin-containing plant species as dye-sensitized solar cells. Anthocyanin structures extracted from box-leaved barberry (*Berberis buxifolia*) and Brazilian grape tree (*Myrtus cauliflora*) and applied to fabricate dye-sensitized solar cells. Cyanidin and delphinidin from rosella (*Hibiscus sabdariffa*) and turnatin from blue pea (*Clitoria ternatea*) have been practiced by Wongcharee et al. (2007) as sensitized solar cell. Similarly malvidin-3-fructoside present in grapefruits (*Citrus paradise*) has been studied for sanitization purpose (Szostak et al. 2015).



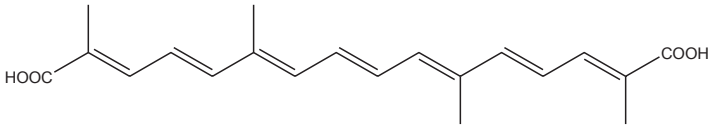
Malvidin

Other examples that contain anthocyanin and have been successfully applied as sensitized solar cells are mulberry fruit (*Morus alba*) (Chang and Lo 2010), yellow kopsia (*Kopsia flavida*) bark, red cabbage (*Brassica oleracea*) (Li et al. 2013), and Malabar melastome (*Melastoma malabathricum*) fruit pulp (Singh et al. 2014). It was also concluded that cocktail dye (mixing of different dyes) has enhanced the conversion efficiency by increasing the absorption intensity, e.g., blue berries (*Cyanococcus angustifolium*), purple cabbage (*Brassica oleracea*), and grapes (*Vitis vinifera*) contain chlorophyll and anthocyanin groups that have been used as cocktail dye-sensitized solar cells (Syafinar et al. 2015).

Carotenoid based natural dyes have also play an important role in photo sanitizer that has been divided into two groups i.e. xanthophyll (Oxygen containing) and carotene (no oxygen). It is observed that carotenoid groups that contain carboxyl group have a major contribution in the conversion of solar energy into electrical energy (Wang et al. 2007). Two natural colorants such as crocin and crocetein obtained from saffron (*Crocus sativus*) have been used as carotene source in sanitization.



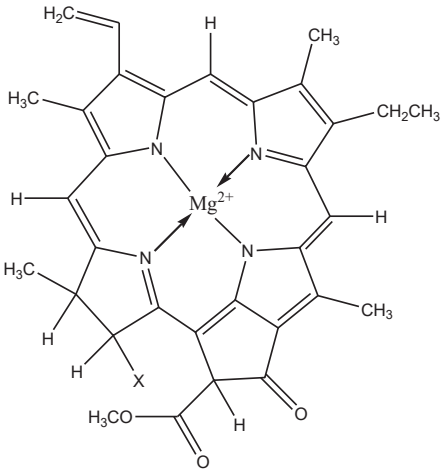
Crocin



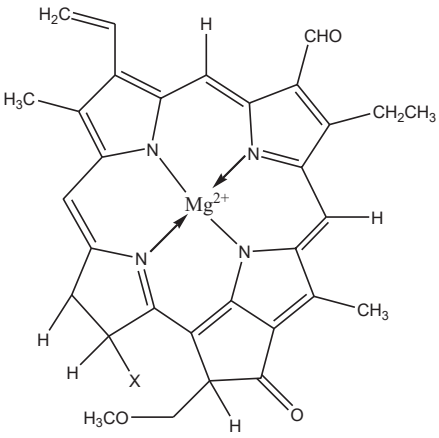
Crocetein

Similarly, Eka et al. (2013) studied the effect of chicken egg banana (*Musa aromatic*) and citron (*Citrus medica*) fruits on conduction band film as these contain carotenoids as main pigment. Cocktail dye used by Shanmugam et al. (2013) has obtained carotenoid from ivy gourd (*Coccinia grandis*) and anthocyanin from red frangipani (*Plumeria rubra*) flowers and is utilized for sanitization purposes.

It is considered that chlorophyll is one of the economical sources of application in DSSC (Amao and Komori 2004). Both chlorophyll a and chlorophyll b take part in photosensitization. Chang and Lo (2010) and Chang et al. (2013) obtained chlorophyll from pomegranate leaves (*Punica* granatum) and wormwood (*Artemisia absinthium*) and analyzed their conversion efficiency.

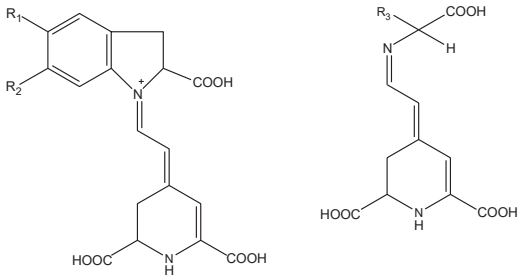


Chlorophyll a



Chlorophyll b

Betalains are coloring components present in fruits, roots, and flowers of different plant species. Betalains are further classified into two groups such as betacyanin (red violet pigment) and betaxanthin (yellow orange pigment) that have also been studied by different research scholars in DSSC fabrication.



Betacyanin and Betaxanthin

Betalains were extracted from red root (*Beta vulgaris*) that has been practiced for photosensitization and observed with good conversion efficiency compared to anthocyanin group (Sengupta et al. 2015). Similarly, Hernandez-Martinez et al. (2013) extracted a coloring component from *Beta vulgaris* by using tetraethyl orthosilicate which helps in increasing the conversion efficiency. On the other hand, prickly pear (*Opuntia ficus-indica*) fruit, bougainvillea (*Bougainvillea glabra*) flowers, and red turnip (*Brassica rapa*) juice extract have been used by Calogero et al. (2010) and Hernandez-Martinez et al. (2011) to obtain cocktail dye by extracting betaxanthin and betacyanin from these plant species. Other examples include mulberries (*Morus alba*), blackberries (*Rubus fruticosus*), grapes (*Vitis vinifera*), eggplants (*Solanum melongena*), radicchio (*Cichorium intybus*), etc. that have the same role in manufacturing dye-sensitized solar cells.

Cosmetics

Every person especially women has the desire to look beautiful and attractive for sense of pleasure and to feel confident. They used different beauty products such as lotion, cream, lipstick, etc. that make them look active and fresh. One factor which increases the popularity of cosmetics nowadays is that women are becoming socialized and more conscious about fashion. However, the prolonged use of synthetic cosmetics causes severe side effects to their skin. But recently it has been studied that natural active ingredients used in cosmetics not only enhanced beauty but also gave healthy and functional benefits to the skin such as lip care, UV protection, and antiaging. Several examples of natural dyes that have been used in cosmetics include naphthaquinone from henna, carotenoids from saffron and peppers, chlorophyll from green leaves pomegranate, indigo, and curcumin from turmeric.

Henna, locally known as “mehandi,” contains lawsone as major coloring component. It is used significantly in cosmetics to color the palm of the hands, feet, nail and hair. It is also used in shampoos, hair rinses, and conditioners and helps to

grow hair. Other plants that contain lawsone are rhubarb, calendula, and chamomile that have the same application. Due to the antibacterial activity of sappan wood extract, it has been used in different cosmetics products such as creams, gels, lotion, and lipsticks. It also gives some aesthetic effect to soaps (Xu and Lee 2004). As sandalwood contains antioxidant property, it has been used as acne cream, facial scar cream, and talcum powder. It gives glowing effect to the skin. It also gives a purplish rose color to soaps and lipsticks (Manjunatha 2006). This plant contains anthocyanidin that shows antioxidant activity and betalains as main coloring components. It has wide application in hair color, shampoos, bleaching, facial moisturizer, and antiaging and anti-acne creams. *Adhatoda vasica* belongs to the *Acanthaceae* family. The extract obtained from vasaca is used as a skin cream. Aloe vera has several advantages and has been used to smoothen the skin in moisturizing lotions and creams and for treatment of skin burns. It has also been used as hair tonic. Rhizome of turmeric (*Curcuma longa*) contains antioxidant and anti-inflammatory characteristics and has been used in facial treatments, face creams, and balms. Extract of badam (*Prunus amygdalus*) is considered to increase the fairness of the skin. It also has the ability to protect the skin from sunburn. Some other examples of botanical sources such as pods of shikakai (*Acacia concinna*), flower of arnica (*Arnica montana*), leaves of birch (*Betula pendula*), and seed oil of mustard (*Brassica spp*.) have been used as hair cleanser, hair oil, and shampoo.

Conclusion

The revival of natural dyes in different fields is due to their renewable, cheap, and eco-friendly nature. A wide selection of natural colorants has been obtained from plants, animals, and minerals which are now being encouraged to use in cosmetics, fashion, solar cell industry, etc. Various techniques have been developed in order to get maximum colorants yield from these sources with enhanced hues. However to adopt these methodologies on a large scale is a big challenge which is entails the use of modern tools such as radiation-induced treatments for extraction as well as applications. The applications discussed in this chapter show the resurgence of a natural colorant with potential implementations in the industry.

Acknowledgments I would like to acknowledge the team members at Eco-friendly Textile Lab for all their hard work in this novel work to explore the natural colorants. We are also thankful to organizations including AATCC, SDC, TI, RSC, ACS, and TSA who helped a lot in managing this chapter by providing related material and scientific information. We are also thankful to the students of AATCC-GCUF Chapter; Mr. Zafar Iqbal, Manager, Noor Fatima Textiles Faisalabad, Pakistan; Mr. Muhammad Abbas, Chief Executive, Harris Dyes and Chemicals Faisalabad, Pakistan; and Mr. Arshad Mayo, Sohaib Dyes and Chemicals, as well as Paragon Dyes and Chemicals Faisalabad, Pakistan, for their technical and scientific guidance at lab scale.

References

Adeel S, Gulzar T, Azeem M, Saeed M, Hanif I, Iqbal N (2017) Appraisal of marigold flower based lutein as natural colourant for textile dyeing under the influence of gamma radiations. Radiat Phys Chem 130:35–39

Ahn C, Zeng X, Obendorf SK (2012) Analysis of dye extracted from Phellodendron bark and its identification in archaeological textiles. Text Res J 82(16):1645–1658

Alam MM, Rehman ML, Haque MZ (2007) Extraction of henna leaf dye and its dyeing effects on textile fibre. Bangladesh J Sci Ind Res 42(2):217–222

Alsehri SM, Naushad M, Ahamad T, Alothman ZA, Aldalbahi A (2014) Synthesis, characterization of curcumin based ecofriendly antimicrobial bio-adsorbent for the removal of phenol from aqueous medium. Chem Eng J 254:181–189

Amao Y, Komori T (2004) Bio-photovoltaic conversion device using chlorine-e 6 derived from chlorophyll from spirulina adsorbed on a nanocrystalline TiO_2 film electrode. Biosens Bioelectron 19(8):843–847

Ammayappan L, Shakyawar DBB (2016) Dyeing of carpet woolen yarn using natural dye from cochineal. J Nat Fiber 13(1):42–53

Baaka N, El Ksibi I, Mhenni MF (2017) Optimization of the recovery of carotenoids from tomato processing waste: application on textile dyeing and assessment of its antioxidant activity. Nat Prod Res 31(2):196–203

Baliarsingh S, Panda AK, Jena J, Das T, Das NB (2012) Exploring sustainable technique on natural dye extraction from native plants from textile: identification of colourants, colourimetric analysis of dyed yarns and their antimicrobial evaluation. J Clean Prod 37:257–264

Banerjee S, Sharma YC (2013) Equilibrium and kinetic studies for removal of malachite green from aqueous solution by a low cost activated carbon. J Ind Eng Chem 19(4):1099–1105

Bart HJ, Pilz S (2011) Industrial scale natural products extraction. John Wiley & Sons, Hoboken

Bhatti IA, Adeel S, Irshad M, Abbas M (2012) Effect of mercerization and gamma irradiation on the dyeing behavior of cotton using stilbene based direct dye. Radiat Phys Chem 81(7):823–826

Bhise SH, Shinda NG, Surve BS, Pimpodkar NV, Shikalgar SS (2014) Acalypha wilkesiana as natural pH indicator. Int J Nat Prod Res 4(1):33–35

Bonet-Aracil MA, Diaz-Garcia P, Bou-Belds E, Sebastia N, Montoro A, Rodrigo R (2016) UV protection from cotton fabrics dyed with different tea extracts. Dyes Pigments 134:448–452

Boyo AO, Shitta MBO, Oluwa T, Adeola S (2012) Bitter leaf (Vernonia amygdalin) for dye sensitized solar cell. Trends Appl Sci Res 7(7):558

Calogero G, Di Marco G, Cazzanti S, Caramori S, Argazzi R, Di Carlo A, Bignozzi CA (2010) Efficient dye sensitized solar cells using red turnip and purple wild sicilian prickly pear fruits. Int J Mol Sci 11(1):254–267

Calogero G, Yum JH, Sinopoli A, Di Marco G, Gratzel M, Nazeeruddin MK (2012) Anthocyanins and betalians as light-harvesting pigments from dye sensitized solar cells. Sol Energ 86(5):1563–1575

Chandrasekhar J, Madhusudhan MC, Raghavarao KSMS (2012) Extraction of anthocyanins from red cabbage and purification using adsorption. Food Bioprod Process 90(4):615–623

Chang H, Kao MJ, Chen TL, Chen CH, Cho KC, Lai XR (2013) Characterization of natural dye extracted from wormwood and purple cabbage for dye sensitized solar cells. Int J Photoenerg 2013:1–8

Chang H, Lo YJ (2010) Pomegranate leaves and mulberry fruit as natural sensitizers for dye-sensitized solar cells. Sol Energ 84(10):1833–1837

Chattopadhyay SN, Pan NC, Roy AK, Saxena S, Khan A (2013) Development of natural dyed jute fabric with improved colour yield and UV protection characteristics. J Text Inst 104(8):808–818

Chen X, Gu Z (2013) Absorption type optical pH sensitive film based on immobilized purple cabbage pigment. Sens Actuators B Chem 178:207–211

Cheng HM, Koutsidis G, Lodge JK, Ashor A, Siervo M, Lara J (2017) Tomato and lycopene supplementation and cardiovascular risk factors: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Atherosclerosis 257:100–108

Christie RM (2013) Advances in the dyeing and finishing of technical textiles: 1. Chromic materials for technical textile applications. Elsevier Inc., New York

Cistea D, Vilarem G (2006) Improving light fastness of natural dyes on cotton yarn. Dyes Pigments 70(3):238–245

Dabiri M, Salimi S, Ghassempour A, Rassouli A, Talebi M (2005) Optimization of microwave-assisted extraction for alizarin and purpurin in Rubiaceae plants and its comparison with conventional extraction methods. J Sep Sci 28(4):387–396

Dave H, Ledwani L, Nema SK (2016) Surface modification by atmospheric pressure air plasma treatment to improve dyeing with natural dyes: an environment friendly approach for leather processing. Plasma Chem Plasma Process 36(2):599–613

Demirbas A (2009) Agricultural based activated carbons for the removal of dyes from aqueous solutions: a review. J Hazard Mater 167:1):1–1):9

Dev VG, Venugopal J, Sudha S, Deepika G, Ramakrishna S (2009) Dyeing and antimicrobial characteristics of chitosan treated wool fabrics with henna dye. Carbohydr Polym 75(4):646–650

Ebrahimi I, Gashti PM (2015) Extraction of juglone from Pterocarya fraxinifolia leaves for dyeing, anti-fungal finishing, and solar UV protection of wool. Color Technol 131(6):451–457

Eka CP, Yuliarto B, Suyatman S (2013) Performance of natural carotenoids from Musa aromatica and Citrus medica var lemon as photosensitizers for dye-sensitized solar cells with TiO_2 nanoparticle. Adv Mater Res 789:167–170

Ekanayake P, Kooh MRR, Kumara NTRN, Lim A, Petra MI, Voo NY, Lim CM (2013) Combined experimental and DFT–TDDFT study of photo-active constituents of Canarium odontophyllum for DSSC application. Chem Phys Lett 585:121–127

Foo KY, Hameed BH (2010) Insights into the modeling of adsorption isotherm systems. Chem Eng J 156(1):2–10

Garcia-Macias P, John P (2004) Formation of natural indigo derived from woad (Isatis tinctoria L.) in relation to product purity. J Agric Food Chem 52(26):7891–7896

Golasz LB, Silva JD, Silva SBD (2013) Film with anthocyanins as an indicator of chilled pork deterioration. Food Sci Technol (Campinas) 33:155–162

Gorjanc M, Savic A, Topalic-Tricunovic L, Mozetic M, Vesel A, Grujic D (2016) Dyeing of plasma treated cotton and bamboo rayon with Fallopia japonica extract. Cellulose 23(2):2221–2228

Gratzel M (2003) Dye-sensitized solar cells. J Photochem Photobiol C: Photochem Rev 4(2):145–153

Gray JL (2003) The physics of the solar cell. Handb Photovolt Sci Eng 2:82–128

Grifoni D, Bacci L, Di Lonardo S, Pinelli P, Scardigli A, Camilli F, Romani A (2014) UV protective properties of cotton and flax fabrics dyed with multifunctional plant extracts. Dyes Pigments 105:89–96

Grifoni D, Bacci L, Zipoli G, Albanese L, Sabatini F (2011) The role of natural dyes in the UV protection of fabrics made of vegetable fibres. Dyes Pigments 91(3):279–285

Guinot P, Gargadennec A, La Fisca P, Fruchier A, Andary C, Mondolot L (2009) Serratula tinctoria, a source of natural dye: flavonoid pattern and histolocalization. Ind Crop Prod 29(2):320–325

Guinot P, Roge A, Gargadennec A, Garcia M, Dupont D, Lecoeur E, Andary C (2006) Dyeing plants screening: an approach to combine past heritage and present development. Color Technol 122(2):93–101

Gunes E, Atav R (2017) The use of nutshell firstly as a natural dye for cotton and wool and then as a natural adsorbent for colour removal of basic dye effluent. Color Technol 133(1):88–93

Guo XF, Yue YD, Tang F, Wang J, Yao XI (2013) Antioxidant properties of major flavonoids and subfractions of the extract of Phyllostachys pubescens leaves. J Food Biochem 37(4):501–509

Haji A, Mehrizi MK, Sharifzadeh J (2016) Dyeing of wool with aqueous extract of cotton pods improved by plasma treatment and chitosan: optimization using response surface methodology. Fiber Polym 17(9):1480–1488

Haji A, Qavamnia SS, Bizhaem FK (2016) Optimization of oxygen plasma treatment to improve the dyeing of wool with grape leaves/Optimizarea tratamentului cu plasma de oxigen pentru îmbunatatirea vopsirii lânii cu colorant din frunze de vita de vie. Ind Textila 67(4):244–249

Hernandez-Martinez AR, Esteves M, Vargas S, Rodriguez R (2013) Stabilized conversion efficiency and dye-sensitized solar cells from beta vulgaris pigment. Int J Mol Sci 14(2):4081–4093
Hernandez-Martinez AR, Estevez M, Vargas S, Quintanilla F, Rodriguez R (2011) New dye-sensitized solar cells obtained from extracted bracts of Bougainvillea glabra and spectabilis betalain pigments by different purification processes. Int J Mol Sci 12(9):5565–5576
Hou X, Chen X, Chen Y, Xu H, Chen L, Yang Y (2013) Dyeing and UV-protection properties of water extracts from orange peel. J Clean Prod 52:410–419
Hou X, Yang R, Xu H, Yang Y (2012) Adsorption kinetic and thermodynamic studies of silk dyed with sodium copper chlorophyllin. Ind Eng Chem Res 51(25):8341–8347
Hwang HJ, Hong KH (2016) Effect of pretreatment on Dyeability and functionalities of summer rayon fabrics finished by gallnut extract. Fash Text Res J 18(2):244–251
Hwang EK, Lee YH, Kim HD (2008) Dyeing, fastness, and deodorizing properties of cotton, silk, and wool fabrics dyed with gardenia, coffee sludge, Cassia tora. L., and pomegranate extracts. Fiber Polym 9(3):334–340
Jabar JM, Abayomi LTG (2015) Effect of temperature on affinity of natural dye from coconut coir fibre form cotton fabric. Int J Res Appl Chem 2(2):1
Jang HJ, Jung JS (2016) Study of UV protection, deodorization and antimicrobial properties of cotton fabrics dyed with the liquids extracted from Salvia Plebia R. Br. Fash Text Res J 18(3):380–386
Jenos P, Sedivy P, Ryznarova M, Grotschelova S (2005) Sorption of basic and acid dyes from aqueous solutions onto oxihumolite. Chemosphere 59(6):881–886
Jung JS (2016) Study of fastness, UV protection, deodorization and antimicrobial properties of silk fabrics dyed with the liquids extracted from the gallnuts, Areca nuts, and pomegranate peels. In: MATEC Web of Conferences, vol 49. EDP Sciences, London
Kamel MM, El-Shishtawy RM, Yussef BM, Mashaly H (2005) Ultrasonic assisted dyeing: III Dyeing of wool with lac as a natural dye. Dyes Pigm 65(2):103–110
Khan SA, Ahmad A, Khan MI, Yusuf M, Shahid M, Manzoor N, Mohammad F (2012) Antimicrobial activity of wool yarn dyed with Rheum emodi L. (Indian rhubarb). Dyes Pigments 95(2):206–214
Khan PMA, Farooqui M (2011) Analytical applications of plant extract as natural pH Indicator: a review. J Adv Sci Res 2(4):20–24
Khan AA, Iqbal N, Adeel S, Azeem M, Batool F, Bhatti IA (2014) Extraction of natural dye from red calico leaves: gamma ray assisted improvements in colour strength and fastness properties. Dyes Pigments 103:50–54
Khandegar V, Saroha AK (2013) Electrocoagulation for the treatment of textile industry effluent–a review. J Environ Manag 128:949–963
Khlifi D, Sghaier RM, Amouri S, Laouini D, Hamdi M, Bouajila J (2013) Composition and anti-oxidant, anti-cancer and anti-inflammatory activities of Artemisia herba-alba, Ruta chalpensis L. and Peganum harmala L. Food Chem Toxicol 55:202–208
Kiokias S, Proestos C, Varzakas TA (2016) Review of the structure, biosynthesis, absorption of carotenoids-analysis and properties of their common natural extracts. Curr Res Nutr food Sci J 4(Special issue Carotenoids March 2016):25–37
Kiumarsi A, Gashti MP, Salehi P, Dayeni M (2017) Extraction of dyes from Delphinium Zalil flowers and dyeing silk yarns. J Text Inst 108(1):66–70
Kulkarni SS, Gokhale AV, Bodake UM, Pathade GR (2011) Cotton dyeing with natural dye extracted from pomegranate (Punica granatum) Peel. Univers J Environ Res Technol 1(2):135–139
Laitonjam WS, Wangkheirakpam SD (2011) Comparative study of the major components of the indigo dye obtained from Strobilanthes flaccidifolius Nees and Indigofera tinctoria Linn. Int J Plant Physiol Biochem 2(5):108–116
Lee YH, Hwang EK, Baek YM, Kim HD (2015) Deodorizing function and antibacterial activity of fabrics dyed with gallnut (Galla Chinensis) extract. Text Res J 85(10):1045–1054

Lee YH, Hwang EK, Jung YJ Do SK, Kim HD (2010) Dyeing and deodorizing properties of cotton, silk, wool fabrics dyed with Amur Corktree, Dryopteris crassirhizoma, Chrysanthemum boreale, Artemisia extracts. J Appl Polym Sci 115(4):2246–2253

Lee YH, Lee SG, Hwang EK, Baek YM, Cho S, Kim HD (2017) Dyeing properties and deodorizing/antibacterial performance of cotton/silk/wool fabrics dyed with myrrh (Commiphora myrrha) extract. Text Res J 87(8):1–11

Li Y, Ku SH, Chen SH, Chen SM, Ali MA, AlHemaid FM (2013) Photoelectrochemistry for red cabbage extract as natural dye to develop a dye-sensitized solar cells. Int J Electrochem Sci 8(1):1237–1245

Liu J, Zhu P, Zhao C, Sui S, Dong Z, Zhang L (2014) Study on the dyeing of wool fabrics with Phytolacca berry natural dyes. Fibers Polym 15(8):1601–1608

Macial VBV, Yoshida CM, Franco TT (2015) Chitosan/pectin polyelectrolyte complex as a pH indicator. Carbohydr Polym 132:537–545

Manjunatha BK (2006) Hepatoprotective activity of Pterocarpus santalinus lf, an endangered medicinal plant. Indian J Pharmacol 38(1):25–28

Micheal MN, El-Zaher NA (2005) Investigation into the effect of UV/ozone treatments on the dyeing properties of natural dyes on natural fabrics. Colourage 52:83–88

Mohsin M, Farooq A, Ashraf U, Ashraf MA, Abbas N, Sarwar N (2016) Performance enhancement of natural dyes extracted from Acacia bark using eco-friendly cross-linker for cotton. J Nat Fibers 13(3):374–381

Mongkholrattanasit R, Krystufek J, Wiener J (2010) Dyeing and fastness properties of natural dyes extracted from eucalyptus leaves using padding techniques. Fibers Polym 11(3):346–350

Mongkholrattanasit R, Krystufek J, Wiener J, Vikova M (2011a) Dyeing, fastness, and UV protection properties of silk and wool fabrics dyed with eucalyptus leaf extract by the exhaustion process. Fibres Text East Eur 19(3):94–99

Mongkholrattanasit R, Krystufek J, Wiener J, Vikova M (2011b) UV protection properties of silk fabric dyed with eucalyptus leaf extract. J Text Inst 102(3):272–279

Nahak G, Sahu RK (2010) Antioxidant activity in bark and roots of neem (Azadirachta indica) and Mahaneem (Melia azedarach). Eur J Pharm Sci 4:28–34

Nenaah G (2010) Antibacterial and antifungal activities of (beta)-carboline alkaloids of Peganum harmala (L) seeds and their combination effects. Fitoterapia 81(7):779–782

Ozguney AT, Bozaci E, Demir A, Ozdogan E (2017) Inkjet printing of linen fabrics pretreated with atmospheric plasma and various print pastes. AATCC J Res 4(1):22–27

Patrocinio AO, Murakami Iha NY (2010) Toward sustainability: solar cells sensitized by natural extracts. Quim Nova 33(3):574–578

Pourjavaher S, Almasi H, Meshkini S, Pirsa S, Parandi E (2017) Development of a colorimetric pH indicator based on bacterial cellulose nanofibers and red cabbage (Brassica oleracea) extract. Carbohydr Polym 156:193–201

Prabhu KH, Teli MD (2014) Eco-dyeing using Tamarindus indica L. seed coat tannin as a natural mordant for textiles with antibacterial activity. J Saud Chem Soc 18(6):864–872

Prusty AK, Das T, Nayak A, Das NB (2010) Colourimetric analysis and antimicrobial study of natural dyes and dyed silk. J Clean Prod 18(16):1750–1756

Rajendran R, Balakumar C, Kalaivani J, Sivakumar R (2011) Dyeability and antimicrobial properties of cotton fabrics finished with Punica Granatum extracts. J Text Appar Technol Manag 7(2):1–12

Rather LJ, Akhter S, Padder RA, Hassan QP, Hussain M, Khan MA, Mohammad F (2017) Colorful and semi durable antioxidant finish of woolen yarn with tannin rich extract of Acacia nilotica natural dye. Dyes Pigments 139:812–819

Rehman F, Adeel S, Hanif R, Muneer M, Zia KM, Zuber M, Khosa MK (2017) Modulation of Marigold based lutein dye and its dyeing behaviour using UV radiation. J Nat Fibers 14(1):63–70

Ren Y, Ding Z, Wang C, Zang C, Zhang Y, Xu L (2017) Influence of DBD plasma pretreatment on the deposition of chitosan onto UHMWPE fiber surfaces for improvement of adhesion and dyeing properties. Appl Surf Sci 369:1571–1579

Rumeau P, Tierce P, Costes S (2004) Ultrasounds: an industrial solution to optimise costs, environmental requests and quality for textile finishing. Ultrason Sonochem 11(1):33–38

San Esteban ACM, Enrriquez EP (2013) Graphene–anthocyanin mixture as photosensitizer for dye-sensitized solar cell. Sol Energ 98:392–399

Sengupta D, Mondal B, Mukherjee K (2015) Visible light absorption and photo-sensitizing properties of spinach leaves and beetroot extracted natural dyes. Spectrochim Acta Part A: Mol Biomol Spectrosc 148:85–92

Serrano J, Puupponen Pimia R, Dauer A, Aura AM, Saura Calixto F (2009) Tannins: current knowledge of food sources, intake, bioavailability and biological effects. Mol Nutr Food Res 53(2):310–329

Shahid M, Zhou Y, Tang RC, Chen G, Wani WA (2017) Colourful and antioxidant silk with chlorogenic acid: process development and optimization by central composite design. Dyes Pigments 138:30–38

Shanmugam V, Manoharan S, Anandan S, Murugan R (2013) Performance of dye-sensitized solar cells fabricated with extracts from fruits of ivy gourd and flowers of red frangipani as sensitizers. Spectrochim Acta Part A: Mol Biomol Spectr 104:35–40

Silva GJF, Constant PBL, Figueiredo RW, Moura SM (2010) Formulação e estabilidade de corantes de antocianinas extraídas das cascas de jabuticaba (Myrciaria ssp.). Alimentos e Nutrição 21(3):429–436

Simoncic B, Tomsic B (2010) Structures of novel antimicrobial agents for textiles-a review. Text Res J 80(16):1721–1737

Singh LK, Karlo T, Pandey A (2014) Performance of fruit extract of Melastoma malabathricum L. as sensitizer in DSSCs. Spectrochim Acta Part A: Mol Biomol Spectrosc 118:938–943

Sinha K, Das P, Datta S (2012) Natural blue dye from Clitoria Ternatea: extraction and analysis methods. Res J Text Appar 16(2):34–38

Sivakumar V, Vijaeeswarri J, Anna JL (2011) Effective natural dye extraction from different plant materials using ultrasound. Ind Crop Prod 33(1):116–122

Smestad GP, Steinfeld A (2012) Review: photochemical and thermochemical production of solar fuels from H_2O and CO_2 using metal oxide catalysts. Ind Crop Prod 51(37):11828–11840

Syafinar R, Gomesh N, Irwanto M, Fareq M, IRwan YM (2015) Potential of purple cabbage, coffee, blueberry and turmeric as nature based dyes for dye sensitized solar cell (DSSC). Energy Procedia 79:799–807

Szostak R, De Souza ECF, Antunes SRM, Borges CPF, De Adrade AVC, Rodrigues PRP, Antunes AC (2015) Anthocyanin from Vitis labrusca grape used as sensitizer in DSSC solar cells. J Mater Sci Mater Electron 26(4):2257–2262

Vankar PS, Shanker R, Srivastava J (2007) Ultrasonic dyeing of cotton fabric with aqueous extract of Eclipta alba. Dyes Pigments 72(1):33–37

Wang XF, Koyama Y, Wada Y, Sasaki SI, Tamiaki H (2007) A dye-sensitized solar cell using pheophytin–carotenoid adduct: enhancement of photocurrent by electron and singlet-energy transfer and by suppression of singlet–triplet annihilation due to the presence of the carotenoid moiety. Chem Phys Lett 439(1):115–120

Weng WC, Sheu SJ (2000) Separation of Anthraquinones by capillary electrophoresis and high-performance liquid chromatography. J Sep Sci 23(2):143–148

Win ZM, Swe MM (2008) Purification of the natural dyestuff extracted from mango bark for the application on protein fibers. World Acad Sci Eng Technol 22:536–540

Wongcharee K, Meeyoo V, Chavadej S (2007) Dye-sensitized solar cell using natural dyes extracted from rosella and blue pea flowers. Sol Energ Mater Sol Cells 91(7):566–571

Xu HX, Lee SF (2004) The antibacterial principle of Caesalpinia sappan. Phytother Res 18(8):647–651

Zajko S, Klimant I (2013) The effects of different sterilization procedures on the optical polymer oxygen sensors. Sens Actuators B Chem 177:86–93

Zheng GH, Fu HB, Liu GP (2011) Application of rare earth as mordant for the dyeing of ramie fabrics with natural dyes. Korean J Chem Eng 28(11):2148–2155

Zhou H, Wu L, Gao Y, Ma T (2011) Dye-sensitized solar cells using 20 natural dyes as sensitizers. J Photochem Photobiol A Chem 219(2):188–194

Zhou Y, Yang ZY, Tang RC (2016) Bioactive and UV protective silk materials containing baicalin—the multifunctional plant extract from Scutellaria baicalensis Georgi. Mater Sci Eng C 67:336–344

Assessment of Pesticide Residues in Vegetables of Telangana State

Syeda Azeem Unnisa

Introduction

The diverse climate of India ensures availability of all varieties of fresh fruits and vegetables. India ranks second in fruit and vegetable production in the world, after China. According to National Horticulture Database published by National Horticulture Board, during 2014–2015 India produced 169.478 million metric tonnes of vegetables under cultivation area at 9.542 mh (NHB 2015).

The chemical substances in pesticides are commonly used in modern agriculture practices to protect the crops from diseases and pests (Guler et al. 2010). Vegetables are important components of the human diet as it consists of calories (9%), magnesium (16%) and iron (19%) on the recommended intake value (Iqbal et al. 2009). Due to modern agriculture, vegetables are potential source of harmful and toxic pesticides, which has increased the concern about food safety worldwide (Radwan and Salama 2006). It is essential that pesticides should be controlled and reduces in precise level due to their relative toxicity to the human health and environment (Jiang et al. 2009). Pesticide is a mixture of substances or a substance for destroying, controlling and preventing pest, vectors or unwanted species interfering with the production, processing, storage, transport and marketing of food (FAO 2002). The residues of pesticide in vegetables are a major public health concern in developing countries as well as developed countries (Dikshit et al. 2003). The harmful pesticide residue which remains on edible portion of vegetables has become the great cause of concern (Boon et al. 2008).

In India, about 6000 tonnes of active ingredients are used by farmers to control pests of fruits and vegetables (Mohan and Gujar 2003). Pesticide residue level investigation in vegetables is a main concern of many scientists and researchers to evade possible risks of toxicity to human health (Osman et al. 2010). The pesticide

S. A. Unnisa (✉)
Department of Environmental Science, UCS, Osmania University, Hyderabad, Telangana, India

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_18

residues can cause birth defects, depression, miscarriages, respiratory disorders and neurological deficiencies (Lehotay et al. 2007). The reason for investigation to assess pesticide residues in vegetables of Telangana State (Hyderabad and Ranga Reddy) is to know the concentration and its potential risk to the consumer health.

Study Area

The study was conducted for the assessment of pesticide contamination in vegetables of Telangana State. The sampling locations in Telangana State (Hyderabad and Ranga Reddy) are shown in Fig. 1. Hyderabad is the capital city of Telangana and Andhra Pradesh and is the sixth largest city in India. The annual mean temperature is 26 °C, whereas summers are hot with maximum temperatures of 40 °C, and winter has varying temperatures from 14.7 to 28.6 °C and with annual rainfall of 812.5 mm. In Hyderabad there are 12 no. of Rythu Bazars and 3 no. of vegetable market committees. Nearly 70–80% of vegetables are coming from the other state to city of Hyderabad.

Material and Method

Sampling

For the present study sampling was conducted for the period from July 2015 to August 2016. Three vegetables were selected for the assessment of various pesticide residues. Sixty samples of vegetables, namely, cauliflower, cabbage and brinjal, were collected from Telangana State (Hyderabad and Ranga Reddy) shown in Table 1. The

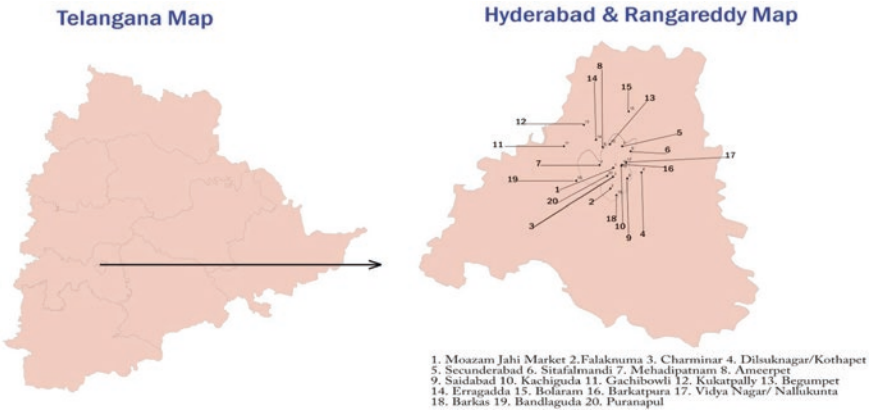


Fig. 1 Sampling points of vegetables in Telangana State (Hyderabad and Ranga Reddy)

Table 1 Sampling locations of vegetables in Telangana State (Hyderabad and Ranga Reddy)

Sample no	Location	Sample no	Location
1	Moazzam Jahi Market	11	Gachibowli
2	Falaknuma	12	Kukatpally
3	Charminar	13	Begumpet
4	Kothapet	14	Erragadda
5	Secunderabad	15	Bolarum
6	Sitaphalmandi	16	Barkatpura
7	Mehdipatnam	17	Nallakunta
8	Ameerpet	18	Barkas
9	Saidabad	19	Bandlaguda
10	Kachiguda	20	Purana pul

collected vegetable samples were stored at 4 °C until further extraction and analysis (Islam et al. 2009) by chopping and homogenizing 200 gm portion which was stored in glass stopper bottle (Cook 2002).

Extraction and Cleanup

10 gm aliquot from each sample was weighted and extracted with 20 mL ethyl acetate twice. The extract was kept in sonicator for 2 min at 40 ± 2 °C. Through suction pump assistance, the extract was filtered through a filter paper. After filtration the residues were washed with 10 mL ethyl acetate, and extract was transferred to separating funnel (Chahal et al. 1994). The organic phase was passed through anhydrous sodium sulphate and was evaporated on rotary evaporator until dry. In ethyl acetate residues were dissolved and cleaned up on SPE column containing 1 gm of C 18 preconditioned with 5 mL water and 3 mL acetonitrile. The extracted residues were eluted twice with hexane-ethyl acetate (5 mL) (1:1, v/v). Eluate was evaporated and dissolves in ethyl acetate and transferred to glass tube and concentrated under gentle stream of air to suitable volume. The final aliquot was determined by GC-ECD (Prasad 2001).

Gas Chromatography

The pesticide residues in vegetable samples were analysed using a chemito gas chromatograph equipped with ^{63}Ni ECD and NP detector (Model 5610) having capillary column (BPX-608-25 m × 0.32 ID × 0.46 µm) (Gupta et al. 1998).

Result and Discussion

The current research was undertaken to assess the concentration of various pesticide residues in the vegetables (cauliflower, cabbage, brinjal) in and around Telangana State (Hyderabad and Ranga Reddy).

Cauliflower

It is called as *Brassica oleracea* which belong to the family Brassicaceae. It is an annual plant that reproduces by seed, and the head (the white curd) is eaten. Commonly occurring disease is blackleg, clubroot, fusarium yellows, *Sclerotinia* blight, etc.

Table 2 indicates the pesticide residues detected percentage of contamination and residues range in cauliflower, cabbage and brinjal. The insecticides identified and quantified in cauliflower were endosulfan, quinalphos and methyl parathion. Twenty samples of cauliflower were analysed in duplicate for the presence of pesticide residues which revealed that six samples were contaminated with endosulfan (30%), four were contaminated with quinalphos (20%) and ten were contaminated with methyl parathion (50%). It is observed that cauliflower is found with pesticide residues which is exceeding the maximum residual limit (MRL) values as per the FAO/WHO (FAO/WHO 1986).

Table 2 Pesticide residue levels (μg/gm) found in vegetables collected from Telangana State (Hyderabad and Ranga Reddy)

S. no	Name of the sample	No. of samples studied	Detected pesticide name and (no. of samples contaminated)	Percentage of vegetable samples contaminated with pesticides	Pesticide levels (μg/gm)	MRL (μg/gm)	No. of samples above MRL (μg/gm)
1	Cauliflower (*Brassica oleracea*)	20	Endosulfan (6)	30%	ND- 1.66	0.35	6
			Quinalphos (4)	20%	ND- 0.50	0.29	3
			Methyl parathion (10)	50%	ND- 0.40	1.20	2
2	Cabbage (*Brassica oleracea* capitata group)	20	Chlorpyrifos (6)	30%	ND- 0.10	0.22	2
			Monocrotophos (14)	70%	ND- 0.30	0.08	4
3	Brinjal (*Solanum melongena*)	20	Methyl parathion (9)	45%	ND- 2.00	0.32	7
			Cypermethrin (5)	25%	ND- 0.56	0.25	4
			Monocrotophos (6)	30%	ND- 1.82	0.59	4

Cabbage

It is called as *Brassica oleracea* from capitata group. It is a leafy green biennial plant, grown as an annual vegetable crop. Cabbage is a good source of vitamin K, vitamin C and dietary fibre. Commonly occurring diseases are bacterial soft, black-leg fungus, *Alternaria* leaf spot, etc.

The insecticides identified and qualified in cabbage were chlorpyrifos and monocrotophos. Twenty samples of cabbage were analysed in duplicate for the presence of pesticide residues which revealed that 6 samples were contaminated with chlorpyrifos (30%) and 14 samples were contaminated with monocrotophos (70%). It is observed from the results that cabbage is found with pesticide residues which slightly exceed the (MRL) levels.

Brinjal

It is called as *Solanum melongena* which belongs to family Solanaceae which is a species of night shade grown for its edible fruit. Commonly occurring diseases are aphids, blossom-end rot, fruit rot, etc.

The insecticides identified and quantified in brinjal were methyl parathion, cypermethrin and monocrotophos. Twenty samples of brinjal were analysed in duplicate for the presence of pesticide residues which reveals that nine samples were contaminated with methyl parathion (45%), five samples were contaminated with cypermethrin (25%) and six samples were contaminated with monocrotophos (30%). It is clearly indicated that the brinjal samples have exceeded the MRL levels. As shown in Fig. 2, the MRL values of all pesticide residues in all vegetables like monocrotophos, methyl parathion, quinalphos, chlorpyrifos and cypermethrin were

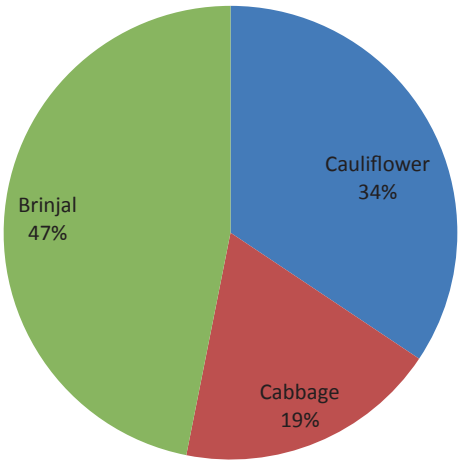


Fig. 2 Percentage of no. of vegetable samples above MRL (µg/gm) contaminated by various pesticide residues

slightly exceeded. The study results are consonance with earlier studies (Madan et al. 1996; Chahal et al. 1997).

There are several studies on pesticide residue contamination and health implications resulting from the intensive use of pesticides in agriculture (Bhanti and Taneja 2007; Chen et al. 2011). In present study 100% of the vegetable samples were assessed with 20 pesticide residues which were found at or exceeding MRL values. Individual vegetables like cauliflower, cabbage and brinjal showed presence of pesticide residues exceeding MRL values in terms of percentages 34%, 19% and 47%. This trend is in consonance with the reports of higher levels of contamination of brinjal, cabbage and cauliflower (Amoah et al. 2006; Kumari et al. 2003; Lozowicka et al. 2012).

A total compounds, covering organophosphorus, organochlorine and synthetic pyrethroid, were detected in the present study with various concentrations. The residues of the compounds detected with predominant in all vegetable groups indicating their widespread usage (Bhattachayya et al. 2009).

Conclusion

Analysis of total 60 fresh vegetable samples, collected from Telangana State (Hyderabad and Ranga Reddy), indicated presence of pesticide residues. It is evident from the results that none of the samples was found free from the contamination of pesticide residues. All the pesticides detected were above the MRL values in all vegetable samples which can pose adverse effects on health of consumers. The frequent and increase usage of pesticides on vegetables has enhanced potential risk of term effect on consumers. The indecent use of pesticides indicates unawareness of farmers and lack of effective legislation.

Acknowledgement

The author sincerely thanks the Department of Environmental Science, Osmania University, for financially supporting this research work.

References

Amoah P, Drechsel P, Abaidoo RC, Ntow WJ (2006) Pesticide and pathogen contamination of vegetables in Ghana's urban markets. Arch Environ Contam Toxicol 50:1–6

Bhanti M, Taneja A (2007) Contamination of vegetables of different seasons with organophosphorous pesticide and related health risk assessment in northern India. Chemosphere 69:63–68

Bhattachayya A, Barik SR, Ganguly P (2009) New pesticide molecules, formulation technology and uses: present status and future challenges. J Plant Prot Sci 11:9–15

Boon PE, Van der Voet H, Van Raaij MTM, Van Klaveren JD (2008) Cumulative risk assessment of the exposure to organophosphorous and carbamate insecticides in the Dutch diet. Food Chem Toxicol 46(9):3090–3098

Chahal KK, Singh B, Kang BK, Battu RS, Joia BS (1997) Insecticide residues in farmgate vegetables in. Punjab Pestic Res J 9(2):256–260

Chahal KK, Singh B, Kapoor SK (1994) Dissipation of Monocrotophos and Quinalphos on brinjal (Solanum melongena L.). National symposium on emerging trends in pest management, June 28–30, 1994. Dr. Y.S. Parmar University of Horticulture and Forestry, Solan, India

Chen C, Yongzhon Q, Qiong C, Chuanjiang T, Chuanyong L, Yun L (2011) Evaluation of pesticide residues in fruits and vegetable from Xiamen. China Food Control 227:1114–1120

Cook C (2002) Guidelines for sampling soils, fruits, vegetables and grains for chemical residue testing. Agric Notes AGO 889:1–4

Dikshit AK, Pachaury DC, Jindal T (2003) Maximum residue limits and risk assessment of betacyfluthrin and imidacloprid on tomato. Bull Environ Contam Toxicol 70:1143–1150

FAO/WHO (1986) Maximum limits for pesticide residues. In: Codex Alimentarius, vol XIII, 2nd edn. FAO, Rome

Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (2002) International Code of conduct on the Distribution and Use of pesticides, 25th October 2002. http://www.fao.org/WAICENT/FAOINFO/AGRICULT/code.pdf

Guler GO, Cakmak YS, Dagli Z, Aktumsek A, Ozparlak H (2010) Organo-chlorine pesticide residues in wheat from Konya region, Turkey. Food Chem Toxicol 48:1218–1221

Gupta A, Singh B, Parihar NS, Bhatnagar A (1998) Pesticide residues in farmgate samples of bottlegourd, cauliflower, cabbage and fenugreek at Jaipur. Pestic Res J 10(1):86–90

Indian Horticulture Database (2015) National Horticulture Board. Ministry of Agriculture, GOI

Iqbal MF, Maqbool U, Perveez I, Farooq M, Asi MR (2009) Monitoring of insecticide residues in brinjal collected from market of Nowshera Virkan, Pakistan. J Anim Plant Sci 19:90–93

Islam S, Hossain MS, Nahar N, Mosihuzzaman M, Mamun MIR (2009) Application of high performance liquid chromatography to the analysis of pesticide residues in egg plants. J Applied Sci 9(5):973–977

Jiang YF, Wang XT, Jia Y, Wang F, Wu MH, Sheng GY, Fu JM (2009) Occurrence, distribution and possible sources of organochlorine pesticides in agricultural soil of Shanghai, China. J Hazard Mater 170:989–997

Kumari B, Kumar R, Madan VK, Singh R, Singh J, Kathpal TS (2003) Monitoring of pesticidal contamination in winter vegetables from Hisar, Haryana. Environ Monit Assess 87:311–318

Lehotay SJ, Hiemstra M, Van Bodegraven P, De Kok A (2007) Validation of a fast and easy method for the determination of more than 200 pesticide residues in fruits and vegetables using gas and liquid chromatography and mass spectrometric detection. J AOAC Int 88:595

Lozowicka B, Jankowska M, Kaczynski P (2012) Pesticide residues in Brassica vegetables and exposure assessment of consumers. Food Control 25:561–575

Madan VK, Kumari B, Singh R, Kumar R, Kathpal TS (1996) Monitoring of pesticides from farmgate samples of vegetables in Haryana. Pestic Res J 8(1):56–80

Mohan M, Gujar GT (2003) Local variation in susceptibility of diamond back month to insecticides and role of detoxification enzymes. J Crop Protect 22:495–504

Osman KA, Al-Humaid AM, Al-Rehiayani SM, Al-Redhaiman KN (2010) Monitoring of pesticide residues in vegetables marketed in Al-Qassim region, Saudi Arabia. Ecotoxical Envion Saf 73:1433–1439

Prasad SS (2001) Programme Advisory Committee, Country Report – India, Government of India

Radwan MA, Salama AK (2006) Market basket survey for some heavy metals in Egyptian fruits and vegetables. Food Chem Toxicol 44:1273–1278

An Insight to Micropropagation of Freshwater Aquatic Medicinal Plants

Muhammad Aasim, Khalid Mahmood Khawar, Mehmet Karataş, Faheem Shahzad Bloch, and Allah Bakhsh

Introduction

Freshwater aquatic plants include medicinal and ornamental species that are extensively used in folk medicines for their healing characteristics, planted in water bodies or aquarium for ornamental purpose and phytoremediation or maintaining water quality. Freshwater aquatic plants are selected based on their chemical or morphologic characteristics (Stodola 1980). They have limited and narrow demand by specific customers. These aquatic plants are in use for long time in different traditional medicinal systems like Ayurveda (Gonsalves 2010). Aquatic plants are gaining popularity due to their use as ornamental or medicinal purposes (Shahidullah 2007). These plants are collected from wild and used for medicinal purposes making some of the plants threatened to extinction. It is estimated that terrestrial or aquatic plants provide 80% of medicinal ingredients used in Indian traditional medicinal system. Owing to limited demand, they are rarely micropropagated under in vitro conditions (Pierik and Ruibing 1997).

Most of the freshwater aquatic plants are found in environments of Southeast Asia, Malaysia and Indonesia, Vietnam, Laos, and Cambodia as partially, fully submerged or emerged (Kasselmann 1999). Numerous aquatic plants are found in water

M. Aasim (✉) · M. Karataş
Faculty of Science, Department of Biotechnology, Necmettin Erbakan University, Konya, Turkey

K. M. Khawar
Faculty of Agriculture, Department of Field Crops, Ankara University, Ankara, Turkey

F. S. Bloch
Faculty of Agricultural and Natural Science, Department of Field Crops, Abant Izzet Baysal University, Bolu, Turkey

A. Bakhsh
Faculty of Agricultural Sciences and Technologies, Department of Agricultural Genetic Engineering, Nigde University, Nigde, Turkey

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_19

bodies found around us and are ignored as weeds or plants of low economic importance or even no importance. These plants have never been focal points and were left for natural propagation. Increasing world population has increased demands of these plants that is not feasible using propagation through seeds and by letting their natural propagation that need a long time and are most unable to maintain quality.

Although plant biotechnology techniques, tissue culture, and micropropagation are extensively used for culturing terrestrial plants, they have rarely been applied in aquatic plants. The information about in vitro propagation of freshwater aquatic plants is very rare and fragmentary. Aquatic plant biotechnology is fascinating and attractive but largely neglected subject (Kane et al. 1988, 1990; Staritski 1977). This study involves examination of distinctive in vitro micropropagation methods influencing the mode of their propagation, callus morphogenesis, or genetic transformation.

In Vitro Micropropagation of Freshwater Aquatic Medicinal Plants

*Aquatic Job's Tears (Coix aquatica **Roxb.; Poaceae**)*

Katiyar and Chandel (1998) successfully developed somatic embryos and plantlets of two cultivars by indirect somatic embryogenesis. They cultured immature inflorescence and obtained up to 80% calli on N6 medium containing 1–2 mg/L 2,4-D that was followed by induction of somatic embryos and plantlets on MS medium fortified with 0.5 mg/L BA + 0.03 mg/L NAA. They also reported the importance of size, explant age, and cultivar for embryogenesis. Regenerated plantlets were acclimatized in fields where they flowered.

*Centella (Centella asiatica **(L.) Urban; Apiaceae**)*

Centella is one of the major semiaquatic medicinal plants since ancient times. The large number of studies on in vitro propagation has been reported using different explants like leaf or leaf-derived calli for adventitious shoot regeneration. Whereas, stem, shoot tip, and nodal segments have also been used for multiple axillary shoot regeneration. Sivakumar et al. (2006) used shoot tip explants and achieved 88% induction of 16.8 shoots per explant on MS medium fortified with 17.76 μM BA + 1.44 μM GA3. Similarly, Das et al. (2008) have also used shoot tip explant and got 10.2 ± 0.38 shoots per explant on 4.0 mg/L BA + 0.1 mg/L NAA. The micro-shoots were rooted using 1.0 mg/L IBA. The plants had 80% acclimatization. Tiwari et al. (2013) used 2.5–3.0 cm long nodal segments and cultured them on different combinations of BA-NAA or BA-IBA. They noted maximum number of 6.13 ± 0.16 shoots when cultured on medium with 4.0 mg/L BA + 0.4 mg/L NAA. Recently, Roy et al. (2016) compared different growth mediums (MS, B5, and Nitsch) and

PGRs. They used nodes from three different accessions and got maximum number of 5.3 and 6.2 shoots for accession No. 342109 and 347492 using 2.0 mg/L BA + 0.5 mg/L NAA, while accession No. 331514 induced 11.5 shoots on 1 mg/L BA. All accessions produced maximum shoots on MS medium compared to B5 or Nitsch Medium. Mohapatra et al. (2008) used leaf and nodal segment explants and obtained 81.6% regeneration with 8.3 shoots per explant with shoot length of 2.1 cm on leaf explant that cultured on MS medium provided with 3.0 mg/dm^3 BA and 0.05 mg/dm^3 NAA.

Bibi et al. (2011) produced plants from somatic embryogenic calli originated on leaf explants cultured on MS medium containing 4.42 μM BA with 5.37 μM NAA. They achieved maximum of 10 shoots per callus explant followed by rooting. They also checked the antibacterial activities of calli and plant extracts. Similarly, Joshi et al. (2013) optimized callus induction on leaf and stem explants by using 0.5 mg/L BA + 0.3 mg/L NAA achieving maximum of 6.0 shoots from leaf explant and 8.0 shoots from stem explant after re-culturing them on medium supplemented with 0.5 mg/L BA and 0.75 mg/L BA. They induced rooting on medium enriched with 0.5 mg/L IBA followed by acclimatization. Panthalu et al. (2014) noted green, friable, and granular calli on nodal explants cultured on medium containing 2.0 mg/L 2,4-D and 0.5 mg/L BA. They noted maximum of 11.46 shoots when cultured on medium containing 2.0 mg/L BA + 0.5 mg/L NAA. Regenerated shoots were rooted and subjected to adaptation with 80% survival of plants during acclimatization.

Ceylon Hydrolea (Hydrolea zeylanica **Linn. (Vahl): *Hydrophyllaceae)***

Ravi et al. (2012) developed in vitro micropropagation and flowering protocol of *Hydrolea zeylanica*. They used nodal explants and obtained maximum regeneration on MS medium fortified with different BA or KIN in the presence of NAA. Whereas, in vitro flowering was recorded after 8 days of shoot bud regeneration. Regenerated shoots were rooted on MS medium enriched with IBA.

*Chinese Water Chestnut (***Eleocharis dulcis** *Trinius ex Henschel; Cyperaceae)*

Number of studies are available that highlight the importance of different colored lights with different wavelength on regeneration from different explants using different PGRs. Hoque et al. (2001) cultured the embryonal explants awaited on 5 °C for 40 days on ½ × MS medium enriched with 2.7 μM BA + 0.5 μM NAA + 0.5 μM GA3. Thereafter, chilled and no-chilled explants were inoculated on ½ × MS

medium enriched with different cytokinins, auxins, and GA3. A liquid ½ × MS medium provided with 1.1 BA + 0.5 μM NAA proved the best for shoot proliferation. 100% rooting was recorded when the explants were cultured in liquid ½ × MS medium enriched with 1.1 μM BA + 0.5 μM NAA + 1.1 μM IBA. Hoque and Arima (2004) evaluated the effects of different color lights with different wavelength on in vitro shoot regeneration of water chestnut using cotyledonary nodes or nodal explants. Mixed color lights resulted in early and higher shoot proliferation (95.6%), shoots per explant (25.7) using MSMA medium provided with 2.7 μM BA + 0.5 μM NAA + 0.5 μM GA3.

Hoque et al. (2006) used embryonal explants of three water chestnuts varieties for callus induction on ½ × MS medium supplemented with 2.5 mg/L 2,4-D + 1 mg/L BA. For shoot induction, ½ × MS liquid medium containing 1.1 mg/L BA + 0.5 mg/L NAA was found optimum for all three varieties. Whereas, 0.5 mg/L GA3 was found best for shoot elongation. Maximum root induction was recorded on liquid ½ × MS medium enriched with 1.1 mg/L IBA. Jun et al. (2011) used terminal bud as explants and cultured on MS medium using different concentrations of BA and NAA and found the efficacy of BA:NAA ratio on explants proliferation. The optimum medium for shoot induction was 0.20 mg/L 6-BA + 0.02 mg/L NAA which generated 81.40%. Whereas, optimum medium for shoots was 0.50 mg/L 6-BA + 0.10 mg/L NAA.

Recently, Gao et al. (2015) compared the temporary immersion bioreactor system (TIBS) with conventional semisolid medium technique for propagation of Chinese water chestnut using shoot tip explant. TIBS conditions for 15 min of immersion after every 8 h resulted in 36.5-fold more shoot multiplication with shoot-forming capacity (SFC) of 68.9. Maximum shoot multiplication rate (43.7 times) in TIBS was recorded on MS medium supplemented with 4 mg/L BA and 0.5 mg/L NAA. No rooting was observed during multiplication in TIBS, and these were rooted on medium containing 2.0 mg/L NAA with 95% survival during acclimatization.

Coontail or Hornwort (*Ceratophyllum demersum *L.; Ceratophyllaceae)

Coontail is one of the most popular aquatic plants used for phytoremediation and is also considered as medicinal plant due to containing rich bioactive compounds. In recent years, number of protocols have been established for in vitro regeneration using shoot tip and nodal explants. Karataş et al. (2014a) cultured shoot tips, first and second nodal explants on agar solidified or liquid MS medium fortified with 0.05–0.80 mg/L BA. Liquid culture medium was found superior compared to solidified medium, and maximum shoot regeneration frequency from all explants were recorded on liquid medium with 0.05 mg/L BA. Second nodal explants were most responsive and regenerated 16.75 and 204.33 shoots per explant on solid and liquid

culture medium, respectively. They also suggested slightly acidic to alkaline water requirement for best growth of these plants in the aquaria. Later on, Dogan et al. (2015) used the same explants to liquid culture medium containing TDZ. First nodal explant generated maximum of 138.44 shoots per explant when cultured on MS medium containing 0.40 mg/L TDZ. Thereafter, they excised ≈2.0 cm long shoots and transferred them to liquid medium containing GA3 which resulted in shoot length up to 16.08 cm on medium containing 0.80 mg/L GA3. There are other studies on coontail in which researchers propagated shoots under in vitro conditions and used these shoots to control water quality (Karataş et al. 2016a). Similarly, extracts taken from in vitro grown shoots of coontail were used to check antioxidant properties (Karataş et al. 2015) and as insecticide (Emsen et al. 2016) against some stored grain pests. In all these studies, 100% survival rate was recorded when shoots were transferred to aquariums for adaptation with or without aeration.

Creeping Coldenia** (*Coldenia procumbens* **Linn.; Boraginaceae)

The studies about in vitro regeneration of *Coldenia procumbens* revealed the use of nodal segments (Jahirhussain et al. 2016) and shoot tip explants regenerated axillary shoot regeneration on BA and KIN. 100% shoot regeneration was observed on both explants when cultured on medium containing 10 μM BA or 6 μM BA. Whereas, 100% regeneration on nodal segments and shoot tips was observed on medium supplemented with 8 μM KIN or 10 μM KIN, respectively. On the other hand, 15 shoots per explant were noted on nodal segment and 14 shoots per shoot tip when they were cultured on medium with 10 μM BA or 6 μM BA, respectively. Whereas, 10.6 shoots per nodal segment and 10 shoots per shoot tip were obtained, respectively, on medium fortified with 8 μM KIN or 10 μM KIN. They also reported BA as more responsive than KIN in both studies.

Creeping Jenny** (*Lysimachia nummularia* **L.; Primulaceae)

Karataş and Aasim (2015a) reported in vitro whole plant regeneration of creeping jenny, an important aquatic medicinal plant. They used shoot tip and first and second nodal segment explants by culturing them on MS medium supplemented with BA-NAA and achieved improved shoot regeneration frequency of 58.33–83.33%, 33.33–83.33%, and 41.67–91.67%, respectively. MS medium enriched with 1.25 mg/L BA was found optimum for generating maximum number of shoots as 9.30, 8.94, and 8.11 for shoot tip and first and second nodal segment explant, respectively. In vitro regenerated shoots were rooted directly on all treatments irrespective of explant type and were transferred directly to aquariums for adaptation with high rate of survival.

Dwarf Hygro (Hygrophila polysperma Anderson; Acanthaceae)

Dwarf hygro is an important part of Ayurvedic system and also known as bioindicator to detect algae in aquatic system. There are few reports on in vitro propagation of dwarf hygro using leaf, shoot tip, and nodal segment explants. Çinar et al. (2013) cultured shoot tip and first nodal segment explant on liquid MS medium containing BAP for axillary shoot regeneration. They recorded maximum of 25.33 (shoot tip) and 21.67 (first nodal segment) shoots on MS medium containing 0.10 mg/L BA. Shoot tip explants were subcultured which improved number of shoots per explant that ranged 26.02–36.91. In another study, Karataş et al. (2014b) used liquid MS medium containing BAP for adventitious shoot regeneration using leaf explant. Maximum number of shoots (5.11) were noted on MS medium containing 1.0 mg/L BAP. Thereafter, subculture on liquid medium containing GA3 improved shoot regeneration to maximum of 10.92 shoots with shoot length of 1.24 cm on MS medium supplemented with 1.0 mg/L BA + 1.0 mg/L GA3 or 0.5 mg/L BA − 1.0 mg/L GA3, respectively. Whereas, Karataş et al. (2013a) reported in vitro adventitious shoot regeneration by culturing leaf explants on agar solidified MS medium supplemented with either of KIN/TDZ singly or with 0.10 mg/L IBA. They achieved maximum of 16.33 shoots per explant on MS medium containing 0.80 mg/L KIN + 0.10 mg/L IBA and 20.55 shoots when cultured on MS medium enriched with 0.10 mg/L TDZ + 0.10 mg/L IBA. These shoots were rooted using IBA and acclimatized in aquariums with a range of pH levels that showed that the plants could survive at pH level of 6–9 pH in aquariums without any difficulty.

Dwarf Water Clover (Marsilea minuta L.; Marsileaceae)

Shekhawat and Manokari (2015) used rhizome explants cultured on MS medium supplemented with BA. Maximum shoot regeneration frequency (96%), shoots (6.2), and shoot length (2.72 cm) was recorded on medium containing 0.5 mg/L BA. These shoot clusters were subcultured on 0.25 mg/L BA with induction of 79.0 shoots per cluster. These shoots were elongated on ½ × MS medium devoid of PGRs and rooted after fourth subculture.

East Indian Globe Thistle or Kamdaryus (Sphaeranthus indicus Linn.; Asteraceae)

In vitro regeneration studies for *Sphaeranthus indicus* indicated the use of axillary bud and shoots tip explant for axillary shoot regeneration. Ravipaul et al. (2008) reported axillary shoot regeneration using shoot tip and axillary bud explants. They achieved maximum shoot regeneration frequency of 90% and 75%, respectively, for axillary bud and shoot tip explants cultured on medium containing 4.0 mg/L

BA. Thereafter, the shoots were rooted using MS medium containing 2.0 mg/L IBA followed by hardening with 90% survival rate. Recently, two studies revealed the effects of silver nitrate and different carbon sources on in vitro shoot regeneration. Harathi and Naidu (2016) investigated the silver nitrate on shoot regeneration potential using shoot tip explant. Medium containing 1.0 mg/L KIN + 0.1 mg/L KIN + 0.4 mg/L $AgNO_3$ was optimized for maximum shoots that was recorded 34.3. Their results highlighted the positive effects of $AgNO_3$ on shoots length. Regenerated shoots were rooted on 0.4 mg/L $AgNO_3$ + 2.0 mg/L NAA in the media. Another study by Harathi et al. (2016) highlighted the role of different carbon sources in the presence of 0.4 mg/L silver nitrate, 1.0 mg/L KIN, and 0.1 mg/L NAA using nodal explants. Maximum of 29.1 shoots were recorded on MS medium containing 3% fructose + 0.4 mg/L $AgNO_3$ compared to control without silver nitrate. Their results also revealed positive effects of different sucrose concentrations in the following order as 3% fructose > sucrose > maltose > glucose on nodal explants of *S. indicus*. In vitro shoots were rooted on medium containing 1.0–2.0 mg/L NAA, IBA, and 1–0.6 mg/L $AgNO_3$. Besides axillary shoot regeneration, Yarra et al. (2010) reported adventitious shoot regeneration *Sphaeranthus indicus* using leaf segment explants. The maximum number of 12 shoots with the highest shoot length of 3.0 cm were recorded using 4.4 μM BA + 1.71 μM IAA and 2.46 μM IBA containing MS medium for rooting with adaptation to external environment.

Eclipta *(Eclipta prostrata* ***(Linn.) Linn.; Asteraceae)***

Eclipta prostrata is a potent medicinal aquatic plant shoot multiplication or in vitro flowering using nodal segment explants cultured on MS medium supplemented with 4.44 μM BA. Rooting was recorded on MS medium supported with 0.44 μM BA (Gawde and Paratkar 2004). Maximum shoots were noted on 1 mg/L BA using nodal segment explants. Whereas, BA and GA3 were used for further multiplication of shoots (Dhaka and Kothari 2005). Husain and Anis (2006) used 10 M BA for axillary bud proliferation and gained 23 shoots per explants. Whereas, culture of node explants at lower concentration of 2 M BA resulted in 79.0 shoots per explants. Regenerated shoots were rooted on ½ × MS medium enriched with 0.5 mg/L IBA followed by 90% survival rate. Whereas, Singh et al. (2012) used transverse thin cell layer (tTCL) culture explant taken from nodal segment. MS medium fortified with 13.2 μM BA + 4.6 μM KIN resulted in 100% shoot proliferation with 32.6 shoot buds per explant. They rooted the plants and acclimatized them with 90–100% survival rate. Yesmin et al. (2015) cultured nodal segment explants on MS medium fortified with BA/KIN alone or in combination with IAA or NAA. They obtained maximum number of 18.40 shoots per explants. When cultured on medium enriched with 1.0 mg/L BA + 0.1 mg/NAA. ½ × MS medium supplemented with 1 mg/L IBA resulted in 96% rooting that was followed by successful adaptation.

Use of cotyledonary node explants followed by the establishment of plants in soil was reported by Baskaran and Jayabalan (2005). They also obtained maximum shoots on medium provided with 4.4 μM BA + 9.2 μM KIN + 2.4 μM 2iP. Sharan

et al. (2014) used seed as explant for multiple clonal propagation. They cultured the sterilized seed explants on MS medium containing 2 mg/L BA + 1 mg/L NAA followed by subculture of shoots which resulted in multiple whole plant proliferation. These plantlets were separated and acclimatized successfully. Besides axillary shoot regeneration, adventitious shoot regeneration from leaf explant has also been reported by Sharma et al. (2013). They cultured leaf explants and reported MS medium supplemented with 1.0 mg/L 2,4-D + 0.5 mg/L BA for callus induction. Whereas, 1.0 mg/L BA + 0.1 mg/L NAA was found best for shoot proliferation from calli. On the other hand, Dar et al. (2016) induced an average of 4–7 flowers when cultured on medium supported with 4 mg/L KIN. Whereas, they attained maximum of 13 flowers when using 5 mg/L 2iP.

Epaltes *(Epaltes divaricata* ***L. Cass.: Asteraceae***

Barathi and Agastian (2015) developed both direct and indirect regeneration protocols of *Epaltes divaricata* L. using different explants. Maximum callusing was achieved on shoot tip explants on medium with maximum number of 10.77 shoots and mean shoot length. Contrarily, nodal explants generated 1.86 shoots with average length of 3.0 cm when cultured on MS medium containing 1.0 mg/L BA + 0.1 mg/L KIN. Regenerated plantlets were rooted using IBA with survival rate of 73.33% during acclimatization.

Indian Heliotrope *(Heliotropium indicum* ***Linn.; Boraginaceae)***

Indian heliotrope is an important medicinal herb used for curing different diseases. It is rich in different bioactive compounds like alkaloids and steroids. Bagadeka and Jayaraj (2011) achieved in vitro callogenesis and rhizogenesis using stem and leaf explants, cultured on MS medium enriched with 2,4-D, NAA, and IBA (1.0 or 3 mg/L) and KIN or BA (2 mg/L). Their results indicated the strong rhizogenesis compared to callus induction. Extracts taken from the roots showed the presence of bioactive compounds. In another study, Priyadarshini et al. (2014a) developed calli for isolation of bioactive compounds. They used 2,4-D, IBA (0.5–5 mg/L), and BA (0.5–1.0 mg/L) singly or in combination for internodal segments or leaf explants. Higher calli induction (89.8%) on internodal segment was recorded on MS medium supplemented with 1.5 mg/L 2,4-D + 1.0 mg/L BA.

The other studies indicated the greater potential of regeneration using apical or axillary buds or nodes for axillary shoots induction. Kumar and Rao (2007) developed in vitro axillary regeneration protocol using apical or axillary buds. They noted maximum number of 32.6 and 20.2 shoots per explant on apical or axillary buds incubated on MS medium provided with 1.0 mg/L + 0.5 mg/L BA + 0.05 mg/L IAA after 30 days of culture. They also achieved 85.0% rooting by using 0.1 mg/L IBA

followed by successful adaptation. Hassan et al. (2010) cultured apical and axillary buds taken from young sprouted plantlets. The highest regeneration frequency (92%) with an average of 12 shoots per explant was achieved on MS medium fortified with 0.5 mg/L BA + 0.1 mg/L GA3. Subculture to the same medium increased the shoots per explant up to 18. These shoots were rooted on 0.5 mg/L IBA containing ½ × MS rooting medium with 85% survival during acclimatization. Priyadarshini et al. (2014b) inoculated apical shoots and nodal explants on MS medium provided with BA or KIN alone or in combination with IAA, NAA, or GA3. Their results revealed 87% shoot regeneration with average of 5.4 shoots using 1.0 mg/L BA. Whereas, addition of GA3 with 1.0 mg/L KIN resulted in 92% shoot regeneration. Regeneration frequency of 94% was noted with 14.8 shoots on apical shoot explant on the same medium. ½ × MS medium containing 0.2 mg/L IBA was the most successful medium for rooting with 74% survival during acclimatization.

***Job's Tears** (Coix lacryma-jobi **Linn.; Poaceae**)*

Mochida and Tsujimoto (2001) used Job's tears (*C. lacryma-jobi* L.) as pollen parent for wheat crosses to produce haploid wheat plants due to availability of pollen throughout the year. After pollination, they treated the explants with 2,4-D, detached tillers followed by embryo culture.

***Limnophila** (Limnophila aromatica **R.Br.; Plantaginaceae**)*

Karataş and Aasim (2015b) reported first ever in vitro multiplication of *Limnophila aromatica*, an important aquatic or semiaquatic medicinal herb. They used sterilized shoot tip explants and cultured them on medium fortified with 0.25–2.0 mg/L BA + 0 or 0.25 mg/L NAA with 100% shoot regeneration frequency and maximum number of 44.22 shoots per explant on medium containing 1 mg/L BA. Contrarily, longer shoots were achieved after a culture on medium containing 0.25 mg/L BA + 0.25 mg/L NAA. In vitro regenerated shoots were successfully rooted (100%) using NAA (0.25–1.0 mg/L NAA) with 100% survival in aerated aquariums for acclimatization.

***Neeramulli** (Hygrophila schulli **Buch.-Ham.) M.R. Almeida & S.M. Almeida; Acanthaceae**)*

Hygrophila schulli (*Asteracantha longifolia* synonym) is an important medicinal aquatic herb, and efforts have been made to develop in vitro regeneration protocol for caulogenesis and axillary or adventitious shoot regeneration in recent years with numerous reports on direct and indirect shoot regeneration. Pal et al. (2014)

successfully developed calli of *H. schulli* using cotyledonary leaf and cotyledonary node explants cultured on MS medium enriched with 0.2 mg/L 2,4-D + 0.2 mg/L BA. Subculture to MS medium supplemented with 1–2 mg/L BA alone or in combination with 0.1 mg/L NAA resulted in green somatic embryos which turned into plantlets. Whereas, Kumar and Nandi (2015) used internode explants using different cytokinins and auxins and achieved maximum number of shoots per explant on MS medium supplemented with 2.0 mg/L BA + 0.5 mg/L NAA. They rooted the shoots by using 0.5 mg/L IBA with 86.7% survival after transplantation.

The studies related to adventitious shoot regeneration revealed the use of leaf explant cultured on MS medium using different concentrations of cytokinins + auxins or cytokinins singly. Mishra et al. (2006) successfully developed the indirect and direct adventitious shoot regeneration using leaf explant cultured on different concentrations of BA or KIN. They obtained maximum of 6.6 shoots when cultured on medium with 2.0 mg/L BA. Contrarily, maximum number of 3.4 shoots were noted on 2.5 mg/L KIN containing medium. Panigrahi et al. (2006) reported adventitious shoot regeneration using leaf explant. They obtained maximum of 21.8 shoots or buds per explant when cultured on MS medium supplemented with 2.0 mg/L BA + 0.5 mg/L NAA. Shoots with more than 3 cm length were successfully rooted on medium enriched with 0.1 mg/L NAA. A study reported by Behera et al. (2010) highlighted the adventitious shoot regeneration protocol when inoculated leaf explant on MS medium contained TDZ, BA, and NAA. They achieved 158.4 shoots, when they cultured leaf explants on medium enriched with 0.5 mg/L TDZ. They converted shoots into plantlets by applying 0.1 mg/L NAA followed by 80% survival rate.

Roundleaf Toothcup** (Rotala rotundifolia **(Roxb.) Koehne; Lythraceae)

There are only two studies about in vitro whole plant regeneration using nodal segments or shoot tip explants. Micheli et al. (2006) obtained direct plantlet regeneration from uninodal explants and cultured on LS medium enriched with 1.0 or 4.0 mg/L BA and achieved 67.5% shoots regeneration MS medium supplemented with 4.0 mg/L BA. However, shoot length (26.4 mm) and weight of shoot clump (11.22 g) were more on medium supplemented with 1.0 mg/L BA. Recently, Karataş et al. (2014c) reported two steps of adventitious shoot regeneration protocol of *Rotala rotundifolia*. At first, they cultured shoot tip explants on different concentrations of BA (0.25–2.00 mg/L BA). They recorded maximum (53.33%) shoot regeneration frequency and 17.06 shoots per explant on medium enriched with 1.0 mg/L BA. Thereafter, they transferred the explants to medium supplemented with 0.20 mg/L GA3 which resulted in 100% shoot regeneration. However, maximum number of shoots (24.0) were achieved on medium containing 0.25 mg/L BA − 0.20 mg/L GA3. No separate phytohormonal treatments were made for rooting. All plantlets survived in aquariums for acclimatization and survived at pH level 6–9 during acclimatization.

Sessile Joyweed (Alternanthera sessilis; Amaranthaceae)

The studies on *A. sessilis* report adventitious shoot regeneration using leaf (Singh et al. 2009) or internode explants (Das and Borua 2014). Callus induction on leaf explants was achieved using MS medium fortified with 1 mg/L BA and 1 mg/L 2,4-D for 2 weeks followed by subculture to ½ × MS medium containing 1 mg/L IAA and 1 mg/L BA that resulted in achieving 10 shoots per explant. They successfully rooted the shoots on ½ × MS medium containing 1 mg/L IBA (Singh et al. 2009). In another study, Das and Borua (2014) used internode explants for callus induction using MS medium provided with 0.5 mg/L or 1.0 mg/L 2,4-D by regenerating 124 shoots by subculturing each of them on MS medium containing 1.0 mg/L BA and adenine sulfate. They rooted the in vitro regenerated shoots with 100% acclimation under field conditions.

Besides adventitious shoot regeneration, axillary shoot regeneration has also been reported by using shoot tips, nodal segments (Gnanaraj et al. 2011), and nodes (Shekhawat et al. 2017). Gnanaraj et al. (2011) gained 94.3% shoot proliferation with maximum of 23.4 shoots per explant on MS medium containing 2.0 mg/L BA. Whereas, nodal segment explants generated maximum of 90.4% shoot proliferation frequency and 15.2 shoots per explant when cultured on MS medium provided with 1.5 mg/L BA. 97.4% rooting frequency with 6.3 rootlet per shoot was recorded on ½ × MS medium enriched with 3 mg/L IBA. Recently, Shekhawat et al. (2017) successfully developed multiple shoot regeneration system and rooting. They obtained an average of 8.0 shoots per node with an average shoot length of 4.7 cm on nodal segments on medium enriched with 2.0 mg/L BA. They increased the shoot regeneration by subculture of fresh shoots on medium containing 1.0 mg/L each of BA and kinetin, and 0.1 mg/L indole-3-acetic acid (IAA) and additives showed 23.8 shoots per explant. About 85% shoots were rooted on ½ × MS medium containing 1.5 mg/L IBA with an average of 18 roots per shoot. Thereafter, they successfully adapted plants in greenhouse conditions.

Sola Pith Plant (Aeschynomene aspera Linn.; Fabaceae)

Gnanaraj et al. (2011) cultured nodal explants and obtained 93.60% regeneration and 10.6 shoots per explant on medium containing 3.0 or 5.0 mg/L BA. Whereas, longer shoots (5.50 cm) were noted when cultured on medium having 3.0 mg/L KIN. The micro-shoots were rooted on ½ × MS medium supplemented with 1.0 mg/L of IBA followed by acclimatization in greenhouse and open-field conditions. Whereas, Sen et al. (2013) used node explants from field-grown plants that were cultured on full or ½ × MS medium supplemented with different cytokinins singly or with auxins and observed in range of 1–4.33 shoots per explant with 100% rooting and 86.67% survival rate after adaptation.

*Spreading Sneeze weed (Centipeda minima **A. Braun and Ascheron; Asteraceae**)*

Chang et al. (2011) used stem explants for adventitious shoots, rooting, and acclimatization of *C. minima*. They reported MS medium fortified with 0.4 mg/L BA + 0.1 mg/L NAA or 0.4 mg/L BA + 0.1 mg/L NAA + 0.5 mg/L GA3 for optimum adventitious shoot regeneration. They rooted the plants by pulse treated shoots with 40 mg/L NAA for 6 min followed by culture on N6 medium containing 0.2 mg/L NAA. Thereafter, they acclimatized the plants under ambient conditions of temperature and humidity.

*Sweet Flag (Acorus calamus**; Araceae**)*

Studies about in vitro regeneration of *Acorus calamus* revealed the use of explants like apical shoot meristem, rhizome segments, or rhizome buds which resulted in axillary shoot regeneration using either agar solidified or liquid medium. Hettiarchchi et al. (1997) cultured apical shoot meristem explants on MS medium containing different cytokinins and auxins and obtained maximum number of 26 shoots from liquid medium provided with 1.0 or 2.0 mg/L BA. Anu et al. (2001) cultured rhizome buds under 12 h photoperiod on MS medium containing BA (8.87 μM) and NAA (5.37 μM) and gained 8–10 shoots per explant. They rooted plants devoid of growth regulators. Whereas, Verma and Singh (2012) used sterilized rhizome segments cultured on MS medium enriched with different cytokinins and auxins. They obtained maximum number of shoots (4.4) from medium containing 2.0 mg/L BA + 0.5 mg/L NAA. Fifty percent rooting frequency was achieved with 1.0 mg/L IBA. Contrarily to these studies, Dixit et al. (2014) successfully developed adventitious shoot regeneration system by using basal leaf explants. They placed the explants on MS medium supplemented with 2.5 mg/L for 10 days followed by culture on MS medium supplemented with 1.0 mg/L BA + 1.0 mg/L NA and recorded 91.6% shoot regeneration frequency with 4.3 shoots per explant. They elongated the shoots by using 0.25 mg/L BA, 0.25 mg/L GA, and 0.1 mg/L IAA.

*Water Hyssop or Brahmi (Bacopa monnieri **(L.) Pennell**)*

Water hyssop is one of the most popular aquatic or semiaquatic plants used for medicinal purposes in India where it is known as Brahmi. Brahmi-based drugs are available in India for curing disorders and diseases, and plant becomes rarely endangered due to its huge demand. Therefore, the large number of studies about in vitro micropropagation of water hyssop has been reported especially during the last decade. In these studies, researchers developed protocols for its conservation and for secondary metabolites production. These studies reveal the direct organogenesis

(Sharma et al. 2016) or indirect organogenesis (Rout et al. 2011) through calli culture. Moreover, number of explants and plant growth regulators has been employed by researchers in order to enhance plant production.

Studies on water hyssop reveals both axillary and adventitious shoot regeneration depending on the explant type. Results on axillary shoot regeneration highlight the use of shoot tip explant (Pandiyan and Selvaraj 2012; Sharma et al. 2016) or nodal segment explants by cutting stem into small pieces carrying nodes (Vijayakumar et al. 2010; Gurnani et al. 2012; Mehta et al. 2012; Pandiyan and Selvaraj 2012; Ghasolia et al. 2013; Begum and Mathur 2014; Subashri and Koipillai 2013; Jain et al. 2014; Mohanta and Sahoo 2014; Behera et al. 2015; Vijay et al. 2016; Wangdi and Sarethy 2016; Dixit and Thakur 2017). In all these studies, high shoot proliferation frequency was achieved using different PGRs. Contrarily, adventitious shoot regeneration potential of water hyssop is also very high, and the number of studies reveals the higher shoot proliferation using internode explant (Rao et al. 2012; Subashri and Koipillai 2013; Naik et al. 2014). Whereas, Karataş et al. (2013b) compared the potential of first, second, and third segment explant and achieved 21.89, 21.22, and 23.11 shoots per explant, respectively, on MS medium containing 0.25 mg/L BA + 0.25 mg/L NAA. Leaf is another potent explant used for in vitro propagation of water hyssop used as a whole (Joshi et al. 2010; Vijayakumar et al. 2010; Rao et al. 2012; Bhusari et al. 2013; Karataş et al. 2013b; Koul et al. 2014; Naik et al. 2014; Karataş and Aasim 2014) or by cutting leaves into small pieces (Karataş et al. 2016b). All these reports highlight the high shoot proliferation by direct or indirect organogenesis.

Results on water hyssop also reveal the high rooting frequency by using different auxins like IAA, NAA, or IBA. After rooting, these plants were planted in soil with ambient water or directly in the aquariums where high percentage of plants survived (Karataş et al. 2013b, 2016b; Karataş and Aasim 2014). A study conducted by Karataş et al. (2013b) for acclimatization in water with pH range of 4–10 revealed pH 7 or 8 for better growth in aquariums.

Water Lettuce (Pistia stratiotes L.; Araceae)

Water lettuce is a multipurpose plant used for phytoremediation to medicinal and pharmacological studies. However, the limited number of reports is available on in vitro regeneration of water lettuce. Zhang et al. (2008) developed calli from condensed stem using 2.26 μmol/L 2,4-D + 0.88 μmol/L BA. Thereafter, they shifted the calli to medium containing 4.44 μmol/L BA + 0.54 μmol/L NAA which gave shoots within 2 weeks. Regenerated shoots were rooted on medium containing 0.54 μmol/L NAA that was followed by adaptation. Aasim et al. (2013) optimized the sterilization followed by establishing a regeneration protocol. They used surface sterilized explants using 60% H_2O_2 and cultured them on MS medium and MS medium containing various concentrations of BAP-kinetin to regenerate shoots. No shoot regeneration was noted on liquid and solidified MS medium. However, multiplication using sucrose-free liquid MS medium containing 0.05–0.40 mg/L kinetin

or BAP resulted in 2–4 plantlets per explant. In another study, Aasim et al. (2017) successfully developed whole plant regeneration of water lettuce using shoot meristem explants cultured under red:blue (3:1) light emitting diodes (LEDs) at 16 h light photoperiod using TDZ as PGR. Maximum of 39.67 plantlets were induced on explants cultured on agar solidified MS medium enriched with 0.10 mg/L TDZ. All of the regenerated plants survived in aquariums.

Water Pepper *(Persicaria hydropiper* ***(L.) Delarbre; Polygonaceae)***

Studies about *Polygonum hydropiper* revealed only two reports about in vitro regeneration. Marc et al. (1994) initiated callus and cell suspensions culture as well as root and shoot cultures from mature *P. hydropiper* plants. Their results showed detection of polygodial only in shoot cultures. Hasan and Sikdar (2010) reported efficient plant regeneration protocol by using shoot tip explant of *Polygonum hydropiper* (L.) by achieving 96.6% shoot induction frequency with maximum of 9.0 shoots when cultured on MS medium containing 2.0 mg/L KIN. They also achieved 90% rooting with maximum number of 12.0 roots per shoot on MS medium containing 1.0 mg/L IBA. Thereafter, they successfully acclimatized these plants with 100% survival rate.

Water Spinach *(Ipomea aquatica* ***Forssk.; Convolvulaceae)***

Water spinach is an important aquatic plant used both as vegetable and medicinal purposes. There is no report on micropropagation or adventitious shoot regeneration of the plant except some reports on callus culture. Masanori et al. (1997) have reported *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*-mediated introduction of foreign genes by using node explant. Prasad et al. (2006) have reported higher antioxidant activity of in vitro induced calli compared to mother plants. Kirdmanee et al. (2006) have used this plant in phytoremediation and have highlighted the screening of in vitro grown seedlings of water spinach against inorganic salts and temperature. Their results revealed the high salts and temperature tolerance in 10 cultivars.

White Ginger Lilly *(Hedychium coronarium* ***J. Koenig; Zingiberaceae)***

Butterfly ginger is one of the most important medicinal aquatic plants subjected to in vitro propagation with rhizome or rhizome buds used as explant for direct axillary shoot regeneration. Bisht et al. (2012) used shoot tip explant for shoot

regeneration and reported BA with 5.76 shoots per explant compared to KIN with 3.60 shoots per explant. In another experiment, they used BA with NAA, IAA, and IBA and obtained maximum number of 7.90 shoots from medium supported with 1.0 mg/L BA and 0.5 mg/L − 1 NAA. The shoots were rooted on 0.5 mg/L NAA and the plantlets were acclimatized. Mohanty et al. (2013) cultured rhizome explants on MS medium containing BA-NAA. They achieved whole plant regeneration with 3.6 shoots per explant and an average of 4.0 roots per plant on medium containing 2.0 mg/L BA and 0.5 mg/L NAA with 100% acclimatization. Parida et al. (2013) cultured axillary bud explants and recorded maximum of 13.2 shoots per explant when cultured on MS medium fortified with 3 mg/L BA − 3 mg/L KIN − 0.2 mg/L TDZ. They also reported continuous proliferation of shoots when subcultured after every 4 weeks. They rooted the shoot clusters on medium with 3 mg/L KIN + 0.5 mg/L IAA with 6.3 roots per cluster. Verma and Bansal (2013) used different additives like activated charcoal (AC), casein hydrolysate (CH), coconut milk (CM), silver nitrate ($AgNO_3$), and phloroglucinol (PG) with 1 mg/L BA using rhizome explant. They obtained maximum number of 6.56 shoots and 10.86 cm long shoots on medium enriched with 1 mg/L BA + 1 mg/L PG. They rooted the plants on ½ × MS liquid medium containing NAA with 80% acclimatization. Verma and Bansal (2014a) used rhizome bud explants cultured on different concentrations of BA, KIN, and TDZ. They recorded maximum number of 14.21 shoots per explant on medium enriched with 1.0 mg/L TDZ and 12.89 cm shoot length on medium provided with 1.0 mg/L BA. The plants were rooted on liquid ½ × MS medium containing 1.0 mg/L NAA with acclimatization.

Besides of direct axillary shoot regeneration, Verma and Bansal (2014b) also reported multiple shoot regeneration on rhizome explants through indirect somatic embryogenesis. They induced calli on different concentrations of 2,4-D, IAA, and NAA for 4 weeks followed by culture on different concentrations of BA or KIN used singly for somatic embryogenesis and shoot proliferation. They achieved best calli on 0.5 mg/L 2,4-D and achieved maximum shoots.

White Snowflake *(Nymphoides indica* ***(L.) Kuntze; Menyanthaceae)***

A single report is available for in vitro whole plantlet regeneration of *Nymphoides indica* L. Thwaites O. Kuntze from petiole explants by Jenks et al. (2000). They used different combinations of cytokinins (0–25 μM 2-iP, BA, or KIN) and auxins (0–25 μM NAA or IAA). The best combination for shoot proliferation (80%) and shoots per explants (11.5) was 0.8% TC agar solidified MS medium containing 10 μM BA + 20 μM IAA with addition of 0.56 mM myoinositol, 1.2 μM thiamine-HCl, and 116.8 mM sucrose. They also confirmed direct or indirect adventitious shoot induction by histological analysis.

Conclusion

This study explains micropropagation protocols employed in propagation, callus induction, and transformation of some important freshwater aquatic medicinal plants belonging to families Acanthaceae, Araceae, Asteraceae, Apiaceae, Boraginaceae, Convolvulaceae, Cyperaceae, Fabaceae, Hydrophyllaceae, Lythraceae, Marsileaceae, Menyanthaceae, Poaceae, Polygonaceae, and Zingiberaceae. Although there are rare and fragmented reports on these plants, the trend is encouraging and will help in setting a systematic propagation trend of these plants cheaply for larger worldwide availability.

Acknowledgment Authors are thankful to Ms. Ecenur Korkmaz and Ms. Areeza Emman for their kind efforts and help to improve the quality of work.

References

Aasim M, Karataş M, Khawar KM, Dogan M (2013) Optimization of sterilization and micropropagation of water lettuce (*Pistia stratiotes* L.). J Appl Biol Sci 7:71–74

Aasim M, Doğan M, Karataş M, Khawar KM (2017) In vitro whole plant regeneration of water lettuce (Pistia stratiotes L.) using Thidiazuron. J Glob Innov Agric Soc Sci 5:1–4

Anu A, Nirmal Babu K, John CZ, Peter KV (2001) In vitro clonal multiplication of *Acorus calamus* L. J Plant Biochem Biotechnol 10:53–55

Bagadeka AN, Jayaraj M (2011) In vitro rhizogenesis from leaf and stem callus of *Heliotropium indicum*, L.-medicinal herb. IJPAES 1:1–5

Barathi KK, Agastian P (2015) In vitro regeneration of a rare antidiabetic plant *Epaltes divaricata* L. South Indian J Biol Sci 1:52–59

Baskaran P, Jayabalan N (2005) An efficient micropropagation system for *Eclipta alba*, a valuable medicinal herb. In Vitro Cell Dev Biol Plant 41:532–539

Begum T, Mathur M (2014) In vitro regeneration of catharanthus roseus and *Bacopa monnieri* and their survey around Jaipur District. Int J Pure Appl Biosci 2:210–221

Behera M, Mishra RR, Panigrahi J, Rath SP (2010) Micro-propagation of *Astercantha longifolia* (L.) Nees—an ethno-medicinal herb. Int J Genet Eng Biotechnol 1:141–148

Behera S, Nayak N, Hota S, Barik DP, Naik SK (2015) An efficient micropropagation protocol of *Bacopa monnieri* (L.) Pennell through two-stage culture of nodal segments and ex vitro acclimatization. J Appl Biol Biotechnol 3:16–21

Bhusari S, Wanjari R, Khobragade P (2013) Cost effective in vitro clonal propagation of *Bacopa monnieri* L. Pennel. Int J Indig Med Plant 46:1239–1244

Bibi Y, Zia M, Nisa S, Habib D, Waheed A, Chaudhary FM (2011) Regeneration of *Centella asiatica* plants from non-embryogenic cell lines and evaluation of antibacterial and antifungal properties of regenerated calli and plants. J Biol Eng 5:13

Bisht S, Bisht NS, Bhandari S (2012) In vitro plant regeneration from seedling explants of *Hedychium coronarium* J. Koenig. J Med Plant Res 6:5546–5551

Chang X, Peng J, Di K, Na X, Yang JC (2011) Study on tissue cultivation and clone establishment of *Centipeda minima*. Special Wild Economic Animal and Plant Research. http://en.cnki.com.cn/Article_en/CJFDTOTAL-TCYA201104007.htm

Çinar A, Karataş M, Aasim M (2013) High frequency plant regeneration of dwarf hygro (*Hygrophila polysperma* [Roxb.] T. Anderson) on liquid culture. J Appl Biol Sci 7:75–78

Dar RA, Koshy EP, Thomas G (2016) In vitro floral morphogenesis in *Eclipta prostrata* (L.). Asian J Biol Sci 2:49–51

Das D, Borua PK (2014) In vitro propagation of *Alternanthera sessilis* L. from internode explant. Br Biotechnol J 4:74–80

Das R, Hasan MF, Hossain MS, Rahman M (2008) Micropropagation of *Centella asiatica* L. an important medicinal herb. Prog Agric 19:51–56

Dhaka N, Kothari SL (2005) Micropropagation of *Eclipta alba*, (L.) Hassk—an important medicinal plant. In Vitro Cell Dev Biol 41:658–661

Dixit H, Thakur A (2017) In vitro propagation of a medicinal important plant *Bacopa monnieri* from nodal explants. IJRPB 5:1–4

Dixit V, Purshottam DK, Agnihotri P, Husain T, Misra P (2014) A highly efficient shoot organogenesis system of *Acorus calamus* L.—a threatened medicinal plant of Indian Himalaya. The Experiment 21:1453–1461

Dogan M, Karataş M, Aasim M (2015) An efficient in vitro plantlet regeneration of *Ceratophyllum demersum* L., an important medicinal aquatic plant. Fresen Environ Bull 24(10):3499–3504

Emsen B, Doğan M, Aasim M, Yildirim E (2016) Insecticidal activity of in vitro propagated aquatic plant Ceratophyllum demersum against granary weevil Sitophilus granarius L. (Coleoptera: Curcolionidae). Egypt J Biol Pest Control 26(3):619–624

Gao M, Jiang W, Wei S, Lin Z, Cai B, Yang L, Luo C, He X, Tan J, Chen L (2015) High-efficiency propagation of Chinese water chestnut [*Eleocharis dulcis* (Burm.f.) Trin. ex Hensch] using a temporary immersion bioreactor system. Plant Cell Tissue Organ Cult 121:761–772

Gawde AJ, Paratkar GT (2004) Micropropagation of *Eclipta alba* Hassk: an approach to shorten the protocol. Indian J Biotechnol 3:128–132

Ghasolia B, Shandilya D, Maheshwari R (2013) Multiple shoot regeneration of *Bacopa monnieri* (L.) using cyanobacterial media—a novel approach and effect of phytoregulators on in vitro micropropagation. Pelagia Res Lab 1:27–33

Gnanaraj WE, Antonisamy JMA, Subramanian KM, Nallyan S (2011) Micropropagation of *Alternanthera sessilis* (L.) using shoot tip and nodal segments. Iran J Biotechnol 9:206–212

Gonsalves J (2010) Economic botany and ethnobotany. Mittal Publications, New Delhi

Gurnani C, Kumar V, Mukhija S, Dhingra A, Rajpurohit S, Narula P (2012) In vitro regeneration of brahmi (*Bacopa monnieri* (L.) Penn.)—a threatened medicinal plant. Kathmandu Univ J Sci Eng Technol 8:97–99

Harathi K, Naidu CV (2016) Influence of ethylene inhibitor silver nitrate on direct shoot regeneration from in vitro raised shoot tip explants of *Sphaeranthus indicus* Linn.—an important antijaundice medicinal plant. Am J Plant Sci 7:64894

Harathi K, Geetha G, Naidu CV (2016) Effect of silver nitrate and different carbon sources on in vitro shoot multiplication of *Sphaeranthus indicus* (Linn.)—an important antijaundice medicinal plant. Int J Pharm Biol Sci 6:185–192

Hasan MF, Sikdar B (2010) In vitro propagation of Polygonum hydropiper L. from shoot tips. Plant Tissue Cult Biotechnol 20:73–79

Hassan AKMS, Begum N, Jahan MAA, Khatun R (2010) In vitro mass propagation of *Heliotropium indicum* L., using apical and axillary bud explants. Bangladesh J Sci Ind Res 45:69–74

Hettiarchchi A, Fernando KKS, Jayasuriya AHM (1997) In vitro propagation of Wadakha (*Acorus calamus*). J Natl Sci Council Sri Lanka 25:151–157

Hoque A, Arima S (2004) Various color illumination effect on in vitro multiple shoot induction in water chestnut (*Trapa japonica*). Plant Tissue Cult 14:161–166

Hoque A, Rahman SM, Arima S, Takagi Y (2001) Efficient in vitro germination and shoot proliferation of chilling treated water chestnut (*Trapa japonica* Flerov.) embryonal explants. In Vitro Cell Dev Biol 37:369–374

Hoque A, Nahar A, Razvy MA, Biswas MK, Kabir AH (2006) Micropropagation of water chestnut (*Trapa* sp.) through local varieties of Rajshahi Division. Asian J Plant Sci 5:409–413

Husain MK, Anis M (2006) Rapid in vitro propagation of *Eclipta alba* (L.) Hassk, through high frequency axillary shoot proliferation. Acta Physiol Plant 28:325–330

Jahirhussain G, Palanivel S, Tamilselvan V, Muniappan V, Deepa K, Veerappan R (2016) In vitro rapid multiplication of *Coldenia procumbens* L. from shoot tip explants. J Adv Appl Scient Res 1:18–28

Jain A, Pandey K, Benjamin D, Kumar MA, Singh RK (2014) In vitro approach of medicinal herb: Bacopa monnieri. Int J Innov Res Sci Eng Technol 3:12088–12093

Jenks MA, Kane ME, McConnell DB (2000) Shoot organogenesis from petiole explants in the aquatic plant *Nymphoides indica*. Plant Cell Tissue Organ Cult 63:1–8

Joshi AG, Ashutosh R, Pathak SAM, Singh S (2010) High frequency of shoot regeneration on leaf explants of *Bacopa monnieri*. Environ Exp Biol 8:81–84

Joshi K, Chaturvedi P, Shubhpriya (2013) Efficient in vitro regeneration protocol of *Centella asiatica* (L.) urban: an endemic and underutilized nutraceutical herb. Afr J Biotechnol 12:5164–5172

Jun X et al (2011) Study on tissue culture and rapid propagation of *Eleocharis dulcis*. http://en.cnki.com.cn/Article_en/CJFDTOTAL-GNZL201106009.htm

Kane ME, Mcconnel DB, Sheehan TJ, Dehgan B (1988) A laboratory exercise to demonstrate adventitious shoot formation using stem internodes of parrot-feather. Hort Sci 23:408

Kane ME, Gilman EF, Jenks MA, Sheehan TJ (1990) Micropropagation of the aquatic plant Cryptocoryne lucens. Hort Sci 25:687–689

Karataş M, Aasim M (2014) Efficient adventitious shoot regeneration of medicinal aquatic plant water hyssop (*Bacopa monnieri* L. Pennell). Pak J Agric Sci 51:665–670

Karataş M, Aasim M (2015a) In vitro plantlet regeneration from nodal segments of creeping jenny (*Lysimachia nummularia* L.)—a medicinal aquatic plant. Fresen Environ Bull 24:1263–1268

Karataş M, Aasim M (2015b) In vitro whole plant regeneration of medicinal aquatic plant-*Limnophila aromatica*. Fresen Environ Bull 24:2747–2750

Karataş M, Aasim M, Çinar A, Dogan M (2013a) Adventitious shoot regeneration from leaf explant of dwarf hygro (*Hygrophila polysperma* (Roxb.) T. Anderson). Scient World J 2013:680425. https://doi.org/10.1155/2013/680425

Karataş M, Aasim M, Dogan M, Khawar KM (2013b) Adventitious shoot regeneration of the medicinal aquatic plant water hyssop (*Bacopa monnieri* L. Pennell) using different internodes. Arch Biol Sci 65:297–303

Karataş M, Aasim M, Dogan M (2014a) Multiple shoot regeneration of *Ceratophyllum demersum* L. on agar solidified and liquid mediums. Fresen Environ Bull 24:3–9

Karataş M, Aasim M, Çinar A (2014b) Adventitious shoot regeneration of dwarf hygro (*Hygrophila Polysperma*) under in vitro conditions. Fresen Environ Bull 23:2190–2194

Karataş M, Aasim M, Çiftçioğlu M (2014c) Adventitious shoot regeneration of Roundleaf toothcup-*Rotala rotundifolia* [(Buch-Ham. ex Roxb) Koehne]. The JAPS 24:838–842

Karataş M, Dogan M, Emsen B, Aasim M (2015) Determination of in vitro free radical scavenging activities of various extracts from in vitro propagated *Ceratophyllum demersum* L. Fresen Environ Bull 24:2946–2952

Karataş M, Aasim M, Dogan M (2016a) Efficacy of in vitro propagated coontail (*Ceratophyllum demersum* L.) on quality of different water samples. Fresen Environ Bull 25:5113–5511

Karataş M, Aasim M, Dazkirli M (2016b) Influence of light emitting diodes and benzylaminopurine on adventitious shoot regeneration of water hyssop (*Bacopa monnieri* L. Pennel.) in vitro. Arch Biol Sci 68:501–508

Kasselmann C (1999) Piante d'acquario. Primaris, Rozzano

Katiyar SK, Chandel G (1998) High frequency somatic embryogenesis from immature inflorescence of *Coix aquatica* Roxb. Plant Tissue Cult 8:131–137

Kirdmanee C, Phaephun W, Teerakathiti T, Suriyan Cha-Um S, Takagi M (2006) An effective in-vitro selection of water spinach (*Ipomoea aquatica* Forsk.) for NaCI-, KH_2PO_4- and temperature-stresses. Environ Control Biol 44:265–277

Koul A, Sharma A, Gupta S, Mallubhotla S (2014) Cost effective protocol for micropropagation of *Bacopa monnieri* using leaf explants. IJSR 3:210–212

Kumar MS, Nandi SC (2015) High frequency plant regeneration with histological analysis of organogenic callus from internode explants of *Asteracantha longifolia* Nees. J Genet Eng Biotechnol 13:31–37

Kumar MS, Rao MV (2007) In vitro micropropagation of *Heliotropium indicum* Linn.—an Ayurvedic herb. Indian J Plant Biotechnol 6:245–249

Marc JM, Hagendoorn MJM, Geelen TAM, Beek TAV, Jamar DCL, Tetteroo FAA, van der Pla LHW (1994) Occurrence of polygodial in plant organs and tissue culture of *Polygonum hydropiper*. Physiol Plant 92:595–600

Masanori F, Atsuhiko N, Kazuya Y (1997) Methods for introducing foreign genes into tropical aquatica plant *Ipomoea aquatica* and regenerating the plant. Patent CA section 3

Mehta J, Kumar V, Syedy M, Upadhyay D, Ansari R, Bisht V, Naaz H, Soni P (2012) In vitro shoot regeneration of *Bacopa monnieri* (L.) using cyanobacterial media—a novel approach and effect of phytoregulators on in vitro micropropagation. Asian J Plant Sci Res 2:699–706

Micheli M, De Gasperis A, Prosperi F, Standardi A (2006) Micropropagation of three species of aquatic plants. Agric Med 1–6. https://www.researchgate.net/publication/236655811_Micropropagation_of_three_species_of_aquatic_plants

Mishra RR, Behera M, Kumar DR, Panigrahi J (2006) High frequency regeneration of plantlets form seedling explants of *Astercantha longifolia* (L.) Nees. J Plant Biotechnol 8:27–35

Mochida K, Tsujimoto H (2001) Production of wheat doubled haploids by pollination with Job's tears (*Coix lacryma*-Jobi L.). J Hered 92:81–83

Mohanta YK, Sahoo S (2014) In vitro culture of highly valuable medicinal plant *Bacopa monnieri* (L.) Penn. for rapid and mass multiplication. Int J Pharm Sci Invent 3:41–45

Mohanty P, Behera S, Swain SS, Barik DP, Naik SK (2013) Micropropagation of *Hedychium coronarium* J. Koenig through rhizome bud. Physiol Mol Biol Plants 19:605–610

Mohapatra H, Barik DP, Rath SP (2008) In vitro regeneration of medicinal plant *Centella asiatica*. Biol Plant 52:339

Naik PM, Patil BR, Kotagi KS, Kazi AM, Lokesh H, Kamplikoppa SG (2014) Rapid one step protocol for in vitro regeneration of *Bacopa monnieri* (L.). J Cell Tissue Res 14:4293–4296

Pal PP, Arefin MB, Banerjee N (2014) In vitro regeneration of *Hygrophila schulli* (Buch. Ham) M. R. & S.M. Almeida through callus mediated somatic embryogenesis. Int J Curr Res 6:5997–6002

Pandiyan P, Selvaraj T (2012) In vitro multiplication of *Bacopa monnieri* (L.) Pennell from shoot tip and nodal explants. J Agric Technol 8:1099–1108

Panigrahi J, Mishra RR, Behera M (2006) In vitro multiplication of *Astercantha longifolia* (L.) Nees—a medicinal herb. Indian J Biotechnol 5:562–564

Panthalu CS, Mahadev MD, Naidu CV (2014) High efficiency adventitious indirect organogenesis and plant regeneration from callus of *Centella asiatica* (L.)—an important Antijaundice medicinal plant. IJAR 2:1027–1036

Parida R, Mohanty S, Nayak S (2013) In vitro propagation of *Hedychium coronarium* Koen. through axillary bud proliferation. Plant Biosyst 147:905–912

Pierik RLM, Ruibing MA (1997) Developments in the micropropagation industry in the Netherlands. Plant Tissue Cult Biotechnol 3:152–153

Prasad NK, Prasad MS, Aradhya SM, Shivamurthy GR (2006) Callus induction from *Ipomoea aquatica* Forsk. Leaf and its antioxidant activity. Indian J Biotechnol 5:107–111

Priyadarshini M, Kumari R, Anjali K, Arunimal, Prasad S, Shukla LN (2014a) Tissue culture studies of *Heliotropium indicum* an important medicinal herb for callus induction and micro propagation. In: Third world conference on applied sciences, engineering & technology 27–29 September 2014, Kathmandu, Nepal

Priyadarshini M, Kumari R, Shukla LN (2014b) Development of protocol for efficient callusing in *Heliotropium indicum* L. an important medicinal herb. GJABHS 2:37–42

Ravi S, Muthukumar B, Natarajan E, Ramesh Kannan N, Vijayalatha KR (2012) Plant regeneration and in vitro flowering from nodal explants of *Hydrolea zeylanica*—a rare medicinal plant. Plant Cell Biol Mol Biol 13:147–150

Ravipaul SCB, Jawahar M, Asleelan MJ (2008) Micropropagation of *Sphaeranthus amaranthoides* Burm. F.—a multipurpose medicinal herb. Int J Biol Chem Sci 2:579–586
Rout JR, Sahoo SL, Ray SS, Sethi BK, Das R (2011) Standardization of an efficient protocol for in vitro clonal propagation of *Bacopa monnieri* L.—an important medicinal plant. J Agric Technol 7:289–299
Roy A, Kundu K, Saxena G, Kumar L, Bharadvaja N (2016) Effect of different media and growth hormones on shoot multiplication of *in vitro* grown *Centella asiatica* accessions. Adv Tech Biol Med 4:172
Sen MK, Hassan MM, Nasrin S, Jamal MAHM, Mamun-Or-Rashid AMN, Biswas N (2013) An efficient plant regeneration protocol for *Achyranthes aspera* L. IRJOB 4:94–100
Shahidullah AKM (2007) The role of medicinal plants in livelihood improvement and ecological sustainability in Bangladesh, Thesis, Manitoba University
Sharan AK, Dubey SR, Kumar R, Chandra V, Singh BP, Kumar G, Kumari S (2014) A novel protocol for propagation of *Eclipta alba* (L.) Hassak. Int Pure Appl Biosci 2:137–141
Sharma A, Bhansali S, Kumar A (2013) In vitro callus induction and shoot regeneration in *Eclipta alba* (L.) HASSK. Int J Life Sci Pharma Res 3:43–46
Sharma N, Singh R, Pandey R (2016) In vitro propagation and conservation of *Bacopa monnieri* L. Methods Mol Biol 1391:153–171
Shekhawat MS, Manokari M (2015) Direct organogenesis from rhizome explants in *Marsilea quadrifolia* L.: a threatened fern species. Adv Biol 2015:639678
Shekhawat MS, Manokari M, Revathi J (2017) In vitro propagation, micromorphological studies and ex vitro rooting of *Alternanthera philoxeroides* (Mart.) Griseb.: an important aquatic plant. Aquacult Int 25:423
Singh A, Kandasamy T, Odhav B (2009) In vitro propagation of *Alternanthera sessilis* (sessile joyweed), a famine food plant. Afr J Biotechnol 8:5691–5695
Singh SK, Rai MK, Sahoo L (2012) An improved and efficient micropropagation of *Eclipta alba* through transverse thin cell layer culture and assessment of clonal fidelity using RAPD analysis. Ind Crop Prod 37:328–333
Sivakumar G, Alagumanian S, Rao MV (2006) High frequency in vitro multiplication of *Centella asiatica*: an important industrial medicinal herb. Eng Life Sci 6:597–601
Staritski G (1977) Die vitrokultur von Cryptocoryne. Aqua Planta 1:3–6
Stodola J (1980) Le piante d'acquario. Olimpia Ed, Firenze
Subashri B, Koilpillai YJ (2013) High frequency regeneration of *Bacopa monnieri* plant callus derived from internode. Int J Pharm Bio Sci 4(1):263–266
Tiwari C, Bakshi M, Vichitra A (2013) A rapid two step protocol of in vitro propagation of an important medicinal herb *Centella asiatica* Linn. Afr J Biotechnol 12:1084–1090
Verma M, Bansal YK (2013) Effect of additives on plant regeneration in *Hedychium coronarium* J. Koenig an endangered aromatic and medicinal herb. Int J Pharm Sci Rev Res 23:105–110
Verma M, Bansal YK (2014a) Effect of a potent cytokinin Thidiazuron (TDZ) on in vitro regeneration of *Hedychium coronarium* J. Koenig—a valuable medicinal plant. Int J Rec Biotechnol 2:38–44
Verma M, Bansal YK (2014b) Induction of somatic embryogenesis in endangered butterfly ginger *Hedychium coronarium* J. Koenig. Indian J Exp Biol 50:904–909
Verma S, Singh N (2012) In vitro mass multiplication of *Acorus calamus* L.—an endangered medicinal plant. Am Eurasian J Agric Environ Sci 12:1514–1521
Vijay R, Shukla J, Rajesh Saxena R (2016) Propagation of *Bacopa monnieri* (BRAHMI): important medicinal plant. CIB Tech J Biotechnol 5:17–23
Vijayakumar M, Vijayakumar R, Stephen R (2010) In vitro propagation of *Bacopa monnieri* L.—a multipurpose plant. Indian J Sci Technol 3:781–786
Wangdi K, Sarethy IP (2016) Evaluation of micropropagation system of *Bacopa monnieri* L. in liquid culture and its effect on antioxidant properties. J Herb Spice Med Plant 22:69–80

Yarra R, Aileni M, Vemunoori AK, Kokkirala VR, Umate P, Abbagani S (2010) Direct shoot regeneration from mature leaf explants of *Sphaeranthus indicus* L., a multipurpose medicinal plant. J Phytol 2:05–11

Yesmin S, Hashem A, Islam MS (2015) Micropropagation of an important medicinal herb *Eclipta alba* (L.) Hassk. Jahangirnagar Univ J Biol Sci 4:61–69

Zhang Y, Wang Y, Yang B, Chen S (2008) In vitro regeneration and propagation of Pistia stratiotes: an ideal aquatic plant for biomanufacturing and bioremediation. Chin J Appl Environ Biol 14:445–449

Arsenic and Heavy Metal (Cadmium, Lead, Mercury and Nickel) Contamination in Plant-Based Foods

Shahid Hussain, Zed Rengel, Muhammad Qaswar, Mamoona Amir, and Muhammad Zafar-ul-Hye

Introduction

Plant-based foods are important commodities that supply key biological elements for sustainability of human lives on Earth. Food plants grown in accordance with the codes of safe and healthy cropping techniques are considered important sources of dietary fibres, carbohydrates, proteins, lipids, vitamins, minerals and bioactive compounds (Raskin et al. 2002). For example, cereals are the most important food in the world that fulfil more than 50% of total human calorie requirements (FAO 2013). Plant-based foods not only provide nutrition for humans but also have therapeutic uses. There is evidence that diets comprising mainly vegetables and fruits may normalize blood pressure and alleviate other health complications (Boeing et al. 2012). Pulses are important source of proteins and have several other nutritional and health benefits (Mudryj et al. 2014).

Plant-based foods contain a number of the essential trace elements for humans (such as iron Fe, copper Cu, zinc Zn, chromium Cr, selenium Se, manganese Mn and molybdenum Mo). Although arsenic (As) and nickel (Ni) are thought to play some beneficial roles in humans at ultra-trace levels, essentiality of these two elements has not been confirmed regarding a biological function in humans. Toxic elements (such as cadmium Cd, lead Pb and mercury Hg), on the other hand, do not

S. Hussain (✉) · M. Qaswar · M. Zafar-ul-Hye
Department of Soil Science, Faculty of Agricultural Sciences and Technology, Bahauddin Zakariya University, Multan, Pakistan
e-mail: shahid.hussain@bzu.edu.pk

Z. Rengel
UWA School of Agriculture and Environment, The University of Western Australia, Perth, WA, Australia

M. Amir
Institute of Food Science and Nutrition, Faculty of Agricultural Sciences and Technology, Bahauddin Zakariya University, Multan, Pakistan

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_20

have any biological importance in the human body. All these trace elements cause health concerns in humans at concentrations above permissible levels (Liu et al. 2013).

Food plants grown in contaminated environments may accumulate heavy metal(loid)s in edible portions at above-permissible levels, which has become a global challenge in healthy food production. Both point and non-point sources of these elements can contaminate soils, waters and atmosphere. Plant roots and leaves absorb these pollutants from the contaminated environment. Ultimately, heavy metal(loid)s end up in the edible plant parts and are thus introduced into the human food chain.

More than 80% of Cd intake in humans was estimated to come from consumption of cereals and vegetables (Khan et al. 2014). In fact, dietary intake of As, Cd, Pb, Hg and Ni is of major health concern for humans (WHO/FAO 2016; EFSA 2017). Exposure to these elements can cause health-impairing effects such as retarded growth, cancer, impaired immunity, endocrine disruption and even death (IARC 2017). Long biological half-lives of these elements and their potential to be retained in human tissues without degradation (thus accumulating over time) make them particularly damaging.

Worldwide, food safety issues have gained researchers' attention in terms of health risks associated with consumption of contaminated foodstuffs. In fact, ingestion of heavy metal(loid)s through polluted foods and food products is the major route of entry of these elements into the human body (the other two routes are inhalation and surface contact). There are reports on intake of contaminated plant-based foods generating health issues in India, China and other countries (Tripathi et al. 1997; Zheng et al. 2007; Singh et al. 2010; Harmanescu et al. 2011; Saha and Zaman 2013). Due to this reason, a comprehensive appraisal of the literature is required regarding levels and sources of heavy metals and As contamination of common plant-based foods. Such information will not only help understand the current situation regarding the metal/metalloid hazards, but it will also help in policy decisions regarding formulation and achievement of the future targets.

Accumulation of metals in edible portions of plants depends on their concentration in the environment, bioavailability in soils, absorption by plant roots or foliage and remobilization within plant tissues (Viehweger 2014). In addition, variability exists among plant species (as well as among genotypes) in the uptake of various heavy metals and their accumulation in edible portions. Due to species differences as well as differential internal transport pathways and mechanisms, vegetables would accumulate heavy metals from contaminated soils, but fruits would not (Sattar et al. 1989, e.g. Cd).

This chapter first provides general description of plant-based foods and toxicity of important trace elements. The focus of the chapter is on summarizing and critically evaluating information on the content of heavy metals in plant-based foods of diverse origin. Factors affecting accumulation of heavy metals in plant-based foods and possible strategies to facilitate safe food production are also discussed.

Plant-Based Foods

Plant-based foods are fresh or minimally processed and comprise grains, fruits, vegetables, pulses, nuts and oils. Plants are the key source of energy, carbohydrates, proteins, lipids, vitamins and minerals for animals and humans (USDA 2018). Global consumption of plant-based foods and the nutritional composition of selected food items are listed in Tables 1 and 2, respectively. Globally, plant-based foods provide on average about 1800 kcal capita^{-1} day^{-1}. Apart from providing energy and nutrition, plants are also well known to produce important secondary metabolites that have therapeutic uses for humans (Poiroux-Gonord et al. 2010). These may include a number of vitamins, provitamins and bioactive compounds. Natural antioxidants of plant origin, including phenolic compounds, vitamins and carotenoids, reduce the oxidative stress-linked diseases (Dykes and Rooney 2007; Okarter and Liu 2010). Selected plant-based foods may also help reduce the risk of cardiovascular diseases, different types of cancers and type 2 diabetes (Holmes 2002; WCRF/AICR 2007; MedlinePlus 2014).

A brief description of global consumption and nutritional importance of each category of plant-based foods is given below.

Cereal grains and their products are consumed more than any other plant- or animal-based food (Table 1). On average, cereals provide nearly 1300 kcal capita^{-1} day^{-1} globally. Wheat, maize and rice collectively contribute about 75% of the total

Table 1 Consumption of plant-based foods and their contribution to energy consumption by humans

Food category	Consumption or energy	World	Asia	Africa	South America	North America	Europe	Oceania
Cereals	g capita^{-1} day^{-1}	403	426	414	318	293	362	249
	kcal capita^{-1} day^{-1}	1292	1422	1284	967	812	1007	764
Vegetables	g capita^{-1} day^{-1}	385	484	185	144	311	315	278
	kcal capita^{-1} day^{-1}	95	119	48	39	70	80	75
Fruits	g capita^{-1} day^{-1}	213	197	181	265	295	260	243
	kcal capita^{-1} day^{-1}	97	87	107	128	120	110	109
Nuts	g capita^{-1} day^{-1}	6	6	5	2	13	11	18
	kcal capita^{-1} day^{-1}	16	15	13	5	35	25	43
Pulses	g capita^{-1} day^{-1}	20	18	32	29	14	7	6
	kcal capita^{-1} day^{-1}	68	62	110	98	47	24	19
Oils	g capita^{-1} day^{-1}	31	25	24	42	81	48	55
	kcal capita^{-1} day^{-1}	271	215	208	369	677	226	471

Source: FAO Food Consumption Database (FAO 2013)

Table 2 Nutritional content of selected plant-based foods on fresh-weight bases

Nutrient	Value per kg	Maize	Tomato	Banana	Cashew nuts	Lentil	Soybean oil
Proximates							
Ash	g	6.2	5.0	8.2	25	27	0.0
Carbohydrates	g	187	39	228	302	634	0.0
Dietary fibre	g	20	12	26	30	101	0.0
Energy	kcal	860	180	890	5530	3520	8840
Lipids	g	14	2.0	3.3	438	11	1000
Proteins	g	33	8.8	11	182	246	0.0
Water	g	760	945	749	52	83	0.0
Minerals							
Calcium	mg	20	100	50	370	350	0.0
Copper	mg	0.5	0.6	0.8	22	7.5	0.0
Iron	mg	5.2	2.7	2.6	67	65	0.5
Magnesium	mg	370	110	270	2920	470	0.0
Manganese	mg	1.6	1.1	2.7	17	14	0.0
Phosphorus	mg	890	240	220	5930	2810	0.0
Potassium	mg	2700	2370	3580	6600	6770	0.0
Selenium	µg	6.0	0.0	10	199	1.0	0.0
Sodium	mg	150	50	10	120	60	0.0
Zinc	mg	4.6	1.7	1.5	58	33	0.1
Vitamins							
Folate (vitamin B9)	µg	420	150	200	250	4790	0.0
Lutein + zeaxanthin	µg	6440	1230	220	220	0.0	0.0
Niacin (vitamin B3)	mg	18	5.9	6.7	11	26	0.0
Pantothenic acid (vitamin B5)	mg	7.2	0.9	3.3	8.6	21	0.0
Phylloquinone (vitamin K)	µg	3.0	79	5.0	341	50	1839
Riboflavin (vitamin B2)	mg	0.6	0.2	0.7	0.5	2.1	0.0
Thiamine (vitamin B1)	mg	1.6	0.4	0.3	4.3	8.7	0.0
Total ascorbic acid	mg	68	137	87	5.0	45	0.0
Vitamin A	IU	1870	8330	640	0.0	390	0.0
Vitamin B6	mg	0.9	0.8	3.7	4.2	5.4	0.0
α-Carotene	µg	160	1010	250	0.0	0.0	0.0
α-Tocopherol (vitamin E)	mg	0.7	5.4	1.0	9.2	4.9	82
β-Carotene	µg	470	4490	260	0.0	230	0.0

Source: Food composition and nutrition database of the US Department of Agriculture (USDA 2018)

cereal production in the world. As compared to continents of North America and Europe, people from Asia and Africa are fulfilling their energy requirements mostly from cereals. In general, rural populations consume more cereals than urban populations.

Cereals are substantial sources of carbohydrates and dietary fibre, water-soluble vitamins (e.g. thiamine, riboflavin, niacin and vitamin B6), minerals (e.g. Zn, Fe, calcium Ca, potassium K, sodium Na, phosphorus P and magnesium Mg) and amino acids (e.g. arginine and lysine) (Table 2). Wheat bran contains about 45% of dietary fibre (Fardet 2010) that has an important role in the colonic faecal transit time (Payler et al. 1975). Cereal brans are also important in reducing cholesterol level in humans.

Vegetables are mainly consumed in Asian countries, about 484 g capita^{-1} day^{-1}, followed by countries in Europe and North America (Table 1). Vegetables are an important source of dietary fibre, vitamins, minerals, phenolics and flavonoids (Table 2). Along with high nutritional quality, vegetables also provide several vital substances for humans, such as bioactive molecules in cruciferous vegetables that have anti-inflammatory properties (Manchali et al. 2012). Red onions are rich in flavonoid with average contents (based on gallic acid equivalents in fresh weight) of about 3.1 g kg^{-1} (Lin and Tang 2007). Green leafy vegetables are rich sources of Fe, Ca, β-carotene, ascorbic acid and several other minerals and vitamins (Gupta et al. 2005). Due to the presence of important phytochemicals, leafy vegetables may reduce the risk of coronary heart diseases and the ischemic stroke risk (Joshipura et al. 2003). Intake of vegetables with low-fat dairy products can lower the hypertension as effectively as prescription medicines (Sacks et al. 1999).

Fruits consumption, unlike that of cereals and vegetables, is greater in developed countries than developing or underdeveloped nations (Table 1). On average, fruit consumption in North America and Europe is 260–295 g capita^{-1} day^{-1}. Fruits are good source of dietary fibre, water-soluble vitamins (ascorbic acid, thiamine, riboflavin and niacin), important minerals (e.g. P, K, Mg, Fe), phenolic compounds, flavonoids and anthocyanins (Table 2; Beattie et al. 2005). Fruits are also rich in carbohydrates and polyunsaturated fatty acids and low in total fat (Barros et al. 2010). Phytochemicals in fruits may be helpful in combating several diseases. For example, anthocyanins and hydroxycinnamic acid in blueberries and cranberries were found to protect endothelial cells against H_2O_2 that would otherwise result in oxidative and inflammatory stresses (Youdim et al. 2002).

Nuts consumption is low in Asia, Africa and South America (Table 1). However, people living in North America, Europe and Oceania have appreciable consumption rates of 11–18 g capita^{-1} day^{-1}. Nuts, such as cashews, have a high-energy value of about 5.5 kcal g^{-1} (Table 2). Nuts are high in proteins, carbohydrates, minerals, niacin, pantothenic acid, folates and tocopherols (Blomhoff et al. 2006). Frequent consumption of nuts is related to lowered prevalence of diabetes mellitus and coronary heart diseases (Sabaté and Ang 2009).

Pulses are edible legume seeds (family Fabaceae) mainly consumed in Africa (32 g capita^{-1} day^{-1}) and South America (29 g capita^{-1} day^{-1}) (Table 1). They are important sources of minerals, folate and proteins (Table 2). Because of high protein content, pulses may be substitutes for meat products for vegetarians and are also cheap protein sources for poor people. Pulses are low in fat and glycaemic index. In addition to nutritional aspects, pulses have important therapeutic roles in humans (Iqbal et al. 2006). Insoluble fibre in pulses is beneficial in reducing the risk of colon cancer. Phytonutrients and antioxidants in pulses also have anticancer properties (Campos

et al. 2013). Frequent consumption of pulses (four to five servings per week) reduced the risk of cardiovascular diseases by more than 10% (Flight and Clifton 2006).

Plant oils are derived from plant sources and are mainly used in cooking. There are appreciable contents of oils in different oil seed crops (about 20% in soybean and over 40% in sunflower and canola) (Sarwar 2013; USDA 2018). Compared to other continents, North America has higher consumption of plant oils (81 g capita^{-1} day^{-1}) (Table 1). Oils contain lipids, fat-soluble vitamins (E and K), essential fatty acids and antioxidants (e.g. soybean oil; Table 2). Olive oil is prominent source of monounsaturated fatty acids, polyphenolic compounds, squalene and α-tocopherol (Stark and Madar 2002). Olive oil may impart therapeutic benefits and reduce the risk of several diseases.

The quality of a plant-based food is determined not only by the nutritive value but also by levels and types of contaminants in the food. Plant-based foods might be contaminated by pesticides, heavy metals, metalloids and other toxins. Such pollutants may cause health issues in humans.

Effects of As, Cd, Pb, Hg and Ni on Human Health

Toxic elements for humans that have been reported in foods are Cd, Pb and Hg. These elements do not have any known physiological roles in human metabolism and are lethal to human health at trace levels. However, As and Ni are thought to play some beneficial roles in humans at ultra-trace levels and are toxic only above permissible levels. Detailed reports of health effects of these elements on humans can be found elsewhere (Mertz 1986; Järup 2003; Tchounwou et al. 2012; Sigel et al. 2013; Jaishankar et al. 2014); however, a brief description is given here.

Arsenic is not considered an essential element for human, although ultra-trace levels of As were reported to play some beneficial roles in animals. Growth and reproduction were significantly improved in control goats receiving normal As levels than As-deprived goats (Anke et al. 1980; Schmidt et al. 1984). Studies on rats suggested that As has a physiological role related to methionine metabolism (Uthus 1992; Uthus 2003). However, there is no known biological function of As in humans (Wilcox 2013).

Long-term exposure to above permissible levels of As can cause cardiovascular diseases, diabetes, oxidative stresses and various types of cancers (Ng et al. 2003; Naujokas et al. 2013). Arsenic is involved in cardiovascular diseases because it dilates blood vessels and has negative effects on endothelial tissues (Das et al. 2010; Moon et al. 2012). Arsenic-induced inhibition of cellular enzymes such as pyruvate dehydrogenase, suppression of cellular antioxidants such as glutathione (Samikkannu et al. 2003; Ferrario et al. 2008) and generation of several types of reactive oxygen species (ROS) in cells are linked to oxidative damage to lipids, proteins and DNA (Valko et al. 2007; Roy et al. 2009). Arsenic is genotoxic; it also affects cell proliferation and signalling, transcription and repair of DNA, epigenetic regulation and apoptosis (Waalkes et al. 2004; Bailey and Fry 2014).

Cadmium has obvious carcinogenic effects on humans (ATSDR 2017). Cadmium is mostly bound to metallothioneins in the body, and this complex is transported to various tissues and organs (Ohta and Cherian 1991). Due to a lack of excretory mechanism for Cd, this metal resides in tissues, having half-life of about 20–35 years in kidney cortex. Other organs affected by Cd toxicity are the liver, pancreas and lungs (Jomova and Valko 2011). Lung cancer caused by occupational and environmental Cd exposure has been well documented (NTP 2011). The carcinogenic nature of Cd relates to its ability to induce oxidative stress by the generation of ROS (such as superoxide and OH· radicals and hydrogen peroxide) and reactive nitrogen species (RNS) (such as NO) (Satarug et al. 2002; Waisberg et al. 2003).

Noncarcinogenic effects of Cd on human populations consuming Cd-contaminated cereals and vegetables have also been reported (Zheng et al. 2007). Cadmium exposure may cause hazards to kidneys and bones. In the kidney, the initial tubular damage may progress to formation of stones and chronic renal failure that may be related to an increased excretion of Ca from the body (Hellström et al. 2001; Jin et al. 2004; Nogawa et al. 2004). Similarly, Cd may also reduce mineral density in bones leading to skeletal damages (fractures, osteomalacia and osteoporosis) in long-term exposures (Staessen et al. 1999; Alfvén et al. 2000; Nordberg et al. 2002; Jin et al. 2004).

Cadmium exposure is closely related to cardiovascular diseases and hypertension (Menke et al. 2009; Angeli et al. 2013). Elevated Cd levels (an increase of about 50% in blood) was linked to 35% increase in risk of stroke and 48% increase in risk of heart failure (Peters et al. 2010). Blood and urinary Cd are involved in peripheral arterial disease (Jarup and Akesso 2009). Chronic exposure to Cd reduces the functioning of endothelial cells resulting in cell death, vascular inflammation, release of cytokines, aggregation of smooth muscle cells (Messner and Bernhard 2010) and angiogenesis (Woods and Fearon 2009). These cellular disturbances result in hypertension and ischemic heart disease.

Lead can damage cells of animals by a decrease in antioxidants and production of free radicals (Ercal et al. 2001). Up to 40% reduction in the concentration of glutathione in cells was observed due to intake of Pb (Hunaiti and Soud 2000). This may lead to elevated levels of ROS that induce carcinogenesis by damage to existing DNA, delayed replication of DNA and clastogenicity (Silbergeld and Waalkes 2000). Hence, Pb is a well-known carcinogen (IARC 2017). Studies also found that Pb can induce toxicity and apoptosis in human cancer cells that have multiple consequences ranging from oxidative stresses to death of human subjects (Yedjou and Tchounwou 2007). Lead was also involved in renal tumours (Waalkes et al. 1995), and lung and stomach cancers (Steenland and Boffetta 2000).

Noncarcinogenic effects of Pb poisoning were reported in both occupational and dietary exposures. Production of ROS and RNS in humans under Pb exposure led to hypertension, elevated blood pressure, kidney damage and neurological disorders (Apostoli et al. 2005; Valko et al. 2007; Verstraeten et al. 2008). Long-term exposure to Pb may result in memory deterioration, prolonged reaction times and reduced ability to understand. Children exposure to Pb may lead to behavioural disturbances in learning and concentration (Järup 2003).

Mercury and its compounds are involved in neurological disorders, genotoxic effects, oxidative stresses, cardiovascular diseases, different types of cancers and several other diseases in humans (Bonacker et al. 2004; Zahir et al. 2005; WHO 2016). Neurological disorders in children related to Hg exposure have been associated with dysplasia of cerebral and cerebellar cortex, neuronal ectopia and several other neurological disorders (Sakamoto et al. 2002; Johnson 2004). Exposure at high doses is related to impairment of motor functions in all age groups (Dietrich et al. 2005).

Genotoxicity of Hg is due to its negative effects on microtubules, mitosis and DNA repair mechanism (Crespo-López et al. 2009; Tchounwou et al. 2012). In the human body, a methylmercury-induced chromosomal damage in germ line cells gives rise to an abnormal offspring. Chromosomal abnormality is strongly associated with binding of Hg to a microtubular assembly; complete inhibition of the assembly was observed at 10 μM Hg (Bonacker et al. 2004). Exposure of blood cell cultures to mercuric chloride resulted in abnormal mitosis (Rao et al. 2001).

Intake of Hg can induce oxidative stress, increased secretion of β-amyloid 1–40 and 1–42 and cytotoxicity that may lead to Alzheimer's and Parkinson's diseases (Olivieri et al. 2002; Crespo-López et al. 2009; Tchounwou et al. 2012).

Nickel, in ultra-trace levels, is thought to play some essential roles in animals and humans. In rats and goats, Ni deficiency decreased conception and growth rates, and increased abortions (Nielsen et al. 1975; Spears et al. 1986; Yokoi et al. 2003). The Ni essentiality is linked to its possible roles in the production of haemoglobin and red blood cells and in gene expressions for the regulation of enzymes in the liver and kidney (Nielsen et al. 1984; Spears et al. 1986; Stangl and Kirchgessner 1996). However, the positive effects of dietary Ni may only be due to wide presence of Ni-dependent enzymes in beneficial microflora in the animal gut (Tremaroli and Bäckhed 2012).

Nickel exposure to above permissible levels, both occupational and dietary, can cause allergy, lung fibrosis, iatrogenic poisoning, organ system toxicity, dermatitis and cancer (Friberg and Elinder 1993; Salnikow and Zhitkovich 2007). These diseases are mediated by malfunctioning in metabolic pathways that underlie inflammation, stress response, oxidative stress, cell proliferation and cell death (Nielsen et al. 1999; Denkhaus and Salnikow 2002). Nickel ions induce the production of tumours by inhibiting lymphocyte activity. Plausible mechanisms of Ni carcinogenicity include mutagenesis, damage to chromosomes, formation of Z-DNA and inhibition of DNA excision repair (Costa and Klein 1999; Cangul et al. 2002).

Arsenic, Cd, Pb, Hg and Ni in Cereal Grains

Plants have several mechanisms to prefer essential and avoid toxic elements. Thereby, the uptake of toxic heavy metal(loid)s by roots and their transport from roots to above-ground parts and then particularly to grains are minimized (Khan et al. 2014). However, non-essential elements can use non-specific transporters

and soluble metal carriers for their uptake and transport in plants. Under metal(loid)-contaminated environments, therefore, a significant amount of toxic heavy metal(loid)s can be accumulated into cereal grains (Table 3).

Arsenic concentration in cereal grains ranged from 0 to 1.70 mg kg^{-1} (Table 3). In total diet study of the UK and France, As concentration in miscellaneous cereals was lower than the maximum permissible limit of 0.10 mg kg^{-1} (Leblanc et al. 2005; Rose et al. 2010). Concentration of As in wheat grains produced by farmers in Spain (Hernández-Martínez and Navarro-Blasco 2013) and in rice grains collected from different cities of Cambodia (Wang et al. 2013) was also within the permissible levels.

Polluted agricultural soils or irrigation water may contaminate cereal grains with As. For example, in India, As concentration in rice and wheat grains collected from the fields irrigated by As-contaminated basin water was above the safe limit (Bhattacharya et al. 2010). Similarly, concentration of As in rice produced in As-contaminated acidic soil (total soil level of 100 mg As kg^{-1}) in China was also above the maximum permissible limit (Geng et al. 2017). Surveys from maize fields in Bangladesh (Islam et al. 2014) and rice fields in Vietnam (Phuong et al. 1999) reported As contamination in maize grains.

Cadmium in cereal grains collected from local markets in France, Ethiopia, the UK, Australia, Nigeria and India had not-detectable to safe levels of Cd (≤0.10 mg kg^{-1}) (Table 3). However, concentration of Cd in some of the samples of cereal grains collected at the Saudi Arabia markets was above the safe limit (Ali and Al-Qahtani 2012). Oat and millet grains from Finland had Cd levels below the maximum permissible limit (Ekholm et al. 2007); and similar results were reported for wheat flour in Brazil and Spain (Santos et al. 2004; Tejera et al. 2013). Field-grown cereals in various countries also had safe levels of Cd (Phuong et al. 1999; Harcz et al. 2007; Islam et al. 2014).

Cadmium concentration in cereals is related to contaminated environments and inputs (Table 3). For example, toxic levels of Cd in soils resulted in contaminated grains of sorghum (Angelova et al. 2011) and barley (Hymete and Eticha 2015). Due to the application of contaminated biosolids, concentration of Cd in organically grown rice and wheat grains was also above the safe limit (Chandorkar and Vaze 2013).

Lead concentration in a study on Swedish rye was below a detection limit (Jorhem et al. 2001). Concentration of Pb in market surveys of most countries was within safe levels (≤0.20 mg kg^{-1}) (Table 3). However, some of the rice samples purchased from markets in Australia (Rahman et al. 2014) and Saudi Arabia (Ali and Al-Qahtani 2012) had Pb concentration above the maximum permissible limit. Oat and millet grains collected from agricultural fields in Finland (Ekholm et al. 2007) and wheat grains from a field in Belgium (Harcz et al. 2007) had safe levels of Pb. Wheat flour in Brazil and Spain also had safe levels of Pb (Santos et al. 2004; Tejera et al. 2013).

Contaminated organic wastes may result in increased Pb concentration in grains (Cang 2004; Chandorkar and Vaze 2013). Grains of rice, maize and millet collected from contaminated agricultural fields of Nigeria (Orisakwe et al. 2012) and Ethiopia

Table 3 Concentration of arsenic, cadmium, lead, mercury and nickel in cereal grains

Cereal	Country	Study/contamination	As	Cd	Pb	Hg	Ni
			mg kg^{-1}				
Barley	Ethiopia	Market survey (Tegegne 2015)		nd	0.03		nd
Barley	Ethiopia	Farmer field (Hymete and Eticha 2015)		0.22–1.95	0.82–5.64		
Barley	India	Market survey (Singh and Garg 2006)				0.06	<0.01
Maize	Greek	Market survey (Karavoltsos et al. 2002)		<0.01			
Maize	Ethiopia	Market survey (Tegegne 2015)		nd	nd		0.07
Maize	Nigeria	Contaminated soil (Orisakwe et al. 2012)		nd	1.01		nd
Maize	Nigeria	Market survey (Akinyele and Shokunbi 2015)		<0.01	<0.08		0.09
Maize	Bangladesh	Field survey (Islam et al. 2014)	0.08–1.70	0.02–0.53	0.04–1.30		0.24–0.80
Millet	Finland	Market survey (Ekholm et al. 2007)		0.03	0.02		2.20
Millet	Nigeria	Contaminated field (Orisakwe et al. 2012)		nd	3.54		0.44
Millet	India	Market survey (Singh and Garg 2006)				0.10	
Miscellaneous	UK	Market survey (Rose et al. 2010)	0.01	0.02	0.01	0.02	0.16
Miscellaneous	France	Market survey (Leblanc et al. 2005)	<0.01	0.01	0.02	0.01	0.47
Oats	Finland	Market survey (Ekholm et al. 2007)		0.03	0.05		1.90
Rice	Greek	Market survey (Karavoltsos et al. 2002)		0.01			
Rice	China	Contaminated soil (Geng et al. 2017)	0.83				
Rice	Nigeria	Farmer field (Orisakwe et al. 2012)		nd	61		nd
Rice	Saudi Arabia	Market survey (Othman 2010)			0.02–0.03		
Rice	Saudi Arabia	Market survey (Ali and Al-Qahtani 2012)		0.92	6.16	0.02	

(continued)

Table 3 (continued)

Cereal	Country	Study/contamination	As	Cd	Pb	Hg	Ni
			mg kg^{-1}				
Rice	France	Market survey (Leblanc et al. 2005)	0.02	<0.01	0.01	0.01	0.02
Rice	Nigeria	Market survey (Akinyele and Shokunbi 2015)		<0.01	<0.08		0.12
Rice	India	Organic farming (Chandorkar and Vaze 2013)		0.52	0.10		0.91
Rice	Cambodia	Market survey (Wang et al. 2013)	0.01–0.09				
Rice	Australia	Market survey (Rahman et al. 2014)		0.01–0.02	0.02–1.30		0.06–0.40
Rice	India	Peri-urban areas (Tripathi et al. 1997)		0.01	0.02		
Rice	Vietnam	Field survey (Phuong et al. 1999)	0.03–0.78	0.00–0.01			0.13–2.02
Rice	Bangladesh	Field survey (Islam et al. 2014)	0.06–1.60	<0.01–0.07	0.07–1.30		0.03–2.60
Rice	India	Contaminated soils (Bhattacharya et al. 2010)	0.06–0.60				
Rye	Sweden	Market survey (Jorhem et al. 2001)		0.02	nd		0.10
Sorghum	Ethiopia	Market survey (Tegegne 2015)		nd	0.08		0.43
Sorghum	Nigeria	Market survey (Orisakwe et al. 2012)		nd	nd		0.53
Sorghum	Bulgaria	Contaminated area (Angelova et al. 2011)		1.56	10.30		
Wheat	India	Peri-urban area (Tripathi et al. 1997)		0.01	0.02		
Wheat	Ethiopia	Market survey (Tegegne 2015)		nd	0.05		0.27
Wheat	Nigeria	Farmer field (Orisakwe et al. 2012)		nd	nd		0.39
Wheat	Saudi Arabia	Market survey (Ali and Al-Qahtani 2012)		1.90	2.80	0.02	
Wheat	Bangladesh	Field survey (Islam et al. 2014)	0.08–1.50	<0.01–0.66	0.03–1.30		0.10–3.60
Wheat	Nigeria	Market survey (Akinyele and Shokunbi 2015)		<0.01	<0.08		0.06

(continued)

Table 3 (continued)

Cereal	Country	Study/contamination	As	Cd	Pb	Hg	Ni
			mg kg^{-1}				
Wheat	Belgium	Organic and conventional farming (Harcz et al. 2007)		0.10	0.04–0.10		<0.01
Wheat	Spain	Field survey (Hernández-Martínez and Navarro-Blasco 2013)	0.02			<0.01	
Wheat	India	Contaminated soil (Bhattacharya et al. 2010)	0.01–0.19				
Wheat	Brazil	Market survey (Santos et al. 2004)		<0.01–0.02	<0.01–0.02		0.01–0.14
Wheat	Spain	Samples from flour industry (Tejera et al. 2013)		0.03	0.04		0.08
Wheat	India	Organic farming (Chandorkar and Vaze 2013)		0.76	0.12		1.28
Maximum permissible limits			0.10[a]	0.10[b]; 0.20[c]	0.20[b]	0.10[d]	0.65[e]

nd not-detectable
[a]Edible oil
[b]Cereal grains other than wheat grains;
[c]Wheat grains
[d]Food items (WHO/FAO 2016)
[e]Based on consumption of two servings of cereals per day by an adult weighing 50 kg (EFSA 2017; USDA 2018)

(Hymete and Eticha 2015) had Pb levels above the safe limit (Table 3). Contaminated soils in Bangladesh (Angelova et al. 2011) and Bulgaria (Islam et al. 2014) resulted in Pb contamination in cereal grains.

Mercury concentration in cereal grains also varied with source of contamination; however, it was always below the maximum permissible level of 0.10 mg Hg kg^{-1} (Table 3).

Nickel concentration in cereal grains collected from local markets in many countries was within permissible limits (≤0.65 mg kg^{-1}) (Table 3). However, oat and millet grains collected from food stores in Finland had Ni concentration up to 1.90 and 2.20 mg kg^{-1}, respectively (Ekholm et al. 2007). Rice grains collected from different regions of Vietnam had maximum Ni concentration of 2.02 mg kg^{-1} (Phuong et al. 1999). Similarly, several grain samples of rice, wheat and maize collected from agricultural fields in Bangladesh had Ni concentration above the safe limit (Islam et al. 2014). Biosolids used in organic farming resulted in contamination of soils and the production of contaminated cereal grains (Chandorkar and Vaze 2013).

Arsenic, Cd, Pb, Hg and Ni in Vegetables

Vegetables are perishable foods mostly grown near the areas of high demand, such as near large cities and towns. Population pressure and large industries pollute the environment around the cities. Therefore, heavy metal(loid) contamination of vegetables is more probable than the food crops grown in remote areas. Moreover, roots/tubers or leaves have higher contaminant concentrations compared with grains or fruits. This is due to additional barriers for toxic elements in transport towards and accumulation into seeds (Khan et al. 2014).

Arsenic concentration in vegetables ranged from 0 to 2.90 mg kg^{-1} (Table 4). Concentration of As in cauliflower, carrot and potato collected from local markets in Spain and in potato and cabbage collected from markets in Croatia and Cambodia ranged from not-detectable to safe levels ($\leq$0.10 mg kg^{-1}) (Martorell et al. 2011; Wang et al. 2013; Stančić et al. 2016). Similarly, field surveys in Bangladesh also reported As concentration in vegetables <0.10 mg kg^{-1} (Alam et al. 2003). However, vegetable samples collected from As-contaminated fields had As concentration above the permissible limit (Rahman and Hasan 2007; George and Gqaza 2015). A field survey from Botswana reported As concentration of 2.90 mg kg^{-1} (Bati et al. 2016).

Cadmium concentration in vegetables grown with Cd-free wastewater or in non-contaminated fields and from most market surveys in various countries was within safe limits ($\leq$0.20 mg Cd kg^{-1} for leafy vegetables and $\leq$0.05 mg Cd kg^{-1} for all other vegetables) (Table 4). However, Cd can accumulate in vegetables grown on roadsides, in cities and at industrial and mining sites. Therefore, some vegetable surveys reported above permissible concentrations of Cd in various vegetables (Karavoltsos et al. 2002; Radwan and Salama 2006; Guerra et al. 2012; Nankishore 2014; Derakhshan et al. 2016; Bati et al. 2016). Concentration of Cd in potato, radish and cucumber grown in Huang Gang city in China was also above the safe limit (Hu et al. 2013). Turnip, carrot, potato and spinach collected from different farms of four major industrial cities in Saudi Arabia had 1.24–4.10 mg Cd kg^{-1} (Ali and Al-Qahtani 2012). Vegetables grown in peri-urban areas of India (Sharma et al. 2009; Ramesh and Murthy 2010; Yadav et al. 2013), Libya (Elbagermi et al. 2012) and Turkey (Demirezen and Aksoy 2006) also had Cd in leafy and fruity vegetables above the safe limits. Similarly, application of contaminated wastewater to agricultural fields in Pakistan (Khan et al. 2015) and India (Saini et al. 2014) resulted in toxic levels of Cd in vegetables.

Lead concentration in various vegetables collected from markets in Nigeria, Yemen, Serbia, Saudi Arabia and Tanzania was below the maximum permissible limits (0.30 and 0.10 mg kg^{-1} for leafy and other vegetables, respectively) (Table 4). However, market surveys in many countries reported toxic levels of Pb in various vegetables. Similarly, selected vegetables grown in agricultural fields in Kyrgyzstan had up to 0.18 mg Pb kg^{-1} (Usubalieva et al. 2013). The Pb contamination in vegetables from markets and field surveys indicate the unstudied sources of contamination in the crop environments.

Table 4 Concentration of arsenic, cadmium, lead, mercury and nickel in edible portions of vegetables

Vegetable	Country	Study/contamination	As	Cd	Pb	Hg	Ni
			mg kg^{-1}				
Brinjal	Bangladesh	Contaminated irrigation (Rahman and Hasan 2007)	0.30				
Cabbage	Nigeria	Market survey (Sobukola et al. 2010)		0.06	0.09–0.17		
Cabbage	Cambodia	Market survey (Wang et al. 2013)	≤0.01				
Cabbage	South Africa	Contaminated field (George and Gqaza 2015)	1.50				
Cabbage	Bangladesh	Field survey (Tasrina and Rowshon 2015)	<0.10	<0.10		<0.03	
Cabbage	Pakistan	Industrial area (Farooq et al. 2008)		0.07	1.92		
Cabbage	Yamen	Market survey (Nogaim et al. 2013)		<0.01	0.07		
Cabbage	Guyana	Market survey (Nankishore 2014)		0.19	0.41		nd
Cabbage	Romania	Near the mining area (Harmanescu et al. 2011)		0.01–0.12	0.05–0.90		
Cabbage	Egypt	Farmer field (Dogheim et al. 2004)		<0.01			
Cabbage	Serbia	Market survey (Škrbić et al. 2013)	<0.03	<0.01	0.05		
Cabbage	Kyrgyzstan	Farmer field (Usubalieva et al. 2013)		0.01–0.03	0.05–0.08		
Cabbage	Ghana	Market survey (Bempah et al. 2011)		0.01–0.08	0.22–0.53		
Cabbage	Ghana	Wastewater irrigation (Lente et al. 2014)			10.5		1.77
Cabbage	Morocco	Wastewater irrigation (Al-Jaboobi et al. 2014)		nd	15.3		85
Cabbage	Brazil	Farmer field (Guerra et al. 2012)		0.12	1.66		0.54
Carrot	Saudi Arabia	Farm survey (Ali and Al-Qahtani 2012)		1.20–1.43	1.13–1.42	0.02–0.03	
Carrot	Saudi Arabia	Market survey (Othman 2010)			0.03		
Carrot	Pakistan	Market survey (Bukhari et al. 2013)			1.70		3.00
Carrot	Egypt	Market survey (Radwan and Salama 2006)		0.01	0.18		

(continued)

Table 4 (continued)

Vegetable	Country	Study/contamination	As	Cd	Pb	Hg	Ni
			mg kg^{-1}				
Carrot	Romania	Grown near the mining area (Harmanescu et al. 2011)		0.01–0.03			
Carrot	Greek	Market survey (Karavoltsos et al. 2002)		0.13–0.16			
Carrot	Serbia	Market survey (Škrbić et al. 2013)	<0.03	<0.01	0.06		
Carrot	Spain	Market survey (Martorell et al. 2011)	nd	0.01	0.06	<0.01	
Carrot	Kyrgyzstan	Market survey (Usubalieva et al. 2013)		0.02	0.03		
Carrot	Libya	Grown near the market (Elbagermi et al. 2012)		0.12	0.21		0.21
Carrot	Ghana	Market survey (Bempah et al. 2011)		0.01–0.05	0.12–0.23		
Carrot	Yamen	Market survey (Nogaim et al. 2013)		0.03	0.07		
Cauliflower	India	Peri-urban area (Sharma et al. 2009)		2.57	1.56		
Cauliflower	Greek	Market survey (Karavoltsos et al. 2002)		0.01–0.01			
Cauliflower	Spain	Market survey (Martorell et al. 2011)	nd	0.01	0.14	0.01	
Cauliflower	China	Farmer field (Hu et al. 2013)		0.04–0.06			
Cauliflower	Brazil	Farmer field (Guerra et al. 2012)		0.08	0.36		0.24
Chinese cabbage	Tanzania	Market survey (Mubofu 2012)		0.01–0.03	0.02–0.02		
Cucumber	Yamen	Market survey (Nogaim et al. 2013)		0.05	0.06		
Cucumber	Saudi Arabia	Market survey (Othman 2010)			0.02		
Cucumber	Egypt	Market survey (Radwan and Salama 2006)		0.15	0.19		
Cucumber	China	Peri-urban areas (Hu et al. 2013)		0.11–0.22			
Cucumber	Kyrgyzstan	Farmer field (Usubalieva et al. 2013)		<0.01	0.03–0.18		
Cucumber	Libya	Grown near the market (Elbagermi et al. 2012)		0.20	0.10		0.22
Cucumber	Turkey	Farmer field (Demirezen and Aksoy 2006)		0.64	6.90		13.5

(continued)

Table 4 (continued)

Vegetable	Country	Study/contamination	As	Cd	Pb	Hg	Ni
			mg kg^{-1}				
Fluted pumpkin	Nigeria	Market survey (Sobukola et al. 2010)		0.01–0.09	0.15–0.27		
Foetid Cassia	Nigeria	Market survey (Yahaya 2013)		nd	0.12		
Kenaf	Nigeria	Market survey (Yahaya 2013)		nd	0.1		
Lettuce	Tanzania	Market survey (Mubofu 2012)		0.02–0.06	0.02–0.07		
Okra	India	Peri-urban area (Sharma et al. 2009)		0.50–1.20	0.30–1.20		
Okra	Bangladesh	Farmer field (Alam et al. 2003)	0.09				
Luffa	Pakistan	Wastewater irrigation (Khan et al. 2015)		0.32	2.34		
Okra	Turkey	Farmer field (Demirezen and Aksoy 2006)		0.58	10.7		2.70
Okra	Ghana	Market survey (Bempah et al. 2011)		<0.01–0.06	0.14–0.26		
Okra	Tanzania	Market survey (Mubofu 2012)		<0.01–0.018	0.02–0.08		
Onion	Botswana	Market survey (Bati et al. 2016)	2.90	0.33	1.60		
Parsley	Iran	Available in the market (Derakhshan et al. 2016)		0.03–0.09	0.01–0.20		
Parsley	Brazil	Market survey (Guerra et al. 2012)		0.18	1.02		0.70
Potato	Saudi Arabia	Farmer field (Ali and Al-Qahtani 2012)		0.99–1.18	1.50–6.19	0.01	
Potato	Croatia	Market survey (Stančić et al. 2016)	0.02–0.03	0.13–0.34		0.01–0.02	
Potato	Saudi Arabia	Market survey (Othman 2010)			<0.01		
Potato	Serbia	Market survey (Škrbić et al. 2013)	<0.03	0.01	<0.01		
Potato	Spain	Market survey (Martorell et al. 2011)	nd	0.05	0.06	0.01	
Potato	China	Peri-urban areas (Hu et al. 2013)		0.09–0.16			
Potato	Kyrgyzstan	Farmer field (Usubalieva et al. 2013)		0.01–0.02	0.08–0.15		
Radish	Pakistan	Market survey (Bukhari et al. 2013)			3.50		8.50
Radish	China	Peri-urban areas (Hu et al. 2013)		0.05–0.09			

(continued)

Table 4 (continued)

Vegetable	Country	Study/contamination	As	Cd	Pb	Hg	Ni
			mg kg^{-1}				
Radish	Pakistan	Wastewater irrigation (Khan et al. 2015)		0.67	11.40		
Spinach	Saudi Arabia	Peri-urban areas (Ali and Al-Qahtani 2012)		4.02–4.13	1.26–2.88	0.01–0.02	
Spinach	India	Peri-urban area (Sharma et al. 2009)		0.98	1.00		
Spinach	Egypt	Market survey (Radwan and Salama 2006)		0.11	0.34		
Spinach	Greek	Market survey (Karavoltsos et al. 2002)		0.04–0.08			
Spinach	Egypt	Farmer field (Dogheim et al. 2004)		<0.01–0.05	0.03–1.40		
Spinach	Nigeria	Wastewater irrigation (Mustapha and Adeboye 2014)		<0.01	0.06		
Spinach	India	Industrial wastes (Ramesh and Murthy 2010)		nd–1.50	28.4–149.5		
Spinach	Libya	Grown near the market (Elbagermi et al. 2012)		0.27	0.32		0.26
Spinach	Nigeria	Field survey (Dike and Odunze 2016)		0.01–0.02	0.90–4.90		0.21–1.20
Spinach	Turkey	Market survey (Bagdatlioglu et al. 2010)		nd–0.05	0.21–1.00		
Spinach	India	Industrial effluent irrigation (Saini et al. 2014)		0.30	0.10		
Spinach	India	Wastewater irrigation (Yadav et al. 2013)		11.2–67.6	12.2–38.2		57–506
Turnip	Saudi Arabia	Peri-urban areas (Ali and Al-Qahtani 2012)		1.24–1.34	1.27–4.37	0.03–0.02	
Turnip	Pakistan	Market survey (Bukhari et al. 2013)			1.70		12.0
Turnip	Bangladesh	Market survey (Linkon et al. 2015)		nd	5.20	nd	4.20
Maximum permissible limits			0.10[a]	0.20[b], 0.05[c]	0.30[b], 0.10[c]	0.10[d]	6.67[e]

nd not-detectable
[a]Edible oil
[b]Leafy vegetables
[c]All other vegetables
[d]Food items (WHO/FAO 2016)
[e]Based on consumption of three servings of vegetables per day by an adult weighing 50 kg (EFSA 2017; USDA 2018)

Spinach irrigated by municipal wastewater in Minna city of Nigeria also had Pb concentration within safe limit (Mustapha and Adeboye 2014). Depending on the source and level of pollution, however, vegetables can be contaminated with Pb, for example, different vegetables grown in peri-urban areas (Dogheim et al. 2004; Demirezen and Aksoy 2006; Sharma et al. 2009; Elbagermi et al. 2012; Yadav et al. 2013; Dike and Odunze 2016) and cabbage grown in industrial and mining zones (Farooq et al. 2008; Harmanescu et al. 2011). Similarly, the use of untreated wastewater for agriculture in different cities in Pakistan (Khan et al. 2015), Ghana (Lente et al. 2014) and Morocco (Al-Jaboobi et al. 2014) caused toxic accumulations of Pb in various leafy and fruity vegetables (Al-Jaboobi et al. 2014; Lente et al. 2014; Khan et al. 2015).

Mercury was not accumulated to toxic levels (>0.10 mg Pb kg^{-1}) in any of the vegetables listed in Table 4.

Nickel concentration in most vegetables was within the permissible limit (≤6.67 mg kg^{-1}) (Table 4). However, some studies reported toxic levels. For example, vegetables collected from local markets in Pakistan had 3–12 mg Ni kg^{-1} (Bukhari et al. 2013). Wastewater irrigation of vegetables in Morocco resulted in 85 mg Ni kg^{-1} (Al-Jaboobi et al. 2014). In India, vegetables grown in peri-urban areas and irrigated with untreated wastewaters had Ni concentration as high as 506 mg Ni kg^{-1} (Yadav et al. 2013).

Arsenic, Cd, Pb, Hg and Ni in Fruits

Unlike vegetables, fruits generally had lower concentrations of contaminants in edible parts (Table 5). The one reason behind this could be the lower contamination levels in orchards than vegetable farms. Moreover, this is due to physiological barriers for toxic heavy metal(loid)s in transport in, and loading/unloading of, phloem and accumulation into fruits (Khan et al. 2014). In fact, there are wide differences in physiology of annual vegetable plants versus perennial fruit trees (Peralta-Videa et al. 2009).

Arsenic contamination to above permissible limit (0.10 mg kg^{-1}) is generally not reported in fruits (Table 5). However, some fruits in market surveys in Botswana (Bati et al. 2016) and Bangladesh (Saha and Zaman 2013) had unsafe levels of As.

Cadmium concentration in fruit samples collected from markets and production areas in most countries was within the safe limits (≤0.05 mg kg^{-1}) (Table 5). Mulberry grown on roadsides in Turkey had Cd concentration within the acceptable level; however, Cd concentration in apples (Hamurcu et al. 2010) and plums (Pehluvan et al. 2012) was above the safe limit.

Yellow plum, fig and black grapes from Turkish markets had a maximum of 0.63 mg Cd kg^{-1} (Duran et al. 2008). Similarly, market surveys in Bangladesh (Saha and Zaman 2013), Botswana (Bati et al. 2016), Brazil (Guerra et al. 2012; Pereira et al. 2014), Poland (Krejpcio et al. 2005) and Serbia (Micić et al. 2013) also reported Cd contamination in some of the fruits. Summer fruits in Pakistan had

0.05–1.00 mg Cd kg^{-1} (Zahoor et al. 2003). Fruits grown near the market in a city in Libya had Cd above the safe limit (Elbagermi et al. 2012). Similarly, concentration of Cd in some fruits collected from farms in polluted areas in Finland (Elbagermi et al. 2012), Nigeria (Orisakwe et al. 2012; Ihesinachi and Eresiya 2014), Kenya (Mausi et al. 2014), the Slovak Republic (Vollmannova et al. 2015) and Pakistan (Akhtar et al. 2010) also ranged above the permissible limit.

Lead concentration in tropical fruits available at markets in Bangladesh, Brazil, Nigeria, Turkey, Saudi Arabia, Spain and India was within the permissible limit (Table 5). In many field and market surveys, however, concentration of Pb in fruits was also reported to be above the safe limit.

In a study conducted in Nigeria, concentration of Pb in avocado was below a detection limit, but its concentration in guava, banana and apple exceeded the safe limit (Orisakwe et al. 2012). Apples and plums grown along the roadsides in Konya city in Turkey also had Pb concentration above the maximum acceptable level (Hamurcu et al. 2010; Pehluvan et al. 2012). Mango and grapes grown near city markets in Libya had Pb concentration above the maximum acceptable concentration (Elbagermi et al. 2012). Lead concentration in tomato, banana and papaya grown in buffer zone around the mining area in India was also above the maximum permissible limit (Barros et al. 2010).

Mercury concentration in fruits listed in Table 5 was below the maximum permissible limit of 0.10 mg kg^{-1}.

Nickel concentration in majority of fruits available in local markets and farms in Turkey, Nigeria, Brazil, the USA, Pakistan, Finland, the Slovak Republic and India was within the safe levels ($\leq$2.92 mg kg^{-1}) (Table 5). Like most of the other heavy metals, however, concentration of Ni in some fruits exceeded the limit. For example, mulberry fruits grown in the south-eastern region of Serbia had 3.60 mg Ni kg^{-1} (Micić et al. 2013). Similarly, some fruits were found to be contaminated with Ni in market surveys in Brazil (Pereira et al. 2014), Libya (Elbagermi et al. 2012), Turkey (Duran et al. 2008) and Pakistan (Zahoor et al. 2003). Avocado, orange and pineapple collected from Nigerian fruit farm had 1.16 to 3.34 mg Ni kg^{-1} (Ihesinachi and Eresiya 2014). Mangoes in some orchards in Pakistan also had unsafe levels of Ni (Akhtar et al. 2010).

Arsenic, Cd, Pb, Hg and Ni in Nuts

Nuts are mostly grown in hilly areas with low human population density and environmental contamination. Therefore, only few studies have reported heavy metal(loid) contamination in nuts (Table 6).

Arsenic concentration in various nuts collected at Swedish and South African markets was within the safe limit ($\leq$0.10 mg kg^{-1}) (Table 6).

Cadmium concentration in hazelnuts, walnuts and almonds from markets in Sweden, Spain and Germany was within the permissible limit ($\leq$0.05 mg kg^{-1}) (Table 6). However, Sattar et al. (1989) reported above-permissible levels of Cd in

Table 5 Concentration of arsenic, cadmium, lead, mercury and nickel in fruits

Fruit	Country	Study/contamination	As	Cd	Pb	Hg	Ni
			mg kg^{-1}				
Apple	Finland	Farmer field (Ekholm et al. 2007)		0.01	0.13		0.07
Apple	Libya	Grown near the markets (Elbagermi et al. 2012)		0.06	0.20		1.00
Apple	Nigeria	Fruit farm (Orisakwe et al. 2012)		nd	0.22		nd
Apple	Pakistan	Market survey (Zahoor et al. 2003)		1.00	3.08		8.90
Apple	Poland	Market survey (Krejpcio et al. 2005)		0.00–0.05	0.01–0.32		
Apple	Saudi Arabia	Market survey (Othman 2010)			0.02		
Apple	Spain	Market survey (Martorell et al. 2011)	≤0.01	≤0.01	0.03–0.04	<0.01	
Apple	Turkey	Grown along the roadside (Hamurcu et al. 2010)		0.16	2.21		0.42
Apricot	Pakistan	Market survey (Zahoor et al. 2003)			1.14		1.00
Avocado	Nigeria	Fruit farm (Orisakwe et al. 2012)		nd	nd		0.72
Avocado	Nigeria	Fruit farm (Ihesinachi and Eresiya 2014)					3.34
Banana	Bangladesh	Market survey (Saha and Zaman 2013)	0.13	0.58	0.42		
Banana	Ghana	Market survey (Bempah et al. 2011)		nd	0.01–0.03		
Banana	India	Grown near the mining area (Barros et al. 2010)		0.01	0.80		0.40
Banana	Nigeria	Market survey (Sobukola et al. 2010)		≤0.01	0.11–0.18		
Banana	Nigeria	Fruit farm (Orisakwe et al. 2012)		nd	0.46		nd
Banana	Pakistan	Market survey (Ismail et al. 2011)					0.06
Banana	Saudi Arabia	Market survey (Othman 2010)			0.01		
Black berry	Bangladesh	Market survey (Saha and Zaman 2013)	0.13	0.62	0.90		
Black grapes	Turkey	Market survey (Duran et al. 2008)		0.63	7.80		2.12

(continued)

Table 5 (continued)

Fruit	Country	Study/contamination	As	Cd	Pb	Hg	Ni
			mg kg^{-1}				
Blackberry	Slovak Republic	Polluted air (Vollmannova et al. 2015)		0.05–0.08	0.03	<0.01	0.12–0.78
Cherry	Poland	Market survey (Krejpcio et al. 2005)		<0.01–0.04	0.01–0.14		
Cherry	Turkey	Farmer field (Bagdatlioglu et al. 2010)		nd	0.01		
Fig	Turkey	Market survey (Duran et al. 2008)		0.28	10.10		4.31
Grape	Libya	Grown near the market (Elbagermi et al. 2012)		0.05	0.40		0.63
Grape	Nigeria	Fruit farm (Orisakwe et al. 2012)		0.14	0.33		0.08
Grape	Turkey	Farmer field (Bagdatlioglu et al. 2010)		nd	<0.01–0.02		
Grapes	Nigeria	Market survey (Sobukola et al. 2010)		≤0.01	0.09–0.1		
Guava	Bangladesh	Fruit farm (Sajib et al. 2014)	nd	nd	nd		
Guava	Bangladesh	Market survey (Saha and Zaman 2013)	0.13	1.50	0.88		
Guava	Nigeria	Fruit farm (Orisakwe et al. 2012)		nd	0.58		nd
Guava	Pakistan	Market survey (Ismail et al. 2011)					0.04
Litchi	Bangladesh	Farmer field (Sajib et al. 2014)	nd	nd	nd		
Litchi	Bangladesh	Market survey (Saha and Zaman 2013)	0.13	2.14	1.20		
Mango	Bangladesh	Farmer field (Sajib et al. 2014)	nd	nd	0.02		
Mango	Bangladesh	Market survey (Saha and Zaman 2013)	0.13	3.02	1.45		
Mango	Brazil	Market survey (Guerra et al. 2012)		0.12	0.14		0.08
Mango	Ghana	Market survey (Bempah et al. 2011)		0.01–0.06	0.02–0.12		
Mango	India	Mango orchard (Ravi et al. 2012)	<0.01	<0.01	<0.01		<0.01

(continued)

Table 5 (continued)

Fruit	Country	Study/contamination	As	Cd	Pb	Hg	Ni
			mg kg^{-1}				
Mango	Kenya	Mano orchard (Mausi et al. 2014)		0.07–0.09	0.31–0.61		
Mango	Libya	Grown near the market (Elbagermi et al. 2012)		0.36	1.82		5.14
Mango	Nigeria	From street vendor (Ogunkunle et al. 2014)	nd	0.09	1.62	nd	0.05
Mango	Pakistan	Mango orchard (Akhtar et al. 2010)		0.22	1.30		6.28
Mango	Pakistan	Market survey (Ismail et al. 2011)					0.06
Mango	Pakistan	Market survey (Zahoor et al. 2003)		0.41	1.08		6.20
Miscellaneous	America	Market survey (Mehari et al. 2015)		<0.10	10.00		<0.10
Miscellaneous	Chile	Market survey (Muñoz et al. 2005)	0.01	<0.01		<0.01	
Mulberry	Serbia	Farmer field (Micić et al. 2013)		24.6	0.90		3.60
Mulberry	Turkey	Grown along the roadside (Pehluvan et al. 2012)		0.05	3.89		0.66
Orange	Kenya	Farmer field (Mausi et al. 2014)		0.05–0.06	0.44–0.65		
Orange	Libya	Grown near the market (Elbagermi et al. 2012)		0.03	0.20		1.10
Orange	Nigeria	Farmer field (Ihesinachi and Eresiya 2014)		0.10	5.80		2.99
Orange	Nigeria	Market survey (Sobukola et al. 2010)		<0.01	0.11		0.12–0.13
Orange	Saudi Arabia	Market survey (Othman 2010)			0.01		
Orange	Spain	Market survey (Martorell et al. 2011)	≤0.01	0.01	0.07–0.08	<0.01	
Papaya	Brazil	Market survey (Guerra et al. 2012)		0.23	0.15		0.06
Papaya	Ghana	Market survey (Bempah et al. 2011)		<0.01–0.04	0.01–0.09		
Papaya	India	Grown near the mining area (Barros et al. 2010)		0.02	0.60		0.90

(continued)

Table 5 (continued)

Fruit	Country	Study/contamination	As	Cd	Pb	Hg	Ni
			mg kg^{-1}				
Peach	Pakistan	Market survey (Zahoor et al. 2003)		0.05	0.94		2.60
Peach,	Finland	Farmer field (Ekholm et al. 2007)		<0.01	0.12		0.75
Pear	Ghana	Market survey (Bempah et al. 2011)		0.01–0.03	0.09–0.14		
Pear	Poland	Market survey (Krejpcio et al. 2005)		<0.01–0.06	0.01–0.09		
Pear	Spain	Market survey (Martorell et al. 2011)	≤0.01	≤0.01	0.02–0.03	≤0.01	
Pears	Saudi Arabia	Market survey (Othman 2010)			<0.01		
Pindo Palm	Brazil	Market survey (Pereira et al. 2014)		0.06	nd		4.99
Pineapple	Ghana	Market survey (Bempah et al. 2011)		0.00–0.05	0.03–0.11		
Pineapple	Nigeria	Fruit farm (Ihesinachi and Eresiya 2014)		0.08	5.01		1.16
Pineapple	Nigeria	Market survey (Sobukola et al. 2010)		≤0.01	0.02–0.12		
Plum	Turkey	Grown along the roadside (Pehluvan et al. 2012)		0.14	2.82		0.50
Raspberry	Finland	Farmer field (Ekholm et al. 2007)		0.03	0.14		0.88
Raspberry	Slovak Republic	Polluted atmosphere (Vollmannova et al. 2015)		0.02	nd	0.01	0.14
Strawberry	Brazil	Market survey (Guerra et al. 2012)		0.04	0.05		0.07
strawberry	Finland	Farmer field (Ekholm et al. 2007)		0.04	0.05		0.24
Strawberry	Poland	Market survey (Krejpcio et al. 2005)		0.00–0.13	0.02–0.34		
Strawberry	Saudi Arabia	Market survey (Othman 2010)			0.02		
Strawberry	Spain	Market survey (Martorell et al. 2011)	≤0.01	<0.01	0.10	<0.01	
Strawberry	Turkey	Farmer field (Bagdatlioglu et al. 2010)		nd	<0.01–0.10		
Tangerine	Nigeria	Market survey (Sobukola et al. 2010)		≤0.01	0.09–0.10		

(continued)

Table 5 (continued)

Fruit	Country	Study/contamination	As	Cd	Pb	Hg	Ni
			mg kg^{-1}				
Tomato	Botswana	Market survey (Bati et al. 2016)	1.20	0.38	1.42		
Tomato	India	Grown in the mining area (Barros et al. 2010)		0.01	0.30		0.20
Tomato	Turkey	Farmer field (Bagdatlioglu et al. 2010)		nd	0.01		
tomatoes	Saudi Arabia	Market survey (Othman 2010)			0.03		
Water melon	Ghana	Market survey (Bempah et al. 2011)		nd	nd		
Watermelon	Brazil	Market survey (Guerra et al. 2012)		0.02	0.17		0.05
Watermelon	Nigeria	From street vendor (Ogunkunle et al. 2014)	nd	<0.01	1.76	nd	0.14
Watermelon	Nigeria	Market survey (Sobukola et al. 2010)		≤0.01	0.01–0.12		
Yellow guava	Brazil	Market survey (Pereira et al. 2014)		0.03	nd		3.40
Yellow plum	Turkey	Market survey (Duran et al. 2008)		0.63	7.80		3.58
Maximum permissible limit			0.10[a]	0.05[b]	0.10[c], 0.20[d]	0.10[a]	2.92[e]

nd not-detectable
[a]Edible oils or any food item
[b]Fruiting vegetables
[c]Citrus fruits, pome fruits or stone fruits
[d]Berries or any other small fruit (WHO/FAO 2016)
[e]Based on three servings of fruits per day by an adult weighing 50 kg (EFSA 2017; USDA 2018)

almonds, walnuts, pine nuts and peanuts collected from local markets in Peshawar, Pakistan.

Lead concentration in various nuts from the UK, Germany and Sweden was within the acceptable level (≤0.10 mg kg^{-1}) (Table 6). However, some studies reported Pb concentration in nuts above the safe limit, for example, in almonds, pine nuts and peanuts from Pakistan and Spain (Sattar et al. 1989; Cabrera et al. 2003).

Mercury concentration is reported only in a few studies on nuts (Table 6). Concentration of Hg in miscellaneous nuts from different markets in the UK and Sweden was within the permissible limit of 0.10 mg Hg kg^{-1} (Rodushkin et al. 2008; Rose et al. 2010).

Nickel concentration in all nuts listed in Table 6 was in the permissible levels, except cashew nuts from a Swedish market.

Table 6 Concentration of arsenic, cadmium, lead, mercury and nickel in nuts

Edible nuts	Countries	Study	As	Cd	Pb	Hg	Ni
			mg kg^{-1}				
Almond	South Africa	Market survey (Moodley et al. 2007)	0.01				
Almond	Spain	Market survey (Cabrera et al. 2003)		nd–0.01	0.26–0.37		0.19–0.15
Almond	Pakistan	Market survey (Sattar et al. 1989)		0.24	1.02		
Almonds	Sweden	Market survey (Rodushkin et al. 2008)	<0.01	<0.01	<0.01	<0.01	1.10
Brazil nut	South Africa	Market survey (Moodley et al. 2007)	0.02				
Brazil nut	Sweden	Market survey (Rodushkin et al. 2008)	<0.01	<0.01	<0.01	<0.01	4.60
Cashew nut	Sweden	Market survey (Rodushkin et al. 2008)	<0.01	<0.01	<0.01	<0.01	6.70
Cashew nut	Spain	Market survey (Cabrera et al. 2003)		nd	0.20–0.29		0.16–0.17
Hazelnut	Germany	Peri-urban area (von Hoffen and Säumel 2014)		0.01	0.02		
Hazelnut	Spain	Market survey (Cabrera et al. 2003)		≤0.01	0.30–0.39		0.26–0.46
Hazelnuts	Sweden	Market survey (Rodushkin et al. 2008)	0.01	0.01	<0.01	<0.01	1.30
Miscellaneous	UK	Market survey (Rose et al. 2010)			<0.01	<0.01	3.02
Peanut	Pakistan	Market survey (Sattar et al. 1989)		0.09	0.12		
Peanut	Spain	Market survey (Cabrera et al. 2003)		≤0.01	0.22–0.36		0.20–0.36
Pine nut	Pakistan	Purchased from retailer agency (Sattar et al. 1989)		0.12	0.49		
Pistachio	Spain	Market survey (Cabrera et al. 2003)		nd	0.15–0.25		0.13–0.34
Walnut	Germany	Peri-urban area (von Hoffen and Säumel 2014)		<0.01	0.01		
Walnut	South Africa	Market survey (Moodley et al. 2007)	0.02				
Walnut	Pakistan	Market survey (Sattar et al. 1989)		0.11	0.19		
Walnuts	Sweden	Market survey (Rodushkin et al. 2008)	<0.01	<0.01	<0.01	<0.01	1.60
Maximum permissible limit			0.10[a]	0.05[b]	0.10[c]	0.10[a]	5.00[d]

nd not-detectable
[a]Edible oils or any food item
[b]Fruiting vegetables
[c]Citrus fruits, pome fruits or stone fruits (WHO/FAO 2016)
[d]Based on one serving of nuts per day by an adult weighing 50 kg (EFSA 2017; USDA 2018)

Arsenic, Cd, Pb, Hg and Ni in Pulses

Similar to nuts, pulses are not generally contaminated with heavy metal(loid)s. However, contamination in the environment resulted in toxic levels of various heavy metal(loid)s in pulses (Table 7).

Arsenic concentration in different pulses grown in India was in the safe limit of ≤0.10 mg kg^{-1} (Table 7). The concentration of As in pulses collected from markets in Pakistan, Bangladesh and India ranged from 0.01 to 1.80 mg As kg^{-1} (Bhattacharya et al. 2010; Rehman et al. 2011; Ahmed et al. 2016; Krohn et al. 2016). Chickpea and lentil grown in contaminated fields had As contamination to unsafe levels (Bhattacharya et al. 2010).

Table 7 Concentration of arsenic, cadmium, lead, mercury and nickel in pulses

Pulses	Country	Study/contamination	As	Cd	Pb	Hg	Ni
			mg kg^{-1}				
Broadbean	Mexico	Field experiment (Garrido et al. 2005)					3.12
Broadbean	Turkey	Market survey (Bagdatlioglu et al. 2010)		nd	0.05		
Chickpea	Bangladesh	Market survey (Ahmed et al. 2016)	0.07–0.21				
Chickpea	India	Contaminated field (Bhattacharya et al. 2010)	0.02–0.90				
Chickpea	India	Field survey (Samal and Garg 2012)	0.06–0.08	0.07–0.08	0.17–0.19		
Chickpea	India	Field survey (Samal and Garg 2012)	0.06–0.08	0.07	0.16–0.18		
Chickpea	Spain	Market survey (Martorell et al. 2011)	0.01	<0.01	0.03	0.01	
Cowpea	India	Field survey (Samal and Garg 2012)	0.05–0.06	0.01	0.13–0.14		
Cowpea	China	Peri-urban area (Hu et al. 2013)		0.06–0.11			
Cowpea, brown	Iraq	Field survey (Ismael et al. 2016)		0.09	0.20		3.50
Cowpea, red	Iraq	Field survey (Ismael et al. 2016)		0.09	0.20		3.80
Cowpea, white	Iraq	Field survey (Ismael et al. 2016)		0.09	0.18		2.04
Green bean	Roam	Industrial area (Beccaloni et al. 2013)	0.13	0.05	0.01		

(continued)

Table 7 (continued)

Pulses	Country	Study/contamination	As	Cd	Pb	Hg	Ni
			mg kg^{-1}				
Green bean	Egypt	Market survey (Radwan and Salama 2006)		0.01	0.08		
Haricot bean	Spain	Market survey (Martorell et al. 2011)	0.01	0.01	0.05	0.01	
Horse gram	India	Field survey (Samal and Garg 2012)	0.05–0.06	0.08–0.09	0.15–0.17		
Kidney bean	China	Peri-urban areas (Hu et al. 2013)		0.06–0.13			
Lentil	Ethiopia	Field survey (Leshe and Tessema 2014)		0.09–0.30	1.40–1.80		1.40–1.80
Lentil	Bangladesh	Market survey (Ahmed et al. 2016)	0.02–0.13				
Lentil	Bangladesh	Contaminated field (Krohn et al. 2016)	<0.01				
Lentil	India	Contaminated field (Bhattacharya et al. 2010)	0.00–0.14				
Lentil	Pakistan	Market surveys (Rehman et al. 2011)	0.10–1.80	0.02–0.13	0.14–1.60		0.04–4.00
Lentil	Spain	Market survey (Martorell et al. 2011)	0.01	0.01	0.04	0.01	
Lentil, green	India	Field survey (Samal and Garg 2012)	0.06–0.07	0.02	0.12–0.14		
Lentil, black	India	Field survey (Samal and Garg 2012)	0.05–0.06	0.02	0.15–0.17		
Lentil, red	India	Field survey (Samal and Garg 2012)	0.05–0.06	0.08–0.09	0.17–0.18		
Mung bean	India	Field survey (Samal and Garg 2012)	0.05–0.07	0.05–0.06	0.14		
Mung bean	Nigeria	Market survey (Akinyele and Shokunbi 2015)		0.08	<0.08		0.08
Mungo beans	India	Farmer field (Samal and Garg 2012)	0.06–0.07	0.16–0.17	0.35–0.39		
Mungo beans	Pakistan	Market surveys (Rehman et al. 2011)	0.06–1.60	0.00–0.13	0.08–1.60		0.05–4.00
Pigeon pea	India	Field survey (Samal and Garg 2012)	0.06–0.08	0.19–0.21	0.15–0.17		
Red kidney bean	India	Field survey (Samal and Garg 2012)	0.06–0.08	0.06–0.08	0.17–0.20		
Maximum permissible limits			0.10[a]	0.10[a]	0.20[b]	0.10[a]	0.38[c]

nd not-detectable
[a]Edible oil or food items
[b]Pulses (WHO/FAO 2016)
[c]Based on consumption of two servings of pulses per day by an adult weighing 50 kg (EFSA 2017; USDA 2018)

Cadmium concentration in pulses of market surveys from Egypt, Spain and Nigeria and a field survey from Kurdistan was within the acceptable limit (≤0.10 mg kg^{-1}) (Table 7). However, market and field surveys from Pakistan (Rehman et al. 2011) and India (Samal and Garg 2012) reported Cd levels in some pulses above the permissible limit. Pulses grown in peri-urban areas in China and contaminated areas in Ethiopia had Cd concentration above the safe limit (Hu et al. 2013; Leshe and Tessema 2014).

Lead concentration in nearly all pulses from market surveys in India, Nigeria, Turkey, Egypt and Spain was within safe limits (≤0.20 mg kg^{-1}) (Table 7). However, a market survey in Pakistan reported safe to toxic levels of Pb in pulses (Rehman et al. 2011). A field survey of polluted area in Ethiopia also reported Pb concentration in pulses above the safe limit (Leshe and Tessema 2014).

Mercury concentration in pulses was within the safe limit of ≤0.10 mg kg^{-1} (Table 7).

Nickel concentration in pulses available in selected markets in Nigeria was within the safe limit (≤0.38 mg kg^{-1}) (Akinyele and Shokunbi 2015; Table 7). However, pulses grown on contaminated and peri-urban areas of different countries had above-permissible levels of Ni (Garrido et al. 2005; Leshe and Tessema 2014; Ismael et al. 2016). Concentration of Ni in some of samples of pulses collected at different markets in Pakistan was also above the safe limit (Rehman et al. 2011).

Arsenic, Cd, Pb, Hg and Ni in Plant Oils

All plant oils had safe levels of As, Cd, Pb, Hg and Ni (Table 8). This might partly relate with selective extraction of oils from oil seeds at industries by sophisticated processing and purification techniques. Due to the same reasons, mineral contents of plant oils are very low (Table 2).

Sources and Remedies

Plant-based foods might have toxic levels of heavy metals especially if produced in contaminated environments (Tables 3–8). The negative health effects of excessive dietary intakes of these metals are already well known (Zheng et al. 2007). Contaminated soils, irrigation waters, agricultural inputs and atmosphere are major factors responsible for accumulation of toxic levels of elements in plant-based foods (Okoronkwo et al. 2005). Soils, waters and atmosphere are contaminated due to effluents and emissions from mining areas, industries and cities. Toxic levels of heavy metal(loid)s should be removed from wastes before spreading on land. If the environment is already contaminated, proper remediation strategies must be adopted for safe food production.

Table 8 Concentration of arsenic, cadmium, lead, mercury and nickel in plant oils

Oils	Countries	Study	As	Cd	Pb	Hg	Ni
			mg kg^{-1}				
Almond	Iran	Market survey (Mohammadpourfard et al. 2015)	0.01	0.01	0.02	nd	
Apricot	Iran	Market survey (Mohammadpourfard et al. 2015)	0.01	0.02	0.02		
Corn	China	Market survey (Zhu et al. 2011)	0.01–0.02	<0.01	0.01		0.03–0.04
Miscellaneous	France	Market survey (Leblanc et al. 2005)	0.05	<0.01	0.01	<0.01	0.02
Miscellaneous	UK	Market survey (Rose et al. 2010)	<0.01	<0.01	<0.01	<0.01	<0.04
Olive	Greek	Market survey (Karavoltsos et al. 2002)		<0.01			
Olive	Spain	Market survey (Martorell et al. 2011)	≤0.01	<0.01	0.02–0.03	<0.01	
Olive	China	Market survey (Zhu et al. 2011)	0.01–0.02	<0.01	0.01–0.02		0.05–0.06
Olive	Spain	Market survey (Llorent-Martínez et al. 2011)	<0.01	<0.01	<0.01	<0.01	<0.01
Olive	Italy	Market survey (Benincasa et al. 2007)	0.01	<0.01			0.05
Olive	Austria	Market survey (Cindric et al. 2007)			<0.01		1.10
Peanut	China	Market survey (Zhu et al. 2011)	0.01–0.02	<0.01	0.01–0.02		0.02–0.03
Soybean	Spain	Market survey (Llorent-Martínez et al. 2011)			<0.01		0.21–0.25
Soybean	China	Market survey (Zhu et al. 2011)	0.01–0.02	<0.01	0.01–0.02		0.04–0.06
Soybean	Austria	Market survey (Cindric et al. 2007)			<0.01		0.21
Sunflower	Spain	Market survey (Martorell et al. 2011)	≤0.01	≤0.01	0.02–0.03	<0.01	
Sunflower	China	Market survey (Zhu et al. 2011)	0.01	<0.01	0.01–0.02		0.03–0.04
Sunflower	Spain	Market survey (Llorent-Martínez et al. 2011)	<0.01	nd	<0.01	<0.01	nd
Sunflower	Austria	Market survey (Cindric et al. 2007)			<0.01		0.09–0.11
Maximum permissible limit			0.10[a]	0.05[b]	0.10[a]	0.10[a]	3.43[c]

nd not-detectable
[a]Edible oils or any food item
[b]Fruiting vegetables (WHO/FAO 2016)
[c]Based on three servings of oil per day by an adult weighing 50 kg (EFSA 2017; USDA 2018)

Soil contamination by heavy metal(loid)s is a result of industrial activities, mining (Almås et al. 2006; Almås et al. 2007; Degryse et al. 2007; Oorts et al. 2008; Chen et al. 2009) or long-term applications of contaminated wastes (Horswell et al. 2006; Kim et al. 2007; Antoniadis 2008). Heavy metal(loid)s in soils occur as soluble, exchangeable, organically bounded, calcium carbonate-bound, metal oxides-bound and structural parts of primary and secondary minerals (Alloway 1995). Various properties and constituents of soils influence total quantity and plant-available fraction of elements in soils.

Manipulations of soil pH, redox potential and organic matter can influence the availability of toxic elements to plants. Soil pH controls exchange, precipitation, dissolution, redox and complexation reactions of heavy metals in soils (Chuan et al. 1996). Therefore, the pH of soil solution governs the equilibria among labile and non-labile pools of elements in soils. Soil pH influences the binding of cations on soil constituents, firstly by the competition between protons and metal/metalloid cations for binding sites and secondly by ionization of surface functional groups (Tipping et al. 2003; Bradl 2004).

Soil redox potential can significantly influence pH and speciation of elements in soils (Chuan et al. 1996). Under reduced conditions, As toxicity is more prevalent because As is mobile in the reduced form (Horswell and Speir 2006; Oorts et al. 2008). Heavy metals such as Cd and Ni are mostly present as divalent forms, and these metals do not take part in redox reactions.

Soil organic matter is involved in retention and release of cations. Stable organic complexes of heavy metal(loid)s are not easily available to plants (Kalis et al. 2006; Amery et al. 2008); hence, application of stable organic matter can immobilize the labile fractions of toxic elements in soils.

Soil remediation is often the only option available to restore the soils for safe production of food crops. However, remediation of soil to safe levels of pollutants requires huge investment of money and time. Every soil remediation strategy has its pros and cons (Mulligan et al. 2001). Thermal remediation and air aspiration may remove elements from soils that can form volatile compounds. However, the atmosphere is contaminated by the volatilized pollutants. In acidic soils, liming is helpful to precipitate labile species of toxic elements by increasing soil pH (Hale et al. 2012). Soil pollution can also be reduced by stabilized forms of organic matter that immobilize heavy metal(loid)s (Ondrasek et al. 2009; Zhang et al. 2013; Elouear et al. 2016). However, decomposition of organic matter and dissolution of precipitated forms reintroduce the inorganic pollutants in the soil solution. Microbes can also immobilize these elements in soils. Phytoremediation is another well-known technique used to reduce contamination levels in soils and waters by the use of hyperaccumulator plant species (Bothe 2011; Tangahu et al. 2011). Plants belonging to Brassicaceae family grown alone or in combination with specific microorganisms significantly decreased the level of heavy metals in soils (Bothe 2011). Restoration of contaminated soils with deep ploughing is also considered a good measure to leach toxic elements from the root zone (Zhou et al. 2000). However, leaching to aquifers may contaminate underground water reservoirs. Based on the above discussion, it is clear that soil remediation strategy must be carefully selected considering the nature of the contaminant (Mulligan et al. 2001).

Water contamination by heavy metal(loid)s from different sources has become a global issue (Dike et al. 2004). Such pollutants in irrigation water may be introduced by natural processes, such as weathering of rocks and minerals, and by anthropogenic activities, such as industrial, domestic and agricultural wastes (Bilos et al. 2001). River waters passing through urban areas are continuously contaminated by drainage of untreated or inadequately treated city wastes and industrial effluents (Bilos et al. 2001; Othman 2001; ul Islam et al. 2007; Ismail et al. 2014). Industrial activities like metal workshops, garages, tanneries, pharmaceuticals and various factories produce huge amounts of effluents that often contain toxic elements. Such contaminated river water is used to irrigate agricultural fields that lead to contamination of soils and plant-based foods (Chary et al. 2008).

Treatment of wastewater is imperative to produce contamination-free food crops (Mulligan et al. 2001). Construction of wetlands to clean effluents and sewage is one of the strategies to improve the quality of irrigation water (Williams 2002). Macrophytes may take up substantial amounts of metal(loid)s from contaminated water (Sood et al. 2012). Filters and adsorbents can separate pollutants from wastewaters. Adsorbents like papaya wood, potato peel, bentonite, anaerobic sludge and nanosized metal oxides have good removal efficiencies for heavy metals from wastewaters (Saeed et al. 2005; Ali 2012). Photocatalysts, such as TiO_2 and SiO_2, can be used to remove Pb from aqueous solutions (Harraz et al. 2013; Rashed 2015).

Agricultural inputs, other than contaminated irrigation water, can also be a source of inorganic pollutants for food crops. Concentration of Cd in soils differed with application rates of P fertilizers (Lambert et al. 2007). This is due to the impurities of Cd in rock phosphate. Biosolids may contaminate soils with As, Cd, Pb, Hg and Ni (Beshah et al. 2015). Continuous application of contaminated biosolids may result in leaching of pollutants to the aquifer (McLaughlin et al. 2000). Therefore, soil amendments and fertilizers must be carefully screened for contaminants before their applications to fields.

Air can be a source of toxic elements for plants (Haiyan and Stuanes 2003). In urban and industrial areas, heavy metal(loid)s emitted from industries and automobiles may be absorbed by surfaces of leaves and edible portions of plants during their growth (Zhou et al. 2000). Therefore, emissions should be treated, and environmentally friendly fuels should be used to avoid contamination of the environment. Moreover, food plants should be grown at some distance from highways and industrial areas.

Choice of plants for a particular area can be a safe strategy to produce contamination-free food crops. Due to perishability and high market demand, vegetables are generally grown near populated areas that tend to be more polluted than the remote areas. Moreover, plant species differ in the uptake of elements from soils and their distribution in various plant tissues (Peralta et al. 2001). With the help of selective uptake at root surfaces and root-induced changes in the rhizosphere, plant roots favour the uptake of nutrients (Gilroy and Jones 2000; Dakora and Phillips 2002). However, there are non-specific cation channels on root surfaces and non-essential heavy metal(loid)s can be absorbed by plants (Sharma et al. 2007). Moreover, root exudates can also increase bioavailability of heavy metal(loid)s to

plants (Courchesne et al. 2008; Maqsood et al. 2011). Therefore, growing crops in heavy metal(loid)-contaminated areas should consider food safety issues. If the environment cannot be remediated, food plants should not be grown in the contaminated areas or near the sources of contamination.

Conclusions

Plant-based foods are important in providing energy and nutrition to human populations around the world. Along with other intake routes into the human body, dietary intakes of heavy metal(loid)s via consumption of plant-based foods is becoming a serious threat for human health.

Contamination of agricultural soils, irrigation waters and air by industrial effluents, city wastes, biosolids and toxic emissions especially in densely populated developing countries may result in heavy metal(loid) contamination of plant-based foods. Food crops grown in cities, peri-urban areas, industrial zones, roadsides and mining sites often contain high concentrations of toxic elements in edible portions. Vegetables and fruits had relatively higher contamination levels than nuts, pulses and cereals. This may be partly due to preferable cropping of vegetables and fruits in peri-urban and industrial areas of high food demand. Plant oils had permissible levels of all heavy metals in all the listed studies, and Hg was reported to be within safe limits in all the studies.

Accumulation of toxic levels of heavy metal(loid)s in edible plant parts clearly relates with levels of contamination in the environment. Therefore, the situation requires urgent actions on careful remediation of the contaminated environments. However, remediation of the contaminated environments to safe levels requires substantial investment of money and time. Nevertheless, foods plants should not be grown in the contaminated areas or near the sources of contamination. Additionally, heavy metal(loid)s in wastes and agricultural inputs must be monitored by strict law enforcement to ensure healthy food production.

References

Ahmed K, Shaheen N, Islam S et al (2016) A comprehensive assessment of arsenic in commonly consumed foodstuffs to evaluate the potential health risk in Bangladesh. Sci Total Environ 544:125–133. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2015.11.133

Akhtar S, Naz S, Sultan MT et al (2010) Physico-chemical attributes and Heavy metal content of mangoes (*Mangifera indica* L.) cultivated in different regions of Pakistan. Pak J Bot 42:2691–2702

Akinyele IO, Shokunbi OS (2015) Concentrations of Mn, Fe, Cu, Zn, Cr, Cd, Pb, Ni in selected Nigerian tubers, legumes and cereals and estimates of the adult daily intakes. Food Chem 173:702–708. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.foodchem.2014.10.098

Alam MGM, Snow ET, Tanaka T (2003) Arsenic and heavy metal contamination of vegetables grown. Sci Total Environ 308:83–96

Alfvén T, Elinder C, Carlsson MD et al (2000) Low-level cadmium exposure and osteoporosis. J Bone Miner Res 15:1579–1586

Ali I (2012) New generation adsorbents for water treatment. Chem Rev 112:5073–5091. https://doi.org/10.1021/cr300133d

Ali MHH, Al-Qahtani KM (2012) Assessment of some heavy metals in vegetables, cereals and fruits in Saudi Arabian markets. Egypt J Aquat Res 38:31–37. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejar.2012.08.002

Al-Jaboobi M, Zouahri A, Tijane M et al (2014) Evaluation of heavy metals pollution in groundwater, soil and some vegetables irrigated with wastewater in the Skhirat region "Morocco". J Mater Environ Sci 5:961–966

Alloway BJ (1995) Soil processes and the behaviour of metals. In: Alloway BJ (ed) Heavy metals in soils. Blackie Academic and Professional, Glasgow, pp 11–37

Almås ÅR, Lombnæs P, Sogn TA, Mulder J (2006) Speciation of Cd and Zn in contaminated soils assessed by DGT-DIFS, and WHAM/Model VI in relation to uptake by spinach and ryegrass. Chemosphere 62:1647–1655. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.chemosphere.2005.06.020

Almås ÅR, Lofts S, Mulder J, Tipping E (2007) Solubility of major cations and Cu, Zn and Cd in soil extracts of some contaminated agricultural soils near a zinc smelter in Norway: modelling with a multisurface extension of WHAM. Eur J Soil Sci 58:1074–1086. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2389.2007.00894.x

Amery F, Degryse F, Cheyns K et al (2008) The UV-absorbance of dissolved organic matter predicts the fivefold variation in its affinity for mobilizing Cu in an agricultural soil horizon. Eur J Soil Sci 59:1087–1095

Angeli JK, Cruz Pereira CA, de Oliveira Faria T et al (2013) Cadmium exposure induces vascular injury due to endothelial oxidative stress: the role of local angiotensin II and COX-2. Free Radic Biol Med 65:838–848. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2013.08.167

Angelova VR, Ivanova RV, Delibaltova VA, Ivanov KI (2011) Use of sorghum crops for *in situ* phytoremediation of polluted soils. J Agric Sci Technol 1:693–702

Anke M, Groppel B, Gruen M, et al (1980) The influence of arsenic deficiency on growth, reproductiveness, life expectancy and health of goats. In: Spurenelement symposium, pp 25–32

Antoniadis V (2008) Sewage sludge application and soil properties effects on short-term zinc leaching in soil columns. Water Air Soil Pollut 190:35–43. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11270-007-9577-8

Apostoli P, Corulli A, Carta P et al (2005) Lead and blood pressure. G Ital Med Lav Ergon 27:22–32. [Article in Italian]

ATSDR (2017) Toxic substances portal—arsenic. Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry, Atlanta, GA. https://www.atsdr.cdc.gov/toxprofiles/tp.asp?id=22&tid=3. Accessed 30 Jan 2017

Bagdatlioglu N, Nergiz C, Ergonul PG (2010) Heavy metal levels in leafy vegetables and some selected fruits. J Consum Prot Food Saf 5:421–428. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00003-010-0594-y

Bailey K, Fry RC (2014) Long-term health consequences of prenatal arsenic exposure: links to the genome and the epigenome. Rev Environ Health 29:9–12. https://doi.org/10.1515/reveh-2014-0006

Barros L, Carvalho AM, Morais JS, Ferreira ICFR (2010) Strawberry-tree, blackthorn and rose fruits: detailed characterisation in nutrients and phytochemicals with antioxidant properties. Food Chem 120:247–254. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.foodchem.2009.10.016

Bati K, Mogobe O, Masamba WRL (2016) Concentrations of some trace elements in vegetables sold at Maun Market, Botswana. J Food Res 6:69. https://doi.org/10.5539/jfr.v6n1p69

Beattie J, Crozier A, Duthie G (2005) Potential health benefits of berries. Curr Nutr Food Sci 1:71–86. https://doi.org/10.2174/1573401052953294

Beccaloni E, Vanni F, Beccaloni M, Carere M (2013) Concentrations of arsenic, cadmium, lead and zinc in homegrown vegetables and fruits: estimated intake by population in an industrialized area of Sardinia, Italy. Microchem J 107:190–195. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.microc.2012.06.012

Bempah CK, Buah-kwofie A, Tutu AO et al (2011) Pesticide residues and heavy metals levels in some selected fruits and vegetables from Ghanaian markets. Food Sci 39:4964–4972
Benincasa C, Lewis J, Perri E et al (2007) Determination of trace element in Italian virgin olive oils and their characterization according to geographical origin by statistical analysis. Anal Chim Acta 585:366–370. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.aca.2006.12.040
Beshah FH, Porter NA, Wrigley R et al (2015) Soil residuals and plant uptake of Cu and Zn from biosolids applied to a clay loam soil under field conditions in Victoria, Australia. Soil Res 53:807–814
Bhattacharya P, Samal AC, Majumdar J, Santra SC (2010) Arsenic contamination in rice, wheat, pulses, and vegetables: a study in an arsenic affected area of West Bengal, India. Water Air Soil Pollut 213:3–13. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11270-010-0361-9
Bilos C, Colombo JC, Skorupka CN, Presa MJR (2001) Sources, distribution and variability of airborne trace metals in La Plata City area, Argentina. Environ Pollut 111:149–158
Blomhoff R, Carlsen MH, Andersen LF, Jacobs DR (2006) Health benefits of nuts: potential role of antioxidants. Br J Nutr 96:S52. https://doi.org/10.1017/BJN20061864
Boeing H, Bechthold A, Bub A et al (2012) Critical review: vegetables and fruit in the prevention of chronic diseases. Eur J Nutr 51:637–663. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00394-012-0380-y
Bonacker D, Stoiber T, Wang M et al (2004) Genotoxicity of inorganic mercury salts based on disturbed microtubule function. Arch Toxicol 78:575–583
Bothe H (2011) Plants in Heavy Metal Soils. In: Sherameti I, Varma A (eds) Detoxification of heavy metals. Springer, Berlin, pp 35–57
Bradl HB (2004) Adsorption of heavy metal ions on soils and soils constituents. J Colloid Interface Sci 277:1–18. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jcis.2004.04.005
Bukhari IH, Ramzan M, Riaz M et al (2013) Determination of trace heavy metals in different varieties of vegetables and fruits available in local market of Shorkot Pakistan. Int J Curr Pharm Res 5:100–105
Cabrera C, Lloris F, Giménez R et al (2003) Mineral content in legumes and nuts: contribution to the Spanish dietary intake. Sci Total Environ 308:1–14. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0048-9697(02)00611-3
Campos J, Mourão J, Pestana N et al (2013) Microbiological quality of ready-to-eat salads: an underestimated vehicle of bacteria and clinically relevant antibiotic resistance genes. Int J Food Microbiol 166:464–470. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijfoodmicro.2013.08.005
Cang L (2004) Heavy metals pollution in poultry and livestock feeds and manures under intensive farming in Jiangsu Province, China. J Environ Sci 16:371–374
Cangul H, Broday L, Salnikow K et al (2002) Molecular mechanisms of nickel carcinogenesis. Toxicol Lett 127:69–75. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0378-4274(01)00485-4
Chandorkar S, Vaze N (2013) Analysis of metal content of organic foods. J Environ Sci Toxicol Food Technol 3:44–49
Chary SN, Kamala CTCT, Raj DSS et al (2008) Assessing risk of heavy metals from consuming food grown on sewage irrigated soils and food chain transfer. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 69:513–524. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoenv.2007.04.013
Chen Z, Setagawa M, Kang Y et al (2009) Zinc and cadmium uptake from a metalliferous soil by a mixed culture of Athyrium yokoscense and Arabis flagellosa. Soil Sci Plant Nutr 55:315–324. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1747-0765.2008.00351.x
Chuan MC, Shu GY, Liu JC (1996) Solubility of heavy metals in a contaminated soil: effects of redox potential and pH. Water Air Soil Pollut 90:543–556
Cindric IJ, Zeiner M, Steffan I (2007) Trace elemental characterization of edible oils by ICP-AES and GFAAS. Microchem J 85:136–139. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.microc.2006.04.011
Costa M, Klein CB (1999) Nickel carcinogenesis, mutation, epigenetics, or selection. Environ Health Perspect 107:438–439. pii: sc271_5_1835
Courchesne F, Cloutier-Hurteau B, Turmel M-C (2008) Relevance of rhizosphere research to the ecological risk assessment of trace metals in soils. Hum Ecol Risk Assess 14:54–72
Crespo-López ME, Macêdo GL, Pereira SID et al (2009) Mercury and human genotoxicity: critical considerations and possible molecular mechanisms. Pharmacol Res 60:212–220. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.phrs.2009.02.011

Dakora FD, Phillips DA (2002) Root exudates as mediators of mineral acquisition in low-nutrient environments. Plant Soil 245:35–47. https://doi.org/10.1023/A:1020809400075
Das AK, Sahu R, Dua TK et al (2010) Arsenic-induced myocardial injury: protective role of Corchorus olitorius leaves. Food Chem Toxicol 48:1210–1217
Degryse F, Vlassak V, Smolders E, Merckx R (2007) Mobilization of Cd upon acidification of agricultural soils: column study and field modelling. Eur J Soil Sci 58:152–165. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2389.2006.00820.x
Demirezen D, Aksoy A (2006) Heavy metal levels in vegetables in Turkey are within safe limits for Cu, Zn, Ni and exceeded for Cd and Pb. J Food Qual 29:252–265
Denkhaus E, Salnikow K (2002) Nickel essentiality, toxicity, and carcinogenicity. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 42:35–56. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1040-8428(01)00214-1
Derakhshan Z, Faramarzian M, Mahvi AH et al (2016) Assessment of heavy metals residue in edible vegetables distributed in Shiraz, Iran. J Food Qual Hazards Control 3:25–29
Dietrich MO, Mantese CE, dos Anjos G et al (2005) Motor impairment induced by oral exposure to methylmercury in adult mice. Environ Toxicol Pharmacol 19:169–175
Dike NI, Odunze AC (2016) Elemental contents of spinach and lettuce from irrigated gardens in Kano, Nigeria. Environ Pollut 5:73. https://doi.org/10.5539/ep.v5n1p73
Dike NI, Ezealor AU, Oniye SJ (2004) Concentration of Pb, Cu, Fe and Cd during the dry season in river Jakara, Kano, Nigeria. Chemclass J 1:78–81
Dogheim SM, Ashraf el MM, Alla SA et al (2004) Pesticides and heavy metals levels in Egyptian leafy vegetables and some aromatic medicinal plants. Food Addit Contam 21:323–330. https://doi.org/10.1080/02652030310001656361
Duran A, Tuzen M, Soylak M (2008) Trace element levels in some dried fruit samples from Turkey. Int J Food Sci Nutr 59:581–589. https://doi.org/10.1080/13561820701507910
Dykes L, Rooney L (2007) Phenolic compounds in cereal grains and their health benefits. Cereal Foods World 52:105–111. https://doi.org/10.1094/CFW-52-3-0105
EFSA (2017) Metals as contaminants in food. European Food Safety Authority, Parma. https://www.efsa.europa.eu/en/topics/topic/metals-contaminants-food. Accessed 10 Nov 2018
Ekholm P, Reinivuo H, Mattila P et al (2007) Changes in the mineral and trace element contents of cereals, fruits and vegetables in Finland. J Food Compos Anal 20:487–495. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jfca.2007.02.007
Elbagermi MA, Edwards HGM, Alajtal AI (2012) Monitoring of heavy metal content in fruits and vegetables collected from production and market sites in the Misurata area of Libya. ISRN Anal Chem 2012:1–5. https://doi.org/10.5402/2012/827645
Elouear Z, Bouhamed F, Boujelben N, Bouzid J (2016) Application of sheep manure and potassium fertilizer to contaminated soil and its effect on zinc, cadmium and lead accumulation by alfalfa plants. Sustain Environ Res 26:131–135
Ercal N, Gurer-Orhan H, Aykin-Burns N (2001) Toxic metals and oxidative stress. Part I: mechanisms involved in metal induced oxidative damage. Curr Top Med Chem 1:529–539. https://doi.org/10.2174/1568026013394831
FAO (2013) Food supply database 2013. Food and Agricultural Organization, Rome. http://faostat3.fao.org/browse/FB/CL/E. Accessed 1 Jan 2017
Fardet A (2010) New hypotheses for the health-protective mechanisms of whole-grain cereals: what is beyond fibre? Nutr Res Rev 23:65–134. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0954422410000041
Farooq M, Anwar F, Rashid U (2008) Appraisal of heavy metal contents in different vegetables grown in the vicinity of an industrial area. Pak J Bot 40:2099–2106
Ferrario D, Croera C, Brustio R et al (2008) Toxicity of inorganic arsenic and its metabolites on haematopoietic progenitors “in vitro”: comparison between species and sexes. Toxicology 249:102–108. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tox.2008.04.008
Flight I, Clifton P (2006) Cereal grains and legumes in the prevention of coronary heart disease and stroke: a review of the literature. Eur J Clin Nutr 60:1145–1159. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.ejcn.1602435
Friberg L, Elinder CG (1993) Biological monitoring of toxic metals. Scand J Work Environ Health 19:7–13

Garrido S, Campo G, Esteller M et al (2005) Heavy metals in soil treated with sewage sludge composting, their effect on yield and uptake of broad bean seeds (*Vicia faba* L.). Water Air Soil Pollut 166:303–319

Geng A, Wang X, Wu L et al (2017) Arsenic accumulation and speciation in rice grown in arsanilic acid-elevated paddy soil. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 137:172–178. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoenv.2016.11.030

George G, Gqaza BM (2015) Arsenic contamination of selected indigenous and exotic leafy vegetables in the Eastern Cape province of South Africa. J Adv Agric Technol 2:29–33. https://doi.org/10.12720/joaat.2.1.29-33

Gilroy S, Jones DL (2000) Through form to function: root hair development and nutrient uptake. Trends Plant Sci 5:56–60. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1360-1385(99)01551-4

Guerra F, Trevizam AR, Muraoka T et al (2012) Heavy metals in vegetables and potential risk for human health. Sci Agric 69:54–60

Gupta S, Jyothi Lakshmi A, Manjunath MN, Prakash J (2005) Analysis of nutrient and antinutrient content of underutilized green leafy vegetables. LWT—Food Sci Technol 38:339–345. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.lwt.2004.06.012

Haiyan W, Stuanes AO (2003) Heavy metal pollution in air-water-soil-plant system of Zhuzhou City, Hunan Province, China. Water Air Soil Pollut 147:79–107

Hale B, Evans L, Lambert R (2012) Effects of cement or lime on Cd, Co, Cu, Ni, Pb, Sb and Zn mobility in field-contaminated and aged soils. J Hazard Mater 199–200:119–127. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhazmat.2011.10.065

Hamurcu M, Özcan MM, Dursun N, Gezgin S (2010) Mineral and heavy metal levels of some fruits grown at the roadsides. Food Chem Toxicol 48:1767–1770. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fct.2010.03.031

Harcz P, De Temmerman L, De Voghel S et al (2007) Contaminants in organically and conventionally produced winter wheat (*Triticum aestivum*) in Belgium. Food Addit Contam 24:713–720. https://doi.org/10.1080/02652030601185071

Harmanescu M, Alda L, Bordean D et al (2011) Heavy metals health risk assessment for population via consumption of vegetables grown in old mining area; a case study: Banat County, Romania. Chem Cent J 5:64. https://doi.org/10.1186/1752-153X-5-64

Harraz FA, Abdel-Salam OE, Mostafa AA et al (2013) Rapid synthesis of titania-silica nanoparticles photocatalyst by a modified sol-gel method for cyanide degradation and heavy metals removal. J Alloys Compd 551:1–7. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jallcom.2012.10.004

Hellström L, Elinder C-G, Dahlberg B et al (2001) Cadmium exposure and end-stage renal disease. Am J Kidney Dis 38:1001–1008

Hernández-Martínez R, Navarro-Blasco I (2013) Survey of total mercury and arsenic content in infant cereals marketed in Spain and estimated dietary intake. Food Control 30:423–432. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.foodcont.2012.08.016

Holmes DR (2002) Was your mother right: do we always need to close the door? Circulation 106:1034–1036. https://doi.org/10.1161/01.CIR.0000029818.65521.A9

Horswell J, Speir T (2006) Arsenic phytotoxicity: effect on crop yield and crop quality. In: Nadebaum P, Naidu R, Smith E et al (eds) Managing arsenic in the environment: from soil to human health. CSIRO Publishing, Clayton, pp 183–208

Horswell J, Weitz HJ, Percival HJ, Speir TW (2006) Impact of heavy metal amended sewage sludge on forest soils as assessed by bacterial and fungal biosensors. Biol Fertil Soils 42:569–576. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00374-005-0070-5

Hu X, Jin W, Lv W et al (2013) Investigation and evaluation on heavy metal copper and cadmium contaminations of vegetables grown in Huanggang city of China. Adv J Food Sci Technol 5:106–109

Hunaiti AA, Soud M (2000) Effect of lead concentration on the level of glutathione, glutathione S-transferase, reductase and peroxidase in human blood. Sci Total Environ 248:45–50. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0048-9697(99)00548-3

Hymete A, Eticha T (2015) Determination of some heavy metals in barley locally grown for brewing and it's Malt in Ethiopia. J Bioanal Biomed 7:171–173. https://doi.org/10.4172/1948-593X.1000139

IARC (2017) IARC monographs on the evaluation of carcinogenic risks to humans. International Agency for Research on Cancer, Lyon. http://www.iarc.fr/. Accessed 30 Jan 2017
Ihesinachi K, Eresiya D (2014) Evaluation of heavy metals in orange, pineapple, avocado pear and pawpaw from a farm in Kaani, Bori, Rivers State. Int Res J Public Environ Heal 1:87–94
Iqbal A, Khalil IA, Ateeq N, Sayyar Khan M (2006) Nutritional quality of important food legumes. Food Chem 97:331–335. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.foodchem.2005.05.011
Islam MS, Ahmed MK, Habibullah-Al-Mamun M (2014) Heavy metals in cereals and pulses: health implications in Bangladesh. J Agric Food Chem 62:10828–10835. https://doi.org/10.1021/jf502486q
Ismael DS, Nabil RH, Dina AS (2016) The relationship of heavy metals contents in soils to their content in legume seeds used in famous traditional food in Kurdistan region-Iraq. Potravinarstvo 10:550–556. https://doi.org/10.5219/663
Ismail F, Anjum MR, Mamon AN, Kazi TG (2011) Trace metal contents of vegetables and fruits of Hyderabad retail market. Pakistan J Nutr 10:365–372. https://doi.org/10.3923/pjn.2011.365.372
Ismail A, Riaz M, Akhtar S et al (2014) Heavy metals in vegetables and respective soils irrigated by canal, municipal waste and tube well waters. Food Addit Contam B 7:213–219. https://doi.org/10.1080/19393210.2014.888783
Jaishankar M, Tseten T, Anbalagan N et al (2014) Toxicity, mechanism and health effects of some heavy metals. Interdiscip Toxicol 7:60–72. https://doi.org/10.2478/intox-2014-0009
Järup L (2003) Hazards of heavy metal contamination. Br Med Bull 68:167–182. https://doi.org/10.1093/bmb/ldg032
Jarup L, Akesso A (2009) Current status of cadmium as an environmental health problem. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 238:201–208
Jin T, Nordberg G, Ye T et al (2004) Osteoporosis and renal dysfunction in a general population exposed to cadmium in China. Environ Res 96:353–359. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.envres.2004.02.012
Johnson C (2004) Mercury in the environment: sources, toxicities, and prevention of exposure. Pediatr Ann 33:437–442
Jomova K, Valko M (2011) Advances in metal-induced oxidative stress and human disease. Toxicology 283:65–87. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tox.2011.03.001
Jorhem L, Sundström B, Engman J (2001) Cadmium and other metals in Swedish wheat and rye flours: longitudinal study, 1983–1997. J AOAC Int 84:1984–1992
Joshipura KJ, Hung HC, Rimm EB et al (2003) Periodontal disease, tooth loss, and incidence of ischemic stroke. Stroke 34:47–52. https://doi.org/10.1161/01.STR.0000052974.79428.0C
Kalis EJJ, Temminghoff EJM, Weng L, van Riemsdijk WH (2006) Effects of humic acid and competing cations on metal uptake by Lolium perenne. Environ Toxicol Chem 25:702–711
Karavoltsos S, Sakellari A, Dimopoulos M et al (2002) Cadmium content in foodstuffs from the Greek market. Food Addit Contam 19:954–962. https://doi.org/10.1080/02652030210136973
Khan MA, Castro-Guerrero N, Mendoza-Cozatl DG (2014) Moving toward a precise nutrition: preferential loading of seeds with essential nutrients over non-essential toxic elements. Front Plant Sci 5:51. https://doi.org/10.3389/fpls.2014.00051
Khan ZI, Ahmad K, Ashraf M et al (2015) Bioaccumulation of heavy metals and metalloids in luffa (*Luffa cylindrica* L.) irrigated with domestic wastewater in Jhang, Pakistan: a prospect for human nutrition. Pakistan J Bot 47:217–224
Kim B, McBride MB, Richards BK, Steenhuis TS (2007) The long-term effect of sludge application on Cu, Zn, and Mo behavior in soils and accumulation in soybean seeds. Plant Soil 299:227–236. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11104-007-9377-3
Krejpcio Z, Sionkowski S, Bartela J (2005) Safety of fresh fruits and juices available on the Polish market as determined by heavy metal residues. Polish J Environ Stud 14:877–881
Krohn RM, Raqib R, Akhtar E et al (2016) A high-selenium lentil dietary intervention in Bangladesh to counteract arsenic toxicity: study protocol for a randomized controlled trial. Trials 17:218. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13063-016-1344-y
Lambert R, Grant C, Sauvé S (2007) Cadmium and zinc in soil solution extracts following the application of phosphate fertilizers. Sci Total Environ 378:293–305. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2007.02.008

Leblanc J, Guérin T, Noël L et al (2005) Dietary exposure estimates of 18 elements from the 1st French Total Diet Study. Food Addit Contam 22:624–641. https://doi.org/10.1080/02652030500135367

Lente I, Brimah AK, Atiemo S et al (2014) Heavy metal pollution of vegetable crops irrigated with wastewater in Accra, Ghana. West African J Appl Ecol 22:41–58

Leshe S, Tessema M (2014) Determination of levels of essential and toxic heavy metals in lentil (Lens Culinaris Medik) by flame atomic. AJCE 4:16–34

Lin J-Y, Tang C-Y (2007) Determination of total phenolic and flavonoid contents in selected fruits and vegetables, as well as their stimulatory effects on mouse splenocyte proliferation. Food Chem 101:140–147. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.foodchem.2006.01.014

Linkon KMMR, Satter MA, Jabin SA et al (2015) Mineral and heavy metal contents of some vegetable available in local market of Dhaka city in Bangladesh. IOSR J Environ Sci Toxicol Food Technol 9:2319–2399. https://doi.org/10.9790/2402-09510106

Liu X, Song Q, Tang Y et al (2013) Human health risk assessment of heavy metals in soil–vegetable system: a multi-medium analysis. Sci Total Environ 463–464:530–540. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2013.06.064

Llorent-Martínez EJ, Ortega-Barrales P, Fernández-De Córdova ML et al (2011) Investigation by ICP-MS of trace element levels in vegetable edible oils produced in Spain. Food Chem 127:1257–1262. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.foodchem.2011.01.064

Manchali S, Chidambara Murthy KN, Patil BS (2012) Crucial facts about health benefits of popular cruciferous vegetables. J Funct Foods 4:94–106. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jff.2011.08.004

Maqsood M, Hussain S, Aziz T, Ashraf M (2011) Wheat-exuded organic acids influence zinc release from calcareous soils. Pedosphere 21:657–665

Martorell I, Perelló G, Martí-Cid R et al (2011) Human exposure to arsenic, cadmium, mercury, and lead from foods in Catalonia, Spain: temporal trend. Biol Trace Elem Res 142:309–322. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12011-010-8787-x

Mausi G, Simiyu G, Lutta S (2014) Assessment of selected heavy metal concentrations in selected fresh fruits in Eldoret Town, Kenya. J Environ Earth Sci 4:1–8

McLaughlin MJ, Hamon RE, McLaren RG et al (2000) Review: a bioavailability-based rationale for controlling metal and metalloid contamination of agricultural land in Australia and New Zealand. Soil Res 38:1037–1086

MedlinePlus (2014) Vegeterian diet. U.S. National Library of Medicine, Bethesda, MD. https://medlineplus.gov/ency/article/002465.htm. Accessed 30 Jan 2017

Mehari TF, Greene L, Duncan AL, Fakayode SO (2015) Trace and macro elements concentrations in selected fresh fruits, vegetables, herbs, and processed foods in North Carolina, USA. J Environ Prot (Irvine, CA) 6:573–583

Menke A, Muntner P, Silbergeld EK et al (2009) Cadmium levels in urine and mortality among U.S. adults. Environ Health Perspect 117:190–196. https://doi.org/10.1289/ehp.11236

Mertz W (ed) (1986) Trace elements in human and animal nutrition, 5th edn. Academic Press, Inc., Orlando, FL

Messner B, Bernhard D (2010) Cadmium and cardiovascular diseases: cell biology, pathophysiology, and epidemiological relevance. BioMetals 23:811–822

Micić RJ, Dimitrijević DS, Kostić DA et al (2013) Content of heavy metals in mulberry fruits and their extracts-correlation analysis. Am J Anal Chem 4:674–682. https://doi.org/10.4236/ajac.2013.411081

Mohammadpourfard I, Shariatifar N, Jahed-Khaniki GR, Ebadi-Fathabad E (2015) Determination of heavy metals in apricot and almond oils. Iran J Heal Sci 3:18–24. https://doi.org/10.3760/cma.j.issn.0366-6999.2010.07.014

Moodley R, Kindness A, Jonnalagadda SB (2007) Elemental composition and chemical characteristics of five edible nuts (almond, Brazil, pecan, macadamia and walnut) consumed in Southern Africa. J Environ Sci Health B 42:585–591. https://doi.org/10.1080/03601230701391591

Moon K, Guallar E, Navas-Acien A (2012) Arsenic exposure and cardiovascular disease: an updated systematic review. Curr Atheroscler Rep 14:542–555

Mubofu EB (2012) Heavy metal content in some commonly consumed vegetables from Kariakoo market, Dar es Salaam, Tanzania. Tanz J Sci 38:201–208
Mudryj AN, Yu N, Aukema HM (2014) Nutritional and health benefits of pulses. Appl Physiol Nutr Metab 39:1197–1204. https://doi.org/10.1139/apnm-2013-0557
Mulligan CN, Yong RN, Gibbs BF (2001) Remediation technologies for metal-contaminated soils and groundwater: an evaluation. Eng Geol 60:193–207. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0013-7952(00)00101-0
Muñoz O, Bastias JM, Araya M et al (2005) Estimation of the dietary intake of cadmium, lead, mercury, and arsenic by the population of Santiago (Chile) using a Total Diet Study. Food Chem Toxicol 43:1647–1655. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fct.2005.05.006
Mustapha H, Adeboye O (2014) Heavy metals accumulation in edible part of vegetables irrigated with untreated municipal wastewater in tropical savannah zone, Nigeria. African J Environ Sci Technol 8:460–463. https://doi.org/10.5897/AJEST2013.1531
Nankishore A (2014) Heavy metal levels in leafy vegetables from selected markets in Guyana. J Agric Technol 10:651–663
Naujokas MF, Anderson B, Ahsan H et al (2013) The broad scope of health effects from chronic arsenic exposure: update on a worldwide public health problem. Environ Health Perspect 121:295–302. https://doi.org/10.1289/ehp.1205875
Ng JC, Wang J, Shraim A (2003) A global health problem caused by arsenic from natural sources. Chemosphere 52:1353–1359. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0045-6535(03)00470-3
Nielsen FH, Myron DR, Givand SH et al (1975) Nickel deficiency in rats. J Nutr 105:1620–1630
Nielsen FH, Shuler TR, McLeod TG, Zimmerman TJ (1984) Nickel influences iron metabolism through physiologic, pharmacologic and toxicologic mechanisms in the rat. J Nutr 114:1280–1288
Nielsen GD, Søderberg U, Jørgensen PJ et al (1999) Absorption and retention of nickel from drinking water in relation to food intake and nickel sensitivity. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 154:67–75. https://doi.org/10.1006/taap.1998.8577
Nogaim QA, Makarem M, Alwah M, Atef M (2013) Survey of some heavy metals in Yemeni vegetables. Merit Res J Food Sci Technol 1:36–42
Nogawa K, Kobayashi E, Okubo Y, Suwazono Y (2004) Environmental cadmium exposure, adverse effects and preventive measures in Japan. In: BioMetals. Springer, Basel, pp 581–587
Nordberg G, Jin T, Bernard A et al (2002) Low bone density and renal dysfunction following environmental cadmium exposure in China. AMBIO: J Human Environ 31:478–481. http://dx.doi.org/10.1639/0044-7447(2002)031[0478:LBDARD]2.0.CO;2
NTP (2011) NTP 12th report on carcinogens. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Washington, DC
Ogunkunle ATJ, Bello OS, Ojofeitimi OS (2014) Determination of heavy metal contamination of street-vended fruits and vegetables in Lagos state, Nigeria. Int Food Res J 21:2115–2120
Ohta H, Cherian MG (1991) Gastrointestinal absorption of cadmium and metallothionein. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 107:63–72. https://doi.org/10.1016/0041-008X(91)90331-8
Okarter N, Liu RH (2010) Health benefits of whole grain phytochemicals. Food Eng Ingredients 35:18–22. https://doi.org/10.1080/10408390802248734
Okoronkwo N, Igwe J, Onwuchekwa E (2005) Risk and health implications of polluted soils for crop production. African J Biotechnol 4:1521–1524
Olivieri G, Novakovic M, Savaskan E et al (2002) The effects of beta-estradiol on SHSY5Y neuroblastoma cells during heavy metal induced oxidative stress, neurotoxicity, and beta-amyloid secretion. Neuroscience 113:849–855. pii: S0306452202002117
Ondrasek G, Romic D, Rengel Z et al (2009) Cadmium accumulation by muskmelon under salt stress in contaminated organic soil. Sci Total Environ 407:2175–2182
Oorts K, Smolders E, Degryse F et al (2008) Solubility and toxicity of antimony trioxide (Sb_2O_3) in soil. Environ Sci Technol 42:4378–4383
Orisakwe OEOE, Nduka JKJK, Amadi CNCN et al (2012) Heavy metals health risk assessment for population via consumption of food crops and fruits in Owerri, South Eastern, Nigeria. Chem Cent J 6:1–7. https://doi.org/10.1186/1752-153X-6-77

Othman OC (2001) Heavy metals in green vegetables and soils from vegetable gardens in Dar es Salaam, Tanzania. Tanzania J Sci 27:37–48
Othman ZAA (2010) Lead contamination in selected foods from Riyadh city market and estimation of the daily intake. Molecules 15:7482–7497. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules15107482
Payler D, Pomare E, Heaton K (1975) The effect of wheat bran on intestinal transit. Gut 16:209–213
Pehluvan M, Karlidag H, Turan M (2012) Heavy metal levels of mulberry (*Morus alba* L.) grown at different distances from the roadsides. J Anim Plant Sci 22:665–670
Peralta JR, Gardea-Torresdey JL, Tiemann KJ et al (2001) Uptake and effects of five heavy metals on seed germination and plant growth in alfalfa (*Medicago sativa* L.). Bull Environ Contam Toxicol 66:727–734. https://doi.org/10.1007/s001280069
Peralta-Videa JR, Lopez ML, Narayan M et al (2009) The biochemistry of environmental heavy metal uptake by plants: implications for the food chain. Int J Biochem Cell Biol 41:1665–1677. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biocel.2009.03.005
Pereira MC, Boschetti W, Rampazzo R et al (2014) Mineral characterization of native fruits from the southern region of Brazil. Food Sci Technol 34:258–266. https://doi.org/10.1590/fst.2014.0049
Peters JL, Perlstein TS, Perry MJ et al (2010) Cadmium exposure in association with history of stroke and heart failure. Environ Res 110:199–206. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.envres.2009.12.004
Phuong TD, Chuong PV, Khiem DT, Kokot S (1999) Elemental content of Vietnamese rice. Part 1. Sampling, analysis and comparison with previous studies. Analyst 124:553–560. https://doi.org/10.1039/a808796b
Poiroux-Gonord F, Bidel LPR, Fanciullino AL et al (2010) Health benefits of vitamins and secondary metabolites of fruits and vegetables and prospects to increase their concentrations by agronomic approaches. J Agric Food Chem 58:12065–12082. https://doi.org/10.1021/jf1037745
Radwan MA, Salama AK (2006) Market basket survey for some heavy metals in Egyptian fruits and vegetables. Food Chem Toxicol 44:1273–1278. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fct.2006.02.004
Rahman IMM, Hasan MT (2007) Arsenic incorporation into garden vegetables irrigated with contaminated water. J Appl Sci Environ Manag 11:105–112
Rahman MA, Rahman MM, Reichman SM et al (2014) Heavy metals in Australian grown and imported rice and vegetables on sale in Australia: health hazard. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 100:53–60. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoenv.2013.11.024
Ramesh HL, Murthy VNY (2010) Assessment of heavy metal contamination in green leafy vegetables grown in Bangalore urban district of Karnataka. Adv Life Sci Technol 6:40–51
Rao MV, Chinoy NJ, Suthar MB, Rajvanshi MI (2001) Role of ascorbic acid on mercuric chloride-induced genotoxicity in human blood cultures. Toxicol In Vitro 15:649–654
Rashed MN (2015) Photocatalytic degradation of divalent metals under sunlight irradiation using nanoparticle TiO_2 modified concrete materials (recycled glass cullet). In: Recent progress in desalination, environmental and marine outfall systems. Springer International Publishing, Cham, pp 93–108
Raskin I, Ribnicky DM, Komarnytsky S et al (2002) Plants and human health in the twenty-first century. Trends Biotechnol 20:522–531. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0167-7799(02)02080-2
Ravi V, Gangadhar B, Naidu GR, Basha ST (2012) Toxicity of heavy metals in Totapuri mango in Chittoor district of Andhra Pradesh. ASIAN J Environ Sci 7:62–66
Rehman W, Shah SWH, Younis K et al (2011) A comparative study of various grains from the different cities of Pakistan. Environ Monit Assess 175:151–156. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10661-010-1501-9
Rodushkin I, Engström E, Sörlin D, Baxter D (2008) Levels of inorganic constituents in raw nuts and seeds on the Swedish market. Sci Total Environ 392:290–304. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2007.11.024
Rose M, Baxter M, Brereton N, Baskaran C (2010) Dietary exposure to metals and other elements in the 2006 UK Total Diet Study and some trends over the last 30 years. Food Addit Contam 27:1380–1404. https://doi.org/10.1080/19440049.2010.496794

Roy A, Manna P, Sil PC (2009) Prophylactic role of taurine on arsenic mediated oxidative renal dysfunction via MAPKs/NF-kappaB and mitochondria dependent pathways. Free Radic Res 43:995–1007. https://doi.org/10.1080/10715760903164998

Sabaté J, Ang Y (2009) Nuts and health outcomes: new epidemiologic evidence. Am J Clin Nutr 89:1643S–1648S. https://doi.org/10.3945/ajcn.2009.26736Q.Am

Sacks FM, Appel LJ, Moore TJ et al (1999) A dietary approach to prevent hypertension: a review of the Dietary Approaches to Stop Hypertension (DASH) Study. Clin Cardiol 22:III6–II10. https://doi.org/10.1002/clc.4960221503

Saeed A, Akhter MW, Iqbal M (2005) Removal and recovery of heavy metals from aqueous solution using papaya wood as a new biosorbent. Sep Purif Technol 45:25–31. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.seppur.2005.02.004

Saha N, Zaman MR (2013) Evaluation of possible health risks of heavy metals by consumption of foodstuffs available in the central market of Rajshahi City, Bangladesh. Environ Monit Assess 185:3867–3878. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10661-012-2835-2

Saini M, Sharma KC, Sharma M (2014) Study of heavy metal accumulation in Spinach irrigated with industrial waste water of Bhiwadi industrial area, Rajasthan. Res J Biol 2:66–72

Sajib MAM, Jahan S, Islam MZ et al (2014) Nutritional evaluation and heavy metals content of selected tropical fruits in Bangladesh. Int Food Res J 21:609–615

Sakamoto M, Kakita A, Wakabayashi K et al (2002) Evaluation of changes in methylmercury accumulation in the developing rat brain and its effects: a study with consecutive and moderate dose exposure throughout gestation and lactation periods. Brain Res 949:51–59

Salnikow K, Zhitkovich A (2007) Genetic and epigenetic mechanisms in metal carcinogenesis and cocarcinogenesis: nickel, arsenic, and chromium. Chem Res Toxicol 21:28–44

Samal L, Garg AK (2012) Status of toxic heavy metals in cereal grains and pulses in Bareilly district of Uttar Pradesh. Indian Vet J 89:25–27

Samikkannu T, Chen C-H, Yih L-H et al (2003) Reactive oxygen species are involved in arsenic trioxide inhibition of pyruvate dehydrogenase activity. Arch Environ Health Int J 16:409–414

Santos E, Lauria D, Porto da Silveira C (2004) Assessment of daily intake of trace elements due to consumption of foodstuffs by adult inhabitants of Rio de Janeiro city. Sci Total Environ 327:69–79. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2004.01.016

Sarwar F (2013) The role of oilseeds nutrition in human health: a critical review. J Cereal Oilseeds 4:97–100. https://doi.org/10.5897/JCO12.024

Satarug S, Baker JR, Reilly PEB et al (2002) Cadmium levels in the lung, liver, kidney cortex, and urine samples from Australians without occupational exposure to metals. Arch Environ Health 57:69–77. https://doi.org/10.1080/00039890209602919

Sattar A, Wahid M, Durrani SK (1989) Concentration of selected heavy metals in spices, dry fruits and plant nuts. Plant Foods Hum Nutr 39:279–286. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF01091938

Schmidt A, Anke M, Groppel B, Kronemann H (1984) Effects of As-deficiency on skeletal muscle, myocardium and liver—a histochemical and ultrastructural study. Exp Pathol 25:195–197

Sharma RK, Agrawal M, Marshall FM (2007) Heavy metals contamination of soil and vegetables in suburban areas of Varanasi. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 66:37–41

Sharma RK, Agrawal M, Marshall FM (2009) Heavy metals in vegetables collected from production and market sites of a tropical urban area of India. Food Chem Toxicol 47:583–591. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fct.2008.12.016

Sigel A, Sigel H, Sigel R (eds) (2013) Interrelations between essential metal ions and human diseases. Springer, Dordrecht

Silbergeld EK, Waalkes M (2000) Lead as a carcinogen: experimental evidence and mechanisms of action. Am J Ind Med 38:316–323. https://doi.org/10.1002/1097-0274

Singh V, Garg AN (2006) Availability of essential trace elements in Indian cereals, vegetables and spices using INAA and the contribution of spices to daily dietary intake. Food Chem 94:81–89. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.foodchem.2004.10.053

Singh A, Sharma RK, Agrawal M, Marshall FM (2010) Health risk assessment of heavy metals via dietary intake of foodstuffs from the wastewater irrigated site of a dry tropical area of India. Food Chem Toxicol 48:611–619

Sobukola OP, Adeniran OM, Odedairo AA, Kajihausa OE (2010) Heavy metal levels of some fruits and leafy vegetables from selected markets in Lagos, Nigeria. African J Food Sci 4:389–393
Sood A, Uniyal PL, Prasanna R, Ahluwalia AS (2012) Phytoremediation potential of aquatic macrophyte, Azolla. Ambio 41:122–137
Spears JW, Harvey RW, Samsell LJ (1986) Effects of dietary nickel and protein on growth, nitrogen metabolism and tissue concentrations of nickel, iron, zinc, manganese and copper in calves. J Nutr 116:1873–1882
Staessen JA, Roels HA, Emelianov D et al (1999) Environmental exposure to cadmium, forearm bone density, and risk of fractures: prospective population study. Lancet 353:1140–1144
Stančić Z, Vujević D, Gomaz A et al (2016) Detection of heavy metals in common vegetables at Varaždin City Market, Croatia. Arch Ind Hyg Toxicol 67:340–350. https://doi.org/10.1515/aiht-2016-67-2823
Stangl GI, Kirchgessner M (1996) Nickel deficiency alters liver lipid metabolism in rats. J Nutr 126:2466
Stark AH, Madar Z (2002) Olive oil as a functional food: epidemiology and nutritional approaches. Nutr Rev 60:170–176
Steenland K, Boffetta P (2000) Lead and cancer in humans: where are we now? Am J Ind Med 38:295–299. https://doi.org/10.1002/1097-0274(200009)38:3<295::AID-AJIM8>3.0.CO;2-L
Škrbić B, Živančev J, Mrmoš N (2013) Concentrations of arsenic, cadmium and lead in selected foodstuffs from Serbian market basket: estimated intake by the population from the Serbia. Food Chem Toxicol 58:440–448. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fct.2013.05.026
Tangahu BV, Sheikh Abdullah SR, Basri H et al (2011) A review on heavy metals (As, Pb, and Hg) uptake by plants through phytoremediation. Int J Chem Eng 2011:1–31. https://doi.org/10.1155/2011/939161
Tasrina R, Rowshon A (2015) Heavy metals contamination in vegetables and its growing soil. J Environ Anal Chem 2:142. https://doi.org/10.4172/2380-2391.1000142
Tchounwou PB, Yedjou CG, Patlolla AK, Sutton DJ (2012) Heavy metals toxicity and the environment. Mol Clin Environ Toxicol 101:133–164. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-7643-8340-4_6
Tegegne WA (2015) Assessment of some heavy metals concentration in selected cereals collected from local markets of Ambo City, Ethiopia. J Cereal Oilseeds 6:8–13. https://doi.org/10.5897/JCO15.0138
Tejera RL, Luis G, González-Weller D et al (2013) Metals in wheat flour; comparative study and safety control. Nutr Hosp 28:506–513. https://doi.org/10.3305/nh.2013.28.2.6287
Tipping E, Smith EJ, Lawlor AJ et al (2003) Predicting the release of metals from ombrotrophic peat due to drought-induced acidification. Environ Pollut 123:239–253
Tremaroli V, Bäckhed F (2012) Functional interactions between the gut microbiota and host metabolism. Nature 489:242–249. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature11552
Tripathi RM, Raghunath R, Krishnamoorthy TM (1997) Dietary intake of heavy metals in Bombay city, India. Sci Total Environ 208:149–159. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0048-9697(97)00290-8
ul Islam E, Yang X, He Z, Mahmood Q (2007) Assessing potential dietary toxicity of heavy metals in selected vegetables and food crops. J Zhejiang Univ Sci B 8:1–13
USDA (2018) USDA food composition databases: National Nutrient Database for Standard Reference. United States Department of Agriculture Agricultural Research Service, Washington, DC. https://ndb.nal.usda.gov/ndb/foods. Accessed 10 Nov 2018
Usubalieva A, Batkibekova M, Hintelmann H, Judge R (2013) The content of zinc, copper, lead and cadmium in some vegetables of Kyrgyzstan. Pakistan J Food Sci 23:189–193
Uthus EO (1992) Evidence for arsenic essentiality. Environ Geochem Health 14:55–58. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF01783629
Uthus EO (2003) Arsenic essentiality: a role affecting methionine metabolism. J Trace Elem Exp Med 16:345–355. https://doi.org/10.1002/jtra.10044
von Hoffen LP, Säumel I (2014) Orchards for edible cities: cadmium and lead content in nuts, berries, pome and stone fruits harvested within the inner city neighbourhoods in Berlin, Germany. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 101:233–239. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoenv.2013.11.023

Valko M, Leibfritz D, Moncol J et al (2007) Free radicals and antioxidants in normal physiological functions and human disease. Int J Biochem Cell Biol 39:44–84

Verstraeten SV, Aimo L, Oteiza PI (2008) Aluminium and lead: molecular mechanisms of brain toxicity. Arch Toxicol 82:789–802

Viehweger K (2014) How plants cope with heavy metals. Bot Stud 55:35. https://doi.org/10.1186/1999-3110-55-35

Vollmannova A, Zupka S, Bajcan D, et al (2015) Dangerous heavy metals in soil and small forest fruit as a result of old environmental loads. In: Proceedings of the 14th international conference on environmental science and technology, pp 3–5

Waalkes MP, Diwan BA, Ward JM et al (1995) Renal tubular tumors and atypical hyperplasias in B6C3F1 mice exposed to lead acetate during gestation and lactation occur with minimal chronic nephropathy. Cancer Res 55:5265–5271

Waalkes MP, Liu J, Ward JM, Diwan BA (2004) Animal models for arsenic carcinogenesis: inorganic arsenic is a transplacental carcinogen in mice. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 198:377–384

Waisberg M, Joseph P, Hale B, Beyersmann D (2003) Molecular and cellular mechanisms of cadmium carcinogenesis. Toxicology 192:95–117

Wang HS, Sthiannopkao S, Chen ZJ et al (2013) Arsenic concentration in rice, fish, meat and vegetables in Cambodia: a preliminary risk assessment. Environ Geochem Health 35:745–755. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10653-013-9532-0

WCRF/AICR (2007) Food, nutrition, physical activity, and the prevention of cancer: a global perspective. World Cancer Research Fund/American Institute for Cancer Research, Washington, DC

WHO (2016) Mercury and health. http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs361/en/. Accessed 30 Jan 2017

WHO/FAO (2016) General standard for contaminants and toxins in food and feed. Food and Agriculture Organization, World Health Organization, Rome, Geneva

Wilcox DE (2013) Arsenic. Can this toxic metalloid sustain life? In: Sigel A, Sigel H, Sigel RKO (eds) Interrelations between essential, Metal ions and human diseases, metal ions in life sciences, vol 13. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 475–498

Williams J (2002) Phytoremediation in wetland ecosystems: progress, problems, and potential. CRC Crit Rev Plant Sci 21:607–635. https://doi.org/10.1080/0735-260291044386

Woods VB, Fearon AM (2009) Dietary sources of unsaturated fatty acids for animals and their transfer into meat, milk and eggs: a review. Livest Sci 126:1–20

Yadav A, Yadav PK, Shukla PDN (2013) Investigation of heavy metal status in soil and vegetables grown in urban area of Allahabad, Uttar Pradesh, India. Int J Sci Res Publ 3:1–7

Yahaya M (2013) Heavy metal levels in selected green leafy vegetables obtained from Katsina central market, Katsina, North-western Nigeria. African J Pure Appl Chem 7:179–183. https://doi.org/10.5897/AJPAC2013.0499

Yedjou CG, Tchounwou PB (2007) N-acetyl-L-cysteine affords protection against lead-induced cytotoxicity and oxidative stress in human liver carcinoma (HepG2) cells. Int J Environ Res Public Health 4:132–137

Yokoi K, Uthus EO, Nielsen FH (2003) Nickel deficiency diminishes sperm quantity and movement in rats. Biol Trace Elem Res 93:141–154. https://doi.org/10.1385/BTER:93:1-3:141

Youdim KA, McDonald J, Kalt W, Joseph JA (2002) Potential role of dietary flavonoids in reducing microvascular endothelium vulnerability to oxidative and inflammatory insults. J Nutr Biochem 13:282–288. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0955-2863(01)00221-2

Zahir F, Rizwi SJ, Haq SK, Khan RH (2005) Low dose mercury toxicity and human health. Environ Toxicol Pharmacol 20:351–360. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.etap.2005.03.007

Zahoor A, Jaffar M, Saqib M (2003) Elemental distribution in summer fruits of Pakistan. Nutr Food Sci 33:203–207. https://doi.org/10.1108/00346650310499712

Zhang Z, Solaiman ZM, Meney K et al (2013) Biochars immobilize soil cadmium, but do not improve growth of emergent wetland species *Juncus subsecundus* in cadmium-contaminated soil. J Soils Sediments 13:140–151. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11368-012-0571-4

Zheng N, Wang Q, Zhang X et al (2007) Population health risk due to dietary intake of heavy metals in the industrial area of Huludao city, China. Sci Total Environ 387:96–104. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2007.07.044

Zhou Z, Fan Y, Wang M (2000) Heavy metal contamination in vegetables and their control in China. Food Rev Int 16(2):239–255. https://doi.org/10.1081/FRI-100100288

Zhu F, Fan W, Wang X et al (2011) Health risk assessment of eight heavy metals in nine varieties of edible vegetable oils consumed in China. Food Chem Toxicol 49:3081–3085. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fct.2011.09.019

Ganoderma lucidum: A Macro Fungus with Phytochemicals and Their Pharmacological Properties

Md Faruque Ahmad

Introduction

Mushrooms are the reproductive structures (fruiting body or sporocarp) of certain fungi (Jonathan et al. 2009). It is estimated that there are around 70,000 species which are described among approximately 1.5 million species of mushrooms globally (Prasad and Wesely 2008). *Ganoderma lucidum* (Fr.) Karst. (Ganodermataceae), basidiomycetous fungi, has been employing as a health remedy in China, Japan, and Korea for centuries (Kim and Kim 1990). More than 250 Ganoderma species have been described globally (Wasser 2011). However, in aspects of therapeutic applications and literature citations, Ganoderma generally refers to the species of *G. lucidum* (Fig. 1). The fungus has been used as a traditional Chinese medicine (TCM) to treat different ailments for more than 4000 years, and regular use of mushroom extracts is supposed to preserve human vitality and to promote longevity (Wachtel-Galor et al. 2003; Chang and Buswell 1999).

Common Names

China	Lingzhi, ling zhi cao, ling chih, hong ling zhi, chi zhi
Japan	Reishi, mannentake, rokkaku-reishi
United States	Reishi mushroom (Herbs of Commerce)
Korea	Young ji
Vietnam	Ling chi

M. F. Ahmad (✉)
Department of Clinical Nutrition, College of Applied Medical Sciences, Jazan University, Jazan, Kingdom of Saudi Arabia
e-mail: mfahmad@jazanu.edu.sa

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_21

Fig. 1 *Ganoderma lucidum*: (**a**) Basidiocarp and (**b**) Powder

Taxonomical Classification

Kingdom	Fungi
Phylum	Basidiomycota
Class	Agaricomycetes
Order	Polyporales
Family	Ganodermataceae
Genus	Ganoderma species
Species	*G. lucidum*

Various biological active constituents of *Ganoderma lucidum* that have been revealed include triterpenoids, carbohydrate, proteins, proteopolysaccharides, sterols, alkaloids, nucleotides, lactones and fatty acids, vitamins, and minerals (Chang and Buswell 2003; Ahmad et al. 2013a; Wachtel-Galor et al. 2003; Paterson 2006; Akihisa et al. 2007). Various medicinal properties have been reported from the these pharmacologically active compounds, such as immunomodulatory (Ishimoto et al. 2017), anticancer (Jin et al. 2016; Lakshmi et al. 2006), antioxidant (Krishna et al. 2016; Gill et al. 2016a), antiarthritic (Pan et al. 2017), hypoglycemic (Seto et al. 2009; Berger et al. 2004), carcinostatic (Sliva, 2003), cardioprotective ((Rajasekaran and Kalaimagal 2012), anti-inflammatory (Cai et al. 2016), proapoptotic (Gill et al. 2016b), anti-allergic (Ji et al. 2007; Tasaka et al. 1988a, b), anti-angiogenic (Song et al. 2004), antiosteoporotic (Elhassaneen et al. 2016), antinociceptive (Sheena et al. 2003), antiviral (Li and Wang, 2006), anti-HIV (Akbar and Yam 2011), antifungal (Nayak et al. 2010), antibacterial (Quereshi et al. 2010), antiandrogenic (Fujita et al. 2005), and hepatoprotective properties (Powell 2015).

Table 1 Types of Reishi and their use

Color	Taste	Use
Red	Bitter	Aids internal organs and improves memory
Blue	Sour	Improves eyesight and liver function
White	Hot	Protects kidney
Yellow	Sweet	Strengthen spleen function
Black	Salty	Improves lung function
Purple	Sweet	Enhances function of eyes joints, helps complexion

Diversity of Reishi

Although different species of Reishi are available, only six types have been considered in superior aspect to reveal potential biomedical applications. These are red, black, blue, yellow, white, and purple (Table 1). Among these, black and red Reishi have demonstrated the most significant health-enhancing effects, and both are therefore widely applied in the global health supplement market today. Black reishi is unevenly shaped and can measure up to 10 inches in diameter, although most mature specimens are about 6 inches in diameter. The majority of reishi products declare to be using black Reishi (Babu and Subhasree 2008). High content of polysaccharides in red Reishi makes it particularly potent (Komoda et al. 1989).

Cultivation

The basidiocarp (fruiting body) of *Ganoderma* is cultivated worldwide by various methods including wood log, pot or bottle, sawdust bag, and tank cultivation.

Over the past three decades, numerous studies have been demonstrated to find out the best method to produce high quality of products. Most of the commercial *G. lucidum* products derive from its basidiocarp (Fig. 2).

It has become recent interest in producing biologically active substances by fermentation techniques which is creating a center of attention. Advantage of fermentation over traditional basidiocarp cultivation is the reduction in the time spent to obtain the product of interest. The production of basidiocarp takes at least 3–5 months, and these traditional techniques do not guarantee a standardized product since the composition of the substrate, which affects basidiocarp composition, varies from batch to batch (Huang and Liu 2008). While the appreciable amounts of ganoderic acid and polysaccharides can be obtained by submerged fermentation after only 2–3 weeks (Wagner et al. 2003; Ahmad et al. 2013c). Some nutritional components of fermented and non-fermented *G. lucidum* can be seen in Table 2.

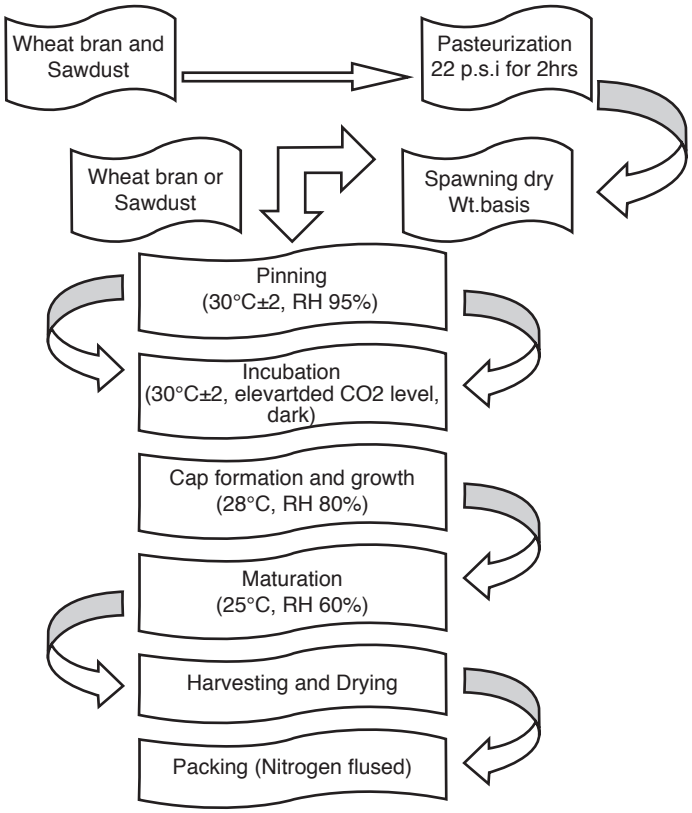


Fig. 2 General scheme of mushrooms production

Table 2 Main nutritional component of fermented products of *G. lucidum* and a non-fermented control on a dry basis

Component (%)	Fermented	Non-fermented
Protein	16.5 ± 0.7	11.0 ± 0.5
Reducing sugar	20.6 ± 0.8	4.2 ± 0.2
Starch	25.3 ± 0.8	64.5 ± 1.5
Crude fat	8.5 ± 0.3	10.3 ± 0.6

Marketed Formulation Other Than Medicinal

Physician and nutritionist have the same opinion that a person with a healthy diet intake does not need any supplementation but the modern lifestyle exposes to several diseases; various reasons such as lacking of exercise, pollutants, or unhealthy diet intakes are causes of high health risk. However, circumstances and situations make food supplements play important role in healthier life. The use of such supplements is a challenge to accomplish pleasing therapeutical outcomes with reduced side effects, as compared to other therapeutic agents. About two third of American population takes at

least one type of nutraceutical health product (Ahmad et al. 2011, Ahmad et al. 2013b). Among all the health products, *G. lucidum* is being widely used as nutritional supplements. That is why *G. lucidum* is available in various forms like capsule, powder, tea, tablet, coffee, jelly, and beverages in the market (Table 3). Now the intense interest of the public has become toward worth full effect of *G. lucidum* not only as a medicinal but also as a nutraceuticals and food supplements.

Table 3 Various formulations other than medicinal form of *G. lucidum* in the market

Different form	Application	Preparation/compound	References
Food	Food and drug	Extract	Boh et al. (2000)
	Food containing dietary fiber	Extract powder	Mayuzami and Fujiwara (1993)
	Fermented food	Mycelium	Tamura et al. (1987)
	Food or beverage for improving saccharide metabolism	Extract	Fujiwara and Sawai (1993)
	Yoghurt	Mycelial powder	Yoshii and Kai (1984)
	Healthy candy	Fruiting body powder or extract	Yamashita and Sato (1994)
	Jelly	Culture medium containing high viscous polysaccharides	Tsujikura and Higuchi (1991)
	Thickeners, emulsifiers, humectants. In food, chemical and pharmaceutical industries	Viscous polysaccharides	Murata et al. (1989)
Drinks	Coffee	Extract	Terada and Murata (1985)
	Health tea	Extract and finely cut fruiting body	Feng (1995)
	Health tonic	Protein-polysaccharide	Liang (1993)
	Alcoholic beverage		Yu (1994)
	Beer	Extract	Gao (1996)
		Aroma (instead of hops)	Naoi (1990)
	Wine	Fruiting body	Lin et al. (1998)
	Health drink vinegar	Fruiting body	Numata (1988)
Nutraceuticals	Organic capsules	*G. lucidum* with varying amounts of the different compounds	ganogoldreishi.coffee.com/products/nutraceuticals
	Organic sliced		
	Additional Supplements		
	Organic powder		
	Grape Seed capsule		
	Ganoderma tea bag		
Miscellaneous	Taiwan healthy pure toothpaste	*G. lucidum* with varying amounts of the different compounds	
	SOD facial mask		
	Elite lotion		

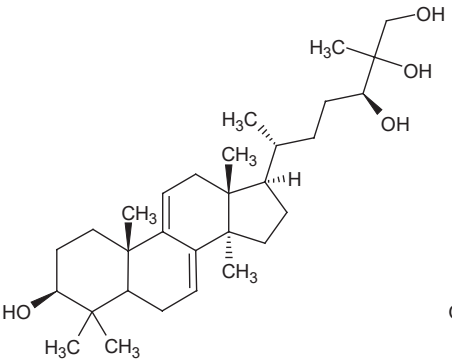
Methodology

The survey of the literature has been done by using PubMed and goggle scholar search engines to collect the phytochemical and pharmacological aspect of *G. lucidum* for the period of 1983–2017. The search was completed with keywords such as *G. lucidum* phytochemistry, *G. lucidum* and immunomodulatory, *G. lucidum* and antihistaminic, *G. lucidum* and hepatoprotective, *G. lucidum* and anticancer, *G. lucidum* and cardiovascular disease, *G. lucidum* and polysaccharide, *G. lucidum* and triterpenes, etc. Effort was made to document only the relevant literature in support of *G. lucidum*.

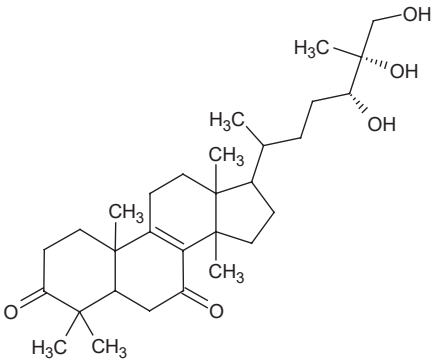
Major Bioactive Constituents and Their Pharmacological Properties

Triterpenes

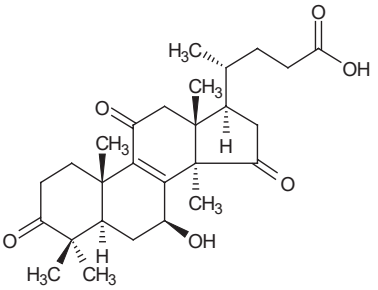
Terpenoids of *G. lucidum* have drawn considerable attention owing to their well-known pharmacological activities. Several highly oxygenated and pharmacologically active triterpenes have been isolated from *G. lucidum* (Cao et al. 2017; Huie and Di 2004) (Fig. 3). Various constituents of the triterpenes fraction consisted of ganoderic acids A, B, C, and D, lucidenic acid B, and ganodermanotriol (Table 4). More than 130 isoforms of ganoderic acids have been searched from fruiting bodies, spores, and mycelia of *G. lucidum* (Chen and Yu 1990). Some of them isolated more than 20 years ago and originally named ganoderic acids U, V, W, X, and Y that exhibited cytotoxicity against hepatoma cells in vitro (Toth et al. 1983). Ganoderic acids (GA) target different adaptor proteins contributing in cellular signaling pathways leading to the arrest of cell adhesion, proliferation, survival, invasion, metastasis, and other mitogenic processes (Lin et al. 2003; Jiang et al. 2004; Lin 2005). Cisplatin is a chemotherapy medication used to treat different types of cancers. Through suppressing JAK-1 and JAK-2 accessory proteins of JAK-STAT-3 signaling, ganoderic acid A augments chemosensitivity and aggravates the cytotoxicity of cisplatin in liver cancer cell lines (HepG2) (Yao et al. 2012). GA-C inhibiting the biosynthesis of farnesyl pyrophosphate (FPP) and the subsequent posttranslational modification via competitively inhibition of protein prenyltransferase (PPP). These modifications are important for cell membrane association and transforming activities (Lokody 2014; Komoda et al. 1989). Against hepatic carcinoma (HepG2, HepG2.2.15) and leukemia (P-388), similar cytotoxicity was also observed with methyl lucidenic acid; lucidenic acids A, C, and N; and ganoderic acid E. Through enhancing immune function in terms of IL-2 and IFN-γ expression and NK cell activity, lanostane triterpenoid ganoderic acid Me inhibited tumor growth and metastasis of Lewis lung carcinoma in T helper 1 responder C57BL/6 mice by employing cytokine-induced killer (CIK) cells to monitor the interaction between



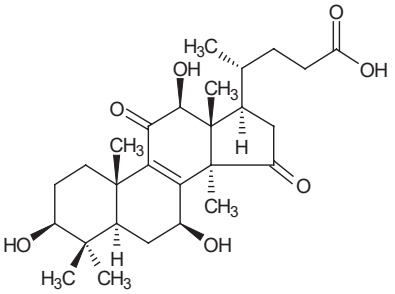
Ganoderiol A



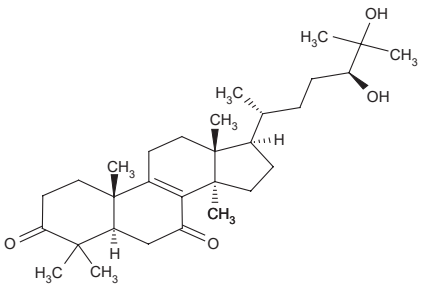
Ganoderiol D



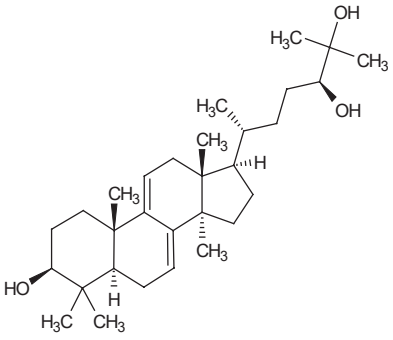
Lucidenic Acid A



Lucidenic Acid C

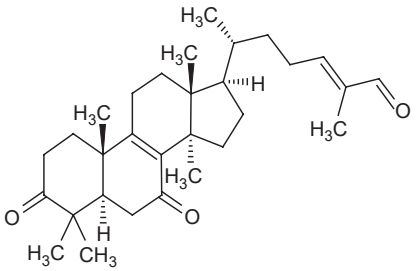


Lucidumol A

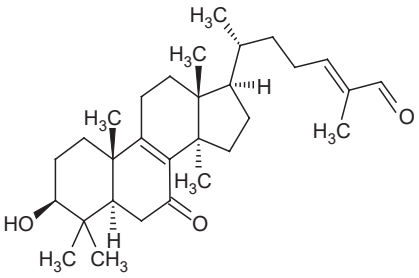


Lucidumol B

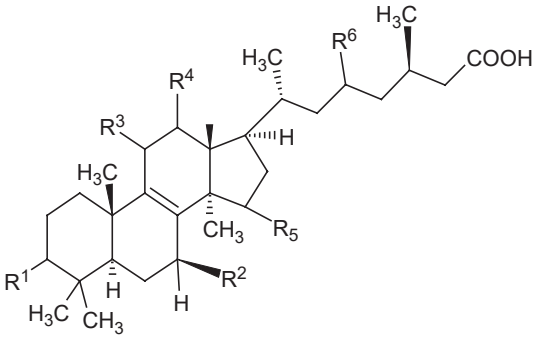
Fig. 3 Pharmacologically active triterpenoids



Lucialdehyde B



Lucialdehyde C



Ganoderic acid A: $R^1=R^3=R^6=O, R^2= R^5= \beta\text{-OH}, R^4=H$

Ganoderic acid B: $R^1=R^3=R^5=R^6=O, R^2=\beta\text{-OH}, R^4=H$

Ganoderic acid C: $R^1=R^3=R^5=R^6=O, R^2= \beta\text{-OH}, R^4=H$

Ganoderic acid D: $R^1=R^3=R^5=R^6=O, R^2= R^4=\beta\text{-OH}$

Ganoderic acid F: $R^1=R^2=R^3=R^5=R^6=O, R^4=\beta\text{-OH}$

Ganoderic acid G: $R^1=R^2= R^4=\beta\text{-OH}, R^3=R^5=R^6=O$

Ganoderic acid H: $R^1=\beta\text{-OH}, R^2=R^3=R^5=R^6=O, R^4=\beta\text{-OAc}$

Ganoderic acid Z: $R^1=\beta\text{-OH}, R^2=R^3= R^4= R^5=R^6=H$

Family of isolated ganoderic acid compounds

Fig. 3 (continued)

Table 4 Biologically active triterpenes and their function

Triterpenes	Biological function	References
Ganoderic acid A, B, C, D	Antioxidative activity	Thyagarajan et al. (2010)
Ganoderic acid F, K, B, D, A, DM	Antitumor activity	Yue et al. (2010); Liu et al. (2009); Yao et al. (2012); Gill and Kumar (2015)
Ganoderic acid α, β, C1, H, G, B	Anti-HIV activity	Min et al. (1998); Akbar and Yam (2011); El-Mekkawy et al. (1998)
Ganoderic acid G, A, F, DM	Anti-inflammatory activity	Wu et al. (2012); Sheena et al. (2003); Joseph et al. (2009)
Ganoderic acid U, V, W, X, Y	Cytotoxic for hepatoma cells	Shiao et al. (1994)
Ganoderic acid Y, F, H, B, D, K, S	Antihypertensive activity	Morigiwa et al. (1986)
Ganoderic acid Me, Mf, Y	Hypercholesterolemic activity	Xu et al. (2010); Hajjaj et al. (2005)
Ganoderic acid Mf, S, A, DM, Me	Apoptosis	Wu et al. (2012); Liu and Zhong (2011)
Ganoderic acid R, S	Antihepatotoxic activity	Hirotani and Furuya (1986)
Ganoderic acid R, T	Cytotoxicity	Ouyang et al. (2014); Liu et al. (2012)
Ganoderic acid E	Neuroprotective effect	Liu et al. (2013a)
Ganoderic acid A, C	Inhibition of farnesyl protein transferase	Toth et al. (1983)
Ganoderic acid F	Inhibition of angiogenesis	Kimura et al. (2002)
Lucidimol (A, B), ganodermanondiol, ganodermanontriol, genoderiol, ganoderiol F	Cytotoxic for sarcoma and lung carcinoma cells	El-Mekkawy et al. (1998); Min et al. (1998, 2000)
Ganoderol B	Inhibits α-Glucosidase	Fatmawati et al. (2011)

G. lucidum polysaccharides (GL-PSs) and cytokines, which mediated antitumor activity and cell proliferation (Wang et al. 2007; Zhu and Lin 2006).

It was found that ganoderiol F and ganodermanontriol demonstrated anti-HIV-1 activity. While, ganoderic acid F plays the role of Inhibition of angiogenesis. In addition, lucidimol (A and B), ganodermanondiol, ganoderiol F, and ganodermanontriol are found to be cytotoxic for sarcoma and lung carcinoma cells (Min et al. 1998, 2000).

Some compounds from *G. lucidum* like ganoderic acids C and D have pharmacologically potential effect to inhibit the histamine release from rat mast cells (Kohda et al. 1985; Tasaka et al. 1988a, b). On the other hand, potential outcome of triterpenoid components on the central nervous system has also been proved in cases of insomnia as well as for mental stabilization (Jia et al. 2005; Chu et al. 2007).

Triterpenoids inhibit farnesyl protein transferase (FPT)-catalyzed posttranslational farnesylation of Ras protein (Lee et al. 1998). Farnesylation is necessary for the membrane translocation, signal transduction, and cell transforming activities of Ras. FPT inhibitors have been verified to block Ras-dependent cell transformation and therefore represent a potential therapeutic strategy for the treatment of human cancer. A few FPT inhibitors have been isolated from *G. lucidum*, namely, ganoderic acid A and ganoderic acid C. The inhibitors are competitive with farnesyl pyrophosphate (FPP) (Shiao 2003; Lee et al. 1998).

A lot of *G. lucidum* triterpenoids inhibit biosynthesis of cholesterol at a postmevalonate step. A few oxygenated triterpenoids from *G. lucidum* and their derivatives inhibit cholesterol biosynthesis from 24,25-dihydrolanosterol (Berger et al. 2004). Various other triterpenes have been given a position in the treatment of liver diseases and said to possess wide hepatoprotective properties (Yang et al. 2006; Lakshmi et al. 2006; Wu et al. 2010). They block platelet-derived growth factor beta receptor (PDGFbetaR), inhibiting the activation and proliferation of hepatic stellate cells, a key event in hepatic fibrosis (Wang et al. 2009).

Hypertension is one of the most important risk factors in several diseases, most notably in the development of atherosclerosis, a highly significant disease process since atheroma of the coronary arteries leads to myocardial infarction. There are eight lanostane triterpenes found those have ACE inhibitory effects among them ganoderic acid F has exhibited greatest effect (Kim et al. 2004; Wachtel-Galor et al. 2004).

Carbohydrates

G. lucidum produces several metabolites with biological activity; polysaccharides are one of them which have medicinal properties. Polysaccharide fractions containing (1→3)β-D-glucans, branched mainly at the C-6 position, exhibit high antitumor activity (Gao et al. 2003a). Beta-D-glucan is a huge sugar molecule made up of many little sugar molecules chained together bound to amino acids. It has been reported in several studies that polysaccharides exhibit their anticancer effect by enhancing the host immune system rather than via a direct cytotoxic effect (Liu et al. 2013b; Lindequist et al. 2005; Chen et al. 1995; Lieu et al. 1992; Wang et al. 1997). It leads to stimulation of various cells such as macrophages, cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTL), and natural killer (NK) cells. Production of IL-1β, IL-6, interferon-γ (IFN-γ), and TNF-α can be encouraged by *G. lucidum* fruiting bodies in human monocyte-macrophages and T lymphocytes (Wang et al. 1997). These intricate sugars are notable for their ability to stimulate or modulate the immune system by activating immune cells response to foreign invaders, including bacteria, viruses, or tumor cells (Gao et al. 2005). *G. lucidum* polysaccharide extract confirms its immune enhancing ability in cancer patients with increases in NK cell activity and Th1 cytokine levels and decrease in Th2 cytokine levels in advanced lung cancer patients (Gao et al. 2005; Ho et al. 2007). Marked increase in their

phagocytosis activity and production of IL-1β and nitric oxide have been demonstrated by proteoglycan immune-modulating substance of *G. lucidum* (Zhang et al. 2010a) as well as inhibit the production of rheumatoid arthritis more over synovial fibroblasts in vitro, in part through inhibition of NF-κB transcription pathway (Gao et al. 2004b).

Inhibition of reactive oxygen species have been reported by aminopolysaccharide fraction (G009) of *Ganoderma lucidum*. Reactive oxygen species have been implicated in the pathophysiology of cancer (Pincemail 1995). Two cerebrosides from fruiting body of *Ganoderma lucidum* which isolated glycosphingolipids consisting of D-glucose, sphingosine and 2-hydroxypalmitoyl, or 2-hydroxystearoyl fatty acid moiety, respectively, inhibited DNA polymerases, suggesting their probable use for cancer therapy by inhibiting DNA replication (Mizushina et al. 1998). G009 also inhibited iron-induced lipid peroxidation and inactivated hydroxyl radicals and superoxide anions as well as reduced oxidative DNA damage (Lee et al. 2001).

A proteoglycan of *Ganoderma lucidum* (GLIS) fruiting body is mainly composed of D-glucose, D-galactose, and D-mannose with carbohydrate/protein ratio 11.5:1.22. It encourages the proliferation and activation of B lymphocytes, by virtue of which increase production of IL(interleukin)-2, whereas the secretion of IL does not change. In addition, GLIS also improves the expression of PKCα and PKCγ in B cells (Zhang and Tang 2002b).

Polysaccharides of *Ganoderma lucidum* have shown hypotensive, antithrombotic, and hypolipidemic effects, while improvement in ECG and lowered chest pain, palpitation, and shortness of breath has been observed by polysaccharide preparation (Ganopoly) in a double-blind, randomized, multicentered study (Gao et al. 2004b). *G. lucidum* treatment considerably elevates glutathione (GSH) which is the cofactor for antioxidant synthesis and the antioxidant enzymes, glutathione S transferase (GST), glutathione peroxidase (GPx), superoxide dismutase (SOD), and catalase (CAT) indicating antioxidant defense offered by the mushroom that is a major contributor in cardioprotection (Wachtel-Galor et al. 2004).

G. lucidum possesses anti-angiogenic activity (Song et al. 2004). Inhibition of the proliferation of human umbilical cord vascular endothelial cells (HUVEC) in a dose-dependent manner has been observed by *G. lucidum* polysaccharide peptide (*Gl*-PP) isolated from *G. lucidum* (Cao and Lin 2006). High dose of *Gl*-PP for 18 h under hypoxic conditions led to a decline in the amount of secreted vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) in human lung carcinoma cells (Kao et al. 2013).

Diabetes mellitus is one of the most common chronic diseases affecting millions of people worldwide. Ganoderans A, ganoderans B and glucans obtained from *G. lucidum* fruiting bodies, exhibit hypoglycemic effects in several test systems and ameliorated the symptoms of diabetes (Zhou et al. 2007; Hikino et al. 1985). Thus many patients with confirmed type-2 diabetes have been treated with polysaccharide fractions from *G. lucidum* (Zhang and Lin 2004). It has been also revealed that *G. lucidum* polysaccharides injection could decrease the serum glucose level and the prevalence of diabetes in the multiple low-dose streptozotocin-induced autoimmune diabetes (Lindequist et al. 2005; Tanaka et al. 1989).

Proteins, Peptides, and Amino Acids

Various bioactive proteins have been isolated from lingzhi. Namely, LZP-1, LZP-2, and LZP-3 from fruiting body and spores of Ganoderma show the mitogenic activity (Huie and Di 2004). Ling Zhi-8 (LZ-8) is a polypeptide consisting of 110 amino acid residues with an acetylated amino terminus (Lin et al. 2011; van der Hem et al. 1995). It is very similar to variable region of the immunoglobulin heavy chain in its sequence and in its predicted secondary structure. It is the first immunomodulatory protein which was isolated from the mycelial extract by using chromatographic and electrophoretic techniques (Kino et al. 1989).

LZ-8 has a chain of biological behaviors which include immunomodulatory effect (Huang et al. 2009; Miyasaka et al. 1992), alleviation of transplant rejection, and antitumor activity (van der Hem et al. 1996). Main biological activities of LZ-8 are similar to lectins, with mitogenic capacity toward mouse spleen cells and human peripheral lymphocytes and agglutination of sheep red blood cells in vitro (Wasser 2005; Haak-Frendscho et al. 1993; Murasugi et al. 1991). It has mitogenic activity and illustrates the immunosuppressive activity in vivo. Intraperitoneal administration of LZ-8, twice weekly into the mice (8 and 12 mg/kg), prevents the production of antibody to the hepatitis B surface antigen (HBs Ag) with the inhibition rates of 83.3% and 96.8%, respectively (Zhou et al. 2002; Gao et al. 2003b; Sun et al. 2004).

Microspherule protein (MSP58) acts a significant function in a variety of cellular processes including transcriptional regulation, cell proliferation, and oncogenic transformation. MSP58 isolated from Ganoderma represses human telomerase reverse transcriptase (hTERT) gene expression and cell proliferation via cooperating with telomerase transcriptional element-interacting factor (TEIF) (Hsu et al. 2014).

Different enzymes from *G. lucidum* have also been isolated like carboxy proteinase, amylase, cellulases, laccase isozymes, and lignin-modifying enzymes α-galactosidase. *G. lucidum* was believed to be involved in the production of D-Galactose in the bioactive polysaccharide such as ganoderan C. (Huie and Di 2004; Smith and Sivasithamparam 2000).

Oxidative stress has been involved with the pathogenesis of many human diseases including cancer, aging, and atherosclerosis (Paterson 2006). Polysaccharides and polysaccharide-peptide complex have been anticipated to be responsible for this antioxidant effect. Antitumor activity has also been reported in a fucose-containing glycoprotein fraction (Rubel et al. 2011; Kawagishi et al. 1993).

Nucleosides, Nucleotides, and RNAs

Yu and Zhai (1979) were the first to report the isolation of adenine, adenosine, uracil, and uridine from the mycelia of a Ganoderma species, *G. capense*. From the mycelium and fruiting bodies of *G. lucidum*, Kim and Nam explored the

distribution of RNA contents and mononucleotides. It was also demonstrated that the level of RNAs from the young basidiocarp mycelium were much higher than those of mature basidiocarp (Kim and Nam 1984). Among all these, nucleosides, uridine, and uracil were searched to be capable of lowering the serum aldolase level of mice suffering from experimental myotonia (Huie and Di 2004).

G. lucidum adenosine has platelet aggregation inhibiting activity. By virtue of which it plays an important role in various disorders of CVS and CNS associated by clots like atherosclerosis, angina pectoris, and stroke (Wang et al. 2009; Kawagishi et al. 1993). In contrast it has been also reported that the administration of crude Ganoderma extracts, known to have a high content of adenosine, had no effect on platelet aggregation in hemophiliac patients who were HIV positive (Gau et al. 1990).

Organic Germanium, Alkaloids, Vitamins, Essential Minerals

Organic germanium is precious compound that gives *G. lucidum* great medicinal values. The presence of organic germanium expresses its effectiveness in fighting cancer. It has been reported that the organic germanium providing antimutagenic or anticarcinogenic properties was beneficial in the treatment of cancer. Organic germanium has been applied as a dietary supplement, and its therapeutic attributes include immune enhancement, oxygen enrichment, free radical scavenging, analgesia, and heavy metal detoxification (Chiu et al. 2000).

Ganoderma has various vitamin contents including vitamins C, B1, B2, B6, E, and β-carotene (Huie and Di 2004 ; McKenna et al. 2002). Those play the great role in maintaining normal physiological functions of the body. Alkaloids are a group of naturally occurring chemical compounds which mostly contain basic nitrogen atoms. Among the different types of alkaloids particularly choline and betaine were isolated from the spores of *G. lucidum* (Paterson 2006). It has been studied that *G. lucidum* fungus may be used as a potential raw material for chitin production (Alvarez et al. 2014).

Dietary Fiber

Dietary fiber is the indigestible portion of plant foods that are not digestible by human or other mammalian digestive enzymes produce the action by the change the nature of the contents of the gastrointestinal tract. Indigestible fibers such as β-glucans (1→3), present in *G. lucidum*, apparently decrease cholesterol absorption in the small intestine or bind to bile acids and as a result accelerate the enteric degradation of cholesterol (Rubel et al. 2011; Fukushima et al. 2000). Fibrous components could affect cholesterol absorption and bile acid recycling (Berger et al. 2004).

Fatty Acids and Sterols

Monounsaturated fatty acids of *G. lucidum* have a propensity to inhibit the production of TNF, one of the proinflammatory cytokines. Study provides scientific supporting evidence for the spores extract as an anti-inflammatory agent (Fukuzawa et al. 2008; Ziegenbein et al. 2006).

The compound oleic acid isolated from the culture broth of *G. lucidum* was found to inhibit the ability of histamine release. This is important for treatment of inflammation, allergies, and anaphylactic shock (Tasaka 1988a).

Ergosterol and ergosteryl esters have been isolated from the fruiting bodies of *G. lucidum* (Yuan et al. 2006) and applied as a suitable marker for evaluating the quality of Ganoderma spore lipid (GSL) that is extracted from the spores of *G. lucidum*. Different pharmacological applications on the basis of different body systems can be seen in Table 5.

Historically mushrooms have had a long and victorious medicinal use especially in traditional medicine for many forms of disorders. Several of these mushroom-derived medicinal products are being used worldwide by historically oriented physicians. Despite such various varieties of mushrooms, *G. lucidum* acts as a king of herbs because of wide pharmacological range in many diseases. Comparative study gives a clue about its versatile function that can be observed in Table 6.

Safety Issues

Reishi is usually regarded as safe. It has been seen in a minute study when taken at a dose of 2 g daily for 10 days failed to find any evidence of ill effects. On the other hand, in another study it has been reported that reishi impairs blood clotting. This study concluded that individuals with bleeding disorders should avoid it. There should have pre- and postsurgery precaution as well as at the time of labor and delivery. Moreover, reishi should be used under a doctor's supervision for individuals taking medications that impair blood clotting, like aspirin, heparin, warfarin, clopidogrel, pentoxifylline, and ticlopidine (Wicks et al. 2007; Su et al. 2000).

Future Prospect

Various pharmacological properties and their health benefits fascinate the researchers and scientist toward finding out several health aspects values. This requires further clinical trials to confirm the efficacy and safety. It is expected that in the nearest future studies on this medicinal mushroom will be conducted on broad scale due to both the uniqueness of their chemical makeup and the number of credible peer-reviewed publications over the past 10 years.

Table 5 Biomedical applications of *G. lucidum*

Application	References
A. Cardiovascular disorders	
1. Increase heart contraction frequency and amplitude	Chu et al. (2012); Kim et al. (2004); Gao et al. (2004a); Wasser (2011); Ahmad (2013a)
2. Coronary dilation and increased coronary circulation	Khatun et al. (2012)
3. Blood pressure regulation with other medication	Ahmad (2018)
4. Relief of oxygen deprivation	Srivastava et al. (2005)
B. Immunomodulatory effects	
1. Anticancer	Ishimoto et al. (2017); Gill et al. (2016b); Srivastava et al. (2005); Deepalakshmi and Mirunalini (2011)
2. Anti-inflammatory	Barbieri et al. (2017); Cai et al. (2016)
3. Antiviral (anti HIV)	Timo et al. (2005)
4. Improve autoimmune disorder	Rubel et al. (2010)
5. Inhibits histamine release in allergy and prevention of anaphylactic shock	Srivastava et al. (2005); Zhang et al. (2010b)
C. Cancer	Jin et al. (2016); Deepalakshmi and Mirunalini (2011); Sun et al. (2014)
1. Enhance the immune system in advanced-stage cancer	Gao et al. (2005)
2. Cytotoxic activity against different cancer cell lines	Thyagarajan (2010); Chen et al. (2010)
3. Maintain leukocyte counts	Zhang et al. (2008)
4. Reduction of toxicity by chemotherapy and elimination of induced leucopoenia (low blood leukocytes) by chemotherapy and radiation	Chen et al. (1995)
5. Accelerate postsurgery recovery	Ogbe et al. (2011)
6. Sedation; pain relief and reduce dependence on morphine in terminal cancer patients	Akihisa et al. (2007)
7. Use during remission to prevent relapse	Khatun et al. (2012)
D. Nerve Disorders	
1. Insomnia/anxiety 2. Psychiatric and neurological afflictions 3. Environmental stress 4. Alzheimer's disease	Babu and Subhasree (2008); Chu et al. (2007); Moreno et al. (2011)
E. Miscellaneous	
1. Hepatoprotective a. Hepatic fibrosis b. Hepatitis B	Li and Wang (2006); Wu et al. (2010); Moreno et al. (2011); Zhang et al. (2002a, b)
2. Hypoglycemic	Zhang and Lin (2004)
3. Hypolipidemic	Rubel et al. (2011)
4. Improve working capacity and rapid recovery to normal physiology	Yang et al. (2001)

(continued)

Table 5 (continued)

Application	References
5. Antioxidant	Gill et al. (2016a); Nahata (2013); Sun et al. (2004); Rubel et al. (2011); Kao et al. (2013)
6. Antiaging activity	Lai et al. (2008)
7. Topical application	Kurtipek et al. (2016)
8. Antimicrobial	Heleno et al. (2013)
9. Anti-arthritic	Pan et al. (2017); Ho et al. (2007)

Table 6 Comparative medicinal values of *G. lucidum* and other medicinal mushrooms

Mushrooms	*Ganoderma lucidum*	*Lentinula edodes*	*Grifola frondosa*	*Tremella fuciformis*	*Poria cocos*
Immune enhancer	+	+	+	+	+
Antitumor	+	+	+	+	+
Antiviral	+	+	–	–	+
Cardiovascular	+	+	–	+	–
Asthma	+	–	–	+	–
Lower cholesterol	+	+	–	+	–
Antidepressant	+	–	–	–	–
References	Ishimoto et al. (2017); Jin et al. (2016); Cheuk et al. (2007); Babu Subhasree (2008)	Bisen et al. (2010); Israilides et al. (2008); Nieminen et al. (2009)	Masuda et al. (2013); Chang (2002); Kodama et al. (2004)	Ooi and Liu (2000); De Baets and Vandamme (2001); Cheng et al. (2002)	Ukiya et al. (2002); Wang et al. (2004)

+Indicates favorable effect of mushrooms
–Indicates not known effect of mushrooms

Conclusion

The review demonstrates that *G. lucidum* is having a great potential for the production of useful bioactive metabolites and it is a prolific resource for drugs. The responsible bioactive compounds belong to several chemical groups, very often they are polysaccharides or triterpenes. Its apparent medical efficacy and the absence of unfavorable side effects and toxins resulting more clinical trials are now in order. Wide application of *G. lucidum* intensifies the interest toward the various techniques besides the traditional one like tank cultivation, solid, and submerged fermentation to get higher production of pharmacological active compounds in short of duration.

References

Ahmad MF (2018) Ganoderma lucidum: Persuasive biologically active constituents and their health endorsement. Biomed Pharmacother 107:507–519

Ahmad MF, Ashraf SA, Ahmad FA, Ansari JA, Siddiquee MRA (2011) Nutraceutical market and its regulation. Am J Food Technol 6:342–347

Ahmad MF, Ahmad FA, Azad Z, Ahmad A, Alam MI, Ansari JA, Panda BP (2013a) Edible mushrooms as health promoting agent. Adv Sci Focus 1(3):189–196

Ahmad MF, Ahmad FA, Azad ZRAA, Alam MS, Ashraf SA (2013b) Nutraceutical is the need of hour. WJPPS 2:2516–2525

Ahmad MF, Panda BP, Azad ZRAA (2013c) Simultaneous bioprospecting of *Ganoderma lucidum* OE 52 with ganoderic acid B and C2 by submerged fermentation process. Adv Sci Focus 1:1–4

Akbar R, Yam WK (2011) Interaction of ganoderic acid on HIV related target: molecular docking studies. Bioinformation 7(8):413–417

Akihisa T, Nakamura Y, Harukuni MT, Yasukawa TK, Uchiyama E, Suzuki T, Kimura Y (2007) Anti-inflammatory and anti-tumor-promoting effects of triterpene acids and sterols from the fungus *Ganoderma lucidum*. Chem Biodivers 4:224–231

Alvarez SPO, Cadavid DAR, Sierra DME, Orozco CPO, Vahos DFR, Ocampo PZ, Atehortua L (2014) Comparison of extraction methods of chitin from *Ganoderma lucidum* mushroom obtained in submerged culture. BioMed Res Int 2014:1–7

Babu PD, Subhasree RS (2008) The sacred mushroom reishi. Am Euras J Bot 1:107–110

Barbieri A, Quagliariello V, Del Vecchio V, Falco M, Luciano A, Amruthraj NJ, Nasti G, Ottaiano A, Berretta M, Iaffaioli RV, Arra C (2017) Anticancer and anti-inflammatory properties of *Ganoderma lucidum* extract effects on melanoma and triple-negative breast cancer treatment. Nutrients 9(3):210

Berger A, Rein D, Kratky E, Monnard I, Hajjaj H, Meirim I, Piguet-Welsch I, Hauser J, Mace K, Niederberger P (2004) Cholesterol-lowering properties of *Ganoderma lucidum* in vitro, ex vivo, and in hamsters and minipigs. Lipids Health Dis 3:2

Bisen PS, Baghel RK, Sanodiya BS, Thakur GS, Prasad GB (2010) Lentinus edodes: a macrofungus with pharmacological activities. Curr Med Chem 17(22):2419–2430

Boh B, Hodzar D, Berovic M, Pohleven F (2000) Isolation and quantification of triterpenoid acids from *Ganoderma applanatum* of istrian origin. Food Technol Biotechnol 38:11–18

Cai Z, Wong CK, Dong J, Jiao D, Chu M, Leung PC, Lam CWK (2016) Anti-inflammatory activities of *Ganoderma lucidum* (Lingzhi) and San-Miao-San supplements in MRL/lpr mice for the treatment of systemic lupus erythematosus. Chin Med 11(1):23

Cao QZ, Lin ZB (2006) *Ganoderma lucidum* polysaccharides peptide inhibits the growth of vascular endothelial cell and the induction of VEGF in human lung cancer cell. Life Sci 78(13):1457–1463

Cao PF, Wu CG, Dang ZH, Shi L, Jiang AL, Ren A, Zhao MW (2017) Effects of exogenous salicylic acid on ganoderic acid biosynthesis and the expression of key genes in the ganoderic acid biosynthesis pathway in the lingzhi or reishi medicinal mushroom, *Ganoderma lucidum* (Agaricomycetes). Int J Med Mushrooms 19(1):65

Chang R (2002) Bioactive polysaccharides from traditional Chinese medicine herbs as anticancer adjuvants. Altern Complement Med 8:559–565

Chang ST, Buswell JA (1999) *Ganoderma lucidum* (Curt.:Fr) P. Karst. (Aphyllophoromycetideae)—a mushrooming medicinal mushroom. Int J Med Mushrooms 1:139–146

Chang ST, Buswell JA (2003) Medicinal mushrooms—a prominent source of nutriceuticals for the 21st century. Curr Top Nutraceut Res 1:257–280

Chen R, Yu D (1990) Development of triterpenes from *Ganoderma lucidum*. Acta Pharm Sin 25:940–953

Chen WC, Hau DM, Lee SS (1995) Effect of *Ganoderma lucidum* and krestin on cellular immunocompetence in gamma-ray-irradiated mice. J Chin Med 23:71–80

Chen NH, Liu JW, Zhong J (2010) Ganoderic acid T inhibits tumor invasion *in vitro* and *in vivo* through inhibition of MMP expression. J Pharmacol Rep 62:150–163

Cheng HH, Hou WC, Lu ML (2002) Interactions of lipid metabolism and intestinal physiology with *tremella fuciformis* berk edible mushroom in rats fed a high-cholesterol diet with or without nebacitin. J Agric Food Chem 50:7438–7443

Cheuk W, Chan JK, Nuovo G, Chan MK, Fok M (2007) Regression of gastric large B-cell lymphoma accompanied by a florid lymphoma-like T-cell reaction: immunomodulatory effect of *Ganoderma lucidum* (Lingzhi). Int J Surg Pathol 15:180–186

Chiu SW, Wang ZM, Leung TM, Moore D (2000) Nutritional value of Ganoderma extract and assessment of its genotoxicity and antigenotoxicity using comet assays of mouse lymphocytes. Food Chem Toxicol 38:173–178

Chu QP, Wang LE, Cui XY, Fu HZ, Lin ZB, Lin SQ, Zhang YH (2007) Extract of *Ganoderma lucidum* potentiates pentobarbital-induced sleep via a GABAergic mechanism. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 86:693–698

Chu TT, Benzie IF, Lam CW, Fok BS, Lee KK, Tomlinson B (2012) Study of potential cardioprotective effects of *Ganoderma lucidum* (Lingzhi): results of a controlled human intervention trial. Br J Nutr 107(7):1017–1027

De Baets S, Vandamme J (2001) Extracellular tremella polysaccharides: structures, properties and application. Biotechnol Lett 23:1361–1366

Deepalakshmi K, Mirunalini S (2011) Therapeutic properties and current medical usage of medicinal mushroom: *Ganoderma lucidum*. Int J Pharm Sci Res 2:1922–1929

Elhassaneen YA, Ragab SS, Salman MS (2016) The potential effects of reishi mushroom (*Ganoderma lucidum*) consumption on bone health indices and serum minerals profile disorders induced by CCl_4 on rats. PJMPR 2(1):001–007

El-Mekkawy S, Meselhy MR, Nakamura N, Tezuka Y, Hattori M, Kakiuchi N, Shimotohno K, Kawahata T, Otake T (1998) Anti-HIV-1 and anti-HIV-1-protease substances from *Ganoderma lucidum*. Phytochemistry 49(6):1651–1657

Fatmawati S, Shimizu K, Kondo R, Ganoderol B (2011) A potent α-glucosidase inhibitor isolated from the fruiting body of *Ganoderma lucidum*. Phytomedicine 18(12):1053–1055

Feng X (1995) Glossy Ganoderma tea and its preparation method. CN patent no. 1105523

Fujita R, Liu J, Shimizu K, Konishi F, Noda K, Kumamoto S, Ueda C, Tajiri H, Kaneko S, Suimi Y, Kondo R (2005) Anti-androgenic activities of *Ganoderma lucidum*. J Ethnopharmacol 102(1):107–112

Fujiwara H, Sawai T (1993) Food or beverage for improving saccharide metabolism. JP patent no. 5124974

Fukushima M, Nakano M, Morii Y, Ohashi T, Fujiwara Y, Sonoyama K (2000) Hepatic LDL receptor mRNA in rats is increased by dietary mushroom (*Agaricus bisporus*) fiber and sugar beet fiber. J Nutr 130:2151–2156

Fukuzawa M, Yamaguchi R, Hide I, Chen Z, Hirai Y, Sugimoto A, Yasuhara T, Nakata Y (2008) Possible involvement of long chain fatty acids in the spores of *Ganoderma lucidum* (Reishi Houshi) to its anti-tumor activity. Biol Pharm Bull 31:1933–1937

Gao RQ (1996) Glossy Ganoderma extract and glossy Ganoderma beer. CN patent no. 1115612

Gao Y, Zhou S, Jiang W, Huang M, Dai X (2003a) Effects of ganopoly (*Ganoderma lucidum* polysaccharide extract) on the immune functions in advanced-stage cancer patients. Immunol Invest 32:201–215

Gao Y, Zhou S, Huang M, Xu A (2003b) Antibacterial and antiviral value of the genus Ganoderma P. Karst. Species (Aphyllophoromycetideae) a review. Int J Med Mushrooms 5:235 246

Gao Y, Chen G, Dai X, Ye J, Zhou S (2004a) A phase I/II study of ling zhi mushroom *Ganoderma lucidum* (W.Curt.:Fr.) Lloyd (*Aphyllophoromycetideae*) extract in patients with coronary heart disease. Int J Med Mushrooms 6:30

Gao Y, Lan J, Dai X, Ye J, Zhou S (2004b) A phase I/II study of ling zhi mushroom *Ganoderma lucidum* (W.Curt.:Fr.) Lloyd (Aphyllophoromycetidae) extract in patients with type II diabetes mellitus. Int J Med Mushrooms 6:33–42

Gao Y, Tang W, Dai X, Gao H, Chen G, Ye J, Chan E, Koh HL, Li X, Zhou S (2005) Effects of water-soluble *Ganoderma lucidum* polysaccharides on the immune functions of patients with advanced lung cancer. J Med Food 8:159–168

Gau JP, Lin CK, Lee SS, Wang SR (1990) The lack of antiplatelet effect of crude extracts from *Ganoderma lucidum* on HIV-positive hemophiliacs. Am J Chin Med 18:175–179

Gill BS, Kumar S (2015) Differential algorithms-assisted molecular modeling-based identification of mechanistic binding of ganoderic acids. Med Chem Res 24(9):3483–3493

Gill BS, Sharma P, Kumar R, Kumar S (2016a) Misconstrued versatility of *Ganoderma lucidum*: a key player in multi-targeted cellular signaling. Tumor Biol 37(3):2789–2804

Gill BS, Sharma P, Kumar S (2016b) Chemical composition and antiproliferative, antioxidant, and proapoptotic effects of fruiting body extracts of the lingzhi or reishi medicinal mushroom, *Ganoderma lucidum* (Agaricomycetes), from India. Int J Med Mushrooms 18(7):599–607

Haak-Frendscho M, Kino K, Sone T, Jardieu P (1993) Ling Zhi-8: a novel T cell mitogen induces cytokine production and upregulation of ICAM-1 expression. Cell Immunol 150:101–113

Hajjaj H, Mace C, Roberts M, Niederberger P, Fay LB (2005) Effect of 26-oxygenosterols from *Ganoderma lucidum* and their activity as cholesterol synthesis inhibitors. Appl Environ Microbiol 71(7):3653–3658

Heleno SA, Ferreira IC, Esteves AP, Ciric A, Glamoclija J, Martins A, Sokovic M, Queiroz MJ (2013) Antimicrobial and demelanizing activity of *Ganoderma lucidum* extract, p-hydroxybenzoic and cinnamic acids and their synthetic acetylated glucuronide methyl esters. Food Chem Toxicol 58:95–100

Hikino H, Konno C, Mirin Y, Hayashi T (1985) Isolation and hypoglycaemic activities of ganoderans A and B, glucans of *Ganoderma lucidum* fruit bodies. Planta Med 51:339–340

Hirotani M, Furuya T (1986) Ganoderic acid derivatives, highly oxygenated lanostane-type triterpenoids, from *Ganoderma lucidum*. Phytochemistry 25(5):1189–1193

Ho YW, Yeung JS, Chiu PK, Tang WM, Lin ZB, Man RY, Lau CS (2007) *Ganoderma lucidum* polysaccharide peptide reduced the production of proinflammatory cytokines in activated rheumatoid synovial fibroblast. Mol Cell Biochem 301:173–182

Hsu CC, Chen C-H, Hsu T-I, Hung J-J, Ko J-L, Zhang B et al (2014) The 58-kDa microspherule protein (MSP58) represses human telomerase reverse transcriptase (hTERT) gene expression and cell proliferation by interacting with telomerase transcriptional element-interacting factor (TEIF). Biochim Biophys Acta 1843(3):565–579

Huang HC, Liu YC (2008) Enhancement of polysaccharide production by optimization of culture conditions in shake flask submerged cultivation of *Grifola umbellate*. J Chin Inst Chem Eng 39:307–311

Huang L, Sun F, Liang C, He YX, Bao R, Liu L, Zhou CZ (2009) Crystal structure of LZ-8 from the medicinal fungus *Ganoderma lucidum*. Proteins 75(2):524–527

Huie CW, Di X (2004) Chromatographic and electrophoretic methods for lingzhi pharmacologically active components. J Chromatogr B 812:241–257

Ishimoto Y, Ishibashi KI, Yamanaka D, Adachi Y, Ito H, Igami K, Miyazaki T, Ohno N (2017) Enhanced release of immunostimulating β-1,3-glucan by autodigestion of the lingzhi medicinal mushroom, Ganoderma lingzhi (Agaricomycetes). Int J Med Mushrooms 19(1):1

Israilides C, Kletsas D, Arapoglou D (2008) In vitro cytostatic and immunomodulatory properties of the medicinal mushroom *Lentinula edodes*. Phytomedicine 15:512–519

Ji Z, Tang Q, Zhang J, Yang Y, Jia W, Pan Y (2007) Immunomodulation of RAW264.7 macrophages by GLIS, a proteopolysaccharide from *Ganoderma lucidum*. J Ethnopharmacol 112(3):445–450

Jia W, Wu M, Zhang JS, Liu YF (2005) A preliminary study on the sleep-improvement function of the effective ingredients of *Ganoderma lucidum* fruitbody. Acta Edulis Fungi 12:43–47

Jiang J, Slivova V, Valachovicova T, Harvey K, Sliva D (2004) *Ganoderma lucidum* inhibits proliferation and induces apoptosis in human prostate cancer cells PC-3. Int J Oncol 24(5):1093–1099

Jin X, Ruiz Beguerie J, Sze DM, Chan GC (2016) *Ganoderma lucidum* (Reishi mushroom) for cancer treatment. The Cochrane Library

Jonathan SG, Bawo DD, Adejoye DO, Briyai OF (2009) Studies on biomass production in Auricularia polytricha collected from Wilberforce Island, Bayelsa State, Nigeria. Am J Appl Sci 6(1):182–186

Joseph S, Sabulal B, George V, Smina TP, Janardhanan KK (2009) Antioxidative and antiinflammatory activities of the chloroform extract of *Ganoderma lucidum* found in South India. Sci Pharm 77:111–121

Kao CHJ, Jesuthasan AC, Bishop KS, Glucina MP, Ferguson LR (2013) Anti-cancer activities of *Ganoderma lucidum*: active ingredients and pathways. Funct Foods Health Dis 3:48–65

Kawagishi H, Fukuhara F, Sazuka M, Kawashima A, Mitsubori T, Tomita T (1993) 50-Deoxy-50-methylsulphinyladenosine, a platelet aggregation inhibitor from *Ganoderma lucidum*. Phytochemistry 32:239–241

Khatun S, Islam A, Cakilcioglu U, Chatterjee NC (2012) Research on mushroom as a potential source of nutraceuticals: perspective. Am J Exp Agric 2:47–73

Kim SS, Kim YS (1990) Korean mushrooms. Yupoong, Seoul, pp 298–299

Kim JH, Nam JS (1984) Studies on distribution of the mononucleotides in *Ganoderma lucidum*. Korean J Mycol 12(3):111–116

Kim JH, Lee DH, Lee SH, Choi SY, Lee JS (2004) Effect of *Ganoderma lucidum* on the quality and functionality of Korean traditional rice wine, yakju. J Biosci Bioeng 97:24–28

Kimura Y, Taniguchi M, Baba K (2002) Antitumor and antimetastic effects on liver triterpenoid fractions of *Ganoderma lucidum*: mechanism of action and isolation of an active substance. Anticancer Res 22(6A):3309–3318

Kino K, Yamashita A, Yamaoka K, Watanabe J, Tanaka S, Ko K, Shimizu K, Tsunoo H (1989) Isolation and characterization of a new immunomodulatory protein, ling zhi-8 (LZ-8), from *Ganoderma lucidum*. J Biol Chem 264(1):472–478

Kodama K, Murata K, Nanba H (2004) Administration of a polysaccharide from *grifola frondosa* stimulates immune function of normal mice. J Med Food 7:141–145

Kohda H, Tokumoto W, Sakamoto K, Fuji M, Hirai Y, Yamasaki K (1985) The biologically-active constituents of *Ganoderma lucidum* (Fr) karst-histamine release-inhibitory triterpenes. Chem Pharm Bull 33:1367–1373

Komoda Y, Shimizu M, Sonoda Y, Sato Y (1989) Ganoderic acid and its derivatives as cholesterol synthesis inhibitors. Chem Pharm Bull 37(2):531–533

Krishna KV, Karuppuraj V, Perumal K (2016) Antioxidant activity and Folic acid content in indigenous isolates of *Ganoderma lucidum*. Asian J Pharm Anal 6(4):213–215

Kurtipek GS, Ataseven A, Kurtipek E, Kucukosmanoglu I, Toksoz MR (2016) Resolution of cutaneous sarcoidosis following topical application of *Ganoderma lucidum* (Reishi Mushroom). Dermatol Ther 6(1):105–109

Lai CS, Yu MS, Yuen WH, So KF, Zee SY, Chang RC (2008) Antagonizing beta-amyloid peptide neurotoxicity of the anti-aging fungus *Ganoderma lucidum*. Brain Res 1190:215–224

Lakshmi B, Ajith TA, Jose N, Janardhanan KK (2006) Antimutagenic activity of methanolic extract of *Ganoderma lucidum* and its effect on hepatic damage caused by benzo[a]pyrene. J Ethnopharmacol 107:297–303

Lee S, Park S, Oh JW, Yang C (1998) Natural inhibitors for protein prenyltransferase. Planta Med 64:303–340

Lee JM, Kwon H, Jeong H, Lee JW, Lee SY, Baek SJ, Surh YJ (2001) Inhibition of lipid peroxidation and oxidative DNA damage by *Ganoderma lucidum*. Phytother Res 15(3):245–249

Li YQ, Wang SF (2006) Anti-hepatitis B activities of ganoderic acid from *Ganoderma lucidum*. Biotechnol Lett 28:837–841

Liang F (1993) Production of health tonic. CN patent no. 1069738

Lieu CW, Lee SS, Wang SY (1992) The effect of Ganoderma lucidum on induction of differentiation in leukemic U937-Cells. Anticancer Res 12(4):1211–1216

Lin Z-B (2005) Cellular and molecular mechanisms of immunomodulation by *Ganoderma lucidum*. J Pharmacol Sci 99(2):144–153

Lin J, Lin S, Weng S (1998) Glossy Ganoderma wine and preparation method thereof. CN patent no. 1176999

Lin S-B, Li CH, Lee SS, Kan L-S (2003) Triterpene-enriched extracts from *Ganoderma lucidum* inhibit growth of hepatoma cells via suppressing protein kinase C, activating mitogen-activated protein kinases and G2-phase cell cycle arrest. Life Sci 72(21):2381–2390

Lin CC, Yu YL, Shih CC, Liu KJ, Ou KL, Hong LZ, Chen JDC, Chu CL (2011) A novel adjuvant Ling Zhi-8 enhances the efficacy of DNA cancer vaccine by activating dendritic cells. Cancer Immunol Immunother 60:1019–1027

Lindequist U, Niedermeyer THJ, Julich WD (2005) The pharmacological potential of mushrooms. eCAM 2:285–299

Liu RM, Zhong JJ (2011) Ganoderic acid Mf and S induce mitochondria mediated apoptosis in human cervical carcinoma HeLa cells. Phytomedicine 18(5):349–355

Liu J, Shiono J, Shimizu K, Kukita A, Kukita T, Kondo R (2009) Ganoderic acid DM: anti-androgenic osteoclastogenesis inhibitor. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 19(8):2154–2157

Liu RM, Li YB, Zhong J-J (2012) Cytotoxic and pro-apoptotic effects of novel ganoderic acid derivatives on human cervical cancer cells in vitro. Eur J Pharmacol 681(1):23–33

Liu J, Liu X, Wang L, Wu F, Yang Z (2013a) Neuroprotective effects of ganoderic acid extract against epilepsy in primary hippocampal neurons. Res Opin Anim Vet Sci 3(11):420–425

Liu C, Song Y, Yang N, Tversky JR, Reid-Adam J, Li X-M (2013b) Ganoderic acid β suppressed Th2 responses and induced Th1/Tregs in cultures of peripheral blood mononuclear cells from asthmatic patients. J Allergy Clin Immunol 131(2):AB1

Lokody I (2014) Metabolism: cholesterol promotes breast cancer growth. Nat Rev Cancer 14(1):11

Masuda Y, Inoue H, Ohta H, Miyake A, Konishi M, Nanba H (2013) Oral administration of soluble β-glucans extracted from *Grifola frondosa* induces systemic antitumor immune response and decreases immunosuppression in tumor-bearing mice. Int J Cancer 133(1):108–119

Mayuzami F, Fujiwara H (1993) Food containing dietary fiber. JP patent 5091854

McKenna D, Jones K, Hughes K (2002) Reishi botanical medicines: the desk reference for major herbal supplements, 2nd edn. The Haworth Herbal Press, Binghamton, NY, pp 825–855

Min BS, Nakamura N, Miyashiro H, Bae KW, Hattori M (1998) Triterpenes from the spores of *Ganoderma lucidum* and their activity against HIV-1 protease. Chem Pharm Bull 46:1607–1612

Min BS, Gao JJ, Nakamura N, Hattori M (2000) Triterpenes from the spores of *Ganoderma lucidum* and their cytotoxicity against Meth-A and LLC tumor cells. Chem Pharm Bull 48:1026–1033

Miyasaka N, Inoue H, Totsuka T, Koike R, Kino K, Tsunoo H (1992) An immunomodulatory protein, Ling Zhi-8, facilitates cellular interaction through modulation of adhesion molecules. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 186:385–390

Mizushina Y, Hanashima L, Yamaguchi T, Takemura M, Sugawara F, Saneyoshi M, Matsukage A, Yoshida S, Sakaguchi K (1998) A mushroom fruiting body-inducing substance inhibits activities of replicative DNA polymerases. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 249(1):17–22

Moreno AC, Campos PV, Villeda H, Leon RJI, Montiel AE (2011) *Ganoderma lucidum* reduces kainic acid-induced hippocampal neuronal damage via inflammatory cytokines and glial fibrillary acid protein expression. Proc West Pharmacol Soc 54:77–78

Morigiwa A, Kitabatake K, Fujimoto Y, Ikekawa N (1986) Angiotensin converting enzyme-inhibitory triterpenes from *Ganoderma lucidum*. Chem Pharm Bull 34(7):3025–3028

Murasugi A, Tanaka S, Komiyama N, Iwata N, Kino K, Tsunoo H, Sakuma S (1991) Molecular cloning of a cDNA and a gene encoding an immunomodulatory protein, Ling Zhi-8, from a fungus, *Ganoderma lucidum*. J Biol Chem 266:2486–2493

Murata T, Ishigami Y, Ishikawa H (1989) Viscous polysaccharide production by Ganoderma. JP patent no. 1121302

Nahata A (2013) *Ganoderma lucidum* a potent medicinal mushroom with numerous health benefits. Pharmaceut Anal Acta 4(10):1000e159

Naoi Y (1990) Production of beer. JP patent no. 2097373
Nayak A, Nayak RN, Bhat K (2010) Antifungal activity of a toothpaste containing *Ganoderma lucidum* against Candida albicans—an in vitro study. J Int Oral Health 2(2):51–57
Nieminen P, Karja V, Mustonen AM (2009) Myo-and hepatotoxic effects of cultivated mushrooms in mice. Food Chem Toxicol 47:70–74
Numata K (1988) Health drink vinegar. JP patent no. 63068069
Ogbe AO, Efenu P, Nicholas U, Pam A, Abarshi A, Banyigyi S, Odugbo M, Ogbe AO (2011) Response to treatment of skin ailments in animal patients using aqueous Ganoderma extract. J Environ Agric Food Chem 10:1816–1820
Ooi VEC, Liu F (2000) Immunomodulation and anti-cancer activity of polysaccharide-protein complexes. Curr Med Chem 7:715–729
Ouyang JJ, Wang YQ, Tang W (2014) Ganoderic acid restores the sensitivity of multidrug resistance cancer cells to doxorubicin. Adv Mater Res 834:573–576
Pan X, Lopez-Olivo MA, Song J, Pratt G, Suarez-Almazor ME (2017) Systematic review of the methodological quality of controlled trials evaluating Chinese herbal medicine in patients with rheumatoid arthritis. BMJ Open 7(3):e013242
Paterson RRM (2006) Ganoderma—a therapeutic fungal biofactory. Phytochemistry 67:1985–2001
Pincemail JJ (1995) Free radicals and antioxidants in human diseases. In: Favier AE, Cadet J, Kalyanaraman B, Fontecave M, Pierre JL (eds) Analysis of free radicals in biological systems. Birkhauser Verlag, Berlin, pp 83–98
Powell M (2015) Medicinal mushrooms—a clinical guide. Mycology Press
Prasad Y, Wesely WE (2008) Antibacterial activity of the bio-multidrug (*Ganoderma lucidum*) on multidrug resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA). Adv Biotechnol 10:9–16
Quereshi S, Pandey AK, Sandhu SS (2010) Evaluation of antibacterial activity of different *Ganoderma lucidum* extracts. People's J Scient Res 3(1):9–14
Rajasekaran M, Kalaimagal C (2012) Cardioprotective effect of a medicinal mushroom, *Ganoderma lucidum* against adriamycin induced toxicity. Int J Pharmacol 8(4):252–258
Rubel R, Dalla SHS, Bonatto SJ, Bello S, Fernandes LC, di Bernardi R, Gern J, Santos CA, Soccol CR (2010) Medicinal Mushroom *Ganoderma lucidum* (Leyss Fr) Karst. Triggers immunomodulatory effects and reduces nitric oxide synthesis in mice. J Med Food 13:142–148
Rubel R, Santa HSD, Fernandes LC, Bonatto SJR, Bello S, Figueiredo BC, Filho JHCL, Santos CAM, Soccol CR (2011) Hypolipidemic and antioxidant properties of *Ganoderma lucidum* (Leyss:Fr) Karst used as a dietary supplement. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 27:1083–1089
Seto SW, Lam TY, Tam HL, Au AL, Chan SW, Wu JH, Yu PH, Leung GP, Ngai SM, Yeung JH, Leung PS (2009) Novel hypoglycemic effects of *Ganoderma lucidum* water-extract in obese/diabetic (+db/+db) mice. Phytomedicine 16(5):426–436
Sheena N, Ajith TA, Janardhanan KK (2003) Antiinflammatory and antinociceptive activities of *Ganoderma lucidum* occurring in South India. Pharm Biol 41:301–304
Shiao MS (2003) Natural products of the medicinal fungus *Ganoderma lucidum:* occurrence, biological activities, and pharmacological functions. Chem Rec 3:172–180
Shiao MS, Lee KR, Lin LJ, Wang CT (1994) Natural products and biological activities of the Chinese medical fungus, *Ganoderma lucidum*. In: Ho CT, Osawa T, Huang MT, Rosen RT (eds) Food phytochemicals for cancer prevention. II: teas, spices, and herbs. American Chemical Society, Washington, DC, pp 342–354
Sliva D (2003) *Ganoderma lucidum* (Reishi) in cancer treatment. Integr Cancer Ther (4): 358–364
Smith BJ, Sivasithamparam K (2000) Internal transcribed spacer ribosomal DNA sequence analysis for 5 species of Ganoderma from Australia. Mycol Res 104:943–951
Song YS, Kim SH, Sa JH, Jin C, Lim CJ, Park EH (2004) Anti-angiogenic and inhibitory activity on inducible nitric oxide production of the mushroom *Ganoderma lucidum*. J Ethnopharmacol 90(1):17–20

Srivastava KD, Kattan JD, Zou ZM, Li JH, Zhang L, Wallenstein S, Goldfarb J, Sampson HA, Li XM (2005) The Chinese herbal medicine formula FAHF-2 completely blocks anaphylactic reactions in murine model of peanut allergy. J Allergy Clin Immunol 115:171–178

Su C, Shiao M, Wang C (2000) Potentiation of ganodermic acid S on prostaglandin E(1)-induced cyclic AMP elevation in human platelets. Thromb Res 99:135–145

Sun J, He H, Jun B, Nozvel X (2004) Antioxidant peptides from fermented mushroom *Ganoderma lucidum*. J Agric Food Chem 52:6646–6652

Sun LX, Li WD, Lin ZB, Duan XS, Li XF, Yang N, Lan TF, Li M, Sun Y, Yu M, Lu J (2014) Protection against lung cancer patient plasma-induced lymphocyte suppression by *Ganoderma lucidum* polysaccharides. Cell Physiol Biochem 33(2):289–299

Tamura T, Takahashi T, Matsuda S (1987) Production of fermented food. JP patent 62096063

Tanaka S, Ko K, Kino K, Tsuchiya K, Yamashita A, Murasugi A, Sakuma S, Tsunoo H (1989) Complete amino acid sequence of an immunomodulatory protein, ling zhi-8 (LZ-8) an immunomodulator from a fungus, *Ganoderma lucidum*, having similarity to immunoglobulin variable regions. J Biol Chem 264:16372–16377

Tasaka K, Akagi M, Miyoshi K, Mio M, Makino T (1988a) Antiallergic constituents in the culture medium of *Ganoderma lucidum* (I) inhibitory effect of oleic acid on histamine release. Agents Actions 23:153–156

Tasaka K, Mio M, Izushi K, Akagi M, Makino T (1988b) Anti-allergic constituents in the culture medium of *Ganoderma lucidum* (II). The inhibitory effect of cyclooctasulfur on histamine release. Agents Actions 23:157–160

Terada A, Murata J (1985) Preparation of coffee *Containing Ganoderma lucidum*. JP patent no. 60262552

Thyagarajan A, Jedinak A, Nguyen H, Terry C, Baldridge LA, Jiang J, Sliva D (2010) Triterpenes from *Ganoderma lucidum* induce autophagy in colon cancer through the inhibition of p38 mitogen-activated kinase (p38 MAPK). Nutr Cancer 62(5):630–640

Timo HJ, Lindequist U, Mentel R, Gordes D, Schmidt E, Thurow K, Lalk M (2005) Antiviral terpenoid constituents of *Ganoderma pfeifferi*. J Nat Prod 68:1728–1731

Toth JO, Luu B, Ourission G (1983) Les acides ganoderiques T & Z: triterpenes cytotoxiques de *Ganoderma lucidum* (Polyporaceae). Tetrahedron Lett 24:1081–1084

Tsujikura S, Higuchi T (1991) *Ganoderma lucidum* jelly and production thereof. JP patent no. 3127955

Ukiya M, Akihisa T, Tokuda H, Hirano M, Oshikubo M, Nobukuni Y, Kimura Y, Tai T, Kondo S, Nishino H (2002) Inhibition of tumor-promoting effects by poricoic acids G and H and other lanostane-type triterpenes and cytotoxic activity of poricoic acids a and g from *Poria cocos*. J Nat Prod 65:462–465

van der Hem LG, van der Vliet JA, Bocken CF, Kino K, Hoitsma AJ, Tax WJ (1995) Ling Zhi-8: studies of a new immunomodulating agent. Transplantation 60:438–443

van der Hem LG, van der Vliet JA, Kino K, Hoitsma AJ, Tax WJ (1996) Ling-Zhi-8: a fungal protein with immunomodulatory effects. Transplant Proc 28:958–959

Wachtel-Galor S, Benzie IFF, Tomlinson B, Buswell JA (2003) Lingzhi (*Ganoderma lucidum*). In: Packer L, Halliwell B, Ong CN (eds) Herbal medicines. Marcel Dekker, New York

Wachtel-Galor S, Tomlinson B, Benzie IF (2004) *Ganoderma lucidum* (Lingzhi), a Chinese medicinal mushroom: biomarker responses in a controlled human supplementation study. Br J Nutr 91:263–269

Wagner R, Mitchell DA, Sassakil GL, Amazonas MA, Berovi M (2003) Current techniques for the cultivation of *Ganoderma lucidum* for the production of biomass, ganoderic acid and polysaccharides. Food Technol Biotechnol 41:371–382

Wang SY, Hsu ML, Hsu HC, Tzeng CH, Lee SS, Shiao MS, Ho CK (1997) The anti-tumor effect of *Ganoderma lucidum* is mediated by cytokines released from activated macrophages and T lymphocytes. Int J Cancer 70(6):699–705

Wang Y, Zhang L, Li Y, Hou X, Zeng F (2004) Correlation of structure to antitumor activities of five derivatives of a β-glucan from *Poria cocos* sclerotium. Carbohydr Res 339:2567–2574
Wang G, Zhao J, Liu J, Huang Y, Zhong JJ, Tang W (2007) Enhancement of IL-2 and IFN-gamma expression and NK cells activity involved in the anti-tumor effect of ganoderic acid Me in vivo. Int Immunopharmacol 7:864–870
Wang GJ, Huang YJ, Chen DH, Lin YL (2009) *Ganoderma lucidum* extract attenuates the proliferation of hepatic stellate cells by blocking the PDGF receptor. Phytother Res 23:833–839
Wasser SP (2005) Reishi or Ling Zhi (*Ganoderma lucidum*). Encyclopedia of dietary supplements, vol 1, pp 603–622
Wasser SP (2011) Current findings, future trends, and unsolved problems in studies of medicinal mushrooms. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 89:1323–1332
Wicks SM, Tong R, Wang CZ, O'Connor M, Karrison T, Li S, Moss J, Yuan CS (2007) Safety and tolerability of *Ganoderma lucidum* in healthy subjects: a double-blind randomized placebo-controlled trial. Am J Chin Med 35(3):407–414
Wu YW, Fang HL, Lin WC (2010) Post-treatment of *Ganoderma lucidum* reduced liver fibrosis induced by thioacetamide in mice. Phytother Res 24:494–499
Wu GS, Lu JJ, Guo JJ, Li YB, Tan W, Dang YY, Zhong ZF, Xu ZT, Chen XP, Wang YT (2012) Ganoderic acid DM, a natural triterpenoid, induces DNA damage, G1 cell cycle arrest and apoptosis in human breast cancer cells. Fitoterapia 83(2):408–414
Xu J-W, Zhao W, Zhong J-J (2010) Biotechnological production and application of ganoderic acids. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 87(2):457–466
Yamashita K, Sato T (1994) Healthy candy containing raw material of crude medicine in high concentration and its production. JP patent no. 6113743
Yang BK, Jeong SC, Park JB, Cho SP, Lee HJ, Das S, Yun JW, Lim WJ, Song CH (2001) Swimming endurance capacity of mice after administration of exo-polymer produced from submerged mycelia culture of *Ganoderma lucidum*. J Microbiol Biotechnol 11:902–905
Yang XJ, Liu J, Ye LB, Yang F, Ye L, Gao JR, Wu ZH (2006) In vitro and in vivo protective effects of proteoglycan isolated from mycelia of *Ganoderma lucidum* on carbon tetrachloride-induced liver injury. World J Gastroenterol 12:1379–1385
Yao X, Li G, Xu H, Lu C (2012) Inhibition of the JAK-STAT3 signaling pathway by ganoderic acid A enhances chemosensitivity of HepG2 cells to cisplatin. Planta Med 78(16):1740–1748
Yoshii T, Kai S (1984) Preparation of yoghurt by mushroom fungus. JP patent no. 59078641
Yu D (1994) Alcoholic beverage by *Ganoderma lucidum* fermentation. KR patent no. 9401304
Yu J, Zhai Y (1979) Studies on the constituents of Ganoderma capens (Part I) (author's transl). Yao Xue Xue Bao 14(6):374
Yuan JP, Wang JH, Liu X, Kuang HC, Huang XN (2006) Determination of ergosterol in Ganoderma spore lipid from the germinating spores of *Ganoderma lucidum* by high-performance liquid chromatography. J Agric Food Chem 54:6172–6176
Yue QX, Song XY, Ma C, Feng LX, Guan SH, Wu WY, Yang M, Jiang BH, Liu X, Cui YJ, Guo DA (2010) Effects of triterpenes from *Ganoderma lucidum* on protein expression profile of HeLa cells. Phytomedicine 17(8):606–613
Zhang HN, Lin ZB (2004) Hypoglycemic effect of *Ganoderma lucidum* polysaccharides. Acta Pharmacol Sin 25:191–195
Zhang GL, Wang YH, Ni W, Teng HL, Lin ZB (2002a) Hepatoprotective role of *Ganoderma lucidum* polysaccharide against BCG-induced immune liver injury in mice. World J Gastroenterol 8:728–733
Zhang J, Tang Q, Zimmerman-Kordman M, Reutter W, Fan H (2002b) Activation of B lymphocytes by GLIS, a bioactive proteoglycan from *Ganoderma lucidum*. Life Sci 71(6):623–638
Zhang Y, Lin Z, Hu Y, Wang F (2008) Effect of *Ganoderma lucidum* capsules on T lymphocyte subsets in football players on living high training low. Br J Sports Med 42:819–822
Zhang J, Tang Q, Zhou C, Jia W, Da Silva L, Nguyen LD, Reutter W, Fan H (2010a) GLIS, a bioactive proteoglycan fraction from *Ganoderma lucidum*, displays anti-tumour activity by increasing both humoral and cellular immune response. Life Sci 87(19–22):628–637

Zhang Q, Andoh T, Konno M, Lee JB, Hattori M, Kuraishi Y (2010b) Inhibitory effect of methanol extract of *Ganoderma lucidum* on acute itch-associated responses in mice. Biol Pharm Bull 33:909–911

Zhou S, Gao Y, Chen G, Dai X, Ye J, Gao H (2002) A phase I=II study of a *Ganoderma lucidum* (Curt.: Fr.) P. Karst. (Ling Zhi, reishi mushroom) extract in patients with chronic hepatitis B. Int J Med Mushrooms 4:321–328

Zhou X, Lin J, Yin Y, Zhao J, Sun X, Tang K (2007) Ganodermataceae: natural products and their related pharmacological functions. Am J Chin Med 35:559–574

Zhu X, Lin Z (2006) Modulation of cytokines production, granzyme B and perforin in murine CIK cells by *Ganoderma lucidum* polysaccharides. Carbohydr Polym 63:188–197

Ziegenbein FC, Hanssen HP, Konig WA (2006) Secondary metabolites from *Ganoderma lucidum* and *Spongiporus leucomallellus*. Phytochemistry 67:202–211

Functional Attributes of Seeds of Two Coastal Germplasms of *Sesbania*

Suvarna J. Shreelalitha and Kandikere R. Sridhar

Introduction

Plant-derived proteins are popular worldwide in food industries owing to their functional attributes in formulations compared to expensive and scarce animal-derived proteins (Chel-Guerrero et al. 2002; Bernardino et al. 2005). Functional properties of foods are dependent on the composition, structure, conformation and physicochemical properties of components, which influence the behaviour of proteins during processing, storage, preparation and consumption (Kinsella 1982; Kohnhorst et al. 1990; Guéguen 1998; Alobo et al. 2009). The most important attributes in food processing include protein solubility, gelation, water-holding capacity, fat-holding capacity, flavour-binding capacity, emulsification, foaming and thickening (Boye et al. 2010). Such functional potential is dependent on the amino acid composition, protein structure/conformation and interactions between proteins and other components like salts, fats, carbohydrates and phenolics. As there is a demand to develop inexpensive protein-rich supplementary foods, there is a shift in the emphasis to utilize lesser-known or wild legumes in the place of popular or well-known legumes (Alobo 1999; Eneche 2005; Seena and Sridhar 2005; Tosh and Yada 2010; Sridhar et al. 2016a). Food industries are in need of appropriate functional properties in legume seed flours to develop cost-effective, affordable and novel food products (Boye et al. 2010).

About 60 species of *Sesbania* (consisting of annuals, perennials, herbs, shrubs and trees) are widely distributed in tropical and subtropical regions (Evans 1990; Veasey et al. 1999). Agricultural, nutritional, pharmaceutical and industrial applications of *Sesbania* have been documented by various researchers (Siddhuraju et al. 1995; Hossain and

S. J. Shreelalitha
Department of Biotechnology, St. Aloysius College, Mangalore, Karnataka, India

K. R. Sridhar (✉)
Department of Biosciences, Mangalore University, Mangalore, Karnataka, India

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_22

Becker 2001; Bhat and Karim 2009; Vadivel and Biesalski 2010; Pollard et al. 2011: Shreelalitha and Sridhar 2016; Sridhar et al. 2016a). According to Siddhuraju et al. (1995), tribals (Kharis and Ghondas) of Southeast India utilize cooked mature seeds of *Sesbania* as food source. *Sesbania bispinosa* is highly adapted to the coastal region of Southwest coast of India as they tolerate wide soil, geographic and climatic conditions (e.g. water logging; temperature, 36–44 °C; pH, 10) (Prasad 1993; Ipor and Oyen 1997; Anita 2010). Average seed yield of *S. bispinosa* ranges between 600 and 1000 kg/h (India, 600 kg/h; Peru, 900 kg/h; California, 1000 kg/h), while the fibre yield ranges between 100 and 1000 kg/h (http://www.hort.purdue.edu/newcrop/duke_energy/Sesbania_bispinosa.html). Seed yield in *S. bispinosa* in coastal region of Southwest coast of India is about 150–200 g per plant (Shreelalitha 2011). *Sesbania bispinosa* is one of the germplasms conserved in Plant Genetic Resources Conservation Unit (PGRCU), University of Georgia, as it is industrially versatile (useful as fibre, pulp, cover crop, fodder, green manure, ornamental and galactomannan) (Morris 1999; Hossain et al. 2003; Pollard et al. 2011). It also serves as an ornamental plant, fodder and green manure and possesses medicinal and industrial applications (Bhagya and Sridhar 2009). Flowers of *S. bispinosa* are used to treat skin diseases, seed power is used to treat cough and headache and seed oil is used to treat body ache (Morris 1999; Bhagya and Sridhar 2009). The seed gum galactomannan derived from *Sesbania* seeds possesses properties like smooth, transparent, coherent and elastic film useful in sizing textiles and paper industries and also to stabilize mud during oil drilling (Vietmeyer 1986). As galactomannan is a food-grade polysaccharide, it will be utilized as stabilizer and thickener in several food products like ice cream, bakery mixes and salad dressings. Recent studies revealed that the galactomannan of *Sesbania* seeds could be comparable or equivalent to guar gum (or guaran) derived from cluster bean (*Cyamopsis tetragonoloba*) (Pollard et al. 2011).

The novelty of legume-based food/feed and pharmaceutically/industrially useful product could be evaluated precisely by physical, cooking and functional properties (Boye et al. 2010; Karaj and Müller 2010; Tosh and Yada 2010; Pollard et al. 2011; Niveditha et al. 2013; Niveditha and Sridhar 2017). Evaluation of nutritional and functional properties of seeds of wild legumes helps in optimum utilization and possibilities to produce the desired food/feed/pharmaceutical products. As an extension of earlier evaluation of nutritional and bioactive potential of *Sesbania bispinosa* (Shreelalitha 2011; Shreelalitha and Sridhar 2016), the current study envisaged to compare the functional properties of seeds of two *Sesbania* landraces (*S. bispinosa* and *S. speciosa*) adapted to mangrove habitats of Southwest mangroves of India.

Seeds and Processing

Dry pods of *Sesbania bispinosa* (Jacq.) W.F. Wight and *Sesbania speciosa* Taub. were harvested from the five sampling stations of about 100 m distance in Nethravathi mangroves (12°50′ N, 74°49′ E), Mangalore, southwest coast of India during post-monsoon season (January–February) (Fig. 1). Seeds were separated from dry pods, and damaged, sunken, aborted and malformed seeds were eliminated and sun-dried

Fig. 1 Mature plant of *Sesbania bispinosa* with dry pods and dry seeds (left panel); mature plant of *Sesbania speciosa* with dry pods and dry seeds (right panel) grown on the Nethravathi mangroves, Southwest India

until the moisture attained below 10%. Each sample was divided into two sets, the first set was uncooked and the second set was pressure-cooked (6.5 L, Deluxe stainless steel; *TTK* Prestige™, Prestige Ltd., India) with freshwater (1:3 v/v) followed by sun-drying. Uncooked and cooked seeds were milled (Wiley mill, mesh # 30), and the flour was stored in airtight containers in a refrigerator.

Assessment of Functional Properties

Uncooked and cooked seed flours of *S. bispinosa* and *S. speciosa* were analysed for protein solubility, gelation property, water and oil absorption capacities, emulsion properties and foam properties.

Protein Solubility

Protein solubility of the seed flours was determined according to the method outlined by Were et al. (1997). For uncooked and cooked seed flours, each (125 mg) ($n = 5$) was blended with distilled water (25 mL) (Philips HL1643, Philips India Ltd.,

Kolkata, India). The solution was mixed using a magnetic stirrer (1 h, 20 °C) and centrifuged (12,000 *g*, 20 min, 4 °C). The supernatant was filtered through glass wool, and nitrogen was estimated by micro-Kjeldahl method (Humphries 1956). The soluble protein (%) profile was determined (nitrogen solubility × 6.25). The effect of ionic strength (0.2–1.0 M NaCl) and pH (2–10) on protein solubility was also determined:

$$\text{Protein solubility (\%)} = (\text{Quantity of nitrogen in the supernatant} / \text{Quantity of nitrogen in the flour}) \times 100$$

Gelation

The gelation properties were determined by the method outlined by Coffman and Garcia (1977). Uncooked and cooked seed flour suspension in distilled water (2–20%; in 10 mL) was transferred to test tubes and heated in a boiling water bath (1 h) and cooled to room temperature. The samples in tubes were further cooled (4 °C, 2 h), and the least gelation concentration (LGC) was detected when the sample from the inverted test tube did not slip. The effect of ionic strength (0.2–1 M NaCl) and pH (2–10) on LGC was also determined.

Water and Oil Absorption

Water absorption capacity (WAC) and oil absorption capacity (OAC) were determined according to the method outlined by Beuchat (1977). Uncooked and cooked seed flour (1 g) ($n = 5$) was mixed with distilled water (10 mL) or edible oil (Fortune Sunlite Refined Sunflower Oil, Adani Wilmar Ltd., Gujarat, India) in centrifuge tube (30 s). The solution was allowed to stand at room temperature (27 ± 2 °C; 30 min) and centrifuged (5000 *g*; 30 min), and the volume of supernatant was noted in a 10 mL graduated cylinder. The effect of ionic strength (0.2–1.0 M NaCl) on water absorption capacity was also determined.

Emulsion

Emulsion activity and stability of seed flours were determined according to the method outlined by Neto et al. (2001). Seed flour was suspended in distilled water (10 mg/mL), aliquot (5 mL) ($n = 5$) was homogenized (1 min) with edible oil (5 mL) and centrifuged (1100 *g*; 5 min) and the height of emulsified layer and the total contents in the tube were determined to calculate the emulsion activity:

$$\text{Emulsion activity } (\%) = (\text{Height of the emulsified layer} / \text{Height of the total content}) \times 100$$

Emulsion stability was determined by heating the emulsion (80 °C, 30 min) before centrifugation (1100 *g*; 5 min). The effect of flour concentration (2–10%), ionic strength (0.1–1.0 M NaCl) and pH (2–10) on emulsion activity and stability were also determined.

Foam

Foam properties (foam capacity and foam stability) of the seed flour were determined according to Coffman and Garcia (1977). Seed flour sample (2 g) (n = 5) was dispersed in distilled water (100 mL) and whipped vigorously (2 min) in a blender at speed 1. To determine the foam capacity, the volume before and after whipping was recorded, and the volume increase was calculated in percentage:

$$\text{Foam capacity } (\%) = (\text{Volume after whipping} - \text{Volume before whipping} / \text{Volume before whipping}) \times 100$$

Foam stability was determined as the volume of foam that remained after 8 h at room temperature (27 ± 2 °C) and expressed as the percentage of initial foam volume. The increase in foam volume (%) was also assessed at different time intervals (0–480 min). The effect of flour concentration (2–10%), ionic strength (0.1–1 M NaCl) and pH (2–10) on foam capacity and stability were also determined.

Data Analysis

Variations in physical properties between uncooked and boiled seeds, cooking properties between seeds of two species and functional properties between uncooked and cooked seed flours were evaluated by *t*-test using Statistica version 8.0 (StatSoft Inc. 2008).

Functional Properties

Protein Solubility

Protein solubility of seed flours in distilled water and protein solubility with different ionic strengths and pH are given in Fig. 2. Protein solubility of uncooked seed flour was significantly higher than cooked seed flours ($p < 0.05$). The overall protein

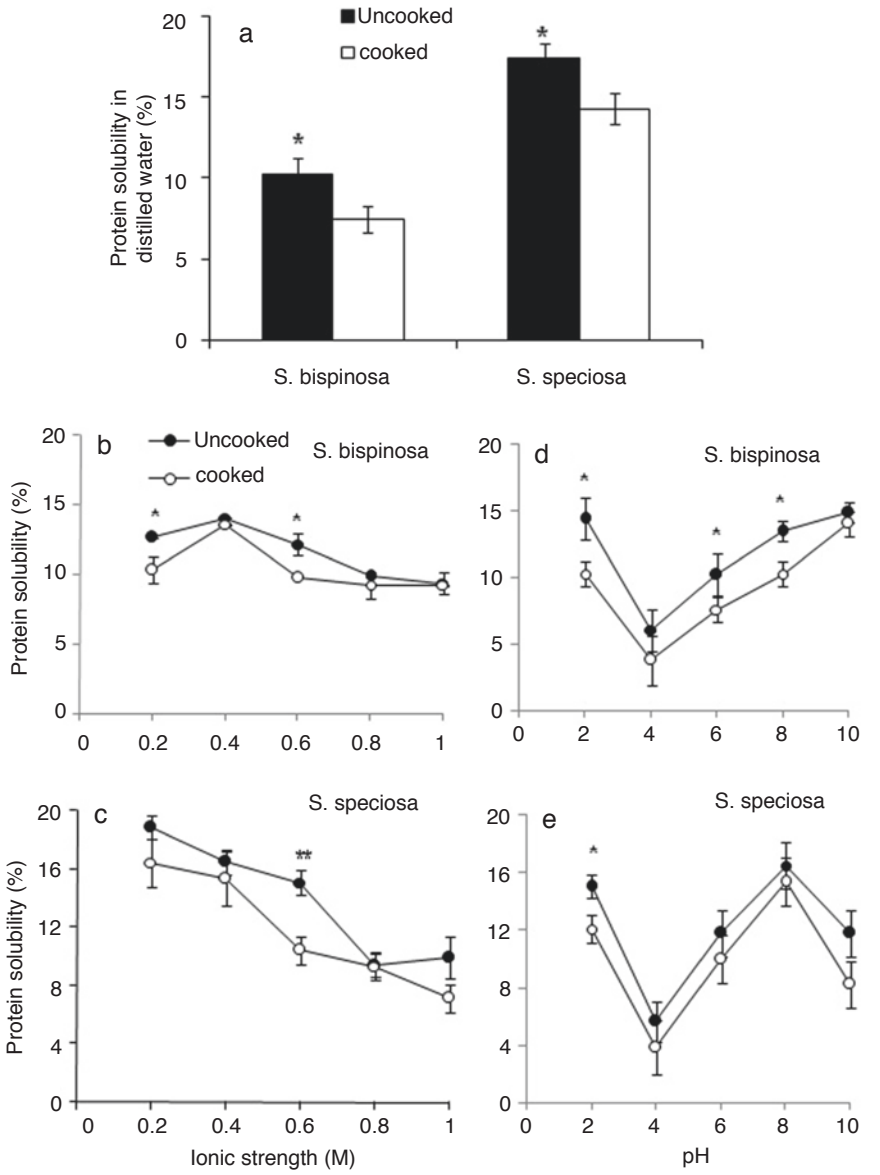


Fig. 2 Protein solubility profile of uncooked and cooked seed flours of *Sesbania bispinosa* and *S. speciosa* in distilled water and different ionic strengths and pH (*t*-test, $*p < 0.05$; $**p < 0.01$)

solubility of both uncooked and cooked seed flours of *S. speciosa* was substantially higher than *S. bispinosa*. Alteration of ionic strength resulted in narrow changes in protein solubility of uncooked and cooked seed flours of *S. bispinosa*, which significantly differed only in 0.2 and 0.6 M. But in *S. speciosa*, the protein solubility gradually decreased with significant difference between uncooked and cooked seed flours at 0.6 M. Protein solubility curves in both uncooked and cooked seeds of *S. bispinosa* on changing pH attained typical '$\surd$' shape, while it was almost similar in *S. speciosa* except for the decrease at pH 10.

Gelation

The least gelation concentration (LGC) of uncooked seed flours was higher than cooked seed flours in both seeds (Fig. 3). The LGC of cooked seed flours of *S. speciosa* was higher than *S. bispinosa* (12% vs. 10%). On the alteration of ionic strength, gelation capacity of cooked seed flours of *S. bispinosa* and uncooked seed flours of *S. speciosa* did not drastically alter. The uncooked seed flour of *S. bispinosa* at 0.6 M and cooked seed flours of *S. speciosa* at 0.4 and 0.6 M showed gelation at least concentration (6% vs. 4%). At both acidic (pH 4) and alkaline (pH 10) conditions, the gelling capacity of uncooked seed flours of *S. bispinosa* was least (12%), while it was at pH 6 in *S. speciosa* (12%). The gelling capacity of cooked seed flours of *S. bispinosa* was least at pH 4 (10%) while at pH 4, pH 8 and pH 10 in *S. speciosa* (12%).

Water and Oil Absorption

The water absorption capacity of uncooked seed flours was significantly lesser than cooked seed flours in both species (Fig. 4). The water absorption capacity of both uncooked and cooked seed flours was higher in *S. bispinosa* than *S. speciosa*. On the increase of ionic strength (0.2–1 M), the water absorption capacity of uncooked and cooked seeds gradually decreased in both species. The water absorption capacity in all ionic strength was significantly higher in cooked seed flours than uncooked seed flours. The oil absorption capacity was higher in uncooked and cooked seed flours of *S. speciosa* than *S. bispinosa* (Fig. 5). However, between uncooked and cooked seed flours, the oil absorption capacity does not significantly differ ($p > 0.05$).

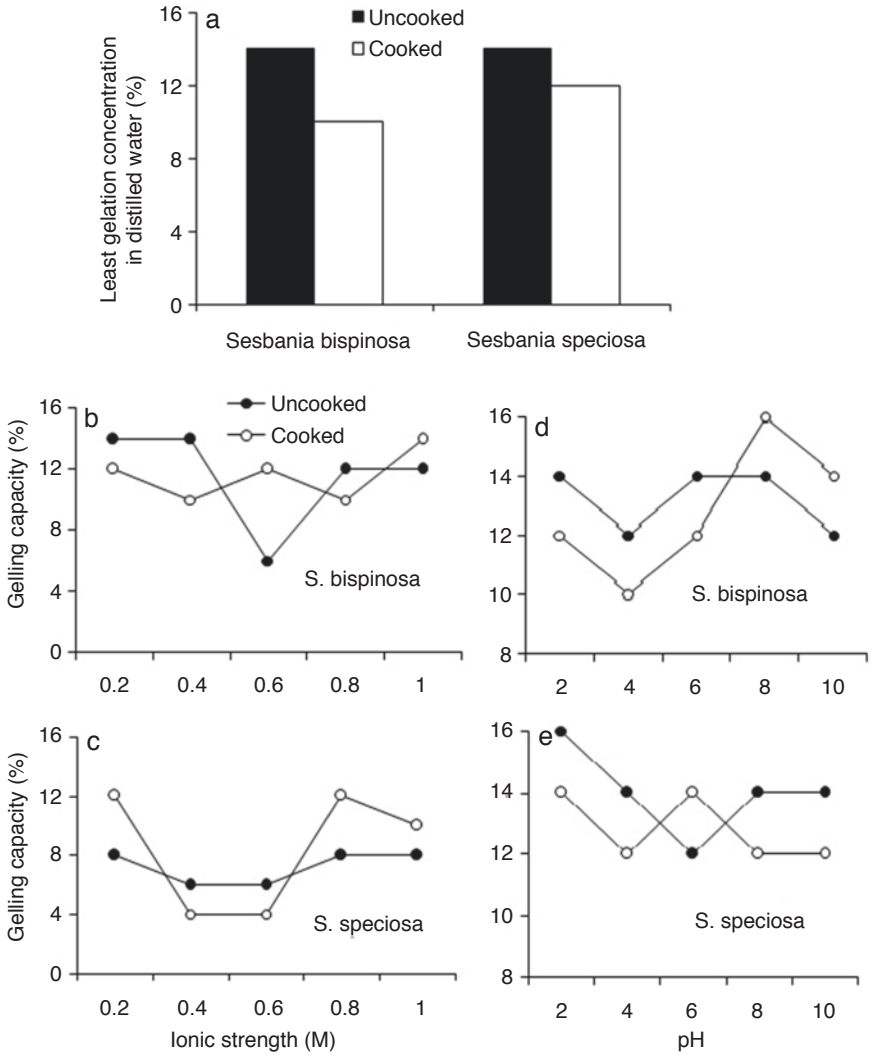


Fig. 3 Gelation profile of uncooked and cooked seed flours of *Sesbania bispinosa* and *S. speciosa* in distilled water and different ionic strengths and pH

Emulsion

Emulsion activity of uncooked seed flours was higher than cooked seed flours in both species (Fig. 6); it showed a gradual decrease on increasing flour concentration. The emulsion stability also followed a similar pattern with that of emulsion activity with an exception of a sudden decrease at 8% flour concentration in *S. speciosa*. The overall emulsion activity and stability were relatively higher in *S. bispinosa* than *S. speciosa* with increased flour concentration. The emulsion activity and stability with increasing

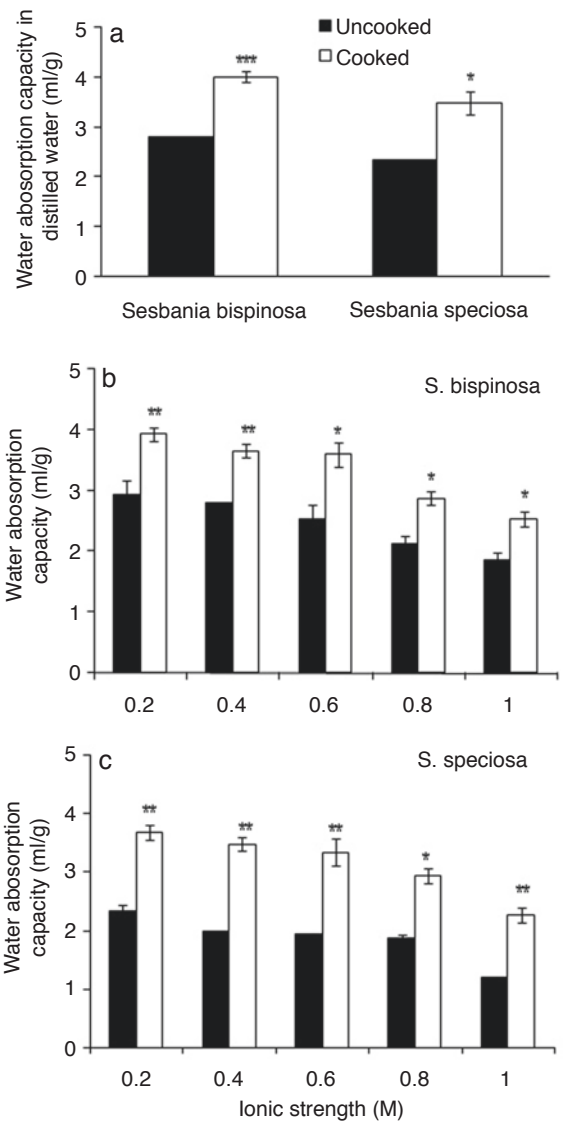


Fig. 4 Water absorption capacity of uncooked and cooked seed flours of *Sesbania bispinosa* and *S. speciosa* in distilled water and different ionic strengths (*t*-test, $*p < 0.05$; $**p < 0.01$; $***p < 0.001$)

ionic strength showed initial elevation followed by gradual decline (Fig. 7). The overall emulsion activity and stability were higher in *S. speciosa* than *S. bispinosa* on changing ionic strength. The emulsion activity was higher in uncooked than cooked seed flours of both species, while it was reverse in emulsion stability with the changing ionic strength. Changing pH showed initial decrease followed by gradual elevation in emulsion activity and stability (Fig. 8). However, a drastic decline in emulsion activity was evident between pH 2 and pH 4 in *S. speciosa*. Emulsion activity was higher in uncooked seed flours than cooked seed flours, while it was reverse in emulsion stability on changing pH.

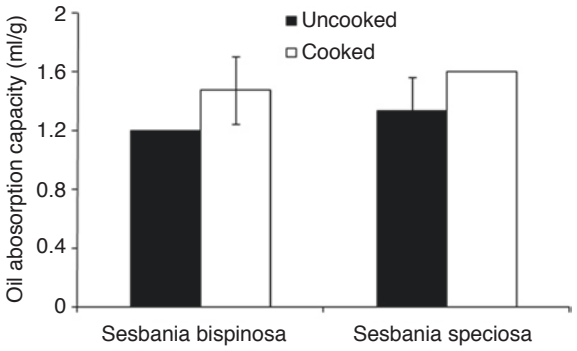


Fig. 5 Oil absorption capacity of uncooked and cooked seed flours of *Sesbania bispinosa* and *S. speciosa*

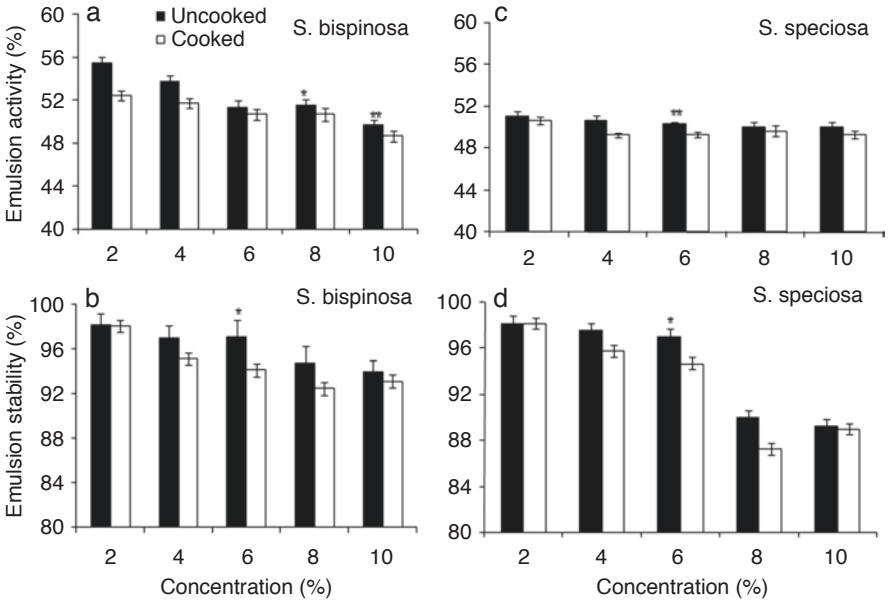


Fig. 6 Emulsion activity and stability of uncooked and cooked seed flours of *Sesbania bispinosa* and *S. speciosa* at different concentrations (*t*-test, $*p < 0.05$; $**p < 0.001$)

Foam

Foam capacity and stability of uncooked seed flour of *S. bispinosa* were higher than cooked seed flour (Fig. 9). Foam capacity of uncooked seed flour at 6% concentration showed highest foam capacity (0 h) and stability (8 h). The foam capacity and stability of *S. speciosa* are also similar to *S. bispinosa* and showed highest foam stability at 10% concentration in uncooked seed flours (Fig. 10). The foam capacity and stability of both seeds were higher in uncooked than cooked seed flours at different ionic strengths, and 0.4 M showed highest foam capacity and stability

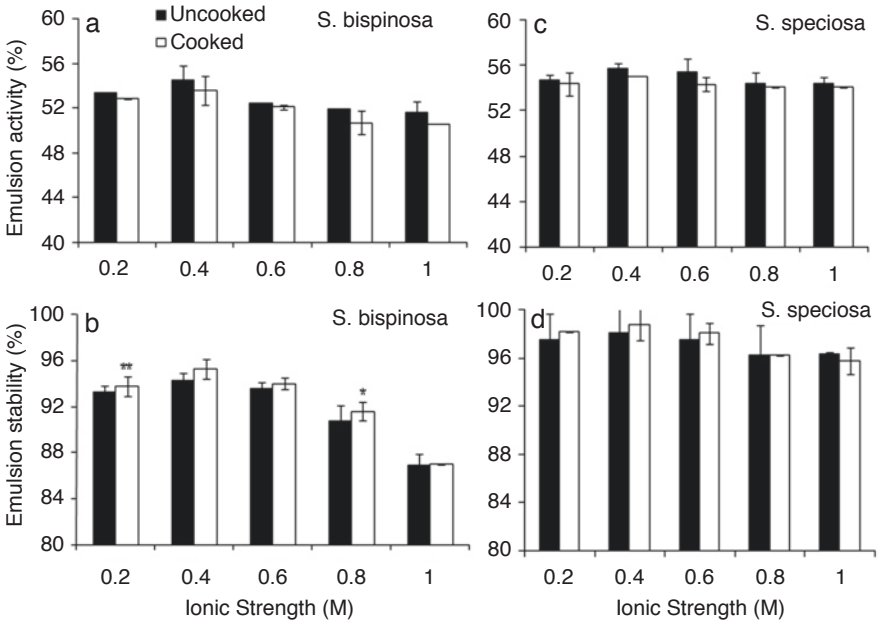


Fig. 7 Emulsion activity and stability of uncooked and cooked seed flours of *Sesbania bispinosa* and *S. speciosa* at different ionic strengths (*t*-test, $*p < 0.05$; $**p < 0.001$)

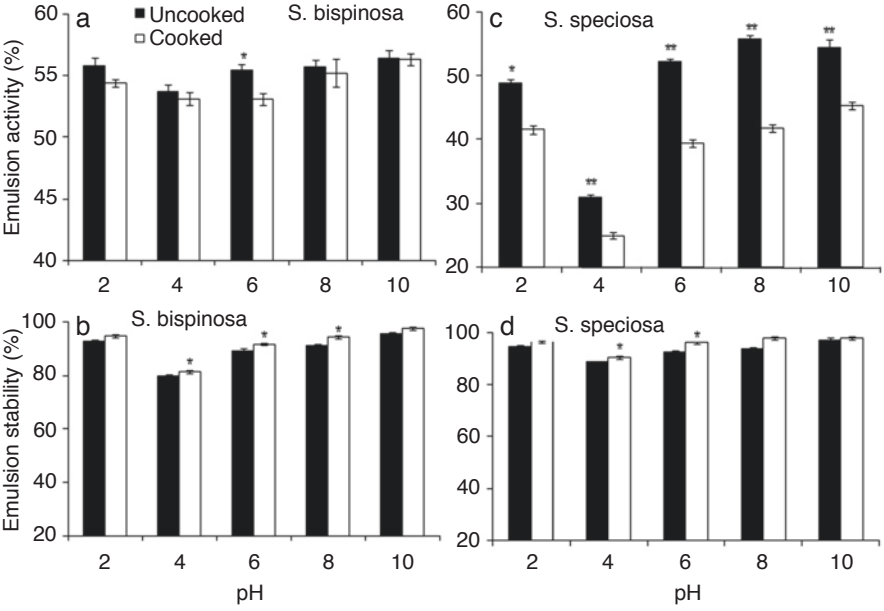


Fig. 8 Emulsion activity and stability of uncooked and cooked seed flours of *Sesbania bispinosa* and *S. speciosa* at different pH (*t*-test, $*p < 0.05$; $**p < 0.001$)

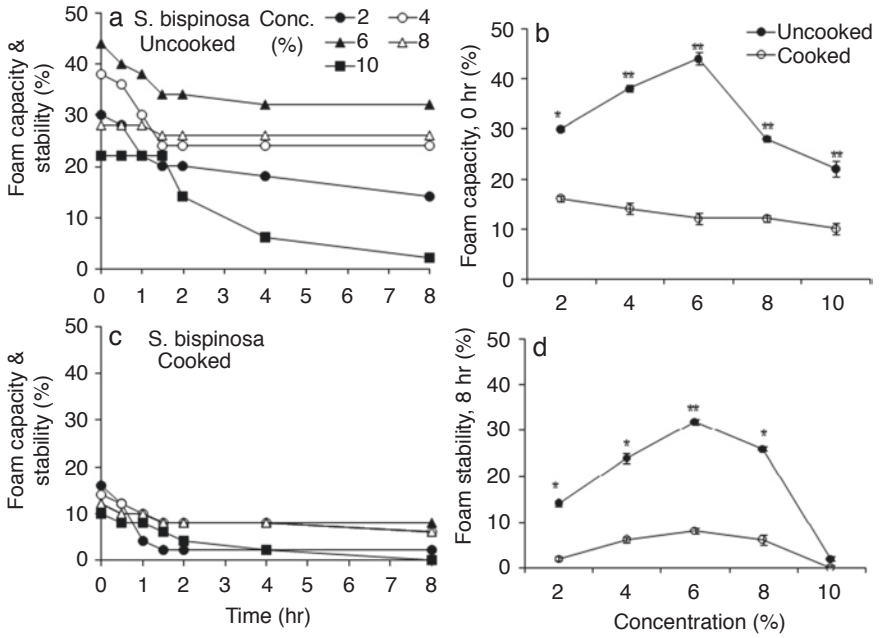


Fig. 9 Foam capacity and stability of uncooked and cooked seed flours of *Sesbania bispinosa* at different concentrations (*t*-test, $*p < 0.01$; $**p < 0.001$)

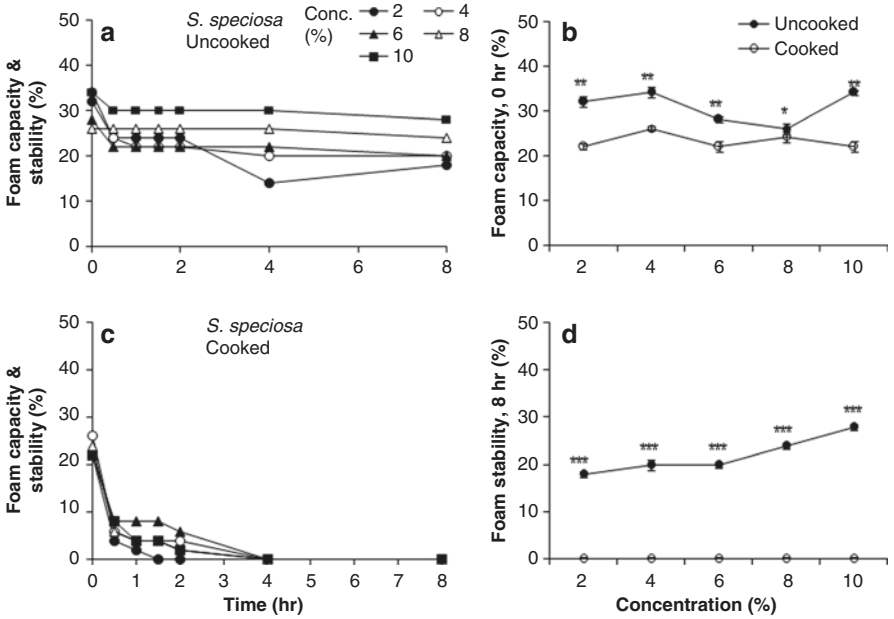


Fig. 10 Foam capacity and stability of uncooked and cooked seed flours of *Sesbania speciosa* at different concentrations (*t*-test, $*p < 0.05$; $**p < 0.01$; $***p < 0.001$)

(Figs. 11 and 12). The foam capacity and stability of both seeds were higher in uncooked than cooked seed flours at different pH; at pH 10 foam capacity was highest, while the stability was highest at pH 8 (Figs. 13 and 14).

Discussion

Suitability of any legume flour for the preparation of food product mainly depends on the nutritional and functional properties (Pour-El 1981). The following sections compare the functional properties of uncooked and cooked seed flours of *Sesbania* seeds in comparison with other legumes.

Protein Solubility

Protein solubility serves as an index of functionality for application in preparation of food products (e.g. soups, beverages and food cakes) requiring gelation, emulsification and foaming properties. Physicochemical changes in seed proteins influence the functional properties especially protein solubility, water absorption capacity, oil absorption capacity and foam properties (Kerr et al. 2000). Proteins along with starch also influence the functional properties of seed flours (Kinsella 1979). The protein solubility profile of uncooked and cooked *Sesbania* seed flours in distilled water and changed ionic strength and pH showed a wide variation. Overall the uncooked flours possessed higher protein solubility in distilled water and different ionic strengths and pH than cooked flours. Protein solubility of seed flours is usually affected by heat treatment (boiling) resulting in protein denaturation and solubility reduction (del Rosario and Flores 1981). The decrease in protein solubility as a result of heat treatment has been reported in other legumes: peanut and cowpea (Singh and Singh 1991; Giami 1993). On the contrary, in *Sesbania* seeds, although bulk density and protein solubility reduced on heat treatment, water and oil absorption capacities significantly improved. Low salt concentrations are known to enhance the protein solubility in seed flours than higher salt concentrations. *S. bispinosa* seed flours at 0.4 M ionic strength showed maximum protein solubility without significant difference between uncooked and cooked seed flours, while in *S. speciosa* maximum protein solubility was seen at 0.2 M ionic strength without significant difference in treatments. Least protein solubility was seen at pH 4 in both seeds, which corroborates with higher protein solubility in the range of pH 4–5 in other legumes such as *Canavalia cathartica*, *C. ensiformis*, *C. maritima* and *Phaseolus lunatus* (Chel-Guerrero et al. 2002; Seena and Sridhar 2005; Lawal and Adebowale 2006). Protein solubility in *Sesbania* uncooked and cooked seed flours ranged between 3.8 and 6.1 at pH 4, which corroborates with other legume seed flours: *Dolichos lablab*, *Glycine max*,

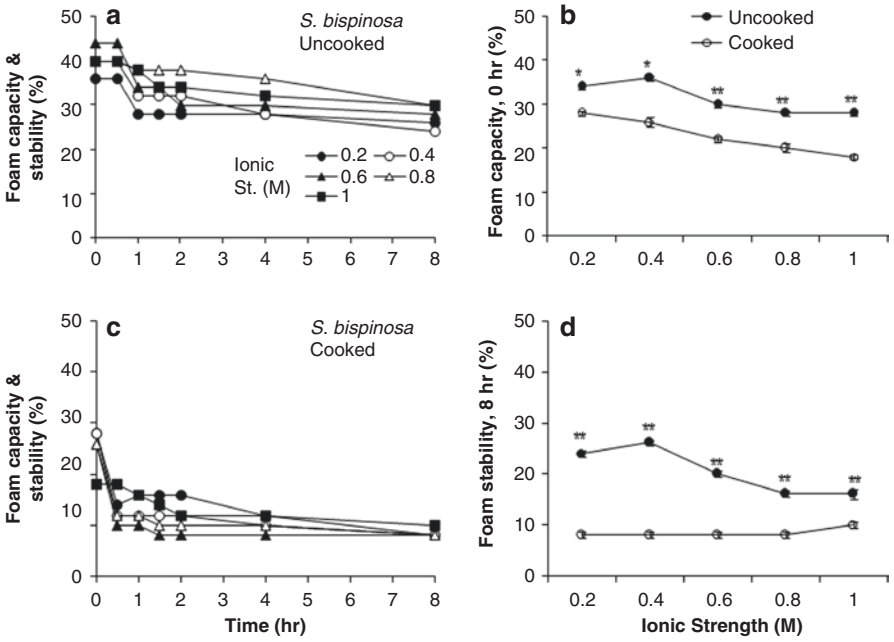


Fig. 11 Foam capacity and stability of uncooked and cooked seed flours of *Sesbania bispinosa* at different ionic strengths (*t*-test, $*p < 0.01$; $**p < 0.001$)

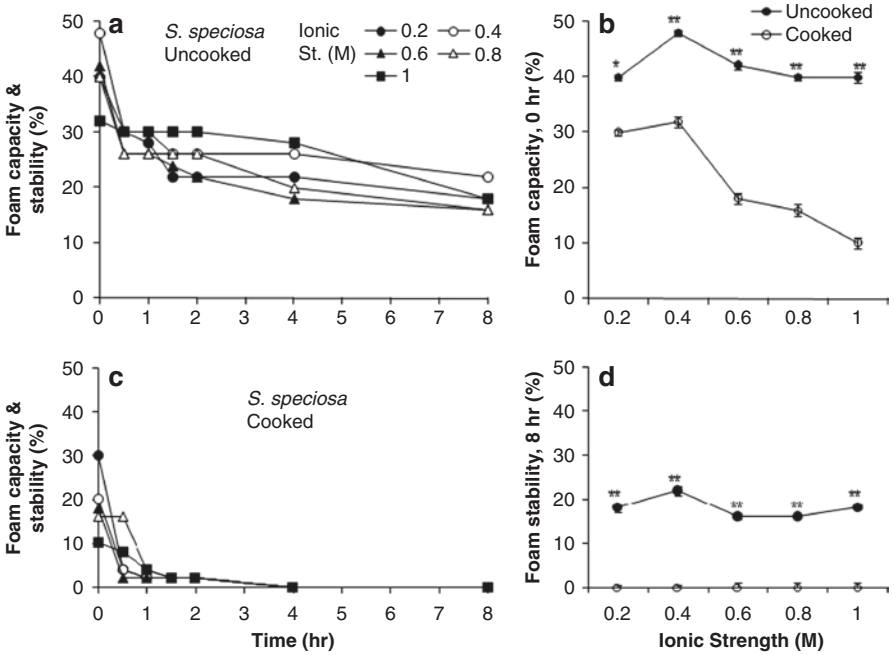


Fig. 12 Foam capacity and stability of uncooked and cooked seed flours of *Sesbania speciosa* at different ionic strengths (*t*-test, $*p < 0.01$; $**p < 0.001$)

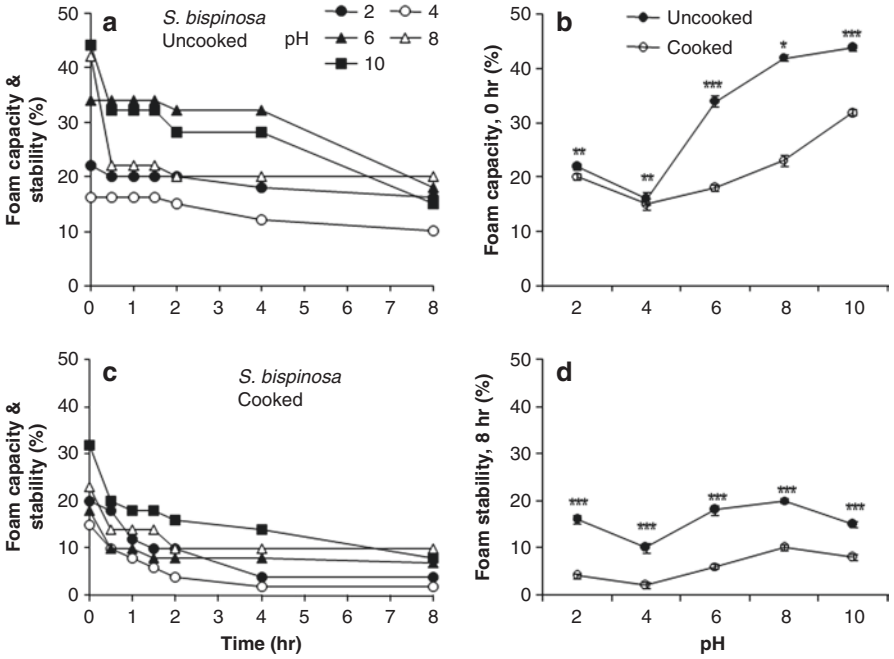


Fig. 13 Foam capacity and stability of uncooked and cooked seed flours of *Sesbania bispinosa* at different pH (*t*-test, $*p < 0.05$; $**p < 0.01$; $***p < 0.001$)

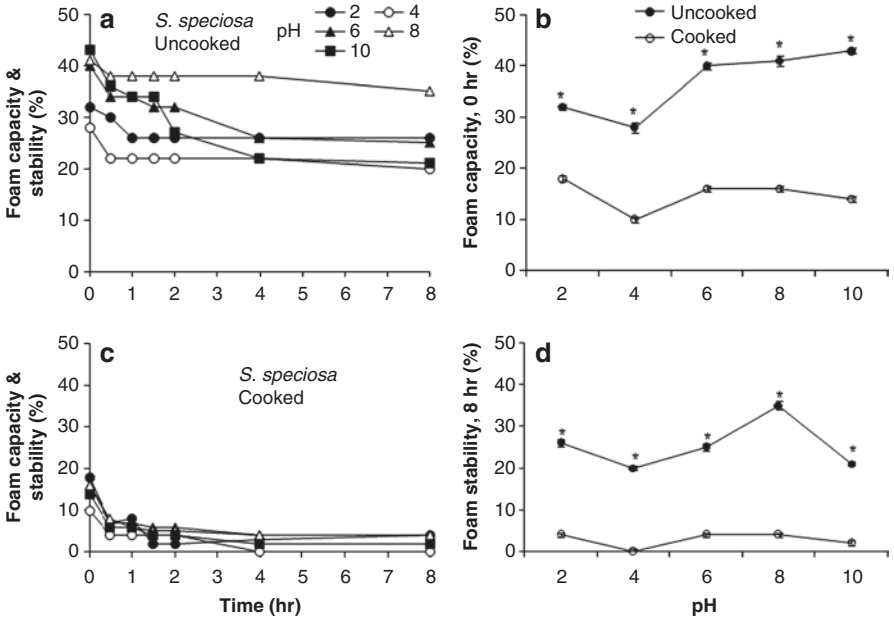


Fig. 14 Foam capacity and stability of uncooked and cooked seed flours of *Sesbania speciosa* with different pH (*t*-test, $*p < 0.001$)

Phaseolus calcaratus and *P. lunatus* (5–5.3%) (Chau et al. 1997; Chel-Guerrero et al. 2002). Proteins with high solubility profiles are required to impart certain characteristics in food formulations (Idouraine et al. 1997). *Sesbania* seed flours in the present study showed maximum protein solubility between pH 7 and 10. Between pH 2 and 10, *S. speciosa* seed flour showed maximum protein solubility, which is similar to the protein solubility pattern seen in the flour of cowpea (Olalekan and Bosede 2010). High protein solubility at alkaline pH reveals that *Sesbania* seed flours could be useful in formulating protein-rich carbonated beverages.

Gelation

There is a wide variation in gelation properties of legume seed flours (Moure et al. 2006), and such variation depends on the relative ratios and interactions of proteins, carbohydrates and lipids in flours (Sathe et al. 1982). The LGC of uncooked and cooked *Sesbania* seed flours in distilled water ranged between 10% and 14%, which is higher than seed flours of cowpea (4%), jack bean (4%) and pigeon pea (6%); comparable to seed flours *Cassia fistula* (10%), great northern bean (10%), mung bean (10%), cowpea (10–12%), soybean (10%), lima bean (12%) and pigeon pea (12%) (Coffman and Garcia 1977; Sathe and Salunkhe 1981; Oshodi and Ekperigin 1989; Oshodi and Adeladun 1993; Padilla et al. 1996; Horax et al. 2004; Akinyede and Amoo 2009; Olalekan and Bosede 2010) are lower than chick pea (14–18%) (Kaur and Singh 2007). Gelation in legume flours involves the formation of a protein-polysaccharide complex (Schmidt 1981), and some legume starches showed remarkable swelling power within the range of 60–90 °C (Wankhede and Ramteke 1982; Hoover and Sosulki 1991). Cooking *Sesbania* seeds decreased the LGC from 14% to 10–12%. Addition of salt up to 5% (w/v) generally improves gelation property by lowering the LGC. Ionic strength at 0.6 M resulted in drastic improvement in LGC of uncooked seed flours (14% vs. 6%) of *S. bispinosa* and uncooked (8% vs. 6%) and cooked (12% vs. 4%) seed flours of *S. speciosa*. Decreases in LGC by the addition of salt have been reported for winged beans and *Mucuna* beans (Sathe et al. 1982; Adebowale et al. 2005). Unlike ionic strength, change in pH did not result in drastic decrease in LGC in both *Sesbania* seed flours. High temperature leads to dissociation of proteins in flours, allows carbohydrates to gelatinize and permits fibre to swell (Mulvihihill and Kinsella 1987; Alobo et al. 2009). Such changes in carbohydrates and fibres in seed flours improve to hold water, flavours and sugars in favour of desired organoleptic properties in food products. Improvement in the gelation property of seed flours is useful in the production of food products especially jams, sauces, custards, ice creams, sausages, puddings and bakery products.

Water and Oil Absorption

Water retention in seed flours depicts the capacity of proteins to absorb water in the presence of dietary fibre in seed flours. The increase in water absorption capacity is due to the depolymerization of starch into short-chain dextrins, which have high affinity for water (Whistler and Daniel 1985). Carbohydrate content of seed flours is considered as one of the significant factors that influences the water-holding capacity (Paredes et al. 1991). Water absorption capacity of uncooked *Sesbania* seeds significantly increased on cooking in distilled water and at different ionic strengths. In both uncooked and cooked seed flours, increased ionic strength resulted in gradual decrease in water-holding capacity. Water absorption in distilled water in uncooked and cooked seed flours (2.3–4 mL/g) is higher than the seed flours of *Canavalia cathartica* and *C. maritima* (1.8–2.4 mL/g), *Mucuna pruriens* (2.17–2.67 mL/g), mung bean (2.1 mL/g) and undefatted soybean flours (1.3–1.75 mL/g) (Oshodi and Ekperigin 1989; Chau et al. 1997; Bhat et al. 2008) compared to *C. ensiformis* (3.5 mL/g) and common beans (red, black and white) (2.9–3 mL/g) (Dzudie and Hardy 1996; Chel-Guerrero et al. 2002). However, the WAC of *Sesbania* seed flours (2.3–4 mL/g) is lower than protein isolates of *Dolichos lablab* (5.1 mL/g), *Mucuna* bean (6 mL/g), *Phaseolus calcaratus* (5.28 mL/g), *P. angularis* (5.05 mL/g), soybean (4.10 mL/g) and winged bean (5.00 mL/g) (Chau et al. 1997; Okezie and Bello 1988; Udensi and Okonkwo 2006) compared to protein isolates of *Phaseolus aureus* (2.26 mL/g) (Mesallam and Hamza 1987). Elevated WAC is advantageous in the preparation of food stuffs such as bread and sausages, which help to maintain the freshness in food. High water absorption capacity is important especially for viscous liquid (e.g. soups and gravies) and baked (e.g. dough and bakery products) food products (Oshodi and Adeladun 1993; Igene et al. 2005). Narayana and Rao (1982) reported that heat treatment enhanced the water absorption capacity in winged beans and cowpea seed flours (Giami 1993). This enhancement of WAC by NaCl would be an added advantage in considering the flour for use in the preparation of meat analogues, sausages, breads and cakes (Altschul and Wilcks 1985).

The oil absorption capacity is an important property, which determines the texture and mouthfeel of the protein material especially in baked foods (Okezie and Bello 1988; Igene et al. 2005). It is valuable in flavour retention and to increase the palatability (Kinsella 1976). Oil-holding capacity of *S. bispinosa* (1.2 mL/g) increased on cooking (1.5 mL/g), which was lower than uncooked (1.3 mL/g) and cooked (1.6 mL/g) seed flours of *S. speciosa*. These values are higher than cowpea (0.69–0.93 mL/g) (Prinyawiwatkul et al. 1997); compared to *Canavalia cathartica* (1.5 mL/g), *C. ensiformis* (1.7 mL/g), *Phaseolus calcaratus* (1.4 mL/g) and winged bean (1.2–1.4 mL/g) (Narayana and Rao 1982; Chau and Cheung 1998; Adebowale and Lawal 2004; Seena and Sridhar 2005) are lower than mung bean (2.2 mL/g), soybean (1.9 mL/g) and *C. ensiformis* seed flours (2.7 g/g) (Dzudie and Hardy 1996; Chau and Cheung 1998; Chel-Guerrero et al. 2002). High

oil-holding capacity values make these flours potentially useful in structural interactions in food, especially in flavour retention, improvement of palatability and extension of shelf life in meat products through reduction of moisture and fat loss.

The WAC and OAC are crucial factors in protein functionality as they influence emulsion and other functional properties. These properties are an important index to absorb and retain water/oil, which influences the mouthfeel of food products like ground meat formulations, doughnuts, pancakes, baked goods and soups.

Emulsion

The emulsion properties of seed flours are dependent on the characteristics of proteins, which vary among seed flours, their quantity and solubility (Kinsella 1976). Thermal processing is known to reduce the emulsion capacity at different concentrations, various molarities and different pH. The present study on seed flours of *Sesbania* is in agreement with the reduction of emulsification capacity of hydrothermally processed winged bean flour at all pH range (Narayana and Rao 1982); heat treatment of soy flour also reduced the emulsion capacity (McWatters and Holmes 1979). The emulsion activity as well as stability was highest in *S. bispinosa* seed flours at 2% concentration, but at 0.4 M ionic strength, emulsion activity and stability were highest in *S. speciosa*. At alkaline pH (pH 10), emulsion activity and stability attained highest in *S. bispinosa*. The emulsion capacity of uncooked and cooked *S. bispinosa* and *S. speciosa* seed flours at different concentrations was lower than jack bean (71.7%) and higher than in pigeon pea (28.73%), while it was comparable with that of cowpea (46.4%) (Olalekan and Bosede 2010). The emulsion activity of seed flours of *S. bispinosa* at 0.2 M ionic strength is comparable to *Canavalia cathartica*, *C. maritima* and *Mucuna pruriens*, while it is lower than *C. ensiformis* (Chau et al. 1997; Seena and Sridhar 2005; Bhat et al. 2008). At 0.4 M, the increase in emulsion activity and stability of uncooked and cooked seed flours of *S. bispinosa* and *S. speciosa* was seen. However, above 0.4 M resulted in the decrease of emulsion activity and stability as seen in sunflower seed flour (Lin et al. 1974). The uncooked *S. bispinosa* (53.7–56.4%) and *S. speciosa* (31–56%) generally exhibited good emulsion activity at different pH levels, with values comparable to those of soybean protein isolate (54–58%), *P. lunatus*, *C. ensiformis* (41.8–56.5%) and *Cassia fistula* (40%) (Akinyede and Amoo 2009). There was a decrease of emulsion activity at pH 4 in *S. bispinosa* (53.7%) and *S. speciosa* (31%), respectively. The emulsion activity of *S. bispinosa* at pH 4 was higher than seed flours of *C. ensiformis* (48.5%), but the emulsion activity of *S. speciosa* was lower than *S. bispinosa* as well as *C. ensiformis*. In both *Sesbania* seed flours, the emulsion activity was almost constant at pH higher than 4. At pH 4 the emulsion activities were about 53.7% and 31% in uncooked seed samples of *S. bispinosa* and *S. speciosa*. With increasing pH, emulsion activity in uncooked

seed flours elevated to a maximum 56.4% in *S. bispinosa* and 54.6% in *S. speciosa*. Similar relationship was reported in emulsion activity against pH in groundnut flours (Ramanathan et al. 1978). High emulsion activity and stability of *Sesbania* seed flours are suitable blends for many products (e.g. sausages, cake buffers and salad dressing).

Foam

Good foam properties of seed flours have been correlated with the amount and solubility of proteins (Aluko and Yada 1993). The percent foam capacity of uncooked seed flours of both *Sesbania* (22–44%) is higher than values reported for flours of quinoa (9%), pearl millet (11.3%), cowpea (16.3%) and jack bean (20.7%) (Oshodi et al. 1999; Olalekan and Bosede 2010) compared to wheat (40%) (Akubor and Badifu 2004) and lower than the flour of pigeon pea (68%), soybean (60%) and sunflower (66%) (Lin et al. 1974; Oshodi and Ekperigin 1989). The foam stability values in uncooked *Sesbania* seed flours were less than the wheat flour (60%) (Akubor and Badifu 2004).

The foam capacity of *Sesbania* seeds in different salt concentrations is higher than flours of soybean (14.6%), sunflower (9.0%) and pigeon pea (2.0%) (Lin et al. 1974; Oshodi and Ekperigin 1989), comparable to values reported for a variety of dehulled African yam bean (21.3–48.4%) (Adeyeye and Aye 1998) and oil seeds (40–50%) (Olaofe et al. 1994). High concentration of salt depressed the foam capacity substantially in *Sesbania* seed flours. There was a concomitant decrease in foam capacity from the concentration above 0.2 M. Low concentration of salt is beneficial as it enhances protein solubility in soybean flour (Narayana and Rao 1984; Akintayo et al. 1999). The foam stability of *Sesbania* seed flours is lower than wheat flour (Akubor and Badifu 2004) and higher than flours of soybean (14.6%) and pigeon pea (20%) (Oshodi and Ekperigin 1989). Uncooked and cooked seed flours of both the species of *Sesbania* exhibited a similar pattern of decrease at pH 4. The low foam stability was concomitant with the low solubility of protein at pH 4.

Vegetable proteins (e.g. defatted and detoxified flour concentrates, isolates and hydrolysates) will be immensely valuable in the production of a variety of food products (Kinsella 1976). However, such preparation is dependent on the functional properties of seed flours to form solution and also behaviour at air-water and oil-water interfaces (Padilla et al. 1996; Adebowale and Lawal 2004). As *Sesbania* seeds possess desired functional properties and adequate quantity of protein, fatty acids, fibre and carbohydrates (Siddhuraju et al. 1995; Shreelalitha and Sridhar 2016; Sridhar et al. 2016b), further studies on functional properties of full-fat and defatted flours are necessary at different concentrations, ionic strengths and pH.

Conclusions

Seeds of *Sesbania* are known for nutritional, medicinal and industrial applications. These seeds are also commercially valuable as an excellent source of fibre and nontoxic food-grade polysaccharide galactomannan. The present study provided additional information on the functional properties of seeds of two landraces of *Sesbania* growing in the mangrove habitats of Southwest India in view of potential food for humans as well as livestock. *Sesbania* seeds studied possess high protein solubility at alkaline conditions and facilitate production of carbonated beverages. Desired least gelation concentration with enhanced water and oil absorption capacities is helpful in the production of many bakery products. Increased emulsion activity and stability are useful in the production of sausages, cake buffers and salad dressers. Owing to nutritional, medicinal and industrial applications, future emphasis on bioactive potential, physical and mechanical properties of seeds of different landraces of *Sesbania* would be of immense value in agricultural and industrial benefits.

Acknowledgements Authors are grateful to Mangalore University for the permission to carry out this study in the Department of Biosciences. SJS acknowledges the University Grants Commission, New Delhi, for the award of fellowship under the scheme Research Fellowship in Sciences for Meritorious Students (RFSMS). KRS acknowledges the award of UGC-BSR Faculty Fellowship by the University Grants Commission, New Delhi.

References

Adebowale KO, Lawal OS (2004) Comparative study of the functional properties of bambara groundnut (*Voandzeia subterranean*), jack bean (*Canavalia ensiformis*) and Mucuna bean (*Mucuna pruriens*) flours. Food Res Int 37:55–365

Adebowale YA, Adeyemi A, Oshodi AA (2005) Variability in the physicochemical, nutritional and antinutritional attributes of six *Mucuna* species. Food Chem 89:37–48

Adeyeye EI, Aye PA (1998) The effects of sample preparation on the proximate composition and the functional properties of the African yam bean flours. La Rivista Italiana Delle Sostanze Grasse 75:253–261

Akintayo ET, Oshodi AA, Esuoso KO (1999) Effects of NaCl, ionic strength and pH on the foaming and gelation of pigeon pea (*Cajanus cajan*) protein concentrates. Food Chem 66:51–56

Akinyede AI, Amoo IA (2009) Chemical and functional properties of full fat and defatted *Cassia fistula* seed fours. Pak J Nutr 8:765–769

Akubor PI, Badifu GLO (2004) Chemical composition, functional properties and baking potential of African breadfruit kernel and wheat flour blends. Int J Food Sci Technol 39:223–229

Alobo AP (1999) Production and organoleptic assessment of 'akara' from bambara groundnut (*Voandzeia subterranean* L. Thouars). Plant Foods Hum Nutr 5:313–320

Alobo AP, Agbo BA, Ilesanmi SA (2009) Physicochemical and functional properties of full fat and defatted cashew kernel flours. Int J Food Sci Technol 44:581–585

Altschul AM, Wilcks HL (1985) New protein foods: food science and technology. Academics Press, Orlando, FL

Aluko RE, Yada RY (1993) Relationship of hydrophobicity and solubility with some functional properties of cowpea (*Vigna unguiculata*) protein isolate. J Sci Food Agric 62:331–335
Anita DD (2010) Microbiological and nutritional studies on the legumes of Nethravathi Mangroves, Southwest coast of India. PhD dissertation, Biosciences, Mangalore University, Mangalore
Bernardino NA, Cristina AM, Scilingo AA, Davila OG (2005) Functional properties of guava seed glutelins. J Agric Food Chem 25:76–89
Beuchat LR (1977) Functional and electrophoretic characteristics of succinylated peanut flour protein. J Agric Food Chem 25:258–261
Bhagya B, Sridhar KR (2009) Ethnobiology of coastal sand dune legumes of Southwest India. Ind J Trad Know 9:611–620
Bhat R, Karim AA (2009) Exploring the nutritional potential of wild and underutilized legumes. Compr Rev Food Sci Food Saf 8:305–331
Bhat R, Sridhar KR, Young C-C, Arun AB, Ganesh S (2008) Composition and functional properties of raw and electron beam irradiated *Mucuna pruriens* seeds. Int J Food Sci Technol 43:1338–1351
Boye J, Zare F, Pletch A (2010) Pulse proteins: processing, characterization, functional properties and applications in food and feed. Food Res Int 43:414–431
Chau CF, Cheung PCK (1998) Functional properties of flours prepared from three Chinese indigenous legume seeds. Food Chem 61:429–433
Chau CF, Cheung K, Wong YS (1997) Functional properties of protein isolates from three Chinese indigenous legume seeds. J Agric Food Chem 45:2500–2503
Chel-Guerrero L, Pearez-Flores V, Betancur-Ancona D, Daavila-Ortiz G (2002) Functional properties of flours and protein isolates from *Phaseolus lunatus* and *Canavalia ensiformis* seeds. J Agric Food Chem 50:584–591
Coffman CW, Garcia VV (1977) Functional properties and amino acid content of protein isolate from mung bean flour. J Food Technol 12:473–484
del Rosario RR, Flores DM (1981) Functional properties of four types of mung bean flours. J Sci Food Agric 32:175–180
Dzudie T, Hardy J (1996) Physicochemical and functional properties of flours prepared from common beans and green mung beans. J Agric Food Chem 4:3029–3032
Eneche HE (2005) Enrichment of starchy flours with African yam bean protein concentrate. Nig J Sci Technol Res 2:30–37
Evans DO (1990) What is *Sesbania*? Botany, taxonomy, plant geography and natural history of the perennial members of the genus. In: Macklin B, Evans DO (eds) Perennial *Sesbania* species in agroforestry systems. Nitrogen Fixing Tree Association, Waimanalo, pp 5–16
Giami SY (1993) Effect of processing on the proximate composition and functional properties of cowpea (*Vigna unguiculata*). Food Chem 47:153–158
Guéguen J (1998) Overview on functional properties of grain legume components. Grain Legumes 20:13–14
Hoover R, Sosulki FW (1991) Effect of crosslinking on functional properties of legume starches. Starke 38:149–155
Horax R, Hettiarachchy NS, Chen P, Jalaluddin M (2004) Functional properties of protein isolate from cowpea (*Vigna unguiculata* L. Walp.). J Food Sci 69:119–121
Hossain MA, Becker K (2001) Nutritive value and antinutritional factors in different *Sesbania* seeds and their morphological fractions. Food Chem 73:421–431
Hossain MA, Focken U, Becker K (2003) Antinutritive effects of galactomannan-rich endosperm of *Sesbania* (*Sesbania aculeata*) seeds on growth and feed utilization in tilapia, *Oreochromis niloticus*. Aquacult Res 34:1171–1179
Humphries EC (1956) Mineral composition and ash analysis. In: Peach K, Tracey MV (eds) Modern methods of plant analysis, vol 1. Springer, Berlin, pp 468–502
Idouraine A, Yensen S, Weber C (1997) Tepary bean flour, albumin and globulin fractions functional properties compared with soy protein isolate. J Food Sci 56:1316–1318

Igene FU, Oboh SO, Aletor VA (2005) Effects of some processing techniques on the functional properties of winged bean seed flours. J Food Agric Environ 3:28–31
Ipor IB, Oyen LPA (1997) *Sesbania* Adanson. In: Hanum F, Van der Maesen LJG (eds) Plant resources of South-East Asia. Backhuys Publishers, Leiden, pp 236–240
Karaj S, Müller J (2010) Determination of physical, mechanical and chemical properties of seeds and kernels of *Jatropha curcas* L. Ind Crops Prod 32:129–138
Kaur M, Singh N (2007) Characterization of protein isolates from different Indian chickpea (*Cicer arietinum* L.) cultivars. Food Chem 102:366–374
Kerr WL, Ward CDW, McWatters KH, Resurreccion AVA (2000) Milling and particle size of cowpea flour and snack chip quality. Food Res Int 34:39–45
Kinsella JE (1976) Functional properties of proteins in foods: a survey. Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr 7:219–232
Kinsella JE (1979) Functional properties of soy proteins. J Am Oil Chem Soc 56:242–258
Kinsella JE (1982) Relationship between structural and functional properties of food protein. In: Fox PF, Condon JJ (eds) Food proteins. Applied Science Publishers, London, pp 51–60
Kohnhorst AL, Uebersax MA, Zabik ME (1990) Production and functional characteristics of protein concentrates. J Am Oil Chem Soc 67:285–292
Lawal OS, Adebowale KO (2006) The acylated protein derivatives of *Canavalia ensiformis* (jack bean): a study of functional characteristics. LWT—Food Sci Technol 39:918–929
Lin MJY, Humbert ES, Sosulski FW (1974) Certain functional properties of sunflower meal products. J Food Sci 39:368–370
McWatters KH, Holmes MR (1979) Influence of moist heat on solubility and emulsification properties of soy and peanut flours. J Food Sci 44:774–776
Mesallam AS, Hamza MA (1987) Studies on green gram (*Phaseolus aureus*) protein concentrate and flour. Plant Foods Hum Nutr 37:17–27
Morris JB (1999) Legume genetic resources with novel value-added industrial and pharmaceutical use. In: Janick J (ed) Perspectives on new crops and new uses. ASHS Press, Alexandria, pp 196–201
Moure A, Sineiro J, Dominguez H, Parajo JC (2006) Functionality of oilseed protein products. Food Res Int 39:945–963
Mulvihihill DH, Kinsella JE (1987) Gelation characteristics of whey proteins and b-lactoglobulins. Food Technol 41:102–111
Narayana R, Rao MSN (1982) Functional properties of raw and heat processed winged bean (*Psophocarpus tetragonolobus*) flour. J Food Sci 47:1534–1538
Narayana K, Rao MSN (1984) Effect of acetylation and succinylation on the functional properties of winged bean flour. J Food Sci 49:547–550
Neto VQ, Narain N, Silvia JB, Bora PS (2001) Functional properties of raw and heat-processed cashew nut (*Anacardium occidentale* L.) kernel protein isolate. Nahrung 45:258–262
Niveditha VR, Sridhar KR (2017) Comparison of functional properties of cooked and fermented (*Rhizopus oligosporus*) beans of *Canavalia cathartica* of the coastal sand dunes. In: Grumezescu AM, Holban AM (eds) Handbook of food engineering, Soft chemistry and food fermentation, vol 3. Academic Press, London, pp 209–231
Niveditha VR, Sridhar KR, Balasubramanian D (2013) Physical and mechanical properties of seeds and kernels of *Canavalia* of coastal sand dunes. Int Food Res J 20:1547–1554
Okezie O, Bello AB (1988) Physico-chemical and functional properties of winged beans flour and isolate compared with soy isolate. J Food Sci 53:450–454
Olalekan AJ, Bosede BF (2010) Comparative study on chemical composition and functional properties of three Nigerian legumes (jack beans, pigeon pea and cowpea). J Emerg Trends Eng Appl Sci 1:89–95
Olaofe O, Adeyemi FO, Adediran GO (1994) Amino acid and mineral composition and functions properties of oil seeds. J Agric Food Chem 42:878–881

Oshodi AA, Adeladun MOA (1993) Proximate composition, some nutritionally valuable minerals and functional properties of three varieties of Lima bean (*Phaseolus lunatus* Linn.) flour. Int J Food Sci Nutr 43:181–185

Oshodi AA, Ekperigin MM (1989) Functional properties of Pigeon Pea *(Cajanus cajan*) flour. Food Chem 34:187–191

Oshodi AA, Ogungbenle HN, Oladimeji MO (1999) Chemical composition, nutritional value, minerals and functional properties of benniseed, pearl millet and quinoa flours. Int J Food Sci Nutr 50:325–331

Padilla FC, Alvarez MT, Alaro MJ (1996) Functional properties of barinas nut (*Caryodendron orinocense* Karst., Euphorbiaceae) flour compared to those of soybean. Food Chem 57:191–196

Paredes L, Ordorica F, Olivares M (1991) Chickpea protein isolates: physicochemical, functional and nutritional characterization. J Food Sci 56:726–729

Pollard MA, Fischer P, Windhab EJ (2011) Characterization of galactomannans derived from legume endosperms of genus *Sesbania* (Faboideae). Carbohy Polym 84:550–559

Pour-El A (1981) Protein functionality: classification, definition and methodology. In: Cherry JP (ed) Protein functionality in foods, American Chemical Society symposium series # 147, Washington, DC, pp 1–19

Prasad MNV (1993) Bioresource potential of *Sesbania bispinosa* (Jacq.) W.F. Wight. Bioresour Technol 44:251–254

Prinyawiwatkul W, Beuchat L, McWatters K, Phillips R (1997) Functional properties of cowpea (*Vigna unguiculata*) flour as affected by soaking, boiling and fungal fermentation. J Agric Food Chem 45:480–486

Ramanathan G, Ray IH, Urs LN (1978) Emulsification properties of groundnut protein. J Food Sci 43:1274–1278

Sathe SK, Salunkhe DK (1981) Functional properties of the great northern bean proteins: emulsion, foaming, viscosity and gelation properties. J Food Sci 46:71–81

Sathe SK, Deshpande SS, Salunkhe DK (1982) Functional properties of winged bean (*Psophocarpus tetragonolobus*) protein. J Food Sci 47:503–509

Schmidt RH (1981) Gelation and coagulation. In: Cherry JP (ed) Protein functionality in foods, ACS symposium series, vol 147. American Chemical Society, Washington, DC, pp 131–147

Seena S, Sridhar KR (2005) Physicochemical, functional and cooking properties of under explored legumes, *Canavalia* of the southwest coast of India. Food Res Int 38:803–814

Shreelalitha SJ (2011) Studies on non-conventional legumes of coastal sand dunes and mangroves of the southwest coast of India. PhD Dissertation, Biosciences, Mangalore University, Mangalore

Shreelalitha SJ, Sridhar KR (2016) Composition of fatty acids of the lipids extracted from seeds of *Sesbania bispinosa* grown on the Indian coastal sand dunes. Curr Nutr Food Sci 12:50–55

Siddhuraju P, Vijayakumari K, Janardhanan K (1995) Studies on the underexploited legumes, *Indigofera linifolia* and *Sesbania bispinosa*: nutrient composition and antinutritional factors. Int J Food Sci Nutr 46:195–203

Singh U, Singh B (1991) Functional properties of sorghum-peanut composite flour. Cereal Chem 68:460–463

Sridhar KR, Anita DD, Ghate SD (2016a) Fatty acid composition of mangrove wild legume seeds (*Sesbania speciosa*) in Southwestern India. Rec Pat Food Nutr Agric 8:124–131

Sridhar KR, Shreelalitha SJ, Supriya P, Arun AB (2016b) Nutraceutical attributes of ripened split beans of three *Canavalia* landraces. J Agric Technol 7:1277–1297

StatSoft Inc. (2008) Statistica, version #. StatSoft, Tulsa, OK, p 8

Tosh SM, Yada S (2010) Dietary fibres in pulse seeds and fractions: characterization, functional attributes and applications. Food Res Int 43:450–460

Udensi EA, Okonkwo A (2006) Effects of fermentation and germination on the physicochemical properties of *Mucuna cochinchinensis* protein isolate. Afr J Biotechnol 5:896–900

Vadivel V, Biesalski HK (2010) HPLC analysis of bioactive compounds in ten different wild type under-utilized legume grains. Ins Int Omics Appl Biotechnol J 1:17–24

Veasey EA, Schammass EA, Vencovsky R, Martins PS, Bandel G (1999) Morphological and agronomic characterization and estimates of genetic parameters of *Sesbania* Scop. (Leguminosae) accessions. Gen Mol Biol 22:81–93

Vietmeyer ND (1986) Lesser-known plants of potential use in agriculture and forestry. Science 232:1379–1384

Wankhede K, Ramteke S (1982) Studies on isolation and physico-chemical properties of starch from Moth Bean. Starke 34:189–192

Were L, Hettiarachchy L, Kalapathy U (1997) Modified soy proteins with improved foaming and water hydration proteins. J Food Sci 62:821–824

Whistler RL, Daniel JR (1985) Carbohydrates. In: Fennema OR (ed) Food chemistry, 2nd edn. Marcel Dekker, New York, pp 69–125

Multiple Uses of Some Important Aquatic and Semiaquatic Medicinal Plants

Muhammad Aasim, Khalid Mahmood Khawar, Seyid Iftehar Ahmed, and Mehmet Karataş

Introduction

Traditional medicines or traditional medicinal system refers to the use of traditional knowledge, skill and practices for healing and curing diseases and therapies. The traditional medicinal system is still relied and used in almost every part of the world irrespective of the developments in modern medicinal systems. This might be due to a number of complex socio-economic factors, lack of modern facilities, expensive treatments, education, belief, etc. The basics of traditional medicinal systems include the use of different plants/herbs for healing with transfer of knowledge from generation to generation.

The developments in modern medicinal systems originate from these in one way or another. Rapid developments in science and technology related to pharmacognosy, chromatography, plant biotechnology, molecular biology, etc. has tremendously helped in increasing the values of the traditional medicinal systems that characterise active biological compounds and their applications (Kar 2006).

Use of alternative medicines are referred to as practices involving medicinal byproducts and therapies employed for human benefit with knowledge of their beneficial, toxic and harmful effects (Dasgupta et al. 2011). The use of alternative medicines is based on belief, religion, superstitions, social factors and family-based medicinal systems mostly not recognised by the modern scientific and biological studies (Sampson 1995). These medicines are used for healing chronic diseases like

M. Aasim (✉) · M. Karataş
Department of Biotechnology, Faculty of Science, Necmettin Erbakan University, Konya 42090, Turkey

K. M. Khawar
Department of Field Crops, Faculty of Agriculture, Ankara University, Ankara, Turkey

S. I. Ahmed
Department of Urology, Gazi Mustafa Kemal State Hospital, Ministry of Health, Ankara 06560, Turkey

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_23

fever, headache, etc. and fatal diseases like cancer (Peregoy et al. 2014). Complementary and alternative medicines consist of a wide array of health care practices that are not considered to the tradition without integration into the health system of the country (WHO 2000). However, alternative medicinal systems are being used as complementary medicine (CM) or integrative medicine (IM) used with functional medicines (Zeller et al. 2013), CAM (complementary and alternative medicines) (Cassileth and Deng 2004) or TM (traditional medicines) (Ansari and Inamdar 2010).

Plants which have beneficial pharmacological and therapeutic effects on human health are considered as medicinal plants. These plants are rich in bioactive compounds like alkaloids, sterols, saponins, flavonoids, volatile oils, etc. and are in use since time immemorial (Baytop 1999). Records show the use of herbs as medicine by Chinese scriptures and Egyptian papyrus followed by the development of other traditional medicinal systems. The most famous traditional medication system includes Techiman-Bono ethnomedical system, naturopathy, Western Orthodox, reiki, Native American medicine system, Dormaa medicine system, Ayurvedic, Greco-Arab, Tongan, Unani, Chinese, Iranian and African systems, etc. (Warren and Green 1982; Fink 1990; WHO 2001; Toafa et al. 2001; Kamala Shankar et al. 2004; Saad and Said 2011; Isola 2013). All of the above-mentioned healing systems are in use in one way or the other. Traditional Chinese medicinal systems use around 5000 medicinal products (Li 2000).

Wetland ecosystem has played a significant role in human civilization since a long time ago. Generally people preferred to live close to water bodies or wetland systems in ancient times; where they could grow and irrigate crops for food, clothes and abode. A study of all great civilizations like Indus valley, Mesopotamian and Nile civilizations and modern-day Roman, Greek and Inca civilizations also prove that human beings always preferred to live close to rivers, lakes and oceans to get sustenance for food, shelter and abode. Aquatic plants have significant role in human civilization (Gupta 1987) by providing food, manure, fibre and source of medicines. They are considered as primary producers of the water ecosystem by converting light energy into chemical energy. Besides that, aquatic plants provide shelter and food for animals like fish, insects and other aquatic animals or amphibians (Baldassarre and Bolen 1994). Aquatic plants are also used to control phytoplanktons and moss from water (Oyedeji and Abowei 2012). These plants also anchor the sediments of soft-bottom habitats (Madsen et al. 1996). The population of hydrophytes in the water bodies also shows the fitness and diversity of the water ecosystem (Flint and Madsen 1995). The use of aquatic plants for biomonitoring and for phytoremediation of heavy metals of the aquatic ecosystems also increases their importance. The use of aquatic plants in aquarium industry all over the world also increases their demand in the USA (Crosson 2010), Australia (Petroeschevsky and Champion 2008) and Europe (Brunel 2009).These plants are a rich source of bioactive compounds that are commercially used in healthcare systems for curing diseases and disorders. The wetlands have significant impact on climate (Swapna et al. 2011) and ecosystem of the areas with species richness (Kirim et al. 2014) and provide habitat either on the banks or in water bodies (Maya et al. 2003). Aquatic

plants are major constituent of aquatic ecosystem with different ecological niche (Oyedeji and Abowei 2012) and special adaptations. They grow as emergant, submergant or as floater (Dodds 2002). The most common type of adaptation of aquatic plants is aerenchyma. Besides that, amphibian plants have adapted to grow both on soils fully saturated with water and under aquatic conditions and are also considered as wetland or aquatic plants (Keddy 2010).

It is not possible to give an exact figure; however, a rough estimate shows that around 50,000–80,000 flowering plants are used as medicinal plants all over the world (Duke 2009) by continuous domestication or collection from the wild. On the basis of their usage, these medicinal plants can be used as synergic medicine, supportive medicine or preventive medicine (Rasool Hassan 2012). Medicinal plants provide raw material for synthesising drugs like laxatives, biocides, etc. (Rasool Hassan 2012). In recent years, demands of medicinal plants have increased significantly which in turn have resulted in the increase in cultivation area of some selected plant species, screening of new potential medicinal plants or phytochemicals, conversion of phytochemicals into registered drugs and ultimately increase in trade. However, the evaluation process of isolation of phytochemicals and their pharmacological activities needs time and multidisciplinary approaches (Manjulatha 2006).

Comparison of studies on aquatic plants has revealed that these plants are the most neglected or underutilised plants. Many among them have high potential to be used as medicinal plants, but their uses are confined to specific areas of the world (Swapna et al. 2011), primarily due to the ignorance about these plants or likes or dislikes or eating habits of people. More than 50% of people in many parts of Sri Lanka and Indian states close to the water use aquatic plants as medicinal plants followed by their use as food and ornamental in religious offerings (Munasinghe et al. 2010; Swapna et al. 2011).

Scientists all over the world are interested to characterise them on morphological and genetic basis for phytochemicals and micropropagation and their genetic transformation. This study highlights the use of aquatic plants for medicinal purposes. The present study describes major aquatic, semiaquatic medicinal plants and their medicinal uses.

Major Aquatic and Semiaquatic Medicinal Plants

Acorus calamus *L. (Sweet Flag; Araceae)*

Sweet flag (*Acorus calamus*) is an important amphibian medicinal plant of Araceae family showing wide distribution in temperate, subtropical and warm regions of Asia, Europe and North America over marshy areas, shallow lands and edges of ponds (Verma and Singh 2012). People use its rhizomes, roots and leaves that contain medicinally important alkaloids (choline), acorin and calamine A, bitter glycosides, calamol, gum, resin and starch tannins (Ahmed et al. 2007; Verma and Singh 2012). The major constituent of leaves is β-asarone (27.4–45.5%), whereas

rhizomes contain acorenone (20.86%) and isocalamendiol (12.75%) as the main constituents (Divya et al. 2011). The plant is in use since ancient times in Indian Ayurvedic system, traditional Chinese, American and European healthcare systems (Motley 1994).

The plant is used for healing asthma, diarrhoea, epilepsy, hysteria, insanity, insomnia, melancholia, neurasthenia (Hazra et al. 2007; Mukherjee et al. 2007), heart and lung cancer, skin diseases (Harikrishnan and Hariharan 1999) and piles (Jain et al. 2007). A number of studies have revealed the use of sweet flag as analgesic, anti-inflammatory (Vohora et al. 1990), anti-schizophrenia (Singh et al. 1991), antianxiety (Date and Kulkarni 1995), anticonvulsant (Achliya et al. 2005), antispasmodic (Gilani et al. 2006), antibacterial (Aqil and Ahmad 2007), antiulcer, cytoprotective (Mukherjee et al. 2007) and tranquilliser with CNS depressant activities (Pandi et al. 2009)

Alternanthera philoxeroides *Geiseb. (Alligator Weed; Amaranthaceae)*

The South American *Alternanthera philoxeroides* is a perennial aquatic stoloniferous herb showing a wide distribution in Indo-Malaysia and Australia regions (Swapna et al. 2011) and grows as emergent plant with hollow stems reaching 10 cm in length with a maximum of 20 cm above the water body at flowering stage. It has white inflorescence with seed set of around 6.5% (Liu-qing et al. 2007). The plant is amphibian in nature and grows over a wide range of habitats including freshwater, coastal areas, cultivated/agricultural lands, riverbanks and wetlands (Anonymous 2016). A number of studies conducted described the use of alligator weed for curing various diseases like dengue virus (Jiang et al. 2005), diarrhoea, fistula ani, hazy vision, malaria, night blindness, postnatal complaints, prolapsus ani and puerperal fever (Rahman and Gulshana 2014), dysentery (Jain et al. 2007), blood vomiting and eye troubles (Shankar and Mishra 2012). Furthermore, sulphated polysaccharide compounds have significant in vitro anti-HIV activity (Lewis and Lewis 2003), acute cough and intestinal worms (Panda and Misra 2011).

Alternanthera sessilis *(L.) R.Br.(Sessile Joyweed; Amaranthaceae)*

The tropical American annual *Alternanthera sessilis* is a semiaquatic plant found mainly at the banks of rivers, canals and ponds. It is an erect (approximately 1 m long), creeping well-branched herb that produces small white coloured self pollinated flowers and fruits throughout the year. It is believed that these fruits and seeds have dispersed through water and wind (Jansen 2004) to tropical Africa and

subtropical regions. In most parts of Africa and some parts of the world, leaves are used as raw or cooked vegetable (Scher 2004). It contains various medicinally important bioactive compounds like its derivatives and saturated (aliphatic) esters, oleanolic acid, stigmasterol, triterpenes α-spinasterol, β-sitosterol and β-spinasterol (Jansen 2004). A number of registered drugs are available which contain a main ingredient taken from *A. sesselis* (Walter et al. 2014). *A. sesselis* is used for simple stomach disorders, diarrhoea and dysentery, as a plaster for diseased or wounded skin parts, against fever (Jansen 2004; Jain et al. 2007; Swapna et al. 2011), for increasing milk in mothers (Naples 2005) and as antidotes for snakebites and scorpion stings (Nadkarni 2007). Bathing oil made from sessile plant juice has a cooling effect to the body and eyes, neuritis, piles and halitosis (Sambasivam Pillai 1991). Previous literature also suggest hepatoprotective (Lin et al. 2006), antiulcer (Roy and Saraf 2008), hematinic (Arollado and Osi 2010), antipyretic (Nayak et al. 2010), antioxidant (Archana Borah and Yadav 2011), anti-inflammatory (Sahithi et al. 2011) and antidiarrhoeal (Kumar and Sanjib 2013) activities of the plant.

Bacopa monnieri *(L.) Pennell. (Water Hyssop or Brahmi; Plantaginaceae)*

Water hyssop (*Bacopa monnieri*) is an important creeping aquatic or semiaquatic herb that is native to India and Australia. However, it is widely cultivated in some Asian countries and the USA (Barrett and Strother 1978) due to its use as medicinal plant and as an important component of Ayurvedic system (Augiar and Borowski 2013). It contains essential bioactive compounds like acid A, monnierin, alkaloids (brahmin and herpestine), beta-sitosterol, betulinic acid, flavonoids (luteolin and apigenin), saponins D-mannitol and hersaponin, stigmasterol (Ali et al. 1999) and bacopasaponins (bacopasaponin F, bacopasaponin E, bacopaside III, bacopaside IV, bacopaside N1, bacopaside V; Deepak et al. 2005; Anbarsi et al. 2006; Rastogi et al. 2012). It is used as memory enhancer (Mukherjee and Dey 1996; Vijayakumar et al 2010); for treatment of anxiety or epileptic disorders, asthma, bronchitis, eczema, enlargement of the spleen, hoarseness, insanity, epilepsy, irritable bowel syndrome, gastric ulcers (Shakoor et al. 1994), leprosy, ringworms (Basu and Walia 1994), snakebites and rheumatism.

Water hyssop plant have highly important and economic biomolecules, its anti-inflammatory (Jain et al. 1994), antipyretic and diuretic (Vohora et al. 1997; Stough et al. 2001), anxiolytic (Bhattacharya and Ghosal 1998), anti-ulcerogenic (Sairam et al. 2001), anti-depressant (Sairam et al. 2002), adaptogenic (Bhatia et al. 2003), hepatoprotective (Ghosh et al. 2007), antineoplastic (Deb et al. 2008), anticonvulsant (Mathew et al. 2010), analgesic (Abbas et al. 2011), Immunostimulatory (Yamada et al. 2011) and antimicrobial (Azad et al. 2012) activities have been reported during the last two decades

Centella asiatica *(L.) Urban (Centella; Apiaceae)*

Saponin- and glycoside-rich centella (*Centella asiatica*) (Singh and Rastogi 1969; Singh and Singh 2002) is an important medicinal herb of Ayurvedic, African, Chinese and Western Orthodox medicines since centuries ago (Diwan et al. 1991; Meulenbeld and Wujastyk 2001). It has high economic importance and is cultivated on minor scales in some nontraditional parts of the world including Turkey by enthusiasts. It is a small herbaceous perennial plant of Apiaceae family that prefers to grow in swamps. It has fan-shaped leaves which are small in size, white flowers and small-sized oval fruit. It is an indigenous plant in Asia mainly found in wetlands of Southeast Asia where it is used as food (Gohil et al. 2010). Besides that, it is also present in rice fields of Madagascar and South Africa, South Pacific and Eastern Europe as weed (Chevallier 1996; Jamil et al. 2007).

Centella is one of the most widely used medicinal plants in the traditional medicinal systems against amenorrhea, diarrhoea, eczema, female genitourinary tract diseases, fever, leprosy, lupus, psoriasis, ulcers, varicose (Brinkhaus et al. 2000), chronic venous insufficiency (Suguna et al. 1996), minor wound healing (Singh and Rastogi 1969; Sunilkumar et al. 1998; Shetty et al. 2006), lactation and strangury (Tanaka and Nguyen 2007). It is also used for lepra treatments (Chaudhuri et al. 1978) and as sedative (Darnis et al. 1979; Wijeweera et al. 2006), antiviral (Yoosook et al. 2000), antipsoriatic (Sampson et al. 2001), anticonvulsant (Sudha et al. 2002), immunostimulant (Wang et al. 2003), antiulcer (Cheng et al. 2004), cytotoxic and antitumor (Bunpo et al. 1987), antibacterial (Zaidan et al. 2005), antidiabetic (Venu Gopal Rao and Mastan 2007), hepatoprotective (Pingale 2008), anti-inflammatory (George et al. 2009) and cardioprotective agent (Raghavendra et al. 2009).

Centipeda minima *A. Braun and Ascheron (Spreading Sneezeweed; Asteraceae)*

Sneezeweed is a semiaquatic prostate leafy herb with a lot of branches originating from its roots. It is found in wet places or rice fields in most of the Asian countries. It is widely used for traditional medicines because it contains compounds like alkaloid; glycoside, including sesquiterpene, lactones and triterpenes (Wu et al. 1985; Bohlmann and Chen 1984); saponin; and terpenes. It is used for nasopharyngeal carcinoma (NPC) (Cheng and Li 1998; Zhang 2000), nasal congestion, rhinitis, sinusitis, swellings and inflammation (Panda and Misra 2011). Besides that, the studies also report about anti-allergy and antibacterial (Wu et al. 1994), antiprotozoal (Yu et al. 1994), antibacterial (Taylor and Towers 1998), anti-inflammatory (Qin et al. 2005), antiproliferative (Su et al. 2009), antiasthmatic, antiulcer (Singh et al. 2012), antioxidant (Huang et al. 2013b), anticancer (Guo et al. 2015) and antiangiogenic activities (Huang et al. 2016) in the plant.

Coix lacryma-*Jobi Linn. (Job's Tears; Poaceae)*

Job's tears is a tall-growing perennial semiaquatic native plant of the Southeast Asia and is distributed throughout Asian countries. It is also a cultivated plant in most part of the world as an alternative for barley. Besides for its use as food, it has been used in Chinese medicinal system for curing illness and disorders. It is also used for treatment of chickenpox, arthritis, stomach ache menstrual disorders (Santhoshkumar and Satyanarain 2010) and as an analgesic, antispasmodic (Manosroi et al. 2016) and diuretic agent. Furthermore, anodyne, antipyretic, antiseptic, antisplasmodic, hypoglycaemic, hypotensive, sedative, vermifuge (Duke and Ayensu 1985), anti-cancer (Chiang et al. 2000), anthelmintic (Manandhar 2002), antiulcer (Chung et al. 2011), anti-mutagenic (Chen et al. 2011), anti-allergic (Chen et al. 2012) and anti-inflammatory (Seo et al. 2000) properties also increased the demand of this plant.

Enhydra fluctuans *Lour (Water cress; Asteraceae)*

Watercress is an annual herb of marshy areas of the tropical and subtropical regions of Asia and Africa (Gupta 2012). It has stalkless, serrate leaves with fleshy stem that is branched and may reach up to 30 cm in length. The plant is sensitive to low temperature and prefers to grow along water courses, ditches, rice fields and ponds (Ali et al. 2013). This plant contains high amount of protein (Krishnaswamy and Prasanna 1975) along with β-carotene (Dewanji et al. 1993), cholesterol, glycoside, kaurol, cholesterol, myricyl alcohol, a number of diterpenoid acids and their isovalerate and angelate derivatives, saponins, sesquiterpene lactone, sitosterol and stigmasterol. Generally, watercress constitute an important part of local healthcare systems to treat inflammation, skin diseases, smallpox (Kirtikar and Basu 2002), food poisoning (Jain et al. 2007), neuralgia and nervous diseases (Yusuf et al. 2009; Ali et al. 2013), ascites, dropsy and anasarca. It is also used as antibilious and cooling agent and laxative. Furthermore, the plant has compounds that have analgesic (Rahman and Gegum 2002), antimicrobial (Bhakta et al. 2009), antidiarrhoeal (Uddin et al. 2011), hepatoprotective (Sannigrahi et al. 2010), antimicrobial, cytotoxic (Amin et al. 2012) and antioxidant functions (Swain et al. 2012). The compounds are also used to treat central nervous system (CNS) depressions (Roy et al. 2011).

Hedychium coronarium *J. Koenig (White Ginger Lily; Zingiberaceae)*

White butterfly ginger lily (*Hedychium coronarium*) of the Zingiberaceae (ginger) family is an amphibian aquatic herbaceous medicinal plant of tropics and subtropics that grows in waterlogged areas very close to streams or shallow water systems

(de Souza and Correia 2007). Most of the wild gingers are enlisted as endangered (Soares and Barreto 2008) due to its extinction from its origin area. It is native to Himalayas regions and Southern China with humid submontane forest ecosystems (Van Valkenburg and Bunyapraphatsara 2001). It is an upright plant which can gain height of 1–2.5 cm with rhizomes of around 5–25 cm in diameter. Younger leaves are found in vertical position with more stomata on the abaxial side (Boeger et al. 2007). The flowers are hermaphroditic and zygomorphic with strong odour and low fruit set (de Souza and Correia 2007). Under natural conditions, the plants propagate through vegetative means by rhizome buds along with very low frequency through generative propagation with localised seed dispersion (HEAR 2004).

It has high potential as ornamental medicinal and aromatic plant that contains essential oils with strong fragrance and used in the perfume industry (Van Valkenburg and Bunyapraphatsara 2001) with a total of 75 compounds from rhizomes, of which 53 (71%) were labdane-type diterpenes and 22 (29%) were diarylheptanoids, fatty acids and steroids (Chan and Wong 2015), phenolics and sesquiterpenes. It is also used for hair and skin treatment, headache, lancinating pain and inflammatory and intense pain (Anonymous 2017a), cough and fever (Jain et al. 2007). Furthermore, a number of studies highlight that *H. coronarium* has hypertensive, antidiabetic, antisyphilitic and antifungal (Lechat-Vahirua et al. 1993; Bhandary et al. 1995; Macedo 1997), anticancer (Chinmoi et al. 2009), antioxidant, antimicrobial, larvicidal activity, analgesic (Dash et al. 2011) and anti-inflammatory (Kiem et al. 2011) characteristics.

Hydrocotyle sibthorpioides *Lam. (Lawn Marshpennywort; Araliaceae)*

Lawn marshpennywort (*Hydrocotyle sibthorpioides*) of Apiaceae family (ITIS 2017) is a small, dicotyledonous, annual herbaceous plant of Southeast Asia that shows a wide range of adaptation in different habitats like dry area to submerged under water. The leaves are simple, broad, alternate and small with average size ranging from 0.5 to 2.0 cm. The flowers are small in size with faint yellow with addition of purple colour (Anonymous 2017b). The fruit is flat and has only one seed (UCIPM 2017). The plant is an important medicinal plant that has a significant place in Chinese herbal medicinal system (Huang et al. 2008). *H. sibthorpioides* has been used against asthma, healing of bone fractures (Rahmatullah 2010), detoxification of throat pains, oedema, fever, hepatitis B (Huang et al. 2008; Huang et al. 2013a), dengue (Husin et al. 2015), dysentery (Deka and Devi 2015) and typhoid fever (Kar and Borthakur 2008). Furthermore, its antioxidant/antiproliferative (Huang et al. 2008) and antitumor/immunomodulatory (Yu et al. 2007) activities have also been reported.

Ipomea aquatica *Forssk. (Water Spinach; Convolvulaceae)*

Water spinach (*Ipomea aquatica*) is an annual or perennial aquatic or semiaquatic medicinal and food plant of the Convolvulaceae family (Pullaiah 1998). It is commonly found in moist soil, margins of stagnant water, ditches, freshwater ponds and rice fields as trailing plant. The plant has it origin in China, from where it spread to other parts of the world. It is a cultivated economic plant in Southeast Asian countries (Chen et al. 1991), where it is used as leafy vegetable or salad (Ismail et al. 2004) or as fodder (Phimmasan et al. 2004). It is an important part of Ayurvedic healthcare system as it is rich in medicinally important flavonoids (Prasad et al. 2005), alkaloids (Yajima and Yabuta 2001) and carotenes (Paul et al. (1997). Furthermore, it is rich in amino acids, lipids, reducing sugars, saponins, tannins, vitamins and minerals (Malakar and Choudhury 2015).

Water spinach is a very common and popular aquatic plant used both as food and for medicinal purposes. It is used for healing a number of diseases and disorders like liver diseases (Badruzzaman and Husain 1992), constipations, intestinal problems (Samuelsson et al. 1992), mental illness, diabetes (Malalavidhane et al. 2000), high blood pressure, nosebleeds (Duke and Ayensu 1985; Perry and Metzger 1980), otorrhoea, retinitis (Jain et al. 2007), biliousness, bronchitis (Kirtikar and Basu 1993), fever, jaundice and hypoglycaemic effects (Malalavidhane et al. 2000). It has high potential as antimicrobial (Egami et al. 1998), antidiabetic (Villasensor et al. 1998), diuretic (Mamun et al. 2003), antioxidant (Ismail et al. 2004), anticancer (Prasad et al. 2005), antiulcer (Sivaraman and Muralidaran 2008), anti-inflammatory (Dhanasekaran et al. 2010), nootropic (Sivaraman and Muralidaran 2010a), hypolipidemic (Sivaraman and Muralidaran 2010b) and anxiolytic agent (Mohd et al. 2011).

Marsilea minuta *L. (Dwarf Water Clover; Marsileaceae)*

Marsilea minuta of the family Marsileaceae is an aquatic or sub-aquatic fern (Sarker and Hossain 2009) that is used as vegetable and medicinal plant in traditional and folk medicinal systems in Southeast Asia since thousands of years ago (Okoko 2009) in India and Bangladesh (Chakraborty et al. 2013). It contains several medicinally active compounds like marceline, flavonoids and marsileagenin-A (Bhattamisra et al. 2008; Chakravarti et al. 1975). It is extensively used for healing cough and respiratory problems (Upreti et al. 2009; Sen et al. 2011), headache, diarrhoea, epilepsy, hypertension, insomnia, migraine, muscle tension, psychopathy, respiratory diseases, skin diseases, sleeping disorders, spastic condition of the legs (Sharma 2002; Sarker and Hossain 2009; Upreti et al. 2009; Sen et al. 2011; Rout et al. 2009; Rahmatullah et al. 2014), diabetes, gastrointestinal disorders (Thirumalai et al. 2009; Anbarashan et al. 2011), chronic cancer, cardiovascular diseases, diabetes, etc. (Hu 2003; Kaisoon et al. 2011). It has been reported that *M. minuta* has also hypocholesterolemic (Gupta et al. 2000), antifertility (Gupta et al. 2002), anxiolytic

(Bhattamisra et al. 2007), anti-depressant (Bhattamisra et al. 2008), anti-amnestic, antistress (Tiwari et al. 2009) and anti-aggressiveness (Tiwari et al. 2010) characteristics.

Nelumbo nucifera *Gaertn. (the Sacred Lotus; Nelumbonaceae)*

Sacred lotus also known as Indian lotus is an aquatic, perennial, rhizomatous and creeping herb (Paudel and Panth 2015) of Asia and Australia that prefers extra sunlight and space to thrive in water bodies. Its leaves extend from 20 to 90 cm in length. Both leaves and flowers are found as aerial or floating. It is also cultivated in some parts of the world due to its high commercial value as medicinal or food plant (Mehta et al. 2013; Bharadwah and Modi 2016) and as ornamental plant in China, Korea, Japan, India and Australia (Paudel and Panth 2015). Studies on phytochemical studies of *N. nucifera* revealed the presence of bioactive compounds in seeds, fruits, leaves, flowers and rhizomes (Mehta et al. 2013; Paudel and Panth 2015). The plant contains isoliensinine, liensinine, negferine, N-methylisococlaurine, N-nornuciferine, nuciferine, O-nornuciferine, pronuciferine, remerine and roemerine, different glycosidse and nelumbosides (Nagrajan et al. 1966; Nakaoki 1961). It also has different flavonoids and alkaloids like anonaine, armepavine, asimilobine, dehydroanonaine, dehydroemerine, dehydronuciferine and irinidine (Tomita et al. 1965; Shoji 1987; Kashiwada et al. 2005; Xubiao et al. 2005).

The plant is extensively used as medicinal plant due to the presence of secondary metabolites found in all parts of plants. A number of diseases and disorders like blood vomiting, burning, conception, cough, dizziness, dysentery, epistaxis, fever, hematemesis, haematuria, haemoptysis, haemorrhoids, hypertension, infections, metrorrhagia (Sridhar and Rajeev 2007; Ou 1989), healings of wounds (Punjaji 2012), sunstroke, urinary problems, diarrhoea, headache, piles (Panda and Misra 2011; Swapna et al. 2011), ringworms, skin diseases, ulcer (Gupta and Pandey 2014), diabetes, eye vision (Jain et al. 2007), etc. are treated using the extracts from the plant in parts of the world. *N. nucifera* has been reported useful for treating cardiovascular (Shoji 1987), antiarrhythmic (Wang et al. 1993), antidiarrhoeal (Mukherjee et al. 1995), psychopharmacological (Mukherjee et al. 1996b), diuretic (Mukherjee et al. 1996a), antifertility problems (Yu and Hu 1997). The plant extracts are also used as antipyretic (Sinha et al. 2000), antiviral (Kuo et al. 2005), antifibrosis (Xiao et al. 2005), anti-inflammatory (Yoshiki et al. 2005), antiproliferative (Xiao et al. 2006), lipolytic (Ohkoshi et al. 2007), antioxidant (Yang et al. 2007), antibacterial (Venkatesh and Dorai 2011), anticancer (Arjun et al.2012) and antiobesity (Vahitha 2012) agent.

Nymphaea nouchali *Burm. F. (Blue Water Lily; Nymphaeaceae)*

The Indian blue water lily (*Nymphaea nouchali*; family Nymphaeaceae) is a widely distributed aquatic plant in South Asian countries, Australia and Africa (Wiart 2006). This plant is the national flower of Sri Lanka and Bangladesh and used for different purposes (Parimala and Shoba 2013). Although it is a wild aquatic plant found in ponds and stagnant waters, it is also cultivated in Southeastern countries (Slocum 2005; Raja et al. 2010). Its leaves, roots, rhizomes, fruits, flowers and tubers are also edible (Kumar and Bohra 2005). It is an important part of Ayurvedic system for treating various diseases (Raja et al. 2010) due to the presence of alkaloids, astragalin, flavonoids (Parimala and Shoba 2013), gallic acid, sterols, kaempferol (Sachan et al. 2011), quercetin, saponins and tannins. These compounds are also used to treat heart, liver and kidney disorders (Lakshmi et al. 2014). It also used as antidiabetic (Rajagopal and Sasikala 2008), hepatotoxic (Verma and Ahmed 2009) and anti-hepatotoxic (Adewusi and Afolayan 2010), antioxidant agent (Nagavani and Rao 2010). The extracts from the plant have also effective aphrodisiac (Raja et al. 2010), anti inflammatory (Jahan et al. 2012), antimicrobial and cytotoxic charachteristics (Chowdhury et al. 2013).

Persicaria hydropiper *(L.) Delarbre (Water Pepper; Polygonaceae)*

Water pepper (*Persicaria hydropiper* (L.) Delarbre with synonym of *Polygonum hydropiper*) is an annual aquatic or semiaquatic plant with a height of 40–70 cm. It is native to temperate and tropical Asia but shows wide distribution all over the world (USDA 2014; Moyeenul Huq et al. 2014). It grows in wet areas, marshes and agricultural fields (Miyazawa and Tamura 2007). It is being used in food industry as spice, flavouring and garnishing agent (Noor Hashim et al. 2012). It contains compounds like flavonoids, phenylpropanoids, sesquiterpenes and sesquiterpenoids, which show medicinal and pharmacological properties (Moyeenul Huq et al. 2014). Its plant parts like leaves, root and plant juice is used for curing certain diseases and disorders like uterine disorders (Choudhary et al. 2011), diuretic and emmenagogue (Stuart 1979), menstrual irregularities (Blatter et al. 1998), diarrhoea, dyspepsia, excessive menstrual bleeding, haemorrhoids, itching skin (Chevallier 1996), cancer (Hartwell 1970), astringent and cicatrising gastric, pulmonary problems, uterine haemorrhages (Tita et al. 2009), headache (Bari and Rahmatulla 2009), painful carbuncles (Ghani 1998), skin diseases and wounds. It is also used to prevent ovulation and cease pregnancy (Xiao and Wang 1991). The plant extracts are anthelmintic (Duke and Ayensu 1985), carminative, diuretic and stimulant. Besides its use as food and medicinal plant, this plant has gained attention to the researchers for

anti-inflammatory (Furuta et al. 1986), anti-nociceptive (Andre et al. 2004), antioxidant and antifeedant (Das et al. 2008), antibacterial and antifungal (Duraipandiyan et al. 2010), neuroprotective (Ma et al. 2010), anti-adipogenic (Lee et al. 2011), cytotoxic (Lajter et al. 2012), anticholinesterase (Noor Hashim et al. 2012) and anthelmintic (Raihan et al. 2012) activities.

Rotula aquatica *Lour. (Aquatic Rotala; Boraginaceae)*

Rotula aquatica is an important medicinal and aromatic aquatic plant of Asia and is native to India, China and Malaysia. However, it is also available in other continents like Africa and South America (Vysakh et al. 2016). It can grow up to 2–3 m high and contains important phytochemicals like alkaloids, flavonoids, phenolic compounds and steroids (Singh et al. 2011). That is why the plant was the major component in many Ayurvedic drugs (Vysakh et al. 2016) used for curing diabetes, kidney and bladder stones (Swapna et al. 2011), piles and venereal diseases. Besides that, it is used against blood disorders, coughs, dysuria, fever, heart diseases, poisonings, ulcers and uterine diseases (Sivarajan and Balachandaran 1994; Vysakh et al. 2016). Furthermore, studies on *R. aquatica* revealed psychoactive (Nayar et al. 1999), antioxidant (Patil et al. 2003), antimitotic (Patil et al. 2004), anti-urolithiatic (Raut et al. 2008), analgesic, anti-inflammatory, antipyretic (Gupta et al. 2011), anthelminthic (Lakshmi et al. 2012), antidiarrhoeal (Singh et al. 2012) and antibacterial (Prashanthi et al. 2012) properties.

Sphaeranthus indicus *Linn. (East Indian Globe Thistle; Asteraceae)*

The Indian globeflower (*Sphaeranthus indicus* Linn.) is an important semiaquatic medicinal plant that prefers to grow in dry or wet places like rice fields and cultivated lands. It shows wide distribution in India along with Sri Lanka and other continents like Australia and Africa (Chatterjee and Pakrashi 2003; Varsha et al. 2010). It is one of the most widely used medicinal plants of Indian traditional medicinal system for curing various diseases (Kirtikar and Basu 1981). It is an annual, branched herb, with cylindrical stems with taproots (Chatterjee and Pakrashi 2003). It contains abiologically active compounds like sesquiterpene lactone (Sohoni et al. 1988), sesquiterpenoids (Rojatkar and Nagasampagi 1992), eudesmanoids (Pujar et al. 2007), glycoside (Singh et al. 1989), certain essential oils (Lodha 2003) and alkaloids (Basu and Lamsal 1946).

Seeds, leaves, flowers and roots of this important medicinal plant are in use since a long time ago for certain ailments like anaemia, asthma, bile, bowel complaints, bronchitis, chest pains, chronic skin diseases (Nadkarni 2007; Prajapati et al. 2003;

Agarwal 1997), cough (Swapna et al. 2011), dysentery, elephantiasis, epilepsy and mental disorders, epileptic convulsions, hemicrania (Kirtikar and Basu 1981), indigestion, insanity, intestinal worms, leukoderma, liver and gastric disorders, looseness of the breasts, pain in the rectum, pain in the uterus and vagina, piles, biliousness, spleen diseases, toothache, tuberculous glands, urinary discharges and vomiting. Due to its high demand as medicinal plant, researchers used the metabolites for investigating nematocidal action (Sharma and Saxena 1996); anti-inflammatory (Heinrich et al. 1998), antimicrobial (Shaikh et al. 1986), antibacterial and antifungal (Dubey et al. 2000), larvicidal (Tiwari and Saxena 2003), immunomodulatory (Bafna and Mishra 2004), anxiolytic (Ambavade et al. 2006), neuroleptic (Mhetre et al. 2006), macrofilaricidal (Nisha et al. 2007), hepatoprotective (Prabhu et al. 2008) renoprotective effect (Srinivasan et al. 2008); sedative (Galani and Patel 2009); analgesic and antipyretic effects (Nanda et al. 2009) and anti-hyperlipidemic activity (Pande and Dubey 2009). These plant extracts also act as effective bronchodilatory (Sarpate et al. 2009); antioxidant activity (Tiwari and Khosa 2009); and antiviral agents (Vimalanathan et al. 2009).

Pistia stratiotes *L. (Water Lettuce; Araceae)*

Water lettuce is a stoloniferous and floating aquatic plant commonly found in stagnant water, lakes and rivers throughout Asia. It is also available in the water environment of subtropical Asia, Africa and America (Tripathi et al. 2010). It is considered as one of the most productive water plants due to its multipurpose uses (Aasim et al. 2013) ranging from food, medicines and cleaning of water bodies (Tripathi et al. 2010). It contains medicinally important compounds like alkaloids, flavonoids, glycosides and steroids (Khare 2005). Leaves and roots of water lettuce are used for curing anaemia, bladder complaints, chronic skin diseases (Kirtikar and Basu 2001), dropsy, dysentery, eczema, haematuria, kidney afflictions, leprosy, piles, syphilis and ulcers. Water lettuce has antimicrobial (Achola and Indalo 1997), diuretic, anti-dermatophytic, antifungal (Prem Kumar and Shyamsundar 2005), antidiabetic, antiseptic, antitubercular and anti-dysenteric activities (Tripathi et al. 2010).

Polygonum glabrum *Willdenow (Dense-Flower Knotweed; Polygonaceae)*

Dense-flower knotweed is an annual semiaquatic medicinal plant of marshy areas in or near the water bodies. It is widely distributed in large areas of Africa, North and South America and islands of the Pacific region. The plant has beautiful pink-coloured flowers which attracts the insects. Besides that, it has been used for phytoremediation of heavy metals from soil and water bodies (Raja and Ramya 2016).

Several plants and their parts like leaves, rootstock, seeds, stems, or their juice are reported for colic pain (Shiddamallayya et al. 2010; Panda and Misra 2011), debility, fever, jaundice, piles, pneumonia, unlocking bone (Santhoshkumar and Satyanarain 2010), snakebite (Kadel and Jain 2008), malaria (El Tahir et al. 1999), dysentery (Soudahmini et al. 2005), rheumatism and anthelmintic activities (Shankar and Mishra 2012), cardiotonic and used as astringent (Khare 2007). Furthermore, anti-inflammatory (Singh et al. 1987), anti-depressant (Nizar et al. 2007), antipyretic (Jamal et al. 2011), anti-hepatotoxic (Babitha et al. 2012), analgesic (Kiron et al. 2012), anti-nephrotoxic (Radha et al. 2013), cytotoxic (Khan et al. 2014), antioxidant/antimicrobial (Palani et al. 2014) and anti-leishmanial (Rahman et al. 2015) activities have also been reported.

Medicinal Uses of Some Less Important Aquatic and Semiaquatic Medicinal Plants

Aquatic plants used for medicinal purposes can be divided into two groups based on their ethnobotanical uses and pharmacological properties. Minor plants are those aquatic plants that also possess medicinal properties against different diseases and disorders but still lack of availability or have very low information about pharmacological properties. This might be due to unavailability of plant material, localised uses of plants, economic importance of plants or not considered or ignored by researchers. This section provides information about these minor aquatic (Table 1) or semiaquatic plants (Table 2) used as home remedies or cure for severe diseases and disorders.

Medicinal Uses of Minor Aquatic Medicinal Plants

Results revealed that 27 aquatic plants that always prefer to live in water bodies as floater or submerged plants belongs to different families like Araceae, Asteraceae, Cyperaceae, Fabaceae, Lythraceae, Marsileaceae, Menyanthaceae, Nymphaeaceae, Onagraceae, Plantaginaceae, Polygonaceae, Pontederiaceae, Primulaceae, Scrophulariaceae, Hydrocharitaceae and Ceratophyllaceae.

Results also revealed that plant parts like the whole plant, leaves, roots, flowers, inflorescence and seeds can be used as fresh or in dry form. Similarly, these plant parts are in use as itself or used as extracts or paste made from these parts. These plant parts are successfully used for curing ailment for routine normal diseases like fever, cough, pains, headaches, wounds to serious diseases and disorders like cardiac, kidney, anti-tumour, anticancer, menstrual disorders, etc. (Table 1).

Table 1 Medicinal uses of some important aquatic medicinal plants

Common/botanical name/ family	Plant part used	Medicinal uses	References
1. *Aeschynomene aspera* Linn. (Sola pith plant; Fabaceae)	Leaf, shoots	Cold, fever, cough, increase semen consistency	Panda and Misra (2011)
2. *Ammannia auriculata* Willd. (Eared redstem; Lythraceae)	NA	Fevers, rheumatic pains	Cook (1996) efloras (2010)
3. *Caesulia axillaris* Roxb. (Pink node flower; Asteraceae)	Inflorescence, whole plant	Cold, cough, dysentery, malaria, nasal congestion, wounds	Panda and Misra (2011) Punjaji (2012)
4. *Ceratophyllum demersum* L. (Coontail; Ceratophyllaceae)	Leaves	Bile secretion, burning, dysentery, epistaxis, fever, haematemesis, haemorrhoids or piles, hyperdipsia, intrinsic haemorrhages, scorpion sting, ulcer, wounds	Taranhalli et al. (2011) Shankar and Mishra (2012)
5. *Coix aquatica* Roxb. (Southeast Asian Coix; Poaceae)	Roots	Urination, menstrual complaints	Panda and Misra (2011)
6. *Cryptocoryne retrospiralis* Kunth (Crypt Retrospiralis; Araceae)	Fresh tubers	Anti-emetic, boils, burns, vomiting during pregnancy	Kamble et al. (2010) Gupta (2011a)
7. *Eleocharis dulcis* Trinius ex Henschel (Chinese water chestnut; Cyperaceae)	Roots	Abdominal pain, amenorrhoea, cardiac risks, hair growth, hernia, liver problems, motions, nausea	Duke and Ayensu (1985) Anonymous (2017c)
8. *Hygrophila auriculata* (Long-leaved barleria; Acanthaceae)	Roots, seeds, whole plant	Anuria, blennorrhoea, catarrh, craw-craw, diuretic properties, hydropsy, menstruation, stomach ache	Ruffo et al. (2002) Burkil (2004)
9. *Hygrophila polysperma* (Roxb.) T. Anderson (Dwarf hygro; Acanthaceae)	Leaves, seeds	Facial paralysis, hemiplegia, noise in the ears with headache, stiff neck	Bowes (1982) Karataş et al. (2014)
10. *Lagenandra ovata* Thw. (Malayan sword; Araceae)	NA	Cardiac ailments, healings, kidney disorders, skin problems, swelling	Maya et al. (2003) Selvakumari and De Britto (2007)
11. *Limnophila aromatica* (Lam.) Merr (Rice paddy herb; Plantaginaceae)		Anti-mutagenic, antitumor, dysentery, elephantiasis, fever, indigestion, intestinal worms, menstrual problems, mucus removal, pain killer	Murakami et al. (1997) Nakahara et al. (2002) Bhuiyan et al. (2010)
12. *Limnophila indica* (L.) Druce (Scrophulariaceae)	Aerial parts	Anthelmintic, antiseptic, dysentery, elephantiasis	Ahmed et al. (2009) Panda and Misra (2011)

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

Common/botanical name/ family	Plant part used	Medicinal uses	References
13. *Lindernia anagallis* (Burm. F.) Pennell (Scrophulariaceae)	Whole plant	Asthma, gonorrhoea	Panda and Misra (2011)
14. *Ludwigia adscendens* (Linn.) Hara (Water primrose; Onagraceae)	Whole plant	Antibacterial, anti-inflammatory, antimicrobial, dysentery, skin diseases, ulcers	Ghani (2003) Ahmed et al. (2005) Panda and Misra (2011)
15. *Ludwigia octovalvis* (Jacq.) Raven (Mexican primrose-willow; Onagraceae)	Whole plant	Body ache, boil, diarrhoea, fever, flatulence, heal dermatitis, toxaemia, ulcer	Chang et al. (2004) Santhoshkumar and Satyanarain (2010)
16. *Lysimachia nummularia* (L.) (Creeping jenny; Primulaceae)	NA	Anticancer, stone lin syndrome, wounds	Luczak et al. (1989) Podolak et al. (2013)
17. *Marsilea minuta* Linn. (Dwarf water clover; Marsileaceae)	Leaves, root	Biliousness, cough, head cooling, headache, hypertension, insomnia, , sleeping disorder, spastic condition of leg muscles, sperm formation	Mani (2016) Sarker and Hossain (2009) Panda and Misra (2011)
18. *Monochoria hastata* (Linn.) Solms-Laubach (Arrow leaf pondweed; Pontederiaceae)	Leaves	Boils, cooling	Gupta (2011e) Swapna et al. (2011)
19. *Monochoria vaginalis* (N. L. Burman) Kunth (Pickerelweed; Pontederiaceae)	Leaves, root	Asthma, coughs, stomach and liver disorder, toothache	Lansdown (2011) Panda and Misra (2011)
20. *Nymphaea pubescens* Willd. (Hairy water lily; Nymphaeaceae)	Rhizome, roots	Abortion, blood dysentery, dysentery, dyspepsia, jaundice, leucorrhoea, menorrhagia, piles	Gupta (2011b) Panda and Misra (2011) Rama Krishna et al. (2014)
21. *Nymphoides hydrophylla* O. Kuntze (Menyanthaceae)	Leaves, seeds, stalks	Eye diseases, fevers, insect bites, jaundice, scorpion sting, snakebite, ulcer	Cook (1996) Panda and Misra (2011)
22. *Nymphoides indica* (L.) Kuntze (White snowflake; Menyanthaceae)	Leaves, whole plant	Bile, dysentery, fever, headache, rheumatism, scabies	Panda and Misra (2011)
23. *Ottelia alismoides* Persoon (Duck lettuce; Hydrocharitaceae)	Leaves	Haemorrhoids, piles, poultices for fever	Zhuang (2011) Gritto et al. (2015) Swapna et al. (2011)

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

Common/botanical name/ family	Plant part used	Medicinal uses	References
24. *Polygonum barbatum* Steward (Knotgrass; Polygonaceae)	Leaf, roots, seed	Bleeding from wounds, colic pain, cooling agent, ulcer	Usher (1984) Maya et al. (2003) Panda and Misra (2011) Swapna et al. (2011)
25. *Rotala indica* (Willd.) Koehne (Indian toothcup; Lythraceae)	Flower, leaves	Migraine, respiratory diseases, stomach disorder	Santhoshkumar and Satyanarain (2010) Gupta and Pandey (2014)
26. *Rotala rotundifolia* (Roxb.) Koehne (Roundleaf toothcup; Lythraceae)	Whole plant	Antipyretic, anti-swelling, cold, fever, cough, detoxication, diuresis, gonorrhoea, menstrual cramps, piles, production in HepA2 cells, suppression of HBV surface antigen (HBsAg)	Anonymous (2004) Panda and Misra (2011) Zhang et al. (2011) Karataş et al. (2014)
27. *Vallisneria spiralis* Linn. (Tape grass; Hydrocharitaceae)	Leaves	Leucorrhoea, stomach ache	Swapna et al. (2011)

Medicinal Uses of Some Important Amphibian (Semiaquatic) Medicinal Plants

Amphibian plants are mainly aquatic plants which can grow both in water bodies as submerged plant like in aquariums and survive in swamps, on land growing under open places with roots in water and near water bodies or cultivated fields. Most of these plants are considered as weeds, but in recent years, they became economically important due to their use as vegetable or medicinal plants. The results on these plants in this study comprised of 25 plants from different families (Acanthaceae, Asteraceae, Boraginaceae, Commelinaceae, Hydrophyllaceae, Lythraceae, Molluginaceae, Poaceae, Rubiaceae, Scrophulariaceae and Typhaceae). Likewise, aquatic plants are used for curing routine diseases like fever, cough, pains, headaches and wounds. They are also used to treat cardiac, kidney, anti-tumour, anticancer and menstrual disorders, etc. (Table 2).

Table 2 Medicinal uses of some important amphibian (semiaquatic) medicinal plants

Common/botanical name/ family	Plant parts used	Medicinal uses	References
1. *Ammannia baccifera* Linn. (Lythraceae)	Leaves	Antioxidant, anti-steroidogenic, fever, hepatoprotective activities, rheumatic pains, ringworm, scabies, skin diseases, skin itching, typhoid fever	Dhanapal et al. (2005) Lavanya et al. (2010) Panda and Misra (2011) Swapna et al. (2011) Rhazi et al. (2014)
2. *Coldenia procumbens* Linn. (Creeping coldenia; Boraginaceae)	Leaves, whole plant	Relief from pain and swelling, fever, piles, and scorpion sting	Senthamari et al. (2002) Panda and Misra (2011)
3. *Cyanotis axillaris* (Commelinaceae)	Leaves	Abortions, ascites, inflammation of eardrum, swellings, joint pain, rheumatism	Cook (1996) Gupta (2011c)
4. *Cyathocline purpurea* O. Kuntze (Asteraceae)	NA	Anticancer, headache, stomach ache	Cook (1996) Ma et al. (2009) Rehel (2011)
5. *Dentella repens* (Linn.) J. R. and J. G. A. Forster (Creeping dentella; Rubiaceae)	Leaves	Poulticing sores	Santhoshkumar and Satyanarain (2010)
6. *Eclipta prostrata* (Linn.) Linn. (Asteraceae)	Whole plant	Antiulcer, eczema, headache, jaundice, mental disorders, scorpion sting, skin diseases, snakebite, spleen enlargements, toothache	Panda and Misra (2011) Lansdown et al. (2014)
7. *Epaltes divaricata* Cassini (Asteraceae)	Roots	Acute dyspepsia, astringent tonic, jaundice, urethral discharges	Cook (1996) Chah et al. (2006) Glorybai et al. (2015)
8. *Glinus oppositifolius* (Linn.) A. DC. (Molluginaceae)	Leaves, whole plant	Fever, inflammations, joint pains, malaria, skin diseases, wounds	Inngjerdingen et al. (2005) Panda and Misra (2011)
9. *Grangea maderaspatana* Poiret (Asteraceae)	Leaves, whole plant	Antiseptic, antisplasmodic, deobstruent, earache, menstrual disorders, piles, stomach disorders	Panda and Misra (2011) Swapna et al. (2011)
10. *Heliotropium indicum* Linn. (Boraginaceae)	Flowers, shoots, whole plant	Asthma, boils, bronchitis, cataract, dysentery, menstrual blood loss, redness and conjunctivitis of the eyes, antiseptic, scorpion sting, ulcers	DeFilipps et al. (2004) Panda and Misra (2011)
11. *Hydrolea zeylanica* Vahl (Hydrophyllaceae)	Leaves, shoots, whole plant	Antiseptic, wounds healing	Cook (1996) Gupta (2011d) Panda and Misra (2011)

(continued)

Table 2 (continued)

Common/botanical name/ family	Plant parts used	Medicinal uses	References
12. *Hygrophila schulli* (F. Hamilton) M. R. and S. M. Almeida (Acanthaceae)	Leaves, roots, seeds, whole plant	Anaemia, jaundice, gout, hepatic obstruction, impotency, inflammation, pain, rheumatism, spermatorrhoea, urinary infections	Shanmugasundaram and Venkataraman (2005) Panda and Misra (2011)
13. *Lindernia ciliata* (Colsmann) Pennell (Hairy saltwort; Scrophulariaceae)	NA	Gonorrhoea, menorrhagia	Ipor (2001) Santhoshkumar and Satyanarain (2010)
14. *Lindernia crustacea* (Linn.) F. von Mueller (Malaysian false pimpernel; Scrophulariaceae)	Leaves, whole plant	Bile, secretion, biliousness, boils, diarrhoea, dysentery, indigestion, ringworms, snakebites and tick bites	Duke (2010) Panda and Misra (2011)
15. *Lindernia oppositifolia* (Retzius) Mukherjee (Scrophulariaceae)	Roots	Fevers	Cook (1996)
16. *Lindernia procumbens* (Krocker) Borbas (Scrophulariaceae)	Leaves	Cooling of blood, detumescence, dysentery, inflammation, liver heat, ringworm	Ahmed et al. (2009) Pan et al. (2009) Santhoshkumar and Satyanarain (2010)
17. *Murdannia nudiflora* Brenan (Doveweed; Commelinaceae)	Roots, whole plant	Asthma, astringent, giddiness, leprosy, piles, stomach	Panda and Misra (2011) Patwari et al. (2014)
18. *Polygonum plebeium* R. Brown (Small knotweed; Polygonaceae)	Roots	Bowel complaints, colic complaints, eczema, pneumonia	Katewa and Galav (2005) Swapna et al. (2011)
19. *Spilanthes calva* A. P. de Candolle (Asteraceae)	Flower head, roots, whole plant	Dysentery, psoriasis, purgative, rheumatism, scabies, stammering in children, tongue paralysis, toothache	Swapna et al. (2011)
20. *Typha domingensis* Persoon (Southern cattail; Typhaceae)	Rhizomes	Astringent, burns, diuretic, dysentery, gonorrhoea, measles, wound healing	Aliotta et al. (1990) Akkol et al. (2010) Panda and Misra (2011)
21. *Vetiveria zizanoides* (Linn.) Nash (Poaceae)	Roots, rhizome	Boil, burn, colic and obstinate vomiting, diaphoretic, epilepsy, febrifuge, fever, flatulence, headache, mouth ulcer, refrigerant, rheumatism, scorpion sting, snakebite, thirst	Santhoshkumar and Satyanarain (2010) Swapna et al. (2011) Rao and Suseela (2017)

(continued)

Table 2 (continued)

Common/botanical name/ family	Plant parts used	Medicinal uses	References
22. *Wedelia chinensis* (Osbeck) Merr. (Asteraceae)	Plant extract	Blackening of hair, gouty arthritis, hair growth, juvenile arthritis, mental tension, multiple sclerosis, osteochondritis dissecans, rheumatic fever	Suresh et al. (2010) Meena et al. (2011) Panda and Misra (2011)

Conclusion

Every terrestrial or aquatic plant growing around us is important and can be used in one way or another. This study explain role of some important aquatic or semi-aquatic plants that have potential for cultivation. Exploration of their ethnobotanical and pharmacological uses will be of great interest. Although Turkey is covered with water bodies on three sides, any type of systematic aquatic plant study is almost neglected or underutilised. This review explains parts of the plant most extensively used for medicinal or pharmacological purposes. Generally, the people are not aware of the importance of aquatic plants in the provision of sustenance, clothing and abode for human and animals. Extensive and systematic studies about these plants would change their status from weed to their actual value based on qualitative characteristics, which will help in changing the status of these plants more rationally from most exceedingly terrible weeds to plants of vital importance. These studies will help in the advancement of all the mentioned sectors described earlier in this chapter.

Acknowledgments The authors acknowledge Ms. Areeza Emman for editing of this manuscript.

References

Aasim M, Karataş M, Khawar KM, Dogan M (2013) Optimization of sterilization and micropropagation of Water lettuce (*Pistia stratiotes* L.). JABS 7:71–74

Abbas M, Subhan F, Mohani N, Rauf K, Ali G, Khan M (2011) The involvement of opioidergic mechanisms in the activity of *Bacopa monnieri* extract and its toxicological studies. Afr J Pharm Pharmacol 5:1120–1124

Achliya GS, Wadodkar SG, Dorle AK (2005) Evaluation of CNS activity of Brahmi Ghrita. Indian J Pharmacol 37:3–36

Achola KJ, Indalo AA (1997) Pharmacologic activities of *Pistia stratiotes*. Int J Pharmacogn 35:329–333

Adewusi EA, Afolayan AJ (2010) A review of natural products with hepatoprotective activity. J Med Plants Res 4:1318–1334

Agarwal VS (1997) Drug plants of India, vol 2. Kalyani Publishers, New Delhi, p 656

Ahmed F, Selim FS, Shilpi JA (2005) Antibacterial activity of *Ludwigia adscendens*. Fitoterapia 76:473–475

Ahmed MB, Ahmed S, Salahin M, Sultana R, Khatun M, Razvy MA, Hannan MM, Islam R, Hossain MM (2007) Standardization of a suitable protocol for in vitro clonal propagation of *Acorus calamus* L.—an important medicinal plant in Bangladesh. Am Euras J Sci Res 2:136–140

Ahmed ZU, Hassan MA, Begum ZNT, Khondker M, Kabir SMH, Ahmad M, Ahmed ATA (2009) Encyclopaedia of flora and fauna of Bangladesh. Angiosperms: dicotyledons (Ranunculaceae—Zygophyllaceae). Asiatic Society of Bangladesh, Dhaka

Akkol EK, Suntar I, Keles H, Yesilada E (2010) The potential role of female flowers inflorescence of *Typha domingensis* Pers. in wound management. J Ethnopharmacol 133:1027–1032

Ali G, Srivastava PS, Iqbal M (1999) Morphogenic and biochemical responses of *Bacopa monnieri* cultures to zinc toxicity. Plant Sci 143:187–193

Ali MR, Billah MM, Hassan MM, Dewan SMR, Al-Emran M (2013) *Enhydra fluctuans* Lour: a review. Res J Pharm Technol 6:927–929

Aliotta G, Della Greca M, Monaco P, Pinto G, Pollio A, Previtera L (1990) In vitro algal growth inhibition by phytotoxins of *Typha latifolia*. J Chem Ecol 16:2637–2646

Ambavade SD, Mhetre NA, Tate VD, Bodhankar SL (2006) Pharmacological evaluation of the extracts of *Sphaeranthus indicus* flowers on anxiolytic activity in mice. Indian J Pharmacol 38:254–259

Amin MR, Mondol R, Habib MR, Hossain MT (2012) Antimicrobial and cytotoxic activity of three bitter plants—*Enhydra fluctuans, Andrographis peniculata* and *Clerodendrum viscosum*. Adv Pharm Bull 2:207–211

Anbarashan M, Parthasarthy N, Padmavathy A (2011) Ethno-floristic survey in sacred groves, Pudukottai district, Tamil Nadu-India. J Med Plant Res 5:439–443

Anbarsi K, Vani G, Balakrishna K, Devi CS (2006) Effect of bacoside A on brain antioxidant status in cigarette smoke exposed rats. Life Sci 78:1378–1384

Andre E, Ferreira J, Malheiros A, Yunes RA, Calixto JB (2004) Evidence for the involvement of vanilloid receptor in the antinociception produced by the dialdehydes unsaturated sesquiterpenes polygodial and drimanial in rats. Neuropharmacology 46:590–597

Anonymous (2004) Dictionary of Chinese materia medica. Shanghai Scientific and Technical Publishers, Shanghai, p 531

Anonymous (2016) *Alternathera philoxeroides* (Mart.) Griseb. EPPO Bull 46:8–13

Anonymous (2017a) *Hedychium coronarium* (white butterfly ginger lily). http://www.cabi.org/isc/datasheet/26678

Anonymous (2017b) *Hydrocotyle sibthoropiodes*. Yarra Ranges. http://fe.yarraranges.vic.gov.au/Residents/Trees_Vegetation/Yarra_Ranges_Plant_Directory/Yarra_Ranges_Local_Plant_Directory/Lower_Storey/Herbs_and_Groundcovers_1m/Hydrocotyle_sibthorpioides

Anonymous (2017c) Top 15 health benefits of eating water chestnuts (*Eleocharis dulcis*). http://www.gyanunlimited.com/health/top-15-health-benefits-of-eating-water-chestnuts-eleocharis-dulcis/10742/

Ansari JA, Inamdar NN (2010) The promise of traditional medicines. Int J Pharmacol 6:808–812

Aqil F, Ahmad I (2007) Antibacterial properties of traditionally used Indian medicinal plants. Methods Find Exp Clin Pharmacol 29:79–92

Archana Borah RNS, Yadav BG (2011) In vitro antioxidant and free radical scavenging activity of *Alternanthera sessilis*. IJPSR 6:1502–1506

Arjun P, Saranya Sivan PS, Mohana Priya S, Krishnamoorthy M, Balasubramanian K (2012) Phytochemical analysis and anticancer activity of Nelumbo nucifera extracts. J Acad Ind Res 1:81–85

Arollado EC, Osi MO (2010) Hematinic activity of *Alternanthera Sessilis* (L.) R. Br. (Amaranthaceae) in mice and rats. E-Int Scient Res J 2:110–117

Augiar S, Borowski T (2013) Neuropharmacological review of the nootropic herb *Bacopa monnieri*. Rejuvenation Res 16:313–326

Azad A, Awang M, Rahman M, Akter S (2012) Biological and pre-clinical trial evaluation of a local medicinal plant *Bacopa monnieri* (L.). IJCRR 4:92–99

Babitha S, David B, Otilia JFB. Investigation on antioxidant and hepatoprotective activity of ethanolic leaf extract of Polygonum glabrum Wild on carbon tetrachloride- induced hepatotoxicity in rats. Spatula DD. 2012; 2(4): 199–205

Badruzzaman SM, Husain W (1992) Some aquatic and marshy land medicinal plants from Hardoi district of Uttar Pradesh. Fitoterapia 63:245–247

Bafna AR, Mishra SH (2004) Immunomodulatory activity of methanol extract of flower heads of *Sphaeranthus indicus* Linn. Ars Pharm 45:281–291

Baldassarre GA, Bolen EG (1994) Waterfowl ecology and management. Wiley, New York, p 609

Bari SH, Rahmatulla M (2009) Medicinal plants of the santal tribe residing in Rajshahi district, Bangladesh. Am Euras J Sustain Agric 3:220–226

Barrett SC, Strother JL (1978) Taxonomy and natural history of Bacopa in California. Syst Bot 5:408–419

Basu NK, Lamsal PP (1946) A chemical investigation of *Sphaeranthus indicus* Linn. J Am Pharm Assoc Sci Ed 35:274–275

Basu N, Walia K (1994) The chemical investigations of the leaves of *Herpestis monniera*. Indian J Pharm 4:8485

Baytop T (1999) Therapy with medicinal plants in Turkey (past and present). Istanbul University, Istanbul

Bhakta JN, Majumdar P, Munekage Y (2009) Antimicrobial efficacies of methanol extract of *Asteracantha longifolia, Ipomoea aquatica* and *Enhydra fluctuans* against *Escherichia coli, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Staphylococcus aureus* and *Micrococcus luteus*. Internet J Altern Med 7:125–130

Bhandary MJ, Chandrashekar KR, Kaveriappa KM (1995) Medical ethnobotany of the Siddis of Uttara Kannada district, Karnataka, India. J Ethnopharmacol 47:149–158

Bharadwah A, Modi KP (2016) A review on therapeutic potential of *Nelumbo nucifera* (GAERTN): the sacred lotus. IJPSR 7:42–54

Bhatia G, Palit G, Pal R, Singh S, Singh HK (2003) Adaptogenic effect of *Bacopa monniera* (Brahmi). Pharmacol Biochem Behav 75:823–830

Bhattacharya SK, Ghosal S (1998) Anxiolytic activity of a standardized extract of *Bacopa monniera*: an experimental study. Phytomedicine 5:77–82

Bhattamisra SK, Singh PN, Singh SK, Kumar V (2007) Anxiolytic activity of *Marsilea minuta* Linn. J Herb Med Toxicol 1:15–20

Bhattamisra SK, Khanna VK, Agrawal AK, Singh PN, Singh SK (2008) Antidepressant activity of standardised extract of *Marsilea minuta* Linn. J Ethnopharmacol 117(1):51–57

Bhuiyan NI, Akter F, Chowdhury JU, Begum J (2010) Chemical constituents of essential oils from aerial parts of *Adenosma capitatum* and *Limnophila aromatica*. Bangladesh J Pharmacol 5:13–16

Blatter E, Caius JF, Mhaskar KS (1998) Indian medicinal plants. Periodical Experts Book Agency, Vivek Vihar

Boeger MRT, Pil MWBDO, Belem Filho N (2007) Comparative leaf architecture of *Hedychium coronarium* J. Koenig (Zingiberaceae) and *Typha domingensis* Pers (Typhaceae). Iheringia Serie Botanica 62:113–120

Bohlmann F, Chen ZL (1984) New guaianolides from *Centipeda minima*. Chin Sci Bull 29:900–903

Bowes G (1982) *Limnophilia sessiliflora* and *Hygrophila polysperma*, baseline physiology of the potential problem plants. Department of Botany, University of Florida, Gainesville, FL

Brinkhaus B, Lindner M, Schuppan D, Hahn EG (2000) Chemical, pharmacological and clinical profile of the East Asian medical plant *Centella asiatica*. Phytomedicine 7:427–448

Brunel S (2009) Pathway analysis: aquatic plants imported in 10 EPPO countries. Bull OEPP/EPPO Bull 39:201–213

Bunpo P, Kataoka K, Arimochi H et al (1987) Inhibitory effects of *Centella asiatica* on azoxymethane-induced aberrant crypt focus formation and carcinogenesis in the intestines of F344 rats. Food Chem Toxicol 42:1987–1997

Burkil HM (2004) The useful plants of West Tropical Africa. Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew, Richmond

Cassileth BR, Deng G (2004) Complementary and alternative therapies for cancer. Oncologist 9:80–89

Chah KF, Eze CA, Emuelosi CE, Esimone CO (2006) Antibacterial and wound healing properties of methanolic extracts of some Nigerian medicinal plants. J Ethnopharmacol 4:164–167

Chakraborty R, De B, Devanna N, Sen S (2013) Antitussive, expectorant activity of *Marsilea minuta* L., an Indian vegetable. J Adv Pharm Technol Res 4:61–64

Chakravarti D, Debnath NB, Mahato S, Chakravarti R (1975) Structure of marsileagen: a new hexahydroxytriterpene from *Marsilea minuta* Linn. Tetrahedron 31:1781–1782

Chan EWC, Wong SK (2015) Phytochemistry and pharmacology of ornamental gingers, *Hedychium coronarium* and *Alpinia purpurata*: a review. J Integr Med 13:368–379

Chang CI, Ku CC, Chang JY, Kuo YH (2004) Three new oleanane-type triterpenes from Ludwigia octovalvis with cytotoxic activity against two human cancer cell lines. J Nat Prod 67:91–93

Chatterjee A, Pakrashi SC (2003) The treatise on Indian medicinal plants, 1st edn. National Institute of Science Communication and Information Resources, New Delhi, p 177

Chaudhuri S, Ghosh S, Chakraborty T (1978) Use of a common Indian herb "Mandukaparni" in the treatment of leprosy (preliminary report). J Indian Med Assoc 70:177–180

Chen BH, Yang SH, Han IH (1991) Characterization of major Carotenoids in water convolvulus (*Ipomoea aquatica*) by open-column, thin layer and high performance liquid chromatography. J Chromatogr 543:147–155

Chen Q, Zhou C, Zhu B, Peng H, Ni F (2010) Study on the antiasthmatic effects of essential oil from *Centipeda minima*. Chin J Mod Appl Pharm 27:473–476

Chen HH, Chiang W, Chang JY, Chien YL, Lee CK, Liu KJ, Cheng YT, Chen TF, Kuo YH, Kuo CC (2011) Antimutagenic constituents of adlay (*Coix lachryma*-jobi L. var. ma-yuen Stapf) with potential cancer chemopreventive activity. J Agric Food Chem 59:6444–6452

Chen HJ, Lo YC, Chiang W (2012) Inhibitory effects of adlay bran (*Coix lachryma-jobi* L. var. *ma-yuen* Stapf) on chemical mediator release and cytokine production in rat basophilic leukemia cells. J Ethnopharmacol 141:119–127

Cheng JH, Li YB (1998) Anti-tumor herbal medicines and their proved recipes. Jiangxi Science and Technology Press, Jiangxi, p 732

Cheng CL, Guo JS, Luk J, Koo MWL (2004) The healing effects of Centella extract and asiaticoside on acetic acid induced gastric ulcers in rats. Life Sci 74:2237–2249

Chevallier A (1996) The encyclopedia of medicinal plants. Dorling Kindersley, London

Chiang W, Cheng CY, Chiang MT, Chung KT (2000) Effects of dehulled adlay on the culture count of some microbiota and their metabolism in the gastrointestinal tract of rats. J Agric Food Chem 48:829–832

Chinmoi N, Sarasuk C, Khunnawutmanotham N, Intachote P, Seangsai S, Saimanee B, Pisutjaroenpong S, Mahidol C, Techasakul S (2009) Phytochemical reinvestigation of labdane-type diterpenes and their cytotoxicity from the rhizomes of *Hedychium coronarium*. Phytochem Lett 2:184–187

Choudhary RK, Oh S, Lee J (2011) An ethnomedicinal inventory of knotweeds of Indian Himalaya. J Med Plant Res 5:2095–2103

Chowdhury BN, Haque MM, Sohrab MH, Afroz F, Al-mansur MA, Sultana T et al (2013) Steroids from the stem of *Nymphaea stellata*. J Bangladesh Acad Sci 37:109–113

Chung CP, Hsia SM, Lee MY, Chen HJ, Cheng F, Chan LC, Kuo YH, Lin YL, Chiang W (2011) Gastroprotective activities of adlay (*Coix lachryma*-jobi L. var. ma-yuen Stapf) on the growth of the stomach cancer AGS cell line and indomethacin-induced gastric ulcers. J Agric Food Chem 59:6025–6033

Cook CDK (1996) Aquatic and wetland plants of India. Oxford University Press Inc., New York

Crosson H (2010) Keeping aquatic plants in their place: common sense tips to protect lakes and rivers. Landscape. Available at: http://www.landscapeonline.com/research/article5226
Darnis F, Orcel L, de Saint-Maur PP, Mamou P (1979) Use of a titrated extract of *Centella asiatica* in chronic hepatic disorders. Sem Hop 55:1749–1750
Das BC, Sarker PK, Rahman MM (2008) Aphidicidal activity of some indigenous plant extracts against bean aphid *Aphis craccivora* Koch (Homoptera: Aphididae). J Pest Sci 81:153–159
Dasgupta A, Stabler H, Catherine A (2011) Herbal supplements: efficacy, toxicity, interactions with western drugs, and effects on clinical laboratory tests. Wiley, Hoboken, NJ, pp 202–205
Dash PR, Nasrin M, Saha MR (2011) Evaluation of analgesic and neuropharmacological activities of methanolic rhizome extract of *Hedychium coronarium*. Int J Pharm Sci Res 2:979–984
Date BB, Kulkarni PH (1995) Assessment of efficacy of "Prasham" in insomnia and irritability. Ayurvedic Res Paper 2:15–24
Deb DD, Kapoor D, Dighe DP, Padmaja D, Anand MS, D'Souza P, Deepak M, Murali B, Agarwal A (2008) In vitro safety evaluation and anticlastogenic effect of BacoMind on human lymphocytes. Biomed Environ Sci 21:7–23
Deepak M, Sangli GK, Arun PC, Amit A (2005) Quantitative determination of the major saponin mixture bacoside A in *Bacopa monnieri* by HPLC. Phytochem Anal 16:24–29
DeFilipps RA, Maina SL, Crepin J (2004) Medicinal plants of the Guianas (Guyana, Surinam, French Guiana). Available at: http://botany.si.edu/bdg/medicinal/index.html
Deka N, Devi N (2015) Wild edible aquatic and marshland angiosperm of Baksa District, BTC area, Assam, India. Asian J Plant Sci Res 5:32–48
Dewanji A, Matai S, Si L, Barik S, Nag A (1993) Chemical composition of two semi-aquatic plants for food use. Plant Foods Hum Nutr 44:11–16
Dhanasekaran S, Palaya M, Shantha Kumar S (2010) Evaluation of anti-microbial and anti-inflammatory activity of methanol leaf extract of Ipomoea aquatica Forsk. Res J Pharm Biol Chem Sci 1:258–264
Dhanapal R, Kavimani S, Matha VSB, Gupta M and Basu SK. Antisteroidogenic activity of ethanol extract of Ammania baccifera (L.) whole plant in female albino mice ovaries. Iranian Journal of Pharmacology & Therapeutics, 4, 2005, 43–45.
Divya G, Gajalakshmi S, Mythili S, Sathiavelu A (2011) Pharmacological activities of Acorus calamus: a review. AJBPR 1:57–64
Dodds WK (2002) Freshwater Ecology: Concepts and Environmental Applications (Aquatic Ecology). Academic Press
Diwan PC, Karwande I, Singh AK (1991) Anti-anxiety profile of manduk parni *Centella asiatica* Linn in animals. Fitoterapia 62:255–257
Dubey KS, Ansari AH, Harduha M (2000) Antimicrobial activity of the extract of *Sphaeranthus indicus*. Asian J Chem 12:577–578
Duke JA (2009) Handbook of medicinal plants of Latin America. CRC Press, Taylor & Francis Group, Boca Raton, FL
Duke JA (2010) Phytochemical and ethnobotanical databases. https://phytochem.nal.usda.gov/phytochem/search
Duke JA, Ayensu ES (1985) Medicinal plants of China. Reference Publications Inc., Algonac, MI
Duraipandiyan V, Indwar F, Ignacimuthu S (2010) Antimicrobial activity of confertifolin from Polygonum hydropiper. Pharm Biol 48:187–190
efloras (2010) Flora of Pakistan. http://www.efloras.org/flora_page.aspx?flora_id=5
Egami EL, Magboul AL, Omer ME, Tohami EL (1998) Sudanese plant used in folkloric medicine: screening for antibacterial activity. Fitoterapia 59:369–373
El Tahir A, Satti GM, Khalid SA (1999) Antiplasmodial activity of selected Sudanese medicinal plants with emphasis on maytenus senegalensis. J Ethnopharmacol 64:227–233
Fink HE (1990) Religion, disease and healing in Ghana: a case study of traditional Dormaa medicine. Tricker Wissenschaft, München
Flint NA, Madsen JD (1995) The effect of temperature and day length on the germination of Potamogeton Nodosus Tubers. J Freshw Ecol 10:125–128

Furuta T, Fukuyama Y, Asakawa Y (1986) Polygonolide, an isocoumarin from *Polygonum hydropiper* possessing anti-inflammatory activity. Phytochemistry 25:517–520
Galani VJ, Patel BG (2009) Psychotropic activity of *Sphaeranthus indicus* Linn. in experimental animals. Pharmacog Res 1:307–313
George M, Joseph L, Ramaswamy (2009) Anti-allergic, anti-pruritic, and anti-inflammatory activities of *Centella asiatica* extracts. Afr J Tradit Complement Altern Med 6:554–559
Ghani A (1998) Medicinal plants of Bangladesh: chemical constituents and uses. Asiatic Society of Bangladesh, Dhaka
Ghani A (2003) Medicinal plants of Bangladesh, 2nd edn. Asiatic Society of Bangladesh, Dhaka
Ghosh T, Maity TK, Das M, Bose A, Dash DK (2007) In vitro antioxidant and hepatoprotective activity of ethanolic extract of *Bacopa monnieri*. IJPT 6:77–85
Gilani AU, Shah AJ, Ahmad M, Shaheen F (2006) Antispasmodic effect of *Acorus calamus* Linn. is mediated through calcium channel blockade. Phytother Res 20:1080–1084
Glorybai L, Kannan B, Arasu MV, Al-Dhabi NA, Agastian P (2015) Some biological activities of *Epaltes divaricata* L.—an in vitro study. Ann Clin Microbiol Antimicrob 14:18. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12941-015-0074-4
Gohil KJ, Pater JA, Gajjar AK (2010) Pharmacological review on *Centella asiatica*: a potential herbal cure-all. Indian J Pharm Sci 72:546–556
Gritto MJ, Nandagopalan V, Doss A (2015) Ethno-botanical study on the traditional healers in Pachamalai hills of Eastern Ghats, Tamilnadu, South India. J Med Plants Stud 3:80–85
Guo YQ, Sun HY, Chan CO, Liu BB, Wu JH, Chan SW, Mok DK, Tse AK, Yu ZL, Chen SB (2015) *Centipeda minima* (Ebushicao) extract inhibits PI3K-Akt-mTOR signaling in nasopharyngeal carcinoma CNE-1 cells. Chin Med 10:26. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13020-015-0058-5
Gupta OP (1987) Aquatic weed management. Today and Tomorrow Printers and Publishers, New Delhi
Gupta AK (2011a) *Cryptocoryne retrospiralis*. The IUCN Red List of threatened species
Gupta AK (2011b) *Nymphaea pubescens*. The IUCN Red List of threatened species
Gupta AK (2011c) *Cyanotis axillaris*. The IUCN Red List of threatened species
Gupta AK (2011d) *Hydrolea zeylanica*. The IUCN Red List of threatened species
Gupta AK (2011e) *Monochoria hastata*. The IUCN Red List of threatened species
Gupta AK (2012) *Enydra fluctuans*. IUCN 2012. IUCN Red List of threatened species.
Gupta A, Pandey VN (2014) Herbal remedies of aquatic macrophytes of Gorakhpur district, Uttar Pradesh (India). Int J Pharm Bio Sci 5:300–308
Gupta RS, Kumar P, Sharma A, Bharadwaj TN, Dixit VP (2000) Hypocholesterolemic activity of *Marsilea minuta* in gerbils. Fitoterapia 71(2):113–117
Gupta M, Mazumder UK, Datta I, Battacharya S, Mukherjee S, Manikandan L (2002) Studies of antifertility activity of *Marsilea minuta* Linn. Indian J Pharm Sci 64:176–178
Gupta MG, Mruthunjaya K, Saini L, Garg SK, Agrawal SG (2011) Analgesic, anti-inflammatory and antipyretic activity of *Rotula aquatica* lour root. Inventi Rapid: Planta Activa
Harikrishnan KN, Hariharan M (1999) In vitro clonal propagation of sweet flag (*Acorus calamus*)—a medicinal plant. Plant tissue culture and biotechnology: emerging trends. Universities Press (India) Pvt. Ltd., Hyderabad, pp 220–222
Hartwell L (1970) Plants used against cancer. A survey. Lloydia 33:288–392
Hazra R, Ray K, Guha D (2007) Inhibitory role of *Acorus calamus* in ferric chloride-induced epileptogenesis in rat. Hum Exp Toxicol 26:947–953
HEAR (2004) Alien species in Hawaii. Hawaii ecosystems at risk. University of Hawaii, Honolulu, HI
Heinrich M, Robles M, West JE, Ortiz de Montellano BR, Rodriguez E (1998) Ethnopharmacology of Mexican Asteraceae (Compositae). Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 38:539–565
Hu FB (2003) Plant-based foods and prevention of cardiovascular disease: an overview. Am J Clin Nutr 78:544S–551S
Huang HC, Liaw CC, Zhang LC et al (2008) Triterpenoidal saponins from *Hydrocotyle sibthorpioi*des. Phytochemistry 69:1597–1603

Huang Q, Zhang S, Huang R, Wei L, Chen Y, Lv S, Liang C, Tan S, Liang S, Zhou L, Lin X (2013a) Isolation and identification of an anti-hepatitis B virus compound from Hydrocotyle sibthorpioides Lam. J Ethnopharmacol 150:568–575

Huang SS, Chiu CS, Lin TH, Lee MM, Lee CY, Chang SJ, Hou WC, Huang GJ, Deng JS (2013b) Antioxidant and anti-inflammatory activities of aqueous extract of *Centipeda minima*. J Ethnopharmacol 147:395–405

Huang W, Yu X, Liang N, Ge W, Kwok HF, Lau CB, Li Y, Chung HY (2016) Anti-angiogenic activity and mechanism of sesquiterpene lactones from *Centipeda minima*. Nat Prod Commun 11:435–438

Husin F, Chan YY, Gan SH, Sulaiman SA, Shueb RH (2015) The effect of Hydrocotyle sibthorpioides Lam. extracts on in vitro dengue replication. J Evid Based Complementary Altern Med 2015:596109

Inngjerdingen KT, Sylvi C, Debes IM, Hokputsa S, Stephen EH, Bent R, Terje E, Michaelsen DD, Paulsen BS (2005) Bioactive pectic polysaccharides from Glinus oppositifolius (L.) Aug. DC., a Malian medicinal plant, isolation and partial characterization. J. Ethnopharm 101:204–214

Ipor I (2001) *Lindernia ciliata* (Colsm.) Pennell. record from Proseabase. In: Van Valkenburg JLCH, Bunyapraphatsara N (eds) PROSEA (Plant Resources of South-East Asia) Foundation. PROSEA Foundation, Bogor. http://www.proseanet.org

Ismail A, Marjan ZM, Foong CW (2004) Total antioxidant activity and phenolic content in selected vegetables. Food Chem 87:581–586

Isola OI (2013) The "Relevance" of the African traditional medicine (alternative medicine) to health care delivery system in Nigeria. J Dev Areas 47:319–338

ITIS (2017) *Hydrocotyle sibthorpioides* Lam. https://www.itis.gov/servlet/SingleRpt/SingleRpt?search_topic=TSN&search_value=29521#null

Jahan I, Mamun MAA, Hossen MA, Sakir JAMS, Shamimuzzaman M, Uddin MJ, Haque E (2012) Antioxidant, analgesic and anti-inflammatory activities of *Nymphaea nouchali* flowers. Res J Pharmacol 6:62–70

Jain P, Khanna NK, Trehan N, Pendse VK, Godhwani JL (1994) Anti-inflammatory effects of an ayurvedic preparation, Brahmi Rasayan, in rodents. Indian J Exp Biol 32:633–636

Jain A, Roshnibala S, Kanjilal PB, Singh RS, Singh HB (2007) Aquatic/semi aquatic-plants used in herbal remedies in the wetlands of Manipur, Northeastern India. Indian J Tradit Knowl 6:346–351

Jamal BD, Avinash KRG, Naganjenulu R, Jyothi MJ, Kalishwari E, Anvesh M (2011) Phytochemical screening and antipyretic activity of root stocks of *Polygonum glabrum* Willd in rats. Int J Pharmacother 1:1–4

Jamil SS, Nizami Q, Salam M (2007) *Centella asiatica* (Linn.) urban: a review. Nat Prod Rad 6:158–170

Jansen PCM (2004) *Alternanthera sessilis* (L.) DC. Record from PROTA4U. In: Grubben GJH, Denton OA (eds) PROTA (Plant Resources of Tropical Africa/Resources végétales de l'Afrique tropicale). University of Wageningen, Wageningen

Jiang WL, Luo XL, Kuang SJ (2005) Effects of *Alternanthera philoxeroides* Griseb against dengue virus in vitro. J First Mil Med Univ 25:454–456

Kadel C, Jain AK (2008) Folklore claims on snakebite among some tribal communities of Central India. Indian J Tradit Knowl 7:296–299

Kaisoon O, Siriamornpun S, Weerapreeyakul N, Meeso N (2011) Phenolic compounds and antioxidant activities of edible flowers from Thailand. J Funct Foods 3:88–99

Kamala Shankar MD, Lucy P, Liao BA (2004) Traditional systems of medicine. Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am 15:725–747

Kamble SY, Patil SR, Sawant PS, Sawanth S, Pawar SG, Singh EA (2010) Studies on plants used in traditional medicine by Bhilla tribes of Maharashtra. Indian J Tradit Knowl 9:591–598

Kar A (2006) Pharmacognosy and pharmabiotechnology. New Age International, New Delhi

Kar A, Borthakur SK (2008) Medicinal plants used against dysentery, diarrhea and cholera by the tribes of erstwhile Kameng district of Arunachal Pradesh. Nat Prod Rad 7:176–181

Karataş M, Aasim M, Çiftçioğlu M (2014) Adventitious shoot regeneration of Roundleaf toothcup-*Rotala rotundifolia* ((Buch-Ham. ex Roxb) Koehne). The JAPS 24:838–842

Kashiwada Y, Aoshima A, Ikeshiro Y, Chen YP, Furukawa H, Itoigawa M, Fujioka T, Mihashi K, Cosentino LM, Morris-Natschke SL, Kuo-Hsiung L (2005) Anti-HIV benzylisoquinoline alkaloids and flavonoids from the leaves of *Nelumbo nucifera*, and structure activity correlations with related alkaloids. Bioorg Med Chem 13:443–448

Katewa SS, Galav PK (2005) Traditional herbal medicines from Shekhawati region of Rajasthan. Indian J Tradit Knowl 4:237–245

Keddy PA (2010) Wetland ecology: principles and conservation, 2nd edn. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, p 497

Khan MF, Islam Rabbi SN, Fahima Aktar MD, Kawsar H (2014) In vitro cytotoxic, membrane stabilizing and thrombolytic activities of *Polygonum glabrum* Willd. Bangladesh Pharma J 17:202–204

Khare CP (2005) Encyclopedia of Indian medicinal plants. Springer, Berlin, p 372

Khare CP (2007) Indian medicinal plants: an illustrated dictionary. Springer Science & Business Media, LLC, New York, NY, p 509

Kiem PV, Kim Thuy NT, Tuan Anh HL, Nhiem NX, Minh CV, Yen PH, Ban NK, Hang DT, Tai BH, Tuyen NV, Mathema VB, Koh YS, Kim YH (2011) Chemical constituents of the rhizomes of Hedychium coronarium and their inhibitory effect on the pro-inflammatory cytokines production LPS-stimulated in bone marrow-derived dendritic cells. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 21:7460–7466

Kiron SS, Nizar K, Rajagopal PL, Saritha M, Narayaswamy VB (2012) Analgesic activity study of Polygonum glabrum Willd in rodents. Res J Pharm Biol Chem Sci 3(3):1157–1164

Kırım B, Çoban D, Güler M (2014) Floating aquatic plants and their impact on wetlands in Turkey. 2 nd International Conference - Water resources and wetlands. Tulcea, Romania.

Kirtikar KR, Basu BD (1981) Indian medicinal plants. In: Blatter E, Caius JF, Mhaskar KS (eds) Lalit Mohan Basu, Allahabad, pp 1346–1348

Kirtikar KR, Basu BD (1993) Convolvulaceae. Indian medicinal plants, vol III, 2nd edn. International Book Distributors, New Delhi, pp 1724–1725

Kirtikar KK, Basu BD (2001) The Indian medicinal plants. Oriental Enterprises, Dehradun

Kirtikar KR, Basu BD (2002) Indian medicinal plants, vol VIII. Sri Satguru Publications, New Delhi

Krishnaswamy NR, Prasanna S (1975) Clerosterol from *Enhydra fluctuans*. Phytochemistry 14:1663

Kumar A, Bohra C (2005) Waning wetlands: a need for its conservation. In: Kumar A (ed) Ecological studies. Daya Books, New Delhi

Kumar YS, Sanjib D (2013) Evaluation of anti-diarrhoeal property of crude aqueous extract of *Alternanthera sessilis* Linn. IJPI 3:110–115

Kuo YC, Lin YL, Liu CP, Tsai WJ (2005) Herpes simplex virus type 1 propagation in HeLa cells interrupted by *Nelumbo nucifera*. J Biomed Sci 12:1021–1034

Lajter I, Zupkó I, Molnár J, Jakab G, Balogh L, Vasas A, Hohmann J (2012) Antiproliferative activity of Polygonaceae species from the Carpathian Basin against human cancer cell lines. Phytother Res 27:77–85

Lakshmi VK, Triveni KB, Anitha SSS (2012) In vitro anthelmintic activity of *Rotula aquatica* lour bark. Pharma Sci Monit 3:2332–2339

Lakshmi G, Smitha N, Ammu SV, Priya CL, Bhaskara Rao KV (2014) Phytochemical profile, in vitro antioxidant and hemolytic activities of various leaf extract of *Nymphaea nouchali* LINN: an in vitro study. Int J Pharm Pharm Sci 6:548–552

Lansdown RV (2011) *Monochoria vaginalis*. The IUCN Red List of threatened species

Lansdown RV, Patzelt A, Knees S, Juffe Bignoli D (2014) *Eclipta prostrata*. The IUCN Red List of threatened species

Lechat-Vahirua I, Francois P, Menut C, Lamaty G, Bessiere JM (1993) Aromatic plants of French Polynesia. I. Constituents of the essential oils of rhizomes of three Zingiberaceae: *Zingiber*

zerumbet Smith, *Hedychium coronarium* Koenig and *Etlingera cevuga* Smith. J Essent Oil Res 5:55–59

Lee SH, Kim B, Oh MJ et al (2011) *Persicaria hydropiper* (L.) spach and its flavonoid components, isoquercitrin and isorhamnetin, activate the Wnt/β-catenin pathway and inhibit adipocyte differentiation of 3 T3-L1 cells. Phytother Res 25:1629–1635

Lewis WH, Lewis MPFE (2003) Medical botany: plants affecting human health. Wiley, Hoboken, NJ, p 112

Li L (2000) Opportunity and challenge of traditional Chinese medicine in face of the entrance to WTO (World Trade Organization). Chin Inform Trad Chin Med 7:7–8

Lin SC, Lin YH, Shyuu SJ, Lin CC (2006) Hepatoprotective effects of Taiwanfolk medicine: *Alternanthera sessilis* on liver damage induced by various hepatotoxins. Phytother Res 8:391–398

Liu-qing Y, Fujii Y, Yong-jun Z, Jian-ping Z, Young-liang L, Songnan X (2007) Response of exotic invasive weed *Alternanthera philoxeroides* to environmental factors and its competition with rice. Rice Sci 14:49–55

Lavanya G, Manjunath M, Sivajyoti R, Parthasarthy RP. Safety evaluation ofthe ethanol extract of Ammannia baccifera (Lythraceae): assessment of acute and sub acute toxicity. Journal of Pharmacy Research, 3(11), 2010, 2634–2637.

Lodha V (2003) Chemical analysis of the essential oil of *Sphaeranthus indicus*—an *Ayurvedic* plant of India. Indian Perfumer 47:29–30

Luczak S, Swiatek L, Daniewski M (1989) Phenolic acids in herbs *Lysimachia nummularia* L. and *L. Vulgaris* L. Acta Pol Pharm 46:381–385

Ma G, Chong L, Li Z, Cheung AH, Tattersall MH (2009) Anticancer activities of sesquiterpene lactones from *Cyathocline purpurea* in vitro. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol 64:143–152

Ma CJ, Lee KY, Jeong EJ et al (2010) Persicarin from water dropwort (Oenanthe javanica) protects primary cultured rat cortical cells from glutamate-induced neurotoxicity. Phytother Res 24:913–918

Macedo JF (1997) The genus *Hedychium* Koening (Zingiberaceae) in Minas Gerais State. Daphne Revista do Herbário PAMG da EPAMIG 7:27–31

Madsen JD, Bloomfield JA, Sutherland JW, Eichler LW, Boylen CW (1996) The aquatic macrophyte community of Onondaga Lake: field survey and plant growth bioassays of lake sediments. Lake Reserv Manag 12:73–79

Malakar C, Choudhury PPN (2015) Pharmacological poteniiality and medicinal uses of Ipomoea aquatica Forsk: a review. Asian J Pharm Clin Res 8:60–63

Malalavidhane TS, Wickramasinghe SM, Jansz ER (2000) Oral hypoglycemic activity of *Ipomoea aquatica*. J Ethnopharmacol 72:293–298

Mamun MM, Billah MM, Ashek MA, Ahasan MM, Hossain MJ, Sultana T (2003) Evaluation of diuretic activity of *Ipomoea aquatica* (Kalmisak) in Mice Model Study. J Med Sci 3:395–400

Manandhar NP (2002) Plants and people of Nepal. Timber Press, Portland, OR

Mani S (2016) *Marsilea minuta*. The IUCN Red List of threatened species

Manjulatha K (2006) Evaluation of natural products for various biological activities. Thesis, Gulbarga University, Gulbarga

Manosroi A, Sainakham M, Chankhampan S, Manosroi W, Manosroi J (2016) In vitro anti-cancer activities of Job's tears (*Coix lachryma-jobi* Linn.) extracts on human colon adenocarcinoma. Saudi J Biol Sci 23:248–256

Mathew J, Paul J, Nandhu MS, Paulose CS (2010) *Bacopa monnieri* and Bacoside-A for ameliorating epilepsy associated behavioral deficits. Fitoterapia 81:315–322

Maya S, Menon SV, Nair SG (2003) Economic importance of river vegetation of Kerala—a case study. J Econ Taxon Bot 27:796–803

Meena AK, Rao MM, Meena RP, Panda P, Renu (2011) Pharmacological and phytochemical evidences for the plants of Wedelia genus—a review. Asian J Pharm Res 1:7–12

Mehta NR, Patel EP, Patan PV, Shah B (2013) *Nelumbo Nucifera* (Lotus): a review on ethnobotany, phytochemistry and pharmacology. IJPBR 1:152–167

Meulenbeld GJ, Wujastyk D (2001) Studies on Indian medical history. Motilal Banarsidass, New Delhi
Mhetre NA, Ambavade SD, Bodhankar SL (2006) Neuroleptic activity of extract of *Sphaeranthus indicus* in mice. Indian J Nat Prod 22:24–27
Miyazawa M, Tamura N (2007) Inhibitory compound of tyrosinase activity from the sprout of *Polygonum hydropiper* L. (Benitade). Biol Pharm Bull 30:595–597
Mohd JK, Vipin S, Varun SB, Manvendra SK, Sanjay BK (2011) Anxiolytic activity of *Ipomoea aquatica* leaves. Eur J Exp Biol 1:63–70
Motley TJ (1994) The ethanobotany of sweet flag, *Acorus calamus* (Araceae). Econ Bot 48:397–412
Moyeenul Huq AKM, Jamal JA, Stanslas J (2014) Ethnobotanical, phytochemical, pharmacological, and toxicological aspects of *Persicaria hydropiper* (L.) Delarbre. J Evid Based Complementary Altern Med 2014:782830. https://doi.org/10.1155/2014/782830
Mukherjee DG, Dey DC (1996) Clinical trial on Brahmi. I. J Exp Med Sci 10:5–11
Mukherjee PK, Das J, Balasubramanian R, Kakali S, Pal M, Saha BP (1995) Antidiarrhoeal evaluation of *Nelumbo nucifera* rhizome extract. Ind J Exp Biol 27:262–264
Mukherjee PK, Pal M, Saha K, Saha BP, Das J (1996a) Diuretic activity of the rhizomes of *Nelumbo nucifera* Gaertn (Fam. Nymphaeaceae). Phytother Res 10:424–425
Mukherjee PK, Saha K, Balasubramanian R, Pal M, Saha BP (1996b) Studies on psychopharmacological effects of *Nelumbo nucifera (Gaertn.)* rhizome extract. J Ethnopharmacol 54:63–67
Mukherjee PK, Venkatesan K, Mainak M, Peter H (2007) *Acorus calamus*: scientific validation of ayurvedic tradition from natural resources. Pharm Biol 45:651–666
Munasinghe JU, Dilhan MAAB, Sundarabarathy TV (2010) Utilization of aquatic plants: a method to enhance the productivity of water in seasonal tanks in the Anuradhapura District. In: Weligamage P, Godaliyadda GGA, Jinapala K (eds) Proceedings of the national conference on water, food security and climate change in Sri Lanka, BMICH, Colombo, June 9–11, 2009, Irrigation for food security, 2010, vol 1. International Water Management Institute, Colombo, pp 23–32
Murakami A, Nakamura Y, Ohigashi H, Koshimizu K (1997) Cancer chemopreventive potentials of edible Thai plants and some of their active constituents. Mem School Biol Oriented Sci Technol Kinki Univ 1:1–23
Nadkarni AK (2007) Indian materia medica, vol 1, 3rd edn. Popular Parkashan Private Ltd., Bombay, p 1163
Nagavani V, Rao TR (2010) Evaluation of antioxidant potential and qualitative analysis of major polyphenols by RP-HPLC in *Nymphaea nouchali* Burm flowers. Int J Pharm Pharm Sci 2:98–104
Nagrajan S, Nair AGR, Ramkrishnan S, Subramanian SS (1966) Chemical examination of the flowers of *Nelumbium speciosum* willd. Curr Sci 35:176
Nakahara K, Roy MK, Alzoreky NS, Thalang VN, Trakoontivakorn G (2002) Inventory of indigenous plants and minor crops in Thailand based on bioactivities. In: 9th JIRCAS international symposium on value-addition to agricultural products, pp 135–139
Nakaoki T (1961) Medicinal resources XIX: flavonoid of the leaves of *Nelumbo nucifera, Cosmos hipinnatus* and *Foeniculum vulgare*. Yaku Zas 81:1158–1159
Nanda BK, Jena J, Rath B, Behera BR (2009) Analgesic and antipyretic activity of whole parts of *Sphaeranthus* indicus Linn. J Chem Pharma Res 1:207–212
Naples ML (2005) Weeds of rain fed lowland rice fields of Laos & Cambodia. Unpublished M.Sc. thesis, Univ. Leiden, Leiden
Nayak P, Nayak S, Kar DM, Das P (2010) Pharmacological evaluation of ethanolic extracts of the plant *Alternanthera sessilis* against temperature regulation. J Pharm Res 3:1381–1383
Nayar TS, Kumar ESA, Pushpangadan P (1999) *Rotula aquatica*, Boraginaceae—first report on its psychoactive property. Econ Bot 53:115–117
Nisha M, Kalyanasundaram M, Paily KP, Abidha, Vanamail P, Balaraman K (2007) In vitro screening of medicinal plant extracts for macrofilaricidal activity. Parasitol Res 100:575–579
Nizar K, Mishra S, Tiwary MP, Singh PN, Kumar V (2007) Antidepressant activity and brain neurotransmitters study of *Polygonum glabrum* Willd in rodents. J Herb Med Toxic 1:73–79

Noor Hashim NHN, Abas F, Shaari K, Lajis NH (2012) LC-DAD-ESIMS/MS characterization of antioxidant and anticholinesterase constituents present in the active fraction from Persicaria hydropiper. Food Sci Technol 46:468–476

Ohkoshi E, Miyazaki H, Shindo K, Watanabe H, Yoshida A, Yajima H (2007) Constituents from the leaves of *Nelumbo nucifera* stimulate lipolysis in the white adipose tissue of mice. Planta Med 73:1255–1259

Okoko T (2009) In vitro antioxidant and free radical scavenging activities of *Garcinia* kola seeds. Food Chem Toxicol 47(10):2620–2623

Ou M (1989) Chinese-English manual of commonly-used in traditional Chinese medicine. Joint Publishing Co. Ltd., Hong Kong

Oyedeji AA, Abowei JFN (2012) The classification, distribution, control and economic importance of aquatic plants. Int J Fish Aquat Sci 1:118–128

Palani R, Karunakaran D, Rajesh V, Mathivanan K, Jayaraman P (2014) Analysis of antioxidant, antimicrobial activity and phytochemical potential of *Cleistanthus collinus* Roxb., *Polygonum glabrum* Wild. and *Melia azedarch* Linn. AJMPS 2:149–159

Pan J, Liu J, He G (2009) Experimental study of *Lindernia procumbens* Philcox and its complex extractions on transplantable tumor. Pract J Cancer 24:441–444

Panda A, Misra MK (2011) Ethnomedicinal survey of some wetland plants of South Orissa and their conservation. Indian J Tradit Knowl 10:296–303

Pande VV, Dubey S (2009) Antihyperlipidemic activity of *Sphaeranthus indicus* on atherogenic diet induced hyperlipidemia in rats. Int J Green Pharm 3:159–161

Pandi PV, Nancy J, Harisankar S (2009) CNS activity of methanol and acetone extracts of *Acorus calamus* leaves in mice. J Pharmacol Toxicol 4:79–86

Parimala M, Shoba FG (2013) Phytochemical analysis and *in vitro* antioxidant activity of hydroalcoholic seed extract of *Nymphaea nouchali* Burm. F. Asian J Trop Biomed 3:887–895

Patil S, Jolly CI, Narayanan S (2003) Free radical scavenging activity of *Acacia catechu* and *Rotula aquatica*: implications in cancer therapy. Indian Drugs 40:328–332

Patil S, Narayanan S, Eibl G, Jolly CI (2004) Evaluation of antimitotic activity of *Rotula aquatica* (Lour): a traditional herb used in treatment of cancer. Indian J Exp Biol 42:893–899

Patwari B, Das T, Saha D, Das B (2014) Phytochemical standardization and analgesic activity of *Murdannia nudiflora* (L) Brenan. http://farmavita.net/documents/manuscript.pdf

Paudel KR, Panth N (2015) Phytochemical profile and biological activity of *Nelumbo nucifera*. J Evid Based Complementary Altern Med 2015:789124. https://doi.org/10.1155/2015/789124

Paul JMH, Xu C, Bovenkamp PVD, Muhilal A, West CE (1997) Application of a validated method for the determination of pro-vitamin a carotenoids in Indonesian foods of different maturity and origin. J Agric Food Chem 45:1174–1179

Peregoy JA, Clarke TC, Jones LI, Stussman BJ, Nahin RL (2014) Regional variation in use of complementary health approaches by U.S. adults. NCHS Data Brief 146:1–8

Perry LM, Metzger J (1980) Medicinal plants of east and southeast Asia: attributed properties and uses. MIT Press, Cambridge, MA, p 620

Petroeschevsky A, Champion PD (2008) Preventing further introduction and spread of aquatic weeds through the ornamental plant trade. In: 16th Australian weed conference, Cairns, pp 200–302

Phimmasan H, Kongvongxay S, Chhayty P, Preston TR (2004) Water spinach (*Ipomoea aquatica*) and stylo 184 (*Stylosanthes guianesis* CIAT 184) as basal diets for growing rabbits. Livestock Res Rural Dev 16:46–59

Pingale SP (2008) Evaluation of effect of *Centella asiatica* on CCL_4 induced rat liver damage. Pharmacol Online 3:537–543

Podolak I, Koczurkiewicz P, Michalik M, Calanty A, Zajdel P, Janeczko Z (2013) A new cytotoxic triterpene saponin from *Lysimachia nummularia* L. Carbohydr Res 37:16–20

Prabhu KS, Lobo R, Shirwaikar A (2008) Antidiabetic properties of the alcoholic extract of *Sphaeranthus indicus* in streptozotocin-nicotinamide diabetic rats. J Pharm Pharmacol 60:909–916

Prajapati ND, Purohit SS, Sharma AK, Kumare TA (2003) Handbook of medicinal plants: a complete source book, vol 484. Agrobios, Jodhpur

Prasad NK, Chandrashekar R, Ashok G, Shivamurthy GR, Vijayan P, Aradhya SM (2005) Cytotoxic properties of *Ipomea aquatica* Forsk. Leaf. Indian J Pharmacol 37:397–398

Prashanthi P, Anitha S, Shashidhara S (2012) Studies on the antibacterial activity of the aqueous extract of the roots of *Rotula aquatica* Lour. Int J Fund Appl Sci 1:87–90

Prem Kumar VG, Shyamsundar D (2005) Antidermatophytic activity of *Pistia stratiotes*. Ind J Pharm 37:127–128

Pujar PP, Sawaikar DD, Rojatkar SR, Nagasampagi BA (2007) Eudesmanoids from *Sphaeranthus indicus*. Fitoterapia 71:264–268

Pullaiah T (1998) Taxonomy of angiosperms, 1st edn. Regency Publications, New Delhi

Punjaji SA (2012) Some less known herbal remedies against wounds from Jamkhed Tahasil areas in Ahmednagar District (M.S.) India. J Pharma Res Opin 2:58–62

Qin RA, Mei X, Wan L, Shi JL, Shen YJ (2005) Effects of volatile oil of Centipeda minima on acute pleural effusion in rats induced by an intrapleural injection of car. Zhongguo Zhong Yao Za Zhi 30:1192–1194

Radha B, Janarthan M, Durraivel S (2013) Protective role of methanolic extract of *Polygonum glabrum* willd against cisplatin and gentamycin induced nephrotoxicity in albino rats. IJRPB 1:846–848

Raghavendra M, Maiti R, Kumar S, Trigunayat A, Mitra S, Acharya S (2009) Role of *Centella asiatica* on cerebral post-ischemic reperfusion and long-term hypoperfusion in rats. Int J Green Pharm 3:88–96

Rahman AHM, Gulshana MFA (2014) Taxonomy and medicinal uses on amaranthaceae family of Rajshahi, Bangladesh. Appl Ecol Environ Sci 2:54–59

Rahman H, Rehman T, Ali A, Ali Shah SA, Ismail M (2015) In vitro Antileishmanial activity of *Polygonum glabrum* stem extract on *Leishmania tropica* (KWH2) strain. J Adv Biol Biotechnol 3:24–28

Rahman MT, Gegum N (2002) Analgesic activity of Enhydra fluctuans. Fitoterapia 73:654–660

Rahmatullah M (2010) Comparative analysis of medicinal plants used by folk medicinal healers in villages adjoining the Ghaghut, Bengali, Padma Rivers of Bangladesh. Am Euras J Sustain Agric 4:70–85

Rahmatullah M, Kabir AA, Rahman MM, Hossan MS, Khatun Z, Khatun M (2014) Ethnomedicinal practices among a minority group of Christians residing in Mirzapur village of Dinajpur district, Bangladesh. Adv Nat Appl Sci 4:45–51

Raihan MO, Khalequeuzzaman M, Brishti A, Tareq SM, Hossain A, Rana S (2012) Anthelmintic and antiproliferative activity of aerial parts of *Persicaria hydropiper*. Der Pharm Sin 3:104–110

Raja MKMM, Sethiya NK, Mishra SH (2010) A comprehensive review on *Nymphaea stellata*: a traditionally used bitter. J Adv Pharm Technol Res 1:311–319

Raja S, Ramya I (2016) A comprehensive review on *Polygonum glabrum*. Int J Phytomed 8:457–467

Rajagopal K, Sasikala K (2008) Antihyperglycaemic and antihyperlipidaemic effects of *Nymphaea stellata* in alloxan-induced diabetic rats. Singapore Med J 49:137–141

Rama Krishna N, Varma NR, Saidulu C (2014) Ethnobotanical studies of Adilabad district, Andhra Pradesh, India. J Pharmacogn Phytochem 3:18–36

Rao RR, Suseela MR (2017) *Vetiveria zizanioides* (Linn.) Nash a multipurpose eco-friendly grass of India. Accessed 10 Mar 2017. http://www.vetiver.org/TVN_IVC2/CP-6-2.PDF

Rasool Hassan BA (2012) Medicinal plants (importance and uses). Pharmaceut Anal Acta 3:e139. https://doi.org/10.4172/2153-2435.1000e139

Rastogi M, Ojha R, Prabu PC, Devi DP, Agrawal A, Dubey GP (2012) Amelioration of age associated neuroinflammation on long term bacosides treatment. Neurochem Res 37:869–874

Raut AA, Sunder S, Sarkar S, Pandita NS, Vaidya ADB (2008) Preliminary study on crystal dissolution activity *of Rotula aquatica, Commiphora wightii* and *Boerhaavia diffusa* extracts. Fitoterapia 79:544–547

Rehel S (2011) *Cyathocline purpurea*. The IUCN Red List of threatened species

Rhazi L, Rhazi M, Flanagan D (2014) *Ammannia baccifera*. The IUCN Red List of threatened species

Rojatkar SR, Nagasampagi BA (1992) 7-Hydroxyeudesmanolides from *Spharanthus indicus*. Phytochemistry 31:3270–3271

Rout SD, Panda T, Mishra N (2009) Ethnomedicinal studies on some pteridophytes of Similipal Biosphere Reserve, Orissa, India. Int J Med Med Sci 1:192–197

Roy A, Saraf S (2008) Antioxidant and antiulcer activities of an ethnomedicine: *Alternanthera sessilis*. Res J Pharm Technol 1:75–79

Roy SK, Mazumder U, Islam A (2011) Pharmacological evaluation of *Enhydra fluctuans* aerial parts for central nervous system depressant activity. Pharmacol Online 1:632–643

Ruffo CK, Birnie A, Tengnas B (2002) Edible wild plants of Tanzania. Regional Land Management Unit, Nairobi

Saad B, Said O (2011) Greco-Arab and Islamic herbal medicine: traditional system, ethics, safety, efficacy, and regulatory issues. Wiley, Hoboken, NJ, p 568

Sachan NK, Das DR, Sachan AK, Shuaib M (2011) In-vitro evaluation of antioxidant activity of *Nymphaea stellata* Willd. Adv Environ Biol 5:1924–1927

Sahithi B, Rajani GP, Sowjanya K, Gupta D (2011) Anti-inflammatory activity of ethanolic and aqueous extracts of *Alternanthera sessilis* Linn. Pharmacol Online 1:1039–1043

Sairam K, Dorababu M, Goel RK, Bhattacharya SK (2002) Antidepressant activity of standardized extract of *Bacopa monniera* in experimental models of depression in rats. Phytomedicine 9:207–211

Sairam L, Rao C, Babu M, Goel RK (2001) Prophylactic and curative effects of *Bacopa monniera* in gastric ulcer models. Phytomedicine 8:423–430

Sambasivam Pillai TV (1991) Dictionary based on Indian medical science, vol 2, 2nd edn. Directorate of Indian Medicine and Homeopathy, Chennai

Sampson JA, Raman A, Karlsen G, Navsaria H, Leigh I (2001) In vitro keratinocyte antiproliferant effect of *Centella asiatica* extract and triterpenoid saponins. Phytomedicine 8:230–235

Sampson W (1995) Antiscience trends in the rise of the alternative medicine movement. Ann N Y Acad Sci 775:188–197

Samuelsson G, Farah MH, Claeson P, Hagos M, Thulin M, Hedberg O et al (1992) Inventory of plants used in traditional medicine in Somalia II. Plants of the families combretaceae to labiatae. J Ethnopharmacol 37:47–70

Sannigrahi S, Mazumder UK, Mondal A, Pal D, Mishra SL, Roy S (2010) Flavonoids of Enhydra fluctuans exhibit anticancer activity against Ehrlich's ascites carcinoma in mice. Nat Prod Commun 5:1239–1242

Santhoshkumar B, Satyanarain S (2010) Herbal remedies of wetlands macrophytes in India. Int J Pharm Biosci 2:1–12

Sarker SK, Hossain EA (2009) Pteridophytes of greater Mymensingh district of Bangladesh used as vegetables and medicines. Bangladesh J Plant Taxon 16:47–56. https://www.banglajol.info/index.php/BJPT/article/view/2746/2312

Sarpate RV, Deore TK, Tupkari SV (2009) Bronchodilatory effect of *Sphaeranthus indicus* Linn against allergen induced bronchospasm in guinea pigs. Pharmacog Mag 5:74–77

Scher J (2004) Federal noxious weed disseminules of the U.S. Center for Plant Health Science and Technology, Plant Protection and Quarantine, Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, DC. http://www.lucidcentral.org

Selvakumari PAS, De Britto AJ (2007) Bactericidal activity of *Lagenandra ovata* (Linn) Thw rhizome oil. Nat Prod Rad 6:382–385

Sen S, Chakraborty R, De B, Devanna N (2011) An ethnobotanical survey of medicinal plants used by ethnic people in West and South district of Tripura, India. J Forest Res 22:417–426

Senthamari R, Uvarani M, Jayakar B (2002) Pharmacognostical studies on leaf of Coldenia procumbens LINN. Anc Sci Life XXII:67–75
Seo WG, Pae HO, Chai KY, Yun YG, Kwon TH, Chung HT (2000) Inhibitory effects of methanol extract of seeds of Job's Tears (*Coix lachryma*-jobi L. var. ma-yuen) on nitric oxide and superoxide production in RAW 264.7 macrophages. Immunopharmacol Immunotoxicol 22:545–554
Shaikh D, Naqui BS, Shaikh R (1986) The antimicrobial principles of *Sphaeranthus indicus*: isolation, purification and antimicrobial action. Pak J Scient Ind Res 29:366–371
Shakoor A, Akram M, Asharaf CM, Siddiqui MR (1994) Pharmagonistic study and chemical/pharmacological evaluation of Brahmi-buti. Hamdard Med 37:92–10
Shankar LH, Mishra PK (2012) Study of aquatic medicinal plants of hazaribag district of Jharkhand, India. IRJP 30:405–409
Shanmugasundaram P, Venkataraman S (2005) Anti-nociceptive activity of *Hygrophila auriculata* (Schum.) Heine. Afr J Tradit CAM 2:62–69
Sharma M, Saxena RC (1996) *Sphaeranthus indicus* as mosquito larvicide. J Appl Zool Res 7:87–88
Sharma NK (2002) Ethnomedicinal studies on ferns and fern allies of Hadoti plateau, Southeastern Rajasthan. Zoos Print J 17:732–734
Shiddamallayya N, Yasmeen A, Gopakumar K (2010) Medico-botanical survey of kumar parvatha kukke subramanya, Mangalore, Karnataka. Indian J Tradit Knowl 9:96–99
Shoji N (1987) Asimilobine and liridine, serotonergic receptor antagonists from *Nelumbo nucifera*. Nat Prod 50:773–774
Shetty BS, Udupa AL and Somayaji SN (2006). Effect of Centella asiatica L. on normal and dexamathasone suppressed wound healing in Wistar Albino rats. Int. J. Low Extrem. Wounds, 5: 137–143.
Singh A, Kandasamy T, Odhav B (2009) In vitro propagation of *Alternanthera sessilis* (sessile joy weed), a famine food plant. Afr J Biotechnol 8:5691–5695
Singh B, Pandey VB, Joshi VK, Gambhir SS (1987) Anti-inflammatory studies on *Polygonum glabrum*. J Ethnopharmacol 19:255–267
Singh B, Rastogi RP (1969) A reinvestigation of the triterpenes of *Centella asiatica*. Phytochemistry 8:917–921
Singh P, Singh JS (2002) Recruitment and competitive interaction between ramets and seedlings in a perennial medicinal herb, *Centella asiatica*. Basic Appl Ecol 3:65–76
Singh RP, Tomar SS, Devakumar C, Goswami BK, Saxena DB (1991) Nematicidal efficacy of some essential oils against *Meloidogyne incognita*. Indian Perfumer 35:35–37
Singh S, Ak R, Sharma P, Barshiliya Y, Sihare M, Negi A (2012) Antidiarrhoeal activity of *Rotula aquatica* in rats. Asian Pac J Trop Biomed 2:175–277
Singh S, Rai AK, Sharma P, Barshiliya Y (2011) Comparative study of Anthelmintic activity between aqueous extract of Aerva Lanata and Rotula aquatica lour. Asian J Pharm Life Sci 1(3):2231–4423
Singh SK, Tripathi VJ, Singh RH (1989) ß-D-glucoside of (24S)-24-ethylcholesta-4, 22-dien-3-ß-ol from *Sphaeranthus indicus* L. Indian Drugs 26:317–318
Sinha S, Mukherjee PK, Mukherjee K, Pal M, Mandal SC, Saha BP (2000) Evaluation of antipyretic potential of *Nelumbo nucifera* stalks extract. Phytother Res 14:272–274
Sivarajan VV, Balachandaran I (1994) Ayurvedic drugs and their plant sources. Oxford and IBH Publishing Co. Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi, pp 358–359
Sivaraman D, Muralidaran P (2008) Anti-ulcerogenic evaluation of the ethanolic extract of water spinach (*Ipomoea Aquatica* Forsk) in aspirin ulcerated rats. J Pharm Res 1:143–147
Sivaraman D, Muralidaran P (2010a) Nootropic effect of *Ipomoea aquatica* Forsk in rat hippocampus. Int J PharmTech Res 2:476–479
Sivaraman D, Muralidaran P (2010b) Hypolipidemic activity of *Ipomoea aquatica* Forsk. Leaf extracts on lipid profile in hyperlipidemic rats. Int J Pharm Biol Arch 1:175–179
Slocum PD (2005) Waterlilies and lotuses: species, cultivars and new hybrids. Timber Press, Portland, OR

Soares DJ, Barreto RW (2008) Fungal pathogens of the invasive riparian weed *Hedychium Coronarium* from Brazil and their potential for biological control. Fungal Divers 28:85–96

Sohoni JS, Rojatkar SR, Kulkarni MM, Dhaneshwar NN, Tavale SS, Gururow TN et al (1988) A new eudesmenolide and 2-hydroxycostic acid from *Spharanthus indicus* Linn. X-ray molecular structure of 4-alpha, 5-alpha-epoxy-7-alpha-hydroxyeudesmanolide. J Chem Soc Perkin 1 2:157–160

Soudahmini E, Senthil GM, Panayappan L, Divakar MC (2005) Herbal remedies of Madugga tribes of Siruvani forest, South India. Nat Prod Rad 4:492–499. http://www.niscair.res.in/sciencecommunication/researchjournals/rejour/npr/npr2k5/npr_nov05.asp

de Souza JA, Correia MCR (2007) Floral biology of *Hedychium coronarium* Koen. (Zingiberaceae). Revista Brasleira de Horticultura Ornamental 13:21–30

Sridhar KR, Rajeev B (2007) Lotus—a potential nutraceutical source. J Agric Technol 3:143–155

Srinivasan VM, Jessy KK, Anand Alex EM (2008) Effect of *Sphaeranthus indicus* Linn. on gentamicin induced acute renal failure in rats. Indian J Pharmacol 40:71

Stough C, Lloyd J, Clarke J, Downey L, Hutchinson C, Rodgess T, Nathan P (2001) The chronic effects of an extract of Bacopa monniera (Brahmi) on cognitive function in healthy human subjects. Psychopharacol 156:481–484

Stuart GA (1979) Chinese materia medica, vegetable kingdom. Southern Materials Centre, Taipei

Su M, Li Y, Chung HY, Ye W (2009) 2β-(Isobutyryloxy)florilenalin, a sesquiterpene Lactone isolated from the medicinal plant *Centipeda minima*, induces apoptosis in human *Nasopharyngeal Carcinoma* CNE Cells. Molecules 14:2135–2146

Sudha S, Kumaresan S, Amit A, David J, Venkataraman BV (2002) Anti-convulsant activity of different extracts of Centella asiatica and Bacopa monnieri in animals. J Nat Remed 2:33–41

Suguna L, Sivakumar P, Chandrakasan G (1996) Effects of *Centella asiatica* extract on dermal wound healing in rats. Indian J Exp Biol 34:1208–1211

Sunilkumar, Parameshwaraiah S, Shivakumar HG (1998) Evaluation of topical formulations of aqueous extract of Centella asiatica on open wounds in rats. Indian J Exp Biol 36:569–572

Suresh V, Kumar RM, Suresh A, Kumar NS, Arunachalam G, Umasankar K (2010) CNS activity of ethanol extract of Wedelia chinensis in experimental animals. Int J Pharm Sci Nanotechnol 3:881–886

Swain PK, Dinda SC, Nayak DP, Kar B, Patro VJ (2012) Antioxidant activity of *Enhydra fluctuans* Lour. aerial parts. J Phytother Pharmacol 1:23–34

Swapna MM, Prakashkumar R, Anoop KP, Manju CN, Rajith NP (2011) A review on the medicinal and edible aspects of aquatic and wetland plants of India. J Med Plants Res 5:7163–7176

Tanaka Y, Nguyen VK (2007) Edible wild plants of Vietnam*:* the bountiful garden. Orchid Press, Bangkok, p 25

Taranhalli AD, Kadam AM, Karale SS, Warke YB (2011) Evaluation of antidiarrhoeal and wound healing potentials of Ceratophyllum demersum Linn. whole plant in rats. Latin Am J Pharm 30:297–303

Taylor RS, Towers GH (1998) Antibacterial constituents of Nepalese medicinal herb, *Centipeda minima*. Phytochemistry 47:631–634

Thirumalai T, Kelumalai E, Senthilkumar B, David E (2009) Ethnobotanical study of medicinal plants used by the local people in Vellore district, Tamilnadu, India. Ethnobot Leaflets 13:1302–1131

Tita DM, George, Monica GT (2009) Ethnobotanical inventory of medicinal plants from the South-West of Romania. Farmacia 57:141–156

Tiwari A, Saxena RC (2003) Repellent and feeding deterrent activity of *Sphaeranthus indicus* against *Tribolium castaneum*. Biores Bull 1:179–284

Tiwari BK, Khosa RL (2009) Hepatoprotective and antioxidant effects of *Sphaeranthus indicus* against acetaminophen induced hepatotoxicity in rats. J Pharma Sci Res 1:26–30

Tiwari OP, Bhattamisra SK, Singh PN, Kumar V (2009) Adaptogenic anti-stress activity of standardised extract of *Marsilea minuta* L. Pharmacol Online 1:290–299

Tiwari OP, Bhattamisra SK, Tripathi PK, Singh PN (2010) Anti-aggressive activity of a standardized extract of Marsilea minuta Linn. in rodent models of aggression. Biosci Trends 4(4):190–194

Toafa V et al (2001) Traditional Tongan medicine and the role of traditional Tongan healers in New Zealand. Pac Health Dialog 8:78–82

Tomita M, Furukawa H, Yang TH, Lin TJ (1965) On the alkaloids of *Nelumbo nucifera Gaertn.* Studies on the alkaloids of loti embryo. Structure of isoliensinine, a new biscoclaurine type alkaloid. Chem Pharm Bull 13:39

Tripathi P, Kumar R, Sharma AK, Mishra A, Gupta R (2010) *Pistia stratiotes* (Jalkhumbi). Pharmacog Rev 4:153–160

UCIPM (2017). Pennywort (*Hydrocotyle* sp.). http://ipm.ucanr.edu/PMG/WEEDS/pennywort.html

Uddin SJ, Ferdous MM, Rouf R (2011) Evaluation of anti-diarrheal activity of *Enhydra fluctuans*. Med Sci 5:324–327

Upreti K, Jalal JS, Tewari LM, Joshi GC, Pangtey YP, Tewari G (2009) Ethnomedicinal uses of pteridophytes of Kumaun Himalaya, Uttarakhand, India. J Am Sci 5:167–170

USDA (2014) GRIN taxonomy for plants, Taxon: *Persicaria hydropiper* (L.) Delarbre. USDA, Washington, DC

Usher G (1984) A dictionary of plants. CBS Publishers and Distributors, New Delhi

Vahitha SM (2012) Aphrodisiac activity of venthamarai magarantha chooranam (stamens of *Nelumbo nucifera* white variety) on healthy wister albino rats. Int J Life Sci Pharma Res 2:44–50

Van Valkenburg JLCH, Bunyapraphatsara N (2001) Medicinal and poisonous plants 2. Plant resources of South-East Asia. Backhuys Publishers, Leiden

Varsha J, Galani B, Patel BG, Rana DG (2010) *Sphaeranthus indicus* Linn.: a phytopharmacological review. Int J Ayurveda Res 1:247–253

Venkatesh B, Dorai A (2011) Antibacterial and antioxidant potential of white and pink *Nelumbo Nucifera* Gaertn flowers. IPCBEE 5:213–217

Venu Gopal Rao ML, Mastan SA (2007) Antidiabetic effects of methanolic extract of Centella asiatica (Linn.) on induced hyperglycemic rats. Biosci Biotechnol Res Asia 4:721–724

Verma A, Ahmed B (2009) Anti-hepatotoxic activity of *Nymphaea stellata* seeds in carbon tetrachloride induced toxicity. Indian J Nat Prod 5:1–4

Verma S, Singh N (2012) In vitro mass multiplication of *Acorus calamus* L.—an endangered medicinal plant. Am Euras J Agric Environ Sci 12:1514–1521

Vijayakumar M, Vijayakumar R, Stephen R (2010) In vitro propagation of *Bacopa monnieri* L.—a multipurpose plant. Indian J Sci Technol 3:781–786

Villasenor IM, Cabrera MA, Meneses KB, Rivera VR, Villasenor RM (1998) Comparative antidiabetic activities of some medicinal plants. Philippine J Sci 127:261–266

Vimalanathan S, Ignacimuthu S, Hudson JB (2009) Medicinal plants of Tamil Nadu (Southern India) are a rich source of antiviral activities. Pharma Biol 47:422–429

Vohora SB, Khanna T, Athar M (1997) Analgesic of activity of Bacoside a new triterpene isolated from *Bacopa monniera*. Fitoterapia 68:161–365

Vohora SB, Shah SA, Dandiya PC (1990) Central nervous system studies on an ethanol extract of *Acorus calamus* rhizomes. J Ethanopharmacol 28:53–62

Vysakh A, Raji NR, Latha MS, Jyothis M (2016) Traditional and therapeutic importance of *Rotula aquatica* Lour.: an overview. IJPPR Hum 7:97–107

Walter TM, Merish S, Tamizhamathu M (2014) Review of *Alternanthera Sessilis* with reference to traditional siddha medicine. Int J Pharmacog Phytochem Res 6:249–254

Wang JL, Nong Y, Jing MX (1993) Effects of liensinine on slow action potentials in myocardium and slow inward current in canine cardiac Purkinje fibers. Acta Pharm Sin 28:812–816

Wang XS, Dong Q, Zuo JP, Fang JN (2003) Structure and potential immunological activity of a pectin from *Centella asiatica* (L.) Urban. Carbohydr Res 338:2393–2402

Warren DM, Green EC (1982) The Techiman-Bono ethnomedical system. In: Yoder PS (ed) African health and healing systems. Crossroads Press, Los Angeles, CA, pp 85–105
WHO (2000) General guidelines for methodologies on research and evaluation of traditional medicine. World Health Organization, Geneva
WHO (2001) Legal status of traditional medicine and complementary/alternative medicine: a worldwide review. World Health Organization, Geneva
Wiart C (2006) Medicinal plants of Asia and the Pacific. CRC Press, New York
Wijeweera P, Arnason JT, Koszycki D, Merali Z (2006) Evaluation of anxiolytic properties of Gotukola—(*Centella asiatica*) extracts and asiaticoside in rat behavioral models. Phytomedicine 13:668–676
Wu HW, Wright CW, Cai Y, Yang SL, Phillipson JD, Kirby GC, Warhurst DC (1994) Antiprotozoal activities of *Centipeda minima*. Phytother Res 8:436–438
Wu JB, Chun TT, Ebizuka Y, Sankawa U (1985) Biologically active constituents of *Centipeda minima*: isolation of a new plenolin ester and the anti-allergy activity of sesquiterpene lactones. Chem Pharm Bull 33:4091–4094
Xiao JH, Zhang JH, Chen HL, Feng XL, Wang JL (2005) Inhibitory effect of isoliensinine on bleomycin induced pulmonary fibrosis in mice. Planta Med 71:225–230
Xiao JH, Zhang YL, Feng XL, Wang JL, Qian JQ (2006) Effects of isoliensinine on angiotensin II-induced proliferation of porcine coronary arterial smooth muscle cells. J Asian Nat Prod Res 8:209–216
Xiao PG, Wang NG (1991) Can ethnopharmacology contribute to the development of anti-fertility drugs. J Ethnopharmacol 32:167–177
Xubiao L, Chen B, Liu J, Yao S (2005) Simultaneous analysis of N-nornuciferine, O-nornuciferine, nuciferine, and roemerine in leaves of Nelumbo nucifera Gaertn by high-performance liquid chromatography–photodiode array detection–electrospray mass spectrometry. Anal Chim Acta, 538:129–133.
Yajima A, Yabuta G (2001) Synthesis and absolute configuration of MQ-A3 [1-(14 N-methylhexadecanoyl) pyrrolidine], a novel aliphatic pyrrolidine amide from the tropical *Convolvulaceae* species. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 65:463–465
Yamada K, Hung P, Park TK, Park PJ, Lim BO (2011) A comparison of the immunostimulatory effects of the medicinal herbs Echinacea, Ashwagandha and Brahmi. J Ethnopharmacol 137:231–235
Yang D, Wang Q, Ke L, Jiang J, Ying T (2007) Antioxidant activities of various extracts of lotus (*Nelumbo nuficera Gaertn*). Asia Pac J Clin Nutr 16:158–163
Yoosook C, Bunyapraphatsara N, Boonyakiat Y, Kantasuk C (2000) Anti-herpes simplex virus activities of crude water extracts of Thai medicinal plants. Phytomedicine 6:411–419
Yoshiki K, Aoshima A, Ikeshiro Y, Chen YP, Furukawa H, Itoigawa M, Fujioka T, Mihashi K, Cosentino LM, Morris SL, Lee KH (2005) Anti-HIV benzylisoquinoline alkaloids and flavonoids from the leaves of Nelumbo nucifera, and structure–activity correlations with related alkaloids. Bioorg Med Chem 13:443–444
Yu F, Yu F, McGuire P, Li R, Wang R (2007) Effects of Hydrocotyle sibthorpioides extract on transplanted tumors and immune function in mice. Phytomedicine 14:166–171
Yu HW, Wright CW, Cai Y, Yang SL, Phillipson JD, Kirby GC, Warhurst DC (1994) Antiprotozoal activities of *Centipeda minima*. Phytotherapy Res 8:436–438
Yu J, Hu WS (1997) Effects of neferine on platelet aggregation in rabbits. Acta Pharm Sin 32:1–4
Yusuf M, Begum J, Hoque MN, Chowdhury JU (2009) Medicinal plants of Bangladesh, 2nd edn. BCSIR Laboratories, Chittagong, p 599
Zaidan MT, Noor Rain A, Badrul AR, Adlin A, Norazah A, Zakiah I (2005) In vitro screening of five local medicinal plants for antibacterial activity using disc diffusion method. Trop Biomed 22:165–170
Zeller T, Muenstedt K, Stoll C, Schweder J, Senf B, Ruckhaeberle E, Becker S, Serve H, Huebner J (2013) Potential interactions of complementary and alternative medicine with cancer therapy

in outpatients with gynecological cancer in a comprehensive cancer center. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 139:357–365
Zhang LJ, Yeh SF, Yu YT, Kuo LMY, Kuo YH (2011) Antioxidative flavonol glucuronides and AntiHBsAg flavonol from *Rotala rotundifolia*. J Tradit Complement Med 1:576
Zhang YH (2000) A collection of anticancer Chinese medicines. Jiangsu Science and Technology Publishing House, Nanjing, p 435
Zhuang X (2011) *Ottelia alismoides*. The IUCN Red List of threatened species

Flavonoids and Their Biological Secrets

M. I. Rashid, M. I. Fareed, H. Rashid, H. Aziz, N. Ehsan, S. Khalid, I. Ghaffar, R. Ali, A. Gul, and Khalid Rehman Hakeem

Introduction

Flavonols

3-Hydroxy flavones or flavonols, one major subclass of flavonoids, are poly-aromatic secondary plant metabolites. Their structure consists of general three-ring backbone of flavonoids, i.e., rings A, B, and C. Flavones are classified as flavanones when there is a hydroxyl group attached to the 3-position of C ring. Structures of flavonol and flavone molecules are shown in the figure.

In higher plants, flavonols are present in glycosylated form; most abundant are the *O*-glycosides. The sugar residues commonly found in flavonols are glucose, galactose, rhamnose, and glucuronic acid. Glycosylation is reported at 3-, 7-, 3-, and 4′-positions (Table 1).

Flavonols are present in various parts of plants including leaves, fruits, and vegetables. Among different plants tested for flavonols, their highest concentration was found in strawberry (*Fragaria* spp.), peepal (*Ficus religiosa*), spinach (*Spinacia oleracea*), and cauliflower (*Brassica oleracea*) (Sultana and Anwar 2008). Like

M. I. Rashid · M. I. Fareed · H. Rashid · H. Aziz · N. Ehsan · S. Khalid · A. Gul (✉)
Atta-ur-Rahman School of Applied Biosciences (ASAB), National University of Sciences and Technology (NUST), Islamabad, Pakistan
e-mail: alvina_gul@asab.nust.edu.pk

I. Ghaffar
University College of Pharmacy (UCP), University of the Punjab, Lahore, Pakistan

R. Ali
Institute of Basic Medical Sciences, Khyber Medical University, Peshawar, Pakistan

K. R. Hakeem
Department of Biological Sciences, Faculty of Science, King Abdulaziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_24

Table 1 The relative substitutions among the 15 different flavonoids discussed in the paper

Sr.#	Flavonols	Position								
		2′	3′	4′	5′	3	5	6	7	8
1	3-Hydroxyflavone	H	H	H	OH	H	H	H	H	H
2	Azaleatin	H	OH	OH	H	OH	OCH_3	H	OH	H
3	Fisetin	H	H	OH	OH	OH	H	H	OH	H
4	Galangin	H	H	H	H	OH	OH	H	OH	H
5	Gossypetin	H	OH	OH	H	OH	OH	H	OH	OH
6	Isorhamnetin	H	OCH_3	OH	H	OH	OH	H	OH	H
7	Kaempferide	H	H	OCH_3	H	OH	OH	H	OH	H
8	Kaempferol	H	H	OH	H	OH	OH	H	OH	H
9	Morin	OH	H	OH	H	OH	OH	H	OH	H
10	Myricetin	H	OH	OH	OH	OH	OH	H	OH	H
11	Natsudaidain	H	H	OCH_3	OCH_3	OH	OCH_3	OCH_3	OCH_3	OCH_3
12	Pachypodol	H	H	OH	OCH_3	OCH_3	OH	H	OCH_3	H
13	Quercetin	H	OH	OH	H	OH	OH	H	OH	H
14	Rhamnazin	H	OCH_3	OH	H	OH	OH	H	OCH_3	H
15	Rhamnetin	H	OH	OH	H	OH	OH	H	OCH_3	H

other flavonoids, flavonols are most apparent antioxidant in higher plants. Antioxidative activity of flavonols has been shown experimentally to prevent nuclear DNA damage by hydrogen peroxide in plants (Melidou et al. 2005). Studies on *Arabidopsis* plant have shown that flavonols are involved in providing protection to plant leaves against oxidative damage due to excessive visible radiation (Havaux and Kloppstech 2001). They are also involved in providing defense against fungal infection to plant leaves (Treutter 2006).

Despite their role in plant survival, biological activities of flavonols also contribute to human health. Antiviral activities of flavonoids were discovered in the first half of the twentieth century. Hydroxyl group at 3-position makes flavonols more effective against herpes simplex virus type 1 than flavones (Cody et al. 1986; Selway 1986). Anti-inflammatory response of flavonol has also been reported on animal models for both chronic and acute inflammation (Lee et al. 1993). Flavonols also involved in antithrombogenic effect by preventing platelet aggregation (Gryglewski et al. 1987).

Fisetin

Fisetin is a special class of flavonoid compounds defined as 3,3′,4′,7-tetrahydroxyflavone, 6-desoxyquercetin, and fisidenolon; its empirical formula is $C_{15}H_{10}O_6$. In plants it is present as glycoside fisetin-8-glucoside. Chemically it is defined as -(3,4-dihydroxyphenyl)-3,7-dihydroxy-4*H*-1-benzopyran-one and 3,3′,4,7-tetrahydroxy-2-phenylchromen-4-one. Fisetin usually is found in plants as the glycoside fisetin-8-glucoside.

It is a basic 15-carbon structure also known as diphenylpropane molecule having two aromatic rings which is linked through three carbon atoms. Flavonoids make difference because of the saturation of the heteroatomic ring C, in place of B at position C-2 or C-3 of ring C and throughout patterns of methoxylation (Nijveldt et al. 2001).

Biological Properties

Natural polyphenolic compounds including flavonoids are present in fruits, vegetables, and some beverages (Aherne and O'Brien 2002). They have role in pharmaceutics and have the potential of treating cancer and heart diseases (Havsteen 2002; Hill et al. 1989; Lopez-Lazaro 2002; Middleton et al. 2000; Monasterio et al. 2004). It has been discovered that few flavonoids have also a role in the organization of cytoskeleton especially in the assembly of tubulin.

According to the reported data, fisetin is the most active member of flavonoid compounds and shows a role in the modification of morphology of endothelial cells that is related to the stabilization of microtubule and to the α-tubulin acetylation which is known to be a distinctive marker for the stabilization of tubulin. Such type of presented data has been useful for us in the selection of food which has such type of active flavonoids acting against cancer and other diseases.

Flavonoid compounds showed responses against inflammation, allergy, and bacterial infection (Melgarejo et al. 2007; Middleton et al. 2000; Williams and Grayer 2004). Fisetin is an important class of flavonoid compounds found in a variety of fruits and vegetables which is responsible for decreasing the process of degranulation of mast cells (Arai et al. 2000).

It has been discovered that fisetin has a role in the differentiation of nerve cells and also protects them from death due to oxidative stress (Ishige et al. 2001; Sagara et al. 2004). It has been studied that fisetin possesses also the properties of antiaging. Fisetin has also a role in rising the serotonin and non-adrenaline levels in the brain which results in the production of effect against depression (Zhen et al. 2012).

Fisetin also has a role in the promotion of growth and maintenance of nerve cells without the help of neurotropic factors. These are important factors because if those factors are removed, it will result in the death of nerve cells. In the absence of those factors, fisetin is invovled promotion of growth and survival of nerve cells (Maher 2006, 2008).

NF-kappa B pathway plays an important role in inflammation which results in the progression of cancer. Fisetin and some other flavonoids perform an important role in the suppression of numerous inflammatory pathways most importantly NF-kappa B pathway which is important in many remedies against cancer (Gupta et al. 2010; Prasad et al. 2010; Sung et al. 2007).

Fisetin has also a role in the prevention of Huntington's disease which is an important neurodegenerative disorder affecting various brain functions (Maher et al. 2011a). Wnt signaling pathway has an important role in the proliferation and

progression of cancer; fisetin compound performs function in inhibition of this pathway (Teiten et al. 2012).

It has been studied that fisetin performs function against pulmonary inflammation infection, against asthma specifically doing by downregulation of NF-kappa B pathway (Wu et al. 2011). Many other flavonoids including fisetin decrease the activation of mast cell which reduces the histamine level as a result of which inhibition of many allergies occurs. Because when mast cells become active, they tend to secrete histamine and many other pro-inflammatory compounds (Park et al. 2008).

Fisetin makes the high expression of glyoxalase 1 which is an important enzyme and plays a significant role in the exclusion of substances and reducing the levels of glycated proteins responsible for diabetes (Maher et al. 2011b). In contrast if the expression of glyoxalase 1 becomes low, it leads to the increased level of glycation and complications in diabetes (Miyata et al. 2001).

Also by decreasing the secretion of glucose from the liver, fisetin hinders the hyperglycemia which is induced due to the glucose secretion from the liver (Constantin et al. 2010).

Galangin

Galangin is an important class of flavonoid compounds; they are found in honey, propolis, *Helichrysum aureonitens*, and *Alpinia officinarum* in greater amount. This compound has an important role in pharmaceutics; also it performs function against oxidation, against mutations, and against cancer (Cushnie and Lamb 2006; Gwak et al. 2011; Heo et al. 2001).

It has three hydroxyl groups on its carbon ring, and it has the capability of enzyme modulation and can decrease the chemical toxicity (Chen et al. 2008). It has been reported earlier that galangin has a role in the inhibition of aryl hydrocarbon receptor; in organisms these compounds are also involved in certain biological activities at nontoxic levels (Murray et al. 2006).

Biological Properties

By using the agar dilution assay, it was studied that galangin also showed its activity against the 17 strains of *Staphylococcus aureus* species which was resistant against quinolone. In a specific strain when there is a change in the amino acid in the GrlB subunit of topoisomerase IV, it results in its increase receptiveness toward galangin. Therefore topoisomerase IV enzyme plays an important role in the function of galangin against bacterial infection (Cushnie 2006).

The activity of galangin was also discovered against 17 strains of *Campylobacter jejuni* and several gram-positive and gram-negative strains, but the highest galangin activity was found against the 17 strains of *Campylobacter jejuni* (Campana et al. 2009).

In colorectal and liver cancer, the transcriptional process of beta-catenin is increased; galangin reduces its transcription by the elimination of beta-catenin inside the cell. This compound also decreases the levels of beta-catenin by making the mutations inactive of adenomatous polyposis coli (Gwak et al. 2011).

According to the in vivo and in vitro studies, it has been reported that galangin has the capability of performing functions in the regulation of enzyme activity and in decreasing the toxic effect of chemicals and against oxidation (Heo et al. 2001). Galangin has been found in liposomes; these liposomes have been analyzed for their activities against oxidation, and results have showed that liposomes which have greater concentration of galangin have more antioxidative activity (Landi-Librandi et al. 2011).

The effect of galangin was studied in rat liver which was fed on fructose; the high expression of plasma glucose, triglycerides, and insulin was prohibited by galangin; and furthermore it also increases the sensitivity of insulin, while galangin also plays an important role in decreasing the expression of cytokines. It also prohibited the high translocation of NF-kappa B (Sivakumar and Anuradha 2011).

HPLC and MS have been used in finding the quantification of galangin in biological samples, and results showed that these compounds are aggregated more in the nucleus than cytoplasm (Mukai et al. 2009). According to chromatographic studies, galangin is also available in propolis of *Lactobacillus fermentum* (Saavedra et al. 2011). It has been discovered after the analysis of seven different types of Slovenian honey that it contains the greater amount of galangin (Bertoncelj et al. 2011).

Extracts of different plants have galangin which is considered to be the most active compound (Yang et al. 2011b). Concentration of polyphenol in fruits and leaves of *Ficus carica* has shown the occurrence of galangin as a major constituent (El-Shobaki et al. 2010).

By using the technique of HPLC, seven different phenolic components were discovered in bee pollen sample, among which galangin was the most active and also galangin was found in different fruits which were taken from Italy (Grippi et al. 2007; Šarić et al. 2009). Galangin was also discovered from the 120 samples of Chinese propolis which were detected by using the fingerprint method (Chen et al. 2008).

Galangin was significantly found in the chemical composition of propolis which was taken from arid and semiarid areas of Sonora, Mexico, Europe, China, and Argentina (Gardana et al. 2007). Galangin was also found from the extracts of apple and parsley (Abdel-Rahim and El-Beltagi 2010).

Gossypin

Gossypin (3,3′,4′,5,7-pentahydroxy-8-*O*-glucosylflavone) is a flavonol and a derivative of gossypetin. It is a monoglucoside. On complete methylation and hydrolysis, it gives an *O*-pentamethyl gossypetin (Rao and Seshadri 1946b). The presence of

glucose moiety in the eighth position of hexahydroxyflavone makes it water soluble (Gautam and Vijayaraghavan 2007).

It was initially extracted from *Gossypium indicum* (Neelakantam and Seshadri 1936). However, the species *Gossypium indicum* did not yield sufficient amount of gossypin to carry out further experimentation. It was then found out that *Hibiscus vitifolius* was a rich source of gossypin (Rao and Seshadri 1946a). A detailed study of the structure and function of the flavonol has been carried out since.

Biological Properties

Major focus of today's research is finding a cure for cancer. To avoid the harms of chemotherapy and radiotherapy, scientists now look toward natural products with higher efficacy and fewer side effects. In this regard, the anticancer activity of gossypin has been investigated by many researchers. A study by Babu et al. (2003) demonstrated the anticarcinogenic activity of the bioflavonoid gossypin against the carcinogens such as DMBA which causes skin papillomas in mouse. Moreover it was shown to decrease the tumor burden in solid tumors and inhibition of angiogenesis. The antitumor activity of gossypin is attributed somewhat to its ability to inhibit the key enzymes in DNA replication, the topoisomerase I and II (Babu et al. 2003). In another study conducted on human glioma, U251 cells treated with gossypin showed promising results. Gossypin caused cell cycle arrest at G2/M phase involving the phosphorylation of cell division cycle 25C (Cdc25C) tyrosine phosphatase through the stimulation of checkpoint kinase 1 (Chk1) (Shi et al. 2012). Additionally gossypin has been found to block cell multiplication in L929, HT29, and K562 tumor cell lines in vitro (Babu et al. 2003). Another possible mechanism underlying anti-tumorigenic capability of gossypin was demonstrated by Kunnumakkara et al. (2007). They analyzed the effect of gossypin on NF-kappa B, a master regulator involved in inflammation, carcinogenesis, hyper-proliferation, invasion, and angiogenesis. The results supported the hypothesis of possible NF-kappa B inhibition by gossypin (Kunnumakkara et al. 2007).

Gossypin's role as a potent antioxidant was examined in a study involving lead toxicity. Lead is known to cause generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS) and destruction of antioxidant reserves in the body (Patrick 2006; Silbergeld et al. 2000). Gautam et al. demonstrated the significance of co-administrating gossypin during lead exposure. They concluded that gossypin prevents lead-induced oxidative stress by chelating lead, stimulating the enzymes involved in protecting antioxidant reserves, and by inducing delta-aminolevulinic acid dehydratase, which is primarily targeted by lead (Gautam and Flora 2010).

Not only gossypin is effective in its antitumor activities, but its potential role in alleviating many other pathologies is also under consideration. Many of the current orally administrated hypoglycemic drugs for the treatment of diabetes mellitus induce harmful side effects. A study was conducted to evaluate the antidiabetic effect of gossypin in streptozotocin (STZ)-induced experimental diabetes in rats.

Results revealed a strong antidiabetic activity of gossypin against STZ-induced experimental diabetes (Venkatesan and Sorimuthu Pillai 2012).

Epilepsy is a set of neurological disorders characterized by recurrent or single seizures accompanied by alterations in the brain (Chang and Lowenstein 2003; Fisher et al. 2005). To avoid the drug interactions caused by the many antiepileptic drugs, researchers are investigating natural alternatives with fewer side effects. In this pursuit, gossypin was used in a set of experiments to evaluate its anticonvulsant activity. The results obtained emphasized the importance of gossypin against convulsions probably by influencing the GABA aminergic and glycine inhibitory mechanism (Rasilingam et al. 2008).

Mast cell degranulation and release of histamines and other inflammatory cytokines underlie severe allergic reactions. Gossypin was shown to inhibit anaphylaxis in a rat model of allergy (Ganapaty et al. 2010). The anti-inflammatory activity of gossypin is thought to be the consequence of inhibition of arachidonic acid breakdown through blocking of the cyclooxygenase and lipoxygenase enzymes (Ferrandiz and Alcaraz 1991). Gossypin also has a potent effect against sulfur mustard (SM), a blistering agent, possibly through its anti-inflammatory action (Gautam and Vijayaraghavan 2007).

Gossypin has also been shown to relieve pain in mice, acting as an analgesic possibly through the induction of opiate receptors (Viswanathan et al. 1984).

Isorhamnetin

Isorhamnetin (3′-methoxy-3,4′,5,7-tetrahydroxyflavone) is an *O*-methylated flavonol occurring naturally in plants but is also a metabolic product of quercetin(isorhamnetin is methylated quercetin) (phytochemicals.info). It can be extracted from *Tagetes lucida* (Bohm and Stuessy 2001). It is mostly found in fruits and medicinal herbs (Kim et al. 2011). Isorhamnetin is a metabolite of quercetin, a widely distributed natural flavonol (Anderson 2004).

Biological Properties

Isorhamnetin has found its promising role in treatment of various diseases such as cardiovascular disorders, rheumatism, and hemorrhage (Gupta et al. 2010; Ma et al. 2007a; Suomela et al. 2006). Isorhamnetin is known to have cardiovascular effects. Isorhamnetin and its parent compound quercetin caused endothelium-independent vasodilatation in the aorta, mesenteric arteries, portal vein, and porcine coronary arteries of rat (Ibarra et al. 2002).

Anti-inflammatory activity of isorhamnetin was observed in murine RAW264.7. Analysis was performed based on the expression of pro-inflammatory markers in lipopolysaccharide-stimulated murine macrophages (Boesch-Saadatmandi et al.

2011). The possible way by which isorhamnetin blocks inflammation is not yet clear; however the study by Boesch-Saadatmandi et al. suggested the inhibition of NF-kappa B to have a significant role in this regard (Boesch-Saadatmandi et al. 2011).

A derivative of isorhamnetin, isorhamnetin 3-*O* neohesperidoside (I3ON), has potential antioxidant activity and protective capability against DNA damage caused by hydroxyl free radical (Bouhlel et al. 2009).

Osteoporosis is mainly attributed to estrogen deficiency in postmenopausal women (Richelson et al. 1984). Different flavonols were examined for their estrogen receptor agonist activity. Isorhamnetin along with other flavonols under study exhibited stimulatory activity for estrogen receptors, thereby producing the required osteogenic effects (Yang et al. 2011a).

Isorhamnetin has been found useful in treating obesity as it has an anti-adipogenic action. Differentiation of human adipose tissue-derived stem cells into adipocytes is controlled in different ways. Wnt signaling, being one of the chief regulatory mechanisms in the differentiation process, is targeted by isorhamnetin mainly by the stabilization of β-catenin (Lee et al. 2010).

As for the role of isorhamnetin in cancer, it is shown to exert antitumor activity. One of the possible mechanisms for this anticancerous activity was delineated by Kim et al. (2011) in a study of skin cancer. In this study isorhamnetin blocked epidermal growth factor (EGF)-induced neoplastic cell transformation by suppressing the expression of COX-2 protein. COX-2 is a major inflammatory mediator and exerts pro-tumorigenic activity (Méric et al. 2006). Furthermore it exerted a negative effect on anchorage-dependent and anchorage-independent growth of A431 human epithelial carcinoma cell line (Kim et al. 2011). Many other evidences support isorhamnetin's role in reducing cell growth and weight and size of tumors (Ma et al. 2007a; Steffen et al. 2008). Another set of experiments revealed antitumor role of isorhamnetin by inhibition of the cell cycle protein, farnesyl protein transferase (FPTase) (Oh et al. 2005). Previously, quercetin was shown to be a potent anticancer agent, but newer studies have signified the increased potential of isorhamnetin an effective anticancer entity. Such isorhamnetin showed elevated levels of cytotoxicity against cancerous cells as compared to quercetin. It induces necrosis and apoptosis in human colon cancer cell line (HCT-116) (Jaramillo et al. 2010). Moreover in another research aflatoxin B1 (AFB1)-mediated oxidative stress was lessened considerably by isorhamnetin more than quercetin in hepatocellular carcinoma cells (Choi et al. 2010).

Isorhamnetin was shown to reduce proliferation and stimulate apoptosis in gastric cancer. These functions were mediated through the activation of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors (PPAR-γ) which is known to be involved in promoting tumorigenesis in gastric cancer. The results by Ramachandran et al. provide a strong basis for establishment of combination therapy involving the use of isorhamnetin to reduce the side effects and enhance treatment efficacy for gastric cancer (Ramachandran et al. 2012).

Kaempferol/Kaempferide

3,5,7-Trihydroxy-2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-4*H*-1-benzopyran-4-one kaempferol is a class of flavonol compounds (Calderon-Montano et al. 2011). It is abundantly found in edible plants and one of the most important flavonoid compounds (Miean and Mohamed 2001a). These plants include tea (Park et al. 2006a), broccoli (Calderon-Montano et al. 2011), cabbage (Calderon-Montano et al. 2011), and strawberries (Calderon-Montano et al. 2011; Hakkinen et al. 1999), and other dietary plants (Calderon-Montano et al. 2011). Previously during epidemiological research, it has been observed that these dietary plants also used for human health betterment and during various preclinical and clinical trials have revealed that kaempferol-rich diet overcomes the human malignancy development (Kim et al. 2003). Many naturally occurring glycosides of kaempferol are extracted from different plants. These glycosides are kaempferitrin (kaempferol 3,7-dirhamnoside) (Vishnu Prasad et al. 2009), astragalin (Wei et al. 2011), afzelin (kaempferol 3-rhamnoside) (Markham et al. 1992), kaempferol 7-*O*-glucoside (Ibrahim et al. 2008), robinin (kaempferol-3-*O*-robinoside-7-*O*-rhamnoside) (March et al. 2004), sophoraflavonoloside (kaempferol 3-*O*-sophoroside) (Kim et al. 2012), and trifolin (kaempferol-3-*O*-galactoside) (Nowak and Wolbis 2002). Kaempferol-3-*O*-β-D-glucopyranoside-7-*O*-α-L-rhamnopyranoside is one of the most bitter-tasting glycoside compounds and has been isolated from the methanolic plants (Gohar et al. 2000; Ragasa et al. 2005). During the metabolism process by the activity of enzyme transferase, these flavonoid kaempferol compounds can transfer the product of kaempferol and *S*-adenosyl methionine to kaempferide (Calderon-Montano et al. 2011; Curir et al. 2001). Kaempferide is defined as 4′-*O*-methylkaempferol which is also included in chemical flavonoid compound (Curir et al. 2001). These isolated flavonoid and chemical compounds have an antimicrobial (Yang et al. 2010), antioxidant (Choi et al. 2013), anticancer (Calderon-Montano et al. 2011), neuroprotective (Filomeni et al. 2012), antidiabetic (Habtemariam 2011), immunomodulatory (Kim et al. 2008), anti-osteoporotic, antiestrogenic (Oh et al. 2006), anxiolytic (Vissiennon et al. 2012), analgesic (Tsiklauri et al. 2011), and anti-allergic activities (Kim et al. 2008). Therefore naturally occurring plants are usually used as medicinal plants and for pharmaceutical products. The study of immunopharmacological properties of these plants has clearly shown the result to inhibit the cell growth, oxidative low-density lipoprotein (LDLP) suppression, viral inhibition, and reduction of apoptosis and strengthen the immune system (Kim et al. 2008). Kaempferol and kaempferide are developed by the metabolic activities of bioactive plants and are agents to treat many disorders (Kim et al. 2008). *Ginkgo biloba*, *Moringa oleifera*, *Equisetum* spp., *Tilia* spp., propolis, and *Sophora japonica* are the species of medicinal productivity (Calderon-Montano et al. 2011). For the cure of free radical damages and different infectious diseases, these pharmacokinetics species have often been utilized (Calderon-Montano et al. 2011). It was indicated that kaempferol compound in plants can be used as an agent of chemo-protection (Chen and Chen 2013). Recently it was observed that hypertension stress that associated with cardiac risks

has been suppressed by the consumption of this anticancer compound in tea and broccoli(Calderon-Montano et al. 2011). It has been concluded that kaempferol also plays a vital role to overcome the inflammatory response (Choi et al. 2013). Kaempferol also suppresses the translational activity of particular protein that may help to inhibit the growth of inflammatory lesions (Choi et al. 2013). Kaempferol has been isolated from *B. pinnatum* which is a medicinal herb used as drug for the antimicrobial activity (Tatsimo et al. 2012). It also inhibits the aggregation of the foam-producing cells, and these foam-producing cells increase the low-density lipoprotein oxidation (Li et al. 2013). These naturally occurring compounds are also used to eliminate cholesterol and lipids from macrophages (Li et al. 2013). Therefore it can reduce the effect of atherosclerotic disorder (Li et al. 2013) and toxicity of neurodegenerative Parkinson's disease (Filomeni et al. 2012). Secondary glycosidic metabolites of kaempferoid have the ability to develop products like kaempferol as anticancer, antioxidant, and anti-glycine (Al-Musayeib et al. 2011). While these metabolites not only target the tumorous cells but are also capable of minimizing the side effects of the combination of both radio- and chemotherapies (Al-Musayeib et al. 2011). Productivity of kaempferol and phytochemically active compound kaempferide has a key importance to act as antiestrogenic property (Hung 2004). Photochemicals inhibit the estrogen and progesterone receptors to control the proliferation of inflammatory cancerous cells (Frigo et al. 2002). Kaempferide has structural capability to suppress the attack of fungal infections (Curir et al. 2001). It was hypothesized that kaempferol reduces the effect of vascular endothelial growth factor receptors too. VEGF receptor increases the risk of ovarian cancer; it can be controlled by taking dietary fruits and vegetables having flavonoid products (Luo et al. 2010). In vivo investigations induced the role of flavonoid kaempferide acting as an antioxidant to treat the liver patients by the use of isoforms such as P450 (Otake and Walle 2002). Another side in vitro studies show that kaempferide has anti-plasmodium and antimalarial activity against the strains of *Plasmodium falciparum* (De Monbrison et al. 2006). Therefore in this study it was analyzed that naturally occurring flavonol and chemically active compounds can be used as therapeutic agents. These therapeutic products play an important role to save human life and suppress the activity of various infectious diseases with the help of development of these compounds.

These plants include tea (Park et al. 2006b), broccoli, cabbage (Calderon-Montano et al. 2011), and strawberries (Häkkinen et al. 1999; Calderon-Montano et al. 2011). These isolated flavonoid and chemical compounds have an antimicrobial (Yang et al. 2010), antioxidant (Choi et al. 2013), anticancer (Calderon-Montano et al. 2011), neuroprotective (Filomeni et al. 2012), antidiabetic (Habtemariam 2011), immunomodulatory (Kim et al. 2008), anti-osteoporotic, antiestrogenic (Oh et al. 2006), anxiolytic (Vissiennon et al. 2012), analgesic (Tsiklauri et al. 2011), and anti-allergic activities (Kim et al. 2008). Therefore in this study it was analyzed that naturally occurring flavonoid and chemically active compounds can be used as therapeutic agents. These therapeutic products play an important role to save human life and suppress the activity of various infectious diseases with the help of development of these compounds.

Rhamnetin and Rhamnazin

Rhamnetin is also one of the chemical *O*-methylated flavonoid compounds (Ozipek et al. 1994; Yun et al. 2000). It was recognized as rhamnetin 3-*O*-[3‴″-*O*-(*p*-coumaroyl)-alpha-L-rhamnopyranosyl(1→3)-alpha-L-rhamnopyranosyl(1→6)]-beta-D-galactopyranoside (Ozipek et al. 1994). It can be isolated from various plant sources such as cloves, green vegetables, and fruits (Yun et al. 2000). Chemical structure of this natural compound has been discovered by Austrian chemist Josef Herzig. Basically this molecule having flavonol nuclei consisted of two benzene rings (Zhen et al. 2012). And these rings have been combined by O_2-containing pyran rings as shown in Fig. 1 (Zhen et al. 2012).

Biological Properties

Rhamnazin was synthesized through the activity of enzyme 3-methylquercetin 7-*O*-methyltransferase (Khouri et al. 1988; Ozipek et al. 1994). This transferase enzyme uses *S*-adenosyl methionine and isorhamnetin to produce *S*-adenosylhomocysteine and rhamnazin (Khouri et al. 1988). Basically rhamnazin is known as 3,5-dihydroxy-2-(4-hydroxy-3-methoxyphenyl)-7-methoxychromen-4-one (Khouri et al. 1988). It is also the naturally occurring 3′,7-dimethylquercetin flavonoid compound (Joe et al. 2010). Like other naturally occurring chemical compounds, rhamnetin and rhamnazin also have anticancerous (Lee et al. 2011; Ma et al. 2012), antioxidant (Pande 2001), and anti-infectious activities (Ahmed et al. 2001), etc. The *O*-methylated flavonoid compounds are chemically methylated on hydroxyl groups. Chemical formation of this methoxy bond is difficult because methoxylation is possible in any position of molecule (Lee et al. 2011). So the usage of specific enzyme *O*-methyltransferase plays an important role which interacts substrate on specific position of molecule (Mattarei et al. 2010). That enzyme implies the *O*-methylation on a specific hydroxyl (3-OH) position. Multile hydroxal functional groups greatly contribute towards the therapeutic potential of polyphenols (Mattarei et al. 2010). In the metabolism these substrate molecules are rapidly being converted into sulfates, glucuronides, and methyl ethers (Biasutto et al. 2007;

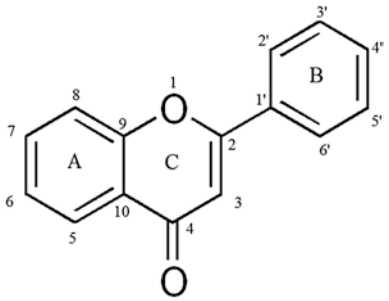


Fig. 1 Core structure of flavonols

Mattarei et al. 2010). The effect of *O*-methylation depends on the solubility of flavonoids (Mattarei et al. 2010). In vivo experiments induced that chemical modification of these molecules were to enhance the solubility effect while reduces the metabolic effects to provide the low bioavailability of polyphenols (Biasutto et al. 2007; Manach et al. 2005; Silberberg et al. 2006; Williamson and Manach 2005). These studies observed the overall survival of polyphenol OHs (Mattarei et al. 2010). As shown in Fig. 1, structurally rhamnetin is a monoethyl ether of quercetin while rhamnazin is identified as quercetin dimethyl ether (Martini et al. 2004). Therapeutic potential could be attributed to functional groups i.e. C-ring of 3′-hydroxyl and 4′-hydroxyl groups contribute towards redox activity (Metodiewa et al. 1999), while 3-OH act as inhibitor (Sarno et al. 2002). On the other hand, 7-OH and 5-OH are having weak and less acidic activity because of intramolecular hydrogen bonding to the 4-carbon of carbonyl compound (Van Dijk et al. 2000). This study reports that acetylated 3-OH bond has enzymatic activity and is used as protective chemical reaction of catecholic OHs (Mattarei et al. 2010). They also suggest that this mitochondrial-targeted compound has a free OH at the specific 3-position (Mattarei et al. 2010).

Quercetin

Quercetin is one of the major dietary flavonoids. It is present in various plant parts including fruits, vegetables, and beans. Although exact concentration of quercetin in food stuff is not known, it is estimated that it makes 50% of the total dietary flavonoids. Depending on various factors including plant varieties, growth conditions, processing, etc., quercetin content may vary, but onions are experimentally shown to have highest concentrations of quercetin, i.e., about 200–600 mg/kg.

Quercetin contains five hydroxyl residues which are responsible for its activity and possible derivatives. Quercetin has two main groups of derivatives, i.e., glycosides and ethers. Some quercetin derivatives also contain sulfate and prenyl substituents but they are less frequent (Williams and Grayer 2004).

Quercetin *O*-glycosides are widely distributed in plants. They may either contain one or two *O*-glycoside residues. The most common derivative is quercetin 3-*O*-glycosides which contain OH-group at C-3 carbon. The commonly found sugar residues in quercetin 3-*O*-glycoside derivatives include glucose, galactose, rhamnose, and xylose. Another derivative is quercetin 7-*O*-glucoside which contains glucose residue at the hydroxyl group of C-7 carbon (Chang and Wong 2004).

Quercetin ethers make the second major group of quercetin derivatives. They may contain up to five ether bonds along with other substituents such as sugar residues and alkyl groups. Quercetin molecules are lipophilic but become hydrophilic by the glycosidation of at least one OH-group (Materska 2008).

Biological Properties

Quercetin is an ubiquitous antioxidant and is shown beneficial in maintaining good health. Quercetin acts as anticancer agent by regulating cell cycle human breast cancer MCF-7 cells (Chou et al. 2010). Antiviral activity of quercetin has been reported against various viral trains along with other flavonoids (Cody et al. 1986). Pharmacologic effects of quercetin in various diseases including neurodegenerative disorders, cardiovascular diseases, inflammation, bacterial and fungal infections, and liver disorders have also been reported (Tanwar and Modgil 2012).

Morin

Morin (2′,3,4′,5,7-pentahydroxyflavone) is a yellow-colored naturally occurring substance in *Maclura tinctoria* (old fustic) and *Maclura pomifera* (Osage orange) wood and from *Psidium guajava* (common guava) leaves (Rattanachaikunsopon and Phumkhachorn 2007). By the circular dichroism spectrum, the change in both confirmations after the binding of morin with high affinity to site II (subdomain IIIA) of bovine serum albumin (BSA) has been observed (Hu et al. 2012).

Morin having comparatively high bimolecular rate constant (k_2) value for its interaction with the 1,4-dinitrobenzene (1,4-DNB) electrochemical system presents to its less intermolecular hydrogen bonding and more acidic nature (Arshad et al. 2012). Circular dichroism (CD) and UV-vis spectroscopy results showed that the binding of bovine serum albumin (BSA) to morin and other flavonol compounds induces some conformational changes in BSA (Shahabadi and Mohammadpour 2012).

Biological Properties

Morin is known to have the antihypertensive and antioxidant effects in deoxycorticosterone acetate (DOCA)-salt-induced hypertension in rats (Prahalathan et al. 2012a, b). Morin has found its role in the treatment of many diseases. A significant interaction of flavonoid drug or flavonoid xenobiotic has been observed during test regarding to b5 reductase inhibition that shows a promising role in therapeutic and toxicological outcomes for certain drugs and xenobiotic (Çelik and Koşar 2012; Çelik et al. 2013). In cases of colon cancer and hepatocellular carcinoma, 3,5,7,2′,4′-pentahydroxyflavone has been observed to possess chemopreventive potential in animal models. Antiproliferative and anticarcinogenic effects also have been determined against 7,12-dimethylbenz(*a*)-anthracene (DMBA)-induced experimental mammary carcinogenesis (Nandhakumar et al., 2012). In tumor cells, downregulation of STAT3-dependent hemosensitization and gene expression was led by the suppression of the signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (STAT3) pathway after the application of morin (Gupta et al. 2012).

Morin inhibited the expression of matrix metalloproteinase-3 (MMP-3) and matrix metalloproteinase-13 (MMP-13), and it also has increased the expression of tissue inhibitors of metalloproteinase-1 (TIMP-1) in interleukin-1β (IL-1β) which induced rat chondrocytes (Chen et al. 2012a). Morin has decreased in asymmetric dimethylarginine (ADMA) level, while dimethylarginine dimethylaminohydrolase (DDAH) activity in the liver was significantly higher in rats (Merwid-Ląd et al. 2013). Morin is also been reported to be indirectly involved in insuline signalling and functionality (Paoli et al. 2013).

In vivo study in murine model, for osteoarthritis (OA) induced by anterior cruciate ligament transection (ACLT), the results clearly indicated suppression of cartilage degradation by orally administered morin. So morin has been observed to be used for the treatment of osteoarthritis (OA) as therapeutic agent (Chen et al. 2012a). Human inhibits the formation of amyloid by hydrate of morin (2′,3,4′,5,7-pentahyd roxyflavone). The polypeptide hormone islet amyloid polypeptide (IAPP, amylin) and disaggregates preformed IAPP amyloid fibers observed under right-angle light scattering and transmission electron microscopy (TEM) (Noor et al. 2012). Nitric oxide (NO) and prostaglandin E2 (PGE-2) production was inhibited by morin as well as the expression of inducible NO synthase (iNOS) and cyclooxygenase (COX-2) in interleukin-1-beta (IL-1β)-induced chondrocytes. Morin also suppressed the degradation of inhibitor of nuclear factor-κB (IκB-α) as well as the translocation of nuclear factor kappa B (NF-kappa B).

In rats, an IL-1β-induced osteoarthritis (OA) model, morin also exerted anti-inflammatory properties during in vivo study (Chen et al. 2012b). Morin exhibits antioxidant potential and offers enhancement in antioxidant levels simultaneously showing protection that clearly reduce in urea, ammonia, lipid peroxidation (Subash and Subramanian 2009). It has also been clarified that a lower concentration of morin in carcinomas than normal oral mucosa inhibited the activation of activated protein kinase AKT, whereas Jun N-terminal kinase (JNK), p38 kinase, and polyclonal antibodies (GADD45) all induced the same dose-response parallel curves in normal oral mucosa and carcinomas (Brown et al. 2003).

Myricetin

Myricetin (3,5,7-trihydroxy-2-(3,4,5-trihydroxyphenyl)chromen-4-one) (figure) is a major plant secondary metabolite; these are commonly found particularly in the whole plant kingdom and in majority of human foods, i.e., different fruits, berries, grapes, herbs, vegetables, and many other plants. A rich source of myricetin is walnuts; traces can be found as glycosides (Miean and Mohamed 2001b).

Myricetin is one of the phenolic compounds which are found in red wine (Maggiolini et al. 2005). It is found on the leaf surface of wild tomato (*Solanum habrochaites*) plants that contain 3,7,3′,5′-tetramethyl myricetin, 3,7,3′-trimethyl myricetin, and 3,7,3′,4′,5′-pentamethyl myricetin, with secreting glandular trichomes (gland types 1 and 4) containing abundantly than storage glandular tri-

chomes (type 6) and with the tetramethylated compound predominating in all types 1, 4, and 6 (Schmidt et al. 2011). Myricetin contains a three-ring structure with a central oxygenated heterocyclic and two aromatic centers (Gee and Johnson 2001) that serve as multiple functions like antioxidant activities and pigmentation (Hertog et al. 1994).

Biological Properties

Myricetin and other polyphenolic compounds are absorbed in human gut, remaining larger fraction in the lumen, thus the major proportion of mucosa from gastrointestinal. These compounds also show considerable biological effects at cellular level. These myricetin with some other phenolic compounds control the cellular cycles, apoptosis (programmed cell death), and differentiation after interaction with cellular signal pathways (Gee and Johnson 2001). A wide range of bioactivities have been reported for this molecule i.e. Allelochemic; Antioxidant; Antibacterial; Anti-feedant; Anti-HIV; Antihistaminic; Anti-gingivitic; Antiallergenic; Anti-gastric; Anti-gonadotrophic; COMP-Inhibitor; Antihistaminic; Antiseptic; Anti-inflammatory; Anti-mutagenic; Anti-periodontic; Antiplaque; Antiviral; Diuretic;Topoisomerase-I-Inhibitor; Hypoglycemic; Vasodilator; Cancer-Preventive; Mutagenic; Candidicide; Larvistat; Lipoxygenase-Inhibitor; Oxidase-Inhibitor; Quinone-Reductase-Inducer; Pesticide; Tyrosine-Kinase-Inhibitor; Topoisomerase-II-Inhibitor (http://www.ars-grin.gov/duke/, accessed).

Myricetin can cause muscle paralysis by inhibiting acetylcholine release at the neuromuscular junction. When compared to *Clostridium botulinum* neurotoxin (BoNT/A) the myricetin effect on muscle paralysis was unpretentious (Yang et al. 2011c). It is also claimed myricetin has antibiotic effects on *R. leguminosarum* bv *trifolii* (Fottrell et al. 1964). Myricetin is known to have DNA damage (strand breakdown and oxidized pyrimidines/purines) effect in human hepatocellular carcinoma (HepG2) cells which is induced by taking it as a diet to have a significant protective effect against *N*-nitrosopyrrolidine (NPYR)-, *N*-nitrosodimethylamine (NDMA)-, and benzo(*a*)pyrene (BaP)-induced DNA damage (Delgado et al. 2008). Myricetin and rosmarinic acid are inhibited by amyloid-β (Aβ) protein, and by site-specific binding, there were also observed aggregation and synaptic dysfunction (Ono et al. 2012).

As for the role of myricetin in cancer, myricetin and scutellarin are potently shown to inhibit the severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus (SARS-CoV) helicase protein (Yu et al. 2012). Myricetin has been found to protect neurons' discrete and multiple pathways and inhibited glutamate-induced excitotoxicity (Shimmyo et al. 2008). Myricetin was exerted as potent chemopreventive activity mainly by targeting activity of Fyn kinase straightly and afterward attenuated UVB-induced cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) expression (skin carcinogenesis) (Jung et al. 2008). Myricetin (20 μM) when treated with macrophages derived from U937 has been significantly observed to inhibit the expression of mRNA and surface protein CD36 cells, which means myricetin might play an important role in ameliorating

atherosclerosis (Lian et al. 2008). During the experimental result of Perls' iron staining, it has made an evidence in the substantial nigra by the enhancement of iron-staining cells; myricetin prevented the 6-hydroxydopamine (6-OHDA) (Ma et al. 2007b). It has also been observed that antiproliferative potential of flavonoids decreased in the order isorhamnetin > kaempferol > myricetin > rutin, while their antioxidant properties decreased in the order rutin > myricetin > kaempferol > isorhamnetin. When combined the treatment of isorhamnetin, kaempferol, and myricetin with AraC has led to synergism in their antiproliferative activities (Nadova et al. 2007).

However, the result of myricetin on pharmacokinetics of carvedilol has not been reported in vivo. The enhanced oral bioavailability of carvedilol may result from both inhibition of CYP2C9 or CYP2D6-mediated metabolism and P-gp-mediated efflux of carvedilol in the small intestine and/or in liver by myricetin rather than reducing renal elimination (Lee et al. 2012).

Natsudaidain

Natsudaidain (2-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)-3-hydroxy-5,6,7,8-tetramethoxychromen-4-one) was isolated from *Citrus reticulata* for the first time (Qian and Chen 1998). The name of the molecule comes from *Citrus natsudaidai* (Natsumikan, lit. "summer tangerine") (Matsui et al. 2009).

Biological Properties

Natsudaidain exhibited less inhibitory effect on the pro-matrix metalloproteinase-9 (proMMP-9)/in HT-1080 cells and progelatinase B production (Miyata et al. 2008). Natsudaidain has been shown to inhibit cyclooxygenase-2 and tumor necrosis factor-alpha production by p38 MAPK phosphorylation suppression, while there was no p65 NF-kappa B phosphorylation suppression observed, and that inflammatory diseases were also mitigated by natsudaidain (Matsui et al. 2009).

Two flavonoids, natsudaidain isolated and 3,5,6,7,8,3′,4′ heptamethoxyflavone (HEPTA) that are extracted from *Citrus* plants, in guinea pig papillary muscle produced a positive inotropic effect (PIE). It has also been observed (pD2 4.98 ± 0.07) that natsudaidain was more intense than (pD2 4.33 ± 0.08) HEPTA (Itoigawa et al. 1994). Hydroxyl C-3 and C-8 methoxyl groups were necessary for efficient activity of natsudaidain and other flavonols; on the other hand in B-ring ortho-catechol moiety and C-2, C-3 bonds were essential for the antiproliferative activity (Kawaii et al. 1999a). Natsudaidain when treated with HL 60 cells in dose-dependent manner has exerted its activity as to differentiate into repertoire of macrophage and monocytes (Kawaii et al. 1999b).

Drug Leads and Pharmacophores from Flavonols

Association of different bioactivities to flavonols has triggered computational studies to study and understand the mechanisms and interactions involved for obtaining new drug leads. Such studies involved molecular docking, three-dimensional structure-activity relationship, and pharmacophore modeling. Investigations have reported the interactions and pharmacophoric models for flavonols based on their interactions with cellular proteins. Using theoretical and computational approaches and the antioxidant activity of structure-activity relationship of flavonoids has been calculated (Butkovic et al. 2004; Ghiotto et al. 2004; Lee et al. 2009; Om and Kim 2008; Teixeira et al. 2005). A pharmacophore map based on flavonols suggested anti-angiogenic and thus antitumor drug leads as human vascular endothelial growth factor receptor 2 (hVEGFR2) antagonists (Yang et al. 2008). Therapeutic potential of flavonoids has been explained for genetic/metabolic disorders (i.e. xanthinuria, gout, and diabetes mellitus by inhibition of respective enzymes xanthine oxidase, aldose reductase, and liposygenase), but also for viral infections as well using computational approaches (Alves et al. 2001; Liu et al. 2012).

A study focused on inhibition of hVEGFR2 signaling for antitumor effects developed receptor-based pharmacophore model using crystal structures of inhibitor-hVEGFR2 complex and cyclin-dependent kinase 6 (CDK6) and flavonoid fisetin complex. Superimposition of these complexes helped in the identification of interactions between fisetin and hVEGFR2 and resulted in pharmacophore map. Hydrogen bond acceptors (HBAs), hydrogen bond donors (HBDs), and lipophilicity (Lipo) features were used to conclude the map. Resultant map had four features, two HBD, one Lipo, and one HBA. Virtual screening was performed, and the model yielded five out of nine hits with each hit flavonol having hydrogen bonding 3- and 4′-OH interacting with ATP binding site of hVEGFR2 (Yang et al. 2008).

A NS5B inhibitor pharmacophore model (Hypo 1) was developed using common feature-based pharmacophore and structure-based docking approaches for identification of novel antivirals for HCV. Discovery Studio's Common Feature pharmacophore generation protocol was used to develop the model with best conformational generation choice. The model was evaluated using decoy set of 1040 molecules of which 40, active against NS5B, were selected from the literature, while 1000 were randomly selected may bridge database. The model Hypo 1 was used to screen in-house database commercially available natural products with 3D structures and yielded 246 hits. These hits were investigated by docking studies and the list was reduced to 31. These results were validated in wet lab and showed inhibition of NS5B HCV enzyme (Liu et al. 2012).

Conclusions

Attaining the spotlight since the 2000s, flavonols have been rigorously investigated for exploring their roles in metabolism, as antioxidant and also as potential drug leads. Being natural products, these are considered as much safer than the other pharmaceutical products. Current studies are focusing on evaluating the effects of flavonols on human/mammalian cells for developing more effective therapeutic agents. Sophisticated and sensitive techniques have enabled us to mine out and exploit more and more information shedding lights on curing of diseases. Multiple studies conducted have revealed the possibilities of flavonoids as leading to improved drugs for most of the clinically difficult to treat diseases in future.

References

Abdel-Rahim E, El-Beltagi HS (2010) Constituents of apple, parsley and lentil edible plants and their therapy treatments for blood picture as well as liver and kidneys functions against lipidemic disease. EJEAFChe 9(6):1117–1127

Aherne SA, O'Brien NM (2002) Dietary flavonols: chemistry, food content, and metabolism. Nutrition 18(1):75–81

Ahmed MS, Galal AM, Ross SA, Ferreira D, Elsohly MA, Ibrahim AS, Mossa JS, El-Feraly FS (2001) A weakly antimalarial biflavanone from Rhus retinorrhoea. Phytochemistry 58(4):599–602

Al-Musayeib N, Perveen S, Fatima I, Nasir M, Hussain A (2011) Antioxidant, anti-glycation and anti-inflammatory activities of phenolic constituents from Cordia sinensis. Molecules 16(12):10214–10226

Alves C, Pinheiro J, Camargo A, Ferreira M, Romero R, Da Silva A (2001) A multiple linear regression and partial least squares study of flavonoid compounds with anti-HIV activity. J Mol Struct THEOCHEM 541(1):81–88

Anderson G (2004) Phytochemicals. Dynamic Chiropractics, vol 2.

Arai Y, Watanabe S, Kimira M, Shimoi K, Mochizuki R, Kinae N (2000) Dietary intakes of flavonols, flavones and isoflavones by Japanese women and the inverse correlation between quercetin intake and plasma LDL cholesterol concentration. J Nutr 130(9):2243–2250

Arshad N, Janjua N, Khan A, Yaqub A, Burkholz T, Jacob C (2012) Natural flavonoids interact with dinitrobenzene system in aprotic media: an electrochemical probing. Nat Prod Commun 7(3):311

Babu B, Jayram H, Nair M, Ajaikumar K, Padikkala J (2003) Free radical scavenging, antitumor and anticarcinogenic activity of gossypin. J Exp Clin Cancer Res 22(4):581–590

Bertoncelj J, Polak T, Kropf U, Korošec M, Golob T (2011) LC-DAD-ESI/MS analysis of flavonoids and abscisic acid with chemometric approach for the classification of Slovenian honey. Food Chem 127(1):296–302

Biasutto L, Marotta E, De Marchi U, Zoratti M, Paradisi C (2007) Ester-based precursors to increase the bioavailability of quercetin. J Med Chem 50(2):241–253

Boesch-Saadatmandi C, Loboda A, Wagner AE, Stachurska A, Jozkowicz A, Dulak J, Döring F, Wolffram S, Rimbach G (2011) Effect of quercetin and its metabolites isorhamnetin and quercetin-3-glucuronide on inflammatory gene expression: role of miR-155. J Nutr Biochem 22(3):293–299

Bohm BA, Stuessy TF (2001) Flavonoids of the sunflower family (Asteraceae). Springer, Wien

Bouhlel I, Skandrani I, Nefatti A, Valenti K, Ghedira K, Mariotte AM, Hininger-Favier I, Laporte F, Dijoux-Franca MG, Chekir-Ghedira L (2009) Antigenotoxic and antioxidant activities of isorhamnetin 3-O neohesperidoside from Acacia salicina. Drug Chem Toxicol 32(3):258–267

Brown J, O'Prey J, Harrison P (2003) Enhanced sensitivity of human oral tumours to the flavonol, morin, during cancer progression: involvement of the Akt and stress kinase pathways. Carcinogenesis 24(2):171–177

Butkovic V, Klasinc L, Bors W (2004) Kinetic study of flavonoid reactions with stable radicals. J Agric Food Chem 52(10):2816–2820

Calderon-Montano JM, Burgos-Moron E, Perez-Guerrero C, Lopez-Lazaro M (2011) A review on the dietary flavonoid kaempferol. Mini Rev Med Chem 11(4):298–344

Campana R, Patrone V, Franzini ITM, Diamantini G, Vittoria E, Baffone W (2009) Antimicrobial activity of two propolis samples against human Campylobacter jejuni. J Med Food 12(5):1050–1056

Çelik H, Koşar M (2012) Inhibitory effects of dietary flavonoids on purified hepatic NADH-cytochrome b5 reductase: structure-activity relationships. Chem Biol Interact 197:103–109

Çelik H, Koşar M, Arinç E (2013) In vitro effects of myricetin, morin, apigenin, (+)-taxifolin, (+)-catechin, (−)-epicatechin, naringenin and naringin on cytochrome b5 reduction by purified NADH-cytochrome b5 reductase. Toxicology 308:34–40

Chang BS, Lowenstein DH (2003) Practice parameter: antiepileptic drug prophylaxis in severe traumatic brain injury: report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology. Neurology 60(1):10–16

Chang Q, Wong Y-S (2004) Identification of flavonoids in Hakmeitau beans (Vigna sinensis) by high-performance liquid chromatography-electrospray mass spectrometry (LC-ESI/MS). J Agric Food Chem 52(22):6694–6699

Chen AY, Chen YC (2013) A review of the dietary flavonoid, kaempferol on human health and cancer chemoprevention. Food Chem 138(4):2099–2107

Chen H, Li L, Zhou M, Ma YJ (2008) Flow-injection chemiluminescence determination of tryptophan using galangin-potassium permanganate–polyphosphoric acid system. Chin Chem Lett 19(2):203–206

Chen W-P, Hu P-F, Bao J-P, Wu L-D (2012a) Morin exerts antiosteoarthritic properties: an in vitro and in vivo study. Exp Biol Med 237(4):380–386

Chen W-P, Wang Y-L, Tang J-L, Hu P-F, Bao J-P, Wu L-D (2012b) Morin inhibits interleukin-1β-induced nitric oxide and prostaglandin E2 production in human chondrocytes. Int Immunopharmacol 12(2):447–452

Choi K-C, Chung W-T, Kwon J-K, Yu J-Y, Jang Y-S, Park S-M, Lee S-Y, Lee J-C (2010) Inhibitory effects of quercetin on aflatoxin B_1-induced hepatic damage in mice. Food Chem Toxicol 48(10):2747–2753

Choi IS, Choi EY, Jin JY, Park HR, Choi JI, Kim SJ (2013) Kaempferol inhibits P. intermedia lipopolysaccharide-induced production of nitric oxide through translational regulation in murine macrophages: critical role of heme oxygenase-1-mediated ROS reduction. J Periodontol 84(4):545–555

Chou C-C, Yang J-S, Lu H-F, Ip S-W, Lo C, Wu C-C, Lin J-P, Tang N-Y, Chung J-G, Chou M-J (2010) Quercetin-mediated cell cycle arrest and apoptosis involving activation of a caspase cascade through the mitochondrial pathway in human breast cancer MCF-7 cells. Arch Pharm Res 33(8):1181–1191

Cody V, Middleton E, Harborne JB (1986) Plant flavonoids in biology and medicine: biochemical, pharmacological, and structure-activity relationships: proceedings of a symposium held in Buffalo, New York, July 22–26, 1985. Liss, New York

Constantin RP, Constantin J, Pagadigorria CLS, Ishii-Iwamoto EL, Bracht A, Ono MDKC, Yamamoto NS (2010) The actions of fisetin on glucose metabolism in the rat liver. Cell Biochem Funct 28(2):149–158

Curir P, Dolci M, Lanzotti V, Taglialatela-Scafati O (2001) Kaempferide triglycoside: a possible factor of resistance of carnation (Dianthus caryophyllus) to Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. dianthi. Phytochemistry 56(7):717–721

Cushnie T (2006) Investigation of the antibacterial activity of selected flavonoids. Robert Gordon University, Aberdeen

Cushnie T, Lamb A (2006) Assessment of the antibacterial activity of galangin against 4-quinolone resistant strains of *Staphylococcus aureus*. Phytomedicine 13(3):187–191

De Monbrison F, Maitrejean M, Latour C, Bugnazet F, Peyron F, Barron D, Picot S (2006) In vitro antimalarial activity of flavonoid derivatives dehydrosilybin and 8-(1;1)-DMA-kaempferide. Acta Trop 97(1):102–107

Delgado ME, Haza AI, Arranz N, García A, Morales P (2008) Dietary polyphenols protect against N-nitrosamines and benzo (a) pyrene-induced DNA damage (strand breaks and oxidized purines/pyrimidines) in HepG2 human hepatoma cells. Eur J Nutr 47(8):479–490

El-Shobaki F, El-Bahay A, Esmail R, El-Megeid A, Esmail N (2010) Effect of figs fruit (Ficus carica L.) and its leaves on hyperglycemia in alloxan diabetic rats. World J Dairy Food Sci 5(1):47–57

Ferrandiz M, Alcaraz M (1991) Anti-inflammatory activity and inhibition of arachidonic acid metabolism by flavonoids. Agents Actions 32(3–4):283–288

Filomeni G, Graziani I, De Zio D, Dini L, Centonze D, Rotilio G, Ciriolo MR (2012) Neuroprotection of kaempferol by autophagy in models of rotenone-mediated acute toxicity: possible implications for Parkinson's disease. Neurobiol Aging 33(4):767–785

Fisher RS, Boas WVE, Blume W, Elger C, Genton P, Lee P, Engel J (2005) Epileptic seizures and epilepsy: definitions proposed by the International League Against Epilepsy (ILAE) and the International Bureau for Epilepsy (IBE). Epilepsia 46(4):470–472

Fottrell P, O'Connor S, Masterson C (1964) Identification of the flavonol myricetin in legume seeds and its toxicity to nodule bacteria. Irish J Agric Res 3:246–249

Frigo DE, Duong BN, Melnik LI, Schief LS, Collins-Burow BM, Pace DK, Mclachlan JA, Burow ME (2002) Flavonoid phytochemicals regulate activator protein-1 signal transduction pathways in endometrial and kidney stable cell lines. J Nutr 132(7):1848–1853

Ganapaty S, Chandrashekhar V, Narsu ML (2010) Evaluation of anti-allergic activity of gossypin and suramin in mast cell-mediated allergy model. Indian J Biochem Biophys 47:90–95

Gardana C, Scaglianti M, Pietta P, Simonetti P (2007) Analysis of the polyphenolic fraction of propolis from different sources by liquid chromatography-tandem mass spectrometry. J Pharm Biomed Anal 45(3):390–399

Gautam P, Flora S (2010) Oral supplementation of gossypin during lead exposure protects alteration in heme synthesis pathway and brain oxidative stress in rats. Nutrition 26(5):563–570

Gautam A, Vijayaraghavan R (2007) Prophylactic effect of gossypin against percutaneously administered sulfur mustard. Biomed Environ Sci 20(3):250

Gee J, Johnson I (2001) Polyphenolic compounds: interactions with the gut and implications for human health. Curr Med Chem 8(11):1245–1255

Ghiotto R, Lavarda F, Ferreira F (2004) Antioxidant activity of flavonols. Int J Quant Chem 97(5):949–952

Gohar AA, Maatooq GT, Niwa M (2000) Two flavonoid glycosides from Chenopodium murale. Phytochemistry 53(2):299–303

Grippi F, Crosta L, Tolomeo M, Aiello G, D'Amico R, Gebbia N, Curione A, Capasso A (2007) Detection of polyphenolic compounds (stilbenes and flavonoids) in natural products. Recent Dev Med Plant Res. 393–404

Gryglewski RJ, Korbut R, Robak J, Święs J (1987) On the mechanism of antithrombotic action of flavonoids. Biochem Pharmacol 36(3):317–322

Gupta SC, Kim JH, Prasad S, Aggarwal BB (2010) Regulation of survival, proliferation, invasion, angiogenesis, and metastasis of tumor cells through modulation of inflammatory pathways by nutraceuticals. Cancer Metastasis Rev 29(3):405–434

Gupta SC, Phromnoi K, Aggarwal BB (2013) Morin inhibits STAT3 tyrosine 705 phosphorylation in tumor cells through activation of protein tyrosine phosphatase SHP1. Biochem Pharmacol 85:898–912

Gwak J, Oh J, Cho M, Bae SK, Song I-S, Liu K-H, Jeong Y, Kim D-E, Chung Y-H, Oh S (2011) Galangin suppresses the proliferation of β-catenin response transcription-positive cancer cells by promoting adenomatous polyposis coli/Axin/glycogen synthase kinase-3β-independent β-catenin degradation. Mol Pharmacol 79(6):1014–1022

Habtemariam S (2011) A-glucosidase inhibitory activity of kaempferol-3-O-rutinoside. Nat Prod Commun 6(2):201–203

Hakkinen SH, Karenlampi SO, Heinonen IM, Mykkanen HM, Torronen AR (1999) Content of the flavonols quercetin, myricetin, and kaempferol in 25 edible berries. J Agric Food Chem 47(6):2274–2279

Häkkinen SH, Kärenlampi SO, Heinonen IM, Mykkänen HM, Törrönen AR (1999) Content of the flavonols quercetin, myricetin, and kaempferol in 25 edible berries. J Agric Food Chem 47(6):2274–2279

Havaux M, Kloppstech K (2001) The protective functions of carotenoid and flavonoid pigments against excess visible radiation at chilling temperature investigated in Arabidopsis npq and tt mutants. Planta 213(6):953–966

Havsteen BH (2002) The biochemistry and medical significance of the flavonoids. Pharmacol Ther 96(2):67–202

Heo MY, Sohn SJ, Au WW (2001) Anti-genotoxicity of galangin as a cancer chemopreventive agent candidate. Mutat Res/Rev Mutat Res 488(2):135–150

Hertog MG, Feskens EJ, Hollman PC, Katan MB, Kromhout D (1994) Dietary flavonoids and cancer risk in the Zutphen Elderly Study. Nutr Cancer 22:175–184

Hill S, Williams KB, Denekamp J (1989) Vascular collapse after flavone acetic acid: a possible mechanism of its anti-tumour action. Eur J Cancer Clin Oncol 25(10):1419–1424

Hu Y-J, Yue H-L, Li X-L, Zhang S-S, Tang E, Zhang L-P (2012) Molecular spectroscopic studies on the interaction of morin with bovine serum albumin. J Photochem Photobiol B: Biol 112:16–22

Hung H (2004) Inhibition of estrogen receptor alpha expression and function in MCF-7 cells by kaempferol. J Cell Physiol 198(2):197–208

Ibarra M, Pérez-Vizcaíno F, Cogolludo A, Duarte J, Zaragozá-Arnáez F, López-López JG, Tamargo J (2002) Cardiovascular effects of isorhamnetin and quercetin in isolated rat and porcine vascular smooth muscle and isolated rat atria. Planta Med 68(04):307–310

Ibrahim LF, Kawashty SA, El-Hagrassy AM, Nassar MI, Mabry TJ (2008) A new kaempferol triglycoside from Fagonia taeckholmiana: cytotoxic activity of its extracts. Carbohydr Res 343(1):155–158

Ishige K, Schubert D, Sagara Y (2001) Flavonoids protect neuronal cells from oxidative stress by three distinct mechanisms. Free Radic Biol Med 30(4):433–446

Itoigawa M, Takeya K, Furukawa H (1994) Cardiotonic flavonoids from Citrus plants (Rutaceae). Biol Pharm Bull 17(11):1519–1521

Jaramillo S, Lopez S, Varela LM, Rodriguez-Arcos R, Jimenez A, Abia R, Guillen R, Muriana FJ (2010) The flavonol isorhamnetin exhibits cytotoxic effects on human colon cancer cells. J Agric Food Chem 58(20):10869–10,875

Joe EJ, Kim BG, An BC, Chong Y, Ahn JH (2010) Engineering of flavonoid O-methyltransferase for a novel regioselectivity. Mol Cells 30(2):137–141

Jung SK, Lee KW, Byun S, Kang NJ, Lim SH, Heo Y-S, Bode AM, Bowden GT, Lee HJ, Dong Z (2008) Myricetin suppresses UVB-induced skin cancer by targeting Fyn. Cancer Res 68(14):6021–6029

Kawaii S, Tomono Y, Katase E, Ogawa K, Yano M (1999a) Antiproliferative activity of flavonoids on several cancer cell lines. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 63(5):896–899

Kawaii S, Tomono Y, Katase E, Ogawa K, Yano M (1999b) Effect of citrus flavonoids on HL-60 cell differentiation. Anticancer Res 19(2A):1261

Khalil M, Sulaiman S (2010) The potential role of honey and its polyphenols in preventing heart disease: a review. Afr J Tradit Complement Altern Med 7(4):315–321

Khouri HE, De Luca V, Ibrahim RK (1988) Enzymatic synthesis of polymethylated flavonols in Chrysosplenium americanum. III. Purification and kinetic analysis of S-adenosyl-L-methionine:3-methylquercetin 7-O-methyltransferase. Arch Biochem Biophys 265(1):1–7

Kim HY, Kim OH, Sung MK (2003) Effects of phenol-depleted and phenol-rich diets on blood markers of oxidative stress, and urinary excretion of quercetin and kaempferol in healthy volunteers. J Am Coll Nutr 22(3):217–223

Kim DS, Ha KC, Kwon DY, Kim MS, Kim HR, Chae SW, Chae HJ (2008) Kaempferol protects ischemia/reperfusion-induced cardiac damage through the regulation of endoplasmic reticulum stress. Immunopharmacol Immunotoxicol 30(2):257–270

Kim J-E, Lee D-E, Lee KW, Son JE, Seo SK, Li J, Jung SK, Heo Y-S, Mottamal M, Bode AM (2011) Isorhamnetin suppresses skin cancer through direct inhibition of MEK1 and PI3-K. Cancer Prev Res 4(4):582–591

Kim TH, Ku SK, Lee IC, Bae JS (2012) Anti-inflammatory effects of kaempferol-3-O-sophoroside in human endothelial cells. Inflamm Res 61(3):217–224

Kunnumakkara AB, Nair AS, Ahn KS, Pandey MK, Yi Z, Liu M, Aggarwal BB (2007) Gossypin, a pentahydroxy glucosyl flavone, inhibits the transforming growth factor beta-activated kinase-1-mediated NF-κB activation pathway, leading to potentiation of apoptosis, suppression of invasion, and abrogation of osteoclastogenesis. Blood 109(12):5112–5121

Landi-Librandi AP, De Oliveira CA, Caleiro Seixas Azzolini AE, Mariko Kabeya L, Del Ciampo JO, Lopes Badra Bentley MV, Lucisano-Valim YM (2011) In vitro evaluation of the antioxidant activity of liposomal flavonols by the HRP-H2O2-luminol system. J Microencapsul 28(4):258–267

Lee SJ, Son KH, Chang HW, Do JC, Jung KY, Kang SS, Kim HP (1993) Antiinflammatory activity of naturally occurring flavone and flavonol glycosides. Arch Pharm Res 16(1):25–28

Lee JY, Jeong KW, Kim W, Heo YS, Kim Y (2009) Binding models of flavonols to human vascular endothelial growth factor receptor 2. Bull Korean Chem Soc 30(9):2083–2086

Lee J, Lee J, Jung E, Hwang W, Kim Y-S, Park D (2010) Isorhamnetin-induced anti-adipogenesis is mediated by stabilization of β-catenin protein. Life Sci 86(11):416–423

Lee S, Shin SY, Lee Y, Park Y, Kim BG, Ahn JH, Chong Y, Lee YH, Lim Y (2011) Rhamnetin production based on the rational design of the poplar O-methyltransferase enzyme and its biological activities. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 21(13):3866–3870

Lee W, Woo E, Choi J (2012) Effects of myricetin on the bioavailability of carvedilol in rats. Pharma Biol 50(4):516–522

Li XY, Kong LX, Li J, He HX, Zhou YD (2013) Kaempferol suppresses lipid accumulation in macrophages through the downregulation of cluster of differentiation 36 and the upregulation of scavenger receptor class B type I and ATP-binding cassette transporters A1 and G1. Int J Mol Med 31(2):331–338

Lian T-W, Wang L, Lo Y-H, Huang I-J, Wu M-J (2008) Fisetin, morin and myricetin attenuate CD36 expression and oxLDL uptake in U937-derived macrophages. Biochim Biophys Acta 1781(10):601–609

Liu M-M, Zhou L, He P-L, Zhang Y-N, Zhou J-Y, Shen Q, Chen X-W, Zuo J-P, Li W, Ye D-Y (2012) Discovery of flavonoid derivatives as anti-HCV agents via pharmacophore search combining molecular docking strategy. Eur J Med Chem 52:33–43

Lopez-Lazaro M (2002) Flavonoids as anticancer agents: structure-activity relationship study. Curr Med Chem Anticancer Agents 2(6):691–714

Luo H, Daddysman MK, Rankin GO, Jiang BH, Chen YC (2010) Kaempferol enhances cisplatin's effect on ovarian cancer cells through promoting apoptosis caused by down regulation of cMyc. Cancer Cell Int 10:16

Ma G, Yang C, Qu Y, Wei H, Zhang T, Zhang N (2007a) The flavonoid component isorhamnetin in vitro inhibits proliferation and induces apoptosis in Eca-109 cells. Chem Biol Interact 167(2):153–160

Ma Z-G, Wang J, Jiang H, Liu T-W, Xie J-X (2007b) Myricetin reduces 6-hydroxydopamine-induced dopamine neuron degeneration in rats. Neuroreport 18(11):1181–1185
Ma H, Yuan T, Gonzalez-Sarrias A, Li L, Edmonds ME, Seeram NP (2012) New galloyl derivative from winged sumac (Rhus copallinum) fruit. Nat Prod Commun 7(1):45–46
Maggiolini M, Recchia A, Bonofiglio D, Catalano S, Vivacqua A, Carpino A, Rago V, Rossi R, Ando S (2005) The red wine phenolics piceatannol and myricetin act as agonists for estrogen receptor α in human breast cancer cells. J Mol Endocrinol 35(2):269–281
Maher P (2006) A comparison of the neurotrophic activities of the flavonoid fisetin and some of its derivatives. Free Radic Res 40(10):1105–1111
Maher P (2008) The flavonoid fisetin promotes nerve cell survival from trophic factor withdrawal by enhancement of proteasome activity. Arch Biochem Biophy 476(2):139–144
Maher P, Dargusch R, Bodai L, Gerard PE, Purcell JM, Marsh JL (2011a) ERK activation by the polyphenols fisetin and resveratrol provides neuroprotection in multiple models of Huntington's disease. Hum Mol Genet 20(2):261–270
Maher P, Dargusch R, Ehren JL, Okada S, Sharma K, Schubert D (2011b) Fisetin lowers methylglyoxal dependent protein glycation and limits the complications of diabetes. PLoS One 6(6):e21226
Manach C, Williamson G, Morand C, Scalbert A, Remesy C (2005) Bioavailability and bioefficacy of polyphenols in humans. I. Review of 97 bioavailability studies. Am J Clin Nutr 81(1 Suppl):230S–242S
March RE, Miao XS, Metcalfe CD (2004) A fragmentation study of a flavone triglycoside, kaempferol-3-O-robinoside-7-O-rhamnoside. Rapid Commun Mass Spectrom 18(9):931–934
Markham KR, Geiger H, Jaggy H (1992) Kaempferol-3-O-glucosyl(1–2)rhamnoside from Ginkgo biloba and a reappraisal of other gluco(1–2, 1–3 and 1–4)rhamnoside structures. Phytochemistry 31(3):1009–1011
Martini ND, Katerere DR, Eloff JN (2004) Biological activity of five antibacterial flavonoids from Combretum erythrophyllum (Combretaceae). J Ethnopharmacol 93(2–3):207–212
Materska M (2008) Quercetin and its derivatives: chemical structure and bioactivity-a review. Pol J Food Nutr Sci 58(4):407–413
Matsui T, Ito C, Itoigawa M, Okada T, Furukawa H (2009) Effect of natsudaidain isolated from Citrus plants on TNF-α and cyclooxygenase-2 expression in RBL-2H3 cells. J Pharm Pharmacol 61(1):109–114
Mattarei A, Biasutto L, Rastrelli F, Garbisa S, Marotta E, Zoratti M, Paradisi C (2010) Regioselective O-derivatization of quercetin via ester intermediates. An improved synthesis of rhamnetin and development of a new mitochondriotropic derivative. Molecules 15(7):4722–4736
Melgarejo E, Medina M, Sánchez-Jiménez F, Botana L, Dominguez M, Escribano L, Orfao A, Urdiales J (2007) (−)-Epigallocatechin-3-gallate interferes with mast cell adhesiveness, migration and its potential to recruit monocytes. Cell Mol Life Sci 64(19–20):2690–2701
Melidou M, Riganakos K, Galaris D (2005) Protection against nuclear DNA damage offered by flavonoids in cells exposed to hydrogen peroxide: the role of iron chelation. Free Radic Biol Med 39(12):1591–1600
Méric J-B, Rottey S, Olaussen K, Soria J-C, Khayat D, Rixe O, Spano J-P (2006) Cyclooxygenase-2 as a target for anticancer drug development. Crit Rev Oncol/Hematol 59(1):51–64
Merwid-Ląd A, Trocha MG, Chlebda-Sieragowska E, Sozañski T, Magdalan J, Ksiądzyna D, Szuba A, Kopacz M, Kuÿniar A, Nowak D (2013) Effect of cyclophosphamide and morin-5′-sulfonic acid sodium salt, alone or in combination, on ADMA/DDAH pathway in rats. Pharmacol Rep 65(201):201–207
Metodiewa D, Jaiswal AK, Cenas N, Dickancaite E, Segura-Aguilar J (1999) Quercetin may act as a cytotoxic prooxidant after its metabolic activation to semiquinone and quinoidal product. Free Radic Biol Med 26(1–2):107–116
Middleton E, Kandaswami C, Theoharides TC (2000) The effects of plant flavonoids on mammalian cells: implications for inflammation, heart disease, and cancer. Pharmacol Rev 52(4):673–751

Miean KH, Mohamed S (2001a) Flavonoid (myricetin, quercetin, kaempferol, luteolin, and apigenin) content of edible tropical plants. J Agric Food Chem 49(6):3106–3112
Miean KH, Mohamed S (2001b) Flavonoid (myricetin, quercetin, kaempferol, luteolin, and apigenin) content of edible tropical plants. J Agric Food Chem 49(6):3106–3112
Miyata T, De Strihou CVY, Imasawa T, Yoshino A, Ueda Y, Ogura H, Kominami K, Onogi H, Inagi R, Nangaku M (2001) Glyoxalase I deficiency is associated with an unusual level of advanced glycation end products in a hemodialysis patient. Kidney Int 60(6):2351–2359
Miyata Y, Sato T, Imada K, Dobashi A, Yano M, Ito A (2008) A citrus polymethoxyflavonoid, nobiletin, is a novel MEK inhibitor that exhibits antitumor metastasis in human fibrosarcoma HT-1080 cells. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 366(1):168–173
Monasterio A, Urdaci MC, Pinchuk IV, Lopez-Moratalla N, Martinez-Irujo JJ (2004) Flavonoids induce apoptosis in human leukemia U937 cells through caspase-and caspase-calpain-dependent pathways. Nutr Cancer 50(1):90–100
Mukai R, Shirai Y, Saito N, Yoshida K-I, Ashida H (2009) Subcellular localization of flavonol aglycone in hepatocytes visualized by confocal laser scanning fluorescence microscope. Cytotechnology 59(3):177–182
Murray TJ, Yang X, Sherr DH (2006) Growth of a human mammary tumor cell line is blocked by galangin, a naturally occurring bioflavonoid, and is accompanied by down-regulation of cyclins D3, E, and A. Breast Cancer Res 8(2):R17
Nadova S, Miadokova E, Cipak L (2007) Flavonoids potentiate the efficacy of cytarabine through modulation of drug-induced apoptosis. Neoplasma 54(3):202
Nandhakumar R, Salini K, Devaraj SN (2012) Morin augments anticarcinogenic and antiproliferative efficacy against 7, 12-dimethylbenz (a)-anthracene induced experimental mammary carcinogenesis. Mol Cell Biochem 364(1–2):79–92
Neelakantam K, Seshadri T (1936) Pigments of cotton flowers. In: Proceedings of the Indian Academy of Sciences—section A. Springer, Basel, pp 54–58
Nijveldt RJ et al (2001) Flavonoids: a review of probable mechanisms of action and potential applications. Am J Clin Nutr 74(4):418–425
Noor H, Cao P, Raleigh DP (2012) Morin hydrate inhibits amyloid formation by islet amyloid polypeptide and disaggregates amyloid fibers. Prot Sci 21(3):373–382
Nowak S, Wolbis M (2002) Flavonoids from some species of genus Scopolia Jacq. Acta Pol Pharm 59(4):275–280
Oh HM, Kwon B-M, Baek N-I, Kim S-H, Chung I-S, Park M-H, Park HW, Lee JH, Park HW, Kim EJ (2005) Inhibitory activity of isorhamnetin from Persicaria thunbergii on Farnesyl Protein Transferase. Arch Pharm Res 28(2):169–171
Oh SM, Kim YP, Chung KH (2006) Biphasic effects of kaempferol on the estrogenicity in human breast cancer cells. Arch Pharm Res 29(5):354–362
Om A, Kim J (2008) A quantitative structure-activity relationship model for radical scavenging activity of flavonoids. J Med Food 11(1):29–37
Ono K, Li L, Takamura Y, Yoshiike Y, Zhu L, Han F, Mao X, Ikeda T, Takasaki J-I, Nishijo H (2012) Phenolic compounds prevent amyloid β-protein oligomerization and synaptic dysfunction by site-specific binding. J Biol Chem 287(18):14631–14643
Otake Y, Walle T (2002) Oxidation of the flavonoids galangin and kaempferide by human liver microsomes and CYP1A1, CYP1A2, and CYP2C9. Drug Metab Dispos 30(2):103–105
Ozipek M, Calis I, Ertan M, Ruedi P (1994) Rhamnetin 3-p-coumaroylrhamninoside from Rhamnus petiolaris. Phytochemistry 37(1):249–253
Pande V (2001) Antioxidant activity of rhamnazin-4′-O-beta-[apiosyl(1→2)] glucoside in the brain of aged rats. Pharmazie 56(9):749–750
Paoli P, Cirri P, Caselli A, Ranaldi F, Bruschi G, Santi A, Camici G (2013) The insulin-mimetic effect of Morin: a promising molecule in diabetes treatment. Biochim Biophys Acta 1830:3102–3111
Park JS, Rho HS, Kim DH, Chang IS (2006a) Enzymatic preparation of kaempferol from green tea seed and its antioxidant activity. J Agric Food Chem 54(8):2951–2956

Park JS, Rho HS, Kim DH, Chang IS (2006b) Enzymatic preparation of kaempferol from green tea seed and its antioxidant activity. J Agric Food Chem 54(8):2951–2956
Park H-H, Lee S, Son H-Y, Park S-B, Kim M-S, Choi E-J, Singh TS, Ha J-H, Lee M-G, Kim J-E (2008) Flavonoids inhibit histamine release and expression of proinflammatory cytokines in mast cells. Arch Pharm Res 31(10):1303–1311
Patrick L (2006) Lead toxicity, a review of the literature. Part 1: exposure, evaluation, and treatment. Altern Med Rev 11(1):2–22
Prahalathan P, Kumar S, Raja B (2012a) Effect of morin, a flavonoid against DOCA-salt hypertensive rats: a dose dependent study. Asian Pacific J Trop Biomed 2(6):443–448
Prahalathan P, Kumar S, Raja B (2012b) Morin attenuates blood pressure and oxidative stress in deoxycorticosterone acetate-salt hypertensive rats: a biochemical and histopathological evaluation. Metabolism 61(8):1087–1099
Prasad S, Phromnoi K, Yadav VR, Chaturvedi MM, Aggarwal BB (2010) Targeting inflammatory pathways by flavonoids for prevention and treatment of cancer. Planta Med 76(11):1044
Qian S, Chen L (1998) [Studies on the chemical constituents of Citrus reticulata]. Zhong Yao Cai 21(6):301
Ragasa CY, De Luna RD, Cruz WC Jr, Rideout JA (2005) Monoterpene lactones from the seeds of Nephelium lappaceum. J Nat Prod 68(9):1394–1396
Ramachandran L, Manu KA, Shanmugam MK, Li F, Siveen KS, Vali S, Kapoor S, Abbasi T, Surana R, Smoot DT (2012) Isorhamnetin inhibits proliferation and invasion and induces apoptosis through the modulation of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor γ activation pathway in gastric cancer. J Biol Chem 287(45):38028–38,040
Rao KV, Seshadri T (1946a) Colouring matter of the flowers of Hibiscus vitifolius. In: Proceedings of the Indian Academy of Sciences—section A. Springer, Basel, pp 352–356
Rao KV, Seshadri T (1946b) Constitution of gossypin—part I. In: Proceedings of the Indian Academy of Sciences—section A. Springer, Basel, pp 375–381
Rasilingam D, Duraisamy S, Subramanian R (2008) Anticonvulsant activity of bioflavonoid gossypin. Bangladesh J Pharmacol 4(1):51–54
Rattanachaikunsopon P, Phumkhachorn P (2007) Bacteriostatic effect of flavonoids isolated from leaves of *Psidium guajava* on fish pathogens. Fitoterapia 78(6):434–436
Richelson LS, Wahner HW, Melton L 3rd, Riggs BL (1984) Relative contributions of aging and estrogen deficiency to postmenopausal bone loss. N Engl J Med 311(20):1273
Saavedra N, Barrientos L, Herrera C, Alvear M, Montenegro G, Salazar L (2011) Effect of Chilean propolis on cariogenic bacteria Lactobacillus fermentum. Cienc Inv Agr 38(1):117–125
Sagara Y, Vanhnasy J, Maher P (2004) Induction of PC12 cell differentiation by flavonoids is dependent upon extracellular signal-regulated kinase activation. J Neurochem 90(5):1144–1155
Šarić A, Balog T, Sobočanec S, Kušić B, Šverko V, Rusak G, Likić S, Bubalo D, Pinto B, Reali D (2009) Antioxidant effects of flavonoid from Croatian *Cystus incanus* L. rich bee pollen. Food Chem Toxicol 47(3):547–554
Sarno S, Moro S, Meggio F, Zagotto G, Dal Ben D, Ghisellini P, Battistutta R, Zanotti G, Pinna LA (2002) Toward the rational design of protein kinase casein kinase-2 inhibitors. Pharmacol Ther 93(2–3):159–168
Schmidt A, Li C, Shi F, Jones AD, Pichersky E (2011) Polymethylated myricetin in trichomes of the wild tomato species Solanum habrochaites and characterization of trichome-specific 3′/5′- and 7/4′-myricetin O-methyltransferases. Plant Physiol 155(4):1999–2009
Selway JT (1986) Antiviral activity of flavones and flavans. Prog Clin Biol Res 213:521
Shahabadi N, Mohammadpour M (2012) Study on the interaction of sodium morin-5-sulfonate with bovine serum albumin by spectroscopic techniques. Spectrochim Acta A Mol Biomol Spectrosc 86:191–195
Shi L, Chen J, Wang Y-Y, Sun G, Liu J-N, Zhang J-X, Yan W, Qian C-F, Liu N, Fu Z (2012) Gossypin induces G2/M arrest in human malignant glioma U251 cells by the activation of Chk1/Cdc25C pathway. Cell Mol Neurobiol 32(2):289–296

Shimmyo Y, Kihara T, Akaike A, Niidome T, Sugimoto H (2008) Three distinct neuroprotective functions of myricetin against glutamate-induced neuronal cell death: involvement of direct inhibition of caspase-3. J Neurosci Res 86(8):1836–1845

Silberberg M, Morand C, Mathevon T, Besson C, Manach C, Scalbert A, Remesy C (2006) The bioavailability of polyphenols is highly governed by the capacity of the intestine and of the liver to secrete conjugated metabolites. Eur J Nutr 45(2):88–96

Silbergeld EK, Waalkes M, Rice JM (2000) Lead as a carcinogen: experimental evidence and mechanisms of action. Am J Ind Med 38(3):316–323

Sivakumar AS, Anuradha CV (2011) Effect of galangin supplementation on oxidative damage and inflammatory changes in fructose-fed rat liver. Chem Biol Interact 193(2):141–148

Steffen Y, Gruber C, Schewe T, Sies H (2008) Mono-*O*-methylated flavanols and other flavonoids as inhibitors of endothelial NADPH oxidase. Arch Biochem Biophys 469(2):209–219

Subash S, Subramanian P (2009) Morin a flavonoid exerts antioxidant potential in chronic hyperammonemic rats: a biochemical and histopathological study. Mol Cell Biochem 327(1–2):153–161

Sultana B, Anwar F (2008) Flavonols (kaempferol, quercetin, myricetin) contents of selected fruits, vegetables and medicinal plants. Food Chem 108(3):879–884

Sung B, Pandey MK, Aggarwal BB (2007) Fisetin, an inhibitor of cyclin-dependent kinase 6, down-regulates nuclear factor-κB-regulated cell proliferation, antiapoptotic and metastatic gene products through the suppression of TAK-1 and receptor-interacting protein-regulated IκBα kinase activation. Mol Pharmacol 71(6):1703–1714

Suomela J-P, Ahotupa M, Yang B, Vasankari T, Kallio H (2006) Absorption of flavonols derived from sea buckthorn (Hippophae rhamnoides L.) and their effect on emerging risk factors for cardiovascular disease in humans. J Agric Food Chem 54(19):7364–7369

Tanwar B, Modgil R (2012) Flavonoids: dietary occurrence and health benefits. Spatula DD 2(1):59–68

Tatsimo SJ, Tamokou Jde D, Havyarimana L, Csupor D, Forgo P, Hohmann J, Kuiate JR, Tane P (2012) Antimicrobial and antioxidant activity of kaempferol rhamnoside derivatives from Bryophyllum pinnatum. BMC Res Notes 5:158

Teiten M-H, Gaascht F, Dicato M, Diederich M (2012) Targeting the Wingless signaling pathway with natural compounds as chemopreventive or chemotherapeutic agents. Curr Pharm Biotechnol 13(1):245–254

Teixeira S, Siquet C, Alves C, Boal I, Marques MP, Borges F, Lima JL, Reis S (2005) Structure–property studies on the antioxidant activity of flavonoids present in diet. Free Radic Biol Med 39(8):1099–1108

Treutter D (2006) Significance of flavonoids in plant resistance: a review. Environ Chem Lett 4(3):147–157

Tsiklauri L, An G, Ruszaj DM, Alaniya M, Kemertelidze E, Morris ME (2011) Simultaneous determination of the flavonoids robinin and kaempferol in human breast cancer cells by liquid chromatography-tandem mass spectrometry. J Pharm Biomed Anal 55(1):109–113

Van Dijk C, Driessen AJ, Recourt K (2000) The uncoupling efficiency and affinity of flavonoids for vesicles. Biochem Pharmacol 60(11):1593–1600

Venkatesan T, Sorimuthu Pillai S (2012) Antidiabetic activity of gossypin, a pentahydroxyflavone glucoside, in streptozotocin-induced experimental diabetes in rats. J Diabetes 4(1):41–46

Vishnu Prasad CN, Suma Mohan S, Banerji A, Gopalakrishnapillai A (2009) Kaempferitrin inhibits GLUT4 translocation and glucose uptake in 3T3-L1 adipocytes. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 380(1):39–43

Vissiennon C, Nieber K, Kelber O, Butterweck V (2012) Route of administration determines the anxiolytic activity of the flavonols kaempferol, quercetin and myricetin—are they prodrugs? J Nutr Biochem 23(7):733–740

Viswanathan S, Thirugnana Sambantham P, Reddy K, Kameswaran L (1984) Gossypin-induced analgesia in mice. Eur J Pharmacol 98(2):289–291

Wei Y, Xie Q, Fisher D, Sutherland IA (2011) Separation of patuletin-3-O-glucoside, astragalin, quercetin, kaempferol and isorhamnetin from Flaveria bidentis (L.) Kuntze by elution-pump-out high-performance counter-current chromatography. J Chromatogr A 1218(36):6206–6211

Williams CA, Grayer RJ (2004) Anthocyanins and other flavonoids. Nat Prod Rep 21(4):539–573

Williamson G, Manach C (2005) Bioavailability and bioefficacy of polyphenols in humans. II. Review of 93 intervention studies. Am J Clin Nutr 81(1 Suppl):243S–255S

Wu M-Y, Hung S-K, Fu S-L (2011) Immunosuppressive effects of fisetin in ovalbumin-induced asthma through inhibition of NF-κB activity. J Agric Food Chem 59(19):10496–10,504

Yang J-G, Liu B-G, Liang G-Z, Ning Z-X (2008) Structure-activity relationship of flavonoids active against lard oil oxidation based on quantum chemical analysis. Molecules 14(1):46–52

Yang W, Sun J, Lu W, Li Y, Shan L, Han W, Zhang WD, Yu B (2010) Synthesis of kaempferol 3-O-(3″,6″-di-O-E-p-coumaroyl)-beta-D-glucopyranoside, efficient glycosylation of flavonol 3-OH with glycosyl o-alkynylbenzoates as donors. J Org Chem 75(20):6879–6888

Yang L, Chen Q, Wang F, Zhang G (2011a) Antiosteoporotic compounds from seeds of *Cuscuta chinensis*. J Ethnopharmacol 135(2):553–560

Yang S, Peng L, Su X, Chen F, Cheng Y, Fan G, Pan S (2011b) Bioassay-guided isolation and identification of antifungal components from propolis against *Penicillium italicum*. Food Chem 127(1):210–215

Yang Y, Choi JK, Jung CH, Koh HJ, Heo P, Shin JY, Kim S, Park W-S, Shin H-J, Kweon D-H (2011c) SNARE-wedging polyphenols as small molecular botox. Planta Med 78(3):233–236

Yu M-S, Lee J, Lee JM, Kim Y, Chin Y-W, Jee J-G, Keum Y-S, Jeong Y-J (2012) Identification of myricetin and scutellarin as novel chemical inhibitors of the SARS coronavirus helicase, nsP13. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 22:4049–4054

Yun BS, Lee IK, Kim JP, Chung SH, Shim GS, Yoo ID (2000) Lipid peroxidation inhibitory activity of some constituents isolated from the stem bark of Eucalyptus globulus. Arch Pharm Res 23(2):147–150

Zhen L, Zhu J, Zhao X, Huang W, An Y, Li S, Du X, Lin M, Wang Q, Xu Y (2012) The antidepressant-like effect of fisetin involves the serotonergic and noradrenergic system. Behav Brain Res 228(2):359–366

Impact of Electron Beam Irradiation on the Nutritional Attributes of Seeds of Coastal Sand Dune Wild Legume *Canavalia cathartica*

Prabhavathi Supriya, Kandikere R. Sridhar, and Ananthapadmanabha B. Arun

Introduction

According to the World Bank estimates, about 967 million of the global population are malnourished, and about 149.6 million children show retardation of growth due to inadequate supply of protein and nutrients (http://www.reliefweb.int/rw/rwb.nsf/db900SID/MCOI-7KGM87?OpenDocument). The undernourished populations mainly rely on monocarbohydrate diet like maize or rice without adequate supply of protein, fat, vitamin A, iodine, zinc, and iron (Boye et al. 2010). There is an immediate need to address the human malnutrition by adequate supply of inexpensive protein-energy alternative to expensive meat and animal products through edible legumes (e.g., peas, lentils, and beans) along with indigenous wild legumes (e.g., bay bean, cluster bean, velvet bean, and winged bean) (Singh et al. 2007; Boye et al. 2010). The edible legumes are of immense value and potential for blending with monocarbohydrate diets to meet the protein-energy requirement. Legume seeds are 2–3-fold rich in proteins than the cereals (NAS 1979), encompass considerable quantity of carbohydrates as energy reservoir, and play a vital role in the food formulations.

Intense search for novel underutilized wild legumes continued to exploit them as nutraceutical source in India (Vadivel and Janardhanan 2000; Siddhuraju and Becker 2001; Thangadurai et al. 2001, 2006; Siddhuraju et al. 2002a, b; Murthy et al. 2003; Seena and Sridhar 2006; Sridhar and Seena 2006; Vijayakumari et al. 2007; Bhat et al. 2008a, b). Among the wild legumes of the coastal habitats of southwest India, *Canavalia cathartica* Thouars is widely distributed especially in the coastal sand dunes and mangroves. This legume has valuable qualities like fast growth, production of large quantity of seeds, tolerance to adverse conditions, and resistance to pests

P. Supriya · K. R. Sridhar (✉)
Department of Biosciences, Mangalore University, Mangalore, Karnataka, India

A. B. Arun
Yenepoya Research Centre, Yenepoya University, Mangalore, Karnataka, India

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_25

(Seena and Sridhar 2006). Seeds of *C. cathartica* possess low fat, high protein, high colorific value, essential minerals, and essential fatty acids. These seeds are also endowed with some antinutritional principles (e.g., phenolics, canavanine, and concanavalin), which limit their use in human diets. Various methods of seed processing (e.g., cooking, roasting, and sprouting) have been tried to eliminate or reduce the antinutritional principles to desired levels (Bhat et al. 2008b; D'Cunha et al. 2009a, b; D'Cunha and Sridhar 2010). Gamma and electron irradiations have improved the nutritional quality of the seeds of *Mucuna*, *Sesbania*, and *Vigna* up to some extent (Siddhuraju et al. 2002b; Bhat et al. 2008b, 2009); hence, the present study explores the possibilities of improvement of nutritional qualities of seeds of *C. cathartica* of the coastal sand dunes of the southwest coast of India through electron beam irradiation.

Seeds and Processing

Canavalia cathartica in coastal sand dunes of southwest coast of India as a dominant legume spreads horizontally and serves as a good sand binder (Fig. 1). During summer, leaves become senescent (yellow) and consist of ripened (light-yellow) and dry (dark-brown) pods. The color of seeds includes light brown to dark brown, and some light-brown seeds possess longitudinal striations. Dry seeds are large and subcylindric and possess long hilum with 71% cotyledon and 29% seed coat (Table 1).

The dry pods of *C. cathartica* were harvested during summer months (February–April) from the coastal sand dunes of Someshwara, southwest coast of India (12°47′ N, 74°52′ E) (Fig. 1). Healthy seeds were separated in the laboratory and sun-dried for 2–3 days, and dimensions (calipers) and weight (gravimetric) of seeds were determined. Seeds (about 15–20 g) were packed in Ziploc polyethylene bags (6 × 6 cm) and were evenly exposed to EB irradiation (2.5, 5.0, 10, and 15 kGy) at room temperature (25 ± 2 °C) from the Microtron source (Microtron Centre, Mangalore University). The conditions of the Microtron accelerator were dose rate, 2 kGy/min; beam energy, 8 MeV (MeV is the unit of energy, 10^6 or 1000 keV; 1 eV is the energy received by an electron when it crosses a potential difference of 1 V); beam current,

Table 1 Seed characteristic features of *Canavalia cathartica* ($n = 25$; mean ± SD)

	Mean	Range
Length (cm)	1.71 ± 0.08	1.56–1.87
Width (cm)	1.09 ± 0.06	0.95–1.18
Thickness (cm)	0.88 ± 0.06	0.78–0.97
L/*B* ratio	1.58 ± 0.08	1.45–1.77
Hilum length (cm)	0.98 ± 0.05	0.90–1.07
Dry weight/seed (g)	0.73 ± 0.09	0.55–0.92
Dry weight of cotyledons (g)	0.52 ± 0.07	0.36–0.67
Dry weight of seed coat (g)	0.21 ± 0.02	0.17–0.24

Fig. 1 Horizontal spread of *Canavalia cathartica* on the coastal sand dune of Someshwara (Mangalore, Southwest coast of India) showing inflorescence and tender pods (**a**), dry pods (**b**), light-brown seeds (**c**), dark-brown seeds (**d**), and light-brown seeds with striations (**e**)

30 mA; and distance between the sample and the beam port, 30 cm (Table 2) (Siddappa et al. 1998). The absorbed dose was measured employing a current integrator calibrated with chemical dosimeters (Gupta et al. 1999). Seed samples packed in polythene bags without irradiation served as control (0 kGy). Cotyledons of control and irradiated seeds were separated from seed coat, powdered (Wiley Mill, mesh # 30), and preserved in airtight glass containers.

Table 2 Salient features of Microtron accelerator used to expose *Canavalia cathartica* seeds

	Details
Beam energy	8 MeV
Beam current	30 mA (max)
Dose rate	2 kGy/min
Distance between sample and the beam port	30 cm
Number of electron orbits	14
Beam size	3 mm × 5 mm
Pulse duration	2.5 μs
Pulse repetition rate	250 Hz (max)
Average beam power	375 W (max)
Magnetic field strength	1927.5 G
Magnetron power	2 MW
Operation frequency	2998 MHz

Nutritional Assessment

Proximal Analysis

The moisture content of the seed flour was estimated gravimetrically by drying at 100 °C in an oven (Scientronic SBIM-25; New Delhi, India) until a constant weight is attained. It was expressed in percentage based on the difference between initial and final weights of the flours. The total nitrogen and crude protein (N × 6.25) of the flours were evaluated by micro-Kjeldahl method (Humphries 1956). Total lipid extraction of the seed flours (1 g; moisture, <10%: 5.5–7%) was carried out in thimbles covered with glass wool in a Soxhlet extractor, and the lipid was extracted using 200 mL of petroleum ether at 60–80 °C (AOAC 1995). The condensation rate was fixed (150 drops/min for 7 h); the samples were allowed to cool, transferred to pre-weighed beaker, and evaporated to dryness at room temperature (28 ± 2 °C); and the lipid content was gravimetrically estimated. The crude fiber and ash contents were also determined gravimetrically following the AOAC (1995) methods.

The carbohydrates were calculated based on Müller and Tobin (1980):

$$\text{Carbohydrates } (\%) = \left[100 - \left(\text{Crude protein } (\%) + \text{Crude lipid } (\%) + \text{Crude fibre } (\%) + \text{Ash } (\%)\right)\right]$$

The gross energy was calculated using the formula by Ekanayake et al. (1999):

$$\text{Gross energy } \left(\text{kJ}/100\ \text{g}\right) = \left[\left(\text{Protein} \times 16.7\right) + \left(\text{Lipid} \times 37.7\right) + \left(\text{Carbohydrates} \times 16.7\right)\right]$$

Mineral Analysis

The mineral contents (sodium, potassium, calcium, magnesium, iron, copper, zinc, manganese, and selenium) of the seed flours were determined by atomic absorption spectrophotometry (GBC 932AA; Australia) by digesting in a mixture of concentrated nitric acid, sulfuric acid, and perchloric acid (10:0.5:2 v/v) (AOAC 1995). The vanadomolybdophosphoric acid method was employed to determine the total phosphorus by measuring the absorbance at 420 nm using KH_2PO_4 as standard (AOAC 1995). The ratios of Na/K and Ca/P were calculated.

Protein Fractions

Protein fractions were extracted as described by Gheyasuddin et al. (1970). One gram of the seed flour in 10 mL of chilled acetone (–20 °C) was ground in pre-chilled pestle and mortar. The seed protein was extracted at room temperature for 1 h using the acetone, flour to the solvent ratio of 1:10 (w/v) in a magnetic stirrer with the solvents: distilled water to extract albumins, 4% (w/v) NaCl solution for globulins, 60% isopropanol for prolamines, and 0.4% (w/v) NaOH solution for glutelins. After each extraction the slurry was centrifuged (4000 rpm, 10 min), and the residue obtained was further subjected to extraction. The soluble nitrogen content of each extract was estimated by micro-Kjeldahl method (Humphries 1956). The ratio of albumin-globulin was estimated.

To estimate nonprotein nitrogen, the sample (100 mg) was extracted using 10 mL of 10% ice-cold trichloroacetic acid (10%, 10 mL) (Merck) to precipitate protein (Sadasivam and Manickam 1992). The supernatant was collected, the precipitate centrifuged, and the process repeated. The volume of the pooled supernatant was made up to 25 mL with TCA (10%). Micro-Kjeldahl method (Humphries 1956) was employed to estimate the nitrogen in the supernatant.

Amino Acid Analysis

The amino acids of seed flours were assessed by the method outlined by Hofmann et al. (1997, 2003). A known quantity of seed flours was hydrolyzed with HCl (6 N, 15 mL) for 4 h at 145 °C. On cooling, HCl was eliminated using a rotoevaporator (Büchi Laboratoriumstechnik AG RE121; Switzerland) combined with a diaphragm vacuum pump (MC2C; Vacuubrand GmbH, Germany). The internal standard, trans-4-(Aminomethyl)-cyclohexanecarboxylic acid (Aldrich, purity, 97%) was added to each sample. The derivatization consisted of esterification with trifluoroacetylation (Brand et al. 1994).

The samples of standard amino acids were weighed in reaction vials and dried using CH_2Cl_2 under a gentle stream of helium with slow heating in an oil bath (40–60 °C) to remove any water traces. A 12 mL of fresh acidified isopropanol (acetyl chloride, 3 mL + 2-propanol, 12 mL) was added, and the mixture was heated at 100 °C for 1 h. After cooling, the reagent was removed by a gentle stream of helium at 60 °C. To remove propanol and water, evaporation with three successive aliquots of CH_2Cl_2 was followed. The dry residue was trifluoroacetylated with 200 mL trifluoroacetic anhydride overnight at room temperature. An aliquot of this solution was used without treatment for gas chromatography-combustion-isotope ratio mass spectrometry (GC-C-IRMS).

The measurements of GC-C-IRMS were carried out using a Hewlett-Packard 58590 II gas chromatograph, connected via a split with a combustion interface to the IRMS system (GC-C-II to MAT 252, Finnigan MAT; Germany) for the isotopic determination of nitrogen and via a transfer line with a mass spectrometer (GCQ, Finnigan MAT; Germany) for qualitative and quantitative analysis of the amino acids. The capillary column of GC was a 50 m × 0.32 mm i.d. × 0.5 μm BPX5 (SGE), operating with the carrier gas flow of 1.5 mL/min with following temperature and pressure: initial 50 °C (1 min), increased to 100 °C at 10 °C/min (10 min), increased to 175 °C at 3 °C/min (10 min), and increased to 250 °C/min (10 min); head pressure, 13 psi (90 kpa).

The ratio of essential amino acids (EAA)-total amino acids (TAA) was calculated:

$$\text{EAA / TAA ratio } (\%) = \left[\left(\text{Total EAA / TAA}\right) \times 100\right]$$

Protein Digestibility, EAA Score, PDCAAS, and PER

The in vitro protein digestibility (IVPD) was estimated according to Akeson and Stahmann (1964). Subsamples of defatted flours (100 mg each) were incubated (37 °C, 3 h) with pepsin (Sigma, 3165 units/mg protein) (1.5 mg/2.5 mL 0.1 N HCl) followed by inactivation (0.25 mL 1 N NaOH). Further incubation was continued (24 h, 37 °C) with trypsin (Sigma, 16,100 units/mg protein) and α-chymotrypsin (Sigma, 76 units/mg protein) (2 mg each/2.5 mL potassium phosphate buffer, pH 8.0, 0.1 M) followed by inactivation (0.7 mL 100% TCA). The zero-time control was maintained by inactivating the enzyme before the addition of substrate. After centrifuging the inactivated mixture, the supernatant was collected, and the residue was washed (2 mL 10% TCA) and centrifuged. The combined supernatant was extracted with 10 mL diethyl ether twice, and ether layer was removed by aspiration. The aqueous layer was kept in boiling water bath (15 min) to remove traces of ether. After attaining room temperature, the solution was made up to 25 mL with distilled water. Nitrogen (in 5 mL aliquots) content was determined by micro-Kjeldahl method (Humphries 1956) to estimate protein in the digest. The in vitro protein digestibility was expressed in percentage:

$$\text{IVPD } (\%) = \left(\text{Protein in digest} \div \text{Protein in defatted flour}\right) \times 100$$

The essential amino acid (EAA) score was calculated:

$$\text{EAA score} = \left[\left(\text{mg of EAA in 100 mg test protein} / \text{mg of EAA in 100 mg reference FAO WHO pattern}\right) \times 100\right]$$

The protein digestibility-corrected amino acid score (PDCAAS) of EAA requirement for adults (FAO-WHO 1991) was estimated:

$$\text{PDCAAS} = \left[\left(\text{EAA in food protein} / \text{EAA reference pattern of FAO WHO}\right) \times \text{IVPD } (\%)\right]$$

The protein efficiency ratio (PER) was calculated from the amino acid composition of seed flours based on Alsmeyer et al. (1974):

$$\text{PER}_1 = \left[-0.684 + 0.456 \times \text{Leu} - 0.047 \times \text{Pro}\right]$$
$$\text{PER}_2 = \left[-0.468 + 0.454 \times \text{Leu} - 0.105 \times \text{Tyr}\right]$$
$$\text{PER}_3 = \left[-1.816 + 0.435 \times \text{Met} + 0.78 \times \text{Leu} + 0.211 \times \text{His} - 0.944 \times \text{Tyr}\right]$$

Data Analysis

One-way ANOVA (ORIGIN Pro 8.1) was employed to determine the variation between the control (0 kGy) vs. irradiated (2.5, 5, 10, 15 kGy) seed flours of each parameter assessed.

Nutritional Qualities

Proximal Features

Moisture content and crude lipid of unirradiated seeds showed significant dose-dependent decrease in irradiated seeds (Table 3). The crude protein of irradiated seeds although slightly decreased was not significant, while crude fiber significantly decreased at 2 kGy ($p < 0.05$), 10 kGy ($p < 0.01$), and 15 kGy ($p < 0.05$). The crude lipid decreased significantly on irradiation. The ash content of irradiated seeds slightly increased without significant difference. The carbohydrate content of unirradiated seeds showed dose-dependent significant increase on irradiation, while the calorific value significantly decreased at 5 and 15 kGy ($p < 0.05$).

Table 3 Proximate composition of unirradiated and irradiated seeds of *Canavalia cathartica* on dry weight basis ($n = 5$; mean ± SD)

		Irradiated (kGy)			
	Unirradiated	2.5	5.0	10.0	15.0
Moisture (%)	7.69 ± 0.03	6.16 ± 0.26**	5.96 ± 0.26**	5.86 ± 0.31**	5.86 ± 0.72**
Crude protein (g/100 g)	29.48 ± 0.51	28.9 ± 0.88	28.02 ± 1.75	28.31 ± 0.51	25.1 ± 0.51
Crude lipid (g/100 g)	5.9 ± 0.82	3.88 ± 0.71*	3.09 ± 0.29*	3.52 ± 0.23*	3.01 ± 0.45*
Crude fiber (g/100 g)	2.12 ± 0.23	1.22 ± 0.13*	1.35 ± 0.34	0.99 ± 0.29**	1.26 ± 0.30*
Ash (g/100 g)	3.30 ± 0.20	3.35 ± 0.05	3.35 ± 0.05	3.40 ± 0.21	3.23 ± 0.06
Carbohydrates (g/100 g)	60.54 ± 2.71	64.34 ± 1.2*	63.31 ± 1.94**	65.11 ± 0.55**	65.44 ± 0.67***
Calorific value (kJ/100 g)	1715 ± 22	1675 ± 16	1657 ± 11*	1671 ± 12	1658 ± 13*

Asterisks across the columns between unirradiated and irradiated seeds are significantly different (one-way ANOVA: *$p < 0.05$, **$p < 0.01$, ***$p < 0.001$)

Minerals

Sodium, potassium, calcium, zinc, and manganese did not show significant difference between unirradiated and irradiated seeds (Table 4). Phosphorus showed dose-dependent significant decrease up to 10 kGy ($p < 0.001$) but significantly increased at 15 kGy ($p < 0.001$). Magnesium showed significant increase only at 5 kGy ($p < 0.05$), while iron in 2.5 kGy ($p < 0.05$). Copper significantly increased at 5 and 10 kGy ($p < 0.001$), while selenium decreased at 2.5, 5, and 15 kGy ($p < 0.001$). Potassium (1039–1171 vs. 500–700 mg/100 g), magnesium (94–131.5 vs. 60 mg/100 g), iron (11.4–16.6 vs. 10 mg/100 g), copper (0.7–0.89 vs. 0.6–0.7 mg/100 g), and manganese (0.9–1.4 vs. 0.3–1 mg/100 g) were higher than NRC-NAS standard for infants. Selenium was higher than the required limits proposed by Pennington and Young (1990) (0.48–0.89 vs. 0.05–0.2 mg/100 g). The Na/K ratio was decreased in all irradiated doses except for 15 kGy, while Ca/P ratio was elevated in all doses.

Protein Fractions

The true protein of unirradiated seeds was significantly increased only at 5 kGy (16.8 vs. 23.6 g/100 g; $p < 0.001$) (Table 5). Albumin in unirradiated seeds showed dose-dependent significant decrease (7.3 vs. 1.04–3.6 g/100 g), while globulin significantly decreased at 5 kGy (4.8 vs. 1.2 g/100 g, $p < 0.001$) and elevated at 15 kGy (4.8 vs. 9.2 g/100 g, $p < 0.001$). Prolamin and glutelin were significantly raised in

Table 4 Mineral composition of unirradiated and irradiated seeds of *Canavalia cathartica* (mg/100 g dry mass) ($n = 5$; mean ± SD)

Mineral	Unirradiated	Irradiated (kGy)				NRC-NAS pattern[a]; Pennington and Young[b]
		2.5	5.0	10.0	15.0	
Sodium	34.00 ± 0.25	26.00 ± 0.27	25.60 ± 0.62	25.23 ± 0.88	26.22 ± 0.25	120–200[a]
Potassium	1124 ± 0.92	1125 ± 0.14	1087 ± 2.5	1171 ± 0.39	1039 ± 1.02	500–700[a]
Calcium	76.39 ± 0.94	84.10 ± 1.05	70.76 ± 0.42	87.09 ± 0.08	95.65 ± 0.37	600[a]
Phosphorus	206.15 ± 0.49	183.91 ± 0.27**	179.66 ± 0.07**	178.97 ± 0.26**	198.15 ± 0.07**	500[a]
Magnesium	93.83 ± 0.07	105.32 ± 0.03	131.52 ± 0.02*	127.25 ± 0.06	116.08 ± 0.03	60[a]
Iron	16.64 ± 0.02	11.36 ± 0.03*	13.23 ± 0.02	15.39 ± 0.04	12.37 ± 0.03	10[a]
Copper	0.74 ± 0.01	0.70 ± 0.01	0.89 ± 0.02**	0.86 ± 0.01**	0.77 ± 0.03	0.6–0.7[a]
Zinc	2.50 ± 0.01	2.28 ± 0.04	2.92 ± 0.07	2.98 ± 0.02	2.74 ± 0.05	5.0[a]
Manganese	0.95 ± 0.04	0.90 ± 0.05	1.13 ± 0.01	1.38 ± 0.04	1.22 ± 0.04	0.3–1.0[a]
Selenium	0.86 ± 0.01	0.48 ± 0.01**	0.59 ± 0.01**	0.89 ± 0.01	0.59 ± 0.01**	0.05–0.2[b]
Na/K ratio	0.03	0.02	0.02	0.02	0.03	–
Ca/P ratio	0.37	0.46	0.39	0.49	0.48	–

Asterisks across the columns between unirradiated and irradiated seeds are significantly different (one-way ANOVA: $*p < 0.05$, $**p < 0.001$)

[a]NRC-NAS (1989) recommended pattern for infants

[b]Pennington and Young (1990)

all doses of irradiation except for glutelin at 15 kGy. The nonprotein nitrogen was significantly increased at 2.5 kGy ($p < 0.001$), while at 5, 10, and 15 kGy, it was significantly decreased ($p < 0.001$). The albumin/globulin ratio decreased in all doses (1.53 vs. 0.11–0.7) except for 5 kGy (2.26).

Amino Acids

Glutamic acid was highest followed by aspartic acid in irradiated seeds, while tryptophan was absent (Table 6). Irradiation did not significantly change the concentration of amino acids with a few exceptions. Aspartic acid and proline were significantly decreased at 2.5 and 5 kGy; methionine and lysine were significantly decreased at 2.5 kGy. The EAA/TAA ratio was increased in irradiated seeds (0.41 vs. 0.44–0.45).

Table 5 True protein, protein fractions, and nonprotein nitrogen of unirradiated and irradiated seeds of *Canavalia cathartica* (g/100 g) ($n = 5$; mean ± SD)

		Irradiated (kGy)			
	Unirradiated	2.5	5.0	10.0	15.0
True protein	16.82 ± 1.82	17.50 ± 0.75	23.61 ± 0.19***	18.24 ± 1.02	17.25 ± 0.14
Albumin	7.30 ± 1.53	3.60 ± 0.70**	2.64 ± 0.24***	2.24 ± 0.01***	1.04 ± 0.43***
Globulin	4.76 ± 0.64	5.15 ± 0.72	1.17 ± 0.24***	3.35 ± 0.01*	9.15 ± 0.29***
Prolamin	1.30 ± 0.01	3.10 ± 0.01*	7.48 ± 0.32**	4.09 ± 0.56*	2.35 ± 0.01*
Glutelin	3.46 ± 0.67	5.66 ± 0.73*	12.32 ± 0.25**	8.56 ± 0.46*	4.71 ± 0.01
Nonprotein nitrogen	12.56 ± 0.44	14.95 ± 0.44***	4.40 ± 0.01***	10.04 ± 0.72***	7.84 ± 0.01***
Albumin/globulin ratio	1.53	0.70	2.26	0.67	0.11

Asterisks across the columns between unirradiated and irradiated seeds are significantly different (one-way ANOVA: *$p < 0.05$, **$p < 0.01$, ***$p < 0.001$)

Among EAA, threonine was comparable or higher than soybean, wheat, and FAO-WHO pattern, while valine was higher or comparable to wheat and FAO-WHO pattern. Cystine and methionine of unirradiated seeds were comparable to soybean, wheat, and FAO-WHO pattern. Isoleucine in unirradiated and irradiated seeds was higher than FAO-WHO pattern, while tyrosine was higher than soybean and comparable to wheat. The lysine in unirradiated and irradiated seeds was higher than soybean, wheat, and FAO-WHO pattern, while histidine was comparable or higher than wheat and FAO-WHO pattern.

IVPD, EAA, PDCAAS, and PER

The IVPD was substantially high in unirradiated seeds, which did not change significantly on irradiation at 2.5 and 5 kGy (Table 7). The EAA score of unirradiated and irradiated seeds (2.5 and 5 kGy) was high in threonine, valine, isoleucine, lysine, and histidine. The EAA of threonine showed dose-dependent increase. The PDCAAS of threonine, valine, isoleucine, leucine, and histidine were higher in 5 kGy irradiated than unirradiated and 2.5 kGy irradiated seeds. The PER_1 and PER_2 were elevated in seeds irradiated with 5 kGy.

Table 6 Amino acid comparison of unirradiated and irradiated seeds of *Canavalia cathartica* in comparison with other food sources (mg/100 mg protein; $n = 5$, mean ± SD)

Amino acid	Unirradiated	Irradiated (kGy)		Soybean[a]	Wheat[b]	FAO-WHO[c]
		2.5	5.0			
Glutamic acid	13.06 ± 0.27	10.23 ± 0.3	10.95 ± 0.69	16.90	35.5–36.9	
Aspartic acid	14.28 ± 1.15	8.81 ± 0.27**	10.02 ± 0.63**	11.30	3.7–4.2	
Serine	3.89 ± 0.45	4.28 ± 0.13	4.49 ± 0.28	5.67	3.7–4.8	
Threonine	3.71 ± 0.13	3.83 ± 0.12	3.94 ± 0.25	3.76	2.2–3	3.4
Proline	3.10 ± 0.14	2.28 ± 0.07**	2.74 ± 0.17*	4.86	11.4–11.7	
Alanine	4.09 ± 0.09	4.11 ± 0.13	4.21 ± 0.26	4.23	2.8–3	
Glycine	3.38 ± 0.20	3.35 ± 0.10	3.45 ± 0.22	4.01	3.2–3.5	
Valine	3.96 ± 0.19	3.8 ± 0.12	4.00 ± 0.25	4.59	3.7–4.5	3.5
Cystine	1.83 ± 0.35	0.63 ± 0.02	0.62 ± 0.04	1.70	1.6–2.6	2.5[d]
Methionine	1.07 ± 0.15	0.70 ± 0.02*	0.84 ± 0.05	1.22	0.9–1.5	
Isoleucine	3.29 ± 0.17	3.05 ± 0.09	3.22 ± 0.20	4.62	3.4–4.1	2.8
Leucine	6.00 ± 0.14	5.68 ± 0.17	6.25 ± 0.39	7.72	6.5–7.2	6.6
Tyrosine	2.32 ± 0.29	2.50 ± 0.08	2.5 ± 0.16	1.24	1.8–3.2	6.3[e]
Phenylalanine	3.52 ± 0.15	3.44 ± 0.10	3.62 ± 0.23	4.84	4.5–4.9	
Tryptophan	ND	ND	ND	3.39	0.7–1	1.1
Lysine	6.43 ± 0.17	4.97 ± 0.15*	5.13 ± 0.32	6.08	1.8–2.4	5.8
Histidine	2.33 ± 0.06	2.39 ± 0.07	2.39 ± 0.15	2.50	1.9–2.6	1.9
Arginine	4.10 ± 0.20	3.86 ± 0.12	4.34 ± 0.27	7.13	3.1–3.8	
EAA/TAA ratio[f]	0.406	0.447	0.439			

Asterisks across the columns between unirradiated and irradiated seeds are significantly different (one-way ANOVA: *$p < 0.05$, **$p < 0.001$)
ND not detectable
[a]Bau et al. (1994)
[b]USDA (1999)
[c]FAO-WHO (1991)
[d]Cystine + methionine
[e]Tyrosine + phenylalanine
[f]Essential amino acid/total amino acid

Discussion

Seeds and Proximal Features

Seeds of *C. cathartica* are sufficiently large, heavy, and dormant and develop seed bank as they withstand extreme salinity, pH, and sand burial on the coastal sand dunes of southwest coast of India (Arun et al. 2001). The dose-dependent significant loss of moisture in *C. cathartica* seeds on irradiation supported the observation by Warchalewski et al. (1998). The crude protein did not show any significant variation

Table 7 In vitro protein digestibility (IVPD) (n = 5; mean ± SD), essential amino acid (EAA) score, protein digestibility corrected to amino acid score (PDCAAS) protein efficiency ratio (PER) of unirradiated and irradiated seeds of *Canavalia cathartica*

		Irradiated (kGy)	
	Unirradiated	2.5	5.0
IVPD (%)	67.41 ± 9.74	57.01 ± 8.40	73.46 ± 5.79
EAA Score			
Threonine	109.18	112.66	115.89
Valine	113.14	109.36	114.26
Cystine + methionine	116.00	53.25	58.28
Isoleucine	117.36	109.08	114.89
Leucine	90.97	86.03	94.62
Tyrosine + phenylalanine	92.70	39.62	40.95
Tryptophan	0	0	0
Lysine	110.86	84.47	88.45
Histidine	122.42	126.0	125.97
PDCAAS			
Threonine	73.60	64.23	85.13
Valine	76.27	62.35	83.94
Cystine + methionine	78.20	30.36	42.81
Isoleucine	79.11	62.18	84.40
Leucine	61.32	49.05	69.51
Tyrosine + phenylalanine	62.49	22.59	30.08
Tryptophan	0	0	0
Lysine	74.73	48.16	64.97
Histidine	82.52	71.84	92.54
PER			
PER_1	1.91	1.80	2.05
PER_2	2.01	1.85	2.10
PER_3	1.64	1.07	1.49

on irradiation of seeds of *C. cathartica*; however, linear dose-dependent increase in crude protein was seen on EB-irradiated *Mucuna pruriens* seeds (Bhat and Sridhar 2007; Bhat et al. 2008a) and in gamma-irradiated cowpea seeds (Dario and Salgado 1994; Bhat and Sridhar 2007). According to Taghinejad et al. (2010), EB irradiation had no effect on the protein composition of the canola meal even at higher doses (15, 30, and 45 kGy) of irradiation. The dose-dependent significant decrease in crude lipid in *C. cathartica* seeds corroborates the earlier study of *Mucuna* seeds (Bhat et al. 2008a; Bhat and Sridhar 2007). The quantity of crude lipid extracted at 2.5 kGy was higher than many wild legumes (3.9 vs. 1.2–1.9 g/100 g) (Viano et al. 1995). The crude fiber significantly decreased especially at 2.5, 10, and 15 kGy, and such decrease was also evident in *Mucuna* seeds (Bhat et al. 2008b; Bhat and Sridhar 2007). The decrease in fiber was predicted due to the depolymerization and delignification (Sandev and Karaivanov 1977; Campbell et al. 1987). Reduction of fiber

by EB irradiation is nutritionally advantageous as they trap less protein and carbohydrates (Balogun and Fetuga 1986). The ash content of *C. cathartica* seeds did not alter significantly, and it reflects in minimum loss of minerals on EB irradiation. However, EB irradiation of *Mucuna* seeds resulted in significant loss of ash content (Bhat and Sridhar 2007). The carbohydrates showed almost significant dose-dependent elevation between irradiated seeds of *C. cathartica* as seen in *Mucuna* seeds (Bhat et al. 2007, 2008b). Usually carbohydrates exist in a combined state with other molecules, and the EB irradiation facilitated the breakdown of such compounds into simple free sugars. The carbohydrate content of *C. cathartica* is higher than *Mucuna* seeds (Siddhuraju et al. 2000; Adebowale et al. 2005; Bhat et al. 2008b). The calorific value of *C. cathartica* seeds is higher than cultivated pulses (Kuzayali et al. 1966), which decreased on EB irradiation as seen in *Mucuna* seeds (Bhat and Sridhar 2007; Bhat et al. 2008b).

Mineral Profile

Legumes are generally rich in potassium, magnesium, iron, zinc, and calcium (Salunkhe et al. 1985). However, seeds of *C. cathartica* showed higher potassium, magnesium, and iron content than NRC-NAS (NRC-NAS 1989) recommended pattern for infants. Potassium, magnesium, iron, zinc, and calcium were not significantly differed on irradiation of *C. cathartica* seeds (except for iron at 2.5 kGy, 16.6 vs. 11.4 mg/100 g). Selenium showed significant decrease in all doses except for 10 kGy and is higher than the recommended dose by Pennington and Young (1990). Iron, selenium, zinc, and manganese are well-known antioxidants (Talwar et al. 1989), and they also are involved in strengthening the immune system. Selenium serves as an antioxidant in protecting cells against free radicals (Combs and Gray 1998). Magnesium, zinc, and selenium are also known to prevent cardiomyopathy, muscle degeneration, immunological dysfunction, and congenital malformations (Chaturvedi et al. 2004). By and large, the EB irradiation of *C. cathartica* did not significantly influence the overall composition of minerals. Interestingly minerals were not drastically altered by EB irradiation of *Mucuna* seeds (Bhat et al. 2008b). At the recommended dose of radiation (10 kGy), only phosphorus significantly elevated and copper significantly decreased without significant effects on other minerals of *C. cathartica* seeds. This result corroborates with studies on EB irradiation of *Mucuna* seeds (Bhat et al. 2008b). The ratio of Na/K lies in favorable range (0.02–0.03) in unirradiated as well as irradiated seeds of *C. cathartica* as the low ratio (<1) is known to control high blood pressure (Yusuf et al. 2007). The Ca/P ratio was lower than desired (0.37–0.49 vs. >1), and low Ca/P ratio (<1) will not prevent the loss of calcium in urine and restore calcium in bones (Shills and Young 1988). However, in irradiated seeds there is an increasing trend of Ca/P ratio (0.37 vs. 0.39–0.49) as phosphorus significantly decreased on irradiation.

Protein Fractions

Although crude protein did not elevate significantly at 5 kGy, the true protein significantly elevated (16.8% vs. 23.6%). Albumin showed dose-dependent decrease and resulted in the loss of sulfur amino acids. The globulin stooped to the lowest level at 5 kGy and elevated to the highest at 15 kGy but did not result in decrease of hemagglutinin activity. The albumin/globulin ratio was elevated at 5 kGy (1.53 vs. 2.26) and seems to be a desirable dose for improvement of seed nutritional quality. The nonprotein nitrogen decreased significantly in all doses of irradiation with elevation of prolamin and glutelin.

Amino Acid Profile

Except for a few amino acids, almost all amino acids were not altered by EB irradiation. Aspartic acid, proline, methionine, and lysine were significantly decreased on irradiation. The major amino acid, aspartic acid, showed a dose-dependent decrease as seen in *Mucuna* seeds (Bhat et al. 2008b). Quantities of many EAA are comparable to soybean (Bau et al. 1994), wheat (USDA 1999), and FAO-WHO (1991) standard. Legumes are known to possess high lysine and are limiting in sulfur amino acids (Norton et al. 1985; Jansman 1996). In the seeds of *C. cathartica*, lysine in unirradiated seeds was higher than FAO-WHO (1991) pattern as well as wheat (USDA 1999) but showed significant loss at 2.5 kGy. Sulfur amino acids of legumes are susceptible for irradiation (Khattak and Kloppenstein 1989) due to radiation-induced damage of sulfhydryl and disulfide groups in proteins (Lee 1962). Although cystine + methionine of unirradiated seeds are comparable to soybean, wheat, and FAO-WHO pattern, EB irradiation decreased methionine significantly (2.5 kGy, 1.1 vs. 0.7).

IVPD, EAA Score, PDCAAS, and PER

According to Saunders et al. (1973), IVPD is comparable to in vivo protein digestibility in the rat model. The IVPD of unirradiated seeds of *C. cathartica* (67.41 ± 9.74) was not significantly altered on irradiation at 2.5 kGy (57.01 ± 8.40), 5 kGy (73.46 ± 5.79), and 10 kGy (56 ± 5.52), but it was significantly decreased at 15 kGy (46.67 ± 5.77; $p = 0.041$). Decrease in the IVPD may be possible due to the formation of cross-links and aggregates by the unfolded proteins which are less susceptible to enzyme hydrolysis (Cho et al. 1999). This clearly shows that the recommended dose 10 kGy will not change the protein digestibility drastically. Interestingly, the IVPD of unirradiated *Mucuna* seeds showed significant EB irradiation

dose-dependent increase up to 15 kGy; however it reduced significantly at 30 kGy as seen in *C. cathartica* seeds at 15 kGy. Such increase in IVPD has also been reported in some cereals and legumes (Nene et al. 1975; Reddy et al. 1979). According to Abu-Tarboush (1998), increase in IVPD by irradiation is due to the degradation of proteins into small peptides and their susceptibility to enzyme attack. Decrease in protein digestibility at high doses of irradiation was attributed to increased total phenolics in *Mucuna* seeds as phenolics inactivate by binding to digestive enzymes (Bhat et al. 2008b).

The EAA score was adequate in six and four EAA of unirradiated and irradiated seeds, respectively. It was deficient in leucine and tyrosine + phenylalanine and tryptophan in unirradiated seeds. The EAA score of threonine and histidine increased on irradiation, while it decreased in cystine + methionine, isoleucine, leucine, tyrosine + phenylalanine, and lysine. The EAA score of valine, although decreased at 2.5 kGy, was elevated higher than unirradiated seeds at 5 kGy (113.1 vs. 114.3). Drastic reduction in EAA score was seen in cystine + methionine, tyrosine + phenylalanine, and lysine. The EAA score of cystine + methionine in *Mucuna* seeds was also decreased significantly by EB irradiation. The PDCAAS of nine EAA of *C. cathartica* showed drastic decrease at 2.5 kGy, but at 5 kGy, threonine, valine, isoleucine, leucine, and histidine were elevated. Interestingly, the PDCAAS did not show significant change up to 15 kGy of EB irradiation in *Mucuna* seeds, while the gamma irradiation resulted in significant elevation in all irradiated doses (5, 10, 15, and 30 kGy) (Bhat and Sridhar 2007; Bhat et al. 2008b). The PER_1, PER_2, and PER_3 of unirradiated seeds decreased at 2.5 kGy, while PER_1 and PER_2 were elevated at 5 kGy. Increase in PER_1 and PER_2 of seeds irradiated at 5 kGy shows its superiority. According to Friedman (1996), PER below 1.5 is of poor-quality proteins, between 1.5 and 2 as moderate quality, and PER over 2 of high quality. In the present study with one exception (PER_3 at 2.5 kGy, 1.1), the rest were moderate ($\geq$1.5) to high ($\geq$2) indicating the desired PER value of *C. cathartica* seeds.

Fatty Acid Profile

Supriya et al. (2012) demonstrated selective changes in fatty acid methyl esters (FAMEs) of *C. cathartica* seeds, and the low doses of EB irradiation (e.g., 2.5 and 5 kGy) serve as hormetic doses in selective enhancement of fatty acids. Considerable variation in FAMEs profile on subjecting to EB irradiation was seen by the Soxhlet (hot) and Bligh and Dyer (cold) methods of extraction of total lipids. Changes in medium-chain fatty acids, long-chain saturated fatty acids, and mono- and polyunsaturated fatty acids and ratios of fatty acids were dependent on the seed material, the dose EB irradiation, and the method of lipid extraction.

Conclusions

This study revealed selective changes of proximal features, minerals, protein fractions, and amino acids of seeds of wild legume *Canavalia cathartica* on EB irradiation. The promising features of EB irradiation include decrease in quantities of crude fiber, globulin, and Na/K ratio while increase in carbohydrates, Ca/P ratio, albumin/globulin ratio, EAA/TAA ratio, EAA score (threonine, valine, leucine, and histidine), PDCAAS (threonine, valine, isoleucine, leucine, and histidine), and PER. The EB irradiation did not significantly change contents of crude protein, minerals (e.g., sodium, potassium, calcium, magnesium, zinc, and manganese), and EAA (threonine, cystine, isoleucine, leucine, tyrosine, phenylalanine, and histidine). Such selective impact of EB irradiation on the constituents of *C. cathartica* seeds provides a wide scope to utilize for value-added food stuffs with nutritional and functional significance in future. To follow the more specific impact and application of EB irradiation on *C. cathartica* seeds, further studies need to focus on changes in carbohydrates, albumin, globulin, EAA, IVPD, and hemagglutinin activity.

Acknowledgments Authors are grateful to Mangalore University for the permission to carry out this study in the Department of Biosciences. S.P. is grateful to the Bhabha Atomic Research Centre, Mumbai, India, for a fellowship under BRNS project. K.R.S. gratefully acknowledges UGC-BSR Faculty Fellowship granted by the University Grants Commission, New Delhi.

References

Abu-Tarboush HM (1998) Irradiation inactivation of some antinutritional factors in plant seeds. J Agric Food Chem 46:2698–2708

Adebowale YA, Adeyemi A, Oshodi AA (2005) Variability in the physicochemical, nutritional and antinutritional attributes of six *Mucuna* species. Food Chem 89:37–48

Akeson WR, Stahmann MA (1964) A pepsin pancreatin digest index of protein quality. J Nutr 83:257–261

Alsmeyer RH, Cunningham AE, Happich ML (1974) Equations predict PER from amino acid analysis. Food Technol 28:34–38

AOAC (1995) Official methods of analysis, 16th edn. Association of Official Analytical Chemists, Washington, DC

Arun AB, Raviraja NS, Sridhar KR (2001) Effect of temperature, salinity and burial on seed germination and seedling emergence of five coastal sand dune legumes. Int J Ecol Environ Sci 27:23–29

Balogun AM, Fetuga BL (1986) Chemical composition of some underexploited leguminous crop seeds in Nigeria. J Agric Food Chem 34:189–192

Bau HM, Vallaume C, Lin CF, Evard J, Quemener B, Nicolas JP, Mejean L (1994) Effect of solid state fermentation using *Rhizophus oligosporus* sp. T-3 on elimination of antinutritional substances and modification of biochemical constituents of defatted rape seed meal. J Sci Food Agric 65:315–322

Bhat R, Sridhar KR (2007) Shelf life improvement and value addition of nutraceutically valued legume—*Mucuna* through application of ionizing radiation. In: International conference on integration of science and technology for sustainable development. Faculty of Agricultural Technology, King Mongkut's Institute of Technology Ladkrabang, Bangkok, pp 1–16

Bhat R, Sridhar KR, Seena S (2008a) Nutritional quality evaluation of velvet bean seeds (*Mucuna pruriens*) exposed to gamma irradiation. Int J Food Sci Nutr 59:261–278

Bhat R, Sridhar KR, Young C-C, Arun AB, Ganesh S (2008b) Composition and functional properties of raw and electron beam irradiated *Mucuna pruriens* seeds. Int J Food Sci Technol 43:1338–1351

Bhat R, Sridhar KR, Karim A, Young C-C, Arun AB (2009) Influence of γ-radiation on the nutritional and functional qualities of lotus seed flour. J Agric Food Chem 57:9524–9531

Boye J, Zare F, Pletch P (2010) Pulse proteins: processing, characterization, functional properties and applications in food and feed. Food Res Int 43:414–431

Brand WA, Tegtmeyer AR, Hilkert A (1994) Compound-specific isotope analysis, extending towards 15N/14N and 13C/12C. Org Geochem 21:585–594

Campbell GL, Sosulski FW, Classen HL, Ballam GM (1987) Nutritive value of irradiated and β-glucanase treated wild oat groats (*Avena fatua* L.) for broiler chickens. Anim Feed Sci Technol 16:243–252

Chaturvedi VC, Shrivastava R, Upreti RK (2004) Viral infections and trace elements: a complex interaction. Curr Sci 87:1536–1554

Cho Y, Yang JS, Song KB (1999) Effect of ascorbic acid and protein concentration on the molecular weight profile of bovine serum albumin and b-lactoglobulin and γ-irradiation. Food Res Int 32:515–519

Combs GF, Gray WP (1998) Chemopreventive agents: selenium. Pharmacol Ther 79:179–192

D'Cunha M, Sridhar KR (2010) L-canavanine and L-arginine in two wild legumes of the genus *Canavalia*. Inst Integr Omics Appl Biotechnol J 1:29–33

D'Cunha M, Sridhar KR, Bhat R (2009a) Nutritional quality of germinated seeds of *Canavalia maritima* of coastal sand dunes. In: Bellinghouse VC (ed) Food processing: methods, techniques and trends. Nova Science Publishers Inc., New York, pp 363–384

D'Cunha M, Sridhar KR, Young C-C, Arun AB (2009b) Nutritional evaluation of germinated seeds of coastal sand dune wild legume *Canavalia cathartica*. Int Food Res J 16:249–260

Dario AC, Salgado JM (1994) Effect of thermal treatments on the chemical and biological value of irradiated and non-irradiated cowpea bean (*Vigna unguiculata* L. Walp.) flours. Plant Foods Hum Nutr 46:181–186

Ekanayake S, Jansz ER, Nair BM (1999) Proximate composition, mineral and amino acid content of mature *Canavalia gladiata* seeds. Food Chem 66:115–119

FAO-WHO (1991) Protein quality evaluation: reports of a joint FAO-WHO expert consultation, Food and nutrition paper # 51. Food and Agricultural Organization of the United Nations, FAO, Rome

Friedman M (1996) Nutritional value of proteins from different food sources—a review. J Agric Food Chem 44:6–29

Gheyasuddin S, Cater CM, Mattil KF (1970) Effect of several variables on the extractability of sunflower seed proteins. J Food Sci 35:453–456

Gupta BL, Narayan GR, Nilekani SR, Bhat RM, Kaul A, Bemalkhedkar MM (1999) Preliminary dosimetry studies for a Microtron using chemical dosimeters. J Radiat Prot Environ 22:169–174

Hofmann D, Jung K, Bender J, Gehre M, Schüürmann G (1997) Using natural isotope variations of nitrogen in plants as an early indicator of air pollution stress. J Mass Spectrom 32:855–863

Hofmann D, Gehre M, Jung K (2003) Sample preparation techniques for the determination of natural 15N/14N variations in amino acids by gas chromatography-combustion-isotope ratio mass spectrometry (GC-C-IRMS). Isot Environ Health Stud 39:233–244

Humphries EC (1956) Mineral composition and ash analysis. In: Peach K, Tracey MV (eds) Modern methods of plant analysis, vol 1. Springer, Berlin, pp 468–502

Jansman AJM (1996) Bioavailability of proteins in legume seeds. Grain Legumes (AEP) 11:19–28

Khattak AB, Kloppenstein CF (1989) Effects of gamma irradiation on the nutritional quality of grain and legume. Cereal Chem 66:170–171

Kuzayali MV, Cowan JW, Sabry ZI (1966) Nutritive value of middle eastern foodstuffs—II. Composition of pulses, seeds, nuts and cereal products of Lebanon. J Sci Food Agric 17:82–84

Lee CC (1962) Electron paramagnetic resonance (EPR) and packaging studies on γ-irradiation flour. Cereal Chem 39:147–155
Müller HG, Tobin G (1980) Nutrition and food processing. Croom Helm Ltd., London
Murthy KSR, Rani SS, Pullaiah T (2003) Wild edible plants of Andhra Pradesh, India. J Econ Taxon Bot 27:613–630
NAS (1979) Tropical legumes resources for the future. National Academy of Sciences, Washington, DC
Nene SP, Vakil UK, Sreenivasan A (1975) Effect of gamma radiation on red gram (*Cajanus cajan*) proteins. J Food Sci 40:815–819
Norton G, Bliss FA, Bressani R (1985) Biochemical and nutritional attributes of grain legumes. In: Summerfield RJ, Roberts EH (eds) Grain legume crops. Collins, London, pp 73–114
NRC-NAS (1989) Recommended dietary allowances. National Academy Press, Washington, DC
Pennington JAT, Young B (1990) Iron, zinc, copper, manganese, selenium and iodine in foods from the United States total diet study. J Food Comp Anal 3:1661–1684
Reddy SJ, Pubols MH, McGinnis J (1979) Effect of irradiation on nutritional value of dry field beans (*Phaseouls vulgaris*) for chicks. J Nutr 109:1307–1312
Sadasivam S, Manickam A (1992) Biochemical methods for agricultural sciences. Wiley Eastern Ltd., New Delhi
Salunkhe DK, Kadam SS, Chavan JK (1985) Chemical composition. In: Salunkhe DK, Kadam SS, Chavan JK (eds) Postharvest biotechnology of food legumes. CRC Press Inc., Boca Raton, FL, pp 33–35
Sandev S, Karaivanov I (1977) The composition and digestibility of irradiated roughage treatment with gamma irradiation. Tierernahrung Fuetterung 10:238–242
Saunders RM, Connor MA, Booth AN, Bickoff EM, Kohler GO (1973) Measurement of digestibility of alfaalfa concentrates by *in vivo* and *in vitro* methods. J Nutr 103:530–535
Seena S, Sridhar KR (2006) Nutritional and microbiological features of little known legumes, *Canavalia cathartica* Thouars and *C. maritima* Thouars of the southwest coast of India. Curr Sci 90:1638–1650
Shills MEG, Young VR (1988) Modern nutrition in health and disease. In: Neiman DC, Buthepodorth DE, Nieman CN (eds) Nutrition. WmC Brown Publishers, Dubugue, IA, pp 276–282
Siddappa K, Ganesh S, Balakrishna KM, Ramamurthi SS, Soni HC, Shrivatsava P (1998) Variable energy Microtron for R & D work. J Radiat Phys Chem 51:441–442
Siddhuraju P, Becker K (2001) Species/variety differences in biochemical composition and nutritional value of Indian tribal legumes of the genus *Canavalia*. Nahrung 45:224–233
Siddhuraju P, Becker K, Makkar HPS (2000) Studies on the nutritional composition and antinutritional factors of three different germplasm seed materials of an underutilized tropical legume, *Mucuna pruriens* var. *utilis*. J Agric Food Chem 48:6048–6060
Siddhuraju P, Makkar HPS, Becker K (2002a) The effect of ionizing radiation on antinutritional factors and the nutritional value of plant materials with reference to human and animal food. Food Chem 78:187–205
Siddhuraju P, Osoniyi O, Makkar HPS, Becker K (2002b) Effect of soaking and ionising radiation on various antinutritional factors of seeds from different species of an unconventional legume, *Sesbania* and a common legume, green gram (*Vigna radiata*). Food Chem 79:273–281
Singh RJ, Chung GH, Nelson RL (2007) Landmark research in legumes. Genome 50:525–537
Sridhar KR, Seena S (2006) Nutritional and antinutritional significance of four unconventional legumes of the genus *Canavalia*—a comparative study. Food Chem 99:267–288
Supriya P, Sridhar KR, Nareshkumar S, Ganesh S (2012) Impact of electron beam irradiation on fatty acid profile of *Canavalia* seeds. Food Bioproc Technol 5:1049–1060
Taghinejad M, Ebrahimi SR, Azizi S, Shawrang P (2010) Effects of electron beam irradiation on chemical composition, antinutritional factors, ruminal degradation and in vitro protein digestibility of canola meal. Radiat Phys Chem 79:1264–1269
Talwar GP, Srivastava LM, Mudgil KD (1989) Textbook of biochemistry and human biology, 2nd edn. Prentice Hall of India Private Ltd., New Delhi

Thangadurai D, Viswanathan MB, Ramesh N (2001) The chemical composition and nutritional evaluation of *Canavalia virosa*: a wild perennial bean from Eastern Ghats of Peninsular India. Eur Food Res Technol 213:456–459

Thangadurai D, Murthy KSR, Pullaiah T (2006) Characterization, conservation and utilization of plant genetic resources for future food, agriculture and medicine. In: Trivedi PC (ed) Biodiversity assessment and conservation. Springer, Berlin, pp 247–263

USDA (1999) Nutrient data base for standard reference release # 13, Food group 20: cereal grains and pasta. Agriculture Handbook # 8–20. Agricultural Research Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, DC

Vadivel V, Janardhanan K (2000) Chemical composition of the underutilized legume *Cassia hirsuta* L. Plant Foods Hum Nutr 55:369–581

Viano J, Masotti V, Gaydou EM, Bourre PJL, Ghiglione C, Graud M (1995) Compositional characteristics of 10 wild legumes from Mediterranean French pastures. J Agric Food Chem 43:680–681

Vijayakumari K, Pugalenthi M, Vadivel V (2007) Effects of soaking and hydrothermal processing methods on the levels of antinutrients and *in vitro* protein digestibility of *Bauhinia purpurea* L. seeds. Food Chem 103:968–975

Warchalewski JR, Gralik J, Zawirska-Wojtasia R, Zabielski J, Kuśnierz R (1998) The evaluation of wheat grain odour and colour after gamma and microwave irradiation. Electr J Pol Agric Univ Food Sci Technol 1:1–11

Yusuf AA, Mofio BM, Ahmed AB (2007) Proximate and mineral composition of *Tamarindus indica* Linn 1753 seeds. Sci World J 2:1––4

Phytochemical Profile and Therapeutic Properties of Leafy Vegetables

Venu S., Khushbu S., Santhi S., Ashish Rawson, Sunil C. K., and Sureshkumar K.

Introduction

Consumption of fruits and vegetables are predicted to prevent many deadly diseases and disorders; though no direct evidence is available (UNESCO 2008), these can be due to the presence of various antioxidants, phenolic compounds, minerals, vitamins, and other pigments in it. Still consumption of these fruits and vegetables are found to be very less. Among these green leafy vegetables (GLV) are considered best instant sources of fibers, essential amino acids, vitamins, and minerals (Sharma and Kumar 2013; Adenipekun and Oyetunji 2010) producing various biological effects likes antimicrobial effect (Kubo et al. 2004; Hedges and Lister 2009; Dhiman et al. 2012), antihistaminic (Kesari et al. 2005), hypolipidemic (Khanna et al. 2002), anticarcinogenic (Rajeshkumar et al. 2002), and antidiabetic properties (Yamamura et al. 1998) to cure and prevent many lifestyle and harmful diseases such as insomnia, hypertension, diabetes, age-related ailments, oxidative strains, hypertension, and cardiovascular diseases (Iyer Shanti et al. 2012; Vishwakarma and Dubey 2011; Patro et al. 2011). However, these bioactive compounds are present in low amount; higher consumption of these GLVs along with physical exercise can prevent age-related disorders.

GLVs are also used as medicine to produce physiological actions on the human health because of the presence of their bioactive compounds, which produce immune system repair, antibacterial, antioxidant, antiviral, detoxification, and anti-inflammatory activities (Lampe 2003; Raju et al. 2007). Vitamins and secondary metabolites may be commonly termed as "phytochemicals," considering certain vitamins as primary metabolites whereas provitamins such as β-cryptoxanthin or β-carotene, etc. as a part of secondary metabolites (Poiroux-Gonord et al. 2010).

S. Venu · S. Khushbu · S. Santhi · A. Rawson (✉) · C. K. Sunil · K. Sureshkumar
Indian Institute of Food Processing Technology, Thanjavur, TN, India
e-mail: ashish.rawson@iifpt.edu.in

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_26

These provitamins are converted to vitamins in the animal body producing the essential affect. GLVs are also rich source of antinutrient, reducing many diseases like CVD, high blood pressure, stroke, etc. (Aletor and Adeogun 1995).

Plant Metabolites

The level of plant metabolites are greatly influenced by genetic and environmental factors as well as storage and transportation conditions. Growth factors including temperature, humidity, light, type of soil, damage by microorganisms and insects, stress induced by UV radiation, application of fertilizers, pesticides, and heavy metals alter the metabolite composition of plants (Orcutt and Nilsen 2000).

Primary Metabolites

The primary metabolites such as amino acids, carbohydrates, fatty acids, and organic acids are commonly found in all species across broad range of phylogenetic groups. These compounds are directly related to the growth and development, hormone and protein synthesis, respiration, and photosynthesis. The biochemical pathways used for modifying and synthesizing these primary metabolites, which are found essentially same in all organisms, apart from minor variations (Hounsome et al. 2008). Classification of primary metabolites is given in Fig. 1.

Protein

Proteins are complex molecules having various compositions of amino acids. They play a vital role in regulating body metabolism, cellular function, and structure. Hence, they add value to daily diet of consumers. Green leafy vegetables are rich and inexpensive sources of proteins because of their synthesizing ability of amino acids (Aletor et al. 2002). Ribulose-1, 5-bisphosphate carboxylase/oxygenase (RUBISCO) is a major leaf cell protein (accounts to about 50%) which plays a critical role in carbon fixation during photosynthesis (Kawashima Nobumaro and Wildman 1970). This is a similar protein found in leaf chloroplasts of all green leafy vegetables with minor changes in amino acid base for different species. Recent research reported that the green leafy vegetables such as broccoli (*Brassica oleracea* var. italica), duckweed (*Lemna perpusilla*), and spinach (*Spinacia oleracea*) render all the essential amino acids that meet the FAO nutrition standards (Edelman and Colt 2016). Studies have also proven that cassava (*Manihot esculenta*) leaves have amino acid profile balanced with pulse and dairy products (Fasuyi 2005). The protein content in African leafy vegetables such as green leaves of septic weed (*Senna occidentalis*) and cassava (7 g/100 g of fresh weight) are greater than exotic

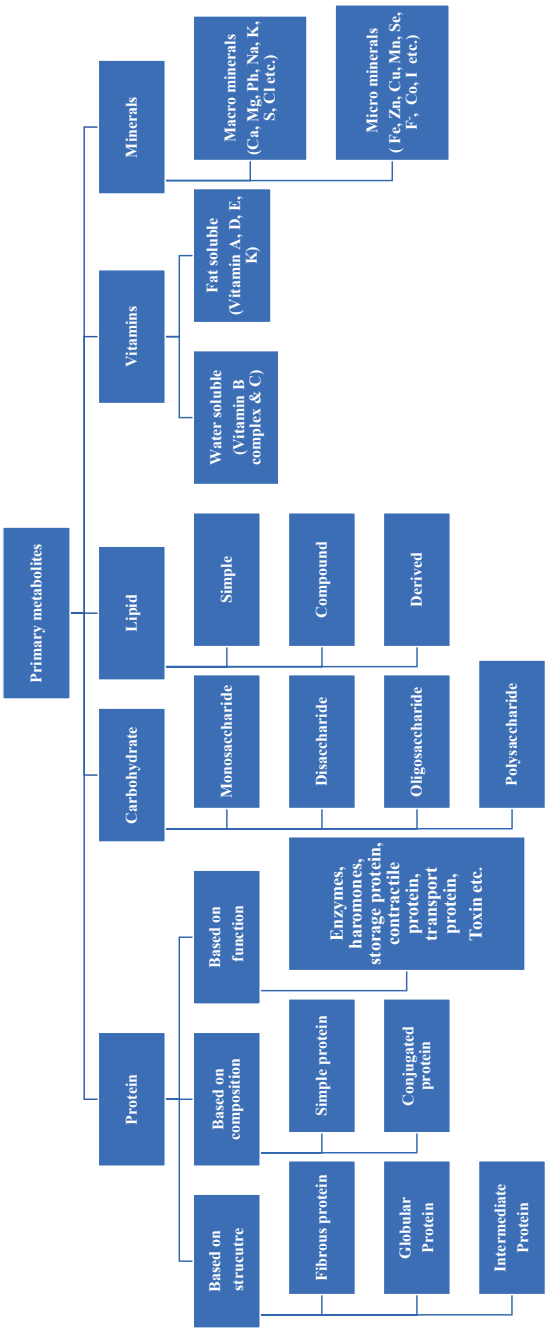


Fig. 1 Classification of primary metabolites, Boyle 2005; Belitz et al. 2009

leafy vegetables such as *Brassica oleracea* subsp. capitata (1 g/100 g of fresh weight) (Uusiku et al. 2010). However, African leafy vegetables have relatively less protein content than legume proteins (white lupine (*Lupinus albus*) with 11.5 g protein/100 g of fresh weight) (Kalogeropoulos et al. 2010).

According to prevailing environmental conditions and farming practices, the amount of protein in leafy vegetables may vary (Odhav et al. 2007). Thermal processing inactivates heat-labile anti-nutritional factors such as lectins, goitrogens, thiaminases, and protease inhibitors.

It improves digestibility of proteins and starch but leads to protein denaturation and hence effects the bioavailability of proteins in leafy vegetables (Gibson et al. 2006).

Dietary Fiber

Dietary fiber is considered a class of compound, which comprises a mixture of plant carbohydrate polymer, noncarbohydrate component, polysaccharides, non-starch polysaccharides, and oligosaccharides (Elluech et al. 2010). In these mixtures, non-starch polysaccharides and oligosaccharides are considered a major component of dietary fiber. Based on their solubility, the dietary fiber can be classified into insoluble fibers (cellulose, lignin, hemicellulose) and soluble fibers (β-glucan, pectin, gums) (Natesh et al. 2017). Not all these components can be digested by human enzyme, and it is passed through the gastrointestinal tract as bulk fiber. Later this bulk fiber undergoes digestion and modification by the enzymes of colon microbes (Blaut 2002). The consumption of dietary fiber may reduce the cardiovascular diseases, colon cancer, diabetes, diverticulosis, obesity, and constipation (Jenkins et al. 2001; Spiller 2001). According to the Food and Nutritional Board, Institute of Medicine (2001), the daily requirement of dietary fiber is 30 g/day for men older than age 50 and 38 g/day for men younger than age 50. The daily requirement for women is 25 g/day (age below 50) and 21 g/day (age above 50).

The green leafy vegetables are considered as good source of dietary fiber. For example, the soluble fiber content of curry leaf is 4.4% and insoluble fiber is 55.6% (Bako et al. 2002). But the amount of dietary fiber may vary based on species, climate condition, geographical condition, maturity stages, and fertilizers used (Natesh et al. 2017). According to the literature, those Indian green leafy vegetables such as hibiscus (*Hibiscus cannabinus*), cabbage (*Brassica oleracea*), spinach (*Spinacia oleracea*), coriander (*Coriandrum sativum*), fenugreek (*Trigonella foenum-graecum*), and basella (*Basella rubra*) are rich sources of soluble dietary fiber (Jenkins et al. 2001). African green leafy vegetables such as *Portulaca oleracea*, *Galinsoga parviflora, Justicia flava*, *Adansonia digitata*, *Amaranthus* sp., *Arachis hypogaea*, *Bidens pilosa*, *Brassica* sp., *Ceratotheca triloba*, *Vigna unguiculata*, *Chenopodium album*, *Emex australis*, *Cleome* sp., *Cucurbita pepo*, *Senna occidentalis*, *Bidens pilosa*, *Manihot esculenta*, *Solanum* sp., and *Chenopodium album* are good sources of dietary fiber. The fiber content of African leafy vegetables may range from 1 g/100 g to 8 g/100 g (Uusiku et al. 2010). Leafy vegetables such as

water leaf (*Talinum triangulare*), *Telfairia occidentalis*, and *Amaranthus hybridus* are found in different parts of Nigeria. Literature reveals that the African green leafy vegetables lose their dietary fiber content when cooking at high temperature, because it breaks the weak bonds between polysaccharides and cleavage of glycosidic linkages which leads to solubilization of the dietary fiber (Svanberg et al. 1997). The cooking effect is also examined in Indian leafy vegetables, in that there is a minute increase in total dietary content which may be due to the polymerization or hydration of total dietary fiber fractions (Kala and Prakash 2004). Puupponen Pimiä et al. (2003) reported that there is no consequential change in insoluble, soluble, and total dietary fiber of freezer and blanched stored spinach. Determination of dietary fiber in green leafy vegetables can be estimated by enzymatic or gravimetric methods given by AOAC.

Vitamins

Vitamins are available in the form of precursors in vegetables and are essential for proper functioning of bones, vision, hairs, teeth, skin, and the mucous membranes. Calcium and phosphorous help in the growth and maintenance of bones. Vitamins play a key role for the normal functioning of nervous system, the endocrine glands, and clotting of blood. They are also essential for macromolecule metabolism (Randhawa et al. 2015). The WHO (2009) reported 15 million pregnant women and 190 million young children from developing countries are suffering from vitamin A deficiency. This deficiency can be reduced by consumption of vegetables and green leafy vegetables instead of antioxidant supplements.

Raw green leafy vegetables have considerable amount of various vitamins such as fat-soluble vitamins (vitamin E and vitamin A) and water-soluble vitamins (vitamins C, B1, B2, B3, B5, B7, B9). Green leafy vegetables have high vitamin K contents when compared to fruits and vegetables because of their direct involvement in the photosynthetic process. Leafy vegetables like spinach have sufficient vitamin C content to prevent and cure scurvy (Randhawa et al. 2015). Green leafy vegetables such as spinach, asparagus, Brussels sprouts, turnip, lettuce, and cauliflower are reasonably good sources of B vitamins (USDA 2005).

Vitamin A

In leaves, vitamin A is in the form of provitamin A carotenoid such as α-carotene, β-carotene (abundant source), γ-carotene, β-cryptoxanthin, and non-provitamin A carotenoids such as neoxanthin, lutein, and violaxanthin. Beta-carotene is one of the most important *provitamin* carotenoids with respect to its quantitative contribution to the diet and relative provitamin A activity (SACN 2005). The level of vitamin A in the diet relies on the amount of beta-carotene of the African green leafy vegetables (ALVs), amount consumed, bioavailability, and bioefficacy (West et al. 2002). Vitamin A content is expressed in terms of retinol equivalents (RE), where 1 RE is

equivalent to 6 μg of β-carotene and 12 μg of the other provitamin carotenoids such as α-carotene, β-cryptoxanthin, and γ-carotene. The US Institute of Medicine has recently replaced retinol equivalents (RE) with "retinol activity equivalent" (IOM 2000). According to the Institute of Medicine dietary reference, intake of vitamin A content is recommended to be 700 and 900 μg RAE for an adult female and male, respectively.

The β-carotene content of African leafy vegetables varies according to the species from 99 mg RE in *Vigna unguiculata* to 1970 mg RE (per 100 g edible portion) for *M. esculenta*. Considering the most recent edition of Recommended Nutrient Intakes (RNI), 1 RE is equivalent to 6 mg β-carotene (FAO/WHO 2001). According to the RNI, 300 g fresh African leafy vegetables intake would satisfy the dietary requirements of vitamin A for children. But for adults, 300 g of fresh *Cucurbita pepo* would provide 97% of male RNI and 116% of female RNI, while 300 g of fresh *V. unguiculata* would provide only 50 and 59% of male and female daily requirements, respectively. The stability and retention of carotenoids in various foods are affected by their food particle size, chemical nature, storage time and storage conditions, and the method and severity of processing (Cheynier 2005). Cooking of leafy vegetables enhances the bioavailability of α-carotene and β-carotene (Khachik et al. 1992). Heat treatment such as steaming and boiling enables to release carotenoids which are bound by protein and helps them to be extracted readily (Howard et al. 1999). Higher retention of β-carotene in the vegetables was achieved by microwave steaming and stir-frying with oil compared to stir-frying with water or boiled (Masrizal et al. 1997). Addition of oil to *Ceiba* sp. and *Manihot* sp. has shown to improve serum retinol in Ghanaian preschool children (Takyi 1999). When compared to the raw vegetables, cooked and pureed spinach provides higher plasma total β-carotene concentrations (Rock et al. 1998). While cooking, extractability increases because of enzyme destruction which could otherwise lead to carotene degradation (Kala and Prakash 2004).

Riboflavin

Riboflavin characterized as vitamin B2 which may have neuroprotective effects in neurological disorders like migraine, multiple sclerosis, and Parkinson disease. It is also having an antioxidant property which can prevent lipid peroxidation and reperfusion oxidative injury. Riboflavin is found in various plants and animal foods such as milk, eggs, and green leafy vegetables (Saedisomeolia and Ashoori 2018). African green leafy vegetables (ALVs) contain reasonably good concentrations of riboflavin. The riboflavin content in ALVs ranges from 0.04 mg/100 g (*Brassica* species) (Kruger et al. 1998) to 0.6 mg/100 g (*M. esculenta*) (FAO 1990). Intake of 300 g of fresh *Cleome* sp. would give 33–60% RNI of riboflavin for children, 30% for adult women, and 23% for adult men. Riboflavin deficiency commonly arises with lactose intolerance (FAO/WHO 2001), and this condition is majorly found in African populations. The deficiency of this vitamin is related to the increased risk of cardiovascular diseases (Powers 2003).

Folic Acid

Folic acid characterized as vitamin B9 also known as pteroylmonoglutamic acid or simply as "folates." It is also an essential part of B complex (Cossins 2000). GLV contains abundant amount of folic acid and related compounds. Folic acid contains two to eight glutamic acids (essential amino acids) in the primary structure of pteroylmonoglutamic acids (Herbert et al. 1999). It is an important part of transport of amino acids to specific location in the protein synthesis pathway (Kelly 1998) and for the methylation of RNA, DNA, and amino acids (Lucock et al. 1996; Ma et al. 1997). Methionine is regenerated from homocysteine by folic acid to maintain the cardiovascular working (Leclerc et al. 1998). Being an essential part of cell proliferation and DNA synthesis, it is also essential for the cell division to regulate sleep, mood, appetite, and working of central nervous system (Bottiglieri et al. 2000). For the same reason, this is very important for the growth of fetus and during gestation (FDA 1997; Antony 2007). RDA suggests 400 μg/day of folate for the nonpregnant women, whereas 4 mg/day of folate is suggested for women having history of delivering babies with neural tube defects. RDA also suggests 600 μg/day for the development of maternal tissues, the placenta, and the fetus. Deficiency of folates also leads to many serious issues like neural tube defects in babies such as spina anencephaly and bifida and neurocristopathies. Studies have shown that daily intake of folic acid in women belonging to low-economic status of rural and urban areas of India is just 75–165 μg (Misra et al. 2002), which is very much less than that of FDA recommendations. Reports are not available on toxicity of folic acids with no to consumption of folic acid-supplemented food or folic acid-fortified foods. This might be due to the fact that folic acids are solubilized in water and are excreted from the body in the form of urine (Hathcock 1997). Scientists are continuously working for increasing such health-promoting compounds in the fruits and GLV by new methods of genetics and plant breeding. They proved that use of good quality soil for growing fruits and GLVs can abundantly improve the concentration of health-promoting compounds (Lester and Eischen 1996; Lester and Crosby 2002).

Vitamin C

The ascorbic acid content in some of the unprocessed ALVs varies from 2 to 311 mg (per 100 g edible portion) in *Solanum nigrum* and *M. esculenta*, respectively. It is evident from the literature that this vitamin is immensely affected by processing. Ascorbic acid reduced by 19, 61, and almost 100% in cooked amaranth, dried *Vernonia amygdalina*, and dried *Adansonia digitata* respectively (FAO 1990). In order to minimize the degradation of ascorbic acid and browning, it is advisable to store the leafy vegetables at low temperature (Negi and Roy 2001).

The ascorbic acid intake from green leafy vegetables in sub-Saharan Africa is often determined by various seasonal factors, time and temperature of storage, as well as postharvest storage, chlorination of water, and cooking practices (FAO 2001). When vegetables are blanched, the loss of ascorbic acid is relatively higher

than those under frozen storage. These losses are primarily due to the leaching effect occurring during thermal processing rather than the chemical degradation (Sreeramulu et al. 1983; Wallace et al. 1998; Howard et al. 1999; Mepba et al. 2007; Rawson et al. 2012; Rawson et al. 2013) and reported a significant reduction in ascorbic acid content of several African green leafy vegetables after thermal treatment. The most effective preservation methods reported in retaining the ascorbic acid content is steam blanching followed by dehydration (Schippers 2000). In comparison with sun drying, shade drying, and vacuum drying, freeze-drying is found to be the most suitable method for retaining ascorbic acid content of African leafy vegetables (Shitanda and Wanjala 2006).

Minerals

Green leafy vegetables are good sources of calcium, magnesium, iron, zinc, sodium, and potassium. The absorption of these minerals is influenced by the presence of various inhibitors such as phytate and oxalates (Kumari et al. 2004). During processing, minerals have higher stability as compared to vitamins and proteins (Kala and Prakash 2004). But mineral contents in green leafy vegetables are affected by several factors including climatic conditions, water availability, soil type and pH, plant variety and age, and especially the application of fertilizers.

For instance, mineral profile of spinach has higher calcium content (1036 mg/100 g), followed by magnesium (827 mg/100 g), sodium (827 mg/100 g), and iron (28.4 mg/100 g), while duck weed is rich in zinc (15 mg/100 g). However, soy seed also has notable calcium content (195 mg/100 g), magnesium (407 mg/100 g), iron (6 mg/100 g), phosphorus (469 mg/100 g), sodium (12.3 mg/100 g), potassium (2387 mg/100 g), and zinc (3.7 mg/100 g) when compared to all the seeds but relatively higher in the green leafy vegetables (Natesh et al. 2017).

Iron

Iron deficiency in women and children results in the development of anemia (Galloway 2003). The iron content of African leafy vegetables ranges between 0.2 and 12.8 mg/100 g edible portion for *Solanum nigrum* and *Lesianthera africana*, respectively. Intake of 300 g of fresh *L. africana* and *S. nigrum* would give 7 and 431% of RNI for children and 2 and 131% of RNI for adult women, respectively (Uusiku et al. 2010).

Zinc

Zinc deficiency leads to impaired gastrointestinal and immune functions. It varies within the same species and ranges from 0.03 to 3.1 mg/100 g edible portion for *Ipomoea batatas*, 1.4 to 18.5 mg/100 g for *C. album*, and 0.02 to 8.4 mg/100 g for

Amaranthus species. Zinc bioavailability is adversely influenced by phytate concentration (Turnlund et al. 1984).

Calcium and Magnesium

The calcium content in African leafy vegetables is 668 mg/100 g in *U. urens* and 15 mg/100 g edible portion in some *Chenopodium* species, while the magnesium content is 225 mg/100 g in *J. flava* and 13 mg/100 g in *Brassica* species. The bioavailability of these minerals is affected by the presence of anti-nutritional factors, age and sex of an individual, and also the fat content in the diet (Uusiku et al. 2010) (Table 1).

Secondary Metabolites

Biologically active substances like secondary metabolites are majorly found in fruits and vegetables (Tables 2 and 3). These metabolites do not directly participate in the growth and development of the human body but are important for all the biochemical processes and producing positive effects in human life. British Nutrition Foundation divided these secondary metabolites into four categories – alkaloids (12,000 compounds), terpenoids (25,000 compounds), phenolic compounds (8000 compounds), and sulfur-containing compounds (Goldberg 2008). Plant samples tested for secondary metabolites were also found to be used for body building, cell growth, and repair (Kubmarawa et al. 2008). Classification of secondary metabolites is shown in Fig. 2.

Phenolic Compounds

Polyphenols are considered as main antioxidant having in vitro effect on the human health including vitamins and carotenoids (Gardner et al. 2000). Correlation between the polyphenol content and antioxidant activity was found for the African GLVs (Mai et al. 2007), whereas no such correlation was found in Indian (Dasgupta and De 2007) and Malasian GLVs (Ismail et al. 2004). This correlation depends on the methodology and type of the vegetable, which is due to contribution of antioxidant component with different antioxidant activity (Ismail et al. 2004). Similar work done by (Modi 2007) on boiled *Amaranthus* proves the correlation between the growth temperature and plant age with respect to antioxidant activity. He found that *Amaranthus* harvested 60 days after sowing had higher antioxidant capacity than that harvested after 20 or 40 days of sowing. Correlation was also found between the food processing or cooking method on the phenolic content and thus affecting the antioxidant activity. Increase and decrease in flavonoids were observed with the cooking method. While increase in flavonoids may be due to inhibition of oxidative enzymes and increased release of flavonoids from the breakdown of cell wall, which

Table 1 Primary metabolite composition of selected green leafy vegetables (Fresh weight)

Botanical name	Common name	Protein	Fiber	Vitamins				Minerals			
				A (µg RE)	B2 (mg)	B9 (µg)	C (mg)	Iron (mg)	Zinc (mg)	Calcium (mg)	Magnesium (mg)
Adansonia digitata	Baobab	4[a]	3 [a]	–	–	–	52[a]	–	–	410[a]	–
Amaranthus hybridus	Smooth pigweed	4–6[b]	3[b]	327[c]	0.1–0.4[a,c]	64[c]	46–126[c,d]	0.3–3.8[b,e]	0.02–8.4[b,e]	253–425[a,b,c]	105–224[b,c]
Arachis hypogaea	Peanut	4[f]	8[f]	–	–	–	87[f]	1.0[f]	2.9[f]	–	–
Bidens pilosa	Black-jack	3–5[a,b,c]	3–6[a,b,c]	301–985[a,c]	0.2[c]	351[c]	23[c,d]	2.0–6.0[b,c]	0.9–2.6[b,c]	162–340[a,b,c]	79–135[b,c]
Brassica sp.	–	1–2[f]	2–4[f]	–	0.0–0.2[c,f]	16[c]	30–113[c,f]	0.5–3.5[f]	0.9–1.3[f]	27–31[c,e]	13[c]
Ceratotheca triloba	Wild foxglove	2[b]	2[b]	–	–	–	–	2.85[b]	0.45[b]	105.75[b]	64.2[b]
Chenopodium album	Fat hen	4–5[b,c]	2[b,c]	917[c]	0.3[c]	30[c]	31[c]	2.2–6.1[b,c]	1.4–18.5[b,c]	15–226[c,e]	155–211[b,c]
Cleome sp.		5[a,b,c]	1–[5a,b,c]	1200[c]	0.1[c]	346[c]	13–[50a,c]	2.6–2.9[b,c]	0.6–0.8 [b,c]	31–288 [b,c]	44–76[a,b,c]
Cucurbita pepo	Sweet dumpling squash	3[c]	2[c]	194[c]	0.1[c]	36[c]	11[c]	1.5 [c]	0.06–0.2 [c]	39 [c]	38 [c]
Emex australis	Doublegee	5[b]	2 [b]	–	–	–	–	1.7 [b]	2.2 [b]	17.6 [b]	111.98 [b]
Galinsoga parviflora	Mielcilla	4 [b]	1 [b]	–	–	–	–	3.0 [b]	1.5 [b]	17.82 [b]	74.91 [b]
Justicia flava	Impela	3 [b]	1 [b]	–	–	–	–	2.6 [b]	1.8 [b]	331.68 [b]	225 [b]
Lesianthera Africana		3[g]	4 [g]	–	–	–	–	0.2 [g]	0.1 [g]	–	–
Manihot esculenta	Cassava	7[b]	4 [b]	1970 [b]	0.6 [b]	–	311 [b]	–	–	30–303 [b]	–
Momordica sp.	–	5[a]	3[a]	–	–	–	4[d]	3.5[b]	1.8 [b]	403.2 [b]	91.95 [b]
Portulaca oleracea	Parsley	3 [b]	1 [b]	–	–	–	–	2.9 [b]	2.4 [b]	95.27 [b]	72.59 [b]

Senna occidentalis	Septicweed	7 [b]	3 [b]	–	–	–	–	2.5 [b]	2.1 [b]	513 [b]	196.42 [b]
Solanum sp.	–	3–5 [b]	1 [b]	1070[c]	0.3 [c]	404 [c]	2 [c]	8.5–12.8[b,c]	0.8–3.5[b,c,h]	278–310[b,c]	84[c]
Spinacia oleracea	Spinach	3 [c]	3 [c]	669 [c]	0.2 [c]	194 [c]	28 [c]	2.7 [c]	0.4 [c]	99 [c]	79 [c]
Vernonia sp.	–	3–5[a,h]	2–5 [a,h]	–	0.3 [a]	457 [a]	51–198 [a,h]	0.8–3.2 [h]	0.08[e]	145 [a]	–
Vigna unguiculata	Cowpea	5[c]	4 [c]	99 [c]	0.2 [c]	141 [c]	50 [c]	0.3–3[c,d]	0.23[d]	188 [c]	60 [c]

[a]FAO (1990)
[b]Odhav et al. (2007)
[c]Kruger et al. (1998)
[d]Steyn et al. (2001)
[e]Orech et al. (2007)
[f]Mosha and Gaga (1999)
[g]Isong and Idiong (1997)
[h]Ejoh et al. (2007)

Table 2 Secondary metabolite composition of selected green leafy vegetables (fresh weight)

Botanical name	Common name	Total phenolics (mg/g)	Total carotenoids (mg/g)	Total flavonoids (mg/g)
Amaranthus hybridus	Smooth pigweed	3.7 ± 0.23[h]	–	1.2 ± 0.35[h]
B. napus cv.	Summer rape	3.58 ± 0.08 [g]	–	0.78 ± 1.52 [g]
Brassica oleracea	Cauliflower	0.62[d]	0.32 [d]	2.99 [d]
C. gynandra	Stinkweed	3.94 ± 0.09 [g]	–	2.19 ± 0.11 [g]
Coriandrum sativum	Coriander	0.49[d]	0.42 [d]	2.26 [d]
Cucurbita maxima	Pumpkin	2.68 ± 0.03 [g]	2.05 ± 0.01 [g]	1.55 ± 0.44 [g]
Lactuca sativa	Lettuce	0.11[d]	0.43 [d]	0.22 [d]
Manihot esculenta	Cassava	2.94 ± 0.11 [g]	2.19 ± 0.01 [g]	–
Murraya koenigii	Curry leaves	18.40 ± 1.23[c]	0.214[f]	–
Petroselinum crispum	Parsley	0.30[d]	0.33 [d]	1.63 [d]
Spinacia oleracea L.	Spinach	2.09 ± 0.03[b]	0.12 ± 0.01[b]	2.92[d]
Telfairia occidentalis	Fluted gourd	1.27 [g]	–	7.68 [g]
Trigonella corniculata L.	Kasuri methi	17.30[a]	–	7.40 [a]
Trigonella foenum-graecum L.	Fenugreek	8.75[a]	0.24 [a]	6.42 [a]

[a]Pasricha and Gupta (2014)
[b]Bunea et al. (2008)
[c]Kamath et al. (2015)
[d]Shehata et al. (2014)
[e]Okonwu et al. (2017)
[f]Jain et al. (2012)
[g]Moyo et al. (2013)
[h]Jimenez-Aguilar and Grusak (2017)

is binding site flavonoids and decrease was observed due to heat lability or leaching of specific flavonoids (Yamaguchi et al. 2001). Neugart et al. (2015) in his study found indigenous African leafy vegetables as high source of flavonoid glycosides and hydroxycinnamic acid derivatives, which is evident from the fragmentation patterns, retention time, maximum absorption wavelength, and molecular masses. He also observed high concentration of phenolic compounds in Ethiopian kale (17,206 and12,228 μg/g DW), African nightshade (16,677 and 16,387 μg/g DW), and cowpea (16,185 and 17,408 μg/g DW), whereas medium concentration was observed in common kale (6690 and 12,143 μg/g DW) and amaranth (14,221 and 9229 μg/g DW) and low concentrations in spider plant (5297 and 6295 μg/g DW). Vietnamese plants used for making drinks showed highest antioxidant activity and amount of polyphenol compared to that of edible wild vegetables, herbs, and dark green vegetables (Mai et al. 2007).

Leaves of sub-Saharan Africa plants of *P. oleracea*, *Momordica balsamina*, and *J. flava* had high antioxidant activity and 96, 94, and 96% scavenging capacity, respectively (Odhav et al. 2007). Amaranth, a famous and highly nutritious leaf, also showed good content of polyphenolics including anthocyanin in amaranth

Table 3 Anti-nutritional content of selected green leafy vegetables (fresh weight)

Botanical name	Common name	Oxalic acid (mg/100 g)	Phytate (mg/100 g)	Tannins (mg/100 g)	Saponins (mg/100 g)	Trypsin inhibitors (mg/100 g)
Amaranthus sp.	–	40–50[a]	140 [a]	–	–	4–14 [f]
Boscia senegalensis	Bokkhelli	–	–	–	–	17 [f]
Celosia argentea	Plumed cockscomb	20 [a]	–	–	–	7 [f]
Crassocephalum sp.	–	10–20 [a]	–	–	–	–
Euphorbia hirta	Asthma plant	1115[b]	655 [b]	1222 [b]	6.7 [b]	–
Hibiscus esculentus	Okra	10 [a]	–	–	–	–
Ipomoea involucrata	Moon flower	913 [b]	176 [b]	869 [b]	386 [b]	–
Launaea sp.	–	108 [b]	9 [b]	168 [b]	424 [b]	–
Leptadenia hastate	–	–	–	–	–	1 [f]
Lesianthera Africana	–	2[c]	–	–	–	–
Maerua crassifolia sp.	–	–	–	–	–	82 [f]
Manihot esculenta	Cassava	20 [a]	100 [a]	–	–	–
Solanum sp.	–	–	40[e]	–	–	–
T. occidentalis	Fluted pumpkin	0.3814 [g]	0.7131 [g]	0.1436 [g]	0.4175 [g]	0.959 [g]
Talinum triangulare	Philippine spinach	20 [a]	190 [a]	–	–	–
Telfairia occidentalis	Fluted gourd	40 [a]	–	–	–	–
Trigonella corniculata L.	Kasuri methi	–	–	–	2.79 [f]	–
Trigonella foenum-graecum L.	Fenugreek	–	–	–	2.37 [f]	–
Vernonia sp.	–	1–2[d]	120 [a]	0.1–0.3 [d]	–	–
Xanthosoma sp.	–	654 [b]	131 [b]	481 [b]	655 [b]	–

[a]Aletor and Adeogun (1995)
[b]Wallace et al. (1998)
[c]Isong and Idiong (1997)
[d]Ejoh et al. (2007)
[e]Oboh et al. (2005)
[f]Vanderjagt et al. (2000)
[g]Okonwu et al. (2017)

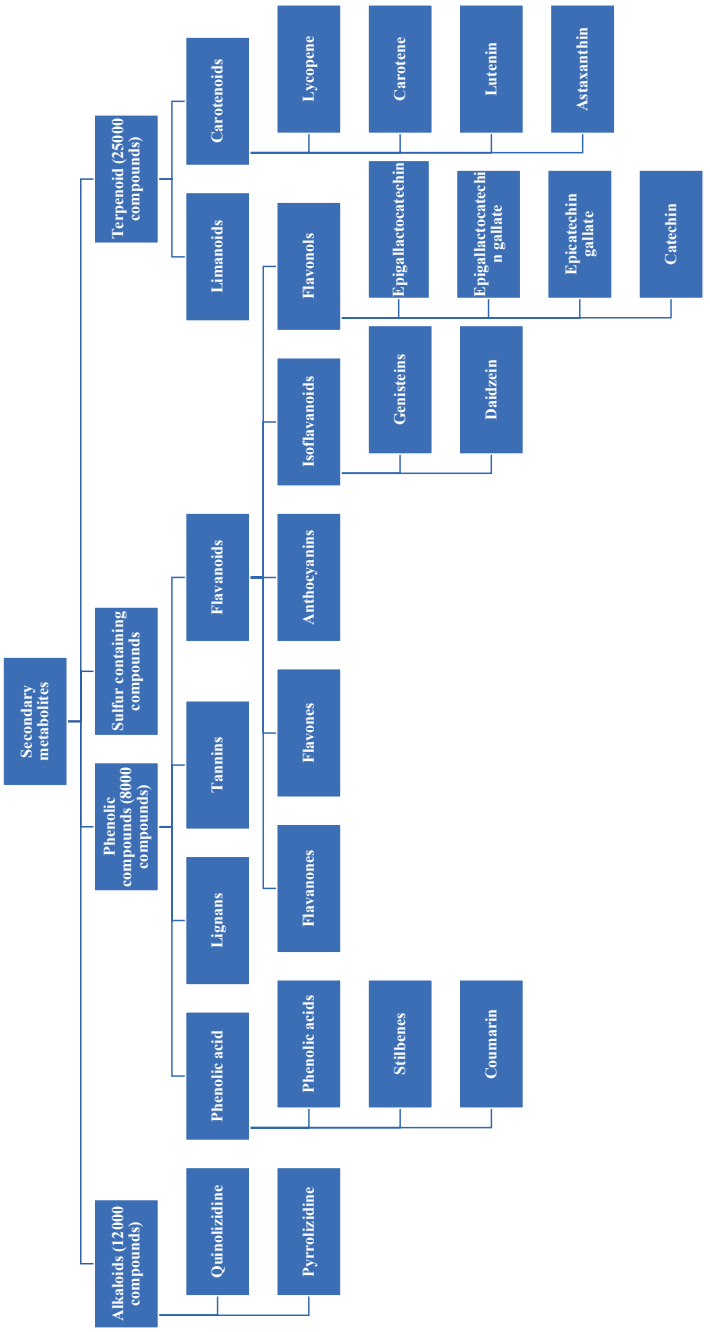


Fig. 2 Classification of secondary metabolites, Randhawa et al. (2015); Goldberg (2008); Croteau et al. (2000); Naczk and Shahidi (2004)

grains also called as Rama's grain (Rajgira) (Paśko et al. 2009). These high contents of bioactive compounds are responsible for the antioxidant potential of flowers and leaves of *Amaranthus* spp. and their extracts. This might be due to the presence of free radical scavenger rutin (Kraujalis et al. 2013). A comparison study proved that *A. tricolor* (red stem) had higher phenolic content and antioxidant capacity than *A. viridis* (green stem) due to the presence of anthocyanin, a red pigment (Routrey et al. 2013). Higher and lower scavenging activities were also found in *Xanthosoma mafafa*, *Celosia argentea*, *Manihot utilissima*, *Ocimum gratissimum* sp., and *Stractium* sp. as 99, 90, 90, 11, and 22%, respectively (Akindahunsi and Salawu 2005).

Tannins, a group of phenolic compounds, are anti-nutritional elements which react with digestive enzymes, proteins, and starches, reducing their nutritional value (Chung et al. 1998; Serrano et al. 2009). Tannins are also observed to hinder the absorption of protein and availability of iron (Bravo 1998). These were found to be high in African leafy vegetables, and their concentration was found to range between 655 mg/100 g in *Xanthosoma* sp. and 1222 mg/100 g in *Euphorbia hirta* (Wallace et al. 1998).

Alkaloids

Lower acceptability of leafy vegetables is due to the bitterness which is due to the presence of alkaloids (Wallace et al. 1998). Effect on transit time in the small intestine of human proves its microbial property, being used for medicinal purpose (Cowan 1999). Two major groups of alkaloids often studied are quinolizidine and pyrrolizidine, where the former is mostly found in genus *Lupinus* and the latter is mostly found in the family of Asteraceae and in the Boraginaceae (Croteau et al. 2000). Positive test for the presence of alkaloids was found in *Sida acuta*, *Asystasia mysorensis*, *Amaranthus* sp., *Portulaca quadrifida*, and *Crotalaria ochroleuca* spp. (Orech et al. 2005).

Carotenoids

Plants impart their yellow, red, or orange color from the carotenoids a subclass of terpenoids. Absorption of this compound requires little of fat in their cooking method after being pureed and chopped. This class of pigment is widely accepted to prevent heart disease, cancer, and eye disease. Vitamin A is mainly produced by these carotenoids. Some other examples of these pigments are zeaxanthin, lycopene, lutein, and β-carotene, where lutein and zeaxanthin are obtained from dark green and leafy vegetables that are important for preventing CVD, oxidative damage to eyes, and age-related macular degeneration. Lycopene is obtained from the processed and cooked tomato for producing red color and preventing cancer and heart diseases. Spider plants contained high amount of β-carotene a provitamin of vitamin A (up to 64.7 μg/g DW). High concentration of carotenoids was also

observed in amaranth (up to101.7 μg/g DW), whereas *A. cruentus* was found to be potentially a good source of carotenoid, a provitamin of vitamin A. It was found that the highest amount of β-carotene is present in the leaves of this species followed by seeds, stem, and roots. Highest content of antitumor agent, canthaxanthin, was found followed by a retardant for age-related eye problems – b-carotene and lutein. This species has 28.5 mg/100 g of β-carotene which is sevenfold higher than tomato and thus can be used to treat anemia reported in the African countries (Dlamini et al. 2010).

Flavonoids

Flavonoids are produced by plants and belong to the group of phenolic compounds or phytochemical compounds. This compound is proved to reduce the risk of CVD (Ali et al. 2000). There is inverse relation between the incident of CVD and consumption of fruits and vegetables (Ness and Powles 1997). Consuming F&V also reduces the blood pressure in the human body (Alonso et al. 2004). He et al. (2006) observed that consumption of 600 g/day of fruits and vegetables can decrease the threat of CVD by 31% and the risk of stroke by 19%.

Anti-nutritional Components

Oxalic Acid

The presence of oxalic acid in various GLVs like *Vernonia* sp., *E. hirta*, *Xanthosoma* sp., *Celosia argentea*, *Ipomoea involucrata*, *M. esculenta*, *Amaranthus* sp., and *Telfairia occidentalis* was reported (Aletor and Adeogun 1995; Isong and Idiong 1997; Wallace et al. 1998; Ejoh et al. 2007). This is present in various species in the soluble or insoluble form, while the former is present as potassium or sodium salt, being excreted from the body, and the latter is present as salts of magnesium, calcium, or iron or combination of any two (Noonan and Savage 1999). Soluble oxalate forms a strong chelating bond with calcium, making it unavailable for absorption and assimilation (Gupta et al. 2005; Radek and Savage 2008), but its high intake can lead to kidney stone (Radek and Savage 2008). Dietary supplement of divalent minerals or addition of source of calcium can lead to unavailability of intestinal oxalate from such foods (Ponka et al. 2006; Radek and Savage 2008).

Phytic Acid

Phytic acid also known as myoinositol 1,2,3,4,5,6 hexakis-dihydrogen phosphate is an antioxidant and source of phosphorous in GLVs. It inhibits the absorption of multivalent metal ions such as calcium, zinc, and iron, inhibiting its free radicals (Schlemmer et al. 2009) and producing adverse effect in digestion of starch and

protein (Reddy and Pierson 1994). Phytic acid also has beneficial effect by enhancing immunity by increasing natural killer cell's function and activity, inhibiting iron-mediated oxidative reactions, serving as antioxidant, and stimulating bacterial killing by neutrophils (Bohn et al. 2008). This also lowers the phosphate donor/acceptor capabilities and reducing inositol's involvement in the signaling mechanism (Bohn et al. 2008; Schlemmer et al. 2009). Phytic acid ranges between 9 mg/100 g and 655 mg/100 g in *Launaea* sp. and *E. hirta*, respectively (Wallace et al. 1998).

Glucosinolates

Glucosinolate precursors of isothiocyanate are used for its therapeutic and prophylactic properties (Fahey et al. 2001).Majorly glucosinolate are found in Capparaceae, Brassicaceae, and Caricaceae family and in *L. Africana*, which belong to Icacineae family (Isong and Idiong 1997). Since it is thermal and stable, they can only be enzymatically hydrolyzed or more specifically driven by myrosinase (Verkerk et al. 2009). After cell rapture, contact of myrosinase and glucosinolates lead to hydrolysis of the thioglucosidic bond and formation of various ranges of bioactive compounds (Baghurst et al. 1999; Verkerk et al. 2009) having chemopreventive and carcinogenic properties, depending on dosage (Fahey et al. 2001; Verkerk et al. 2009).

Saponin

Saponins are poorly absorbed, but it has cholesterol-lowering (Van Duyn and Pivonka 2000), antiparasitic, antifungal/antiyeast, antiviral, antibacterial/antimicrobial, hemolytic, anti-inflammatory, molluscicidal, antitumor, cytotoxicity, and other biological activities (Sparg et al. 2004). The effect of saponin mainly depends on the hydrophobic/hydrophilic asymmetry which in turn affects their capacity to reduce interfacial tension (Champ 2002). Higher saponin concentration of 481 mg/100 g, 424 mg/100 g, and 384 mg/100 g was found in *Xanthosoma* sp., *Launaea* sp., and *Ipomoea involucrata*, respectively, while low concentration of 6.7 mg/100 g and 0.1–0.3 mg/100 g (Ejoh et al. 2007) was found in *Euphorbia hirta* and *Vernonia* sp., respectively (Wallace et al. 1998).

Protease Inhibitor

Trypsin and chymotrypsin inhibitors bind the proteolytic enzymes and inhibit the activity of these enzymes, thus reducing the availability and absorption of proteins and amino acids present (Mosha and Gaga 1999; Glew et al. 2005). Temperature, amount of water, and rate of heating period influence the activity of these inhibitors (Mosha and Gaga 1999). Various works were done to reduce the activity of these

inhibitors. Mosha and Gaga (1999) in his study proved conventional blanching to be better than microwave blanching to inactivate these inhibitors. Heat stability after 5 min boiling was found for these trypsin and chymotrypsin inhibitors, which result in poor protein utilization in human (Vanderjagt et al. 2000) (Tables 2 and 3).

Therapeutic Values and Health Benefits of GLVs

Antidiabetic Properties

Diabetes mellitus (DM) is most prevalent and noncommunicable disease found in every country in the world. The number of affected person is expected to reach 300 million people by 2025 (King et al. 1998). The two types of DM are type I and type II. Type I DM is also known as insulin-dependent diabetes or juvenile-onset disease, and type II is known as non-insulin-dependent diabetes or adult-onset diabetes. The former category is identified as autoimmune-mediated slow or faster destruction of beta-cells produced by the pancreas (Zimmet et al. 1994), while the latter category is due to deficiency of insulin in individual, and they are also known to be resistant to actions of insulin (Defronzo et al. 2015; Lillioja et al. 1993). Type II DM is most familiar, and it is expected to increase the effect at rate of 7.7% by 2030 (Shaw et al. 2010).

This disease has two conditions like hyperglycemia and hypoglycemia. Many oral medicines like alpha-amylase and beta-amylase are given to patients to prevent digestion of complex carbohydrate (Nishikawa et al. 2000). The body frequently produces free oxygen radicals, and reactive oxygen species leads to oxidative damage (Giugliano et al. 1996) in all biochemical process, which in turn leads to increase in lipid peroxidation and adverse effects, specifically in type II DM patients. Prevention of such complications and their effects is the most important target for type II DM patient (Stanely Mainzen Prince and Menon 2001). Almost all GLVs have minerals, vitamins, antioxidants, phytochemicals, and carbohydrates which prevent CVDs and diabetes. GLVs also have low energy intake, low glycemic loads, and high fiber content along with high concentration of proteins, phytochemicals, antioxidant vitamins, magnesium, and potassium, which play vital role in reducing the risk of type II DM. Also, dark yellow and green leafy vegetables prevent this risk in the overweight women (Liu et al. 2004). Polyphenolic antioxidants including ascorbic acids, b-carotene, phenolics, and alpha-tocopherol of GLVs (Kwon et al. 2006) have high therapeutic properties and good amount of antioxidant, antidiabetic, and antihypertensive activity (Chu et al. 2002; Oboh and Rocha 2007; Oboh et al. 2008). Wild basil and jute contains higher quantity of phenolic content than chaya; fluted pumpkin, bitter leaf, and waterleaf contain the lowest. Ferric-reducing property of GLV leads to accumulation of ferric in acinar cells and islets of Langerhans of the pancreas; this in turn destructs the beta cells and prevents type II DM (Pulido et al. 2000). Reddish leaves, lettuce leaves, and omum leaves are the

cheaper and richer source of many micronutrients and phytochemicals having good antioxidant capacity (Tarwadi and Agte 2003). This property makes GLV a cheaper alternative for diabetes mellitus disease and hypertension than synthetic drugs (Saliu and Oboh 2013).

In vivo clinical studies were carried out to prove their antidiabetic effect. Streptozotocin (STZ)-induced diabetic rats showed a significant reduction in the blood glucose level and cholesterol level with methanolic extracts of *A. viridis*, *A. spinosus*, and *A. caudatus* leaves, proving it to be good antidiabetic and anti-cholesterolemic agent (Girija et al. 2011). Similarly, 50% ethanolic extract of *A. spinosus* showed similar reduction in blood glucose level on the STZ-induced albino mice, while, in STZ-induced diabetic rats, significant reduction in degeneration of pancreatic cells was observed. This extract also increased the activity of nonenzymatic and enzymatic oxidant (Mishra et al. 2012).

Antimicrobial and Anti-inflammatory Activity

Human consumption of fresh and processed GLVs are generally recognized as safe (GRAS). The bioactive components of GLVs possess many biological activities such as antimicrobial and anti-inflammatory activity (Faller and Fialho 2009). These are famous among the population due to their esthetic features like flavor, color, and therapeutic values (Gutierrez et al. 2008). Due to their GRAS status, food industry makes use of these GLVs as antimicrobial especially antibacterial agent. These vegetables also exhibit many pharmacological effects like enhancing fertility in females, reducing blood pressure, and using antibiotics in the human body (Mensah et al. 2008). Important GLVs such as *Lactuca sativa*, *Coriandrum sativum*, *Mentha piperita*, *Raphanus sativus*, and *Portulaca oleracea* in methanolic extract have high antibacterial activity (Bhat and Al-Daihan 2014). Freeze-dried cilantro (*C. sativum*) and parsley (*Petroselinum crispum*) were used on *Escherichia Coli* and *Bacillus subtilis* with effect cell damaged and growth inhibition. These GLVs having high antibacterial activity and being the future of food system need to be studied for their potential role against specific microbes (García-Lafuente et al. 2009).

Phenolics and flavonoids of GLVs are studied from many decades since they function like plant hormone regulators, which is natural protectant against many microbes in the plant cell. Phenolic compounds of GLVs like spinach and the mustard plant are also studied for their anti-inflammatory potential (García-Lafuente et al. 2009). Activation of NF-6B is very important for many inflammatory processes which can be inhibited by the use of extract of *Urtica dioica* (Guil-Guerrero et al. 2003). Saponins present in *Euphorbia hirta* and *Ipomoea involucrata* have antifungal/antiyeast, anti-inflammatory, antibacterial, cytotoxicity, antiparasitic, antiviral, antitumor, and many other biological functions (Sparg et al. 2004). Hydroalcoholic leaf extract of *A. tricolor* showed an antinociceptive and anti-inflammatory activity in the clinical studies on the induced rats (Bihani et al. 2013). Seed and leaf extract was obtained from *A. viridis*, and it showed significant inhibition of targeted bacte-

rial and fungal strains, thus proving to be an effective antimicrobial agent (Ahmed et al. 2013).

Antioxidant Property

Cells pretreated with *A. lividus* and *A. tricolor* extracts showed decrease in toxicity and suppression in the production of oxidative genes like RAGE, HMOX-1, and RelA/NF-jB in SH-SY5Y cells. This property is helpful in preventing neurodegenerative disorders and age-related diseases (Amornrit and Santiyanont 2016). Partially purified alkaloids (PPA) from *A. viridis* were used on human erythrocytes and were observed to reduce the lipid peroxidase activity while maintaining the antioxidant concentration from decline. This proves that alkaloid can be effectively used to prevent age-related problems and other free radical-mediated oxidative damages in the body (Sasikumar et al. 2015).

Cardiovascular Disease and Leafy Vegetables

In various countries of America and South Africa as well as non-African countries, the extent of obesity among children and adults are increasing in the tremendous rate. This might be due to less consumption of fruits and vegetables, implementing western lifestyle and lack of physical exercise (Mauriello et al. 2006). Thus, addition of GLVs in their diet along with physical activity and change of lifestyle has proved to reduce the risk of CVD. Higher intake of fiber from GLVs and weight of human have shown an inverse relation (Tohill et al. 2004). Similar relation is found between the evidence of coronary heart disease (CHD) as well as stroke and intake of GLVs (He et al. 2006). It was proved by meta-analysis that incidents of CVD can be reduced by 4% with the addition of GLV (Dauchet et al. 2006). Soares et al. (2015) in his study used three peptides from *A. cruentus* showing a significant reduction of cholesterol enzyme like HMG-CoA reductase, proving to be an effective anti-cholesterolemic agent.

Hypertension and Leafy Vegetables

Israili et al. (2007) reported that the major reasons for visit of patients in hospital are hypertension and their rate of increase in many countries are exponential. Direct relationship between the conditions such as stroke, CHD, cerebrovascular accident (CVA), end-stage renal disease, myocardial infarction, and congestive heart failure and the rate of morbidity and mortality is observed. Patients with diabetes and kidney disease have added problems with low blood pressure; thus its control is more

harmful. The main reason for this disorder is improper diet, and thus it can be treated with diet high in magnesium and potassium, while the intake of sodium should be reduced. Direct relation is observed between the occurrence of CVD, stroke, and BP with sodium, whereas inverse relation is observed when diet with potassium is consumed.

Risk of hypertension is one in every three persons in the highly industrialized countries where people consume diet high in refined carbohydrates, trans fats, saturated fats, processed foods, low fiber, reduced dietary magnesium, potassium, and large amounts of dietary sodium (Adrogué and Madias 2007). Epidemiological studies prove that people consuming vegetarian diet/primeval diet have low risk of CVD and blood pressure in the industrial area (Fujiwara et al. 2000).

Homeostatic balance maintained by low level of sodium and high level of potassium leads to vasodilatation of the blood vessels for sufficient flow rate of blood to heart. When such conditions are not maintained, it leads to vasoconstriction and low supply of blood to heart. Calcium also plays an important role in maintaining such balance for the healthy life. Increasing vasodilation by altering potassium is possible with many mechanisms such as reduced vasoconstrictive sensitivity to norepinephrine, intracellular sodium and tonicity, and natriuresis, angiotensin II, increased sodium/potassium ATPase activity, and urinary kallikrein, increased serum, proliferation in vascular smooth muscle, improved insulin sensitivity, alteration in DNA synthesis, sympathetic nervous system cells, reduction in cardiac diastolic dysfunction, decrease in vascular intracellular sodium and tonicity, reduction in transforming growth factor (TGF)-beta, decrease in NADPH oxidase, decrease in neointimal formation, oxidative stress and inflammation (Randhawa et al. 2015).

Fertility and LV

Dark colored GLVs are rich in chlorophyll, antioxidants, vitamins, fibers, phytochemicals, and minerals. These vegetables can be eaten raw, semi-cooked, or cooked. But it is recommended to eat raw because it prevents the loss of vitamins and certain important minerals. Minerals which are important for fertility in women are folate, vitamin C, and zinc, which depletes on cooking. The presence of diindolylmethane in certain GLV like Brussels sprouts, broccoli, and cabbage not only retains nutritional factors in the body but also helps the body to get rid of "bad" estrogen, which is very important for fertility. Thus, it is recommended to consume these vegetables at least twice in a week. Folic acid is very important for the development of fetus even before the women gets the positive pregnancy test. Spinach and asparagus are rich source of iron and are proved to reduce the condition of anovulation and possibly poor egg health during pregnancy. Inhibition of pregnancy-related issues is 60% reduced with consumption of iron-rich food than those with insufficient iron in their blood. Vitamin C is very important for absorption of iron, and being an antioxidant, it is also important to protect cells from the damage caused by the free radicals. GLVs also provide humans with sufficient amount of vitamins,

minerals, and other nutrients while maintaining acidic/alkaline balance. Spinach being rich in vitamins, nutrients, iron, and folic acid is a very good source for good health of fetus, fertility, and reproduction. Where iron promotes oxygen levels in fetus, organs, and cells, folic acid is important for preventing neural tube defects in the growing fetus. Healthy alkaline environment is important for the survival of sperm and its journey to egg. Minerals serve as a medium for activating whipping of sperm tail in the vaginal fluid, which is important for mating and creating healthy new born.

Anticancerous Properties

Antiproliferative and chemopreventive effects of polyphenols are available with in vitro studies. *A. cruentus* is suggested to be cheap, commercial, and biocompatible alternative on peripheral lymphocytes than already available antiproliferative therapeutics (Gandhi and Niraj 2011). Ethyl acetate, hexane, and methanolic extracts of *A. tristis Roxb.* were also found to be effective against colon adenocarcinoma cell line with minimum side effects (Baskar et al. 2012). *A. hybridus* and *A. caudatus* reduce micronuclei formation and safeguard the detoxifying enzymes like alkaline phosphatase (ALP) and GGT in sodium arsenite-treated albino Wistar rats, thus proving it to be an affective carcinogen (Adewale and Olorunju 2013). Stem extract of *A. lividus* and seed extract of *A. hybridus* inhibited the growth of EAC cells by 43 and 45%, respectively. This also showed downregulation of Bcl-2 mRNA in treated mice and upregulation of Bax, p53, and caspase-3, which clearly proves the mitochondrial apoptosis of EAC cells when compared with control sample (Al-Mamun et al. 2016). *A. viridis Linn*. leaves extract was prepared by 50% ethanolic solution which had better antiproliferative effect against CEM, Jurkat, and HL-603 (human leukemic cell lines) when compared with the stem. It was observed in the study that standard curcumin showed antiproliferative effect on both normal cells and leukemic cells, while both stem and leaves extracts had positive effect by enhancing the growth of normal cells (Larbie et al. 2015).

Hepatoprotective

Hepatotoxicity can be caused due to excess of alcohol consumption, autoimmune response, toxic effect of curative drugs, or any other infections. This can be prevented by giving a hepatoprotective medicine, allergy medicine, or natural extracts. The hepatoprotective effect was shown by the extract of *A. tricolor* roots against the biochemical, physical, functional, and histological changes produced by paracetamol in Wistar albino rats. This effect is evident by reduced serum enzyme activities such

as SGOT, SGPT, TB, and ALP, and this was compared with standard drug silymarin which is hepatotoxic drug against paracetamol. This was also supported by histopathological studies of the liver (Aneja et al. 2013)

Gastroprotective

Gastroprotectors of plant origin have positive effect on the mucosa of gastrointestinal tract and are used clinically. Gastric ulcers were healed by using poly-herbal formulation having *A. tricolor* as one of the ingredient (Devaraj and Krishna 2013). Similar work with hydroalcoholic extract of piperine and *A. roxburghianus* roots showed hemorrhage, minimal ulceration, necrosis, and decreased levels of myeloperoxidase, leucocyte infiltration in histopathological observation, and MDA and increased glutathione levels in colon and blood tissue in rats having ulcerative colitis (Nirmal et al. 2013). Cysteamine-induced duodenal ulcers and ethanol-induced gastric ulcers can be significantly treated by *A. spinosus* leaves powder (Mitra et al. 2013).

Antimalarial

The development of resistance by the exposed species, nontarget specificity of chemical insecticides, and eco-hazardous nature of chemical pesticides provoke us to find an eco-friendly alternative in terms of usage of herbs, their extract, or powders. Utilizing ethanolic extract of *A. spinosus* leads to increased hemoglobin content, gain of BW, and blood schizonticidal activity in *Plasmodium berghei*-infected mice. This antimalarial effect was significantly comparable to synthetic drug, chloroquine (Susantiningsih et al. 2012). Another study was carried out on *A. hybridus L.* for treating malaria. This species is used from ancient times by Msambweni community of Kenyan South Coast (Nguta et al. 2010).

Other Effects

Extracts from various species of Amaranthus like *A. spinosus* were found to have spasmolytic, laxative, and bronchodilator properties (Koffuor et al. 2017), where ethanolic extract of up to 240 mg/kg had no adverse effect proving to be a better alternative against ischuria. While the higher dosage was found to show certain physiological changes when compared with that of escitalopram and imipramine effects (Kumar et al. 2014).

Different Methods of Processing Green Leafy Vegetables

Green leafy vegetables generally grow amply during the monsoon season; however, they are greatly perishable which affects its shelf life, and sometimes raw leafy vegetables are unpalatable (Chinyere and Obasi 2011).Various processing treatments such as sun drying, shade drying, freeze-drying, blanching, and vacuum cooling are employed to improve the palatability and bioavailability and extend the shelf life of the green leaves. The quality of green leafy vegetables can be improved by suitable processing treatment which prevents the loss of nutrient content and processing should be done after immediate harvest. The safety of green leafy vegetables can be achieved by proper handling during harvesting and appropriate refrigeration condition. For example, cooling the crops at 4 °C prevents the growth of microbes such as *E. coli* O157:H7, *L. monocytogenes*, and *Salmonella* (Solomon et al. 2009). In freeze-drying, dehydration takes place by the sublimation of water from frozen product. It improves the quality of vegetables and increases the shelf life of the product. Because at low temperature and in the absence of liquid water, microbial reaction and deterioration are arrested this improves the final quality of the product. It also prevents the loss of flavor and bioactive compound and protects the primary structure and shape of the product (Sadikoglu and Liapis 1997; Tambunan et al. 2001; Rawson et al. 2011).

Oboh and Akindahunsi (2004) examined the effect of sun drying on ascorbic acid, total phenol, and antioxidant activity of common green leaves in Nigeria such as *Telfairia occidentalis* (Ugu), *Amaranthus cruentus* (Atetedaye), *Corchorus olitorius* (Ewedu), *Solanum macrocarpon* (gbagba), *Structium sparejanophora* (Ewuro-odo), *Ocimum gratissimum* (Efinrin), *Baselia allia* (Amunu tutu), and *Vernonia amygdalina* (Ewuro). The results revealed that sun drying of green leafy vegetables reduces the ascorbic acid content (16.67–64.68% loss), but contrarily it increases the total phenol content (6.45–223.08% gain). It also increases the antioxidant activity of green leafy vegetables (126.00–5757.00% gain). Even though the ascorbic acid content decreases, the antioxidant activity of the green leafy vegetables won't be reduced by the sun drying, because the phenol content of leaves contributes more to the antioxidant properties than ascorbic acid of green leafy vegetables. Suffo et al. 2016 reported that the shade drying and sun drying improve the palatability of green leafy vegetables by reducing their anti-nutritional content. And it also extends their shelf life. They also examined the impact of processing method on chemical composition and antioxidant activity of two *Amaranthus* sp. (*A. hybridus and A. cruentus*). The results of shade drying showed significant increase in phenol content and antioxidant activity and also caused significant decrease in ascorbic acid of green leafy vegetables.

Blanching of vegetables at high temperature may inactivate some microorganism and destroy the enzymes in the tissue. It also inhibits the enzyme action, changes the color, eliminates the anti-nutritional factor and acid component, and reduces the dehydration and drying time (Akindahunsi and Oboh 1999). Green leafy vegetables are good source of minerals (iron, magnesium, zinc, and calcium) and vitamins (A,

Table 4 Effect of processing on phytochemicals (Adopted from Kuriakose and Rawson 2015)

Sl no	Type of leafy vegetable	Type of processing	Treatment conditions	Effect on phytochemicals	References
1.	*Structium sparejanophora*	Blanching	100 °C 5 min	TP↑, vit C↓	Oboh and Akindahunsi 2004
2.	*Amaranthus cruentus*	Blanching	100 °C 5 min	TP↔, vit C↓	Oboh and Akindahunsi 2004
3.	*Telfairia occidentalis*	Blanching	100 °C 5 min	TP↑, vit C↓	Oboh and Akindahunsi 2004
4.	*Basella alba*	Blanching	100 °C 5 min	TP↑, vit C↓	Oboh and Akindahunsi 2004
5.	*Solanum macrocarpon*	Blanching	100 °C 5 min	TP↑, vit C↓	Oboh and Akindahunsi 2004
6.	*Corchorus olitorius*	Blanching	100 °C 5 min	TP↑, vit C↓	Oboh and Akindahunsi 2004
7.	*Vernonia amygdalina*	Blanching	100 °C 5 min	TP↔, vit C↓	Oboh and Akindahunsi 2004
8.	*Ocimum gratissimum*	Blanching	100 °C 5 min	TP↑, vit C↓	Oboh and Akindahunsi 2004
9.	*Lactuca sativa L.*				
	Green variety – iceberg, romaine and continental	Fresh sample (analysis of vitamin C)	–	Caffeic acid and vitamin C present in larger amounts in green variety	Llorach et al. 2008
	Red variety –red oak leaf and lollo rosso	Freeze-dried sample (analysis of antioxidant)	–	Flavonols present largely in red variety,anthocyanins present only in red variety	
10.	*Amaranthus* leaves	Finely chopped leaves		Moisture (90.35) and ash content (1.36), vitamin C (1.57 mg), and iron (535.84 ppm)	Funke 2011
		Steamed and then chopped	2 min	Crude fat per gram of sample (2.31), protein (4.35), and fiber (1.09)	
		Blanched and then chopped	2 min	Carbohydrate (4.89)	

B complex, and C). The processing treatment like blanching has an adverse effect on minerals and vitamin availability. The iron availability of green leafy vegetables is reduced by processing due to the loss of ascorbic acid content (iron enhancer)

because vitamin C is light and temperature sensitive. Latunde-Dada 1990 also reported that blanching and squeeze washing of vegetables result in reduction of dialyzable iron. Effects of processing on phytochemicals of green leafy vegetables are mentioned in Table 4 (Kuriakose and Rawson 2015).

Conclusions

Green leafy vegetables are significant source of primary and secondary metabolites. And their consumption in human diet could increase the chances of various health benefits and may play a role in preventing human disease in which free radicals are involved, such as cancer, cardiovascular diseases, and aging. Processing also affects the composition of primary and secondary metabolites in leafy vegetables, and a low-temperature treatment may be able to retain the metabolites in leafy vegetables.

References

Adenipekun CO, Oyetunji OJ (2010) Nutritional values of some tropical vegetables. J Appl Biosci 35:2294–2300

Adewale A, Olorunju AE (2013) Modulatory of effect of fresh Amaranthus caudatus and Amaranthus hybridus aqueous leaf extracts on detoxify enzymes and micronuclei formation after exposure to sodium arsenite. Pharm Res 5(4):300

Adrogué HJ, Madias NE (2007) Sodium and potassium in the pathogenesis of hypertension. N Engl J Med 356(19):1966–1978

Ahmed SA, Hanif S, Iftkhar T (2013) Phytochemical profiling with antioxidant and antimicrobial screening of Amaranthus viridis L. leaf and seed extracts. Open J Med Microbiol 3(3):164

Akindahunsi AA, Oboh G (1999) Effect of some post-harvest treatments on the bioavailability of zinc from some selected tropical vegetables. La Rivista Italiana Delle Sostanze Grasse 76:285–287

Akindahunsi AA, Salawu SO (2005) Antioxidant indices of some green leafy vegetables. Trop Sci 45(1):33–35

Aletor VA, Adeogun OA (1995) Nutrient and anti-nutrient components of some tropical leafy vegetables. Food Chem 53(4):375–379

Aletor OL, Oshodi AA, Ipinmoroti K (2002) Chemical composition of common leafy vegetables and functional properties of their leaf protein concentrates. Food Chem 78(1):63–68

Ali M, Al-Qattan KK, Al-Enezi F, Khanafer RM, Mustafa T (2000) Effect of allicin from garlic powder on serum lipids and blood pressure in rats fed with a high cholesterol diet. PLEFA 62(4):253–259

Al-Mamun MA, Husna J, Khatun M, Hasan R, Kamruzzaman M, Hoque KM, Reza MA, Ferdousi Z (2016) Assessment of antioxidant, anticancer and antimicrobial activity of two vegetable species of Amaranthus in Bangladesh. BMC Complement Altern Med 16(1):157

Alonso A, de la Fuente C, Martín-Arnau AM, de Irala J, Martínez JA, Martínez-González MÁ (2004) Fruit and vegetable consumption is inversely associated with blood pressure in a Mediterranean population with a high vegetable-fat intake: the Seguimiento Universidad de Navarra (SUN) Study. Br J Nutr 92(2):311–319

Amornrit W, Santiyanont R (2016) Neuroprotective effect of Amaranthus lividus and Amaranthus tricolor and their effects on gene expression of RAGE during oxidative stress in SH-SY5Y cells. Genet Mol Res 15(2)
Aneja S, Vats M, Aggarwal S, Sardana S (2013) Phytochemistry and hepatoprotective activity of aqueous extract of Amaranthus tricolor Linn. roots. J Ayur Integ Med 4(4):211
Antony AC (2007) In utero physiology: role of folic acid in nutrient delivery and fetal development. Am J Clin Nutr 85(2):598S–603S
Bako SP, Luka SA, Bedo EB, Aula J (2002) Ethanobotany and nutrient content of Gnetum africana in Nigeria. SCITECH Publisher, USA, pp 79–84
Baskar AA, Numair KS, Alsaif MA, Ignacimuthu S (2012) In vitro antioxidant and antiproliferative potential of medicinal plants used in traditional Indian medicine to treat cancer. Redox Rep 17(4):145–156
Belitz HD, Grosch W, Schieberle P (2009) Coffee, tea, cocoa. Food chemistry 938–70
Bhat RS, Al-Daihan S (2014) Phytochemical constituents and antibacterial activity of some green leafy vegetables. Asian Pacific J Trop Biomed 4(3):189–193
Bihani GV, Bodhankar SL, Kadam PP, Zambare GN (2013) Anti-nociceptive and anti-inflammatory activity of hydroalcoholic extract of leaves of Amaranthus tricolor L. Scholars Research Library. Pharm Lett 5(3):48–55
Blaut M (2002) Relationship of prebiotics and food to intestinal microflora. Eur J Nutr 41(1):i11–i16
Bohn L, Meyer AS, Rasmussen SK (2008) Phytate: impact on environment and human nutrition. A challenge for molecular breeding. J Zhejiang Univ Sci B 9(3):165–191
Bottiglieri T, Laundy M, Crellin R, Toone BK, Carney MW, Reynolds EH (2000) Homocysteine, folate, methylation, and monoamine metabolism in depression. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 69(2):228–232
Boyle J. (2005) Lehninger principles of biochemistry. In: Nelson D, Cox M
Bravo L (1998) Polyphenols: chemistry, dietary sources, metabolism, and nutritional significance. Nutr Rev 56(11):317–333
Bunea A, Andjelkovic M, Socaciu C, Bobis O, Neacsu M, Verhé R, Van Camp J (2008) Total and individual carotenoids and phenolic acids content in fresh, refrigerated and processed spinach (Spinacia oleracea L.). Food Chem 108(2):649–656
Champ MM (2002) Non-nutrient bioactive substances of pulses. Br J Nutr 88(S3):307–319
Cheynier V (2005) Polyphenols in foods are more complex than often thought. Am J Clin Nutr 81(1):223S–229S
Chinyere GC, Obasi NA (2011) Changes in the amino acids contents of selected leafy vegetables subjected to different processing treatments. Afr J Biochem Res 5(6):182–187
Chu YF, Sun JI, Wu X, Liu RH (2002) Antioxidant and antiproliferative activities of common vegetables. J Agric Food Chem 50(23):6910–6916
Chung KT, Wong TY, Wei CI, Huang YW, Lin Y (1998) Tannins and human health: a review. Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr 38(6):421–464
Cossins EA (2000) The fascinating world of folate and one-carbon metabolism. Botany 78(6):691
Cowan MM (1999) Plant products as antimicrobial agents. Clin Microbiol Rev 12(4):564–582
Croteau R, Kutchan TM, Lewis NG (2000) Natural products (secondary metabolites). Biochem Mol Biol Plants 24:1250–1319
Dasgupta N, De B (2007) Antioxidant activity of some leafy vegetables of India: A comparative study. Food Chem 101(2):471–474
Dauchet L, Amouyel P, Hercberg S, Dallongeville J (2006) Fruit and vegetable consumption and risk of coronary heart disease: a meta-analysis of cohort studies. J Nutr 136(10):2588–2593
DeFronzo RA, Ferrannini E, Alberti KG, Zimmet P, Alberti G (2015) International textbook of diabetes mellitus, 2 volume set. John Wiley & Sons, Hoboken
Devaraj VC, Krishna BG (2013) Antiulcer activity of a polyherbal formulation (PHF) from Indian medicinal plants. Chin J Nat Med 11(2):145–148
Dhiman K, Gupta A, Sharma DK, Gill NS, Goyal A (2012) A review on the medicinally important plants of the family cucurbitaceae. Asian J Clin Nutr 4(1):16–26

Dlamini N, Moroka T, Mlotshwa L, Reddy J, Botha G (2010) Indigenous edible plants as sources of nutrients and health benefitting components (nutraceuticals)
Ejoh RA, Nkonga DV, Inocent G, Moses MC (2007) Nutritional components of some non-conventional leafy vegetables consumed in Cameroon. Pak J Nutr 6(6):712–717
Edelman M, Colt M (2016) Nutrient value of leaf vs. seed. Front Chem 4:32
Fahey JW, Zalcmann AT, Talalay P (2001) The chemical diversity and distribution of glucosinolates and isothiocyanates among plants. Phytochemistry 56(1):5–1
Faller AL, Fialho E (2009) The antioxidant capacity and polyphenol content of organic and conventional retail vegetables after domestic cooking. Food Res Int 42(1):210–215
FAO (Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations) (1990) Utilization of tropical foods: fruits and leaves. FAO Food and Nutrition, Rome, Italy. Paper No. 47/7
FAO W (2001) Food and nutrition division. FAO, Rome, Italy, pp 1–303
FAO/WHO (2001) Human vitamin and mineral requirements. 2nd ed. Geneva
Fujiwara N, Osanai T, Kamada T, Katoh T, Takahashi K, Okumura K (2000) Study on the relationship between plasma nitrite and nitrate level and salt sensitivity in human hypertension: modulation of nitric oxide synthesis by salt intake. Circulation 101(8):856–861
Funke OM (2011) Evaluation of nutrient contents of amaranth leaves prepared using different cooking methods. Food Nutr Sci 2(04):249
Fasuyi AO (2005) Nutrient composition and processing effects on cassava leaf (*Manihot esculenta*, Crantz) antinutrients. Pak J Nutr 4(1):37–42
FDA (1997) Guidance for industry: dissolution testing of immediate-release solid oral dosage forms. Food and Drug Administration, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research (CDER)
Galloway R (2003) Anemia prevention and control: what works. Part II: tool and resources
Gandhi P, Niraj ZK (2011) In-vitro assay of anti-proliferative potential of Amaranthus cruentus aqueous extract on human peripheral blood lymphocytes. Curr Trends Biotechnol Chem Res 1(1):42–48
García-Lafuente A, Guillamón E, Villares A, Rostagno MA, Martínez JA (2009) Flavonoids as anti-inflammatory agents: implications in cancer and cardiovascular disease. Inflamm Res 58(9):537–552
Gardner PT, White TA, McPhail DB, Duthie GG (2000) The relative contributions of vitamin C, carotenoids and phenolics to the antioxidant potential of fruit juices. Food Chem 68(4):471–474
Girija K, Lakshman K, Udaya C, Sachi GS, Divya T (2011) Anti–diabetic and anti–cholesterolemic activity of methanol extracts of three species of Amaranthus. Asian Pac J Trop Biomed 1(2):133–138
Giugliano D, Ceriello A, Paolisso G (1996) Oxidative stress and diabetic vascular complications. Diabetes Care 19(3):257–267
Glew RS, VanderJagt DJ, Bosse R, Huang YS, Chuang LT, Glew RH (2005) The nutrient content of three edible plants of the Republic of Niger. J Food Compos Anal 18(1):15–27
Goldberg G (2008) Plants: diet and health. John Wiley & Sons, Hoboken
Guil-Guerrero JL, Rebolloso-Fuentes MM, Isasa MT (2003) Fatty acids and carotenoids from Stinging Nettle (Urtica dioica L.). J Food Compos Anal 16(2):111–119
Gupta S, Lakshmi AJ, Manjunath MN, Prakash J (2005) Analysis of nutrient and antinutrient content of underutilized green leafy vegetables. LWT Food Sci Technol 38(4):339–345
Gutierrez J, Barry-Ryan C, Bourke P (2008) The antimicrobial efficacy of plant essential oil combinations and interactions with food ingredients. Int J Food Microbiol 124(1):91–97
Gibson RS, Perlas L, Hotz C (2006) Improving the bioavailability of nutrients in plant foods at the household level. Proc Nutr Soc 65(2):160–168
Hathcock JN (1997) Vitamins and minerals: efficacy and safety. Am J Clin Nutr 66(2):427–437
He FJ, Nowson CA, MacGregor GA (2006) Fruit and vegetable consumption and stroke: meta-analysis of cohort studies. Lancet 367(9507):320–326
Hedges LJ, Lister CE (2009) Nutritional attributes of some exotic and lesser known vegetables. Plant Food Res Conf Report No 2325:1–47

Herbert V, Shils ME, Olson JA, Shike M, Ross AC (1999) Modern nutrition in health and disease. Folic Acid 9:433–446
Hounsome N, Hounsome B, Tomos D, Edwards-Jones G (2008) Plant metabolites and nutritional quality of vegetables. J Food Sci 73(4):R48
Howard LA, Wong AD, Perry AK, Klein BP (1999) β-Carotene and ascorbic acid retention in fresh and processed vegetables. J Food Sci 64(5):929–936
Ismail A, Marjan ZM, Foong CW (2004) Total antioxidant activity and phenolic content in selected vegetables. Food Chem 87(4):581–586
Isong EU, Idiong UI (1997) Comparative studies on the nutritional and toxic composition of three varieties of Lesianthera africana. Plant Foods Hum Nutr 51(1):79–84
Israili ZH, Hernández-Hernández R, Valasco M (2007) The future of antihypertensive treatment. Am J Ther 14(2):121–134
Iyer Shanti R, Rekha S, Anitha AA (2012) Analysis of nitrogen and phosphate in enriched and non enriched vermicompost. J Environ Res Develop 7(2A):899–904
IOM (Institute of Medicine) (2000) Dietary reference intakes for vitamin C, vitamin E, selenium, and carotenoids. National Academy Press, Washington, DC
Jain V, Momin M, Laddha K (2012) Murraya koenigii: an updated review. Int J Ayur Herb Med 2(04):607–627
Jenkins DJ, Kendall CW, Popovich DG, Vidgen E, Mehling CC, Vuksan V, Ransom TP, Rao AV, Rosenberg-Zand R, Tariq N, Corey P (2001) Effect of a very-high-fiber vegetable, fruit, and nut diet on serum lipids and colonic function. Metab Clin Exp 50(4):494–503
Jiménez-Aguilar DM, Grusak MA (2017) Minerals, vitamin C, phenolics, flavonoids and antioxidant activity of Amaranthus leafy vegetables. J Food Compos Anal 58:33–39
Kala A, Prakash J (2004) Nutrient composition and sensory profile of differently cooked green leafy vegetables. Int J Food Prop 7(3):659–669
Kamath SD, Arunkumar D, Avinash NG, Samshuddin S (2015) Determination of total phenolic content and total antioxidant activity in locally consumed food stuffs in Moodbidri, Karnataka. India Adv Appl Sci Res 6(6):99–102
Kelly GS (1998) Folates: supplemental forms and therapeutic applications. Altern Med Rev 3(3):208–220
Kesari AN, Gupta RK, Watal G (2005) Hypoglycemic effects of Murraya koenigii on normal and alloxan-diabetic rabbits. J Ethnopharmacol 97(2):247–251
Khachik F, Goli MB, Beecher GR, Holden J, Lusby WR, Tenorio MD, Barrera MR (1992) Effect of food preparation on qualitative and quantitative distribution of major carotenoid constituents of tomatoes and several green vegetables. J Agric Food Chem 40(3):390–398
Khanna AK, Rizvi F, Chander R (2002) Lipid lowering activity of Phyllanthus niruri in hyperlipemic rats. J Ethnopharmacol 82(1):19–22
King H, Aubert RE, Herman WH (1998) Global burden of diabetes, 1995–2025: prevalence, numerical estimates, and projections. Diabetes Care 21(9):1414–1431
Koffuor GA, Ainooson GK, Addotey JN, Amponsah IK, Afriyie VA, Tutu R (2017) Preliminary pharmacological investigation of the ischuretic property and safety of a hydro-ethanolic extract of Amaranthus spinosus (Fam: Amaranthaceae). Int J Basic Clin Pharmacol 2(5):517–527
Kraujalis P, Venskutonis PR, Kraujalienė V, Pukalskas A (2013) Antioxidant properties and preliminary evaluation of phytochemical composition of different anatomical parts of amaranth. Plant Foods Hum Nutr 68(3):322–328
Kruger M, Sayed N, Langenhoven M, Holing F (1998) Composition of South African foods: vegetables and fruit. Research Institute for Nutritional Diseases, South African Medical Research Council, South Africa, pp 2–39
Kubmarawa D, Khan ME, Punah AM, Hassan M (2008) Phytochemical Screening and antibacterial activity of extracts from Pakia Clapperotoniana keay against human pathogenic bacteria. J Med Plants Res 2(12):352–355
Kubo I, Fujita KI, Kubo A, Nihei KI, Ogura T (2004) Antibacterial activity of coriander volatile compounds against Salmonella choleraesuis. J Agric Food Chem 52(11):3329–3332

Kumar BA, Lakshman K, Velmurugan C, Sridhar SM, Gopisetty S (2014) Antidepressant activity of methanolic extract of Amaranthus Spinosus. Basic Clin Neurosci 5(1):11

Kumari M, Gupta S, Lakshmi AJ, Prakash J (2004) Iron bioavailability in green leafy vegetables cooked in different utensils. Food Chem 86(2):217–222

Kuriakose SP, Rawson A (2015) Effect of processing on composition of green leafy vegetables. Trends Biosci 8(17):4611–4620

Kwon YI, Hae-Dong J, Shetty K (2006) Evaluation of Rhodiola crenulata and Rhodiola rosea for management of type II diabetes and hypertension. Asia Pac J Clin Nutr 15(3):425

Kawashima N, Wildman SG (1970) Fraction I protein. Annu Rev Plant Physiol 21(1):325–358

Kalogeropoulos N, Chiou A, Ioannou M, Karathanos VT, Hassapidou M, Andrikopoulos NK (2010) Nutritional evaluation and bioactive microconstituents (phytosterols, tocopherols, polyphenols, triterpenic acids) in cooked dry legumes usually consumed in the Mediterranean countries. Food Chem 121(3):682–690

Larbie C, Abotsi P, Appiah-Opong R, Acheampong F, Tuffour I, Uto T, Torkornoo D, Marfo E, Ankamah-Mensah D, Opoku-Mensah E (2015) Anti-proliferative effect of Amaranthus Viridis Linn. On human leukemic cell lines-a preliminary study

Latunde-Dada GO (1990) Effect of processing on iron levels in and availability from some Nigerian vegetables. J Sci Food Agric 53(3):355–361

Leclerc D, Wilson A, Dumas R, Gafuik C, Song D, Watkins D, Heng HH, Rommens JM, Scherer SW, Rosenblatt DS, Gravel RA (1998) Cloning and mapping of a cDNA for methionine synthase reductase, a flavoprotein defective in patients with homocystinuria. Proc Natl Acad Sci 95(6):3059–3064

Lester GE, Crosby KM (2002) Ascorbic acid, folic acid, and potassium content in postharvest green-flesh honeydew muskmelons: Influence of cultivar, fruit size, soil type, and year. J Am Soc Hortic Sci 127(5):843–847

Lester GE, Eischen F (1996) Beta-carotene content of postharvest orange-fleshed muskmelon fruit: effect of cultivar, growing location and fruit size. Plant Foods Hum Nutr 49(3):191–197

Lillioja S, Mott DM, Spraul M, Ferraro R, Foley JE, Ravussin E, Knowler WC, Bennett PH, Bogardus C (1993) Insulin resistance and insulin secretory dysfunction as precursors of non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus: prospective studies of Pima Indians. N Engl J Med 329(27):1988–1992

Liu S, Serdula M, Janket SJ, Cook NR, Sesso HD, Willett WC, Manson JE, Buring JE (2004) A prospective study of fruit and vegetable intake and the risk of type 2 diabetes in women. Diabetes Care 27(12):2993–2996

Llorach R, Martínez-Sánchez A, Tomás-Barberán FA, Gil MI, Ferreres F (2008) Characterisation of polyphenols and antioxidant properties of five lettuce varieties and escarole. Food Chem 108(3):1028–1038

Lucock MD, Daskalakis I, Schorah CJ, Levene MI, Hartley R (1996) Analysis and biochemistry of blood folate. Biochem Mol Med 58(1):93–112

Lampe JW (2003) Spicing up a vegetarian diet: chemopreventive effects of phytochemicals. Am J Clin Nutr 78(3):579S–583S

Ma J, Stampfer MJ, Giovannucci E, Artigas C, Hunter DJ, Fuchs C, Willett WC, Selhub J, Hennekens CH, Rozen R (1997) Methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase polymorphism, dietary interactions, and risk of colorectal cancer. Cancer Res 57(6):1098–1102

Mai TT, Thu NN, Tien PG, Van Chuyen N (2007) Alpha-glucosidase inhibitory and antioxidant activities of Vietnamese edible plants and their relationships with polyphenol contents. J Nutr Sci Vitaminol 53(3):267–276

Masrizal MA, Giraud DW, Driskell JA (1997) Retention of vitamin c, iron, and β-carotene in vegetables prepared using different cooking methods. J Food Qual 20(5):403–418

Mauriello LM, Driskell MM, Sherman KJ, Johnson SS, Prochaska JM, Prochaska JO (2006) Acceptability of a school-based intervention for the prevention of adolescent obesity. J Sch Nurs 22(5):269–277

Mensah JK, Okoli RI, Ohaju-Obodo JO, Eifediyi K (2008) Phytochemical, nutritional and medical properties of some leafy vegetables consumed by Edo people of Nigeria. Afr J Biotechnol 7:14

Mepba HD, Eboh L, Banigo DE (2007) Effects of processing treatments on the nutritive composition and consumer acceptance of some Nigerian edible leafy vegetables. Afr J Food Agric Nutr Dev 7:1

Mishra SB, Verma A, Mukerjee A, Vijayakumar M (2012) Amaranthus spinosus L.(Amaranthaceae) leaf extract attenuates streptozotocin-nicotinamide induced diabetes and oxidative stress in albino rats: A histopathological analysis. Asian Pac J Trop Biomed 2(3):S1647–S1652

Misra A, Vikram NK, Pandey RM, Dwivedi M, Ahmad FU, Luthra K, Jain K, Khanna N, Devi JR, Sharma R, Guleria R (2002) Hyperhomocysteinemia, and low intakes of folic acid and vitamin B12 in urban North India. Eur J Nutr 41(2):68–77

Mitra PK, Ghosh D, Ghosh T, Mitra P (2013) Anti peptic ulcer activity of the leaves of Amaranthus spinosus L. In Rats. Mint J Pharm Med Sci:52–53

Modi AT (2007) Growth temperature and plant age influence on nutritional quality of Amaranthus leaves and seed germination capacity. Water SA 33(3):369–376

Mosha TC, Gaga HE (1999) Nutritive value and effect of blanching on the trypsin and chymotrypsin inhibitor activities of selected leafy vegetables. Plant Foods Hum Nutr 54(3):271–283

Moyo M, Amoo SO, Ncube B, Ndhlala AR, Finnie JF, Van Staden J (2013) Phytochemical and antioxidant properties of unconventional leafy vegetables consumed in southern Africa. S Afr J Bot 84:65–71

Naczk M, Shahidi F (2004) Extraction and analysis of phenolics in food. J Chromatogr A 1054(1-2):95–111

Natesh HN, Abbey L, Asiedu SK (2017) An overview of nutritional and antinutritional factors in green leafy vegetables. Horticult Int J 1(2):00011

Negi PS, Roy SK (2001) Effect of drying conditions on quality of green leaves during long term storage. Food Res Int 34(4):283–287

Nguta JM, Mbaria JM, Gakuya DW, Gathumbi PK, Kiama SG (2010) Antimalarial herbal remedies of Msambweni, Kenya. J Ethnopharmacol 128(2):424–432

Nirmal SA, Ingale JM, Pattan SR, Bhawar SB (2013) Amaranthus roxburghianus root extract in combination with piperine as a potential treatment of ulcerative colitis in mice. J Integ Med 11(3):206–212

Nishikawa T, Edelstein D, Du XL, Yamagishi SI, Matsumura T, Kaneda Y, Yorek MA, Beebe D, Oates PJ, Hammes HP, Giardino I (2000) Normalizing mitochondrial superoxide production blocks three pathways of hyperglycaemic damage. Nature 404(6779):787

Noonan SC, Savage GP (1999) Oxalate content of foods and its effect on humans. Asia Pac J Clin Nutr 8(1):64

Neugart S, Rohn S, Schreiner M (2015) Identification of complex, naturally occurring flavonoid glycosides in Vicia faba and *Pisum sativum* leaves by HPLC-DAD-ESI-MSn and the genotypic effect on their flavonoid profile. Food Res Int 76:114–121

Ness AR, Powles JW (1997) Fruit and vegetables, and cardiovascular disease: a review. Int J Epidemiol 26(1):1–13

Oboh G, Akindahunsi AA (2004) Change in the ascorbic acid, total phenol and antioxidant activity of sun-dried commonly consumed green leafy vegetables in Nigeria. Nutr Health 18(1):29–36

Oboh G, Rocha JB (2007) Antioxidant in foods: a new challenge for food processors. Leading Edge Antioxidants Research. p 35–64

Oboh G, Ekperigin MM, Kazeem MI (2005) Nutritional and haemolytic properties of eggplants (Solanum macrocarpon) leaves. J Food Compos Anal 18(2-3):153–160

Oboh G, Raddatz H, Henle T (2008) Antioxidant properties of polar and non-polar extracts of some tropical green leafy vegetables. J Sci Food Agric 88(14):2486–2492

Odhav B, Beekrum S, Akula US, Baijnath H (2007) Preliminary assessment of nutritional value of traditional leafy vegetables in KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. J Food Compos Anal 20(5):430–435

Okonwu K, Akonye LA, Mensah SI (2017) Anti-nutrients composition of fluted pumpkin leaf grown in different geoponic media. J Pharm Chem 4(6):131–140
Orcutt DM, Nilsen ET (2000) Physiology of plant under stress: soil and biotic factors. Wiley, Hoboken
Orech FO, Akenga T, Ochora J, Friis H, Aagaard-Hansen J (2005) Potential toxicity of some traditional leafy vegetables consumed in Nyang'oma Division, Western Kenya. Afr J Food Agric Nutr Dev 5(1)
Orech FO, Christensen DL, Larsen T, Friis H, Aagaard-Hansen J, Estambale BA (2007) Mineral content of traditional leafy vegetables from western Kenya. Int J Food Sci Nutr 58(8):595–602
Paśko P, Bartoń H, Zagrodzki P, Gorinstein S, Fołta M, Zachwieja Z (2009) Anthocyanins, total polyphenols and antioxidant activity in amaranth and quinoa seeds and sprouts during their growth. Food Chem 115(3):994–998
Pasricha V, Gupta RK (2014) Nutraceutical potential of Methi (Trigonella foen)
Patro HK, Kumar A, Shukla DK, Mahapatra BS (2011) Total Productivity, nutrient uptake and economics of rice-wheat cropping system as influenced by Crotalaria juncea green manuring. Journal of Environmental Research And Development 5(3):532. um-graecum L.) and Kasuri methi (Trigonella corniculata L.). Journal of Pharmacognosy and Phytochemistry. 2014 Nov 1;3(4)
Poiroux-Gonord F, Bidel LP, Fanciullino AL, Gautier H, Lauri-Lopez F, Urban L (2010) Health benefits of vitamins and secondary metabolites of fruits and vegetables and prospects to increase their concentrations by agronomic approaches. J Agric Food Chem 58(23):12065–12082
Ponka R, Fokou E, Fotso M, Tchouanguep FM, Leke R, Souopgui J, Bih MA (2006) Composition of dishes consumed in Cameroon. Int J Food Sci Technol 41(4):361–365
Powers HJ (2003) Riboflavin (vitamin B-2) and health. Am J Clin Nutr 77(6):1352–1360
Pulido R, Bravo L, Saura-Calixto F (2000) Antioxidant activity of dietary polyphenols as determined by a modified ferric reducing/antioxidant power assay. J Agric Food Chem 48(8):3396–3402
Puupponen Pimiä R, Häkkinen ST, Aarni M, Suortti T, Lampi AM, Eurola M, Piironen V, Nuutila AM, Oksman Caldentey KM (2003) Blanching and long-term freezing affect various bioactive compounds of vegetables in different ways. J Sci Food Agric 83(14):1389–1402
Radek M, Savage GP (2008) Oxalates in some Indian green leafy vegetables. Int J Food Sci Nutr 59(3):246–260
Rajeshkumar NV, Joy KL, Kuttan G, Ramsewak RS, Nair MG, Kuttan R (2002) Antitumour and anticarcinogenic activity of Phyllanthus amarus extract. J Ethnopharmacol 81(1):17–22
Randhawa MA, Khan AA, Javed MS, Sajid MW (2015) Green leafy vegetables: a health promoting source. In: Handbook of fertility. p 205–220
Rawson A, Tiwari BK, Tuohy MG, O'Donnell CP, Brunton N (2011) Effect of ultrasound and blanching pretreatments on polyacetylene and carotenoid content of hot air and freeze dried carrot discs. Ultrason Sonochem 18(5):1172–1179
Rawson A, Tiwari BK, Tuohy M, Brunton N (2012) Impact of frozen storage on polyacetylene content, texture and colour in carrots disks. J Food Eng 108(4):563–569
Rawson A, Hossain MB, Patras A, Tuohy M, Brunton N (2013) Effect of boiling and roasting on the polyacetylene and polyphenol content of fennel (*Foeniculum vulgare*) bulb. Food Res Int 50(2):513–518
Reddy NR, Pierson MD (1994) Reduction in antinutritional and toxic components in plant foods by fermentation. Food Res Int 27(3):281–290
Rock CL, Lovalvo JL, Emenhiser C, Ruffin MT, Flatt SW, Schwartz SJ (1998) Bioavailability of β-carotene is lower in raw than in processed carrots and spinach in women. J Nutr 128(5):913–916
Raju M, Varakumar S, Lakshminarayana R, Krishnakantha TP, Baskaran V (2007) Carotenoid composition and vitamin A activity of medicinally important green leafy vegetables. Food Chem 101(4):1598–1605
SACN (Scientific Advisory Committee on Nutrition) (2005) Review of dietary adviceon vitamin A. TSO, London, UK

Sadikoglu H, Liapis AI (1997) Mathematical modelling of the primary and secondary drying stages of bulk solution freeze-drying in trays: Parameter estimation and model discrimination by comparison of theoretical results with experimental data. Dry Technol 15(3-4):791–810

Saedisomeolia A, Ashoori M (2018) Riboflavin in human health: a review of current evidences. In: Advances in food and nutrition research, vol 83. Academic Press, Cambridge, pp 57–81

Saliu JA, Oboh G (2013) In vitro antioxidative and inhibitory actions of phenolic extract of some tropical green leafy vegetables on key enzymes linked to type 2 diabetes and hypertension. J Chem Pharmaceut Res 5:148–157

Sasikumar V, Subramaniam A, Aneesh A, Saravanan G (2015) Protective effect of alkaloids from Amaranthus viridis linn. against hydrogen peroxide induced oxidative damage in human erythrocytes (RBC). Int J Clin Endocrinol Metab 53(1):049

Schippers RR(2000) African indigenous vegetables: an overview of the cultivated species

Schlemmer U, Frølich W, Prieto RM, Grases F (2009) Phytate in foods and significance for humans: food sources, intake, processing, bioavailability, protective role and analysis. Mol Nutr Food Res 53(S2):S330

Serrano J, Puupponen-Pimiä R, Dauer A, Aura AM, Saura-Calixto F (2009) Tannins: current knowledge of food sources, intake, bioavailability and biological effects. Mol Nutr Food Res 53(S2):S310

Sharma HP, Kumar RA (2013) Health security in ethnic communities through nutraceutical leafy vegetables. J Environ Res Develop 7(4):1423

Shaw JE, Sicree RA, Zimmet PZ (2010) Global estimates of the prevalence of diabetes for 2010 and 2030. Diabetes Res Clin Pract 87(1):4–14

Shehata AN, Mahmoud AE, Abdou HM (2014) Quantification of total phenolic and total flavonoid contents in extracts of some Egyptian green leaves and estimation of antioxidant activity. Res J Pharm Biol Chem Sci 5:177–179

Shitanda D, Wanjala NV (2006) Effect of different drying methods on the quality of jute (Corchorus olitorius L.). Dry Technol 24(1):95–98

Soares RA, Mendonça S, de Castro LÍ, Menezes AC, Arêas JA (2015) Major peptides from amaranth (Amaranthus cruentus) protein inhibit HMG-CoA reductase activity. Int J Mol Sci 16(2):4150–4160

Solomon EB, Sapers GM, Matthews KR (eds) (2009) The produce contamination problem: causes and solutions. Academic Press, Cambridge

Sparg S, Light ME, Van Staden J (2004) Biological activities and distribution of plant saponins. J Ethnopharmacol 94(2-3):219–243

Spiller GA (2001) CRC handbook of dietary fiber in human nutrition. CRC Press, Boca Raton

Sreeramulu N, Ndossi GD, Mtotomwema K (1983) Effect of cooking on the nutritive value of common food plants of Tanzania: Part 1—Vitamin C in some of the wild green leafy vegetables. Food Chem 10(3):205–210

Stanely Mainzen Prince P, Menon VP (2001) Antioxidant action of Tinospora cordifolia root extract in alloxan diabetic rats. Phytother Res 15(3):213–218

Suffo AKL, Ashish R, Tedonkeng PE, Kuiate JR (2016) Effect of Processing Methods on Chemical Composition and Antioxidant Activities of Two *Amaranthus* Sp. Harvested in West Region of Cameroons. J Nutr Food Sci 6:477

Susantiningsih T, Ridwan R, Prijanti AR, Sadikin M, Freisleben HJ (2012) Schizonticidal effect of a combination of Amaranthus spinosus L. and Andrographis paniculata Burm. f./Nees extracts in Plasmodium berghei-infected mice. Med J Indonesia 21(2):66

Svanberg SJ, Nyman EM, Andersson R, Nilsson T (1997) Effects of boiling and storage on dietary fibre and digestible carbohydrates in various cultivars of carrots. J Sci Food Agric 73(2):245–254

Steyn NP, Olivier J, Winter P, Burger S, Nesamvuni C (2001) A survey of wild, green, leafy vegetables and their potential in combating micronutrient deficiencies in rural populations. S Afr J Sci 97:276–278

Takyi EE (1999) Children′ s consumption of dark green, leafy vegetables with added fat enhances serum retinol. J Nutr 129(8):1549–1554
Tambunan AH, Yudistira, Kisdiyani, Hernani (2001) Freeze drying characteristics of medicinal herbs. Dry Technol 19(2):325–331
Tarwadi K, Agte V (2003) Potential of commonly consumed green leafy vegetables for their antioxidant capacity and its linkage with the micronutrient profile. Int J Food Sci Nutr 54(6):417–425
Tohill BC, Seymour J, Serdula M, Kettel-Khan L, Rolls BJ (2004) What epidemiologic studies tell us about the relationship between fruit and vegetable consumption and body weight. Nutr Rev 62(10):365–374
Turnlund JR, King JC, Keyes WR, Gong B, Michel MC (1984) A stable isotope study of zinc absorption in young men: effects of phytate and a-cellulose. Am J Clin Nutr 40(5):1071–1077
UNESCO (2008) Fruit and vegetable summit. Paris
Uusiku NP, Oelofse A, Duodu KG, Bester MJ, Faber M (2010) Nutritional value of leafy vegetables of sub-Saharan Africa and their potential contribution to human health: a review. J Food Compos Anal 23(6):499–509
USDA (2005) The PLANTS Database, Version 3.5 (http://plants.usda.gov) Data compiled from various sources by Mark W. Skinner. National Plant Data Center, Baton Rouge, LA, 70874–74490
Van Duyn MA, Pivonka E (2000) Overview of the health benefits of fruit and vegetable consumption for the dietetics professional: selected literature. J Am Diet Assoc 100(12):1511–1521
Vanderjagt DJ, Freiberger C, Vu HT, Mounkaila G, Glew RS, Glew RH (2000) The trypsin inhibitor content of 61 wild edible plant foods of Niger. Plant Foods Hum Nutr 55(4):335–346
Verkerk R, Schreiner M, Krumbein A, Ciska E, Holst B, Rowland I, De Schrijver R, Hansen M, Gerhäuser C, Mithen R, Dekker M (2009) Glucosinolates in Brassica vegetables: the influence of the food supply chain on intake, bioavailability and human health. Mol Nutr Food Res 53:S219
Vishwakarma KL, Dubey V (2011) Nutritional analysis of indigenous wild edible herbs used in Eastern Chhattisgarh, India. Emir J Food Agricul 15:554–560
Wallace PA, Marfo EK, Plahar WA (1998) Nutritional quality and antinutritional composition of four non-conventional leafy vegetables. Food Chem 61(3):287–291
West CE, Eilander A, van Lieshout M (2002) Consequences of revised estimates of carotenoid bioefficacy for dietary control of vitamin A deficiency in developing countries. J Nutr 132(9):2920S–2926S
WHO (2009) Global Prevalence of Vitamin A Deficiency in Populations at Risk 1995– 2005. In: WHO Global Database of Vitamin A Deficiency. WHO, Geneva, Switzerland
Yamaguchi T, Mizobuchi T, Kajikawa R, Kawashima H, Miyabe F, Terao J, Takamura H, Matoba T (2001) Radical-scavenging activity of vegetables and the effect of cooking on their activity. Food Sci Technol Res 7(3):250–257
Yamamura S, Ozawa K, Ohtani K, Kasai R, Yamasaki K (1998) Antihistaminic flavones and aliphatic glycosides from Mentha spicata. Phytochemistry 48(1):131–136
Zimmet PZ, Tuomi T, Mackay IR, Rowley MJ, Knowles W, Cohen M, Lang DA (1994) Latent autoimmune diabetes mellitus in adults (LADA): the role of antibodies to glutamic acid decarboxylase in diagnosis and prediction of insulin dependency. Diabet Med 11(3):299–303

Phenolic Acids and Their Health-Promoting Activity

Sana Khatri, Additiya Paramanya, and Ahmad Ali

Abbreviations

AGE	Advanced glycation end product
PRP	Proline-rich proteins
RNS	Reactive nitrogen species
ROS	Reactive oxygen species
SOM	Soil organic matter

Introduction

Phenolics are a diverse group of compounds which are identified by the presence of a hydroxyl group (–OH) linked to an aromatic hydrocarbon group. The structural diversity of these compounds ranges from simple structure (phenolic acids) polyphenols (flavonoids) to polymeric compounds. The simplest member of this group is carbolic acid or phenol (C_6H_5OH).

Phenolic compounds are polyhydroxylated phytochemicals, which have common structures. These can be further divided into three main subclasses – the flavonoids, the phenolic acids, and the tannins (Fig. 1). Flavonoids contains two or more aromatic rings, each bearing one or more phenolic hydroxyl groups which are connected by a carbon bridge, consisting of three carbon atoms. Most flavonoids bear this type of structure which have been further divided into subclasses, based on the position of the second ring relative to the C ring, as well as the functional groups (ketones, hydroxyls) and presence or absence of a double bond in the C ring (Ho 1993). These subclasses are flavones, isoflavones and isoflavonoids, flavanones, flavanols, anthocyanidins, chalcones, and dihydrochalcones.

Phenolic acids are further subdivided in two main groups – benzoic acid derivatives and cinnamic acid derivatives containing seven and nine carbon atoms,

S. Khatri · A. Paramanya · A. Ali (✉)
Department of Life Sciences, University of Mumbai, Mumbai, Maharashtra, India
e-mail: ahmadali@mu.ac.in

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6_27

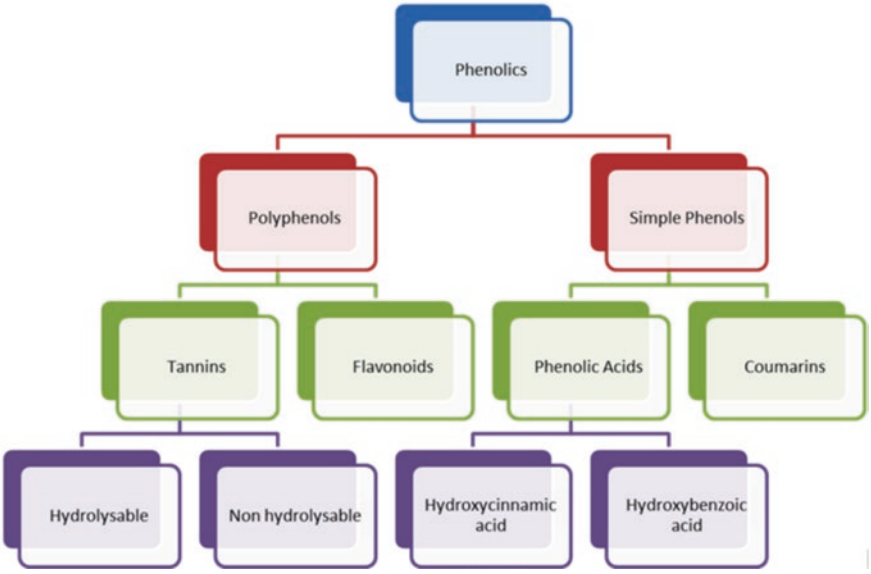


Fig. 1 Classification of phenolic compounds

respectively. All these compounds are hydroxylated. The main representative isolated compounds are caffeic acid, chlorogenic acid, ferulic acid, gallic acid, gentisic acid, and *p*-coumaric acid. Stilbenoids – the smaller subclass – include the polyhydroxylated stilbenes, resveratrol being the main representative (Castelluccio et al. 1995).

Polyphenols are considered as potent antioxidants since they are able to scavenge free radicals. It was first thought that the health benefits associated with the consumption of dietary polyphenols were due to antioxidant mechanisms but sometimes may not act as antioxidants, as they may exert modulatory actions through protein and lipid kinase signaling pathways in cells (Decker 1995). In addition to these antioxidant activities, phenolics have also been shown to possess antimicrobial, anticancer, and anti-inflammatory properties. Recent reports suggest their potential role as antiglycating agent in the prevention of glycation, a process which has been implicated in most of the secondary complications of diabetes. This chapter deals with the phenolic acids in plant, food, and soil and their health-promoting activities.

Plant Phenolics

Introduction

Plants have a diverse composition of organic compounds which can be classified as primary or secondary metabolite. Primary metabolites include nucleic acids, proteins, and other such components which are omnipresent in all plants and are

required for their growth and development, while the secondary metabolites have not directly been linked to the basic photosynthesis and respiration system but play an important role in plant's survival in the environment.

The diversity in the nature of the secondary metabolites possessed by plants is known to the world since long, and human being have used plants for all purposes including medicine. Along with food, plants produce certain nonessential and non-nutritive chemicals known as phytochemicals. These compounds have been proven to perform protective functions in plants as well as humans. Some of the important classes of compounds which have been characterized and explored for the benefit of human and other animals include alkaloids, phenolics, tannins, and terpenes.

All types of polyphenols are thought to be found in plants, soils, and food. In plants, the phenols are esterified with glucose and carbohydrates as free aglycones. Dietary polyphenols isolated from fruits (berries, apples, citrus, cherries); vegetables (onion, celery, beer hops, soybeans); herbs, roots, and spices (gingko, turmeric); green and black tea; and red wine when consumed result in benefits on human health and lower incidence of heart disease, cancer, gastrointestinal and neurological diseases, liver diseases, atherosclerosis, obesity, and allergies (Buendia et al. 2010).

Phenolic acids that are most common in plant tissues are hydroxycinnamic acids (Fig. 2). Caffeic acid; chlorogenic acid; *o*-, *m*-, and *p*-coumaric acids; ferulic acids; and sinapic acids are included in this broad class (Castelluccio et al. 1995). All these acids in plants occur mostly as esters or glycosides, in the associated form, for example, as the lignin component. Particular hydroxycinnamic acids occur in the ester form associated with carboxylic acids (Fernández de et al. 1992). Caffeic acid is one of the most widespread hydroxycinnamic acids, which is found mainly in coffee, apples, potatoes, spinach lettuce, cabbage, olive oil, wine, and tobacco leaves (Breinholt 1999). Hydroxybenzoic acid (Fig. 2; such as gallic acid, *p*-hydroxybenzoic acid, protocatechuic acid, vanillic and syringic acids) is another important group of phenolic acids (Bravo 1998). The hydroxybenzoic acids occur mostly in the glycoside form. In plant tissues, phenolic acids can be bound to various compounds, e.g., flavonoids, fatty acids, sterols, and cell wall polymers (Heleno et al. 2015).

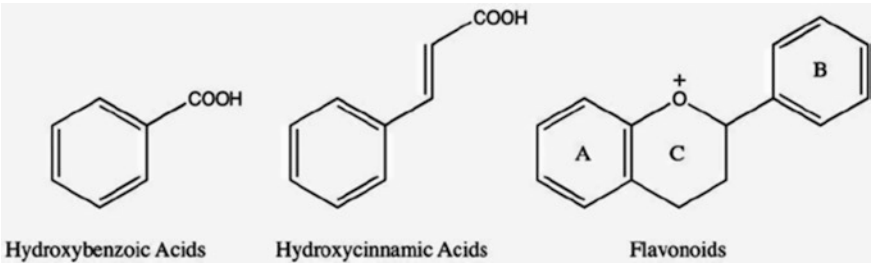


Fig. 2 Representative structures of phenolic acids

Flavonoids

Flavonoids are ubiquitous in plants; almost all plant tissues are able to synthesize flavonoids. There are also a wide variety of types – at least 2000 naturally occurring flavonoids. They are considered as the largest and most diverse group of phenolic compounds in plants. These compounds usually occur as glycosides which can be dissolved in the vacuolar juice (mainly in the *O*-glycoside form, rather than *C*-glycosides). They are crystallized around the epidermis. Anthocyanins in many species of plant are accumulated in the vesicles which get developed in the vacuole. Flavonoids are very often, the only metabolites in dicotyledonous plants, showing the presence of pharmacological activity (Arct and Pytkowska 2008). Fruits and vegetables are the main sources of flavonoids in the diet. They also occur in certain grains, seeds, and spices, as well as in wine, tea, coffee, cocoa, and herbal essences (Aherne and O'Brien 2002). They can be classified into seven groups: flavones, flavanones, flavonols, flavanonols, isoflavones, flavanols (catechins), and anthocyanidins.

In general, the leaves, flowers, and fruits of the plant contain flavonoid glycosides, woody tissues contain aglycones, and seeds may contain both. As a result of their ubiquity in plants, flavonoids are an integral part of the human diet. It is estimated that the average American's daily intake of flavonoids is close to 1 g per person. Hertog et al. (1993) also found that the major sources of flavonoid intake were tea (61%), onion (13%), and apple (10%). Certain later studies provided more precise individual data concerning the intake of various classes of flavonoids. For example, the consumption of flavonols for American has been estimated at 20–25 mg/d.

Stilbenes

Stilbenes are phenolic compounds which contain two benzene rings separated by an ethane bridge. They are widely distributed in higher plants, and their main physiological roles relate to their action as phytoalexins and growth regulators (Gotham 1989). Stilbenes had not caught the attention of food and nutritionists until one of its family members, resveratrol (3,5,4′-trihydroxystilbene), was reported to demonstrate a preventing effect on cancer (Jang et al. 1997). Resveratrol is present in many plant species, including those that are popular components of the human diet such as grapes, peanuts, and berries. Plants synthesize it which can be used as a part of defense mechanisms against mechanical injury, pathogen infection, and UV radiation (Ososki and Kennelly 2009).

Lignans

Lignans are dimers of phenylpropanoid units linked by the central carbons of their side chains. These lignans and their higher oligomers in plants act as defensive substances. Lignan-rich plant products were found to be active ingredients in the

treatment of disease in Chinese folk medicine. Unfortunately, many of the active ingredients of these plant products have not been scientifically tested as therapeutic agents (Ayres and Loike 1990). However, flax and sesame lignans have been considered as important components with health benefits (Kang et al. 1998).The main lignan compounds include lariciresinol, pinoresinol, and matairesinol – all of which are phenylpropanoid dimmers and mostly occur in the seed of flax and sunflower (Kurzer and Xu 1997); but also small amounts of them can be found in grains, vegetables, fruits, nuts, tea, and coffee (Milder et al. 2005).

Tannins

Depending on their structures, tannins are widely distributed in plants and may occur as hydrolysable tannins (formed in the pathway of the phenolic acids with sugar polymerization) and condensed tannins (combination of flavonoids) (Ashok and Upadhyaya 2012). Hydrolysable tannins are glycosylated gallic acids (Ho 1993). Condensed tannins also known as proanthocyanidins are linear polymers of flavan-3-ol (catechin and gallocatechin) and flavan-3,4-diol units. In the condensed tannins, the units are linked through the interflavonoid bonds between C-4 and C-8 or C-6. Tannins occur widely in different foods and are often concentrated in the skin of fruits and seed coats, among others. The plant phenolic compounds present a variety of colors from colorless to intense vibrant dyes such as red or violet. In the plant cells, phenolics are stored near the chloroplast, or they are accumulated in vacuoles, where they may polymerize and strengthen the cell wall.

Variability Related to Plant Samples

Botanical and geographical origin, cultivation conditions, maturity, and post-harvest storage conditions are considered as additional variation sources. Varietal differences in phenolic composition are well documented in numerous fruits, including apple (Wojdylo et al. 2008), strawberry (Buendia et al. 2010), grapes (Mattivi et al. 2006), or banana (Ucle's et al. 2010). Varietal differences are also observed in the phenolic distribution between the various parts of fruits, as illustrated for grape. Biosynthesis of proanthocyanidins and phenolic acids takes place at early stages of fruit development, while accumulation of anthocyanins occurs during ripening. Formation of flavanols in fruits takes place mostly at two stages, i.e., at flowering and in the ripe fruit. Increase in resistance to thiolytic degradation of grape seed procyanidins occurs during ripening attributes to oxidation reactions (Kennedy et al. 2001). Arabidopsis seeds lacking brown coloration contained much higher levels of procyanidins (especially extractable ones) than the wild type seeds, confirming that seed coat browning is caused by the oxidation of flavan-3-ols (Pourcel et al. 2007). In the formation of flavan-3-ol-flavonol adducts observed during aging of pinto beans, although the ethyl bonds resulting from the latter reaction are cleaved

by thiolysis, additional derivatives are yielded that are usually not considered when analyzing proanthocyanidins (Beninger et al. 2007).

Phenolic Compounds in Cultivated Plants

Heldt et al. (1997) have mentioned that plants synthesize primary carbohydrates, lipids, and proteins. Lipid precursors and aromatic amino acids synthesize secondary plant compounds. Phenolic compounds are responsible to build an important portion of the secondary plant compounds. The most important phenolic compound in plants is lignin – a complex polymer of phenylpropane units. Another abundant compound class includes the flavonoids, stilbenes, coumarins, and polyflavonoids (condensed tannins). Phenolic acids in plants have diverse functions – stabilization of the structure, protection from herbivory, protection from ultraviolet (UV) light, coloration of blossoms, exchange of information with symbionts, and biocidal effects against bacteria and fungi. After the death of plants, phenolics may persist for weeks or months affecting the decomposer organisms and decomposition processes in soils (Horner et al. 1988). Therefore, their effects are not restricted to single plants but may extend to the functioning of whole ecosystems.

Phenolic compounds may have both beneficial (Bitsch 1996) and toxic (Schroder 2007) effects on human health. Toxicologic effects of most phenolic compounds in plants are limited as compared to pesticides and other anthropogenic chemicals. External stimuli are responsible modulate the synthesis and therefore change the chemical composition or quantities of phenolic compounds in the plants. External stimuli include microbial infections, UV light, and mechanical wounding of the plant as well as chemical stressors such as heavy metals and pesticides (Gotham 1989).

Composition of Phenolics in Common Foods

Food phenolic composition is highly diverse which reflects the diversity of plant composition and additional complexity brought by reactions of plant phenolics in its processing and storage. Some families are widespread in the diet, while others are restricted to or particularly abundant in specific foods (e.g., isoflavones in soybeans, dihydrochalcones in apple). Proanthocyanidins are present in most fruits, as well as in fruits juices, wines, and beers. They are the most abundant phenolics in commonly consumed fruits such as grape (Mane et al. 2007), apple (Wojdylo et al. 2008), or strawberry (Buendia et al. 2010) and also found in large amounts in transformed food products such as red wine or cider. Dietary exposures to hydrolysable tannins are rather limited (Clifford and Scalbert 2000). Their major dietary sources are berries such as raspberry, blackberry, and strawberry (Torronen 2009), but the levels reported are rather low, ranging from 10 to 22 mg/100 g fresh weight in

strawberry (Buendia et al. 2010) and from 68 to 331 mg/100 g fresh weight in berries consumed in Finland, namely, cloudberry, rose hip, raspberry, and strawberry (Koponen et al. 2007).

Ellagitannins are abundant in pomegranate but found mostly in the nonedible fruit rind. However, punicalagin isomers and other ellagic acid derivatives were detected (1500–1900 mg/L) in industrial juices as a result of extraction from the rind (Gil et al. 2000). They can also be present in low amounts in beverages such as wine or whisky, due to their release from wood barrels. As most flavonoids are present as a number of glycosides, they vary in their chemical and biological properties. For instance, the anthocyanin profiles of foods are based on 6 common anthocyanidins but nonetheless highly diverse, the number of anthocyanins varying from 2 (in peach or pistachio) to 34 in radishes (Wu and Prior 2005a, b).

Effect of Phenolic Compounds on Food Quality

Phenolic compounds share some common properties inherent to the phenol ring (Quideau et al. 2011). They also exhibit a variety of properties linked to their particular structural features, which affect food quality and can be modified during processing.

Phenolic compounds are closely associated with the sensory and nutritional quality of fresh and processed plant foods (Macheix et al. 1990). The enzymatic browning reaction of phenolic compounds, catalyzed by polyphenol oxidase, is of vital importance to fruit and vegetable processing due to the formation of undesirable color and flavor and the loss of nutrients. For examples, polyphenol oxidase was found to be responsible for the browning of grapes (Sapis et al. 1983), and catechin, polyphenol oxidase, and oxygen were reported to be required for the browning of yams (Ozo and Caygill 1986).

A common approach for the prevention of the browning of food and beverages has been the use of anti-browning agents. The most widespread anti-browning agents used in the food and beverage industries are sulfites. Due to the health risks of sulfating agents (Taylor et al. 1986), the FDA has banned or limited the use of sulfites in certain foods. Oxidative changes of polyphenols during processing are important for the development of color and flavor in certain foods. Browning of polyphenols is a natural process of cocoa fermentation.

Changes Induced by Food Processing

Food phenolic composition is usually different from that of the raw material, due to selective extraction, especially in the manufacture of beverages but also in peeling or deseeding operations and conversion of plant phenolics to new and mostly unknown derivatives. For example, the phenolic content of strawberry juices

increased from clear juices to cloudy juices and purees, only by about 20% for anthocyanins but for up to threefold to fourfold for proanthocyanidins (Oszmianski and Wojdylo 2009). aDP values of proanthocyanidin were also higher in puree (4.1–7.1) than in clear juice (2.6–3.2), as expected from proanthocyanidins associated with plant cell walls and other solid plant material. Large losses of anthocyanins and proanthocyanidins occurred during storage, especially at higher temperature, but some protective effect was observed in the puree and turbid juices, presumably due adsorption of phenolics on the solid material and association with pectins or formation of anthocyanin-proanthocyanidin complexes.

Changes taking place during processing have been particularly investigated in black tea and in red wine (Harbowy and Balentine 1997). Other examples include reactions of ellagitannins in food processing (Bakkalbasi et al. 2009) and in whisky aged in oak barrels (Tanaka et al. 2010). Conversion of flavanol monomers, abundant in green tea, to the black tea pigments is driven by enzymatic oxidation, catalyzed by polyphenol oxidase (Roberts et al. 1959), and yields two major groups of pigments, namely, theaflavins and thearubigins. Theaflavins, based on a benzotropolone structure (Ollis et al. 1966), and numerous oxidation products formed from them have been identified (Drynan et al. 2010), while little is known about thearubigin structures (Haslam 2003). As mentioned above, recent studies suggest that they are rather low molecular weight compounds (in the range 1000–2100 Da) formed by successive steps involving oxidation of *o*-diphenol groups to *o*-quinones followed by nucleophilic addition of either another phenolic ring or water (Kuhnert et al. 2010).

Phenolic Acids in Soils

Phenolics consist of more than one aromatic ring, bearing one or more hydroxyl functional groups. They are originated from plant materials and industrial products/wastes, thereafter entering the soil either as leachates or as particulate matter (Hättenschwiler and Vitousek 2000). Once integrated into the soil, phenolics can control belowground processes, including SOM decomposition (Freeman et al. 2004) and nutrient cycling (Kraus et al. 2004). Decomposition of phenolics in soils, modification of the rate of SOM decomposition, and current environmental changes influence the fate of phenolics in soils (Appel 1993). Phenolics affect the cycling key nutrients to plants and soil microorganism (Hättenschwiler and Vitousek 2000).

Effect of Environmental Changes on Phenolics

Environmental changes such as elevated CO_2, warming, N deposition, and drought may be responsible in affecting phenolic production from plant tissues, subsequent degradation in soils, and SOM decomposition.

Elevated CO_2

Elevated CO_2 usually increases phenolic concentrations in plants. In field CO_2 enrichment experiments, phenolic compounds in plant tissues, such as leaves, needles, stems, and rhizomes, increase by 11–18% (Booker and Maier 2001). Elevated CO_2 can increase carbon supply and nutrient (e.g., nitrogen) stress in trees, resulting in decreased carbon demand. Such change is known to accelerate the accumulation of total nonstructural carbohydrates and the synthesis of carbon-based secondary or structural compounds (Penuelas and Estiarte 1998). The downstream processes are impacted by the changes in the concentration of phenolics in plant tissues. For example, (Siegenthaler et al. 2010) found that elevated CO_2 induces a production of phenolic-rich litters, resulting in declining SOM decomposition. The effects of elevated CO_2 on litter chemistry and decomposition rates in upland vegetation and demonstrated that elevated CO_2 increases lignin content in leaf litter significantly, but there is no significant effect on decomposition rate (Norby et al. 2001).

Warming

An increase in atmospheric CO_2 concentration is involved in accompanying rising temperature. The effect of warming on phenolic production and degradation can be measured with an emphasis on whole organic matter decomposition. Unlike the rather unidirectional influences of elevated CO_2, warming has various effects on the production of phenolics (Table 3.2). Increase in temperature has led to both an increase (Yi and Wetzstein 2010) and a decrease (Veteli et al. 2007) in phenolic production. Warmer conditions usually accelerate biochemical reactions and may result in lowering production of secondary metabolites because plant growth would be enhanced.

A lower phenolic content under warming conditions has been reported in a meta-analysis by Zvereva and Kozlov (2006). However, interactive or simultaneous effects of elevated CO_2 and warming in relation to phenolics production have not been reported (Raisanen et al. 2008) because two effects often negate each other (Zvereva and Kozlov 2006).

N Deposition

Nitrogen enrichment can be studied in terms of atmospheric nitrogen deposition and fertilizer additions. Phenolic concentrations remain unchanged after nitrogen enrichment (Nybakken et al. 2009). Often, nitrogen enrichment decreases phenol oxidase (Ellis et al. 2009), while hydrolases are often activated. Sinsabaugh (2010) reviewed that responses of phenol oxidase to nitrogen enrichment can differ by the

types of ecosystem determined, as it decreases its activity in the forest and increases it in grassland or agricultural system. These contrasting results may originate from the initial lignocellulose contents in litter. Bragazza et al. (2006) have reported that nitrogen deposition can accelerate carbon release from peat bogs by activating phenol oxidase.

Drought

Global climate change models often predict an increase in frequency and intensity of drought. Such changes can affect water availability in terrestrial ecosystems and water levels in wetlands. In wetlands, the effects of drought on nutrient cycling draw much attention due to their close association with water. Ellis et al. (2009) have shown resultant stimulated decomposition due to increased level of phenol oxidase in the drought. However, in another report it was found that the activity of phenol oxidase decreased in peatland due to stimulated drought (Toberman et al. 2010). Also, he suggested that initial water content in soils may be responsible for these contrasting responses and that a hyperbolic relation exists between water content and phenol oxidase.

Health-Promoting Activity of Phenolic Compounds

Dietary polyphenols are attracting great interest as they may play a role in lowering the incidence of certain degenerative diseases associated with consumption of plant-based foods. However, scientific evidence is not yet conclusive, and more human studies are needed (Torronen 2009). The biological effects of dietary phenolics may involve more complex mechanisms such as modulation of cell signaling pathways and impact on intestinal flora (Manach et al. 2009). Wine phenolics, being potent antioxidants, can efficiently reduce oxidizing species and inhibit the peroxidation of dietary lipids in the digestive tract. One of the major effects of dietary tannins is the reduction of nutrient absorption, resulting from their interaction with other food macromolecules and inhibition of digestive enzymes. Synthesis of salivary PRPs that show particularly high affinity toward tannins may be a defense mechanism developed by mammals to counteract these deleterious effects. However, complexation of tannins with food matrix components such as pectins may limit their interaction with PRPs. Interactions with food components or PRPs may also impact the intestinal absorption of tannins (Cai and Bennick 2006) and modify gut microflora metabolism (Bazzocco et al. 2008), provided they survive the digestive process.
Almost all phenolics possess several common biological and chemical properties. They are shown in Fig. 3.

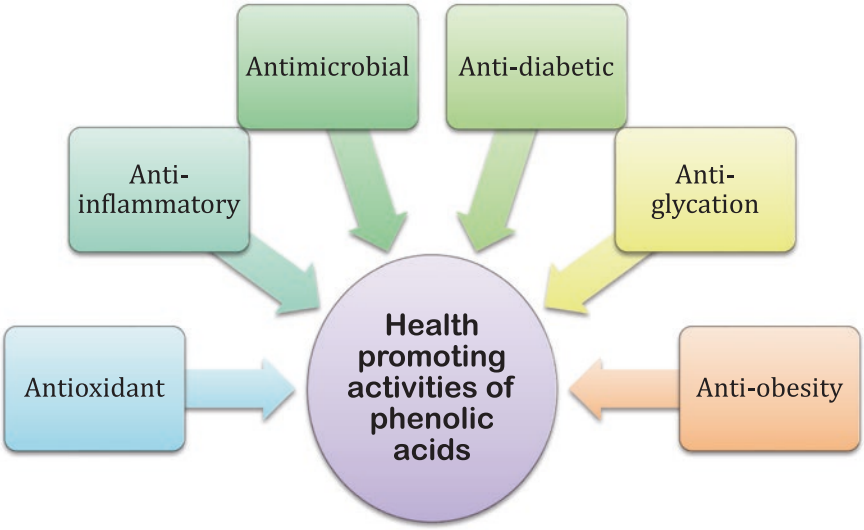


Fig. 3 Health-promoting activities of phenolic acids

Antioxidant Activity

It has been known for a long time that phenolic compounds occurring naturally in plants present a broad spectrum of health-promoting properties resulting from their biological activity. Certainly, antioxidant activity is involved in these properties. The most important element for every living organism is oxygen. Reactive oxygen species (ROS) may be toxic and mutagenic. The reactive oxygen forms include superoxide, singlet oxygen, hydrogen peroxide, and hydroxyl radical. Figure 4 presents the factors and mechanisms of oxidative stress.

Oxidative stress triggering damage in cell structures, including lipids, proteins, and DNA, occurs due to excessive production of ROS. This damage results in many disorders such as cancer, inflammation, cataract, hypertension, diabetes, cardiovascular disease, and Parkinson and Alzheimer diseases (Sies 2010). Reactive oxygen species can also negatively influence some immunological processes and aging, as well as pathophysiological mechanisms leading to skin inflammatory disorders (Cai et al. 2014). Oxidative stress can be understood as the disturbance of the homeostasis between reactive oxygen forms and the antioxidative defense system in the organism (Yoo et al. 2014).

Antioxidant activity of phenolic compounds is associated with the ring structure of the molecule, conjugated double bonds and the presence of functional groups in the ring. Various mechanisms of action are involved in order to make the antioxidant activity of phenolics possible – inhibition of the ROS formation and the ROS trapping and the extinction of singlet oxygen; and reduction of the metal ions chelated (catalysts for reactions responsible for the formation of ROS), interruption of

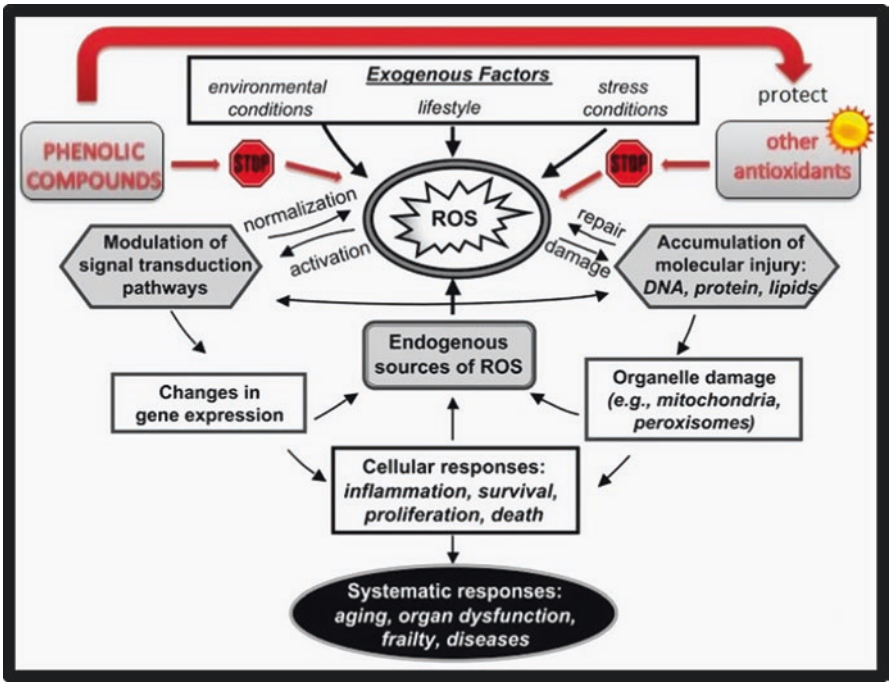


Fig. 4 The scheme of factors involved in the formation of free radicals and a cellular response to ROS. The red arrow and the text in red emphasize the importance of phenolic compounds, other antioxidants, and the relationship between them. The sun signifies protection of other antioxidants by phenolic compounds (Adapted from Sies 2010)

cascade of free radical reactions in lipid peroxidation which helps in protection of other compounds with antioxidant activity (Alov et al. 2015).

The skin is well equipped with two crucial means of defense against oxidative stress: antioxidant enzymes (catalase, glutathione peroxidase, and peroxide dismutase) and nonenzymatic molecules (vitamins, ubiquinone, glutathione) (Dudonne et al. 2011). Thus it is recommended to increase the number of natural antioxidants through the diet or external application. As an example of natural exogenous antioxidants, antioxidant vitamins (especially vitamins C and E), lipoic acid, coenzyme Q, melatonin, resveratrol, curcumin, and other polyphenols can be consumed (Sadowska-Bartosz and Bartosz 2014). These compounds are safe and more biologically active than synthetic antioxidants (Cai et al. 2014).

Anti-inflammatory Properties

Every day, every single organism is exposed to external factors which may cause various types of damage, irritation, or allergies. The body's defensive reaction against the negative effects of these factors is inflammation. During the complex

process of inflammation, there is a production of an excess of free radicals. ROS (reactive oxygen species) and RNS (reactive nitrogen species) formation is associated with the triggering of biological responses to activation of the transcription factor AP-1 and nuclear transcription factor kappa B (NF-κB) (Pastore et al. 2009). These factors help to regulate secretion of signaling molecules, such as pro-inflammatory cytokines and interleukins, which results in skin inflammation, showing the appearance of redness and swelling of the inflamed area. The crucial functions of polyphenols are inhibition of pro-inflammatory mediators, neutralization of free radicals, ROS, RNS, and thus inhibition of lipid peroxidation (Rhein and Fluhr 2010).

During inflammation, arachidonic acid is released from cell membrane phospholipids. Phospholipase A2 (PLA2) is an enzyme used in this reaction, which is stimulated by oxidative stress. Either the cyclooxygenase or lipoxygenase pathway is used to transform the released arachidonic acid. Polyphenols may be responsible in inhibition of both reactions, most frequently due to the interruption of substrate binding to the enzyme by disrupting the hydrogen bonding system or due to ions chelated in the active center of the enzyme (Arct et al. 2003).

Antimicrobial Actions

Phenolic compounds possess significant antimicrobial activities (Czemplik et al. 2011). There are many infections or diseases along with the dermal kind that are treated with a broad-spectrum antibiotic activity. It may lead to the negative influence of antibiotics on natural microflora of the skin and lead to resistance of many bacterial strains (Pinho et al. 2014). Thus, polyphenol activity has special significance in the case of strains resistant to antibiotics, e.g., pneumococci resistant to β-lactam and macrolides, enterococci resistant to glycopeptide antibiotics and vancomycin, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* with its defense mechanism against phagocytic activity of polymorphonuclear leukocytes, and *Staphylococcus aureus* resistant to methicillin (Anani et al. 2015). The most frequent causes of hospital infections of skin wounds like ulcers, burns, or bedsores which lead to many healing problems includes bacteria of some genera such as *Enterococcus*, *Pseudomonas*, and *Staphylococcus* (Langley et al. 2005).

Recently over 90% of staphylococci, pneumococci, and enterococci isolated from serious infections were found to be resistant to antibiotics; thus the demand for antibacterial products is still rising. These products may be used for multi-strain bacterial infections, without causing a simultaneous toxic effect on human tissues (Czemplik et al. 2011). The antibacterial properties of phenolics may result from the mechanism of their action on cell membranes (Wu et al. 2013).

Anti-diabetic Properties

Diabetes mellitus has been grouped into two types, namely, type 1 and type 2, and is one of the most rapidly increasing disorders with approximately 425 million diabetic patients worldwide. Polyphenols, especially flavonoids, phenolic acids, and tannins, have the important property of inhibiting α-glucosidase and α-amylase, which are key enzymes and responsible for the digestion of dietary carbohydrates to glucose (Moo-Huchin et al. 2015). McDougall et al. (2005) studied the potential inhibitory activity of strawberries, raspberries, blueberries, and blackcurrants on α-glucosidase and α-amylase enzymes. The polyphenols present in them had an inhibitory effect on both enzymes which resulted in reduced blood glucose levels (Lin et al. 2016).

According to Wilson et al. (2008), increased cranberry juice intake could promote positive health benefits. The highest α-amylase and α-glucosidase inhibitory activities among herb, fruit, and fungal-enriched cheeses were observed in cranberry-enriched cheese by in vitro studies (Apostolidis et al. 2007). Combining cranberry with oregano which contains high rosmarinic acid content enhanced the antioxidant activity and total phenol content proving a possible candidate with antidiabetic activity (Apostolidis et al. 2006).

Antiglycation Properties

Glycation is a nonenzymatic condensation reaction between reducing sugars and amino groups of proteins that undergo rearrangements to stable ketoamines, which leads to the formation of advanced glycation end products (AGEs) (Ahmed 2005). It is a spontaneous reaction and depends on the degree and duration of hyperglycemia, half-life of the protein, and permeability of the tissue to free glucose (Berrou et al. 2009). Increased glycation and buildup of tissue AGEs have been implicated in diabetic complications as they can alter enzyme activity, decrease ligand binding, modify protein half-life, and alter immunogenicity (Kostolanska et al. 2009). Hyperglycemia is usually considered as a clinical hallmark of diabetes which results into the formation of AGEs. Therefore, glycation also plays an important therapeutic target for the treatment of diabetic complication. Several natural compounds have been reported to possess antiglycating properties (Ali et al. 2014).

Polyphenolic compound on the other hand is a diverse class of plant secondary metabolites (Hasna 2009) characterized by a polyphenol structure, which means that they have several hydroxyl groups on two or more benzene rings. Several plant species such as fruits, spices, and vegetables have been reported to possess polyphenols which confer on them the ability to remove free radicals formed from glycation and its end products from the system (Cinta et al. 2010). Culinary spices not only provide high concentrations of bioactive compounds but also tend to provide few calories which is significant in type 2 diabetes, often associated with abdominal

obesity (Schroder 2007). Most frequently, alligator pepper, ginger, and nutmeg are the spices of interest.

Alligator pepper (*Aframomum melegueta*), also known as Guinea pepper or grains of paradise, is a member of the Zingiberaceae family. The seeds are used as a spice in food flavors and have a wide range of ethnobotanical uses. They are used as a remedy for treating stomachache, diarrhea, and snakebite (Umukoro and Ashorobi 2007). *Zingiber officinale* (family: Zingiberaceae), also known as "ginger," is one of the most commonly used spices in many parts of the world. It has been cultivated for thousands of years for medicinal purposes and as a spice. It is used extensively in traditional medicine to treat headaches, nausea, febrile conditions, colds, arthritis, rheumatic disorders, and muscular discomfort (Khaki et al. 2009). *Myristica fragrans* (Myristicaceae) with a common name, nutmeg, is an aromatic tree which is cultivated in many tropical countries. Its dried kernel has been claimed to possess medicinal properties (digestive, carminative, and expectorant) in Indian medicine (Nadkarni 1998). It also possesses hypolipidemic, antithrombotic, antiplatelet aggregation, antifungal, aphrodisiac, and anti-inflammatory activities (Evans 1996).

Shin et al. (2015) found that *Silybum marianum* flower extract inhibited the glycation between BSA and glucose in vitro and was further confirmed in human explants. Silibinin was identified to be the compound contributing to the antiglycating property. Similarly, rosmarinic acid, a typical polyphenol from Lamiaceae plant, acted as the major active component of *Melissa officinalis* in suppressing glycation associated disorders (Yui et al. 2017). Phenol-enriched maple syrup extract reduced the formation of AGEs by 40% in the bovine serum albumin (BSA)-fructose assay and by 30% in the BSA-methylglyoxal (MGO) assay (Liu et al. 2017). In other report pure phenolic compounds like gallic acid, ferulic acid, and cinnamic acid were shown to possess significant antiglycating properties (Banan and Ali 2016).

Other Activities

Anthocyanins are considered as modulators of adipose tissue metabolism. Tsuda (2008) found that dietary cyanidin 3-glucoside-rich purple corn color (PCC), an anthocyanin, can ameliorate high-fiber diet-induced insulin resistance in mice. The enzymes included in the fatty acid and triacylglycerol synthesis were suppressed and downregulated by dietary PCC, thereby contributing to the suppression of triacylglycerol accumulation.

Recently, phenolics, particularly flavonoids, have been intensively investigated because of these broad potential pharmacological activities (Huang and Ferraro 1882). Diets rich in phenolics may appear to protect against cardiovascular diseases, neurodegenerative disorders, and some forms of cancer.

Several phenolics have been recognized as active chemopreventive agents. Epigallocatechin 3-gallate (EGCG) from green tea and theaflavins from black tea

exert strong inhibitory effects on diverse cellular events associated with multistage carcinogenesis. Curcumin, a yellow ingredient from turmeric (*Curcuma longa*), has also been extensively investigated for its cancer-preventive potential (Lin 2004).

References

Aherne SA, O'Brien NM (2002) Dietary flavanols: chemistry, food content and metabolism. Nutrition 18:75–81

Ahmed N (2005) Advanced glycation end-products - role in pathology of diabetic complications. Diabetes Res Clin Pract 67:3–21

Ali A, Sharma R, Sivakami S (2014) Role of natural compounds in the prevention of DNA and proteins damage by glycation. Bionano Front 7:25–30

Alov P, Tsakovska I, Pajeva I (2015) Computational studies of free radical- scavenging properties of phenolic compounds. Curr Top Med Chem 15:85–104

Anani K, Adjrah Y, Ameyapoh Y, Karou SD, Agbonon A, de Souza C, Gbeassor M (2015) Effects of hydroethanolic extracts of *Balanitesaegyptiaca* (L.) Delile (Balanitaceae) on some resistant pathogens bacteria isolated from wounds. J Ethnopharmacol 164:16–21

Apostolidis E, Kwon YI, Shetty K (2006) Potential of cranberry-based herbal synergies for diabetes and hypertension management. Asia Pac J Clin Nutr 15:433–441

Apostolidis E, Kwon YI, Shetty K (2007) Inhibitory potential of herb, fruit, and fungal-enriched cheese against key enzymes linked to type 2 diabetes and hypertension. Inn Food Sci Emerg Technol 8:46–54

Appel HM (1993) Phenolics in ecological interactions: the importance of oxidation. J Chem Ecol 19(7):1521–1552

Arct J, Bielenda B, Oborska A, Pytkowska K (2003) The tea and its cosmetic application. J Appl Cosmetol 21:117–127

Arct J, Pytkowska K (2008) Flavonoids as components of biologically active cosmeceuticals. Clin Dermatol 26:347–357

Ashok PK, Upadhyaya K (2012) Tannins are astringent. J Pharmacogn Phytochem 1:45–50

Ayres DC, Loike JD (1990) Lignans: chemical, biological & clinical properties. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK

Bakkalbasi E, Mentes O, Artik N (2009) Food ellagitannins— occurrence, effects of processing and storage. Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr 49:283–298

Banan P, Ali A (2016) Preventive effect of phenolic acids on in vitro glycation. Ann Phytomed 5:97–102

Bazzocco S, Mattila I, Guyot S (2008) Factors affecting the conversion of apple polyphenols to phenolic acids and fruit matrix to short-chain fatty acids by human faecalmicrobiota in vitro. Eur J Nutr 47:442–452

Beninger CW, Gu L, Prior RL (2007) Changes in polyphenols of the seed coat during the after-darkening process in pinto beans (*Phaseolus vulgaris* L.). J Agric Food Chem 53:7777–7782

Berrou J, Tostivint I, Verrecchia F, Berthier C, Boulanger E, Mauviel A, Marti HP, Wautier MP, Wautier JL, Rondeau E, Hertig A (2009) Advanced glycation end-products regulate extracellular matrix protein and protease expression by human glomerular mesangial cells. Int J Mol Med 23:513–520

Bitsch R (1996) Pflanzen Phenol und ihregesundheitlicheWirkung. Natwiss Rundsch 2:47–51

Booker FL, Maier CA (2001) Atmospheric carbon dioxide, irrigation, and fertilization effects on phenolic and nitrogen concentrations in loblolly pine (*Pinus taeda*) needles. Tree Physiol 21(9):609–616

Bragazza L, Freeman C, Jones T (2006) Atmospheric nitrogen deposition promotes carbon loss from peat bogs. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103(51):19386–19389

Bravo L (1998) Polyphenols: chemistry, dietary sources, metabolism, and nutritional significance. Nutr Rev 56(11):317–333
Breinholt V (1999) Desirable versus harmful levels of intake of flavonoids and phenolic acids. In: Kumpulainen JT, Salonen JT (eds) Natural antioxidants and anticarcinogens in nutrition, health and disease. The Royal Society of Chemistry, London, UK, pp 93–99
Buendia B, Gil MI, Tudela JA (2010) HPLC-MS analysis of proanthocyanidin oligomers and other phenolics in 15 strawberry cultivars. J Agric Food Chem 58:3916–3926
Cai K, Bennick A (2006) Effect of salivary proteins on the transport of tannin and quercetin across intestinal epithelial cells in culture. Biochem Pharmacol 72:974–980
Cai H, Xie Z, Liu G, Sun X, Peng G, Lin B, Liao Q (2014) Isolation, identification and activities of natural antioxidants from *Callicarpa kwangtungensis* chun. PLoS One 9:160
Castelluccio C, Paganga G, Melikian N, Bolwell GP, Pridham J, Sampson J, Rice-Evans C (1995) Antioxidant potential of intermediates in phenylpropanoid metabolism in higher plants. FEBS Lett 368:188–192
Cinta B, Lluis A, Salvado M (2010) Hypolipidemic effects of proanthocyanidins and their underlying biochemical and molecular mechanisms. Mol Nutr Food Res 54:37–59
Clifford M, Scalbert A (2000) Ellagitannins—nature, occurrence and dietary burden. J Sci Food Agric 80:1118–1125
Czemplik M, Zuk M, Kulma A, Kuc S, Szopa J (2011) GMflax as a source of effective antimicrobial compounds. Sci Microb Pathog Commun Curr Res Technol Adv 76:39–47
Decker EA (1995) Phenolics: prooxidants or antioxidants? Nutr Rev 10:210–219
Drynan JW, Clifford MN, Obuchowicz J, Kuhnert N (2010) The chemistry of low molecular weight black tea polyphenols. Nat Prod Rep 27:417–462
Dudonne S, Poupard P, Coutiere P, Woillez M, Richard T, Merillon JM, Vitrac X (2011) Phenolic composition and antioxidant properties of poplar bud (*Populus nigra*) extract: Individual antioxidant contribution of phenolics and transcriptional effect on skin aging. J Agric Food Chem 59:4527–4536
Ellis T, Hill PW, Fenner N, Williams GG, Godbold D, Freeman C (2009) The interactive effects of elevated carbon dioxide and water table drawdown on carbon cycling in a Welsh ombrotrophic bog. Ecol Eng 35(6):978–986
Evans WC (1996) Trease and Evans' pharmacognosy, 14th edn. Harcourt Brace and Co, Singapore, pp 273–275
Fernández de SB, Hernández T, Estrella I, Gómez-Cordovés C (1992) Variation in phenol content in grapes during ripening: Low-molecular-weight phenols. Z Lebensm Unters Forsch 194:351–354
Freeman C, Fenner N, Ostle NJ (2004) Export of dissolved organic carbon from peatlands under elevated carbon dioxide levels. Nature 430(6996):195–198
Gil MI, Tomas-Barberan FA, Hess-Pierce B, Holcroft DM, Kafer AA (2000) Antioxidant activity of pomegranate juice and its relationship with phenolic composition and processing. J Agric Food Chem 48:4581–4589
Gotham J (1989) Methods in plant biochemistry. In: Harborne JB (ed) Plant phenolics, vol Vol. 1. Academic Press, London, UK, pp 78–96
Harbowy ME, Balentine DA (1997) Tea chemistry. CRC Crit Rev Plant Sci 16:415–480
Haslam E (2003) Thoughts on thearubigins. Phytochemistry 64:61–73
Hasna E (2009) Polyphenols: food sources, properties and applications - a review. Int J Food Sci Technol 44:2512–2518
Hättenschwiler S, Vitousek PM (2000) The role of polyphenols in terrestrial ecosystem nutrient cycling. Trends Ecol Evol 15(6):238–242
Heldt HW, Heldt F (1997) Plant biochemistry and molecular biology. Oxford University Press, Oxford; New York
Heleno SA, Martins A, Queiroz MJ, Ferreira IC (2015) Bioactivity of phenolic acids: Metabolites versus parent compounds: A review. Food Chem 173:501–513

Hertog MGL, Hollman PCH, Katan MB, Kromhout (1993) Intake of potentially anticarcinogenic flavonoids and their determinants in adults in The Netherlands. D Nutr Cancer 20:21–29
Ho CT (1993) In: Ohigashi H, Osawa T, Terao J, Walanabe S, Yoshikawa T (eds) Food factors for cancer prevention. Springer, Tokyo, Japan, pp 593–597
Horner JD, Gosz JR, Cates RG (1988) The role of carbon-based plant secondary metabolites in decomposition in terrestrial ecosystems. Am Nat 132:869–883
Huang MT, Ferraro T (1882) In: Huang MT, Ho CT, Lee CY (eds) Phenolic compounds in food and their effects on health II: antioxidants & cancer prevention. American Chemical Society, Washington, D.C, pp 8–34
Jang M, Cai L, Udeani GO, Slowing KV, Thomas CF, Beecher CWW, Fong HHS, Farnsworth NR, Kinghorn AD, Mehta RG, Moon RC, Pezzuto JM (1997) Cancer chemopreventive activity of resveratrol, a natural product derived from grapes. Science 275:218–220
Kang MH, Naito M, Tsujihara N, Osawa T (1998) Sesamolin inhibits lipid peroxidation in rat liver and kidney. J Nutr 128:1018–1022
Kennedy JA, Hayasaka Y, Vidal S (2001) Composition of grape skin proanthocyanidins at different stages of berry development. J Agric Food Chem 49:5348–5355
Khaki A, Fatemek F, Mohammad N, Amir AK, Chelar CO, Marefat N (2009) The effects of ginger on spermatogenesis and sperm parameters. Iran J Reprod Med 7(1):7–12
Koponen JM, Happonen AM, Mattila PH, Torronen AR (2007) Contents of anthocyanins and ellagitannins in selected foods consumed in Finland. J Agric Food Chem 55:1612–1619
Kostolanska J, Jakus V, Barak L (2009) Monitoring of early and advanced glycation in relation to the occurrence of microvascular complications in children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes mellitus. Physiol Res 58:553–561
Kraus TEC, Zasoski RJ, Dahlgren RA (2004) Fertility and pH effects on polyphenol and condensed tannin concentrations in foliage and roots. Plant Soil 262(1–2):95–109
Kuhnert N, Drynan JW, Obuchowicz J (2010) Mass spectrometric characterization of black tea thearubigins leading to an oxidative cascade hypothesis for thearubigin formation. Rapid Commun Mass Spectrom 24:3387–3404
Kurzer MS, Xu X (1997) Dietary phytoestrogens. Annu Rev Nutr 17:353–381
Langley RG, Krueger GG, Griffiths CE (2005) Psoriasis: Epidemiology, clinical features, and quality of life. Ann Rheum Dis 64(Suppl. 2):ii18–ii23
Lin D, Xiao M, Zhao J, Li Z, Xing B, Li X, Kong M, Li L, Zhang Q, Liu Y, Chen H, Qin W, Wu H, Chen S (2016) An overview of plant phenolic compounds and their importance in human nutrition and management of Type 2 Diabetes. Molecules 21:2–19
Lin JK (2004) In: Meskin MS, Bidlack WR, Davies AJ, Lewis D, Randolph RK (eds) Phytochemicals: mechanisms of action. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp 79–108
Liu W, Wei Z, Ma H, Cai A, Liu Y, Sun J, DaSilva NA, Johnson SL, Kirschenbaum LJ, Cho BP, Dain JA, Rowley DC, Shaikh ZA, Seeram NPV (2017) Anti-glycation and anti-oxidative effects of a phenolic-enriched maple syrup extract and its protective effects on normal human colon cells. Food Funct 82:757–766
Macheix JJ, Fleuriet A, Billot J (1990) Fruit phenolics. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL
Manach C, Hubert J, Llorach R, Scalbert A (2009) Review: the complex links between dietary phytochemicals and human health deciphered by metabolomics. Mol Nutr Food Res 53:1303–1315
Mane C, Souquet JM, Olle D (2007) Optimization of simultaneous flavanol, phenolic acid, and anthocyanin extraction from grapes using an experimental design: application to the characterization of Champagne grape varieties. J Sci Food Agric 55:7224–7233
Mattivi F, Guzzon R, Vrhovsek U (2006) Metabolite pro- filing of grape: flavonols and anthocyanins. J Agric Food Chem 54:7692–7702
McDougall GJ, Shpiro F, Doboson P, Smith P, Blake A, Stewart D (2005) Different polyphenolic compounds of soft fruits inhibit α-amylase and α-glucosidase. J Agric Food Chem 53:2760–2766

Milder IE, Arts IC, van de Putte B, Venema DP, Hollman PC (2005) Lignan contents of Dutch plant foods: a database including lariciresinol, pinoresinol, secoisolariciresinol and matairesinol. Br J Nutr 93:393–402

Moo-Huchin VM, Moo-Huchin MI, Estrada-León RJ, Cuevas-Gloryc L, Estrada-Motaa IA, Ortiz-Vázquezc E, Betancur-Anconad D, Sauri-Duchc E (2015) Antioxidant compounds, antioxidant activity and phenolic content in peel from three tropical fruits from Yucatan, Mexico. Food Chem 166:17–22

Nadkarni KM (1998) Indian materiamedica, 3rd edn. Bombay Popular Prakashan, Mumbai, pp 830–834

Norby RJ, Cotrufo MF, Ineson P, O'Neill EG, Canadell JG (2001) Elevated CO_2, litter chemistry, and decomposition: a synthesis. Oecologia 127(2):153–165

Nybakken L, Johansson O, Palmqvist K (2009) Defensive compound concentration in boreal lichens in response to simulated nitrogen deposition. Glob Chang Biol 15(9):2247–2260

Ollis WD, Brown AG, Haslam E (1966) The constitution of theaflavin. Tetrahedron Lett 1193–1204

Ososki AL, Kennelly EJ (2009) Phytoestrogens: A review of the present state of research. Phytother Res 17:845–869

Oszmianski J, Wojdylo A (2009) Comparative study of phenolic content and antioxidant activity of strawberry puree, clear, and cloudy juices. Eur Food Res Technol 228:623–631

Ozo NO, Caygill JC (1986) O-dihydroxyphenoloxidase action on natural polyhydric phenolics and enzymic browning of edible yams. J Sci Food Agric 37:283–288

Pastore S, Potapovich A, Kostyuk V, Mariani V, Lulli D, de Luca C, Korkina L (2009) Plant Polyphenols Effectively Protect Hacat Cells from Ultraviolet C-Triggered Necrosis and Suppress Inflammatory Chemokine Expression. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1171:305–313

Penuelas J, Estiarte M (1998) Can elevated carbon dioxide affect secondary metabolism and ecosystem function? Trends Ecol Evol 13(1):20–24

Pinho E, Ferreira IC, Barros L, Carvalho AM, Soares G, Henriques M (2014) Antibacterial potential of northeastern Portugal wild plant extracts and respective phenolic compounds. Biomed Res Int 2014:814590

Pourcel L, Routaboul JM, Cheynier V (2007) Flavonoid oxidation in plants: from biochemical properties to physiological functions. Trends Plant Sci 12:29–36

Quideau S, Deffieux D, Douat-Casassus C, Pouyse'gu L (2011) Plant polyphenols: chemical properties, biological activities, and synthesis. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 50:586–621

Raisanen T, Ryyppo A, Julkunen-Tiitto R, Kellomaki S (2008) Effects of elevated carbon dioxide and temperature on secondary compounds in the needles of Scots pine (*Pinus sylvestris*). Trees 22(1):121–135

Rhein LD, Fluhr JW (2010) Aging skin: current and future therapeutic strategies. Allured Business Media, Carol Stream, IL, USA, pp 182–184, 225–240

Roberts EAH, Cartwright RA, Oldschool M (1959) The phenolic substances of manufactured tea. I. Fractionation and paper chromatography of water-soluble substances. J Sci Food Agric 8:72–80

Sadowska-Bartosz I, Bartosz G (2014) Effect of antioxidants supplementation on aging and longevity. Biomed Res Int 2014:404680

Sapis JC, Macheix JJ, Cordonnier RE (1983) The browning capacity of grapes. II. Browning potential and polyphenol oxidase activities in different mature grape varieties [Red and white]. J Agric Food Chem 31:342–345

Schroder H (2007) Protective mechanisms of the Mediterranean diet in obesity and type 2 diabetes. J Nutr Biochem 18:149–160

Shin S, Lee J, Kim M, Kum H, Jung E, Park D (2015) Anti-glycation activities of phenolic constituents from *Silybum marianum* (Milk Thistle) flower in vitro and on human explants. Molecules 20:549–564

Siegenthaler A, Buttler A, Bragazza L (2010) Litter- and ecosystem-driven decomposition under elevated CO_2 and enhanced N deposition in a *Sphagnum* peatland. Soil Biol Biochem 42(6):968–977

Sies H (2010) Polyphenols and health: update and perspectives. Arch Biochem Biophys 501:2–5
Sinsabaugh RL (2010) Phenol oxidase, peroxidase and organic matter dynamics of soil. Soil Biol Biochem 42(3):391–404
Tanaka T, Matsuo Y, Kouno I (2010) Chemistry of secondary polyphenols produced during processing of tea and selected foods. Int J Mol Sci 11:14–40
Taylor SL, Higley NA, Bush RK (1986) Sulfites in foods: uses, analytical methods, residues, fate, exposure assessment, metabolism, toxicity, and hypersensitivity. Adv Food Res 30:1–76
Toberman H, Laiho R, Evans CD (2010) Long-term drainage for forestry inhibits extracellular phenol oxidase activity in Finnish boreal mire peat. Eur J Soil Sci 61(6):950–957
Torronen R (2009) Sources and health effects of dietary ellagitannins. In: Quideau S (ed) Chemistry and biology of ellagitannins—an underestimated class of bioactive plant polyphenols. World Scientific, Singapore, pp 298–319
Tsuda T (2008) Regulation of adipocyte function by anthocyanins: possibility of preventing the metabolic syndrome. J Agric Food Chem 56:642–646
Ucle´s SJR, Bakry FB, Rillouet JM (2010) A preliminary chemotaxonomic study on the condensed tannins of green banana flesh in the Musa genus. Biochem Syst Ecol 38:1010–1017
Umukoro S, Ashorobi RB (2007) Further studies on the antinociceptive action of aqueous seed extract of *Aframomum melegueta*. J Ethnopharmacol 109:501–504
Veteli TO, Mattson WJ, Niemella P (2007) Do elevated temperature and carbon dioxide generally have counteracting effects on phenolic phytochemistry of boreal trees? J Chem Ecol 33(2):287–296
Wilson T, Singh AP, Vorsa N (2008) Human glycemic response and phenolic content of unsweetened cranberry juice. J Med Food 11:46–54
Wojdylo A, Oszmianski J, Laskowski P (2008) Polyphenolic compounds and antioxidant activity of new and old apple varieties. J Agric Food Chem 56:6520–6530
Wu LC, Prior R (2005a) Systematic identification and characterization of anthocyanins by HPLC-ESI-MS/MS in common foods in the United States: fruits and berries. J Agric Food Chem 53:2589–2599
Wu LC, Prior R (2005b) Identification and characterization of anthocyanins by high-performance liquid chromatography-electrospray ionization-tandem mass spectrometry in common foods in the United States: vegetables, nuts, and grains. J Agric Food Chem 53:3101–3113
Wu T, He M, Zang X, Zhou Y, Qiu T, Pan S, Xu X (2013, 1828) A structure-activity relationship study of flavonoids as inhibitors of *E. coli* by membrane interaction effect. Biochim Biophys Acta BBA Biomem:2751–2756
Yi W, Wetzstein HY (2010) Biochemical, biological and histological evaluation of some culinary and medicinal herbs grown under greenhouse and field conditions. J Sci Food Agric 90(6):1063–1070
Yoo HG, Lee BH, Kim W, Lee JS, Kim GH, Chun OK, Koo SI, Kim DO (2014) *Lithospermum erythrorhizon* extract protects keratinocytes and fibroblasts against oxidative stress. J Med Food 17:1189–1196
Yui S, Fujiwara S, Harada K, Motoike-Hamura M, Sakai M, Matsubara S, Miyazak K (2017) Beneficial effects of lemon balm leaf extract on in vitro glycation of proteins, arterial stiffness, and skin elasticity in healthy adults. JJ Nutr Sci Vitaminol 63:59–68
Zvereva EL, Kozlov MV (2006) Consequences of simultaneous elevation of carbon dioxide and temperature for plant-herbivore interactions: a meta analysis. Glob Chang Biol 12(1):27–41

Index

M. Ozturk, K. R. Hakeem (eds.), *Plant and Human Health, Volume 2*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-03344-6